VERGIL'S

AENEID

VERGIL'S

AENEID

BOOKS I-VI

Revised Edition

With Introduction, Notes,
Vocabulary, and Grammatical Appendix
by
CLYDE PHARR

D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY
Lexington, Massachusetts Toronto

Copyright © 1930 and 1964 by D. C. Heath and Company

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

DIS MANIBUS
VATIS VERGILI
HUNC LIBELLUM
DEDICAT AUCTOR
LUBENS MERITO

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010

http://www.archive.org/details/vergilsaeneidboo00virg

PREFACE

This book is intended to introduce high school and college students to the *Aeneid* and to enable them to read this great masterpiece with interest and appreciation.

The present edition is based on the cumulative results of the past centuries of Vergilian scholarship and pedagogical method, and the author is indebted to his many predecessors, ancient and modern, American and foreign, who have worked in this field. The author would make grateful acknowledgment to all those who have contributed in any way to a better understanding of the *Aeneid*, but it is manifestly impossible to enumerate the countless sources from which the present work has been drawn.

In preparing the present text an attempt has been made to profit by the contributions furnished by the printer's art in the differentiation of vocalic and consonantal **i** (**i, j**) as well as in the differentiation of vocalic and consonantal **u** (**u, v**). For what seems to be adequate pedagogical reasons such forms as **dējiciō, subjiciō,** and **conjiciō** are given in the printed text instead of the **dēiciō, subiciō,** and **coniciō** of the inscriptions and manuscripts. For the use of **j** and **v** the author feels that no more apology is needed than for the use of lower case letters in general instead of the square capitals of the inscriptions and early manuscripts. The employment of such forms as **dējiciō, subjiciō,** and **conjiciō** is abundantly justified by their simplicity as well as by the ease with which they are understood in connection with the rest of their conjugational systems.

The text is that of Hirtzel, Oxford University Press, 1900, and the author here gratefully acknowledges the kind permission granted by the Syndics of this Press to reproduce their text. Only a few changes have been made from the Oxford text, such as the use of capitals in this book at the beginning of each new sentence instead of merely at the beginning of each new paragraph, the use of **j** in this text to represent consonantal **i**, and the spellings **relligio, relligiosus, relliquiae,** to represent more accurately the pronunciation of these words in Vergil's day.

In the definitions of the Latin words given in the page vocabularies the author has not sought to secure a mechanical uniformity, but has attempted merely to preserve such a general consistency that the student may from the definitions recognize any later occurrence of a

word and associate it with its earlier appearances. In the number of meanings given for each Latin word, the author has tried to preserve some mean between a poverty which is barren and a wealth which is confusing to the student who is trying at the same time both to read Vergil and to learn Latin.

The chief distinction of this book is its visible vocabulary system. The acquisition of a vocabulary is generally recognized as one of the most important as well as one of the most troublesome problems in learning either to read or speak a foreign language. No important advance has been made in this field for thousands of years, and the present antiquated methods are wasteful of much valuable time and effort, especially in the case of the more difficult languages, such as Latin and Greek.

This book attempts to attack the problem from another angle and prints adjacent to any given passage the whole of its vocabulary, making it unnecessary ever to turn a page for the purpose of learning the meaning of any word.

The use of the special word list, printed on the extensible sheet at the back of the book, adds certain features of considerable value educationally. This list contains the most common words in the work being studied. Each word which occurs in this list is indicated in the text by being printed in italics. This use of italics serves several distinct purposes. First, it indicates to the student where he must look for the meaning of these words, whether in the special list or in one of the vocabularies at the foot of the page. In the second place, the difference in type assists in impressing these more important words on the memory without as much conscious effort as has ordinarily been needed and hence, perhaps, removes an element of discouragement from the task. The word list also furnishes convenient material for the use of teachers who still prefer to require their students to memorize the most important words in their text. In addition to this word list, a second list of rather less common words is indicated in the special vocabularies by means of asterisks, thus calling the attention of the student to their importance. The first occurrence of a word in the text being studied is indicated in the vocabularies by a dagger (†). This serves a valuable purpose in sight reading, since it continually distinguishes for the student the words he has already met from those he has not yet seen in that particular text, and helps to impress them on his memory.

The author is convinced that this new method is an advance over the old both pedagogically and psychologically. The old system involves not merely a great waste of time, but it necessitates continual interruption in the continuity of attention of the student, hindering or even preventing concentration upon the work at hand and thus making for bad mental habits.

This plan has been tried in a number of secondary schools and in every case it has met with a most enthusiastic response on the part of both teachers and students. After an extensive series of experiments, it is agreed that the following are some of the manifest advantages of this method:

1. Students are able to read intelligently a great deal more in a given period of time than has heretofore been possible.

2. Reading of the great classical authors can be begun at a much earlier stage than was formerly practicable. With a modicum of grammar one can begin reading the great classics and can read them rapidly enough to enjoy them as literature.

3. Since the vocabulary for any given passage is comparatively small, the possibility of error is much less and the student seldom selects the wrong word or the wrong meaning from the vocabulary.

4. With the elimination or great lessening of vocabulary difficulties, the student has a much better opportunity of gaining a thorough foundation in the essentials of grammar, reinforced continually by more copious reading than has hitherto been possible.

5. The student learns his vocabulary without much conscious effort at memorizing, in the easiest and most natural way possible, by meeting the words constantly in his reading, with their meanings always before him. Similarly he learns the forms of his words, by constantly seeing the indications of their structure, as denoted in the vocabulary by the principal parts of the verbs, the nominative and genitive singular of the nouns, together with an indication of their gender, and other information presented in the vocabularies.

6. Printing this vocabulary in sight of the passage not only conserves the time of the student commonly spent in mechanically looking up words, but allows him to concentrate his attention on the problems involved in translation, in the development of thought, in the literary, historical, and other problems of his author, and in various other features of the text.

There is no pedagogical value attached to the mechanical labor involved in looking up words according to the old system which, moreover, entails an enormous waste of time. According to the arrangement employed in this book, the student has constantly before him the same information which he formerly was compelled to seek elsewhere at the cost of so much labor.

This visible vocabulary system is far better than a parallel translation, since this method does not solve the problems for the student, but merely places in his hands, in the most readily accessible form, all the requisite data for making his own solutions. By thus ridding him of drudgery and by making this feature of his work lighter and more interesting, this vocabulary system helps to eliminate the improper use of translations by the student, for he now finds that he

can prepare his lesson quite as quickly and much more intelligently without a translation than he formerly could with its help.

The vocabularies of the ordinary school editions, arranged according to the old system, must give the general meaning of each word and then exhaust all the special meanings found in the whole text, and this to most students is a source of considerable confusion and loss of time. In this text the student will always have the general meaning of each word as well as the special meaning necessary for each passage. This enables him to fix the general meaning and to build up his knowledge of the special meanings as he meets them in his reading.

In the notes of this book a great many constructions are explained, partly as a key to the proper understanding of the Latin text and partly as a device to make it unnecessary for the teacher to spend valuable time in requiring the class to analyze constructions. It is believed that this feature will enable the ordinary student to proceed more securely and expeditiously with the work of translation and comprehension of his text and will make it possible for him to solve for himself the difficulties of many passages where the perplexities are so great that many editors have felt it necessary to do the work of translation for the student. A generous use is made in this text of the Grammatical Appendix and the student is constantly referred to it for additional information. If, for example, the student knows the meaning of such terms as ablative absolute or subjunctive of result, he spends no time in consulting the grammatical reference. If he does not know the meaning of these terms or if he shows by his translation that he has a wrong conception, it is very easy for the teacher to correct his fault at once by requiring him to consult the Grammatical Appendix.

A number of circumstances have combined to delay the appearance of this book. By a happy coincidence it is now issued on the two thousandth anniversary of Vergil's birth, and the author is much pleased to offer this little volume in homage to the spirit of the bard of Mantua at a time when all the world is uniting to pay him tribute.

The author wishes to express his special gratitude to the late Dr. Dix Harwood, Assistant Editor of D. C. Heath and Company, for selecting the illustrations in this book, and to Professor W. L. Carr, of Columbia University, whose advice and assistance have been invaluable.

CLYDE PHARR

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

In addition to the General Word List already appearing in the end papers, two new word lists have been inserted after the Index in this revision. It will be recalled that the General Word List contains all the words that occur 24 or more times in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*. The new lists contain those words that occur 12–23 times and 6–11 times, respectively, in Books I–VI. They will provide the same type of vocabulary drill that has made the General Word List useful and popular.

A few misprints and oversights throughout the text have been corrected, affecting mostly the notes and the visible vocabulary, though one or two small corrections have been introduced into the text itself.

It is hoped that these innovations and changes will find favor with the Latin teachers who for years have been faithful friends of this edition of the *Aeneid*.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

PREFACE v

INTRODUCTION

Life of Vergil 1
The *Aeneid* 2
Vergil's Later Fame 4
The Trojan War 4
The Fall of Troy and Aeneas's Wanderings 6
The Purpose of the *Aeneid* 6
The Roman Religion 6
Chronological Table of Vergil's Life 8
Bibliography of Vergil 10

GENERAL DIRECTIONS 11

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS 14

THE AENEID

Book I 15
Book II 80
Book III 142
Book IV 197
Book V 247
Book VI 305

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX 1–79
Index to Grammatical Appendix 81

WORD LISTS II AND III 97–106

GENERAL WORD LIST . . . . . *Inside Back Cover*

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FACING PAGE

PARIS BEGUILED 4
THE ABDUCTION OF HELEN 5
THE PARCAE 18
JUNO 19
JUNO BEGS THE HELP OF AEOLUS 28
NEPTUNE 29
JUPITER 40
MARS 41
AMAZONS GOING INTO BATTLE 60
DIDO BUILDING CARTHAGE 61
THE TROJAN HORSE 96
LAOCOÖN AND HIS SONS. 97
CASSANDRA ON THE WALLS OF TROY 100
MINERVA 101
THE FALL OF TROY 134
ROMAN LADIES AT THE TOMBS OF THEIR ANCESTORS . . . 135
THE GODS DECIDING THE FATE OF TROY. 198
AENEAS AT DIDO'S COURT. 199
A ROMAN PERISTYLE 244
THE DEATH OF DIDO 245
THE VENUS OF MELOS 276
APOLLO OF THE BELVEDERE 277
THE CUMAEAN SIBYL 304
CENTAURS AND DRYAD 305

VERGIL'S AENEID
BOOKS I–VI

THE WANDERINGS OF AENEAS

INTRODUCTION

Life of Vergil

1. Publius Vergilius Maro, one of the most celebrated poets of all time, was born in the little country village of Andes, near Mantua, in northern Italy, October 15, 70 B.C. His father was a small farmer; and, although a man of moderate means, he managed to give his son the equivalent of a college education. The poetically inclined youth studied at Mantua and Cremona, then at the larger city of Milan (**Mediōlānum**), whence he passed to Rome and finally to Naples, where he went to complete his college course. He early developed a taste for literature and especially for philosophy, and all his life he remained a student. Very modest and retiring, even to the point of shyness, he was not fitted to take an active part in the stirring political and military events of his day.

2. After the battle of Philippi in 42 B.C., Octavian confiscated Vergil's farm and assigned it to one of his veterans. Vergil had already begun to write poetry, and his work had attracted the favorable attention of Maecenas, a close personal friend, and political adviser of the emperor. Through Maecenas Vergil met Octavian, who at once took him under his protection, compensated him for the loss of his farm, and made it possible for him to devote the rest of his life to poetry.

3. The most important of his works are known as the *Bucolics* (or *Eclogues*), the *Georgics*, and the *Aeneid*. The *Bucolics* are short poems on pastoral themes, formed on Greek models and idealizing the life of the shepherds and herdsmen of northern Italy; the *Georgics*, also formed on Greek models, deal with the pleasures of farm life; while the *Aeneid*, a great literary epic, deals with the wanderings and adventures of Aeneas after the destruction of Troy, from which, according to tradition, he had come with a small band of followers and laid the foundations of the power which later became Rome.

4. For the last ten years of his life Vergil was occupied in writing the *Aeneid*. In the year 19 B.C. he went to Greece with the intention of spending the next three years in the East for the purpose of getting a more intimate acquaintance with the scenes depicted in his poem and of acquiring local color for his work, upon which he was putting the final touches. While in Athens he met the emperor Augustus,

who was returning to Rome from a visit in the East and who induced Vergil to accompany him. Vergil was already ill before he set sail and steadily grew worse during the voyage. Shortly after landing at Brundisium in southern Italy he died, September 21, 19 B.C., a little before his fifty-second birthday. Vergil was buried at Naples, which he had especially loved, and his tomb bore the inscription:

5. **Mantua mē genuit; Calabrī rapuēre; tenet nunc**
Parthenopē; cecinī pascua, rūra, ducēs,

I was born at Mantua; died in Calabria; my bones lie in Naples; pastures, fields, and heroes were the theme of my song.

His untimely death left his great poem incomplete, and there are many indications of this fact in the *Aeneid*, the most marked being the unfinished verses, of which there are more than fifty.

The *Aeneid*

6. The *Aeneid* is a literary epic, modeled upon the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* of Homer, from which it has drawn a great deal of its material and inspiration. The poem was undertaken at the request of Augustus. The theme, which is also said to have been suggested by Augustus, is the settlement of Aeneas in Italy, which finally led to the founding of Rome. This legend was already well established in Italy, where many of the great families took especial pride in tracing their ancestry back to Aeneas and his band of Trojan heroes. The Julian *gens*, of which Julius and Augustus Caesar were members, especially gloried in its tradition of a direct descent from Aeneas himself through Ascanius, or Iulus, as he was sometimes called. Besides this, the Romans were gradually coming to claim a Trojan origin for many of the customs, ceremonies, and institutions of their fathers. Vergil and Augustus were both interested in thus giving divine sanction and the weight of hoary antiquity to the measures which Augustus had undertaken for establishing the empire. Thus Augustus appears as the restorer of the good old days and the good old ways of the fathers. He is the promised ruler of divine descent who is to bring peace and a return of the Golden Age to the whole world. Throughout the entire poem the person and the work of Augustus are magnified, but these are made to appear as secondary and as but instruments in the hands of the gods for working out the high destiny of the Roman people. By thus stirring the feeling of Roman patriotism and pride of race as well as by constantly appealing to the sanctity and the authority of the good old days, the *Aeneid* met with an instant and a direct response from the Roman people, who were taking an ever-growing pride in the great achieve-

ments of their fathers. The success of the poem was thus assured from the first, and it has continued to exert an enormous influence upon later Roman and European literature.

7. As a piece of literature, the *Aeneid* has both the strength and weaknesses of its author and subject matter. Vergil was a weakling, usually in poor health, shy to the point of painfulness, a sentimental idealist, and little acquainted with the hard and practical ways of the stern old Roman world. He was never married and seems to have cared little or nothing for feminine society. His one great ideal of life can be summed up in the word **pietās**, *devotion, loyalty*, and he equips his hero Aeneas (**pius Aenēās**) with a full and overflowing measure of this quality, which finds its best expression in an unquestioned obedience to the will of the gods and to their more or less contradictory commands, no matter how much human suffering may be entailed nor how much apparent wrong may result. Vergil was born in Cisalpine Gaul, probably ineligible for Roman citizenship in his early years and possibly a member of a conquered tribe which had felt the pitiless heel of the conqueror. In any case he seems to have early developed a deep sympathy for the oppressed and for the losers in life's battle, and also a profound conviction of the sadness and sorrow of human existence and the futility of human effort in its attempts to adjust its feeble struggles to a world that is too much for it. The craving for satisfaction of a thwarted nature found its chief expression in its reliance upon the gods and their inscrutable ways as they worked out their plans for the world. In addition, he found refuge in a deep reverence for the past with its great heroes who had been so submissive to the will of the gods that they had become but puppets in carrying out the divine commands.

8. Vergil's chief claim to fame as a poet rests upon his incomparable literary style. Nettleship[1] says: "Unquestionably it was Vergil's style which more than anything else gave him his preeminence among Roman poets. The great power of his style lies in the haunting music of his verse, in the rhythm and fall of his language." As a close student of Greek, he had absorbed much of the best in that literature. "Not only is he fond of filling his verses with Greek forms and Greek cadences, but his lines are rich and harmonious with a new music manifold in its capacity; it is as if the sound of the Greek language had awakened a sympathetic strain in Italian. . . . Vergil not only translates but works his Greek materials into new forms." As a great artist he thoroughly loses himself in his work, but his impersonality "is not the impersonality of Homer or of Shakespere, who simply show us the world as it stands; Vergil yearns over the spectacle which he spreads before us."

[1] *Vergil*, pp. 90–92.

Vergil's Later Fame

9. Vergil was ardently admired even in his own day, and his fame continued to increase with the passing centuries. Under the later Roman Empire the reverence for his works reached the point where the **Sortēs Vergiliānae** came into vogue; that is, the *Aeneid* was opened at random, and the first line on which the eyes fell was taken as an omen of good or evil. In the mediæval period a great circle of legends and stories of miracles gathered around his name, and the Vergil of history was transformed into the Vergil of magic. He was looked upon not only as a great magician but as an inspired pagan prophet who had foretold the birth of Christ. It was at this period that the spelling *Virgil* came into vogue, thus associating the great poet with the magic or prophetic wand, **virga**. " The mediæval world looked upon him as a poet of prophetic insight, who contained within himself all the potentialities of wisdom. He was called the *Poet*, as if no other existed; the *Roman*, as if the ideal of the commonwealth were embodied in him; the *Perfect in Style*, with whom no other writer could be compared; the *Philosopher*, who grasped the ideas of all things; the *Wise One*, whose comprehension seemed to other mortals unlimited. His writings became the Bible of the race. The mysteries of Roman priestcraft, the processes of divination, the science of the stars, were all found in his works." [1] The great mediæval poets, such as Dante and Chaucer, learned much from the immortal Roman; since that time few great poets have escaped his influence, and one cannot properly estimate the course of European thought and poetic art without some knowledge of Vergil and his dominating power.

The Trojan War

10. To understand the *Aeneid*, it is necessary to be familiar with the story of the Trojan War and of the events leading up to it. According to the story, Jupiter, father and king of gods and men, once fell in love with Thetis, a beautiful sea goddess, and wished to marry her, but an oracle had foretold that the son of Thetis was to be mightier than his father. Hence Jupiter decreed that Thetis was to marry a mortal, and Peleus, a Greek king, was chosen as her husband. The wedding was a magnificent occasion, and all the gods and goddesses were invited except Eris, goddess of strife. Incensed at being thus slighted, she appeared in the midst of the festivities and spitefully threw among the assembled guests a golden apple (the famous Apple of Discord) with the inscription " To the fairest." Each of the ladies present wished to claim this prize for herself; but

[1] Tunison, *Master Vergil*, p. 156.

Alinari, Rome *Vatican Museum*

PARIS BEGUILED

In his right hand he holds the Apple of Discord,
for which the three goddesses quarreled.

Gramstorff Bros. *Rudolf von Deutsch.*

THE ABDUCTION OF HELEN

the contest finally narrowed down to Juno, queen of the gods; Minerva, goddess of wisdom; and Venus, goddess of love and beauty. The rivalry became very bitter, and the angry goddesses called upon Jupiter to decide; but he discreetly refused to act as judge.

So the case was finally referred to Paris, son of Priam, king of Troy or Ilium. Each of the goddesses then tried to bribe Paris. Juno offered him great wealth and unlimited power, Minerva the gift of great wisdom, while Venus promised him the most beautiful woman in the world for his wife. Paris thereupon awarded the prize to Venus and thus incurred the vindictive and unforgiving hatred of Juno and Minerva. His decision, henceforth known as the "Judgment of Paris," was the beginning of unending trouble for Paris and the Trojan people.

11. The most beautiful woman in the world at that time was Helen, daughter of Leda, and wife of Menelaüs, king of Sparta. With the help of Venus, Paris succeeded in winning Helen and eloping with her to Troy. All Greece at once arose in arms to avenge the insult of having one of their women carried off by a foreigner, and a great expedition was fitted out under Agamemnon, brother of Menelaüs, as commander-in-chief. The forces assembled at the port of Aulis in eastern Greece, but day after day the winds were unfavorable, and it was not possible for them to set sail. The Greeks consulted Calchas, the soothsayer of the expedition; and he replied that no favorable wind could be expected until they had sacrificed Iphigeneia, daughter of Agamemnon, to appease the gods. The princess was duly sacrificed, thus appeasing the gods and securing a favorable voyage for the expedition.

12. Many great Greek heroes embarked on this undertaking with Agamemnon and Menelaüs. Among the most famous were the sententious Nestor, who was older, knew more, and could talk more than any other man of his time; the wily Ulysses, whose cunning was invincible; the swift-footed Achilles, the dashing young hero ever eager to do and to dare for the pure thrill of the excitement and the love of adventure; the mighty Ajax, whose enormous strength was accompanied by a correspondingly dull wit; another Ajax, son of Oïleus, who was ever eager to grab his part of the spoils; the mighty Diomedes, who dared to fight against the very gods on the field of battle. There were also many other Greek heroes who were eager to distinguish themselves in such a noble undertaking and to get their share of the booty, when they should succeed in capturing the rich city of Troy. Among the Trojan warriors who opposed the Greeks were the dauntless Hector, eldest son of Priam and the noblest of all the warriors before Troy; the jaunty Paris who was fighting mightily to keep Helen; and the faithful Aeneas, the son of Venus and Anchises.

The Fall of Troy and Aeneas's Wanderings

13. For ten long years the siege lasted with varying fortunes, although the Greeks had a slight advantage, owing to the fact that more of the gods were fighting on their side than on that of the Trojans. Juno and Minerva were especially helpful to the Greeks, since they had both developed an undying hatred against all the Trojans, because of the evident unfairness of Trojan Paris in awarding the beauty prize to their hated rival, Venus.

14. Through the stratagem of the wooden horse, fully described in the second book of the *Aeneid*, Troy was finally captured and destroyed. Most of the inhabitants were either killed or dragged away into slavery; but a remnant, under the leadership of Aeneas, succeeded in escaping. After long wanderings and much hardship they finally reached Italy, where they settled and established their rule over the uncivilized natives. This settlement finally resulted in the founding of Rome, which gradually extended its sway and established the Roman Empire, with Augustus at its head in the days of Vergil.

The Purpose of the *Aeneid*

15. One of the results which both Augustus and Vergil hoped to see effected with the help of the *Aeneid* was a revival of faith in the old-time religion. The educated Romans of the day were becoming quite blasé and sophisticated and were gradually losing the faith of their fathers with its simple, unquestioning reliance on the infallible wisdom of the gods and their helpful interference in human affairs.

The Roman Religion

16. The machinery of this religion was quite elaborate. Before their acquaintance with Greek culture the Romans had developed a religion of their own, with a number of departmental divinities, each having charge of some general field in human experience, the boundaries of which were never very clearly defined. Hence there was a considerable overlapping of authority, with a consequent confusion in the divine government. With the coming of Greek culture, no radical change was effected in the general conceptions, but the Romans took over a vast mass of Greek stories about the gods and the deeds of divine and semidivine characters. In most cases the Roman names of the various divinities were retained, and they were simply identified with the corresponding Greek deities with their elaborate system of mythology. Thus the Greek father of gods and men, Zeus, was identified with the Roman Jupiter, Hera with Juno,

Athena with Minerva, Aphrodite with Venus, Hermes with Mercury, Poseidon with Neptune, Hephaestus with Vulcan, etc. In addition to these common features, the Roman religion had certain characteristic divinities and conceptions of its own before the coming of Greek culture, and these were retained.

17. In speaking then of the religious ideas embodied in the *Aeneid*, we are dealing primarily with the Greco-Roman religion, to which are added certain Roman features not belonging to the Greek system.

18. At the head of the Roman system of religion stood Jupiter, father and king of gods and men. He was the god of heaven who gathered the storm clouds and hurled the lightning. His sign was the thunderbolt, and the eagle was his messenger. Apollo was the great god of light and the foe of all darkness and evil. He was the ideal of manly beauty and the patron of music, prophecy, poetry, and medicine. Mars was the brutal and bloody god of war and of battles. Vulcan, god of fire, supervised the working of metals and all useful and mechanical arts. Mercury with his winged sandals and his magic wand was the messenger and the herald of the gods. He was also god of inventions, trade, and commerce. Bacchus was the god of wine and master of revelry. Neptune, brother of Jupiter, was god of all the seas and waters of the earth. Juno, wife of Jupiter and queen of the gods, presided over the life of women and especially over the rites of marriage. Minerva was goddess of wisdom and of the arts and handicrafts, especially of female handicrafts. Diana, sister of Apollo, was the divinity of the moonlight, goddess of the woods, and mistress of the chase. Venus, born of the sea foam near Cythera, was goddess of love and beauty. Ceres, goddess of grain, presided over seedtime and harvest. Vesta, the goddess of the household fire, presided over hearth and home and the sanctities of family life. Pluto or Dis, with his queen Proserpina, ruled over the lower world and the souls of the dead.

19. In addition to these greater divinities, there were many minor deities, such as the beautiful feminine nymphs who haunted every fountain, stream, mountain, or sea, and their masculine counterparts, the homely satyrs, who frequented the forests, fields, and mountains. The Fates presided over human destinies, while the Furies avenged such crimes as murder and sacrilege. Among the great number of lesser deities and spirits were such personified qualities as Fortune, Concord, and Peace.

20. In addition to these gods and goddesses may be mentioned Janus, the two-faced god of beginnings and of gateways, and the household deities, the lares and penates, who along with Vesta, goddess of the hearth, formed the center of the family worship. These household deities were worshiped each day at the family

meal. When the household sat down to dinner, a little of the food was thrown into the flames of the fire on the hearth, and a little wine was poured out as an offering to the household gods. The images of the lares and penates would also be brought from their shrine and placed on the table to insure their presence at the meal.

21. Special veneration was also shown to the spirits of the dead. These were called *manes*, meaning " the pure ones," and they were always looked upon as guardian deities of the family. These manes, or souls of the departed, were supposed to live a shadowy sort of existence in the lower world, sometimes returning to haunt the grave where they had been buried: for, unless the body were properly interred, the soul could not at once enter the realm of the lower world and find a permanent resting place, but must wander unhappily around for a hundred years, as a source of torment and of terror to the living. Hence the great importance of the proper burial rites and the great care bestowed upon these ceremonials by the Romans.

22. It was believed that the gods indicated their purposes to men by means of signs and omens, such as dreams, thunder and lightning, an eclipse of the sun, a blazing comet, the flight of birds, or the peculiar appearance of the entrails of animals offered for sacrifice. The gods were also thought to deliver special communications at sacred places known as " oracles." The most famous of these was that of Apollo at Delphi. Here stood a temple of Apollo over a cleft in the rock, and over this cleft, in the dark inner recesses of the temple, was placed a tripod containing a seat for the priestess or Pythia, who delivered the oracles. Other famous oracles were those at Delos, at Cumae, and in the Libyan desert.

23. The old Roman religion was of an intensely practical nature and busied itself with the everyday life of the people. As each household was bound together by the tie of a common worship, so all the citizens were held together by a common reverence for the divinities and powers who protected and guided the state. The Roman religion thus formed an indispensable bond of union for the family as well as the nation.

24. Chronological Table of Vergil's Life

B.C.

70 Birth of Vergil. First consulship of Pompey and Crassus.
Trial of Verres.
Birth of Gallus.

65 Birth of Horace.

63 Birth of Octavius (afterward called Octavian, and still later called Augustus Caesar). Consulship of Cicero. Catiline's conspiracy. Annexation of Syria.

60 First Triumvirate of Pompey, Caesar, and Crassus.

59 Consulship of Caesar.

58 Cicero exiled. Caesar begins conquest of Gaul. Vergil is sent to school at Cremona.
57 Cicero recalled.
56 Conference of Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey at Luca, and renewal of the First Triumvirate.
55 Vergil assumes the toga virilis. Death of Lucretius.
Second consulship of Pompey and Crassus. Caesar invades Britain.
54 Vergil attends college at Milan. Death of Catullus.
53 Vergil attends the university at Rome, taking special courses in philosophy and literature. The Parthians defeat and kill Crassus at Carrhae, capturing the Roman standards.
52 Revolt of Vercingetorix.
Pompey sole consul. Cicero's speech *Pro Milone.*
51 Cicero proconsul of Cilicia.
49 Caesar confers Roman citizenship on the inhabitants of Gallia Trānspadāna.
49–46 Civil war between Caesar and the senatorial faction led by Pompey.
48 Battle of Pharsalia: Caesar defeats Pompey and the senatorial faction.
48–47 The Alexandrine war.
47 War with Pharnaces.
46 Battle of Thapsus.
45 Battle of Munda, marking the final overthrow of the senatorial faction.
44 Assassination of Julius Caesar.
44–43 War at Mutina. Cicero's *Philippics.*
43 Octavian consul. Second Triumvirate composed of Antony, Octavian, and Lepidus. Assassination of Cicero. Birth of Ovid. Vergil begins the composition of the *Eclogues.*
42 Battle of Philippi. Overthrow of Brutus and Cassius.
41 War at Perusia. Confiscations of the Triumvirs. Vergil's farm lost; his friendship with Maecenas.
40 Consulship of Asinius Pollio. Treaty of Brundisium. Octavian compensates Vergil for the loss of his farm.
39 Treaty of Misenum. Vergil introduces Horace to Maecenas.
38 Vergil and Horace accompany Maecenas to Brundisium.
37 Vergil publishes his *Eclogues* (*Bucolics*), and begins work on his *Georgics.* Treaty of Tarentum. Second Triumvirate renewed. Phraates becomes king of Parthia.
36 Defeat of Sextus Pompey. Lepidus deposed as Triumvir. Parthian War.
33 Phraates attacks Media and Armenia.
31 Battle of Actium: Octavian completely overthrows Antony and Cleopatra. Octavian visits the East.
30 Death of Antony and Cleopatra. Annexation of Egypt. Settlement of the East by Octavian.
29 The *Georgics* published. The *Aeneid* begun. Octavian returns from the East and celebrates a triple triumph. The temple of Janus closed.
27 The titles of *Princeps* and *Augustus* conferred by the senate upon Octavian, who is henceforth known as Augustus Caesar. Death of Gallus.
26 Augustus in Spain. He corresponds with Vergil.
25 Annexation of Galatia. Propertius' *Cynthia.*
23 Death of Marcellus. Vergil recites portions of the *Aeneid* before Augustus and Octavia. Horace publishes the first three books of his *Odes.*
20 Expedition of Augustus to the East. The Parthians restore to the Romans the standards captured from Crassus at Carrhae in 53.
19 Vergil goes to Greece, returns with Augustus, and dies at Brundisium. Death of Tibullus. Horace publishes the first book of his *Epistles.*

25. Bibliography of Vergil

The following books will be found helpful and desirable in the library of any high school where Vergil is being studied:

Harper's *Classical Dictionary*. American Book.
Harper's *Latin Dictionary*. American Book.
Glover's *Virgil*. Macmillan.
Wetmore's *Index Vergilianus*. Yale University Press.
Prescott's *Development of Vergil's Art*. University of Chicago Press.
Gayley's *Classic Myths*. Ginn.
Sellar's *Roman Poets of the Augustan Age; Virgil*. Oxford University Press.
The article on Virgil in the *Encyclopedia Britannica*, or in any other good encyclopedia.
Conington's *Works of Virgil*, with commentary, in three volumes. George Bell & Sons, London.
Tyrrell's *Latin Poetry*. Ginn.
Some one or more good histories of Rome, such as that of Boak (Macmillan) or that of Frank (Holt).
Comparetti's *Vergil in the Middle Ages*. Macmillan.
Mackail's *Vergil and his Meaning for the World of Today*. Longmans, Green.

The following verse translations may be recommended: Dryden, Conington, William Morris, Rhoades, Billson, E. Fairfax Taylor, T. C. Williams, Ballard.

The following books are very desirable for those who read German:

Norden, *Das sechste Buch der Aeneis*.
Heinze, *Virgils epische Technik*.

The edition of Servius's *Latin Commentary on Vergil* (edited by Thilo and Hagen) is indispensable for any thorough understanding of Vergil's poems and should be in the hands of every one who wishes to do any scholarly work in this field.

GENERAL DIRECTIONS

This book, with its visible vocabulary system, is so arranged that the complete vocabulary of any given passage is constantly before the reader.

In beginning the work of a given lesson, the student should open the book at the passage to be studied, and unfold the extensible sheet at the back of the book.

The reader will find two varieties of type employed in the Latin text, roman (ordinary light-faced) and italics. Words printed in roman type in the text are to be found in the vocabulary at the foot of a given page. Those printed in italics in the text will be found on the extensible sheet at the back of the book. The list of the italicized words of the text, which represent the most common words in the author, should be mastered as early as possible.

A dagger (†) after a word in the vocabulary indicates the first appearance of this word in the work of the author being studied; an asterisk (*) after a word in the vocabulary indicates that it appears ten times or more in the work which is being read. Teachers who wish to give special vocabulary drills will find in the list at the back of the book and in the words followed by an asterisk perhaps the most valuable and the least wasteful of any material which may be available for their purpose.

This book may be employed with good results in a variety of ways, a few of which are here suggested as possibilities:

(1) It may be used as any other Latin text is commonly studied; that is, the teacher may assign a definite amount of work at each recitation, and the students may prepare this assignment and recite on it at the next meeting of the class. This is probably the least desirable method of studying any language.

(2) A much better method is to spend at least half of the recitation period in sight reading. The students should begin by quickly looking over the words followed by a dagger (†) in the vocabulary at the bottom of each page, and then be prepared to read. The teacher should never translate for them, but should give them an occasional hint or a question with respect to a form or a construction, and should make very brief comments on points that may appear obscure. In this way the students should usually cover the advanced lesson in class, so that their additional preparation would

primarily consist in a review or elaboration of the work already done in class under the direction of the teacher.

(3) A still more satisfactory method is, however, to arrange for twice as much time for class meeting as has been customary. The whole of this time should be spent working on the text under the direct supervision of the teacher, and should be devoted primarily to sight reading. The work of the students outside the class meeting should consist in a limited amount of supplementary reading and in a continual review of the grammar, both forms and syntax, as found in the grammatical appendix of this book. Since little or no outside preparation would be required, such a course should have no more credit than the ordinary type which meets the customary number of hours a week. Schools which can arrange their schedule on this basis will find their students making much more satisfactory progress and developing much more enthusiasm for their work.

All Latin students in high school and college work should make a thorough review of Latin grammar at the beginning of each school year. Even though it may be done rapidly this review should be comprehensive and should include all forms and syntax previously studied. Some attention should be paid to any additional features which are to be used during the new year. This new matter, together with the review, may be briefly summarized in the first three or four meetings of the class. When the reading of poetry is begun a careful study should be made of the elementary principles of versification. All principles learned or reviewed should be continually applied as the class proceeds. The material for this work will be found in the Grammatical Appendix of this book, distributed as follows:

Pronunciation and Inflection	1–235
Syntax	236–390
Versification	391–410
Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric	411–477

The Index to the Appendix will be found useful in locating material which may otherwise be difficult to find. It is important to remember that no one can ever read intelligently any language without a practical working knowledge of the grammar. In general it will be found that a careful and systematic study of the grammar, with a constant application of its principles and with frequent reviews, will mean a great saving of time and a great increase in the power of the students to comprehend the language which is being studied.

Note to the Student: For the meaning of the signs and abbreviations see page 14. The Latin dedication on page iii may be translated: *With pleasure the author dedicates this little book to the divine spirit of the prophet-poet Vergil in appreciation of his worth.*

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative
abs. = absolute
acc. = accusative
act. = active
adj. = adjective
adv. = adverb, adverbial
advers. = adversative
App. = the Grammatical Appendix in this book
appos. = apposition, appositive
asynd. = asyndeton
cf. = Latin cōnfer, i.e. *compare*
char. = characteristic
coll. = collective
compar. = comparative
condit. = condition, conditional
conj. = conjunction
constr. = construction
dat. = dative
dem. = demonstrative
dep. = deponent
dim. = diminutive
e.g. = Latin exemplī grātiā, i.e. *for example*
esp. = especial, especially
f., fem. = feminine
fig. = figurative, figuratively
freq. = frequentative
fut. = future
gen. = genitive
hist. = historical
i.e. = Latin id est, *that is*
imp. = imperative
imperf. = imperfect
impers. = impersonal, impersonally
indecl. = indeclinable
indef. = indefinite
indic. = indicative
indir. = indirect
inf. = infinitive
instr. = instrumental
interj. = interjection
interrog. = interrogative
intr. = intransitive
Introd. = the Introduction of this book
l. = line; *ll.* = lines
lit. = literal, literally
loc. = locative
m., masc. = masculine
n., neut. = neuter
neg. = negative
nom. = nominative
num. = numeral
obj. = object, objective
opt. = optative
part. = participle, partitive
pass. = passive
perf. = perfect
pers. = personal
pl. = plural
pluperf. = pluperfect
poss. = possessive
pred. = predicate
prep. = preposition
pres. = present
pron. = pronoun
ref. = reference
reflex. = reflexive
rel. = relative
sc. = Latin scīlicet, i.e. *supply, understand*
sing. = singular
spec. = specification
subj. = subject, subjective, subjunctive
subst. = substantive
sup. = superlative
temp. = temporal
tr. = transitive, transitively
voc. = vocative
vol. = volitive

* the asterisk in the vocabulary shows that the Latin word appears ten or more times in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*.

† the dagger in the vocabulary indicates the first appearance of the Latin word in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*.

(1), this numeral after a Latin word in the vocabulary indicates that the word is a verb of the first conjugation and is to be inflected as **amō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *love, cherish*.

All Latin words in the notes and vocabularies are in bold face type. All definitions in the vocabularies are in roman (light face). All translations in the notes are in italics. All explanatory matter in the vocabularies is in italics.

THE AENEID

BOOK I

ARMA virumque canō, *Trōjae quī prīmus ab ōrīs*
Ītaliam fātō profugus Lāvīna*que vēnit*
lītora — multum ille et terrīs jactātus *et* altō
vī superum, saevae memorem *Jūnōnis* ob *īram,*

---

altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea)†
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, proclaim†*
jactō (1) toss, buffet†*
Lāvīn(i)us, a, um Lavinian, of Lavinium†
memor, oris mindful, remembering, unforgetting†*
ob on account of (*acc.*)†
profugus, a, um exiled, fugitive†
saevus, a, um cruel, stern, fierce†*

1–7. The theme of the poem, namely, the wanderings and wars of Aeneas, who after many struggles laid the foundation for the greatness of future Rome, in accordance with the decrees of fate.

From the more extended introduction to the poem (lines 1–33) we learn: (1) the plan of the poet to describe the adventures of his hero, as is done in the *Odyssey*, and to depict wars and battles, as does the *Iliad;* (2) the deep religious conviction of the author, for whom the gods rule over all mortal affairs; (3) the national pride of the poet, found in his choice of material, and which later comes to its clearest expression in l. 33.

1. Arma virumque: the theme of the *Aeneid;* **arma** stands by metonymy for *deeds of arms, wars*, referring to the wars in which Aeneas engaged, both in Troy and in Italy; **virum** refers to Aeneas, so well known that he is not mentioned by name until l. 92. **Trojae:** with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b.* **quī prīmus ab ōrīs Trojae (ad) Ītaliam vēnit.** This refers to Aeneas as the *first* of the Trojans to come to Italy after their native city Troy had been captured, sacked, and destroyed by the Greeks in the Trojan war. Strictly speaking, the Trojan Antenor had preceded him, but Antenor's arrival was of no great consequence and did not have the far-reaching results that the coming of Aeneas had. Compare the discovery of America by Leif Ericson with that by Columbus.

2–3. (ad, in) Ītaliam, (ad, in) lītora: acc. of place to which; App. 315. **fātō:** abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332; "such was the will of heaven." **Lāvīn(i)a:** *of Lavinium,* an ancient city on the western coast of Italy, near the spot where Rome was later founded. Lavinium was reputed to have been the first Trojan settlement in Italy and to have been named for Lavinia, an Italian princess whom Aeneas married. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus, king of the Latins.

3. multum: with adverbial force, modifying **jactātus. ille:** Aeneas, the **virum** of l. 1. **(in) terrīs, et (in) altō:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **jactātus (est).**

4. vī: abl. of cause or means; App. 331, 332. **superum = superōrum,** gen. pl., *of the gods above.* **memorem:** a transferred epithet, logically belonging to **Jūnōnis,** but poetically applied to **īram. saevae memorem Jūnōnis ob īram:** an example of what is known as "interlocked order," **saevae** modifying **Jūnōnis,** and **memorem** modifying **īram.** This order is often found in Latin poetry. **Jūnōnis ob īram:** the reasons for Juno's hatred of Aeneas and the Trojans are given by Vergil in ll. 12–28.

Before beginning work read the General Directions, page 11.

multa quoque *et bellō* passus, *dum* conderet *urbem*
īnferretque *deōs* Latiō — *genus* unde Latīnum
Albānīque *patrēs atque altae moenia* Rōmae.
Mūsa, *mihī* causās memorā, *quō nūmine* laesō
quidve dolēns *rēgīna deum* tot *volvere cāsūs*
īnsignem pietāte *virum*, tot adīre *labōrēs*
impulerit. *Tantaene animīs* caelestibus *īrae?*
Urbs antīqua fuit (*Tyriī tenuēre* colōnī)

---

adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus approach, encounter†
Albānus, a, um Alban, of Alba Longa in central Italy, mother city of Rome†
caelestis, e divine, heavenly†
causa, ae *f.* reason, cause†*
colōnus, ī *m.* colonist, settler†
condō, ere, didī, ditus found, establish†*
doleō, ēre, uī, itus suffer, grieve (at), be angry (at, with), resent†
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus strike (against), drive, force†
īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring (into)†
īnsignis, e distinguished, marked, splendid†*
laedō, ere, sī, sus strike, hurt, offend, thwart†
Latīnus, a, um Latin, of Latium†
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy around Rome†*
memorō (1) (re)call, recount, relate†*
Mūsa, ae *f.* Muse, goddess of the liberal arts†
patior, ī, passus suffer, endure†*
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of duty†*
quoque also†*
Rōma, ae *f.* Rome, a city and empire†
tot so many†*
unde whence, from which source†*

5–6. conderet, īnferret: purpose; App. 374.

5. urbem: Lavinium. **passus (est Aenēās).** (in) **bellō:** abl. of place; App. 319; referring to the enemies whom he had to conquer after landing in Italy. **multa:** cognate accusative with **passus**; App. 307, 313.

6. īnferret deōs: App. 374; in antiquity migrating peoples regularly carried with them their gods, either as images or other sacred symbols; see ll. 68 and 378. **Latiō:** dat. of direction = **ad (in) Latium**; App. 306. **unde genus Latīnum (est):** Roman legends traced the origin of the Latin race, of the kingdom of Alba Longa (forerunner of Rome), and of the founding of Rome, back to the coming of the Trojans under Aeneas to Italy.

7. (unde) Albānī patrēs (sunt): in Roman times many of the noble senatorial families took much pride in tracing their ancestry back to Troy, through the great families of Alba Longa. **patrēs:** with the first syllable short; App. 17. **altae:** may refer either to position, *situated on the (seven) high hills*, or to the power and prestige of *lofty (mighty) Rome*.

8–11. Invocation of the Muse.

8. Mūsa: it is the custom of epic poets to invoke the muse for inspiration and to assign to some such divine source the gift of being able to compose their poems. **mihī:** this word in poetry may have the final i either long or short. The same is true of **tibi, sibi, ubi,** and **ibi.** **quō nūmine (Jūnōnis) laesō:** abl. abs. or abl. of cause; App. 332, 343.

9. quidve dolēns: *or vexed at what.* **rēgīna de(ōr)um:** Juno as Jupiter's wife was queen of the gods. **cāsūs:** object of **volvere**, *to undergo, pass through.*

10. virum = Aenēān, subject of **volvere**, which depends upon **impulerit.** **pietāte:** dependent on **īnsignem**; the most prominent characteristic of Aeneas was his **pietās**, *loyalty* or *devotion to duty*.

11. impulerit: subj. in indir. quest.; App. 349, 350. **Tantaene = suntne tantae īrae caelestibus animīs? animīs:** dat. of possession; App. 299. **īrae:** poetic plural, often employed in Latin where English would ordinarily use the singular.

12–33. Reasons for the wrath of Juno against Aeneas and the Trojans.

12. Urbs antīqua fuit: according to the tradition which Vergil here follows. Carthage was in fact founded some four hundred years later than the traditional date of the fall of Troy, 1184 B.C. **Tyriī:** *from Tyre*, a city of Phoenicia,

Karthāgō, *Ītaliam* contrā Tiberīna*que* longē
ōstia, dīves opum studiīs*que* asperrima *bellī;*
quam Jūnō fertur terrīs magis *omnibus ūnam*
posthabitā coluisse Samō: *hīc illius arma,*
hīc currus *fuit; hoc rēgnum dea gentibus esse,*
sī quā *fāta* sinant, *jam tum* tenditque fovetque.
Prōgeniem *sed* enim Trojānō *ā sanguine dūcī*
audierat Tyriās olim *quae* verteret *arcēs;*

asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce†*
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, dwell (in), honor, cherish†*
contrā opposite, facing (*acc.*)†*
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car†*
dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy (*gen.*)†
enim for, indeed, in truth†*
foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus cherish, fondle†
Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, great commercial city in North Africa, rival of Rome†
longē far (off), at a distance†*
magis more, rather†*
ōlim (at) some time, once†*
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth†*
ōstium, (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance†
posthabeō, ēre, uī, itus place after, esteem less†
prōgeniēs, ēī *f.* offspring, race†
quā in any (some) way, where†
Samos, ī *f.* island of the Aegean, center of the worship of Juno†
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs permit, allow†*
studium, (i)ī *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit†
Tiberīnus, a, um of the Tiber, an Italian river on which Rome is situated†
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy†*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change†*

whence Carthage was said to have been settled. The Phoenicians were the great traders of their time, and Carthage on the northern shore of Africa midway on the Mediterranean occupied a strategic position for controlling the commerce of these regions. **tenuēre**: shorter form for **tenuērunt**; App. 204, 4.

13. longē: modifying **contrā**, which governs both **Ītaliam** and **Tiberīna ōstia**.

14. ōstia: see note on **īrae**, l. 11. The general expression, **Ītaliam**, is followed by the more specific **Tiberīna ōstia** for the sake of greater clearness and vividness. **opum**: gen. with the adjective **dīves**, *rich in resources;* App. 287. **studiīs**: abl. of respect, depends on **asperrima**; App. 325. This phrase would remind the Romans of their bitter struggles with Carthage in the three Punic Wars.

15. quam: refers to **urbs**, l. 12, and is object of **coluisse**. **fertur**: *is said*, a common meaning. **terrīs omnibus** = **terrīs aliīs**; **terrīs** is abl. with comparative **magis**; App. 327. **ūnam** = **sōlam**, as often.

16. posthabitā Samō: abl. abs.; App. 343. Juno greatly loved Samos, an island off the western coast of Asia Minor. According to the myth, the goddess had been reared in Samos, had married Jupiter there, and one of her temples, one of the most famous in the world, was situated there. **Samō**: the final vowel is not elided, although the following word begins with an **h**. This failure to elide is called *hiatus;* App. 399. **illius (Jūnōnis)**: the **i** of the genitive ending of the nine pronouns and adjectives ending in **ius** is usually long, but often short in poetry as here. **arma (fuērunt)**: doubtless refers to ancient arms, chariot, and other relics preserved in Juno's temple at Samos.

16–17. hīc, hīc, hoc: repeated for emphasis; this repetition is called *anaphora;* App. 413. **hoc**: refers to **urbs** l. 12, but is attracted to the gender of the predicate noun **rēgnum**, *the ruling power.* **Jūnō dea jam tum tenditque fovetque hanc urbem (Karthāginem) esse rēgnum omnibus gentibus, sed fāta voluērunt Rōmam esse hoc rēgnum. gentibus**: dat. of reference; App. 301.

18. quā (viā): abl. of manner; **quā** is an indef. pron. **fāta**: the power of the fates was greater even than that of the gods.

19. Prōgeniem: the Romans. **dūcī**: *was being derived*, indir. disc.; App. 390; depends on **audi(v)erat** (l. 20), of which Juno is the subject understood.

20. Tyriās arcēs = **Karthāginem. verteret**: subj. of characteristic; App. 389, or rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

hinc populum lātē *rēgem bellōque* superbum
ventūrum excidiō Libyae: *sīc volvere* Parcās.
Id metuēns veteris*que* memor Sāturnia *bellī*,
prīma quod ad Trojam prō cārīs gesserat Argīs
(necdum etiam causae *irārum* saevī*que* dolōrēs
exciderant *animō; manet altā mente* repostum
jūdicium Paridis sprētae*que* injūria formae
et genus invīsum *et* raptī Ganymēdis *honōrēs*) —

Argī, ōrum *m.* Argos, a city in Greece, center of the worship of Juno; Greece†
cārus, a, um dear, fond, beloved†*
causa, ae *f.* reason, cause*
dolor, ōris *m.* pain, grief, anger, passion†*
etiam besides, also, even†*
excidium, (i)ī *n.* destruction, overthrow†
excidō, ere, ī fall from, perish†
fōrma, ae *f.* beauty, shape, form†*
Ganymēdēs, is *m.* son of Laŏmedon, king of Troy; carried off by Jupiter's eagle and made cupbearer to the gods†
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on), wage†*
injūria, ae *f.* wrong, insult, injustice†
invīsus, a, um hated, hateful, odious†
jūdicium, (i)ī *n.* decision, judgment†
lātē widely, far and wide†
Libya, ae *f.* region of North Africa†*
memor, oris remembering, mindful, unforgetting (*gen.*)*
metuō, ere, uī fear, dread†
necdum not yet, nor yet†
Parcae, ārum *f.* the Fates†
Paris, idis *m.* Trojan prince, son of Priam, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan War†
populus, ī *m.* people, nation†*
prō before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)†*
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), plunder†*
repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus put (back, away), store up†*
saevus, a, um cruel, stern, fierce*
Sāturnia, ae *f.* Juno, daughter of Saturn, father of the gods†
spernō, ere, sprēvī, sprētus despise, reject†
superbus, a, um proud, haughty†*
vetus, eris old, former, ancient†*

21. hinc: ā Trojānō sanguine, or **ab hāc prōgeniē. populum:** subj. of **ventūrum (esse)** (l. 22), an inf. in indir. disc., depending on **audierat**; App. 390. **rēgem:** used like a participle (**rēgnantem**) here, and modified by **lātē. bellō:** abl. of respect, depending on **superbum**; App. 325.

22. excidiō: dat. of purpose; App. 303; *for the destruction.* **Libyae:** for **Āfricae,** meaning especially **Karthāginī. Parcās = fāta:** subject of **volvere.** The Parcae were represented as three sisters, Clotho (*Spinner*), who spun the thread of life for each mortal; Lachesis (*Measurer*), who measured the thread; and Atropos (*Inevitable*), who cut the thread when any one had reached his allotted days.

"Somewhere on an unknown shore,
Where the rivers of life their waters pour,
Sit three sisters forevermore,
Spinning a silver thread."

sīc (Jūnō audīverat) Parcās volvere.

23. Id: the destined supremacy of Rome and overthrow of Carthage (ll. 19–22). **metuēns:** modifies **Sāturnia (Jūnō)** and has **Id** as object. **Sāturnia:** *Saturn's daughter*, subject of **arcēbat.** **veteris bellī:** the Trojan War.

24. prīma: (*as*) *chief, leader, foremost,* modifies **ea** (understood), which refers to Juno. The goddess had taken a leading part in assisting the Greeks against the Trojans. The reasons for her hatred of the Trojans are given in ll. 27–28. See also Introd. 10. **cārīs Argīs:** Argos, a noted center of the worship of Juno, stands here for all Greece and the Greeks.

25. īrārum: poetic plural; see note on **īrae** (l. 11), and *cf.* App. 243.

26. (ex) animō: abl. of separation; App. 340. **(in) altā mente:** abl. of place where, *in her deep mind*, i.e., *deep in her mind;* App. 319. **repos(i)tum:** the longer form, with its three successive short syllables (˘˘˘), could not be used in hexameter verse.

27. jūdicium Paridis: refers to the famous Judgment of Paris. Read Tennyson's *Oenone* and see Introd. 10 for the story. **sprētae formae:** appositional gen. with **injūria**; App. 281; *the insult to her slighted beauty,* shown by the adverse decision of Paris.

28. genus invīsum: Juno hated the

Alinari, Rome *Michelangelo*

THE PARCAE

Alinari, Rome *Vatican Museum*

JUNO

hīs accēnsa *super* jactātōs *aequore tōtō*
Trōas, relliquiās *Danaum atque* immītis Achillī, 30
arcēbat longē Latiō, *multōsque per* annōs
errābant āctī *fātīs maria omnia circum.*
Tantae mōlis *erat* Rōmānam condere *gentem.*
Vix ē cōnspectū Siculae *tellūris in* altum
vēla dabant laetī et spūmās salis aere *ruēbant,* 35

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, enrage†
Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek leader before Troy†*
aes, aeris *n.* bronze†*
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea)
annus, ī *m.* year†*
arceō, ēre, uī keep off, defend, restrain†
condō, ere, dīdī, ditus found, establish*
cōnspectus, ūs *m.* sight, view†
immītis, e fierce, cruel†
jactō (1) toss, buffet*
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy around Rome*
longē far (off), afar*
mōlēs, is *f.* mass, burden, difficulty†*
re(l)liquiae, ārum *f.* rest, remnant(s), leaving(s)†
Rōmānus, a, um of Rome, Roman†*
sal, salis *n.* (*m.*) salt (water), sea†
Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily, a large island south of Italy†
spūma, ae *f.* foam, froth, spray†
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan†*

whole Trojan race, partly because of Paris, but also because Dardanus, the founder of the Trojans, was the son of Electra, her hated rival. **Ganymēdis:** a royal Trojan youth, brother of Priam, snatched up (**raptī**) by an eagle into heaven, where he was beloved by Jupiter, who made him his cupbearer, instead of Juno's own daughter, Hebe.

29. hīs: abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332; dependent on **accēnsa**, and referring to the three chief causes of Juno's hatred which have just been mentioned in ll. 26–28. **accēnsa (Jūnō). super:** adverb, *too, also*, i.e., in addition to her fears for Carthage. **(in) aequore tōtō:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

30. Trōās: a Greek form; acc. pl. of **Trōs. re(l)liquiās:** sometimes spelled with ll, as here, making the first syllable long so that the word may be used in hexameter verse. **Dana(ōr)um, Achillī:** subjective genitives, *the leavings (remnants) of the Greeks and of Achilles*, i.e., those Trojans whom the Greeks and Achilles had allowed to escape.

31. arcēbat: the imperfect of continued action; App. 351, 2. **(ā) Latiō:** separation; App. 340. **longē Latiō:** note the repetition of the letter l; such a repetition is called *alliteration;* App. 411. Alliteration, or the recurrence of the same sounds in successive syllables or words, is found in all languages, especially in early verse. It is a special characteristic of early Germanic poetry, nearly all Old English verse being alliterative.

32. (Trōes) errābant. fātīs: abl. of means. **āctī:** participle of **agō**, modifies **Trōes** understood. **maria omnia circum:** in poetry the preposition is often placed after its noun, as here. This is called *anastrophe;* App. 414.

33. Tantae mōlis: gen. of quality in the predicate; App. 285, *a.*; *of so great effort was it.* This line, summarizing the preceding lines, forms a powerful and effective close to this first section of the *Aeneid* and serves as a general introduction to the whole poem.

34–49. Aeneas and the Trojans set sail from Sicily for Italy, as they hope, happy at the prospect of the end of their wanderings. Bitter soliloquy of Juno, who chafes at the apparent failure of her plans to keep Aeneas and the Trojans from reaching Italy.

34. The reader is now plunged in **mediās rēs:** "into the midst of the action," and we are abruptly introduced to Aeneas and his followers sailing away from the coast of Sicily. They have now been wandering for seven years since the destruction of Troy, their native city. These earlier events (the fall of Troy and their seven years of wandering) are later on narrated by Aeneas to Dido (Books II and III).

35. laetī (Trōes): subject of **dabant. spūmās salis aere ruēbant:** note the alliteration; App. 411. **aere:** the prows of the ships were sheathed with bronze.

cum Jūnō aeternum *servāns sub pectore* vulnus
haec sēcum: "Mēne inceptō dēsistere *victam*
nec posse Ītaliā Teucrōrum āvertere *rēgem?*
Quippe vetor *fātīs*. Pallas*ne* exūrere *classem*
Argīvum *atque ipsōs potuit* summergere pontō
ūnius ob noxam *et* furiās Ajācis Oīleī?
Ipsa Jovis rapidum jaculāta *ē* nūbibus *ignem*
disjēcit*que* ratēs ēvertit*que aequora ventīs,*
illum exspīrantem trānsfīxō *pectore flammās*

---

aeternus, a, um eternal, everlasting†*
Ajāx, ācis *m.* Greek leader, who in the sack of Troy had torn Priam's daughter, Cassandra, from the sanctuary of Minerva†*
Argīvus, a, um Argive, Greek†
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus keep off, turn aside†*
dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitus cease (from), desist†
disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus scatter, disperse†
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn†
exspīrō (1) breathe out, exhale†
exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn (up)†
furiae, ārum *f.* madness, rage†
inceptum, ī *n.* beginning, undertaking, purpose†
jaculor, ārī, ātus hurl, throw†
noxa, ae *f.* crime, fault, hurt, harm†
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog†*
ob on account of (*acc.*)
Oīleus, eī *m.* Greek king, father of Ajax†
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts†
pontus, ī *m.* sea†*
quippe truly, indeed, surely, forsooth†
rapidus, a, um swift, whirling, consuming†*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship†*
summergō (subm–), **ere, rsī, rsus** sink, drown†
trānsfīgō, ere, xī, xus pierce, transfix†
vetō, āre, uī, itus forbid, prevent†
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, blow†*

36–37. Jūnō . . . haec(dīxit).

36. aeternum vulnus: the causes of this anger have been given above: her fear for Carthage, the Judgment of Paris, etc. **sub pectore:** *deep in her heart.*

37. sēcum = cum sē; App. 321, *a.* **mē:** subj. of **dēsistere. Mēne:** *-ne* is the interrogative particle appended to the pronoun, **mē.**

37–38: dēsistere . . . nec posse: infinitives, in an exclamatory question; *I beaten desist from my undertaking and not be able,* etc.; App. 262. **(ab) inceptō:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **victam:** from **vincō;** it modifies **mē.**

38. (ab) Ītaliā: abl. of separation; App. 340. **Teucrōrum:** the Trojans are often referred to as **Teucrī,** a name derived from Teucer, one of the founders of the Trojan race.

39. Quippe vetor: ironical. **fātīs:** abl. of means; App. 331. **-ne = nōnne. Pallas (Athēna):** Minerva.

40. Argīvum: Argīvōrum; App. 37, *d.* **ipsōs:** (*the masters*) *themselves,* i.e., the Argives, as contrasted with **classem.** **Ipse** often means *the master,* the one of most importance in a situation, as contrasted with persons or things of less importance. **pontō:** abl. of place where; App. 319, or means; App. 331.

41. ūnius Ajācis Oīleī: a whole fleet was destroyed on account of one man. For the short **i** in **ūnius** see the note on **illius** (l. 16). **ob noxam et furiās:** Ajax, son of Oïleus, had desecrated the temple of Minerva during the sack of Troy, when before the very altar of the sanctuary he had seized Cassandra, daughter of Priam and priestess of Minerva. Enraged at such rash irreverence, Minerva later sank the ship of Ajax and destroyed him with lightning. **Ajācis Oīleī:** *of Ajax (son) of Oïleus.* Observe that the **A** forms a long syllable by position; App. 6, *b.*, and that **-eī** of **Oīleī** is here read as one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. This Ajax was less renowned than the other Ajax, son of Telamon.

42. Ipsa: (*the goddess, Minerva*) *in person.* She was the only divinity, except Jupiter, who might hurl the lightning. **Jovis ignem:** *lightning.*

43. -que . . . -que: *both . . . and;* polysyndeton; App. 439.

44. illum (Ajācem): with emphatic first position, which contrasts it with the ships and the sea previously mentioned.

turbine corripuit scopulōque īnfīxit acūtō;
ast ego, quae dīvum incēdō *rēgīna Jovisque*
et soror *et conjūnx, ūnā cum gente* tot annōs
bella gerō. *Et* quisquam *nūmen Jūnōnis* adōrat
praetereā *aut* supplex *ārīs* impōnet *honōrem?*"
Tālia flammātō *sēcum dea* corde volūtāns
nimbōrum *in* patriam, *loca* fēta *furentibus* Austrīs,
Aeoliam *venit. Hīc vastō rēge* Aeolus antrō
luctantīs *ventōs* tempestātēsque sonōrās
imperiō premit *ac* vinclīs *et* carcere frēnat.

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed†
adōrō (1) worship, adore, honor†
Aeolia, ae *f.* one of the Liparian Islands near Sicily†
Aeolus, ī *m.* god of the winds†
annus, ī *m.* year*
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern†*
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind†*
carcer, eris *m.* prison, inclosure†
cor, cordis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings†*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)†*
fētus, a, um teeming, pregnant†
flammō (1) inflame, kindle†
frēnō (1) curb, check, restrain†
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on), wage*
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on (*dat.*)†*
incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus walk (proudly), stride†
īnfīgō, ere, xī, xus fasten on, impale†
luctor, ārī, ātus wrestle, struggle†
nimbus, ī *m.* storm-cloud, rainstorm†*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country†*
praetereā besides, hereafter
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, control†*
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam any(one), any(thing)†
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag†*
sonōrus, a, um roaring, howling†
soror, ōris *f.* sister†*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble†*
tempestās, ātis *f.* tempest, storm†*
tot so many*
turbō, inis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm†
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, chain†*
volūtō (1) roll, revolve, ponder†

(ex) pectore: abl. of separation; App. 340.

45. turbine: abl. of means; App. 331. **(Pallas) corripuit. scopulō**: dat. with compound **īnfīxit**; or abl. of place where, as īnfīgō may take either construction; App. 298, 319.

46. ego: with proud self-consciousness and in contrast with Minerva; ego is never expressed unless emphatic. **dīv(ōr)um**: App. 37, *d*.

47. tot annōs: acc. of extent (duration) of time; App. 314; ten years around Troy, and now seven more years while the Trojans wander. **ūnā cum gente = cum Teucrīs.**

48. gerō: of past action continued into the present; App. 351, 1, *b*. **Et quisquam**: "can any one longer respect me, if I show myself such a weakling?" This figure is called a *rhetorical question*. **Jūnōnis = meum**: Juno is speaking, but the use of her own name is more picturesque and effective than the use of the possessive adjective.

49. supplex: *(as a) suppliant*. **ārīs**: dat. with compound; App. 298. **honōrem**: *honor*, i.e., an *offering* which would honor Juno.

50–80. Juno persuades Aeolus, god of the winds, to send forth a storm to prevent Aeneas and the Trojans from reaching Italy.

50. Tālia: used substantively, as object of **volūtāns**; *such things*, i.e., *such thoughts*. **(in) flammātō corde**: abl. of place where; App. 319. **sēcum = cum sē**, as in l. 37; App. 321, *a*.

51. patriam: with the first syllable short; App. 17. **Austrīs**: abl. with **fēta**, literally, *south winds*, but often meaning *winds* in general; App. 433. **fēta furentibus**: note the alliteration; App. 411.

51–52. loca . . . Aeoliam: apposition with **patriam**. **Hīc**: adverb, *here*. **(in) vastō antrō**: abl. of place where; App. 319.

53. luctantīs: acc. pl. of an *i*-stem.

54. vinclīs: the longer form **vinculīs** (—⏑—) could not be used in hexameter. **imperiō, vinc(u)līs, carcere**: ablatives of means; App. 331. **frēnat**: a picture

Illī indignantēs *magnō cum* murmure *montis*
circum claustra fremunt; celsā sedet Aeolus *arce*
scēptra *tenēns* mollitque *animōs et* temperat *īrās;*
nī *faciat, maria ac terrās caelumque* profundum
quippe *ferant* rapidī *sēcum* verrantque *per aurās.*
Sed pater omnipotēns spēluncīs abdidit *ātrīs*
hoc metuēns mōlemque *et montīs* īnsuper *altōs*
imposuit, *rēgemque dedit quī* foedere certō
et premere *et* laxās scīret *dare jussus* habēnās.
Ad quem tum Jūnō supplex *hīs vōcibus* ūsa *est:*
"Aeole, *namque tibī dīvum pater atque* hominum *rēx*
et mulcēre *dedit flūctūs et* tollere *ventō,*
gēns inimīca *mihī* Tyrrhēnum nāvigat *aequor*

---

abdō, ere, didī, ditus put away, hide†
Aeolus, ī *m.* god of the winds
celsus, a, um lofty, high, towering†*
certus, a, um fixed, sure†*
claustrum, ī *n.* bar(rier), bolt†
foedus, eris *n.* agreement, condition, treaty†
fremō, ere, uī, itus murmur, roar†*
habēna, ae *f.* rein†
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human†*
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place upon*
indignor, ārī, ātus be angry, chafe†
inimīcus, a, um hostile, unfriendly†
īnsuper above, besides†
laxus, a, um loose, free, lax†
metuō, ere, uī fear, dread
mōlēs, is *f.* mass, burden, structure*
molliō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus soothe, tame†
mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus calm, soothe†
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, roar, rumble†
nāvigō (1) sail, navigate†
nī, nisi if not, unless†*
omnipotēns, entis almighty, all-powerful†
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, control*
profundus, a, um deep, high, vast†
quippe indeed, surely, forsooth
rapidus, a, um swift, whirling, consuming*
sceptrum, ī *n.* staff, scepter, power†
sciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus know (how), understand†
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit†*
spēlunca, ae *f.* cave, cavern†
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
temperō (1) control, calm, refrain†
Tyrrhēnus, a, um Tyrrhenian, of Etruria, a district of northwestern Italy†
ūtor, ī, ūsus use, employ (*abl.*)†
verrō, ere, ī, versus sweep†

---

drawn from managing spirited horses, as in l. 63, **premere et dare laxās habēnās.**

55. magnō cum murmure montis: alliteration (**m**) and onomatopoeia; App. 411, 434; **murmure** is abl. of manner; App. 328.

56. (in) celsā arce: abl. of place, apparently a lofty seat within the cave or just outside on a mountain top.

57. scēptra: for the use of the poetic plural see the note on **īrae** (l. 11). **animōs (ventōrum) et īrās (ventōrum).**

58. nī (Aeolus id) faciat = nī molliat animōs (ventōrum) et temperet īrās (eōrum); faciat is subj. in a pres. condit. contrary to fact; App. 382.

59. (ventī) rapidī: *the winds in their madness.* **sēcum = cum sē**; App. 321, *a.* **ferant, verrant (maria ac terrās caelumque profundum).**

60. pater omnipotēns: Juppiter. (in) spēluncīs ātrīs = antrō (l. 52), abl. of place where; App. 319. **abdidit (illōs ventōs).**

61. hoc: obj. of **metuēns. mōlem et montīs:** alliteration; App. 411. **montīs:** acc. pl., an *i*-stem.

62. rēgem (Aeolum) dedit (ventīs). foedere certō: abl. of manner; App. 328.

63. premere: object of **scīret,** *would know (how) to grasp tightly,* so as to draw in the reins. For the figure of horsemanship see the note on **frēnat** (l. 54). **scīret:** rel. clause of purpose or characteristic; App. 388, 389. **dare:** also obj. of **scīret. jussus** (ā Jove): (*when*) *ordered* (*by Jupiter*).

64. hīs vōcibus: abl. with **ūtor**; App. 342.

65. Aeole: voc. **dīv(ōr)um pater atque hominum rēx: Juppiter. tibī:** for the length of the final **i**, see the note on **mihi** (l. 8).

66. mulcēre, tollere (flūctūs): objects of **dedit,** *has granted.* **ventō:** abl. of means; App. 331.

67. gēns inimīca mihī: Teucrī. Tyr-

Īlium *in Ītaliam* portāns *victōsque* penātīs:
incute *vim ventīs* summersāsque obrue *puppīs*,
aut age dīversōs *et* disjice *corpora* pontō.
Sunt mihi bis septem praestantī *corpore* nymphae,
quārum quae formā pulcherrima, Dēiopēa,
cōnūbiō jungam stabilī propriam*que* dicābō,
omnīs ut tēcum meritīs prō *tālibus* annōs
exigat *et* pulchrā *faciat tē* prōle *parentem*."

annus, ī *m.* year*
bis twice†*
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* marriage, wedlock†
Dēiopēa, ae *f.* a nymph†
dicō (1) consecrate, dedicate†
disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus scatter, disperse
dīversus, a, um scattered, diverse†*
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus complete, pass†
forma, ae *f.* beauty, shape, form*
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy, a city of Asia Minor†
incutiō, ere, cussī, cussus strike (into) (*dat.*)†
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke, unite†*
meritum, ī *n.* desert, merit†
nympha, ae *f.* nymph, one of the minor divinities of nature represented as beautiful maidens dwelling in the forests, streams, meadows, mountains, etc.†
obruō, ere, uī, utus overwhelm, crush†
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods †*
pontus, ī *m.* sea*
portō (1) carry, bear, bring†*
praestāns, antis surpassing, excellent
prō before, for (*abl.*)*
prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny†*
proprius, a, um one's own, permanent†
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, illustrious†*
septem seven†
stabilis, e firm, lasting, stable†
summergō (**subm–**), **ere, rsī, rsus** sink

rhēnum aequor: that part of the Mediterranean west of Italy, east of Corsica and Sardinia, and north of Sicily.

68. Īlium . . . portāns victōsque penātīs: see note on īnferret deōs (l. 6.). They were *bearing Ilium* in their plan to found a new city which should continue the race and the customs of the **Īlium** (Troy) which had been destroyed. The origin of the worship of the penates, household gods at Rome, was lost in antiquity; and the Romans explained this and other old customs by referring their beginnings to Troy. **victōs:** *defeated* by the Greeks in the Trojan War.

69. incute: imp. **vim ventīs:** alliteration; App. 411.; **ventīs:** dat. with a compound; App. 298. **summersās obrue puppīs:** *overwhelm the sunken ships*, i.e., *sink and overwhelm the ships*, a good example of the figure known as *prolepsis*, or *anticipation;* App. 440.

70. age: imp **dīversōs (Teucrōs):** i.e., drive the Trojans in different directions and scatter their corpses over the sea; another example of prolepsis; App. 440. **pontō:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

71. mihi: dat. of possession; App. 299. **bis septem:** *twice seven;* more poetic than to say simply *fourteen.* **praestantī corpore:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

72. formā: abl. of respect; App. 325; dependent on **pulcherrima. Dēiopēa:** nom. by attraction into the case of the relative pronoun, **quae;** the accusative would be expected, as object of **jungam;** App. 242, *a.* **quārum:** use the English demonstrative in translation, and read as though you had: **Dēiopēam, quae (est) eārum (nymphārum) pulcherrima formā, jungam (tibi) stabilī cōnūbiō et (eam) dicābō (tuam) propriam.**

73. cōnūbiō: *in wedlock*, abl. of place where or means; App. 319, 331. **cōnūbiō** is trisyllabic by synizesis, and pronounced as though written **cŏnūbjō;** App. 401. **jungam (tibi). dicābō (eam) propriam:** *I shall dedicate her* (**Deiopea**) *to you* (**as**) *your very own.* Juno was goddess of marriage. **propriam:** with the first syllable short; App. 17.

74. tēcum = cum tē; App. 321, *a.*

7.. prōle: abl. of quality; App. 330, or means; App. 331. **pulchrā prōle parentem:** alliteration; App. 411. **exigat, faciat:** result or purpose; App. 364, 388. **parentem = patrem**

Aeolus *haec* contrā: "*Tuus, Ō rēgīna, quid* optēs
explōrāre *labor; mihi* jussa capessere fās *est.*
Tū mihi quodcumque *hoc rēgnī, tū* scēptra *Jovemque*
conciliās, *tū* dās epulīs accumbere *dīvum*
nimbōrumque *facis* tempestātumque potentem."
Haec ubi dicta, cavum conversā cuspide *montem*
impulit *in* latus: *ac ventī* velut *agmine factō,*
quā *data* porta, *ruunt et terrās* turbine perflant.
Incubuēre *marī tōtumque ā sēdibus īmīs*
ūnā Eurus*que* Notus*que ruunt* crēber*que* procellīs

accumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus recline (at) (*dat.*)†
Aeolus, ī *m.* god of the winds
capessō, ere, īvī, ītus (under)take, perform†
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted†*
conciliō (1) win over, unite†
contrā opposite, against, in reply (*acc.*)*
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn (around), reverse†
crēber, bra, brum frequent, crowded†*
cuspis, idis *f.* point, spear†
epulae, ārum *f.* banquet, feast†
Eurus, ī *m.* (east) wind†
explōrō (1) examine, search out†
fās *n. indecl.* right, divine law, duty†*
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive, strike (against)
incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lie upon, brood over (*dat.*)†
jussum, ī *n.* command, order
latus, eris *n.* side, flank†*
nimbus, ī *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
Notus, ī *m.* (south) wind†
optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for)†*
perflō (1) blow (over, through)†
porta, ae *f.* gate, door, opening†*
potēns, entis powerful, ruling (*gen.*)†*
procella, ae *f.* blast, gust†
quā where, in any way
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whatever†*
scēptrum, ī *n.* staff, scepter, power
tempestās, ātis *f.* tempest, storm; time*
turbō, inis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm
ūnā together, at the same time†
velut(ī) (even) as, just as†*

76. haec (dīxit). optēs: indir. quest.; App. 349. **Tuus (est) labor:** *thine (is) the task.* Aeolus thus absolves himself from responsibility, if his obedience to Juno gets him into trouble.

77. mihi: dat. of reference; App. 301. **jussa (tua).**

78. quodcumque hoc (est) rēgnī: *whatever this is (in the way) of a kingdom,* an expression of modesty. **rēgnī:** part. gen. with **quodcumque;** App. 286. **scēptra:** for the plural see the note on **īrae** (l. 11). **Tū:** always emphatic, and here strengthened by repetition (anaphora); App. 413.

79. epulīs: dat. with compound; App. 298. The ancient Romans regularly reclined at meals. **dīv(ōr)um:** App. 37, *d.* **accumbere:** object of **dās,** *you grant (me) the privilege of reclining.* As one of the lesser gods, Aeolus was dependent upon the favor of the more powerful divinities.

80. facis (mē) potentem nimbōrum tempestātumque.

81–123. Description of the storm which wrecks part of the Trojan ships and scatters the rest.

81. ubi haec dicta (sunt ab Aeolō). Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

82. impulit: Aeolus thus opens the barriers and lets out the winds. **agmine factō:** abl. abs.; App. 343; a figure of speech drawn from military life.

83. Observe the alliteration, every word but one in this line containing a t; App. 411. **data (est). turbine:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

84. Incubuēre = incubuērunt, from **incumbō.** The perfect, after a series of presents, denotes rapid or instantaneous action; *they have fallen upon the sea.* **marī:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **tōtum (mare):** obj. of ruunt, l. 85.

85. ruunt: *overturn.* **Eurus,** Notus, Africus: all the winds blow at once, and in their struggles produce a mighty storm. **procellīs:** abl. of respect or means with

Āfricus *et vastōs volvunt ad lītora flūctūs:*
īnsequitur *clāmorque virum* strīdorque rudentum.
Ēripiunt subitō nūbēs *caelumque diemque*
Teucrōrum ex oculīs; pontō *nox* incubat *ātra:*
Intonuēre poli *et* crēbrīs micat *ignibus* aethēr
praesentemque *virīs* intentant *omnia mortem.*
Extemplō *Aenēae* solvuntur frīgore membra;
ingemit *et* duplicīs *tendēns ad sīdera* palmās
tālia vōce refert: "*Ō* terque quaterque beātī,
quibus ante ōra patrum Trojae sub moenibus altīs
contigit oppetere! *Ō Danaum* fortissime *gentis*
Tȳdīdē! *mēne* Īliacīs occumbere *campīs*

---

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether†*
Āfricus, ī *m.* (southwest) wind†
beātus, a, um happy, blessed†
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, befall†*
crēber, bra, brum frequent, crowded*
duplex, icis double, both†
extemplō immediately, forthwith†
fortis, e strong, brave, valiant†*
frīgus, oris *n.* cold, chill†
Īliacus, a, um of Ilium, Trojan†*
incubō, āre, uī (āvī), itus (ātus) lie upon, brood over (*dat.*)†
ingemō, ere, uī groan†
īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue†*
intentō (1) threaten, aim†
intonō, āre, uī thunder, roar†
membrum, ī *n.* limb, member, part†*
micō, āre, uī quiver, flash†
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
occumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall (in death)†
oppetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus encounter, meet (death)†
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand†*
polus, ī *m.* pole, sky, heaven†
pontus, ī *m.* sea*
praesēns, entis present, instant†
quater four times†
rudēns, entis *m.* rope, cable†
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus relax, loose(n)†*
strīdor, ōris *m.* creaking, grating, whirring†
subitō suddenly†*
ter thrice, three times†*
Tȳdīdēs, ae *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes, who fought against Aeneas in single combat before Troy and would have killed him had not Venus spirited her son away†

---

crēber; App. 325, 331. **-que, -que, -que**: polysyndeton; App. 439.

86. vastōs volvunt: alliteration, employed very effectively here, as often in the *Aeneid*.

87. vir(ōr)um: Aeneas and the other Trojans. **-que, -que**: polysyndeton; App. 439.

88. diem = lūcem diēī. -que, -que: polysyndeton; App. 439.

89. pontō: dat. with compound; App. 298.

90. Intonuēre = intonuērunt; App. 204, 4. **ignibus (Jovis)**: *lightning*, abl. of means or manner; App. 328, 331.

91. virīs = Teucrīs; dat. of reference; App. 301. **omnia**: used substantively, *all things*, as subj. of **intentant**.

92. frīgore: *chilly fear*—the ancient heroes were not ashamed to display their emotions, and often gave way to terror or grief. They weep copiously on occasion, and are no more dainty about the shedding of tears than the shedding of blood.

93. duplicīs: acc. pl. of an *i*-stem; the first syllable is short; App. 17. In prayer the ancient Greeks and Romans extended their hands with the palms upward, ready to accept the blessing.

94. tālia (dicta). beātī (vōs): vocative.

95. quīs ante ōra patrum (vestrum) sub moenia Trojae contigit oppetere (mortem). quīs = quibus; App. 109, *c*; observe the quantity of the **i**; dat. with **contigit**; App. 298. **ante ōra**: where their kinsmen and friends might witness their glorious deeds and death and might bury their bodies, thus giving rest to their souls; for the souls of the unburied must wander restlessly after death.

96. oppetere (mortem): subject of **contigit**. **Dana(ōr)um**: App. 37, *d*.

97. mē: subj. of **potuisse**. **mēne**

nōn potuisse tuāque animam hanc effundere *dextrā*,
saevus *ubi* Aeacidae *tēlō* jacet Hector, *ubi ingēns*
Sarpēdōn, *ubi* tot Simoīs correpta *sub undīs*
scūta *virum* galeāsque *et* fortia *corpora volvit!*"
Tālia jactantī strīdēns Aquilōne procella
vēlum adversa ferit, *flūctūsque ad sīdera tollit.*
Franguntur *rēmī*, *tum* prōra āvertit *et undīs*
dat latus, īnsequitur cumulō praeruptus aquae *mōns.*
Hī summō in flūctū pendent; *hīs unda* dehīscēns
terram inter flūctūs aperit, *furit* aestus harēnīs.
Trīs Notus abreptās *in saxa* latentia torquet

---

abripiō, ere, uī, reptus carry off, snatch away†
adversus, a, um opposite, in front†*
Aeacidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Aeacus, Achilles, Greek chieftain†
aestus, ūs *m.* boiling (surge), tide†
aperiō, īre, uī, ertus open, disclose†*
aqua, ae *f.* water†*
Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind†
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
cumulus, ī *m.* heap, mass†
dehīscō, ere, hīvī gape, split, open†
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out†*
ferīō, īre strike, beat†
fortis, e strong, brave, valiant*
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter†*
galea, ae *f.* helmet†
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach†*
Hector, oris *m.* leader of the Trojans†*
īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue*
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)†*
jactō (1) toss, buffet, utter*
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk†*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
Notus, ī *m.* (south) wind
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang†*
praeruptus, a, um steep, towering†
procella, ae *f.* blast, gale
prōra, ae *f.* prow†*
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
Sarpēdōn, onis *m.* king of Lycia, ally of the Trojans†
scūtum, ī *n.* shield†
Simoīs, entis *m.* river near Troy†
strīd(e)ō, ēre, dī creak, rustle, roar†
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus turn, twist, whirl†*
tot so many
trēs, tria three†*

---

potuisse: *could I not*, etc., inf. in an exclamatory question; App. 262. **Tȳdīdē:** vocative. Aeneas engaged in a disastrous duel at Troy with Diomedes and barely escaped with his life, being rescued by his mother, the goddess Venus. **(in) campīs:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **occumbere (mortī):** complementary infin. with **potuisse**, as is also **effundere** in l. 98.

98. hanc = meam. (tuā) dextrā (manū): abl. of means; App. 331.

99. tēlō (ictus): (*slain*) *by the spear.* Observe the emphasis obtained by anaphora of **ubi**; App. 413.

100. Sarpēdōn (jacet): an ally of the Trojans. **Simoīs . . . volvit.**

101. vir(ōr)um. correpta sub undīs: goes with **scūta** and **galeās** as well as with **corpora** and refers to the corpses and armor of slain warriors swept along by (under) the water.

102. (Aenēae) jactantī: dat. of reference; App. 301. **Tālia (dicta):** obj. of **jactantī. Aquilōne:** abl. of means; App. 331.

103. ferit: from **ferīō**; not to be confused with the verb **ferō. adversa (procella). ad sīdera:** such exaggerated language is called *hyperbole;* App. 428.

104. rēmī: the ancient ship used both oars and sails. **prōra (sē) āvertit et undīs dat latus (nāvis).**

105. cumulō: abl. of manner; App. 328. **mōns:** more hyperbole; App. 428; note the smashing effect of the monosyllable at the end of the line.

106. Hī (virī). hīs (virīs): dative of reference; App. 301. **hī . . . hīs:** *these . . . for those; some . . . for others*, referring to the crews of different ships; anaphora; App. 413.

107. terram: *the bottom* (of the sea): the hyperbole is continued; App. 428. **harēnīs:** *with the sands*, abl. of means; App. 331.

108–109. Trīs (nāvīs): acc. pl. of an i-

(*saxa vocant* Italī *mediīs quae in flūctibus* Ārās,
dorsum *immāne marī summō*), trīs Eurus *ab* altō,
in brevia *et* syrtīs urget, miserābile *vīsū*,
inlīditque vadīs *atque* aggere cingit harēnae.
Ūnam, quae Lyciōs fīdumque vehēbat Orontēn,
ipsius ante oculōs ingēns ā vertice pontus
in puppim ferit: excutitur prōnusque magister
volvitur in caput; ast illam ter flūctus ibīdem
torquet *agēns circum et* rapidus vorat *aequore* vertex.
Appārent rārī nantēs *in* gurgite *vastō*,
arma virum tabulaeque *et* Trōia gaza *per undās*.

agger, eris *m.* mound, wall, bank†
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea)
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear†
Ārae, ārum *f.* the Altars, a ledge of rocks between Sicily and Africa†
brevis, e short, shallow†
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird(le), encircle†*
dorsum, ī *n.* back, ridge, reef†
Eurus, ī *m.* (east) wind
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus cast out, shake off†*
ferō, īre strike, beat
fīdus, a, um faithful, trustworthy†*
gaza, ae *f.* treasure, wealth†
gurges, itis *m.* abyss, gulf, whirlpool†*
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
ibīdem in the same place†
inlīdō, ere, sī, sus dash against (into) (*dat.*)†
Italus, a, um Italian†
Lycius, a, um Lycian, of Lycia, a country of Asia Minor†
magister, trī *m.* master, pilot†
miserābilis, e pitiable, wretched†
nō (1) swim, float†
Orontēs, is (ī) *m.* comrade of Aeneas†
pontus, ī *m.* sea*
prōnus, a, um leaning forward, headlong†
rapidus, a, um swift, whirling, consuming*
rārus, a, um scattered, far apart†
syrtis, is *f.* sand bar, reef†
tabula, ae *f.* plank, board†
ter three times, thrice*
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus turn, twist, whirl*
trēs, tria three*
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy†*
urgeō, ēre, ursī drive, force, press†
vadum, ī *n.* shallow, shoal, depth(s)†
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey†*
vertex, icis *m.* top, summit; whirlpool†*
vorō (1) swallow (up)†

stem, object of **torquet**. **saxa . . . saxa**: anaphora; App. 413. **mediīs in flūctibus**: *in the middle (of the) waves;* App. 246. **quae saxa Italī vocant Ārās**: **quae** is a relative adjective agreeing with **saxa**; **saxa** is object of **vocant**, and **Ārās** is predicate accusative. **Ārās**: *the Altars*, the Roman name for a ledge of rocks off the African coast, just outside the harbor of ancient Carthage.

110. (in) **marī summō**: *at the surface of the sea;* abl. of place where; App. 319, 246. **dorsum**: apposition with **saxa**. **trīs (nāvīs)**: object of **urget**.

111. miserābile vīsū: *piteous to behold;* **miserābile** is a neuter adjective modifying the idea expressed in the preceding sentence, while **vīsū** is the supine of **videō** and an abl. of respect; App. 325.

112. vadīs = **in vada**, dat. of direction, sometimes used instead of the acc. of place to which; App. 306.

113. Ūnam (nāvem). Orontēn: acc., a Greek form.

114. ipsius (Aenēae): *of the master*, a common use of **ipse**. Compare **ipsa** (l. 42) and **ipsōs** (l. 40). For the length of the second vowel, see the note on **illius** (l. 16). **ā vertice**: *from high above.* **ferit**: from **ferō**.

115. in: *upon.* **excutitur (ē nāvī).**

116. in caput: *headlong.* **illam (nāvem)**: contrasted with the helmsman (**magister**).

117. (in) **aequore**: abl. of place where; App. 319.

118. nantēs: pres. part. of **nō**, modifying **rārī (virī)**, **arma, tabulae,** and **gaza,** but agreeing with the nearest word, **rārī (virī)**, *men here and there*; App. 238.

119. vir(ōr)um. arma: such as wooden shields and leather helmets made of light and buoyant material. **gaza**: the first syllable is long by position; App. 15.

Jam validam Īlionеī *nāvem*, *jam* fortis Achātae,
et quā vectus Ābās, *et quā* grandaevus Alētēs,
vīcit hiems; laxīs laterum compāgibus *omnēs*
accipiunt inimīcum imbrem rīmīs*que* fatīscunt.
Interea *magnō* miscērī murmure pontum
ēmissam*que* hiemem sēnsit Neptūnus *et īmīs*
stāgna refūsa vadīs, graviter commōtus; *et* altō
prōspiciēns *summā* placidum *caput* extulit *undā*.
Disjectam *Aenēae tōtō videt aequore classem*,
flūctibus oppressōs Trōas *caelīque* ruīnā.
Nec latuēre dolī frātrem *Jūnōnis et īrae*.

Ābās, antis *m.* Trojan leader†
Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas†*
Alētēs, ae *m.* Trojan leader†
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea)
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, disturb†
compāgēs, is *f.* joint, seam, fastening†
disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus scatter, disperse
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud†*
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus raise, lift (up)†*
ēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send forth†
fatīscō, ere split, open, gape†
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant*
frāter, tris *m.* brother†*
grandaevus, a, um aged, old†
graviter heavily, violently, greatly†
hiems, ēmis *f.* winter, storm†*
Īlioneus, eī *m.* Trojan leader†
imber, bris *m.* rain, flood, water†
inimīcus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
intereā meanwhile, meantime†*
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, escape the notice (of)*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
laxus, a, um loose, open, lax
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, confuse, stir†*
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea†*
opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus overwhelm, crush†
placidus, a, um calm, quiet, peaceful†*
pontus, ī *m.* sea*
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look out (on), see†
refundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour back†
rīma, ae *f.* crack, fissure†
ruīna, ae *f.* downfall, ruin†
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive†
stāgnum, ī *n.* still waters, depth†
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
vadum, ī *n.* shallow, shoal, depth(s)
validus, a, um strong, stout, mighty†
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey*

---

120. Īlionеī: gen., with the final eī pronounced as one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. **(nāvem) fortis Achātae. Jam . . . jam**: anaphora adds to the vividness; App. 413.

121. et (nāvem) quā vectus (est) Ābās, et (nāvem) quā (vectus est) Alētēs. et quā . . . et quā: anaphora; App. 413.

122. laxīs compāgibus: abl. of means or instrument, or abl. abs. **omnēs (nāvēs)**.

123. rīmīs: abl. of means or manner; App. 328, 331. Cf. ll. 83, 105. **imbrem = aquam maris.**

124–156. Neptune, god of the sea, intervenes; he rebukes the winds and calms the sea.

124. magnō miscērī murmure: alliteration (m) and onomatopœia; App. 411, 434. **murmure**: abl. of attendant circumstance or manner; App. 329, 328.

125. ēmissam (esse).

126. refūsa (esse). (ex) vadīs: abl. of separation; App. 340. **(in) altō**: *over the sea;* abl. of place where; App. 319. **commōtus (animō)**: although disturbed in spirit, as a god he maintains an outward calm (**placidum caput** of l. 127).

127. (ex) undā: abl. of separation: App. 340; *from the crest of the wave:* App. 246.

128. (in) tōtō aequore: abl. of place where; App. 319.

129. Trōās: acc. pl., a Greek form. **(et vidēt) Trōas oppressōs (esse). caelī ruīnā**: hyperbole; App. 428.

130. latuēre = latuērunt; App. 204, 4. **frātrem**: Neptune was Juno's brother, and he knew her tricky nature (**dolī**) and her ugly temper (**īrae**).

Alinari, Rome *Lucio Massani*

JUNO BEGS THE HELP OF AEOLUS AGAINST THE SHIP OF AENEAS

Alinari, Rome *Lateran Museum*

NEPTUNE

In his left hand the god holds a trident; in the right, a seashell. His right foot rests on the rostrum of a ship, and behind him is a dolphin, one of the creatures of his domain.

Eurum *ad sē* Zephyrumque *vocat*, dehinc *tālia fātur:*
— "*Tantane vōs generis tenuit* fīdūcia vestrī?
Jam caelum terramque meō sine *nūmine, ventī,*
miscēre *et tantās* audētis *tollere* mōlēs?
Quōs ego — ! sed mōtōs praestat compōnere *flūctūs.*
Post *mihi nōn* similī *poenā* commissa luētis.
Mātūrāte *fugam rēgīque haec dīcite* vestrō:
nōn illī imperium pelagī saevumque tridentem,
sed mihi sorte *datum. Tenet ille immānia saxa,*
vestrās, Eure, *domōs; illā sē* jactet *in* aulā
Aeolus *et* clausō *ventōrum* carcere rēgnet."
Sīc ait et dictō citius tumida *aequora* plācat

Aeolus, ī *m.* god of the winds
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture†*
aula, ae *f.* court, hall†
carcer, eris *m.* prison, inclosure
citō quickly, soon†
claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, hem in†*
commissum, ī *n.* fault, crime
compōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus compose, construct, calm, quiet†
dehinc then, thereupon†
Eurus, ī *m.* (east) wind
fīdūcia, ae *f.* confidence, trust†
jactō (1) toss, buffet, vaunt*
luō, ere, ī atone for†
mātūrō (1) hasten; speed; ripen†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, confuse, stir (up)*
mōlēs, is *f.* mass, burden, heap*
plācō (1) calm, quiet†
post after (*acc.*); afterwards†*
praestō, āre, stitī, stitus surpass, be better†
rēgnō (1) rule, reign†
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
similis, e like, similar†*
sine without (*abl.*)†*
sors, rtis *f.* lot, fate, destiny†*
tridēns, entis *m.* trident, symbol of Neptune as god of the sea†
tumidus, a, um swelling, swollen†
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own†*
Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind†

131. dehinc: one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. **tālia (dicta).**

132. generis fīdūcia vestrī: this verse is sarcastic; the winds were of divine origin, being descended from Aurora, goddess of the dawn, and from Astraeus, a Titan rival of the gods. **caelum terramque:** hyperbole; App. 428.

134. miscēre, tollere: depend on **audētis,** as complementary infinitives; App. 259.

135. Quōs = Vōs. Quōs ego —: a good example of *aposiopesis;* App. 416; i.e., instead of completing his sentence, the speaker breaks off abruptly and leaves to the imagination, as being beyond the power of adequate expression in words, just what sort of dire punishment he may inflict upon the guilty winds; **Quōs** is thus the object and **ego** the subject of the unexpressed verb.

136. nōn similī poenā: abl. of means; App. 331; *by no similar punishment,* i.e., by a much greater one; this figure of speech is called *litotes;* App. 431.

137. rēgī vestrō = Aeolō.

138. illī: dat. of indir. obj. in emphatic position contrasted with **mihi** in the same position in the following line. **tridentem:** the well-known symbol of Neptune as god of the sea. **imperium, tridentem:** subjects of **datum (esse),** an inf. in indir. disc., dependent on **dīcite,** in l. 137.

139. sorte: when Saturn was overthrown, the three gods, Jupiter, Neptune, and Pluto, divided his dominion among them by lot, Jupiter receiving the dominion of heaven, Neptune of the sea, and Pluto of the realm of the dead in the lower world.

140. vestrās: referring to all the winds, although Neptune is directly addressing Eurus only.

140–141. illā, clausō: emphatic by position. **jactet, rēgnet:** volitive subjunctives; App. 254. **(in) clausō carcere:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

142. ait: third sing. of **ajō. dictō:** abl. with compar.; App. 327.

collēctāsque fugat nūbēs sōlemque redūcit.
Cymothoē simul et Trītōn adnixus acūtō
dētrūdunt nāvīs scopulō; levat ipse tridentī
et vastās aperit syrtīs et temperat aequor
atque rotīs summās levibus perlābitur undās.
Ac velutī magnō in populō cum saepe coörta est
sēditiō saevitque animīs ignōbile vulgus;
jamque faces et saxa volant, furor arma ministrat;
tum, pietāte gravem ac meritīs sī forte virum quem
cōnspexēre, silent arrēctīsque auribus astant;
ille regit dictīs animōs et pectora mulcet:
sīc cūnctus pelagī cecidit fragor, aequora postquam
prōspiciēns genitor caelōque invectus apertō

---

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, keen
adnītor, ī, sus (nixus) strive, lean against†
aperiō, īre, uī, ertus open, disclose*
apertus, a, um open, clear†
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, prick up†
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (near, by)†*
auris, is *f.* ear†*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, subside†*
colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather†
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold†
coörior, īrī, ortus (a)rise†
Cymothoē, ēs *f.* a sea nymph†
dētrūdō, ere, sī, sus push off, dislodge†
fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch†*
fragor, ōris *m.* crash, uproar†
fugō (1) put to flight, rout†
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, rage†*
gravis, e heavy, weighty; venerable†*
ignōbilis, e inglorious, common†
invehō, ere, ēxī, ectus carry in, convey†
levis, e light, swift†
levō (1) lift, raise†
meritum, ī *n.* desert, service, merit
ministrō (1) tend, serve, supply†
mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus soothe, calm
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
perlābor, ī, lāpsus glide over†
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, devotion, duty*
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, crowd*
postquam after (that), when†*
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look out on
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead back, bring back†
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, control†*
rota, ae *f.* wheel; chariot†
saepe often†*
saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus rage, be fierce†
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sēditiō, ōnis *f.* riot, strife†
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still†
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun, day†*
syrtis, is *f.* sand bar, reef
temperō (1) calm, control
tridēns, entis *m.* trident, symbol of Neptune
Trītōn, onis *m.* a minor sea-god†
velut(ī) as, just as*
volō (1) fly, speed†*
vulgus, ī *n.* (*m.*) crowd, throng, herd†

---

144. Cymothoē: nom.; a Greek form.

145. ipse: *the master* (Neptune). See note on ipsōs (l. 40). **(dē) scopulō:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **levat:** with the trident as a lever. **tridentī:** abl. of an *i*-stem.

147. rotīs levibus: abl. of manner; App. 328.

148. velutī saepe cum: *just as often* (*happens*) *when;* this passage (ll. 148–156) is one of Vergil's most famous similes; App. 441.

149. animīs: abl. of place where or manner; App. 319, 328.

150. facēs: very dangerous in a city with so many wooden buildings as there were in ancient Rome. **furor arma ministrat:** *in their fury any object serves as a missile.*

151. quem: *some,* the indefinite pronoun. **pietāte, meritīs:** abl. of cause or respect with **gravem**; App. 325; 332.

152. arrēctīs auribus: abl. abs. of manner; App. 343, 328. **arrēctīs auribus astant:** alliteration; App. 411. **cōnspexēre = cōnspexērunt;** App. 204, 4. **silent, astant:** plurals, because of the collective idea in **vulgus** and **populō**; App. 236, *a*.

154–155. sic: correlative with **velutī** in l. 148. **postquam genitor . . . flectit et . . . dat. aequora:** obj. of **prōspiciēns.**

155. (in) caelō apertō: abl. of place

flectit equōs currūque volāns dat lōra secundō.
Dēfessī Aeneadae quae proxima lītora cursū
contendunt petere, et Libyae vertuntur ad ōrās.
Est in sēcessū longō locus: īnsula portum
efficit objectū laterum, quibus omnis ab altō
frangitur inque sinūs scindit sēsē unda reductōs.
Hinc atque hinc vastae rūpēs geminīque minantur
in caelum scopulī, quōrum sub vertice lātē
aequora tūta silent; tum silvīs scaena coruscīs
dēsuper, horrentīque ātrum nemus imminet umbrā;
fronte sub adversā scopulīs pendentibus antrum,

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
Aeneadae, (ār)um *m.* descendants (followers) of Aeneas†
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern*
contendō, ere, ī, ntus strive; hasten†
coruscus, a, um waving, quivering, flashing†
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
dēfessus, a, um weary, tired, worn†
dēsuper from above†
efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus make, form†
flectō, ere, exī, exus bend, turn, guide†
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter*
frōns, ontis *f.* front, face, brow†*
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, tremble†*
immineō, ēre overhang, threaten†
īnsula, ae *f.* island†
lātē widely, far and wide
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
Libya, ae *f.* region of North Africa*
lōrum, ī *n.* rein, thong†
minor, ārī, ātus threaten, tower†
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest†*
objectus, ūs *m.* projection, barrier†
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang*
proximus, a, um nearest†
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus bring back, lead back
rūpēs, is *f.* crag, cliff†*
scaena, ae *f.* background, stage†
scindō, ere, scidī, scissus split, divide†
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff*
sēcessus, ūs *m.* inlet, recess†
secundus, a, um following, favorable, obedient†*
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still
sinus, ūs *m.* fold, gulf, bay†*
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure†*
vertex, icis *m.* summit, top*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, (ex)change*
volō (1) fly, speed*

---

where; App. 319. **genitor**: Neptune. **invectus (currū)**: *riding in his car.*

156. flectit . . . dat: historical presents; App. 351, 1, *a*. **currū**: dat. of indir. obj.; App. 295.

157–207. Aeneas, with seven out of twenty ships, lands on the coast of North Africa near Carthage. He kills seven fine stags, which he divides among his comrades, whom he tries to console and encourage.

157–158. Aeneadae lītora, quae (sunt) proxima, cursū petere contendunt.

159–160. īnsula efficit (hunc locum) portum. portum: predicate acc. **in sēcessū longō**: the inlet extends deep into the land.

160. quibus: abl. of means; App. 331.

160–161. omnis unda (veniēns) ab altō frangitur et sē in sinūs reductōs scindit. sēsē = sē. Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

162. Hinc atque hinc: *on (from) this side and that*, i.e., on both sides. **rūpēs (sunt).**

164. scaena: the place resembles a stage with its scenery. **silvīs coruscīs**: abl. of quality; App. 330.

165. horrentī umbrā: abl. of cause if taken with **ātrum**, or of manner if taken with **imminet**; App. 332, 328. **horrentī**: abl. of an *i*-stem; this word is probably used here to suggest the shade of bristling evergreens, such as cedars, firs, or pines.

166. scopulīs pendentibus: abl. of quality or material; App. 330, 324.

intus aquae dulcēs vīvōque sedīlia *saxō*,
nymphārum *domus*. *Hīc fessās nōn* vincula *nāvīs*
ūlla tenent, uncō *nōn* alligat ancora morsū.
Hūc septem *Aenēās* collēctīs *nāvibus omnī*
ex numerō *subit*; *ac magnō tellūris amōre*
ēgressī optātā potiuntur Trōes harēnā
et sale tābentīs artūs *in lītore pōnunt*.
Ac prīmum silicī scintillam excūdit Achātēs
suscēpitque *ignem* foliīs *atque* ārida *circum*
nūtrīmenta *dedit* rapuitque *in* fōmite *flammam*.
Tum Cererem corruptam *undīs*, Cereāliaque *arma*
expediunt *fessī rērum*, frūgēsque receptās

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
alligō (1) bind, hold (to)†
ancora, ae *f.* anchor†
aqua, ae *f.* water*
āridus, a, um dry†
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb†*
Cereālis, e of Ceres, (goddess of) grain†
Cerēs, eris *f.* (goddess of) grain†
colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather
corrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus spoil, ruin†
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fresh†*
ēgredior, ī, gressus go out, disembark†
excūdō, ere, dī, sus strike out†
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus bring out, prepare†
folium, (i)ī *n.* leaf†
fōmes, itis *m.* tinder, fuel, shaving†
frūx, frūgis *f.* fruit, grain†
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
intus within†
morsus, ūs *m.* bite, fluke, bit†
numerus, ī *m.* number, multitude†*
nūtrīmentum, ī *n.* food, fuel, nourishment†
nympha, ae *f.* nymph, a minor divinity of nature, represented as a beautiful maiden
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
potior, īrī, ītus gain, win (*abl.*)†
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), whirl†
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus take back, recover†*
sal, salis *n.* (*m.*) salt (water), sea
scintilla, ae *f.* spark†
sedīle, is *n.* seat, bench†
septem seven
silex, icis *m.* (*f.*) flint†
suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus catch (up), receive†
tābeō, ēre drip, soak, melt, waste†
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
uncus, a, um curved, bent, hooked†
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* chain, bond, cable*
vīvus, a, um living, natural, alive†

---

167. vīvō saxō: denotes natural, not artificial, seats.

168. domus: in apposition with **antrum**, the cave just described; nymphs were supposed to frequent remote spots with beautiful natural scenery. **Hīc:** adverb, *here;* observe that the **ī** is long in the adverb but short in the pronoun. **fessās nāvīs:** personification; App. 437; or possibly a transferred epithet; the Trojans were tired; App. 446.

169. ancora: anachrouistic; hooked anchors were not used at that time. **alligat (nāvīs). uncō morsū:** abl. of means; App. 331.

170. collēctīs nāvibus: abl. abs.; App. 343. **omnī ex numerō:** we see from l. 393 that Aeneas had set out with twenty ships.

171. magnō amōre: abl. of manner; App. 328.

172. Trōēs: nom. pl., a Greek form. **optātā harēnā:** abl. with **potior;** App. 342.

173. sale: abl. of means with **tābentīs.**

174. silicī: dat. of separation; App. 305.

175. foliīs: abl. of means; App. 331. **circum:** adv. modifying **dedit:** *he places fuel around;* or else understand **circum (ignem).**

177. Cererem: *the goddess of grain,* by metonymy for *grain;* App. 433. **Cereālia arma:** *the utensils of Ceres,* i.e., utensils for grinding and for cooking grain.

178. expediunt (ex nāvibus). rērum:

et torrēre *parant flammīs et* frangere *saxō.*
Aenēās scopulum intereā cōnscendit, *et omnem*
prōspectum lātē *pelagō petit,* Anthea *sī quem*
jactātum *ventō videat* Phrygiāsque birēmīs
aut Capyn *aut* celsīs *in puppibus arma* Caīcī.
Nāvem in cōnspectū *nūllam,* trīs *lītore* cervōs
prōspicit *errantīs; hōs tōta* armenta *sequuntur*
ā tergō *et longum per* vallīs pascitur *agmen.*
Cōnstitit *hīc* arcumque *manū* celerīsque sagittās
corripuit, fīdus *quae tēla* gerēbat Achātēs,
ductōrēsque *ipsōs prīmum capita alta ferentīs*
cornibus arboreīs sternit, *tum* vulgus *et omnem*

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
Antheus, eī, *acc.* **ea,** *m.* comrade of Aeneas†
arboreus, a, um branching, tree-like†
arcus, ūs *m.* bow†*
armentum, ī *n.* herd, drove†
birēmis, is *f.* bireme, galley (with two banks of oars)†
Caīcus, ī *m.* comrade of Aeneas†
Capys, yos, *acc.* **yn,** *m.* comrade of Aeneas†
celer, eris, ere swift†*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
cervus, ī *m.* stag, deer†
cōnscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus climb, mount†
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stop, settle†*
cōnspectus, ūs *m.* sight, view
cornū, ūs *n.* horn†
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
ductor, ōris *m.* leader†
fīdus, a, um faithful, trusty*
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, crush*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on)*
intereā meanwhile, meantime*
jactō (1) toss, buffet*
lātē widely, far and wide
pascor, ī, pāstus feed, graze†
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan†*
prōspectus, ūs *m.* view†
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look out on, see
sagitta, ae *f.* arrow†
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, spread, strew†*
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide, rear†*
torreō, ēre, uī, tostus parch, roast†
trēs, tria three*
vallis, is *f.* valley†
vulgus, ī *n.* (*m.*) crowd, throng, herd

---

gen. with the adj. **fessī**; App. 287, *weary of their misfortunes.* **receptās (ex marī).**

179. torrēre: to make it easier to grind. **frangere:** to make coarse meal. **flammīs, saxō:** ablatives of means; App. 331.

181. pelagō: dat. of direction = **in pelagus**; App. 306, or else = **in pelagō**, abl. of place where; App. 319. **quem:** indef. *any*, modifying **Anthea**, an acc., Greek form, *if he can see any Antheus;* in English we should say *if he can see anything of Antheus.*

182. videat: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349.

183. Capyn: acc., a Greek form. **puppibus:** poetic plural. **arma:** especially shields fastened on the ship and conspicuous at a great distance.

184. Nāvem (prōspicit). (in) lītore: abl. of place where; App. 319. **Nāvem nūllam, trīs cervōs:** chiasmus and asyndeton; App. 420, 418.

185. hōs (cervōs): the three stags are at the head of the feeding herd.

186. vallīs: plural, but probably referring to a single valley; see the note on **īrae** (l. 11), and *cf.* App. 243.

187. Cōnstitit (Aenēās). hīc: adverb, *here;* distinguish from the pronoun which has a short **i**.

188. tēla: attracted into the rel. clause refers back to **arcum** and **sagittās**, objects of corripuit.

189–191. ductōrēs: the three stags (l. 184). **tum vulgus (sternit) et omnem turbam miscet, agēns (eōs = cervōs) tēlīs inter frondea nēmora.**

190. cornibus arboreīs: abl. of quality; App. 330. **tum vulgus (sternit). vulgus:** acc., *the herd,* as opposed to the leaders, **ductōrēs.**

miscet *agēns tēlīs* nemora *inter* frondea turbam;
nec prius absistit quam septem *ingentia victor*
corpora fundat humī *et* numerum *cum nāvibus* aequet.
Hinc portum petit et sociōs partītur *in omnīs*.
Vīna bonus *quae* deinde cadīs onerārat *Acestēs*
lītore Trīnacriō *dederatque* abeuntibus hērōs
dīvidit, *et dictīs* maerentia *pectora* mulcet:
"*Ō sociī* (*neque* enim ignārī *sumus ante* malōrum),
Ō passī graviōra, *dabit deus hīs* quoque *fīnem*.
Vōs et Scyllaeam rabiem penitus*que* sonantīs
accestis scopulōs, *vōs et* Cyclōpia *saxa*

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus depart†*
absistō, ere, stitī cease, stop†
accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach†
aequō (1) (make) equal†*
bonus, a, um good, kind(ly), useful†*
cadus, ī *m.* jar, urn†
Cyclōpius, a, um Cyclopean, of the Cyclopes, huge one-eyed giants of Sicily†
deinde then, thereupon, next†*
dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus divide, distribute†
enim for, indeed, surely*
frondeus, a, um leafy†
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior†*
humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth†*
ignārus, a, um ignorant, inexperienced†*
maereō, ēre mourn, grieve (for)†
malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble†*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus confuse, mix, mingle*
mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus soothe, calm
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
numerus, ī *m.* number, multitude*
onerō (1) load, burden†
partior, īrī, ītus distribute, divide†
patior, ī, passus suffer, endure*
penitus within, deep(ly), wholly†*
prius first, sooner†
quam how, than, as†*
quoque also*
rabiēs, ēī *f.* rage, madness, fury†
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
Scyllaeus, a, um of Scylla, a ravenous sea-monster, part woman and part fish, girdled with fierce dogs and destructive to mariners who attempted to sail past her cave situated on a narrow strait opposite the great whirlpool Charybdis†
septem seven
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar†*
Trīnacrius, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian†
turba, ae *f.* mob, crowd†
vīnum, ī *n.* wine†*

191. nemora: poetic plural. **turbam**: the vulgus has now become a panic-stricken and tumultuous **turba**, *a mob*.

192. victor: (*as*) *victor;* apposition with **Aenēās** the subject understood.

193. humī: loc.; App. 37, *c*. **numerum (cervōrum)**. **cum nāvibus** = **cum numerō nāvium**. **aequet**: i.e., one deer for each ship. **fundat, aequet**: temporal or anticipatory with **priusquam**; App. 376, *a*.

194. et partītur (cervōs) in (*among*) **omnīs sociōs (suōs)**.

195–197. Deinde vīna, quae bonus Acestēs onerā(ve)rat (in) cadīs (in) Trīnacriō lītore et quae (ille) hērōs dederat (illīs = Teucrīs) abeuntibus, dīvidit (Aenēās). **deinde**: two syllables by synizesis; App. 403. **onerā(ve)rat**: App. 204. **cadīs**: dat. of direction; App. 306; or else = **in cadīs**, abl. of place where; App. 319. **Vīna . . dīvidit (Aenēās)**.

196. hērōs (Acestēs): nom. sing., Greek forms. Acestes had entertained Aeneas and his comrades during the preceding winter and had furnished them with supplies for the rest of their journey. **abeuntibus (Teucrīs)**: indir. obj. of **dederat**.

197. pectora (suōrum sociōrum).

199. Ō (vōs) passī graviōra (mala). hīs (malīs): indir. obj. of **dabit**; App. 295.

201. acces(sis)tis: App. 204. **vōs et**: correlative with **vōs et** in l. 200; anaphora; App. 413. **Cyclōpia**: *of the Cyclopes*, huge one-eyed giants, one of whom, Polyphemus, had killed and eaten several of the comrades of Ulysses while they were shut up in his cave. Ulysses and his men finally succeeded in blinding Polyphemus and escaping. For the story, see *Aeneid*, III, ll. 613–638, and the ninth book of Homer's *Odyssey*.

expertī: revocāte *animōs* maestumque timōrem
mittite; forsan *et haec* ōlim meminisse juvābit.
Per variōs *cāsūs, per* tot discrīmina *rērum*
tendimus in Latium, *sēdēs ubi fāta* quiētās
ostendunt; illīc fās *rēgna* resurgere *Troiae.*
Dūrāte, *et vōsmet rēbus servāte* secundīs."
Tālia vōce refert cūrīsque ingentibus aeger
spem vultū simulat, premit *altum* corde dolōrem.
Illī sē praedae accingunt dapibusque *futūrīs:*
tergora dīripiunt costīs *et* vīscera nūdant;
pars in frusta secant veribusque trementia fīgunt,

accingō, ere, inxī, inctus gird†
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary†*
cor, cordis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings*
costa, ae *f.* rib, side†
daps, dapis *f.* feast, banquet†*
dīripiō, ere, uī, reptus tear from†
discrīmen, inis *n.* crisis, danger†
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, suffering*
dūrō (1) harden, endure†
experior, īrī, pertus try, experience†
fās *n. indecl.* divine will, right, duty*
fīgō, ere, fīxī, fixus pierce, fasten†*
fors(it)an perhaps, perchance, possibly†
frustum, ī *n.* piece, part†
illīc there†
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please†*
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy around Rome*
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy†*
meminī, isse (remember, recall)
nūdō (1) (lay) bare, strip†
ōlim once, at some time*
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, promise†*
praeda, ae *f.* booty, prey†
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, control*
quiētus, a, um calm, peaceful†
resurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise again†
revocō (1) recall, restore†
secō, āre, uī, sectus cut, divide†*
secundus, a, um following, favorable*
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, feign†
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation†*
tergus, oris, *n.* back, hide†
timor, ōris *m.* fear, dread, anxiety†
tot so many*
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver†*
varius, a, um varied, different†*
verū, ūs *n.* broach, spit, spike†
vīscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh†
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face†*

202. expertī (estis).

203. mittite: *dismiss.* et = etiam, *even.* haec: obj. of meminisse. forsan et haec, etc.: *perhaps at some time we shall be glad to remember even these things.* A famous verse, and one often quoted. juvābit (nōs): *it will please* (*us*), with meminisse as subject.

205. tendimus (cursum) in Latium: the poet "nods" for a moment, as Aeneas is not yet supposed to know anything about Latium.

206. fās (est), etc.: *it is the divine will for the Trojan realm there to rise again.* rēgna: poetic plural; App. 243.

207. vōsmet: an emphatic form of vōs.

208–222. The Trojans first feast and then lament their lost comrades.

208. Tālia (dicta). vōce: contrasted with corde of l. 209. refert (Aenēās). cūrīs ingentibus: abl. of cause with aeger; App. 332. aeger: *(although) sick at heart.*

209. (in) vultū: abl. of place where or means, sharply contrasted with corde. corde: abl. of place where or means. spem: contrasted with dolōrem. altum corde: *deep in his heart.* spem simulat, premit dolōrem: this figure is known as *chiasmus.* The contrast is here emphasized by placing the two pairs of words in inverse (reverse) order; that is, spem begins the first clause and is contrasted with dolōrem, which ends the second, while simulat ends the first clause and is thus contrasted with premit, which begins the second; App. 420, see the note on l. 184.

210. Illī: Teucrī. praedae, dapibus: datives of purpose; App. 303; i.e., they prepare themselves for the venison and the banquet. dapibus: poetic plural.

211. costīs: abl. of separation; App. 320, 340.

212. pars (sociōrum) secant (vīscera) in frusta: the use of the plural verb with

lītore aēna locant *aliī flammāsque* ministrant.
Tum vīctū revocant *vīrīs; fūsīque per* herbam
implentur veteris Bacchī pinguis*que* ferīnae.
Postquam exēmpta famēs epulīs mēnsae*que* remōtae,
āmissōs *longō sociōs* sermōne requīrunt,
spem*que* metum*que inter* dubiī, seu vīvere crēdant
sīve extrēma patī *nec jam* exaudīre *vocātōs*.
Praecipuē *pius Aenēās nunc* ācris Orontī,
nunc Amycī *cāsum* gemit *et* crūdēlia *sēcum*
fāta Lycī fortem*que* Gyān fortem*que* Cloanthum.

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited†*
aēnum, ī *n.* bronze (vessel, kettle)†
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus lose, let go†*
Amycus, ī *m.* a Trojan†
Bacchus, ī *m.* (god of) wine†
Cloanthus, ī *m.* a Trojan†
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust†*
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody†*
dubius, a, um doubtful, wavering†
epulae, ārum *f.* banquet, feast
exaudiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus hear, hearken†
eximō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus take away, remove†
extrēma, ōrum *n.* final fate, death†
famēs, is *f.* hunger†
ferīna, ae *f.* game, venison†
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant*
gemō, ere, uī, itus groan (for), lament†
Gyās, ae, *acc.* **ān,** *m.* a Trojan†
herba, ae *f.* grass, herb(age)†*
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill (with) (*gen.*)†*
locō (1) place, locate, establish†*
Lycus, ī *m.* a Trojan†
mēnsa, ae *f.* table†*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety†*
ministrō (1) tend, serve, supply
Orontēs, is (ī, ae) *m.* Trojan leader
patior, ī, passus endure, suffer*
pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile†
postquam after (that), when*
praecipuē especially†
removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove†
requīrō, ere, quīsīvī (siī), quīsītus seek again, deplore†
revocō (1) recall, restore
sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech†
seu, sīve whether, or (if)†*
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation
vetus, eris old, former, ancient*
victus, ūs *m.* living, food, victuals†
vīvō, ere, vīxī, victus live†

---

a singular (collective) subject is common in many languages, including English; App. 236, *a*. **trementia (frusta)**: the flesh of the recently slain animals is still quivering. **veribus**: abl. of means, App. 331.

213. (in) **lītore**: abl. of place where; App. 319.

214. vīrīs: acc. pl. of **vīs**, an *i*-stem; observe the quantity, distinguishing it from **virīs**, dat. or abl. of **vir**, *man*.

215. implentur: a middle voice or reflexive use; *they fill themselves;* App. 115, 2, *a*; 309. **Bacchī, ferīnae**: gen. with special verb, **impleō**; App. 287. **Bacchus**: *god of wine*, by metonymy for *wine*.

216. exēmpta (est). mēnsae remōtae (sunt): in Vergil's day the tables were removed at the end of the banquet; so this phrase came to mean simply the end of the feasting. Vergil uses it here in that general sense, as Aeneas and his companions presumably had no tables.

218. inter spemque metumque dubiī: anastrophe; App. 414. **seu (sociōs suōs) vīvere crēdant**: deliberative indir. quest.; App. 348, 349; the clause is dependent on **dubiī**, which modifies **Teucrī** understood as subject of **requīrunt**.

219. extrēma = mortem: euphemism; App. 423. **vocātōs (sociōs)**: refers to the Roman custom (**conclāmātiō**) of loudly calling the name of the dead three times, as a part of the funeral ceremony.

220. Praecipuē: modifying **gemit**, not **pius**. **pius**: not *pious*, but *devoted, loyal, noble;* see note on **pietāte** (l. 10). **Aenēās ācris Orontī (cāsum gemit)**.

221. sēcum = cum sē; i.e., silently; for the thought compare ll. 208–209.

222. fāta, Gyān, Cloanthum (gemit Aenēās). fortem, fortem: pathetic repetition. **Gyān**: acc., a Greek form.

Et jam fīnis erat, cum Juppiter aethere *summō*
dispiciēns *mare* vēlivolum *terrāsque* jacentīs
lītoraque et lātōs populōs, *sīc* vertice *caelī*
cōnstitit *et* Libyae dēfīxit *lūmina rēgnīs*.
Atque illum tālīs jactantem *pectore cūrās*
trīstior et lacrimīs oculōs suffūsa nitentīs
adloquitur Venus: "*Ō quī rēs* hominumque *deumque*
aeternīs regis *imperiīs et* fulmine terrēs,
quid meus Aenēās in tē committere *tantum*,
quid Trōes *potuēre*, *quibus* tot fūnera passīs
cūnctus ob *Ītaliam terrārum* clauditur orbis?
Certē *hinc* Rōmānōs ōlim *volventibus* annīs,

adloquor, ī, locūtus address, accost†
aeternus, a, um eternal, everlasting*
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
annus, ī *m.* year*
certē certainly, surely†
claudō, ere, sī, sus- close, shut*
committō, ere, mīsī, missus commit†
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast), rest*
dēfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus fix, fasten†
dispiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, discern, descry†
fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning†*
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster†*
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (outspread, low)*
jactō (1) toss, buffet, ponder*
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious†*
Libya, ae *f.* district of North Africa*
nitēns, entis bright, shining†
ob on account of (*acc.*)
ōlim once, at some time*
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, earth†*
patior, ī, passus endure, suffer*
populus, ī *m.* people, race, nation*
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule; direct*
Rōmānus, a, um Roman*
suffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus fill, suffuse†
terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify†
tot so many*
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
vēlivolus, a, um winged with sails†
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty†*
vertex, icis *m.* summit, head, top*

223–296. Venus complains to Jupiter of the hard lot of the Trojans and of her son Aeneas. Jupiter consoles her with the promise of universal empire for the Trojans through their descendants, the Roman people.

223. fīnis (epulārum et dictōrum). There is a change of scene from earth to heaven. **(dē) aethere summō:** abl. of separation with **dispiciēns**; App. 340.

224. vēlivolum: a transferred epithet, as it refers to the ships on the sea, instead of the sea itself; App. 446.

225. (in) vertice: abl. of place where.

226. lūmina = oculōs. rēgnīs: dat. of direction or abl. of place where; App. 306, 319.

227–229. tālīs cūrās: *such cares* as were natural for the father of gods and king of men, with the government of the universe resting on his shoulders. **(in) pectore:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **illum adloquitur Venus. trīstior (quam solita):** *sadder (than was her wont)*; Venus as goddess of love and beauty, was proverbially laughter-loving. **lacrimīs:** abl. of means; App. 331. **nitentīs oculōs:** acc. of respect with **suffūsa**, or else object of **suffūsa** used as a reflexive verb; App. 115, 2, *a*; 309.

229–230. Ō (tū) quī rēs regis et terrēs. regis: from **regō** not from **rēx. -que . . . -que:** *both . . . and.* **de(ōr)um.**

231. quid meus Aenēās tantum committere (potuit)? = *What (so) great offense, etc.* quid . . . quid: anaphora; App. 413.

232. potuēre = potuērunt (committere). quibus: dat. of reference or of interest; App 301. **fūnera:** obj. of **passīs** which modifies **quibus**; the Trojans had suffered many disasters (**fūnera**) in the destruction of their city and during the seven years thereafter, while they wandered as homeless exiles.

233. cūnctus orbis terrārum: *the whole world*, an emotional exaggeration or hyperbole. **ob Ītaliam:** *on account of Italy*, which was destined to be the seat of a great new world-power hostile to Juno's cherished plans.

234–237. Certē pollicitus (es) hinc

hinc fore ductōrēs, revocātō *ā sanguine* Teucrī,
quī mare, quī terrās omnīs diciōne *tenērent*,
pollicitus. *Quae tē, genitor*, sententia vertit?
Hōc equidem occāsum *Trojae trīstīsque* ruīnās
sōlābar *fātīs* contrāria *fāta* rependēns;
nunc eadem fortūna virōs tot *cāsibus āctōs*
īnsequitur. *Quem dās fīnem, rēx magne, labōrum?*
Antēnor *potuit mediīs* ēlāpsus Achīvīs
Illyricōs penetrāre sinūs *atque* intima *tūtus*
rēgna Liburnōrum *et* fontem superāre Timāvī,
unde *per ōra* novem *vastō cum* murmure *montis*
it mare prōruptum *et pelagō* premit *arva* sonantī.

Achīvus, a, um Achaean, Greek†
Antēnor, ōris *m.* Trojan leader, fled after the fall of Troy and settled in northern Italy at Patavium, modern Padua†
contrārius, a, um opposite, opposing†
diciō, ōnis *f.* power, rule, sway†
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, chief
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip out, escape†
equidem indeed, surely†*
fōns, fontis *m.* fountain, source†
Illyricus, a, um Illyrian, Dalmatian, of Illyria, a region east of the Adriatic†
īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue*
intimus, a, um inmost†
Liburni, orum *m.* Liburnians, Illyrians
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, rumble, roar
novem nine†
occāsus, ūs *m.* fall, destruction†
penetrō (1) enter, penetrate†
polliceor, ērī, itus promise, offer†
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, overwhelm*
prōruptus, a, um dashing, furious†
rependō, ere, ī, ēnsus balance, compensate†
revocō (1) recall, restore
ruīna, ae *f.* downfall, ruin
sententia, ae *f.* opinion, purpose†
sinus, ūs *m.* fold, gulf, bay*
sōlor, ārī, ātus console, find, consolation for†
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
superō (1) surpass, pass beyond†*
Teucer (crus), crī *m.* early king of Troy†
Timāvus, ī *m.* river of northern Italy, runs underground about twenty-five miles and emerges near the upper end of the Adriatic Sea into which it flows with a strong current†
tot so many*
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
unde whence, from which (whom)*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout*

Rōmānōs (futūrōs esse), hinc ductōrēs fore (= futūrōs esse) ā revocātō sanguine Teucrī. hinc = ex Aenēā et aliīs Teucrīs. volventibus annīs: *as the years roll* (*by*); abl. abs.; App. 343. **hinc . . . hinc:** anaphora; App. 413. **quī . . . quī:** anaphora; App. 413.

235. fore = futūrōs esse, inf. in indir. disc., dependent on pollicitus (es) in l. 227; App. 263, 390. **ā revocātō sanguine:** explaining **hinc.**

236. quī . . . tenērent: rel. clause of purpose or characteristic; App. 388, 389.

237. Quae tē sententia vertit: *what idea turns you* (*from your earlier plan*)? An opinion may change a person as well as a person may change an opinion.

238. Hōc: neut., abl. of cause or means, *with this* (*hope*). **occāsum sōlābar:** *I tried to console myself for the fall;* a conative imperfect, denoting attempted action; App. 351, 2, *a*.

239. fātīs: abl. of means or dat.; App. 331, 304.

240. Observe the asyndeton; App. 418. **cāsibus:** abl. of means; App. 331.

242. mediīs Achīvīs: *from the midst of the Greeks* (*fighting around Troy*).

243. Illyricōs sinūs: the Adriatic was proverbial for its dangers to navigation. **Liburnōrum:** a wild and savage people, warlike and hostile to strangers. **tūtus:** in emphatic position, contrasting his present safety with the dangers previously indicated.

245. unde = ex quō fonte (Timāvī). Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

246. (Timāvus) it mare prōruptum: (*the Timavus*) *goes* (*as*) *a dashing sea*, to indicate the great volume, roar, and

Hīc tamen *ille urbem* Patavī *sēdēsque* locāvit
Teucrōrum et gentī nōmen dedit armaque fīxit
Trōia, *nunc* placidā compostus pāce quiēscit:
nōs, tua prōgeniēs, *caelī quibus* adnuis *arcem*,
nāvibus (infandum!) āmissīs *ūnīus* ob *īram*
prōdimur *atque* Italīs longē disjungimur *ōrīs*.
Hic pietātis *honōs? Sīc nōs in* scēptra repōnis?"
Ollī subrīdēns hominum sator *atque deōrum*
vultū, *quō caelum* tempestātēsque serēnat,
ōscula lībāvit nātae, dehinc *tālia fātur:*
"Parce metū, Cytherēa, *manent* immōta *tuōrum*

---

adnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod assent, promise†
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus lose, let go*
compōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus compose, construct, settle
Cytherēa, ae *f.* Venus, goddess of Cythera, a Greek island where Venus was born from the foam of the sea†
dehinc thence, thereafter
disjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus separate, disconnect†
fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus fasten, fix*
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
immōtus, a, um unmoved, unshaken†
infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed†
Italus, a, um Italian
lībō (1) taste, touch; pour†
locō (1) place, locate, establish*
longē far (from), afar*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
nāta, ae *f.* daughter†
ob on account of (*acc.*)
ōsculum, ī *n.* dainty lip, kiss†
parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare (*dat.*)†
Patavium, (i)ī *n.* city of northern Italy, the modern Padua, about twenty miles west of Venice†
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, quiet, rest†
pietās, ātis *f.* devotion, loyalty, duty*
placidus, a, um peaceful, calm, quiet*
prōdō, ere, didī, ditus hand over, betray†
prōgeniēs, ēī *f.* offspring, progeny
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, repose†*
repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus replace, restore
sator, ōris *m.* sower; begetter, father†
scēptrum, ī *n.* staff, scepter, power
serēnō (1) calm, clear†
subrīdeō, ēre, rīsī smile (at)†
tamen nevertheless, however†*
tempestās, ātis *f.* tempest, storm*
Trōius, a, um Trojan*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face*

---

strong current of the river. **pelagō**: *with its flood* (*sea*). Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

247. Hīc: adverb, *here;* observe the quantity. **Patavī**: appositional gen.; App. 281.

248. arma fīxit: dedicated his arms to some divinity, by hanging them up in the temple as a sign that he was at peace with the world and would need them no more.

249. nunc: asyndeton; App. 418. **compos(i)tus**: shortened for metrical reasons. Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

250. nōs: ego (Venus) et Aenēās et aliī Teucrī. Observe the effect obtained by asyndeton; App. 418. **tua prōgeniēs**: apposition with **nōs**. Venus was daughter of Jupiter; Aeneas was her son. **caelī arcem**: means that Aeneas shall become a god; for only gods lived in heaven, while ordinary mortals went to Hades after death. **adnuis**: referring to the solemn nod of assent with which Jupiter ratified his promises.

251. nāvibus āmissīs: abl. abs.; App. 343. **ūnīus** = **Jūnōnis**.

253. (estne) hic: for **hoc**; attracted to the masculine gender of the predicate noun **honōs**; App. 240, *a*.

254. Ollī = **illī**: dat. with compound; App. 298.

256. tālia (dicta). nātae: added to indicate that the kiss is due to the tender affection of a father for his daughter. **dehinc**: one syllable by synizesis; App. 403.

257. metū = **metuī**: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

fāta tibī; cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavīnī
moenia sublīmemque *ferēs ad sīdera caelī*
magnanimum *Aenēān; neque mē* sententia vertit.
Hic tibi (*fābor* enim, quandō *haec tē cūra* remordet,
longius *et volvēns fātōrum* arcāna *movēbō*)
bellum ingēns geret *Italiā populōsque* ferōcīs
contundet *mōresque virīs et moenia pōnet,*
tertia *dum* Latiō rēgnantem *vīderit* aestās,
ternaque trānsierint Rutulīs hīberna subāctīs.
At puer Ascanius, *cui nunc* cognōmen Iūlō
additur (Īlus *erat, dum rēs stetit* Īlia *rēgnō*),
trīgintā *magnōs volvendīs* mēnsibus orbīs

---

addō, ere, didī, ditus add†*
aestās, ātis *f.* summer†
arcānum, ī *n.* secret, mystery†
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas†*
cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, cognomen†
contundō, ere, tudī, tū(n)sus bruise, crush†
enim for, indeed, truly*
ferōx, ōcis fierce, savage, wild†
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on), wage*
hīberna, ōrum *n.* winter (quarters)†
Īlius, a, um Ilian, Trojan†
Īlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas†*
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas†*
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy*
Lavīnium, (i)ī *n.* city in central Italy†
longē far (from), afar*
magnanimus, a, um great-souled†
mēnsis, is *m.* month†
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, manner, law†*
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, revolution*
populus, ī *m.* people, race, nation*
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus promise*
quandō when, since†
rēgnō (1) rule, reign
remordeō, ēre, dī, rsus gnaw, trouble†
Rutulus, a, um Rutulian, of the Rutulians, a tribe of central Italy†
sententia, ae *f.* opinion, purpose
subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus subdue†
sublīmis, e on high, aloft, uplifted†
ternī, ae, a three (each), by threes†
tertius, a, um third†*
trānseō, īre, iī, (īvī), itus pass (by)†
trīgintā thirty†
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout*

---

258. tibī: dat. of reference or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

259. sublīmem: Aeneas shall become a god in heaven; an answer to Venus's complaint in l. 250.

260. neque mē sententia vertit: an answer to the reproachful question of Venus in l. 237. **Aenēān:** acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

261. Hic (Aenēās): subject of geret, l. 263. **tibi:** dat. of reference or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

262. longius . . . volvens: *unrolling (the scroll) of the fates farther.* In classical times books were written in the form of scrolls.

263. (Aenēās) bellum ingēns geret: referring to the war with Turnus in Italy, described in the last six books of the *Aeneid.* **(in) Italiā:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

264. mōrēs, moenia; alliteration; App. 411. **virīs (suīs).**

265. dum vīderit, trānsierint: future perf. with **dum**; App. 373. **(Aenēān) rēgnantem.**

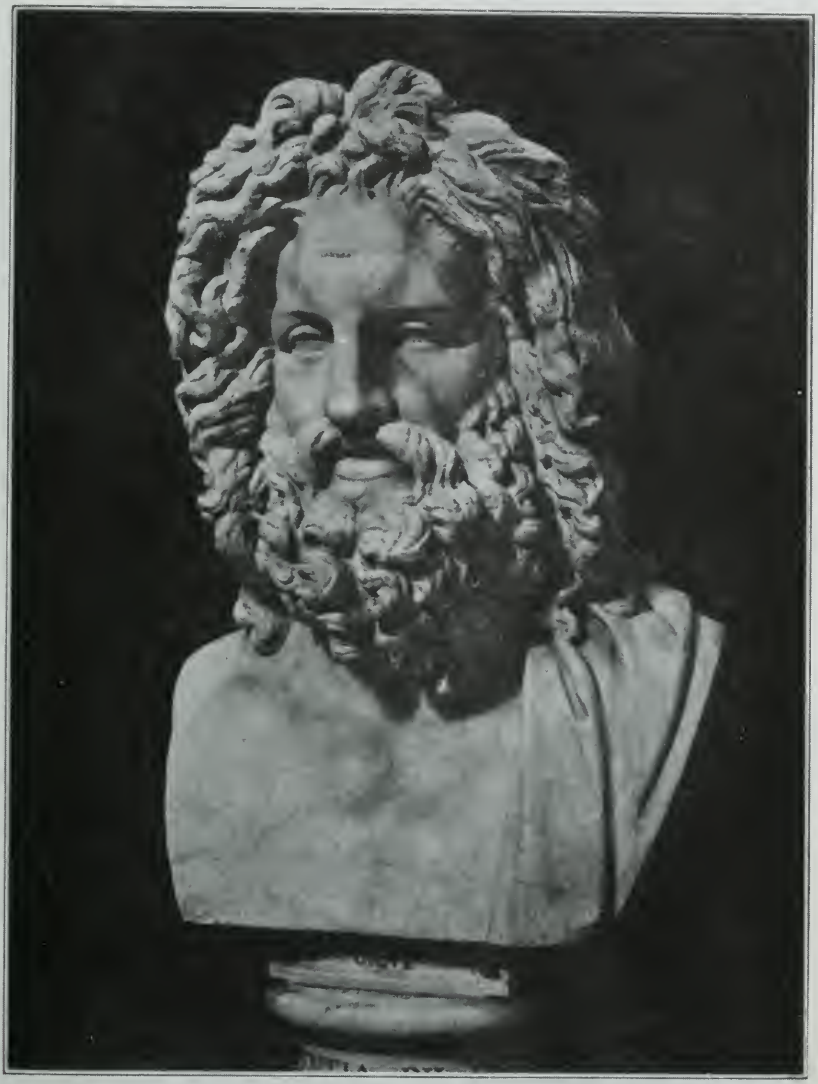
266. Rutulīs subāctīs: abl. abs. or dat. of reference; App. 343, 301. The Rutuli were a native Italian tribe hostile to Aeneas but whom he finally subdued. **terna:** *three;* the distributive is often employed instead of the cardinal with words used only in the plural. **hīberna,** *winter quarters,* hence *winters, years.*

267. Iūlō: dat. attracted to the case of cui; App. 242, *b.* A reminder that the family of Julius Caesar, including Augustus, was descended from Aeneas, through Ascanius (Iulus). **Īlus erat (cognōmen). rēs Īlia:** *the Ilian (Trojan) state.*

268. rēgnō: abl. of respect; App. 325. **dum stetit:** App. 371.

269. orbīs (annōrum): *circles of years,* poetic for *years.* **volvendīs mēnsibus;** *with their swift passing months;* abl. of quality or means, App. 330, 331.

temporal clause
equivalent to a
future more vivid.



Alinari, Rome *Vatican Museum*

JUPITER

he will impose laws on men
+ ~~put up~~ walls

Alinari, Rome *National Museum*

MARS

In spite of his being god of War, Mars is frequently represented as a young and handsome boy.

imperiō explēbit, *rēgnumque ab sēde* Lavīnī
trānsferet, *et* Longam *multā vī* mūniet Albam.
Hīc jam ter centum tōtōs rēgnābitur annōs
gente sub Hectoreā, dōnec *rēgīna* sacerdōs
Mārte gravis *geminam* partū *dabit* Īlia prōlem.
Inde lupae fulvō *nūtrīcis* tegmine *laetus*
Rōmulus excipiet *gentem et* Māvortia condet
moenia Rōmānōsque *suō dē nōmine dīcet.*
Hīs ego nec mētās rērum nec tempora pōnō:

Alba, ae *f.* Alba Longa, city of central Italy†
annus, ī *m.* year*
centum hundred†*
condō, ere, didī, ditus found, establish*
dōnec until, while, as long as†
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus take (up), inherit†
expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill (out), fulfil†
fulvus, a, um tawny, yellow†
gravis, e heavy, grievous, pregnant*
Hectoreus, a, um Hectorean, of Hector, leader of the Trojans†
Īlius, a, um Ilian, Trojan†
inde thence, afterward†*
Lavīnium, (i)ī *n.* city of central Italy
Longa, ae *f.* Alba Longa, a city in central Italy, mother-city of Rome
lupa, ae *f.* she-wolf†
Mārs, Mārtis *m.* god of war†
Māvortius, a, um Martian, of Mars, god of war†
mēta, ae *f.* goal, limit, bound†
mūniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus fortify†
nūtrīx, īcis *f.* nurse†
partus, ūs *m.* birth, offspring†
prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny*
rēgnō (1) rule, reign
Rōmānus, a, um Roman*
Rōmulus, ī *m.* legendary founder of Rome, son of Mars and Rhea Silvia, a Vestal virgin†
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)†*
teg(ī)men, inis *n.* covering, skin†
ter thrice, three times*
trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātus transfer†

270. Lavīnī: appositional gen.; App. 281. Aeneas founded Lavinium, Ascanius founded Alba Longa.

271. Longam Albam = *Alba Longa;* according to tradition, Rome was founded from Alba Longa, a city situated on a long (**Longa**) white (**Alba**) ridge. **multā vī mūniet**: alliteration; App. 411.

272. Hīc: in Alba Longa. **rēgnābitur**: impersonal, *royal power shall be exercised.* **annōs**: acc. of duration of time; App. 314.

273–274. Hectoreā = **Trojānā**, since Hector was the crown prince and the greatest of the Trojans. **rēgīna sacerdōs**: *a princess priestess* (*of Vesta*); she was the daughter of King Numitor, and her name was Rhea Silvia. **dōnec Īlia rēgīna sacerdōs gravis Mārte dabit prōlem geminam partū. Īlia (sacerdōs)**: another name for Rhea Silvia to indicate her connection with *Īlus* (l. 268) and with *Īlium* (*Troy*). **Mārte gravis**: *pregnant by Mars*, the god of war. **geminam prōlem**: Romulus and Remus. **partū dabit**: *shall give by birth, shall bear.*

275. Inde: temporal, *then.* **lupae fulvō nūtrīcis tegmine**: interlocked order; App. 442. **lupae nūtrīcis**: refers to the well known story that Romulus and Remus were suckled by a she-wolf. **fulvō tegmine**: abl. of cause with the adj. **laetus**; App. 332. As a mark of honor to his foster mother Romulus wore a wolfskin.

276. Māvortia: Romulus, the founder of Rome, was the son of Mars (**Māvors**), the patron deity of Rome.

277. dīcet (= **vocābit**) (**gentem**) **Rōmānōs**: the name Romans being thus fancifully derived from Romulus, in accordance with the well-established legend.

278. Hīs (**Rōmānīs**): dat. of reference; App. 301. **tempora** = **mētās temporum. imperium sine fīne** (**Rōmānīs**) **dedī**: a magnificent climax; Aeneas is to rule *three* years after his victory over the Italian tribes (ll. 265–266), Ascanius for *thirty* years (l. 269), while Rome is to have dominion world without end. To preserve the symmetry, Vergil represents Alba Longa as ruling *three hundred* instead of four hundred years, according to the more generally accepted account.

imperium sine *fīne dedī*. Quīn aspera *Jūnō*,
quae mare nunc terrāsque metū *caelumque* fatīgat,
cōnsilia *in* melius *referet*, *mēcumque* fovēbit
Rōmānōs, *rērum* dominōs *gentemque* togātam.
Sīc placitum. *Veniet* lūstrīs *lābentibus* aetās
cum domus Assaracī Phthīam clārāsque Mycēnās
servitiō premet *ac victīs* dominābitur Argīs.
Nāscētur pulchrā Trojānus orīgine Caesar,
imperium Ōceanō, *fāmam quī* terminet astrīs,
Jūlius, *ā magnō* dēmissum *nōmen* Iūlō.

aetās, ātis *f.* age, time†
Argī, ōrum *m.* Argos, city of southern Greece, home of Diomedes, a Greek chieftain against Troy
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce*
Assaracus, ī *m.* early king of Troy†
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation†*
Caesar, aris *m.* (1) Julius Caesar; (2) Augustus Caesar†
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious†*
cōnsilium, (i)ī *n.* plan, advice†
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send down, drop, lower, derive†*
dominor, ārī, ātus rule (over) (*dat.*)†
dominus, ī *m.* lord, master†
fatīgō (1) weary, tire (out)†
foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus cherish, fondle
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
Jūlius, (i)ī *m.* (1) Julius Caesar; (2) Augustus Caesar†
lūstrum, ī *n.* space of five years, sacred season†
melior, ius better, superior†
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
Mycēnae, ārum *f.* city of central Greece, home of Agamemnon, leader of the Greek expedition against Troy†
nāscor, ī, nātus be born, arise*
Ōceanus, ī *m.* ocean†
orīgō, inis *f.* origin, beginning, source†
Phthīa, ae *f.* city and district of northern Greece, home of Achilles, a Greek chieftain against Troy†
placeō, ēre, uī, itus please (*dat.*)†
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, subject*
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, illustrious*
quīn nay (even), (but) that†*
Rōmānus, a, um Roman*
servitium, (i)ī *n.* slavery, bondage†
sine without (*abl.*)*
terminō (1) bound, limit†
togātus, a, um toga-clad†
Trojānus, a, um Trojan*

279. Quīn: *yes, even;* introducing an almost unbelievable statement.

280. metū: abl. of means; App. 331; because of her fear for Carthage, as represented in ll. 19 ff.; cf. **id metuēns** in l. 23.

281. in melius: *for the better.*

282. rērum: *of the world.* **-que:** explicative, adding an explanatory statement. **togātam:** the toga was the characteristic Roman dress.

283. Sīc placitum (est): "It is thus decreed." **lūstrīs lābentibus:** abl. abs.; *as the years go gliding by;* note the alliteration; App. 411.

284. domus Assaracī: *the house of Assaracus,* a Trojan prince; i.e., the Romans, descendants of the Trojans, shall some day conquer and rule Greece. Greece was reduced to a Roman province in 146 B.C.

285. victīs Argīs: dat. with special verb or abl. of place where; App. 297, 319.

286. pulchrā Trojānus orīgine Caesar: interlocked order; App. 442. **pulchrā orīgine:** abl. of quality; App. 330. **Trojānus Caesar:** Augustus, who traced his ancestry back to Aeneas.

287. (quī) imperium Ōceanō (terminet). quī terminet: rel. clause of purpose; App. 388. **Ōceanō:** abl. of means. The ancients thought that Oceanus was a great river which flowed around the earth. Cf. *Paradise Lost,* 12, 369–371:

"He shall ascend
The throne hereditary, and bound his reign
With earth's wide bounds, his glory with the heavens."

288. Jūlius: in apposition with **Caesar** (in l. 286), and referring to **Augustus**

Hunc tū ōlim *caelō* spoliīs Orientis onustum
accipiēs sēcūra; *vocābitur hic* quoque vōtīs.
Aspera *tum positīs* mītēscent saecula *bellīs;*
cāna Fidēs *et* Vesta, Remō *cum* frātre Quirīnus
jūra *dabunt;* dīrae *ferrō et* compāgibus artīs
claudentur *Bellī* portae; Furor impius intus
saeva sedēns *super arma et* centum vīnctus aēnīs

aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen†
artus, a, um close (fitting)†*
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce*
cānus, a, um white, gray, hoary†
centum hundred*
claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, fasten*
compāgēs, is *f.* joint, seam, fastening
dīrus, a, um dire, awful†*
Fidēs, eī *f.* Faith, Honor†
frāter, tris *m.* brother*
Furor, ōris *m.* Madness, Rage, Frenzy
impius, a, um unholy, impious, disloyal†
intus within
jūs, jūris *n.* justice, law, right†
mītēscō, ere become mild†
ōlim once, at some time*
onustus, a, um laden, burdened†
Oriēns, entis *m.* Orient, the East†
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, opening*
Quirīnus, ī *m.* Romulus, legendary founder of Rome†
quoque also*
Remus, ī *m.* twin brother of Romulus†*
saeculum, ī *n.* age, generation†
saevus, a, um cruel, fierce, stern*
sēcūrus, a, um free from care, untroubled†
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit*
spolium, (i)ī *n.* spoils, booty, plunder†
Vesta, ae *f.* goddess of the hearth†
vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, tie†
vōtum, ī *n.* prayer, vow†*

Caesar who as the adopted son of Julius Caesar took this name. The name Julius was fancifully derived from Iulus, and the latter from Ilus, thus connecting the word with Ilus, one of the early kings of Ilium (Troy). Cf. note on l. 267.

289: (in) **caelō:** refers to the deification of Augustus, who was worshipped as a god and as the son of a god, Julius Caesar, even during his lifetime. **Hunc spoliīs Orientis onustum:** refers to Augustus Caesar's conquests in the Orient, especially to his recovery from the Parthians of the Roman standards they had captured from Crassus in 53. B.C., and to his victory over Antony and Cleopatra at Actium in 31 B.C.

290. sēcūra: adjective modifying **tū** which is subject of **accipiēs. hic** (Caesar) **quoque:** *he also*, as well as Aeneas, will be worshipped (**vocābitur**) as a god; see ll. 259–260.

291. positīs bellīs: abl. abs.; App. 343. A prophecy of the golden age of peace, when all wars shall cease. **Aspera positīs saecula bellīs:** interlocked order; App. 442. This and the following lines (292–296) refer to the expected return of the Golden Age, which was ardently hoped for and often prophesied in antiquity, when all the world would be good and happy; faith and honor and peace and love would prevail: and sin and wickedness, suffering and sorrow, would be no more.

292. cāna Fidēs: one of the earliest shrines at Rome was dedicated to the goddess Fides. This line is usually interpreted symbolically: Fides and Vesta represent the honor and sanctity of the old Roman home, while the reconciliation of Romulus and Remus, once estranged, symbolizes the reconciliation of the two chief parties at Rome, long engaged in deadly civil war.

293. ferrō et compāgibus artīs: abl. of means with **claudentur**, l. 294.

294. claudentur Bellī portae: apparently referring to the temple of Janus, the doors of which were opened in time of war and closed in time of peace. Augustus closed the temple in 29 B.C., after it had remained continuously opened for more than two centuries. It had been closed only twice before since the foundation of Rome. **impius:** referring to the unholy spirit of civil war.

295. saeva sedēns super: alliteration; App. 411.

295–296. vīnctus post tergum: (his hands) *bound behind his back.* **ōre:** abl. of means or cause, with **framet**; App.

post tergum nōdīs fremet horridus ōre cruentō."
Haec ait et Majā genitum dēmittit *ab* altō,
ut terrae utque novae pateant Karthāginis *arcēs*
hospitiō *Teucrīs, nē fātī* nescia *Dīdō*
finibus arcēret. Volat *ille per* āera *magnum*
rēmigiō ālārum *ac* Libyae citus astitit *ōrīs.*
Et jam jussa *facit, pōnuntque* ferōcia Poenī
corda *volente deō; in prīmīs rēgīna* quiētum
accipit in Teucrōs animum mentemque benignam.
At pius Aeneās per noctem plūrima volvēns,
ut prīmum lūx alma *data est,* exīre *locōsque*

āēr, āeris, *acc.* **āera,** *m.* air, mist, fog†
āla, ae *f.* wing†*
almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)†
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
arceō, ēre, uī keep off, defend
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (on, at) (*dat.*)*
benignus, a, um kind(ly), benign†
citus, a, um quick, swift†
cor, cordis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel†
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send down, drop*
exeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus go out†
ferōx, ōcis fierce, savage, wild
fremō, ere, uī, itus rage, roar*
gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, beget†
horridus, a, um horrible, bristling†
hospitium, (i)ī *n.* hospitality, welcome†
jussum, ī *n.* command, order
Karthāgō, inis *f.* great commercial city of North Africa, rival of Rome
Libya, ae *f.* district of North Africa*
Maja, ae *f.* daughter of Atlas and mother of Mercury, messenger of the gods†
nescius, a, um ignorant, unaware†
nōdus, ī *m.* knot†
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend†
Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian†
post behind, after (*acc.*); after(ward)†*
quiētus, a, um calm, peaceful
rēmigium, (i)ī *n.* oarage, rowing†
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide, rear
volō (1) fly, speed*

331, 332. **fremet:** from rage at not being able to indulge in his favorite sport of encouraging fratricidal strife.

297–304. Mercury is sent to Dido, at Carthage, to prepare the way for Aeneas and the Trojans.

297. ait: third sing. of **ajō.** **Majā:** with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b.* **Majā genitum:** *the son of Maja.*

298–300. pateant, arcēret: purpose; App. 359; observe the difference in tense, made possible by the fact that the principal verb, **dēmittit,** as a historical present may be considered either primary or secondary; App. 353, *a*; 351, 1, *a.*

299. hospitiō Teucrīs: two datives; App. 301, 303; or **hospitiō** may be abl. of manner; App. 328. **fātī nescia Dīdō:** i.e., Dido might not know that the Trojans were fated to settle in Italy and might repel them from her land as possible invaders.

300. (ā) finibus. (Teucrōs) arcēret: negative purpose; App. 359. **āera:** acc. sing. from **āēr,** a Greek form; App. 68.

301. rēmigiō: abl. of means; App. 331; a metaphor from the sea; App. 432. **astitit:** perfect, to denote instantaneous action, after the historical present, **volat.** **(in) ōrīs.**

303. deō volente: abl. abs.; App. 343. **in prīmīs:** *among the first, especially.* **rēgīna:** Dido.

304. in: *toward.*

305–417. Aeneas sets out to explore the unknown region, and meets his mother Venus disguised as a huntress. The goddess tells him that he is near Carthage, relates the history of Dido, announces the safety of his remaining ships, resumes her form as a divinity, and disappears.

305. plūrima (mente) volvēns.

306–309. ut prīmum: *when first, as soon as.* **exīre, explōrāre, quaerere, referre:** depend on **cōnstituit** in l. 309. **Aenēās cōnstituit exīre locōsque novōs explōrāre, quaerere quās ōrās accesserit ventō (et quaerere) quī teneant (illōs locōs) referreque exācta sociīs (suīs).**

explōrāre *novōs, quās ventō* accesserit *ōrās,*
quī teneant (nam inculta *videt*), hominēsne feraene,
quaerere cōnstituit *sociīsque* exācta *referre.*
Classem in convexō nemorum *sub* rūpe cavātā
arboribus clausam *circum atque* horrentibus *umbrīs*
occulit; *ipse ūnō* graditur comitātus Achātē
bīna *manū* lātō crispāns hastīlia *ferrō.*
Cui māter mediā sēsē tulit obvia *silvā*
virginis ōs habitumque gerēns *et* virginis *arma*
Spartānae, *vel* quālis *equōs* Thrēissa fatīgat
Harpalycē volucremque *fugā* praevertitur Hebrum.
Namque umerīs dē mōre habilem suspenderat arcum

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, reach
Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree†*
arcus, ūs *m.* bow*
bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos†
cavō (1) hollow (out)†
claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, hem in*
comitō (1) accompany, attend†
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, resolve†
convexum, ī *n.* hollow, valley, sky†
crispō, āre, ātus brandish, wave†
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive out; determine, discover
explōrō (1) explore, search (out)
fatīgō (1) weary, tire (out)
fera, ae *f.* wild beast, animal†
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on), wear*
gradior, ī, gressus march, go, proceed†
habilis, e easily handled, handy†
habitus, ūs *m.* appearance, garb†
Harpalycē, ēs *f.* Thracian princess and huntress, renowned for her speed†
hastīle, is *n.* spear(-shaft), lance†
Hebrus, ī *m.* slow Thracian river which Vergil thought fast†
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, tremble*
incultus, a, um untilled, wild†
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, manner, law*
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
obvius, a, um in the way, to meet (*dat.*)†
occulō, ere, uī, ltus hide, conceal†
praevertor, ī, rsus outstrip, surpass†
quālis, e of what kind, such (as)†*
rūpēs, is *f.* cliff, crag, rock*
Spartānus, a, um Spartan, of Sparta, in southern Greece†
suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus suspend, hang†*
Thrēissa, ae *f.* Thracian, of Thrace, a district northeast of Greece†
virgō, inis *f.* girl, maid(en)†*
volucer, cris, cre swift, winged†*

307. quās (ōrās) accesserit, quī (eās) teneant: indir. questions dependent on **quaerere**; App. 349. **ventō:** abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332.

308. (ea esse) inculta: ea is neuter plural and refers to both **locōs** and **ōrās**, one a masc. and the other a fem. noun; for its gender see App. 239, *b*. **videt:** with the final syllable long under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a*. **hominēsne feraene (sint). -ne, -ne:** *whether, or.*

309. sociīs: indirect object. **exācta:** substantively, *the things determined, learned.*

311. horrentibus umbrīs: a transferred epithet; **horrentibus** belongs logically to the trees (**arboribus**) but is transferred to their shadows (**umbrīs**); App. 446. Cf **horrentī umbrā** (l. 165) and note. **circum:** adverb, *round about.*

312. ipse (Aenēās): *the master;* see note on **ipsius** (l. 114). **ūnō = sōlō,** a common meaning. **ūnō Achātē:** abl. of accompaniment without the preposition or ablative of means.

313. bīna: this distributive numeral is often used instead of the cardinal **duo** with objects that go in pairs. **manū:** abl. of place or means. **lātō ferrō:** *with broad iron (point)*; abl. of quality; App. 330.

314. Cui: Aeneas, dat. with **obvia**, which modifies **māter**. **(in) mediā silvā.**

316. vel (tālis virginis) quālis . . . fatīgat Harpalycē: *or (of) such a girl as the Thracian Harpalyce (when she) tires the horses* (by outstripping them in a race).

317. Harpalycē: nom., a Greek form. **fugā:** *in her swift course.* abl. of means; App. 331.

318. (dē or in) umerīs.

vēnātrīx *dederatque* comam diffundere *ventīs*,
nūda genū nōdō*que* sinūs collēcta fluentīs.
Ac prior "Heus," inquit, "juvenēs, mōnstrāte, *meārum*
vīdistis sī quam hīc errantem forte sorōrum
succīnctam pharetrā *et* maculōsae tegmine lyncis,
aut spūmantis aprī *cursum clāmōre* prementem."
Sīc Venus; *et* Veneris contrā *sīc* fīlius orsus:
"*Nūlla tuārum audīta mihī neque vīsa* sorōrum,
Ō quam tē memorem, virgō? *Namque haud tibi* vultus
mortālis, *nec vōx* hominem sonat; *Ō, dea* certē
(an Phoebī soror? An nymphārum *sanguinis ūna?*),
sīs fēlix *nostrumque* levēs, quaecumque, *labōrem*

---

an *interrog.* or, whether†
aper, prī *m.* wild boar†
certē certainly, surely
colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus gather, collect
coma, ae *f.* hair†*
contrā opposite, in turn*
diffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus scatter†
fēlix, īcis happy, blessed; propitious†*
fīlius, (i)ī *m.* son†
fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow†
genū, ūs *n.* knee†
heus ho! hallo!†
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
inquam, is, it say†*
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)†*
levō (1) lift, lighten
lynx, lyncis *m.* (*f.*) lynx, wild cat†
maculōsus, a, um spotted†
memorō (1) recount, (re)call, relate*
mōnstrō (1) show, point out†*
mortālis, e mortal, human†*
nōdus, ī *m.* knot
nūdus, a, um nude, bare†
nympha, ae *f.* nymph, a minor divinity, represented in the form of a beautiful maiden
ordior, īrī, orsus begin, undertake†
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver†
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy, brother of Diana, goddess of the chase†*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, control, pursue*
prior, ius former, first†*
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whichever, whatever*
sinus, ūs *m.* fold, hollow, bay*
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
soror, ōris *f.* sister, comrade*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray†*
succingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird (up)†
teg(i)men, inis *n.* cover(ing), skin
vēnātrīx, īcis *f.* huntress†
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
virgō, inis *f.* girl, maid(en)*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face*

---

319. vēnātrīx: (*as a*) *huntress.* **diffundere:** the inf. of purpose, a poetic use; App. 261.

320. genū: acc. of respect; App. 311. **sinūs:** acc., object of **collēcta** used as a middle voice; App. 309; refers to her flowing *robes.*

321. prior: *first,* before Aeneas could speak.

322. quam: indef., *any* (*one*). **sī vīdistis quam meārum sorōrum hīc errantem, mōnstrāte (eam mihi).**

325. Sīc Venus (dīxit). Venus, Veneris fīlius: brought together in the sentence, emphasizing that Venus and Aeneas do not here meet as mother and son. **orsus (est).**

326. Nūlla (soror). audīta (est) mihi. mihī: dat. of agent; App. 302; for the length of the final **ī,** see the note on **mihī,** (l. 8).

327. quam tē (esse) memorem: *whom* (*what*) *shall I call you?* **memorem** is deliberative subj.; App. 348. **tibi:** dat. of possession. **vultus (est) mortālis.**

328. nec vōx hominem sonat: *nor does your voice sound human;* **hominem** is cognate acc.; App. 313.

329. an Phoebī soror (es)? Phoebī soror: i.e., Phoebe, Diana, "the huntress queen, chaste and fair." **sanguinis = generis:** part. gen. with **ūna.**

330. sīs, levēs: vol. or opt. subj.; App. 253, 254. **quaecumque (es).**

et quō sub caelō tandem, quibus orbis *in ōrīs*
iactēmur doceās; ignārī hominumque *locōrumque*
errāmus ventō hūc vastīs et flūctibus āctī:
multa tibi ante ārās nostrā cadet hostia *dextrā.*"
Tum Venus: "*Haud* equidem *tālī mē* dignor *honōre;* 335
virginibus *Tyriīs* mōs *est* gestāre pharetram
purpureōque altē sūrās vincīre coturnō.
Pūnica *rēgna vidēs, Tyriōs et* Agēnoris *urbem;*
sed fīnēs Libycī, *genus* intractābile *bellō.*
Imperium Dīdō Tyriā regit *urbe* profecta, 340
germānum *fugiēns. Longa est* injūria, *longae*
ambāgēs; *sed summa sequar* fastīgia *rērum.*
Huic conjūnx Sȳchaeus *erat,* dītissimus agrī

Agēnor, oris *m.* king of Phoenicia†
ager, grī *m.* land, field, territory†*
altē on high, high up†
ambāgēs, is *f.* turning, devious tale†
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
cot(h)urnus, ī *m.* high boot, buskin†
dignor, ārī, ātus deem worthy (*abl.*)†
dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy (*gen.*)†
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell†*
equidem indeed, surely*
fastīgium, (i)ī *n.* summit, top, point†
germānus, ī *m.* brother†*
gestō (1) bear, wear, carry†
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
hostia, ae *f.* victim, sacrifice†
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
injūria, ae *f.* wrong, insult, injustice
intractābilis, e unmanageable, intractable†
iactō (1) toss, buffet*
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a district of North Africa†*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, manner, law*
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, world*
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver
proficīscor, ī, fectus set out, depart†
Pūnicus, a, um Phoenician, Punic, Carthaginian†
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson†
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, direct*
sūra, ae *f.* (calf of) leg†
Sȳchaeus, ī *m.* deceased husband of Dido†
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, tie
virgō, inis *f.* girl, maid(en)*

331–332. et (mē) doceās sub quō caelō tandem (iactēmur), in quibus ōrīs orbis (terrārum) iactēmur. quō sub caelō . . . iactēmur: indir. quest.; App. 349. **doceās:** vol. or opt. subj.; App. 253, 254. **-que:** with the final e elided before the initial vowel of the next verse. Such a verse is called *hypermetric;* App. 402.

333. ventō, flūctibus: abl. of means; App. 331. **vastīs:** construe with **flūctibus.**

334. multa hostia cadet tibi nostrā dextrā (manū) ante ārās (tuās): Aeneas promises a generous sacrifice to this unknown goddess, if she will grant his prayer. He wishes to make a good bargain, representing the proverbial **dō ut dēs** of Roman religion. **nostrā** (= **meā**) **dextrā (manū):** abl. of means.

335–336. Tum Venus (dīxit). honōre: abl. with **dignor:** App. 337, *a.* **virginibus:** dat. of possession or reference; App. 299, 301. **Tyriis:** Carthage was settled from Tyre; cf. **Tyriī tenuēre colōnī** (l. 12).

336–337. "Do not think me a goddess because I bear a bow and quiver, and am dressed in hunting costume. This is customary among Tyrian girls."

337. purpureō: Tyrian "purple" (really *scarlet*) was famous.

338. Pūnica: a word related to *Phoenician.* **Agēnoris:** as a Phoenician settlement, Carthage could be called the city of Agenor, founder of the Phoenician race.

339. fīnēs (sunt) Libycī. genus: in apposition with Libyans, implied in **Libycī.**

340. (ex) Tyriā urbe profecta: *having come from Tyre.*

341. Longa est injūria = longum est dīcere (nārrāre) injūriam: *the story of her wrongs is a long one.* **longae (sunt).**

343. Huic (Dīdōnī): dat. of possession; App. 299. **agrī:** gen. with adj., **dītissimus:** App. 287; *richest in land.*

Phoenīcum, *et magnō miserae* dīlēctus *amōre*,
cui pater intāctam *dederat prīmīsque* jugārat
ōminibus. *Sed rēgna* Tyrī germānus *habēbat*
Pygmaliōn, scelere *ante aliōs immānior omnīs*.
Quōs inter, medius vēnit furor. *Ille* Sychaeum
impius *ante ārās atque aurī* caecus *amōre*
clam *ferrō* incautum superat, sēcūrus *amōrum*
germānae; factum*que* diū cēlāvit *et* aegram
multa malus simulāns vānā spē lūsit amantem.
Ipsa sed in somnīs inhumātī *vēnit* imāgō
conjugis ōra modīs attollēns pallida mīrīs;
crūdēlīs *ārās* trājecta*que pectora ferrō*
nūdāvit, caecum*que domūs* scelus *omne* retēxit.

aeger, gra, grum sick (at heart), weary*
amāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) lover†
attollō, ere lift, raise†*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark†*
cēlō (1) hide, conceal†
clam secretly†
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, fierce*
dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus love, cherish†
diū a long time, long†
factum, ī *n.* deed, undertaking, exploit†*
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, rage*
germāna, ae *f.* sister
germānus, ī *m.* brother*
imāgō, inis *f.* image, likeness, ghost†*
impius, a, um unholy, unnatural, disloyal
incautus, a, um unsuspecting, careless†
inhumātus, a, um unburied†
intāctus, a, um untouched, virgin†
jugō (1) join, unite, yoke together†
lūdō, ere, sī, sus sport, deceive, mock†
malus, a, um bad, evil, wicked*
mīrus, a, um wonderful, marvelous†
modus, ī *m.* manner, measure†*
nūdō (1) bare, expose
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, auspices†*
pallidus, a, um pale†
Phoenīx, īcis *m.* Phoenician†
Pygmaliōn, ōnis *m.* wicked brother of Dido†
retegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus uncover, disclose†
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin†*
sēcūrus, a, um free from care, careless, heedless (*gen.*)
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, feign
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
superō (1) overcome, surpass; kill*
Sȳchaeus, ī *m.* deceased husband of Dido
trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus pierce†
Tyrus, ī *f.* famous city of Phoenicia†
vānus, a, um empty, idle, false†

344. (Dīdōnī) **miserae**: dat. of agent; App. 302.

345. **pater** = Bēlus. (**eam** = Dīdōnem) **intāctam. jugā(ve)rat. ōminibus**: abl. of means; App. 331; by metonymy for *marriage*, since the omens were always consulted for weddings; App. 433.

347. **scelere**: abl. of respect with **immānior**; App. 325.

348–351. **inter quōs** = inter Pygmaliōnem et Sychaeum; anastrophe; App. 414. **Ille** (= Pygmaliōn) **impius atque caecus amōre aurī, sēcūrus amōrum germānae (suae), clam ferrō superat Sychaeum incautum ante ārās.** Observe how strongly the speaker portrays the wicked character of Pygmalion and his disregard for all human or divine considerations.

349. **amōre**: abl. of cause; App. 332

350. **amōrum**: obj. gen. with adj. **sēcūrus**; App. 284; *reckless of his sister's love* (for her husband).

351. **aegram**: modifies **amantem**, which is used substantively, *lover, loving wife.*

352. **multa simulāns**: to account for the absence of Sychaeus. **lūsit vānā spē (Dīdōnem) aegram amantem; sed ipsa imāgō inhumātī conjugis (Sychaeī) vēnit in somnīs (ad eam = Dīdōnem).**

353. **inhumātī**: the ancients believed that unless the corpse were properly buried, the ghost of the dead would wander restlessly about.

354. **modīs mīrīs**: alliteration; abl. of manner, with **pallida**; App. 328.

355. **ārās, pectora**: poetic plural. **ferrō**: abl. of means.

356. **domūs**: gen.

Tum celerāre *fugam* patriāque excēdere suādet
auxiliumque *viae* veterēs *tellūre* reclūdit
thēsaurōs, ignōtum argentī pondus *et aurī*.
Hīs commōta *fugam Dīdō sociōsque parābat*.
Conveniunt *quibus aut* odium crūdēle tyrannī
aut metus ācer *erat; nāvīs, quae forte parātae,*
corripiunt onerantque *aurō*. Portantur avārī
Pygmaliōnis opēs *pelagō*; dux fēmina factī.
Dēvēnēre *locōs ubi nunc ingentia cernēs*
moenia surgentemque novae Karthāginis *arcem*,
mercātīque solum, factī *dē nōmine* Byrsam,
taurīnō quantum *possent* circumdare tergō.

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited*
argentum, ī *n.* silver†
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance†*
avārus, a, um covetous, greedy†
Byrsa, ae *f.* citadel of Carthage†
celerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed†
circumdō, are, dedī, datus surround
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, arouse
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus come together, assemble†
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up), seize*
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, fierce*
dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus arrive (at)†
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chieftain†*
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, depart†
factum, ī *n.* deed, undertaking, exploit*
fēmina, ae *f.* woman†
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange†
Karthāgō, inis *f.* great commercial city of North Africa, rival of Rome
mercor, ārī, ātus buy, purchase†
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
odium, (i)ī *n.* hate, hatred, enmity†
onerō (1) load, burden
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, wealth, power*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
pondus, eris *n.* weight, burden†
portō (1) carry (off), bear, bring*
Pygmaliōn, ōnis *m.* wicked brother of Dido
quantus, a, um how great, how much, how many, as much (as)†*
reclūdō, ere, sī, sus disclose, reveal†
solum, ī *n.* soil, ground, earth†*
suādeō, ēre, āsī, āsus advise, urge†
taurīnus, a, um of a bull†
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
thēsaurus, ī *m.* treasure, hoard†
tyrannus, ī *m.* tyrant, usurper, ruler†
vetus, eris old, ancient, former*

357. suādet: the ghost urges Dido to flee. **celerāre, excēdere:** infinitives with **suādet**; ordinary prose would employ **ut** with the subjunctive.

358. auxilium viae: (*as*) *an aid* for her flight; **auxilium** is in apposition with **thēsaurōs**. **veterēs:** and so unknown to Pygmalion.

360. Hīs (dictīs Sychaeī).

361. (illī) conveniunt. tyrannī: of Pygmalion; obj. gen. with **odium** and **metus**; App. 284.

362. parātae (sunt).

364. pelagō: abl. of route; App. 338. **opēs:** the Roman historian Tacitus (*Annals*, 16, 1) says that the Emperor Nero sent a commission to Carthage to find the gold which Dido had brought and presumably buried there. **fēmina (erat) dux factī:** compare the inscription **Dux fēmina factī** which was stamped on the medals struck to commemorate the defeat of the Spanish Armada by the British in 1588, while Elizabeth was queen of England.

365. Dēvēnēre = dēvēnērunt; App. 204, 4. **(ad or in) locōs**; acc. of place whither; App. 315.

367–368. mercātī (sunt). (tantum) solum (vocātum) Byrsam: (*as much*) *ground* or *land* (*called*) *Byrsa*. **Byrsam:** a Greek word meaning *bull's hide*, later confused with the Carthaginian (Punic) word *bosra*, meaning *citadel;* hence the story that the Libyan natives agreed to sell to the Phoenicians as much land as could be covered with a bull's hide and that the Carthaginians cut the hide into long strips, thus securing a considerable area.

Sed vōs quī tandem? Quibus aut vēnistis ab ōrīs?
Quōve tenētis iter?'' *Quaerentī tālibus ille*
suspīrāns *īmōque trahēns ā pectore vōcem:*
''*Ō dea, sī prīmā* repetēns *ab* orīgine pergam,
et vacet annālīs *nostrōrum audīre labōrum,*
ante diem clausō compōnet Vesper Olympō.
Nōs Trojā antīquā, sī vestrās *forte per* aurīs
Trojae nōmen iit, dīversa *per aequora* vectōs
forte suā Libycīs tempestās appulit ōrīs.
Sum pius Aenēās, raptōs *quī ex* hoste penātīs
classe vehō *mēcum, fāmā super* aethera nōtus.
Ītaliam quaerō patriam *et genus ab Jove summō.*
Bis dēnīs Phrygium cōnscendī *nāvibus aequor,*

aether, eris, *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
annālis, is *m.* story, record, annals†
appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive to (*dat.*)†
auris, is *f.* ear*
bis twice*
claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, fasten*
compōnō, ere, posuī, positus compose, construct, settle
cōnscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus ascend, embark
dēnī, ae, a ten (each), by tens†
dīversus, a, um scattered, various*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) stranger, enemy, foe†*
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey†*
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a district of North Africa*
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar†*
Olympus, ī *m.* Greek mountain, home of the gods, heaven†
orīgō, inis *f.* origin, beginning, source
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus proceed†
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), rob*
repetō, ere, īvi (iī), ītus seek again, repeat, retrace†
suspīrō (1) draw a deep breath, sigh†
tempestās, ātis *f.* tempest, storm; time*
vacō (1) be free (from), be at leisure†
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey*
Vesper, eris (erī) *m.* (god of the) evening (star)†
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*

369. Sed quī (estis) vōs? It is Aeneas's turn to speak.

370. (Venerī) quaerentī tālibus (vōcibus) ille (Aenēās dīxit).

372. Ō dea: Aeneas insists upon his contention that he is addressing a goddess, in spite of Venus's denial (ll. 335–337); or is it merely flattery paid to a beautiful young woman? **Sī pergam (dīcere annālīs nostrōrum labōrum):** a future less vivid condition; App. 381.

372–373. et (sī) vacet (tibi): *and if you should have the leisure;* **vacet** is used impersonally. **audīre:** inf. of purpose; App. 261.

374. ante: *sooner*, that is, than my story would be told. **clausō Olympō:** abl. abs.; when Phoebus, the sun god, returned to Olympus at the end of the day, the doors of heaven were closed for the night.

375–377. tempestās suā forte appulit nōs vectōs (ab) antīquā Trojā — sī forte nōmen Trojae iit per aurīs vestrās — per dīversa aequora Libycīs ōrīs(= ad Libycās ōrās). Nōs: acc., obj. of appulit, in l. 377. **Trojā antīquā (vectōs):** abl. of place whence without a preposition; App. 320, *a*.

377. forte suā: contrary to the plans and desires of Aeneas. **ōrīs:** dat. with a compound; App. 298.

378. pius: see the note on **pietāte** (l. 10) and on **pius** (l. 220).

379. classe: abl. of means. **fāmā:** abl. of cause or means; App. 331, 332. Naïve self-esteem, not conceit. **aethera:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

380. (quaerō) Ītaliam patriam et genus (patrium) ab Jove: refers to the legend that Dardanus, the son of Jupiter and Electra, and founder of the Trojan race, had formerly lived in Italy.

381. Bis dēnīs: *twice ten;* more poetic than simply *twenty*. With adverbs of multiplication, as **bis**, etc., the distribu-

mātre deā mōnstrante *viam data fāta secūtus;*
vix septem convulsae *undīs* Eurōque supersunt.
Ipse ignōtus, egēns, Libyae dēserta peragrō,
Eurōpā *atque* Asiā pulsus." *Nec plūra* querentem
passa Venus *mediō sīc* interfāta dolōre *est:*
"Quisquis *es, haud,* crēdō, invīsus caelestibus *aurās*
vītālīs carpis, *Tyriam quī* advēneris *urbem.*
Perge ~~modo~~ *atque hinc tē rēgīnae ad līmina* perfer.
Namque tibī reducēs *sociōs classemque relātam*
nuntiō *et in* tūtum versīs Aquilōnibus *āctam,*
nī frūstrā augurium vānī docuēre *parentēs.*
Aspice bis sēnōs laetantīs *agmine* cycnōs,

adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus arrive, reach†
Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind
Asia, ae *f.* Asia (Minor)†
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at†*
augurium, (i)ī *n.* augury, prophecy†
bis twice*
caelestēs, ium *m.* (*f.*) divinities, gods
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, take, consume†
convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear, shatter†
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust*
cycnus, ī *m.* swan†
dēsertum, ī *n.* desert, waste†
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, instruct*
dolor, ōris *m.* pain, grief, anger, passion*
egeō, ēre, uī be needy, lack†
Eurōpa, ae *f.* Europe†
Eurus, ī *m.* (east) wind
frūstrā in vain, uselessly†*
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
interfor, fārī, fātus interrupt†
invīsus, a, um hateful, hated, odious
laetor, ārī, ātus rejoice, exult†
Libya, ae *f.* district of North Africa*
modo only, (just) now†
mōnstrō (1) show, point out*
nī, nisi if not, unless, except*
nuntiō (1) announce†
patior, ī, passus suffer, endure, allow*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive, force†
peragrō (1) wander through†
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear, betake†
pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus proceed
queror, ī, questus complain, lament†
quisquis, quicquid whoever, whatever†
redux, ucis led back, restored†
sēnī, ae, a six (each), by sixes†
septem seven
supersum, esse, fuī survive, remain†
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
vānus, a, um empty, idle, false
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout*
vītālis, e of life, vital†

tive numerals are commonly employed instead of the cardinals. **Phrygium aequor:** *the sea near Troy.* **nāvibus:** abl. of means; App. 331.

382. (meā) mātre deā mōnstrante: abl. abs.; App. 343.

384. (ego) ipse ignōtus: his person is unknown at present, even though his fame is widespread (l. 379).

385. (ex) Eurōpā, (ex) Asiā: ablatives of separation. **Eurōpā = Italiā:** due to Juno's interference; compare ll. 251–252. **Asiā = Trojā:** because of the destruction of Troy. **plūra (Aenēān) querentem. Venus nōn passa (eum = Aenēān) querentem plūra (= querī plūra) sīc interfāta (est in) mediō dolōre. plūra:** obj. of **querentem; Aenēān** is understood as object of **passa.**

387–388. haud invīsus: this figure of speech is called *litotes;* App. 431. **caelestibus:** dat. with **invīsus. aurās vītālīs carpis:** *you breathe, live.* **quī advēneris:** rel. clause of characteristic, with additional idea of cause; App. 389. **(ad) urbem.**

389. perfer: imp. of **perferō;** App. 202.

390–391. classem: his twelve lost ships. **nam tibi nuntiō sociōs (tuōs esse) reducēs classemque (tuam esse) relātam et āctam in tūtum versīs Aquilōnibus.**

391. in tūtum (portum). versīs Aquilōnibus: abl. abs.; App. 343. **āctam:** from **agō;** modifies **classem.**

392. docuēre = docuērunt (mē).

393. sēnōs: see note on **dēnīs** (l. 381). The two groups of swans, which had been separated through fright and had reunited after the danger was past, correspond to

aetheriā *quōs lāpsa* plagā *Jovis* āles apertō
turbābat *caelō; nunc terrās* ordine *longō*
aut capere aut captās jam dēspectāre *videntur:*
ut reducēs *illī* lūdunt strīdentibus ālīs
et coetū cīnxēre polum cantūsque *dedēre,*
haud aliter *puppēsque tuae* pūbēsque *tuōrum*
aut portum tenet aut plēnō *subit* ōstia *vēlō:*
Perge modo *et,* quā *tē dūcit via,* dērige gressum."
Dīxit et āvertēns roseā cervīce refulsit,
ambrosiaeque comae dīvīnum vertice odōrem
spīrāvēre; *pedēs* vestis dēflūxit *ad īmōs;*

---

aetherius, a, um of the upper air, ethereal†
āla, ae *f.* wing*
āles, itis *m.* (*f.*) bird, fowl†
alitēr otherwise†*
ambrosius, a, um ambrosial, immortal†
apertus, a, um open(ed), clear
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn (aside), avert*
cantus, ūs *m.* song, melody, music†
cervīx, īcis *f.* neck†
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus encircle, gird*
coetus, ūs *m.* company, band, flock†
coma, ae *f.* hair*
dēfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow down†
dērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus direct, guide†
dēspectō (1) look down (on)†
dīvīnus, a, um divine, holy†
gressus, ūs *m.* step, walk, gait†
lūdō, ere, sī, sus sport, mock
modo only, (just) now
odor, ōris *m.* odor, fragrance†
ordō, inis *m.* order, line, array†*
ōstium, (i)ī *n.* mouth, harbor, entrance
pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus proceed
plaga, ae *f.* region, tract†
plēnus, a, um full, complete, swelling†
polus, ī *m.* pole, sky, heaven
pūbēs, is *f.* youth, young men†*
quā where(by), in any way
redux, ucis led back, restored
refulgeō, ēre, lsī shine, gleam†
roseus, a, um rosy, pink†
spīrō (1) breathe (forth), exhale†
strīd(e)ō, ēre, dī creak, rustle, whir
turbō (1) throw into confusion, agitate†*
vertex, icis *m.* top, summit, head*
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), robe†*

---

the two groups of the twelve ships under Ilioneus, which will reunite after a short separation. Thus **sociōs reducēs** of l. 390 corresponds to **ut reducēs illī** of l. 397. **agmine:** abl. of manner; App. 328; the swans had just been put to flight and scattered by the eagle.

394. quōs āles Jovis lāpsa aetheriā plagā turbābat (in) **apertō caelō. Jovis āles:** the eagle was the bird of Jove and bore his thunderbolt. **(dē) aetheriā plagā:** *from the height of heaven.*

395–396. terrās capere: *to alight.* **caelō:** abl. of place where or of route; App. 319, 338. **nunc videntur:** now, after the eagle has disappeared, the swans are seen in two groups. One group, in a long row, returns to its feeding place on the land; the other group flies above and gazes down at the places occupied (**terrās captās**) by their comrades.

396. captās (terrās) dēspectāre: *to look down upon the places* (**terrās**) *already occupied.*

397. illī = cycnī.

398. coetū: abl. of manner; App. 328. **cīnxēre, dedēre = cīnxērunt, dedērunt;** App. 204, 4. **cantūs:** acc. plural.

399. haud aliter: litotes; App. 431. The main point of the comparison is in the happy return to safety of both swans and Trojans after their disaster. **-que . . . -que:** polysyndeton; App. 439.

400. tenet, subit: the subjects are **puppēs** and **pūbēs,** but the verbs agree in number with **pūbēs,** the nearest; App. 236, *b.*

402. Dīxit (Venus) et (sē) āvertēns. cervīce: abl. of means.

403. (ā) vertice: abl. of separation. **dīvīnum odōrem:** a special fragrance is often attributed to the gods.

404. spīrāvēre = spīrāvērunt. vestis dēflūxit: with the exception of Diana, all the goddesses wore flowing robes.

et vēra incessū patuit *dea*. *Ille ubi mātrem* 405
agnōvit *tālī fugientem est vōce secūtus:*
"*Quid nātum* totiēns, crūdēlis *tū* quoque, falsīs
lūdis imāginibus? Cūr *dextrae* jungere *dextram*
nōn datur ac vērās *audīre et* reddere *vōcēs?*"
Tālibus incūsat gressum*que ad moenia tendit.* 410
At Venus obscūrō gradientīs āere saepsit,
et multō nebulae *circum dea fūdit* amictū,
cernere nē quis eōs neu *quis* contingere *posset*
mōlīrive moram *aut veniendī* poscere causās.
Ipsa Paphum sublīmis abit *sēdēsque* revisit 415
laeta suās, ubi templum *illī*, centum*que* Sabaeō
tūre calent *ārae* sertīs*que* recentibus hālant.

---

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus depart*
āēr, āeris, *acc.* **āera,** *m.* air, mist, fog
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize†*
amictus, ūs *m.* wrap, robe†
caleō, ēre, uī be hot, burn†
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason*
centum hundred*
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, befall*
crūdēlis, e cruel, harsh, bloody*
cūr why?†
falsus, a, um false, deceitful, pretended†
gradior, ī, gressus step, go, proceed
gressus, ūs *m.* step, walk, gait
hālō (1) breathe (forth), be fragrant†
imāgō, inis *f.* image, shape, ghost*
incessus, ūs *m.* walk, gait, stride†
incūsō (1) reproach, chide, blame†
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
lūdō, ere, sī, sus sport, mock
mōlior, īrī, ītus work, effect, make
mora, ae *f.* delay, hindrance, hesitation†*
nebula, ae *f.* cloud, mist, fog†
neu, nēve and (that) not, and lest†
obscūrus, a, um dark†*
Paphus (os), ī *f.* city of Cyprus, famous center of the worship of Venus†
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, be evident
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek†*
quoque also*
recēns, entis fresh, recent†
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, reply†*
revīsō, ere revisit†
Sabaeus, a, um Sabaean, of Saba in southern Arabia, famous for its incense†
saepiō, īre, psī, ptus hedge in, inclose†
sertum, ī *n.* wreath, garland†
sublīmis, e on high, aloft, uplifted
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary†*
totiēns so often, so many times†
tūs, tūris *n.* incense, unguent†
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
vērus, a, um true, real, honest†*

---

405. Ille: Aeneas. The hiatus between **dea** and **Ille** is justified by the pause in thought after **dea**; cf. **Samō: hīc** (l. 16).

406. (eam) fugientem.

407. Quid tū quoque crūdēlis totiēns lūdis (mē) nātum (tuum) falsīs imāginibus? quid: adverbial, *why?* **nātum (tuum):** emphatic by position. **tū quoque:** "*even you*, as well as others who might be expected to deceive me."

408. dextrae (manuī): dat. with **jungere**; App. 297.

409. vērās vōcēs: contrasted with **falsīs imāginibus** of l. 407.

410. Tālibus (dictīs Aenēās) incūsat (mātrem suam). moenia (Karthāginis).

411. obscūrō āere: such a concealing cloud or mist is a device very common in epic tradition and in folk tales. **(Aenēān Achātēnque) gradientīs.**

412. circum (eōs) fūdit: *surrounded (them).* **dea:** (*as*) *a goddess*, i.e., by her supernatural power.

413. quis: indef. **cernere (eōs). posset:** negative purpose; App. 359.

414. mōlīrī moram: alliteration. **veniendī:** a gerund in the gen. modifying **causās.**

415. Ipsa: Venus; see the note on **ipsa** (l. 42) and on **ipsius** (l. 114). **Paphum:** acc. of place to which; App. 315, *a*.

416. laeta: contrasted with **trīstior** (l. 228). **templum (est) illī. illī: Venerī,** dat. of possession; App. 299. **Sabaeō:** cf. *Paradise Lost*, 4, 162:

"Sabaean odors from the spicy shore
Of Araby the blest."

Corripuēre *viam* intereā, quā sēmita mōnstrat.
Jamque ascendēbant collem, *quī plūrimus urbī*
imminet adversāsque aspectat dēsuper *arcēs*.
Mīrātur mōlem *Aenēās*, māgālia *quondam*,
mīrātur portās strepitumque *et* strāta *viārum*.
Īnstant *ardentēs Tyriī: pars dūcere* mūrōs
mōlīrīque *arcem et manibus* subvolvere *saxa*,
pars optāre *locum tēctō et* conclūdere sulcō;
jūra magistrātūsque legunt sānctumque senātum.
Hīc portūs aliī effodiunt; *hīc alta* theātrīs
fundāmenta locant *aliī*, *immānīsque* columnās
rūpibus excīdunt, scaenīs decora *alta futūrīs*.
Quālis apēs aestāte *novā per* flōrea rūra
exercet *sub* sōle *labor*, *cum gentis* adultōs

adultus, a, um grown, adult†
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
aestās, ātis *f.* summer
apis, is *f.* bee†
ascendō, ere, ī, ēnsus ascend, mount†
a(d)spectō (1) look at, see, face†
collis, is *m.* hill†
columna, ae *f.* column, pillar†
conclūdō, ere, sī, sus (in)close†
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up), hasten on*
decus, oris *n.* ornament, beauty, dignity†
dēsuper from above
effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus dig out, excavate†
excīdō, ere, ī, sus cut out, destroy†
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus busy, train†*
flōreus, a, um flowery†
fundāmentum, ī *n.* foundation†
immineō, ēre overhang, menace (*dat.*)
īnstō, āre, stitī urge on, press on (*dat.*)†
intereā meanwhile, meantime*
jūs, jūris *n.* law, justice, decree
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather†*
locō (1) place, locate, establish*
māgālia, ium *n.* huts, hovels†
magistrātus, ūs *m.* magistrate, officer†
mīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire†*
mōlēs, is *f.* mass, burden, structure*
mōlior, īrī, ītus work, effect, make
mōnstrō (1) show, point out*
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart†*
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
porta, ae *f.* gate, door, opening*
quā where(by), in any way
quālis, e such (as), of what sort, as*
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
rūs, rūris *n.* country (district)†
sānctus, a, um sacred, holy, revered†*
scaena, ae *f.* stage, background
sēmita, ae *f.* path†
senātus, ūs *m.* senate, council of elders†
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
strātum, ī *n.* pavement; bed†
strepitus, ūs *m.* noise, uproar†
subvolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll up†
sulcus, ī *m.* furrow, trench, ditch†
theātrum, ī *n.* theater†

418–436. Aeneas and Achates, rendered invisible by Venus, proceed to Carthage and admire the rising city.

418. (**Aenēās Achātēsque**) **corripuērunt viam:** *they hurried along their way.* **sēmita** (**sē**) **mōnstrat.**

419. plūrimus: *with imposing size.* **urbī:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

421. mōlem (**urbis**). **quondam:** before the erection of the city. **Mīrātur . . . mīrātur:** anaphora; App. 413.

423. dūcere: *extend;* this and the following infinitives depend on **Īnstant;** App. 259.

423–425. pars, pars: in partitive apposition with **Tyriī.**

425. tēctō: *for a house;* dat. of purpose; App. 303. **conclūdere** (**locum tēctī**) **sulcō:** for the foundation.

426. magistrātūs: acc. plural.

427–428. aliī . . . aliī: *some . . . others.*

429. (**ex**) **rūpibus:** the typical open-air theater of classical times was commonly excavated from a hillside. **scaenīs:** dat. **decora:** apposition with **columnās.**

430–431. (**tālis est labor illīs**) **quālis** (**labor**) **exercet apēs: the simile is famous;** cf. App. 441. **aestāte novā: ab'l of time;** App. 322.

ēdūcunt fētūs, *aut cum* līquentia mella
stīpant *et* dulcī distendunt nectare cellās,
aut onera *accipiunt venientum, aut agmine factō*
ignāvum fūcōs pecus *ā* praesēpibus arcent;
fervet opus redolentque thymō fragrantia mella.
"*Ō* fortūnātī, *quōrum jam moenia surgunt!*"
Aenēās ait et fastīgia suspicit *urbis.*
Īnfert *sē* saeptus nebulā (mīrābile *dictū*)
per mediōs, miscetque *virīs neque cernitur ūllī.*

Lūcus *in urbe fuit mediā, laetissimus umbrae,*
quō prīmum jactātī *undīs et* turbine Poenī
effōdēre *locō* signum, *quod* rēgia *Jūnō*
mōnstrārat, *caput* ācris *equī; sīc nam fore bellō*
ēgregiam *et* facilem vīctū *per* saecula *gentem.*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, keen, spirited*
arceō, ēre, uī keep off, defend
cella, ae *f.* cell, storeroom†
distendō, ere, ī, ntus distend, stretch†
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fresh*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead forth†
effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus dig out, excavate
ēgregius, a, um remarkable, distinguished†
facilis, e easy†
fastīgium, (i)ī *n.* summit, top, height
ferv(e)ō, ēre, (ferbu)ī glow, boil†
fētus, ūs *m.* offspring, brood, swarm†
fortūnātus, a, um fortunate, blessed†
fragrāns, antis fragrant, sweet-smelling†
fūcus, ī *m.* drone†
ignāvus, a, um lazy, idle†
īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear (in, into)
jactō (1) toss, buffet*
līquēns, entis liquid, flowing†
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood†*
mel, mellis *n.* honey†
mīrābilis, e wonderful, marvelous†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mōnstrō (1) show, point out*
nebula, ae *f.* cloud, mist, fog
nectar, aris *n.* nectar†
onus, eris *n.* burden, load†
opus, eris *n.* work, deed, toil†*
pecus, oris *n.* flock, herd, swarm†*
Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian
praesēpe, is *n.* stall, hive†
redoleō, ēre, uī be fragrant, smell (of)†
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly†*
saeculum, ī *n.* generation, age
saepiō, īre, psī, ptus hedge in, inclose
signum, ī *n.* sign, token, signal†*
stīpō (1) stuff, crowd, stow†
suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look up (at)†
thymum, ī *n.* thyme, a flowering plant†
turbō, inis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm
vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus live, be alive

434. venient(i)um (apium).

435. fūcōs: *the drones;* apposition with ignāvum pecus.

437–493. Aeneas visits the temple of Juno where he sees depicted the leading incidents of the Trojan War.

437. Ō fortūnātī: substantively; *O fortunate ones!* jam moenia surgunt: Aeneas was impatiently looking forward to the time when the walls of his own city would rise.

438. ait: third sing. of ajō.

439. dictū: supine, abl. of respect with mīrābile; App. 271, 325.

440. per mediōs (virōs): *through the midst (of) the men;* App. 246. (sē) miscet virīs: virīs is dat. with miscet; App. 297. ūllī: dat. of agent; App. 302.

441. umbrae: gen. with adj.; App. 287.

442. (in) quō . . . locō = ubi. jactātī: on their stormy voyage from Tyre. prīmum: immediately after landing.

443. effōdēre = effōdērunt.

444. mōnstrā(ve)rat: App. 204, 1. caput equī: a common device on Carthaginian coins. fore = futūram esse: indirect statement depending on dīxerat implied in mōnstrā(ve)rat; App. 263.

445. vīctū: supine, abl. of respect with facilem; App. 271, 325, *easy to live, to sustain,* referring to the great commercial success of Carthage. gentem (Pūnicam).

Hīc templum *Jūnōnī ingēns* Sīdōnia *Dīdō*
condēbat, *dōnīs* opulentum *et nūmine dīvae*,
aerea *cui* gradibus *surgēbant līmina* nexaeque
aere trabēs, foribus cardō strīdēbat aēnīs.
Hōc prīmum in lūcō *nova rēs* oblāta timōrem
lēniit, *hīc prīmum Aenēās* spērāre salūtem
ausus *et* adflictīs melius cōnfīdere *rēbus*.
Namque sub ingentī lūstrat *dum* singula templō
rēgīnam opperiēns, *dum quae fortūna sit urbī*,
artificumque *manūs* intrā *sē* operumque *labōrem*
mīrātur, *videt* Īliacās *ex* ordine pugnās
bellaque jam fāmā tōtum vulgāta *per* orbem,
Atrīdās *Priamumque et* saevum ambōbus Achillem.

Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
adflīgō, ere, xī, ctus strike down, shatter†
aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen
aereus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen†
aes, aeris *n.* bronze*
ambō, ae, ō both†
artifex, icis *m.* artist, artisan†
Atrīdēs, ae *m.* son of Atreus, (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaus; leaders of the Greeks against Troy†
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket†
condō, ere, didī, ditus found, build*
cōnfīdō, ere, sus sum trust (in) (*dat.*)†
foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance†
gradus, ūs *m.* step, stride, gait†
Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*
intrā within, among (*acc.*)†
lēniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus soothe, soften†
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
lūstrō (1) purify, survey, traverse†*
melior, ius better, superior†
mīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire*
nectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus bind, fasten†
offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present†
opperior, īrī, per(i)tus await, wait for†
opulentus, a, um rich, wealthy†
opus, eris *n.* work, deed, toil*
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, earth*
ordō, inis *m.* order, line, array*
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight†*
saevus, a, um fierce, harsh, stern*
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, security, health†
Sīdōnius, a, um Sidonian, Phoenician†
singulī, ae, a separate, single†
spērō (1) hope (for), expect†*
strīd(e)ō, ēre, dī grate, creak, whir
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
timor, ōris *m.* fear, anxiety, dread
trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, timber†
vulgō (1) publish, make known†

446. Sīdōnia: *Phoenician;* Tyre or Sidon, each a famous Phoenician city, came to be synonymous with Phoenicia.

447. dōnīs, nūmine: ablatives of respect depending on **opulentum**; App. 325.

448–449. cui surgēbant gradibus aerea līmina trabēsque nexae aere, (et) cardō strīdēbat foribus aēnīs, aerea, aere, aēnīs: the lavish use of costly bronze helps to indicate the magnificence of the temple. **cui gradibus:** *on the steps of which;* **cui** is dat. of reference, with the force of a genitive; App. 301. **nexae (erant).** **-que:** the elision of the final e before the initial diphthong of the first word of the next line forms a hypermetric verse: cf. l. 332 and see App. 402.

449. aere: abl. of means. **foribus aēnīs:** abl. of place where or dat. of reference; App. 319, 301.

450. timōrem (Aenēae).

452. ausus (est). rēbus: abl. or dat. with special verb, **cōnfīdere**; App. 319, 297.

454. sit: subjunctive in an indir. quest.; App. 349. **urbī:** dat. of possession; App. 299.

455. artificum manūs intrā sē: *the rival deeds of skill of the artists,* referring to the temple and its equipment.

456. ex ordine: *in order.* **fāmā:** abl. of means. **tōtum orbem (terrārum):** *the whole world.*

458. ambōbus (Atrīdīs Priamōque): Achilles was fighting against the Trojans, and of course was hostile to Priam, the

Cōnstitit *et* lacrimāns "*Quis jam locus*" inquit "Achātē,
quae regiō *in terrīs nostrī* nōn plēna *labōris*?
Ēn *Priamus*. *Sunt hīc* etiam *sua* praemia laudī;
sunt lacrimae rērum et mentem mortālia tangunt.
Solve metūs; *feret haec* aliquam *tibi fāma* salūtem."
Sīc ait atque animum pictūrā pascit inānī
multa gemēns, largōque ūmectat flūmine vultum.
Namque vidēbat utī bellantēs Pergama *circum*
hāc *fugerent* Grajī, premeret Trojāna juventūs,
hāc Phryges, īnstāret currū cristātus Achillēs.
Nec procul hinc Rhēsī niveīs tentōria *vēlīs*

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
aliquī, qua, quod some, any†*
bellō (1) war, battle†
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand fast, halt*
cristātus, a, um plumed, crested†
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
ēn see! look! behold!†
etiam also, even*
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream†*
gemō, ere, uī, itus groan (for), lament
Grajus, a, um Greek†*
hāc here, there†
inānis, e empty, idle, vain†*
inquam, is, it say*
īnstō, āre, stitī press on, urge (on)
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men†*
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament†
largus, a, um copious, plentiful†
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit†*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
mortālis, e mortal, human*
niveus, a, um snowy, white†
pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed (on), graze
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy†*
Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan†
pictūra, ae *f.* picture, painting†
plēnus, a, um full, complete, swelling
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize†*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, urge*
regiō, ōnis *f.* region, district†
Rhēsus, ī *m.* Thracian prince, ally of the Trojans, slain on the first night after his arrival at Troy†
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, security, health
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, dismiss*
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch†*
tentōrium, (i)ī *n.* tent†
Trojānus, a, um Trojan*
ūmectō (1) wet, moisten†
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face*

Trojan king; furthermore, a bitter feud arose near the end of the war between Achilles and the sons of Atreus, Agamemnon and Menelaüs, because Agamemnon had forcibly deprived Achilles of one of his war prizes, a captive girl Briseïs. This feud was the occasion of the "Wrath of Achilles," the theme of Homer's *Iliad*.

459. lacrimāns: see the note on **frīgore** (l. 92). **Achātē:** vocative.

460. nōn (est) plēna.

461. hīc etiam: *here also*, as well as elsewhere. **laudī:** dat. of possession; App. 299.

462. lacrimae rērum: *compassion for suffering*. **mentem mortālia:** alliteration, heightening the pathos. **mortālia:** substantively, *human (woes)*.

463. metūs: acc. pl. **haec fāma (Teucrōrum).**

464. ait: third sing. of **ajō.**

466–467. utī hāc Grajī bellantēs circum Pergama fugerent. utī: *how;* introduces three indirect questions. **Grajī:** nom. of **Grajus** and pronounced as though spelled **Grajjī**, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b*.

467–468. fugerent, premeret, īnstāret: subjunctives in indir. quest.; App. 349. **hāc . . . hāc:** *here . . . there*, in the series of pictures being described.

468. Phryges (fugerent). cristātus: the Homeric warrior wore a helmet with waving plumes.

469. Nec procul hinc: in another picture. **Rhēsī:** an ally of the Trojans. The oracle had proclaimed that Troy could not be captured if Rhesus's horses ever drank of the waters of the Xanthus or grazed on the Trojan meadows. Ulysses and Diomedes surprised Rhesus on the night of his arrival, killed him, and drove off his horses before they had partaken of the fateful water and grass.

agnōscit lacrimāns, *prīmō quae* prōdita *somnō*
Tȳdīdēs *multā* vastābat caede cruentus,
ardentīsque āvertit *equōs in* castra prius quam
pābula gustāssent *Trojae* Xanthumque bibissent.
Parte aliā fugiēns āmissīs Trōilus *armīs*,
īnfēlīx puer atque impār congressus Achillī,
fertur equīs currūque haeret resupīnus inānī,
lōra *tenēns* tamen; *huic* cervīxque comaeque *trahuntur*
per terram, et versā pulvis īnscrībitur hastā.
Intereā *ad* templum *nōn* aequae Palladis *ībant*
crīnibus Īliades passīs peplumque *ferēbant*
suppliciter, *trīstēs et* tūnsae *pectora* palmīs;

Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
aequus, a, um equal, even, impartial†
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
bibō, ere, ī drink (of, in)†
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter†
castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment†*
cervīx, īcis *f.* neck
coma, ae *f.* hair*
congredior, ī, gressus meet, fight with (*dat.*)†
crīnis, is *m.* locks, hair†*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
gustō (1) taste, eat†
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus hang, cling to (*dat.*)†*
hasta, ae *f.* spear†
Īlias, adis *f.* Trojan woman†
impār, aris unequal, ill-matched†
inānis, e empty, idle, vain*
inscrībō, ere, psī, ptus mark†
intereā meanwhile, meantime*
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament
lōrum, ī *n.* thong, rein
pābulum, ī *n.* fodder, pasture†
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand*
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, dishevel†*
peplus (um), ī *m.* (*n.*) robe, gown†
prius former, sooner, first
prōdō, ere, didī, ditus hand over, betray
pulvis, eris *m.* dust†
quam how, than, as*
resupīnus, a, um supine, on the back†
suppliciter beseechingly, humbly†
tamen nevertheless, however*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine*
Trōilus, ī *m.* youngest son of Priam†
tundō, ere, tutudī, tū(n)sus beat†
Tȳdīdēs, ae *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes, famous Greek chieftain
vastō (1) ravage, devastate, (lay) waste†
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout*
Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy†

470. prīmō prōdita: alliteration. **prīmō somnō:** abl. of time when or means; App. 322, 331.

471. vastābat: action represented as taking place in the picture. **caede cruentus:** alliteration. **multā caede:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

472. in castra: i.e., to the Greek camp.

473. gustā(vi)ssent, bibissent: descriptive or anticipatory; App. 376, *a*.

474. (in) Parte aliā: in a fourth picture. **āmissīs armīs:** abl. abs., referring to only a part of his arms, such as his shield, for he still holds his spear. **Trōilus:** slain by Achilles.

475. impār congressus Achillī: *unequal to Achilles in battle.*

476. His foot seems to have caught in the chariot as he fell backward. **currū inānī:** abl. with **haeret**; App. 319.

477. huic: dat. of reference equivalent to a genitive.

478. versā hastā: *with trailing* (lit. *turned*) *spear.* **pulvis:** with the last syllable irregularly long for metrical convenience.

479. nōn aequae: *hostile*, because of the adverse Judgment of Paris.

480. crīnibus passīs: abl. of quality; App. 330. **passīs:** from **pandō**; dishevelled hair was a sign of mourning. **peplum:** a fine gown, as an offering to the goddess.

481. pectora: acc., with the "middle" participle, **tūnsae**; App. 309.

dīva solō fīxōs *oculōs* āversa *tenēbat*.
Ter *circum* Īliacōs raptāverat Hectora mūrōs
exanimumque *aurō corpus* vendēbat Achillēs.
Tum vērō *ingentem* gemitum *dat pectore ab īmō*,
ut spolia, *ut* currūs, *utque ipsum corpus* amīcī
tendentemque manūs Priamum cōnspexit inermīs.
Sē quoque principibus permixtum agnōvit Achīvīs,
Ēōāsque aciēs *et* nigrī Memnonis *arma*.
Dūcit Amāzonidum lūnātīs *agmina* peltīs
Penthesilēa *furēns mediīsque in* mīlibus *ardet*,
aurea subnectēns exsertae cingula mammae
bellātrīx, audet*que virīs* concurrere virgō.
Haec dum Dardaniō *Aenēae* mīranda *videntur*,

Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
Achīvus, a, um Achaean, Greek
aciēs, ēī *f.* edge, battle line, army†*
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
Amāzonis, idis *f.* Amazon, female warrior†
amīcus, ī *m.* friend†*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold†*
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
bellātrīx, īcis *f.* warrior†
cingulum, ī *n.* belt, girdle†
concurrō, ere, (cu)currī, **cursus** run together, fight with (*dat.*)†
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan†*
Ēōus, a, um of the dawn, eastern†
exanimus, a, um breathless, lifeless†
exserō, ere, uī, rtus thrust out, expose†
figō, ere, fīxī, fixus fix, fasten*
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, lament†*
Hector, oris, *acc.* **ora,** *m.* Trojan leader*
Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*
inermis, e unarmed†
lūnātus, a, um crescent, moon-shaped†
mamma, ae *f.* breast, pap†
Memnōn, onis *m.* Ethiopian king, son of Aurora and ally of the Trojans, slain by Achilles†
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand†*
mīrandus, a, um wonderful, marvelous
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
niger, gra, grum black, dusky†*
pelta, ae *f.* light shield†
Penthesilēa, ae *f.* queen of the Amazons, ally of the Trojans, slain by Achilles†
permisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle†
princeps, cipis *m.* (*f.*) chief, leader†
quoque also*
raptō (1) snatch, drag†
solum, ī *n.* soil, ground, earth*
spolium, (i)ī *n.* spoil(s), booty, plunder
subnectō, ere, x(u)ī, **xus** fasten beneath†
ter thrice, three times*
vendō, ere, didī, ditus sell†
vērō truly, indeed, but†
virgō, inis *f.* girl, maid(en)*

482. dīva (Pallas). solō: dat. of direction; App. 306; her eyes were directed to the ground, as a sign of sullen displeasure.

483. Hectora: acc., a Greek form; App. 68. This sixth picture represents the ransom of Hector's body from Achilles, who had dragged it thrice around the walls of Troy.

484. aurō: abl. of price; App. 336. **corpus vendēbat Achillēs (Priamō).**

485. (Aenēās) dat.

486. currūs: poetic plural; the chariot with which Achilles dragged Hector around Troy. **ut, ut, ut:** anaphora; App. 413.

487. spolia: taken by Achilles from Hector. **manūs inermīs:** as a suppliant.

488. principibus: dat., or abl. with **permixtum.**

489. Ēōāsque aciēs (agnōvit): Trojan allies from Ethiopia led by Memnon.

490. lūnātīs peltīs: abl. of quality; App. 330; crescent shields were characteristic of the Amazons.

493. virīs: dat. with the special verb, **concurrere. virgō:** (although) *a girl;* contrasted with **virīs.**

494–508. Dido visits the temple and gives audience to her subjects.

494. Dardaniō: *Trojan;* used here to indicate why these scenes had so much meaning for Aeneas.

dum stupet obtūtūque haeret dēfīxus *in* ūnō,
rēgīna ad templum, formā pulcherrima *Dīdō*,
incessit *magnā* juvenum stīpante catervā.
Quālis *in* Eurōtae rīpīs *aut per* juga Cynthī
exercet Dīāna chorōs, *quam* mīlle *secūtae*
hinc atque hinc glomerantur Orēades; *illa* pharetram
fert umerō gradiēnsque *deās* superēminet *omnīs*
(Lātōnae tacitum pertemptant gaudia *pectus*):
tālis erat Dīdō, tālem sē laeta ferēbat
per mediōs īnstāns operī *rēgnīsque futūrīs*.
Tum foribus *dīvae, mediā* testūdine templī,
saepta *armīs* soliōque altē subnixa resēdit.
Jūra *dabat* lēgēsque *virīs*, operumque *labōrem*
partibus aequābat jūstīs *aut* sorte *trahēbat*:

---

aequō (1) equal(ize)*
altē on high, loftily
caterva, ae *f.* band, troop, crowd†
chorus, ī *m.* chorus, dance, band†
Cynthus, ī *m.* mountain in Delos, birthplace of Apollo and Diana†
dēfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus fix, fasten
Dīāna, ae *f.* goddess of the hunt and of the mountains†
Eurōtās, ae *m.* river of Sparta, center of the worship of Diana†
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus busy, train*
foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance
forma, ae *f.* form, beauty, shape*
gaudium, (i)ī *n.* joy, rejoicing†
glomerō (1) gather, roll together†
gradior, ī, gressus step, go, proceed
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus hang, cling (to)*
incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus march, go (majestically)
īnstō, āre, stitī press on, urge (*dat.*)
jūgum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge†*
jūs, jūris *n.* law, justice, right
jūstus, a, um just, fair, right(eous)†
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man woman)*
Lātōna, ae *f.* mother of Apollo and Diana†
lēx, lēgis *f.* law, regulation, decree†
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
obtūtus, ūs *m.* gaze, view†
opus, eris *n.* work, deed, toil*
Orēas, adis *f.* Oread, a mountain nymph†
pertemptō (1) try, master, possess†
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, illustrious*
quālis, e such (as), of what sort*
resīdō, ere, sēdī sit down†
rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore†*
saepiō, īre, psī, ptus hedge in, inclose
solium, (i)ī *n.* throne, seat†
sors, rtis *f.* lot, fate, destiny*
stīpō (1) stuff, crowd, throng, stow
stupeō, ēre, uī stand agape, be dazed†
subnixus, a, um resting on (*abl.*)†
superēmineō, ēre tower above†
tacitus, a, um silent, speechless, still†
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
testūdō, inis *f.* tortoise, vault, dome†

---

496. formā: abl. of respect with **pulcherrima:** App. 325.

497. stīpante catervā: abl. abs.; App. 343.

498. Quālis: correlative with **tālis,** (l. 503)

499. Dīāna: with long **ī**; elsewhere with short **i.**

500. illa: Dīāna. hinc atque hinc: *on this side and on that; on both sides.*

501. (in) **umerō. deās (Orēadas).**

502. tacitum pectus: as indicating joy too deep for words.

504. per mediōs (virōs).

505. dīvae: *of the shrine* (lit. *of the goddess*).

505–506. (in) **foribus,** (in) **testūdine,** (in) **soliō.**

507. virīs (Tyriīs): her subjects. The use of temples for the transaction of public business was very common in ancient Rome; hence Vergil assigned a similar custom to the Carthaginians.

508. sorte trahēbat: *assigned the work by lot.*

AMAZONS GOING INTO BATTLE

A Greek vase in the Metropolitan Museum of Art.

Gramstorff Bros. *Turner*

DIDO BUILDING CARTHAGE

Turner's famous painting. The boys sailing toy ships in the foreground hint at the future naval greatness or Carthage and the fatal wars with Rome.

cum subitō *Aenēās* concursū accēdere *magnō*
Anthea Sergestum*que* *vidēt* fortem*que* Cloanthum
Teucrōrumque aliōs, āter quōs aequore turbō
dispulerat penitus*que aliās* āvēxerat *ōrās.*
Obstipuit *simul ipse, simul* percussus Achātēs
laetitiā*que* metū*que;* avidī conjungere *dextrās*
ardēbant; sed rēs animōs incognita turbat.
Dissimulant *et* nūbe cavā speculantur amictī
quae fortūna virīs, classem quō lītore linquant,
quid veniant; cūnctīs nam lēctī *nāvibus ībant*
ōrantēs veniam *et* templum *clāmōre petēbant.*
Postquam intrōgressī *et* cōram *data* cōpia *fandī,*
maximus Īlioneus placidō *sīc pectore* coepit:
"*Ō rēgīna, novam cui* condere *Juppiter urbem*

---

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach
Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
amiciō, īre, uī (ixī), ictus infold, wrap†
Antheus, eī, *acc.* **ea,** *m.* Trojan leader
āvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear away†
avidus, a, um eager, greedy†
cavus, a, um hollow*
Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
coepī, isse, coeptus begin†
concursus, ūs *m.* throng, crowd†
condō, ere, didī, ditus found, build*
conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join†
cōpia, ae *f.* abundance; opportunity†
cōram face to face, in the presence†
dispellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive apart, disperse, scatter†
dissimulō (1) hide, disguise†
fortis, e strong, brave, valiant*
Īlioneus, eī *m.* Trojan leader
incognitus, a, um unknown†
intrōgredior, ī, gressus enter, go in(to)†
laetitia, ae *f.* joy, gladness, delight†
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert†*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, anxiety, dread*
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
obstipēscō, ere, stipuī stand agape†*
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech†*
penitus deep within, deeply, wholly*
percutiō, ere, cussī, cussus strike, astound†
placidus, a, um calm, quiet, peaceful*
postquam after (that), when*
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader†*
speculor, ārī, ātus spy out, watch†
subitō suddenly*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
turbō, inis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm
turbō (1) confuse, disturb, perplex*
venia, ae *f.* favor, grace, pardon†

509–560. A deputation from the missing Trojan ships waits on Dido to complain of the outrages of her people and bewail the loss of their leader Aeneas.

509–512. cum Aenēās subitō videt accēdere Anthea (acc.) Sergestumque fortemque Cloanthum aliōsque Teucrōrum, quōs āter turbō dispulerat (in) aequore. concursū magnō: abl. of manner; App. 328. (ad) aliās ōrās.

513. ipse: Aeneas; see the note on l. 114. simul . . . simul = et . . . et. percussus (est.)

515. rēs incognita: the uncertainty of the situation keeps them silent.

516. Dissimulant (animōs).

517. quae (sit) fortūna: indir. quest.; App. 349. virīs: dat. of possession. (in) quō lītore.

517–518. linquant, veniant: subjunctives in indir. quest.; App. 349.

518. quid = cūr, *why?* (virī) lēctī. (ex) cūnctīs nāvibus.

519. clāmōre: abl. of manner; App. 328.

520. intrōgressī (sunt illī Teucrī) et data (est) cōpia fandī. fandī: *of speaking;* a gerund.

521. maximus (nātū): *the eldest, the leader.* Īlioneus: with the eu pronounced as a diphthong (one syllable). placidō pectore: as befitting his age and dignity.

522–523. condere, frēnāre: objects of dedit, *granted.*

jūstitiāque *dedit gentīs* frēnāre superbās,
Trōes *tē miserī, ventīs maria omnia* vectī,
ōrāmus; prohibē īnfandōs *ā nāvibus ignīs*,
parce *piō generī et* propius *rēs* aspice *nostrās*.
Nōn nōs aut ferrō Libycōs populāre penātīs
vēnimus, aut raptās *ad lītora* vertere praedās;
nōn ea vīs animō nec tanta superbia *victīs*.
Est locus, Hesperiam Grajī cognōmine *dīcunt*,
terra antīqua, potēns *armīs atque* ūbere glaebae;
Oenōtrī coluēre *virī; nunc fāma* minōrēs
Ītaliam dīxisse ducis *dē nōmine gentem*.
Hic cursus fuit,

---

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look at, see*
cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, cognomen
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, cherish, inhabit*
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chieftain*
frēnō (1) curb, check, restrain
glaeba, ae *f.* soil, clod, glebe†
Grajus, a, um Greek*
Hesperia, ae *f.* west land, Italy†
īnfandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
jūstitia, ae *f.* justice, equity†
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a district of North Africa*
minōrēs, um *m.* descendants†
Oenōtr(i)us, a, um Oenotrian, of Oenotria, in southern Italy†
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
parcō, ere, pepercī (**parsī**), **parsus** spare (*dat.*)
penātēs, ium *m.* household (gods)*
populō (1) ravage, plunder, devastate†
potēns, entis ruling, powerful*
praeda, ae *f.* booty, prey
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus keep off, prohibit†
prope near, close; *compar.* **propius**†*
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), seize*
superbia, ae *f.* pride, haughtiness†
superbus, a, um haughty, proud*
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
ūber, eris *n.* udder; fertility†
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, drive away*

---

523. gentīs: the native Libyan tribes.

524. Trōes miserī: in apposition with **nōs** the understood subject of **ōrāmus**. **ventīs vectī:** alliteration, heightening the pathos. (**per**) **maria omnia.**

525. ā nāvibus (nostris).

526. parce piō: alliteration. **piō generī:** the Trojans; **generī** is dat. with special verb; App. 297.

527. Nōn: emphatic. **populāre penātīs:** alliteration.

527–528. populāre, vertere: inf. of purpose.

529. vīs (est). victīs: referring to the capture of Troy by the Greeks. **animō, victīs:** datives of possession. **superbia (est).**

530. Grajī dīcunt (= **vocant**) (**illum locum**) **Hesperiam. Hesperia** literally means "*Land of the Evening*" or "*Western Land.*" Compare **Hesperus,** *the evening star.* This name for Italy came from the Greeks (**Grajī dīcunt**), as Vergil indicates. **Grajī:** pl. of **Grajus** and pronounced as though spelled **Grajjī**, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b*.

531. armīs, ūbere: abl. of respect or cause with **potēns**; App. 325, 332.

532. Oenōtrī: evidently derived from a Greek word, **Oenōtria,** "*Vineland,*" since grapes were much cultivated in Italy. **coluēre = coluērunt. fāma (est) = dīcunt,** and so followed by **īndir. disc.**; App. 263. **minōrēs:** subject of **dīxisse = vocāvisse.**

533. ducis: Italus was a legendary king of one of the native Italian tribes (the Oenotrians). The word *Italy* is probably related to the word **vitulus,** *bull,* and therefore means "*Land of Herds.*" **gentem, Ītaliam:** two accusatives; App. 316, *a*.

534. Hic cursus (nōbīs) fuit. There are more than fifty such incomplete lines in the *Aeneid*, one of the marks of the unfinished state of the poem at Vergil's death. See Introd. 5.

cum subitō adsurgēns *flūctū* nimbōsus Orīōn
in vada caeca tulit penitusque procācibus Austrīs
perque undās superante salō *perque* invia *saxa*
dispulit, *hūc* paucī vestrīs adnāvimus *ōrīs*.
Quod genus hoc hominum? *Quaeve hunc* tam barbara mōrem
permittit patria? Hospitiō prohibēmur harēnae;
bella cient *prīmāque* vetant cōnsistere *terrā*.
Sī genus hūmānum *et* mortālia temnitis *arma*,
at spērāte *deōs* memorēs fandī *atque* nefandī.
Rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō jūstior alter
nec pietāte *fuit, nec bellō major et armīs*.
Quem sī fāta virum servant, sī vēscitur *aurā*
aetheriā *neque* adhūc crūdēlibus occubat *umbrīs*,

adhūc as yet, still, so far†
adnō (1) swim, float (to) (*dat.*)†
adsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise†
aetherius, a, um of the upper air, ethereal
alter, era, erum the other (of two), second†*
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
barbarus, a, um foreign, savage†
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus arouse, excite, stir†*
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)*
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
dispellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive apart, scatter, disperse
fandus, a, um speakable, right
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
hospitium, (i)ī *n.* hospitality, refuge
hūmānus, a, um human, of men†
invius, a, um pathless, impenetrable†
jūstus, a, um just, fair, right(eous)
memor, oris mindful, remembering*
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, manner, law*
nefandus, a, um unspeakable, wrong†
nimbōsus, a, um stormy, rainy†
occubō, āre lie (dead)†
Ōrīōn, ōnis *m.* constellation, whose rising and setting come in the rainy season†
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty†*
penitus deep within, deeply, wholly*
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus allow, grant†
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, devotion, duty*
prōrāx, ācis wanton, boisterous†
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus keep off, prohibit
salum, ī *n.* the (salt) sea†
spērō (1) hope (for), expect*
subitō suddenly*
superō (1) overcome, surpass*
tam so, so much, so very, such†*
temnō, ere scorn, despise, disdain†
vadum, ī *n.* shallow, shoal, depth(s)
vēscor, ī feed on; breathe (*abl.*)†
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vetō, āre, uī, itus prohibit, forbid, prevent

535. flūctū: abl. of place where; App. 319.

536–538. procācibus Austrīs: abl. of means. tulit (nōs). dispulitque (nōs) procācibus Austrīs penitus perque undās perque invia saxa, salō superante (nōs).

537. superante salō: abl. abs.; App. 343.

538. paucī (nōs): subject of adnāvimus. vestrīs ōrīs = ad vestrās ōrās; dat. of direction; App. 306.

539. Quod genus (est) hoc. hoc: pronounced hocc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c*. hunc mōrem: the Trojans had not been allowed to beach and repair their ships (l. 551).

540. (ab) hospitiō.

541. (virī tuī) cient. vetant (nōs). (in) prīmā terrā: abl. of place, *on the first (part of, edge of) your land;* that is, *on the beach.*

543. memorēs (esse).

544. nōbīs: dat. of possession; App. 299. quō: abl. with compar.; App. 327.

545. pietāte, bellō, armīs: ablatives of respect; App. 325.

547. aetheriā: as opposed to the lower world. (in) umbrīs (mortis): abl. of place where; App. 319; *the lower world, Hades.*

nōn metus, officiō *nec tē* certāsse priōrem
paeniteat: *sunt et* Siculīs regiōnibus *urbēs*
armaque, Trojānō*que ā sanguine* clārus Acestēs.
Quassātam *ventīs* liceat subdūcere *classem*
et silvīs aptāre trabēs *et* stringere *rēmōs*,
sī datur Ītaliam sociīs et rēge receptō
tendere, *ut Ītaliam laetī* Latium*que petāmus*;
sīn absūmpta salūs, *et tē*, *pater* optime *Teucrum*,
pontus *habet* Libyae *nec* spēs *jam* restat Iūlī,
at freta Sīcaniae saltem *sēdēsque parātās*,
unde *hūc* advectī, *rēgemque petāmus Acestēn.*"
Tālibus Īlioneus; *cūnctī simul ōre* fremēbant
Dardanidae.

Tum breviter *Dīdō* vultum dēmissa profātur:

---

absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take away, destroy, consume†
advehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey (to)†
aptō (1) fit, shape, equip†
breviter shortly, briefly†
certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie†
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Dardanian, Trojan†
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let down, drop, lower*
fremō, ere, uī, itus murmur, applaud*
fretum, ī *n.* strait, sea†
Īlioneus, eī *m.* Trojan leader
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy*
Libya, ae *f.* district of North Africa*
licet, ēre, uit, itum be permitted†*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, anxiety, dread*
officium, (i)ī *n.* service, duty, kindness†
optimus, a, um best, noblest, finest†
paenitet, ēre, uit it repents†
pontus, ī *m.* sea*
prior, ius former, first*
profor, fārī, fātus speak, say†
quassō (1) shake, shatter†
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, recover*
regiō, ōnis *f.* region, district
restō, āre, stitī remain, survive†
saltem at least†
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, security, health
Sīcania, ae *f.* Sicily, a large island south of Italy†
Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily
sīn but if, if, however†
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
stringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus strip, graze†
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw up, beach, remove†
trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, timber
Trojānus, a, um Trojan*
unde whence, from which source*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face*

---

548. nōn (est) metus (nōbīs). certā-(vi)sse: App. 204. officiō: abl. of respect; App. 325.

549. paeniteat: vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254; *do not regret to have been the first to contend in rivalry of kindness.* sunt et(iam) (nōbīs in) Siculīs regiōnibus: even though Aeneas be dead, our Sicilian kinsmen will repay your kindness.

551. liceat (nōbīs) subdūcere classem (nostram) quassātam ventīs. ventīs: abl. of means; App. 331. liceat (nōbīs): vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

552. aptāre trabēs: for repairing the ships. (in) silvīs: abl. of place where; App. 319. stringere rēmōs: *trim* (*branches into*) *oars*, acc. of the thing effected; App. 307.

553–554. sociīs et rēge receptō: abl. abs.; receptō: agreeing with the nearer of the two nouns which it modifies. ut laetī petāmus Ītaliam Latiumque, sī (nōbīs) datur tendere (cursum ad, in) Ītaliam. ut . . . petāmus: purpose; App. 359.

555. absūmpta (est). pater optime: Aeneas. Teuc(rō)rum.

557. sēdēs (in Sīcaniā) parātās.

558. advectī (sumus). petāmus: vol. (hortatory) subj.; App. 254.

559. Tālibus (dictīs) Īlioneus (dīxit).

561–578. Dido replies kindly and consoles the Trojans, offering them assistance and promising to send messengers in search of Aeneas.

561. vultum: object of dēmissa, used in the "middle" voice; App. 309; *with*

"Solvite corde metum, *Teucrī*, sēclūdite *cūrās*.
Rēs dūra *et rēgnī* novitās *mē tālia* cōgunt
mōlīrī *et* lātē *fīnīs* custōde tuērī.
Quis genus Aeneadum, *quis Trojae* nesciat *urbem*,
virtūtēsque *virōsque aut tantī* incendia *bellī*?
Nōn obtūnsa adeō gestāmus *pectora* Poenī,
nec tam āversus *equōs Tyriā* Sōl jungit *ab urbe*.
Seu *vōs* Hesperiam *magnam* Sāturnialque *arva*
sīve Erycis *fīnīs rēgemque* optātis *Acestēn*,
auxiliō tūtōs dīmittam opibusque juvābō.
Vultis et hīs mēcum pariter cōnsidere *rēgnīs*?
Urbem quam statuō, vestra *est*; subdūcite *nāvīs*;
Trōs *Tyriusque mihī nūllō* discrīmine *agētur*.

---

adeō so (far), even†
Aeneadae, ārum *m.* descendants (followers) of Aeneas
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus force, compel†*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus settle, rest†*
cor, cordis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings*
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian)†*
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send away, let go, dismiss†
discrīmen, inis *n.* difference, crisis
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern†*
Eryx, ycis *m.* son of Venus and half-brother of Aeneas, who settled in Sicily where he gave his name to a mountain and city†
gestō (1) bear, wear, carry
Hesperia, ae *f.* west land, Italy
incendium, (i)ī *n.* fire, conflagration†
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
lātē far and wide, widely
metus, ūs *m.* fear, anxiety, dread*
mōlior, īrī, ītus work, contrive, make
nesciō, īre, īvī, (ī) not know, be ignorant†
novitās, ātis *f.* novelty, newness†
obtūndō, ere, tudī, tū(n)sus blunt, dull†
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, wealth, power
optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for)*
pariter equally, on equal terms†*
Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian
Sāturnius, a, um Saturnian, of Saturn, an early Italian god who ruled during the Golden Age
sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus exclude, shut out†
seu, sīve or (if), whether
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day; **Sōl, Sōlis** sun-god*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, dismiss, relax*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, build†
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw up, beach, remove
tam so, so much, so very, such*
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, protect†*
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
virtūs, ūtis *f.* valor, manhood, excellence†*

---

downcast look, because of her modesty, a characteristic much cultivated and highly prized among ancient women, especially young women.

563. Rēs dūra: *harsh necessity*, referring to the dangers to the new settlement from the wild Libyan tribes and from her brother Pygmalion. **tālia:** the harsh treatment of which the Trojans complain.

565. Quis genus Aenead(ār)um (nesciat)? nesciat: deliberative, subj.; App. 348.

566. tantī bellī: the Trojan War.

567. Nōn obtūnsa adeō pectora: *we are not so dull*, that we do not know the name and fame of Troy and the Trojans.

568. nec tam āversus, etc.: *we are not so far removed from the rest of the world with its activities.* The rising and setting of the sun were thought of as due to the course of the sun-god in his chariot.

569. Sāturnia = *Italian*, because Saturn was the chief god of Italy, where he had ruled during the Golden Age.

570. Erycis fīnīs: Sicily.

571. (vōs) tūtōs.

572. (in) rēgnīs.

573. Urbem: attracted from the nom. into the case of the following relative **quam**; App. 242, *a*.

574. Trōs Tyriusque, etc.: this expression has become proverbial for impartial.

Atque utinam *rēx ipse* Notō compulsus *eōdem*
adforet Aenēās! Equidem *per lītora* certōs
dīmittam *et* Libyae lūstrāre extrēma *jubēbō*,
sī quibus ējectus *silvīs aut urbibus errat.*"
Hīs animum arrēctī *dictīs et* fortis Achātēs
et pater Aenēās jamdūdum ērumpere nūbem
ardēbant. Prior *Aenēān* compellat Achātēs:
"*Nāte deā, quae nunc animō* sententia *surgit?*
Omnia tūta *vidēs, classem sociōsque* receptōs.
Ūnus abest, *mediō in flūctū quem vīdimus ipsī*
summersum; *dictīs* respondent cētera *mātris.*"
Vix ea fātus erat cum circumfūsa repente
scindit *sē* nūbēs *et in* aethera purgat apertum.
Restitit *Aenēās* clārāque *in lūce* refulsit
ōs umerōsque deō similis; *namque ipsa* decōram
caesariem *nātō* genetrīx *lūmenque* juventae

---

absum, esse, āfuī be absent, lack†
Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
aether, eris, *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
apertus, a, um open(ed), clear
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, prick up
caesariēs, ēī *f.* (long) hair, locks†
certus, a, um sure, trustworthy*
cēterus, a, um the rest, the other(s)†
circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour round†
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive, force†
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to†
decōrus, a, um beautiful, graceful, seemly†
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send away, let go, dismiss
ējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw out, eject†
equidem indeed, surely, to be sure*
ērumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break (out), burst (forth)†
extrēmus, a, um furthest, last, extreme*
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant*
genetrīx, īcis *f.* mother†
jamdūdum long ago, long since, for some time†
juventa, ae *f.* youth, young manhood†
Libya, ae *f.* district of North Africa*
lūstrō (1) purify, survey, traverse*
Notus, ī *m.* (south) wind
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
prior, ius former, sooner, first*
purgō (1) clear, cleanse, melt†
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, recover*
refulgeō, ēre, lsī gleam, shine, glitter
repente suddenly†
respondeō, ēre, dī, ōnsus (cor)respond†*
restō, āre, stitī remain
scindō, ere, scidī, scissus split, part
sententia, ae *f.* opinion, purpose
similis, e like, similar (*dat., gen.*)*
summergō (subm–), **ere, rsī, rsus** sink, drown
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
utinam would that! O that!†

---

justice. **Tyrius:** *Carthaginian.* **mihī:** dat. of agent.; App. 302.

576. adforet: opt. subj.; App. 253. **certōs (virōs).**

578. sī: *in case that.* **ējectus (ex undīs). (in) silvīs, (in) urbibus. quibus:** *any,* indef. pronoun.

579–594. To the surprise of all, Aeneas suddenly appears.

579. animum: acc. of respect; App. 311.

581. Aenēān: acc., a Greek form.

582. Nāte deā: *goddess-born,* **deā** being abl. of source; App. 323. **(in) animō.**

584. Ūnus: Orontēs: see ll. 113 ff.

585. dictīs mātris (tuae): referring to the prophecy of Venus (ll. 390 ff.).

586. fātus erat (Achātēs).

587. (nūbēs sē) purgat.

589–591. ōs umerōsque: accusatives of respect; App. 311. **namque genetrīx ipsa (Venus) adflā(ve)rat nātō (suō) decōram caesariem lūmenque purpureum juventae et laetōs honōrēs. ipsa genetrīx:** Venus, as goddess of beauty. **nātō:**

purpureum *et laetōs oculīs* adflārat *honōrēs:*
quāle *manūs* addunt eborī decus, *aut ubi* flāvō
argentum Pariusve lapis circumdatur *aurō.*
Tum sīc rēgīnam adloquitur *cūnctīsque* repente
imprōvīsus *ait:* "Cōram, *quem quaeritis, adsum,*
Trōius *Aenēās,* Libycīs *ēreptus ab undīs.*
Ō sōla īnfandōs *Trojae* miserāta *labōrēs,*
quae nōs, relliquiās *Danaum, terraeque marisque*
omnibus exhaustīs *jam cāsibus, omnium* egēnōs,
urbe, domō sociās, grātēs persolvere dignās
nōn opis *est nostrae, Dīdō, nec* quidquid ubīque *est*
gentis Dardaniae, *magnum quae* sparsa *per* orbem.
Dī tibi, sī qua piōs respectant *nūmina, sī quid*

---

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
adflō (1) breathe on (*dat.*)†
adloquor, ī, locūtus address, accost
argentum, ī *n.* silver
circumdō, āre, dedī, datus surround†
cōram face to face, in the presence
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
decus, oris *n.* ornament, beauty, dignity
dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, seemly†
ebur, oris *n.* ivory†
egēnus, a, um needy, lacking (*gen.*)†
exhaurīō, īre, hausī, haustus drain, exhaust†
flāvus, a, um tawny, yellow†
grātēs, ium *f.* gratitude, thanks†
imprōvīsus, a, um unexpected, unforeseen†
īnfandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
lapis, idis *m.* stone†
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a district of North Africa*
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate†*
ops, opis *f.* help, power, resources, wealth*
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, earth*
Parius, a, um Parian, of Paros, a Greek island noted for its fine marble; marble†
persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus pay (fully)†
purpureus, a, um red, purple, radiant
quālis, e such (as), of what sort, as*
quisquis, quidquid whoever, whatever
re(l)liquiae, ārum *f.* rest, remnant, leavings
repente suddenly
respectō (1) regard, look at†
sociō (1) join, ally, share, associate
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, disperse†*
Trōius, a, um Trojan*
ubīque everywhere, anywhere†

---

dat. with compound **adflā(ve)rat**; App. 298. **lūmen purpureum**: *ruddy glow.* **laetōs honōrēs**: *joyous grace.*

592. (**tāle**) **decus quāle**: (*such*) *beauty as.* **manūs**: nom. pl.; *the hands* (of an artist).

593. **aurō**: abl. of means; App. 331.

594–612. Aeneas profusely thanks Dido for her kindness.

594. **cūnctīs**: dat., depends on **imprōvīsus.**

595. (**ego**), **quem quaeritis, adsum.**

597. **Ō** (**tū**) **sōla.**

598. **quae**: subj. of **sociās**, l. 600. **re(l)liquiās Dana(ōr)um**: see the note on l. 30.

599. **omnium**: gen. with adj.; App. 287.

600. **urbe, domō**: abl. of means or place where. Dido had not only admitted the Trojans to the city, but had offered them the hospitality of her own home.

601–602. **opis**: pred. gen. of possession; App. 283; *it is not in our power.* **nec** (**est opis Dardaniae gentis**), **quidquid Dardaniae gentis est ubīque quae** (**est**) **sparsa per magnum orbem** (**terrārum**). **nec quidquid**: *nor* (*in the power of*) *whatever of the Trojan race there is anywhere.* **gentis**: part. gen.; App. 286.

603. **Dī**: emphatic by position; subject of **ferant** in l. 605. **qua, quid**: indef. **tibi**: with **ferant** in l. 605.

603–604. **sī quid**, etc.: *if justice is* (*counts for*) *anything anywhere.* **sibi**: dat. of reference; App. 301. **rēctī**: gen. with the adj. **cōnscius**; App. 287.

ūsquam jūstitia *est et mēns sibi* cōnscia rēctī,
praemia digna *ferant*. *Quae tē* tam *laeta tulērunt*
saecula? *Quī tantī tālem* genuēre *parentēs?*
In freta *dum* fluviī current, *dum montibus umbrae*
lūstrābunt convexa, polus *dum sīdera* pascet,
semper *honōs nōmenque tuum* laudēsque *manēbunt*,
quae *mē* cumque *vocant terrae.*" *Sīc fātus* amīcum
Īlionēa *petit dextrā* laevāque Serestum,
post *aliōs*, fortemque Gyān fortemque Cloanthum.

Obstipuit *prīmō* aspectū Sīdōnia *Dīdō*,
cāsū deinde *virī tantō, et sīc ōre* locūta *est:*
"*Quis tē, nāte deā, per tanta* perīcula *cāsus*
īnsequitur? *Quae vīs immānibus* applicat *ōrīs?*
Tūne ille Aenēās quem Dardaniō *Anchīsae*
alma Venus Phrygiī genuit Simoëntis *ad undam?*

almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)
amīcus, ī *m.* friend*
applico, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus) drive to†
a(d)spectus, ūs *m.* sight, view†
Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
cōnscius, a, um conscious, aware†
convexum, ī *n.* hollow, valley, sky
eumque; *see* **quīcumque**
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus run, flow†
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
deinde then, thereupon, next*
dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, seemly
fluvius, (i)ī *m.* river, stream†
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant*
fretum, ī *n.* strait, sea
gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, beget
Gyās, ae, *acc.* **ān,** *m.* Trojan leader
Īlioneus, eī, *acc.* **ēa,** *m.* Trojan leader
īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue*
jūstitia, ae *f.* justice, right(eousness)
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left†*
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say†*
lūstrō (1) survey, traverse, purify*
obstipēscō, ere, stipuī stand agape*
pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed, graze
perīc(u)lum, ī *n.* risk, danger, peril†
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
polus, ī *m.* pole, sky, heaven
post after, behind (*acc.*); afterward, next*
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
quī, quae, quod; *see* **quīcumque**
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque who(so)ever, what(so)ever*
rēctum, ī *n.* right, justice, virtue
saeculum, ī *n.* generation, age
semper always, ever, forever†*
Serestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
Sīdōnius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a famous Phoenician city
Simoïs, entis *m.* river near Troy
tam so (much, very), such*
ūsquam anywhere, at any time†
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*

605. ferant: opt. subj.; App. 253.

606. tālem (fēminam, *lady*). **genuēre** = **genuērunt.**

607. montibus: dat. of reference or abl. of place.

608. polus sīdera pascet: according to some of the ancient philosophers, fine particles of fire in the highest heavens furnish the fuel for the light of the stars.

610. quae: to be taken with **cumque**; this separation of the parts of a compound word is called *tmesis;* App. 445.

611. Īlionēa: acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 69. **dextrā (manū), laevā (manū)**: an example of chiasmus; App. 420.

612. post: adverbial, *afterward, next.* **Gyān**: acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

613–630. Dido welcomes Aeneas, telling him that she already knew of him and his fame.

613–614. aspectū (virī). cāsū: abl. of cause; App. 332. **dēinde**: two syllables by synizesis; App. 403.

615. nāte deā: *goddess-born.* **Quis cāsus**: the ordinary form of the interrogative adj. is **quī**; App. 111, *a.*

616. ōrīs: dat. with compound; App. 298.

617. Tūne = esne tū. **Dardaniō Anchīsae**: note the hiatus and the spondaic line; App. 399, 395.

618. alma: a common epithet of Venus.

Atque equidem Teucrum meminī Sīdōna *venīre*
fīnibus expulsum *patriīs*, *nova rēgna petentem*
auxiliō Bēlī; *genitor tum* Bēlus opīmam
vāstābat Cyprum *et victor* diciōne *tenēbat*.
Tempore jam ex illō cāsus *mihi* cognitus *urbis*
Trojānae *nōmenque tuum rēgēsque* Pelasgī.
Ipse hostis *Teucrōs* īnsignī laude *ferēbat*
sēque ortum *antīquā Teucrōrum ā* stirpe *volēbat*.
Quāre *agite*, *Ō tēctīs*, juvenēs, succēdite *nostrīs*.
Mē quoque *per multōs* similis *fortūna labōrēs*
jactātam *hāc* dēmum *voluit* cōnsistere *terrā*.
Nōn ignāra malī *miserīs* succurrere disco."
Sīc memorat; *simul Aenēān in* rēgia *dūcit*
tēcta, *simul dīvum* templīs indīcit *honōrem*.

auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
Bēlus, ī *m.* Phoenician king†
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus learn; know†
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast), halt*
Cyprus, ī *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean†
dēmum at length, finally†
diciō, ōnis *f.* sway, rule, power
discō, ere, didicī learn (how)†
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive out, banish†
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) stranger, enemy, foe*
ignārus, a, um ignorant, inexperienced*
indīcō, ere, dixī, dictus appoint, decree†
īnsignis, e distinguished, marked*
jactō (1) toss, buffet*
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
meminī, isse remember, recall
memorō (1) recount, (re)call, say*
opīmus, a, um rich, fertile, fat†
orior, īrī, ortus rise, spring†
Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek†
quārē wherefore, therefore, why†
quoque also*
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
Sīdōn, ōnis, *acc.* ōna, *f.* famous Phoenician city†
similis, e similar, like*
stirps, pis *f.* stock, stem, race†
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go under, approach, enter (*dat.*)†
succurrō, ere, currī, cursus help, aid (*dat.*)†
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
Teucer (crus), crī *m.* early Trojan king†
Trojānus, a, um Trojan*
vastō (1) ravage, (lay) waste, devastate

619. Sīdōna: acc., a Greek form; App. 68. **Teucrum:** subj. of **venīre**. He had been expelled by his father, Telamon, for not bringing back his brother Ajax safely from the Trojan War, and had gone to Phoenicia. Ajax had been disgraced in the Greek army, had gone mad, and had committed suicide.

621. genitor (meus).

622. (Cyprum) tenēbat.

623. cognitus (est).

624. rēgēs Pelasgī: such as Agamemnon, Menelaüs, Achilles, Diomedes, Ulysses, and Nestor.

625. Ipse (Teucer) hostis: (*Teucer*) *himself* (*though*) *an enemy*. **ferēbat:** *extolled*. **laude:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

626. volēbat: *would have it* (*that*). Note that **volēbat** rhymes with **ferēbat** at the end of l. 625. **ortum (esse).**

627. tēctīs: dat. with compound; App. 298.

629. (in) hāc terrā.

630. malī miserīs: the effect is heightened by bringing these two words together, and by the alliteration. **miserīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

631–642. Dido escorts Aeneas and his party to her palace and prepares to entertain them at dinner.

631. Aenēān: acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

632. dīv(ōr)um. (in) templīs: abl. of place where; App. 319. **honōrem:** *an honor* (*to the gods*), *a sacrifice*.

Nec minus intereā *sociīs ad lītora mittit*
vīgintī taurōs, *magnōrum* horrentia centum
terga suum, pinguīs centum *cum mātribus* agnōs,
mūnera laetitiamque *dii.*
At domus interior rēgālī splendida luxū
instruitur, *mediīsque parant* convīvia *tēctīs;*
arte labōrātae vestēs ostrōque superbō,
ingēns argentum mēnsīs, caelātaque *in aurō*
fortia facta *patrum*, seriēs *longissima rērum*
per tot *ducta virōs antīquā ab* orīgine *gentis.*
Aenēās (*neque* enim *patrius* cōnsistere *mentem*
passus *amor*) rapidum *ad nāvīs* praemittit Achātēn,
Ascaniō *ferat haec ipsumque ad moenia dūcat;*
omnis in Ascaniō cārī *stat cūra parentis.*

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
agnus, ī *m.* lamb†
argentum, ī *n.* silver
ars, artis *f.* art(istry), skill, artifice†*
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
caelō (1) engrave, carve, chase†
cārus, a, um dear, fond, beloved*
centum hundred*
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast), rest*
convīvium, (i)ī *n.* banquet, feast†
enim for, indeed, truly*
factum, ī *n.* deed, undertaking, exploit*
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant*
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, tremble*
Instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus array, equip, build, instruct†
intereā meanwhile, meantime*
interior, ius inside, inner
labōrō (1) work, form†
laetitia, ae *f.* joy, gladness, delight
luxus, ūs *m.* luxury, magnificence†
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
minor, us less, smaller, slighter†
orīgō, inis *f.* origin, beginning, source
ostrum, ī *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson†
patior, ī, passus suffer, endure, allow*
pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus send (before, forth)†
rapidus, a, um swift, hurrying*
rēgālis, e royal, regal, kingly†
seriēs, ēī *f.* succession, series, row†
splendidus, a, um bright, resplendent†
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
sūs, suis *m.* (*f.*) hog, pig, swine†
taurus, ī *m.* bull, bullock, ox†*
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
tot so many*
vestis, is *f.* robe, cloth(ing), tapestry*
vīgintī twenty†

633. sociīs (Aenēae). Nec minus: *likewise, moreover.*

635. suum: gen. pl. of **sūs.**

636. mūnera: (*as*) *gifts*, in apposition with **taurōs, terga, agnōs. dii:** gen. of **diēs**, an old form. Another incomplete line; cf. l. 534 and note.

637. interior domus: *the inner* (*part of the*) *palace.*

638. (in) **tēctīs.**

639. vestēs (instruuntur). arte: abl. of manner; App. 328; dependent on **labōrātae. ostrō superbō:** abl. of quality; App. 330. The Tyrian "purple" was famous; cf. line 337.

640. ingēns: *massive* or *a vast amount.* (in) **mēnsīs.**

641. fortia facta: alliteration. **patrum:** *of her ancestors.*

642. ducta: modifies **seriēs** (l. 641).

643–656. Aeneas sends Achates to bring Ascanius, and some costly presents for Dido.

644. passus (est).

645. Ascaniō: dat. of direction; (**ut**) **ferat, dūcat:** purpose; App. 306; or substantive clauses developed from the volitive, dependent upon the idea of bidding implied in **praemittit Achātēn**; App. 360.

Mūnera praetereā Īliacīs *ērepta* ruīnīs
ferre jubet, pallam signīs *aurōque* rigentem
et circumtextum croceō vēlāmen acanthō,
ornātūs Argīvae Helenae, *quōs illa* Mycēnīs,
Pergama *cum peteret* inconcessōsque hymenaeōs,
extulerat, *mātris* Lēdae mīrābile *dōnum;*
praetereā scēptrum, Īlionē *quod* gesserat ōlim,
maximo nātārum *Priamī,* collōque monīle
bācātum, *et* duplicem gemmīs *aurōque* corōnam.
Haec celerāns iter *ad nāvīs tendēbat* Achātēs.

At Cytherēa *novās* artīs, *nova pectore* versat
cōnsilia, *ut* faciem mūtātus *et ōra* Cupīdō

---

acanthus, ī *m.* acanthus, a flowering plant†
Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
Argīvus, a, um Argive, of Argos, a Greek city
ars, artis *f.* art(istry), skill, artifice*
bācātus, a, um set (strung) with pearls†
celerō (1) hasten, speed, hurry
circumtexō, ere, uī, xtus embroider, weave around†
collum, ī *n.* neck†*
cōnsilium, (i)ī *n.* plan, advice
corōna, ae *f.* crown, garland†
croceus, a, um yellow, saffron†
Cupīdō, inis *m.* Cupid, god of love†
Cytherēa, ae *f.* the Cytherean, Venus, who was born on the island of Cythera
duplex, icis double, two(fold)
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry off, lift*
faciēs, ēī *f.* face, appearance†*
gemma, ae *f.* gem, jewel†
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on), wear, wage*
Helena, ae *f.* Helen, famous Greek woman, married to Menelaüs; she eloped with Paris and thus brought on the Trojan War†
hymenaeus, ī *m.* (god of) marriage†
Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*
Īlionē, ēs *f.* eldest daughter of Priam†
inconcessus, a, um illegal, forbidden†
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
Lēda, ae *f.* mother of Helen†
mīrābilis, e wonderful, marvelous
monīle, is *n.* collar, necklace†
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter†*
Mycēnae, ārum *f.* Greek city
nāta, ae *f.* daughter
ōlim once, at some time*
ornātus, ūs *m.* ornament, adornment†
palla, ae *f.* cloak, mantle, robe†
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
praetereā besides, henceforth*
rigēns, entis stiff, rigid†
ruīna, ae *f.* downfall, ruin
scēptrum, ī *n.* staff, scepter, power
signum, ī *n.* sign, token, figure*
vēlāmen, inis *n.* garment, robe, veil†
versō (1) keep turning, revolve†

---

647. (ex) ruīnīs: abl. of separation; App. 340. **Mūnera:** cf. l. 636; such an exchange of gifts between host and guest was common in antiquity and is still found among many peoples.

648. (Achātēn) ferre jubet.

649. acanthō: a common element in the decorative art of antiquity and well known from its use as one of the features of the capital of the Corinthian column.

650. ornātūs: acc. pl., apposition with **pallam** and **vēlāmen**, which in turn are in apposition with **mūnera**. **Mycēnīs:** place from which; App. 320.

651. peteret: **cum** temporal, with a long final syllable before the pause and under the metrical accent; App. 394, *a*.

inconcessōs hymenaeōs: her fateful marriage with Paris.

653. Īlionē: nom., a Greek form; App. 66.

654. maxima (nātū): *eldest.* **collō:** dat. of purpose; *a collar for the neck.*

655. gemmīs aurōque: abl. of means or of manner; App. 331, 328.

656. Haec: obj. of **celerāns.**

657–698. Venus substitutes Cupid for Ascanius, that Dido may fall in love with Aeneas.

657. (in) pectore. novās, nova: rhetorical repetition, called anaphora.

658. faciem et ōra: objects of the "middle" participle **mūtātus**; App. 309.

prō dulcī Ascaniō *veniat, dōnīsque furentem*
incendat *rēgīnam atque* ossibus implicet *ignem.*
Quippe *domum* timet ambiguam *Tyriōsque* bilinguīs,
ūrit atrōx *Jūnō et sub noctem cūra* recursat.
Ergō *hīs* āligerum *dictīs* adfātur Amōrem:
"*Nāte, meae vīrēs, mea magna* potentia, *sōlus,*
nāte, patrīs summī quī tēla Typhōea temnis,
ad tē cōnfugiō *et* supplex *tua nūmina* poscō.
Frāter *ut Aenēās pelagō tuus omnia circum*
lītora jactētur odiīs *Jūnōnis* acerbae,
nōta *tibi, et nostrō* doluistī saepe dolōre.
Nunc Phoenissa *tenet Dīdō* blandīs*que* morātur

acerbus, a, um bitter, cruel, harsh†
adfor, fārī, fātus address, speak to†
āliger, era, erum winged†
ambiguus, a, um doubtful, deceitful†
Amor, ōris *m.* Love, Cupid†
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
atrōx, ōcis dark, fierce, savage†
bilinguis, e double-tongued, dishonest†
blandus, a, um caressing, persuasive†
cōnfugiō, ere, fūgī flee (for help)†
doleō, ēre, uī, itus grieve, suffer
dolor, ōris *m.* pain, grief, anger, passion*
dulcis, e sweet, dear*
ergō therefore, then†*
frāter, tris *m.* brother*
implicō, āre, uī (āvī), itus (ātus) infold, mingle, encircle†
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, fire†*
jactō (1) toss, buffet*
moror, ārī, ātus delay, linger; detain†*
nōtus, a, um (well)known, familiar*
odium, (i)ī *n.* hate, hatred, enmity
os, ossis *n.* bone†*
Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician (woman)†
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek*
potentia, ae *f.* power, might, strength†
prō before, for (*abl.*)*
quippe truly, forsooth, surely, indeed
recursō (1) keep recurring, return†
saepe often*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
temnō, ere scorn, despise, disdain
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread†*
Typhōeus, a, um Typhoean, of Typhoeus, a giant who while trying to capture heaven was slain by Jupiter with his thunderbolt†
ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn, inflame†

659. dōnīs: abl. of means with **incendet.** **furentem:** proleptic; App. 440; *may inflame the mad queen*, i.e., *may inflame the queen to madness.* See the note on l. 69.

659–660. veniat, incendat, implicet: purpose; App. 359.

660. ossibus: *her innermost nature*, where her deepest feelings were. **ossibus:** dat. with a compound; App. 298. **ignem (amōris).**

661. ambiguam, bilinguīs: one's enemies are likely to be characterized as lying scoundrels. The Romans came to hate the Carthaginians during the Punic Wars so bitterly that **Pūnica fidēs** became synonymous for treachery.

662. ūrit (Venerem) atrōx Jūnō: (*the thought of*) *cruel Juno inflames* (*Venus with anxiety*).

664. sōlus: nom., although preceded by the voc. **nāte.**

665. patris summī: Jovis. tēla: thunderbolts with which Jupiter overthrew the giant Typhoeus, who along with the other giants was attempting to capture heaven by storm. The ancients loved to represent Cupid as scorning the thunderbolts of Jove, as a mark of the resistless power of Love. This was sometimes summed up in the proverb **omnia vincit amor.**

666. supplex: (*as*) *a suppliant.*

667–669. ut frāter . . . nōta (sunt): *how your brother* (*Aeneas*) *is tossed about is known to you.* **(in) pelagō.**

668. jactētur: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. The last syllable is lengthened before the pause under the metrical accent; App. 394, *a.*

669. nōta (sunt): for **nōtum est;** a Greek construction. **nostrō = meō;** compare the use of the "editorial we" in English. **doluistī dolōre:** pleonasm; App. 438.

670. (eum) tenet.

vōcibus, et vereor *quō sē* Jūnōnia vertant
hospitia: *haud tantō* cessābit cardine *rērum.*
Quōcircā *capere ante* dolīs *et* cingere *flammā*
rēgīnam meditor, *nē quō sē nūmine* mūtet,
sed magnō Aenēae mēcum teneātur amōre.
Quā *facere id possīs nostram nunc accipe mentem:*
rēgius accītū cārī *genitōris ad urbem*
Sīdoniam *puer īre parat, mea maxima cūra,*
dōna ferēns pelagō et flammīs restantia *Trojae;*
hunc ego sōpītum *somnō super alta* Cythēra
aut super Īdalium sacrātā *sēde* recondam,
nē quā scīre dolōs *mediusve* occurrere *possit.*
Tū faciem *illīus noctem nōn* amplius *ūnam*
falle dolō *et* nōtōs *puerī puer* indue vultūs,
ut, cum tē gremiō *accipiet laetissima Dīdō*

---

accītus, ūs *m.* summons, call†
amplius more, longer, farther†
cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, crisis
cārus, a, um dear, fond, beloved*
cessō (1) delay, cease, hesitate†
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird*
Cythēra, ōrum *n.* island south of Greece, birthplace of Venus†
dolus, ī *m.* trick, deceit, wiles, fraud*
faciēs, ēī *f.* face, appearance*
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, counterfeit†*
gremium, (i)ī *n.* lap, bosom, embrace†
hospitium, (i)ī *n.* hospitality, welcome
Īdalium, (i)ī *n.* mountain of Cyprus, sacred to Venus†
induō, ere, uī, ūtus put on, don†
Jūnōnius, a, um of Juno†
meditor, ārī, ātus consider, plan, intend†
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
nōtus, a, um (well)known, familiar*
occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus (run to) meet, thwart (*dat.*)†
quā, by what (any) way (means), how, where(by), in any way
quōcircā wherefore†
recōndō, ere, dīdī, ditus hide, establish†
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
restō, āre, stitī remain, survive
sacrō (1) consecrate, hallow, dedicate†*
sciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus know (how)
Sīdōnius, a, um Sidonian, Phoenician
sōpītus, a, um asleep, sleeping, lulled†
vereor, ērī, itus fear, dread†
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face*

---

671. Jūnōnia: Venus suspects Juno as having inspired the hospitality of Dīdo. **vertant:** subj. in indir. quest.; App. 349.

672. cardine: *at such a crisis*, abl. of time when; App. 322.

673. capere dolīs, cingere flammā: military terms. **flammā (amōris).**

674. quō: indefinite. **mūtet:** negative purpose; App. 359. **nūmine (Jūnōnis).**

675. (ut) teneātur (Dīdō): purpose; App. 359.

676. possīs: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349.

677. accītū: abl. of cause; App. 332. **urbem Sīdoniam = Carthāginem.** See note on Sīdōnia in l. 446.

677–678. rēgius puer: Ascanius.

679. (ē, ex) pelagō et flammīs: abl. of separation; App. 340.

680–681. somnō: with **sōpītum**, abl. of means or manner; pleonasm; App. 438. **Cythēra, Īdalium:** favorite haunts of Venus.

681. (in) sacrātā sēde: in some temple, shrine, or holy place.

682. quā (viā): indefinite. **possit (Ascanius):** negative purpose; App. 359. **occurrere (dolīs):** and thus interfere with my plans.

683. noctem nōn amplius ūnam: *for one night, no longer.* **noctem:** acc. of duration; App. 314.

684. puerī puer: brought together, to show how easy the masquerade would be for Cupid.

685–688. ut . . . īnspīrēs . . . fallās: purpose; App. 359. **(in) gremiō. laticem Lyaeum:** alliteration. **laticem Lyaeum = vīnum,** *wine*, because Lyaeus, another

rēgālīs *inter* mēnsās laticem*que* Lyaeum,
cum dabit amplexūs *atque* ōscula dulcia fīget,
occultum īnspīrēs *ignem* fallās*que* venēnō."
Pāret *Amor dictīs* cārae genetrīcis, *et* ālās
exuit *et* gressū gaudēns incēdit Iūlī.
At Venus Ascaniō placidam *per* membra quiētem
inrigat, *et* fōtum gremiō *dea tollit in altōs*
Īdaliae lūcōs, *ubi* mollis amāracus *illum*
flōribus *et* dulcī aspīrāns complectitur *umbrā*.
Jamque ībat dictō pārēns *et dōna* Cupīdō
rēgia portābat *Tyriīs* duce *laetus* Achātē.
Cum venit, aulaeīs *jam sē rēgīna* superbīs
aureā composuit spondā *mediamque* locāvit,

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
āla, ae *f.* wing*
amāracus, ī *m.* (*f.*) sweet marjoram†
amplexus, ūs *m.* embrace, fold†
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
a(d)spīrō (1) breathe (on), blow on†
aulaea, ōrum *n.* curtains, tapestry†
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
cārus, a, um dear, fond, beloved*
complector, ī, exus embrace, infold†
compōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus compose, construct, settle
Cupīdō, inis *m.* Cupid, god of love
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fragrant*
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chieftain*
exuō, ere, uī, ūtus put off, doff†
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, counterfeit*
figō, ere, fixī, fixus fix, fasten, plant*
flōs, flōris *m.* flower, blossom, bloom†
foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus cherish, fondle
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult†
genetrīx, īcis *f.* mother
gremium, (i)ī *n.* lap, bosom, embrace
gressus, ūs *m.* step, walk, gait
Īdalia, ae *f.* mountain of Cyprus, sacred to Venus
incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go (majestically), stride
inrigō (1) irrigate, steep, diffuse†
īnspīrō (1) breathe in(to), inspire†
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
latex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine†
locō (1) locate, place, establish*
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, forest*
Lyaeus, a, um Lyaean, of Lyaeus (Bacchus), god of wine†
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, part*
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
mollis, e soft, gentle, tender†
occulō, ere, uī, ultus hide, conceal
ōsculum, ī *n.* dainty lip, kiss
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus yield, obey (*dat.*)†
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
portō (1) carry (away), bear, bring*
quiēs, ētis *f.* rest, sleep, peace†*
rēgālis, e royal, regal, kingly
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
sponda, ae *f.* couch†
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
venēnum, ī *n.* poison, venom†
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*

---

name for Bacchus, was god of wine. (**rēgīna Dīdō**) **dabit. ignem (amōris), venēnō (amōris).**

689. dictīs: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

690. gressū: abl. of cause with **gaudēns**; App. 332.

691. Ascaniō: dat. of reference; App. 301.

692. (**eum**) **fōtum** (**in**) **gremiō.**

694. flōribus, umbrā: ablatives of means with **complectitur.**

695. dictō: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

696. Tyriīs: dat. of reference; App. 301. **Achātē**: abl. of cause with **laetus**, or abl. abs. with **duce**; App. 332, 343.

697. venit (**Cupīdō**): present tense, *when he comes*, the queen has (already) arranged herself. (**in**) **aulaeīs.**

698. aureā: two syllables by synizesis; App. 403. (**in**) **spondā** (**sē**) **mediam locāvit**: *placed herself on a couch in the midst*, the place of honor, as befitted a queen.

jam pater Aenēās et jam Trojāna juventūs
conveniunt, strātō*que super* discumbitur ostrō.
Dant manibus famulī lymphās Cererem*que* canistrīs
expediunt tōnsīs*que ferunt* mantēlia villīs.
Quīnquāgintā intus famulae, *quibus* ordine *longam*
cūra penum struere *et flammīs* adolēre penātīs;
centum *aliae* totidem*que* parēs aetāte ministrī,
quī dapibus mēnsās onerent *et* pōcula *pōnant.*
Nec nōn et Tyriī per līmina laeta frequentēs
convēnēre, torīs *jussī* discumbere pictīs.
Mīrantur *dōna Aenēae*, mīrantur Iūlum,
flagrantīs*que deī* vultūs simulāta*que* verba,
pallam*que et* pictum croceō vēlāmen acanthō.

acanthus, ī *m.* acanthus, a flowering plant
adoleō, ēre, uī, ultus magnify, honor†
aetās, ātis *f.* age, time
canistrum, ī *n.* basket, hamper†
centum hundred*
Cerēs, eris *f.* (goddess of) grain; bread
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus come together, assemble, agree, harmonize
croceus, a, um saffron, yellow
daps, dapis *f.* banquet, feast*
discumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus recline (at table)†
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus bring forth
famula, ae *f.* maid-servant†
famulus, ī *m.* man-servant, page†
flagrō (1) burn, blaze, glow†
frequēns, entis thronging, crowded†
intus within, inside
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men*
lympha, ae *f.* water†
mantēle, is *n.* napkin, towel†
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
minister, trī *m.* man-servant, attendant†
mīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire*
onerō (1) load, burden
ordō, inis *m.* order, line, array*
ostrum, ī *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson
palla, ae *f.* cloak, robe, mantle
pār, paris equal, similar, even†*
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
penus, ūs (ī) *m.* (*f.*) food, store†
pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus paint, embroider†
pōculum, ī *n.* cup, goblet†
quīnquāgintā fifty†
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, feign
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, spread, strew*
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus arrange, pile (up), construct, contrive†
tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear, clip†
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch†*
totidem as many, so many†
Trojānus, a, um Trojan÷
vēlāmen, inis *n.* garment, robe, veil
verbum, ī *n.* word, speech†
villus, ī *m.* tuft, nap, hair, bristle†
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face*

699–747. The great banquet in Dido's palace.

700. discumbitur: impersonal, *it is reclined = they* (*the guests*) *recline.* The ancient Romans reclined at banquets.

701. manibus: *for* (*washing*) *their hands;* dat. of purpose; App. 303. **Cererem:** *Ceres*, goddess of grain, used here by metonymy for *bread;* App. 433. **(ex) canistrīs.**

702. tōnsīs villīs: abl. of quality; App. 330.

703. intus: *within* (*the serving rooms*). **famulae (sunt). quibus (erat) cūra:** dat. of possession. **(in, ex) ordine.**

704. flammīs adolēre penātīs: *to honor the household gods with fires* (on the altars).

705. aetāte: abl. of respect; App. 325.

706. onerent, pōnant: purpose; App. 359, 388.

707. Nec nōn: *likewise.* **et:** *also.* **laeta:** a transferred epithet; it was really the people who were happy, not the doorways.

708. convēnēre = convēnērunt. (in) torīs.

709. Iūlum: really Cupid, masquerading as Iulus (Ascanius).

710. deī (Cupīdinis).

711. pictum croceō vēlāmen acanthō: interlocked order; App. 442.

Praecipuē *infēlīx*, pestī dēvōta *futūrae*,
explērī *mentem* nequit ardēscit*que* tuendō
Phoenissa, *et* pariter *puerō dōnīsque movētur*.
Ille ubi complexū *Aenēae* collō*que* pependit
et magnum falsī implēvit *genitōris amōrem*,
rēgīnam petit. *Haec oculīs, haec pectore tōtō*
haeret *et* interdum gremiō fovet īnscia *Dīdō*
īnsīdat quantus *miserae deus*. *At* memor *ille*
mātris Acīdaliae paulātim abolēre Sychaeum
incipit *et* vīvō temptat praevertere *amōre*
jam prīdem residēs *animōs* dēsuētā*que* corda.
Postquam *prīma* quiēs epulīs mēnsae*que* remōtae,
crātēras *magnōs* statuunt *et* vīna corōnant.

---

aboleō, ēre, ēvī, itus abolish, remove†
Acīdalius, a, um Acidalian, of Acidalia, a fountain in Boeotia, sacred to Venus†
ardēscō, ere, arsī catch fire, burn†
collum, ī *n.* neck*
complexus, ūs *m.* embrace†
cor, cordis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings*
corōnō (1) crown, wreathe†
crātēr, ēris *m.* (mixing) bowl, urn†
dēsuētus, a, um unaccustomed, disused†
dēvoveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus vow, doom, devote†
epulae, ārum *f.* banquet, feast
expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete, satisfy
falsus, a, um false, deceitful, pretended
foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus fondle, cherish
gremium, (i)ī *n.* lap, bosom, embrace
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus hang, cling (to)*
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake†*
īnscius, a, um ignorant, unaware†
īnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus settle on†
interdum sometimes, at times†
memor, oris mindful, remembering, unforgetting*
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
nequeō, īre, īvī (iī), itus be unable†
pariter equally, on equal terms*
paulātim gradually, little by little†
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang*
pestis, is *f.* plague, ruin, destruction†
Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician (woman), Dido
postquam after (that), when*
praecipuē especially
praevertō, ere, ī, rsus occupy first, outstrip, surpass
prīdem long ago, long since, for some time†
quantus, a, um how much, how great, how many*
quiēs, ētis *f.* calm, peace, quiet, lull*
removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove
reses, idis inert, unstirred, sluggish†
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, build
Sychaeus, ī *m.* deceased husband of Dido
temptō (1) try, test, attempt, seek†*
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, guard*
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*
vīvus, a, um living, natural, alive

---

712. pestī futūrae dēvōta: her love was to cause her destruction, as is told in the fourth book of the *Aeneid*.

713. tuendō: gerund; from **tueor**, abl. of means; App. 269, 331; *with (by) gazing*.

714. Phoenissa: Dido. **puerō:** abl., thought of as means, coördinate with **dōnīs**.

718. (in) **gremiō**.

719. īnsīdat: subj. in an indir. quest., depending on **īnscia**; App. 349. **miserae:** substantively, *the unfortunate* (*woman*), proleptic; dat. with compound; App. 440, 298. **ille: Cupīdō**.

720. mātris Acīdaliae: *of his Acidalian mother* (Venus). **mātris:** gen. with the adj. **memor**; App. 287. **abolēre Sychaeum:** to make her forget Sychaeus entirely.

721. vīvō amōre: *with a living love* for Aeneas; contrasted with her old love for the dead Sychaeus.

722. dēsuēta corda: *her heart (now having become unaccustomed (to love)*.

723. epulīs (fuit): dat. of possession; App. 299; *when the first lull came in the feasting*. **mēnsae remōtae (sunt).** Cf. l. 216.

724. crātērās: acc. pl., a Greek form.

Fit strepitus *tēctīs vōcemque per* ampla volūtant
ātria; dēpendent lychnī laqueāribus aureīs
incēnsī *et noctem flammīs* fūnālia *vincunt.*
Hīc rēgīna gravem gemmīs *aurōque* poposcit
implēvit*que* merō pateram, *quam* Bēlus *et omnēs*
ā Bēlō solitī; *tum facta* silentia *tēctīs:*
"*Juppiter,* hospitibus *nam tē dare* jūra loquuntur,
hunc laetum Tyriīsque diem Trojāque profectīs
esse velīs, nostrōsque hujus meminisse minōrēs.
Adsit laetitiae Bacchus dator *et* bona *Jūnō;*
et vōs, Ō coetum, *Tyriī,* celebrāte faventēs."
Dīxit et in mēnsam laticum lībāvit *honōrem*
prīmaque, lībātō, *summō* tenus attigit *ōre;*
tum Bitiae *dedit* increpitāns; *ille* impiger hausit

---

amplus, a, um ample, full, spacious†
ātrium, (i)ī *n.* great hall, atrium†
attingō, ere, tigī, tactus touch, reach†
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
Bacchus, ī *m.* (god of) wine
Bēlus, ī *m.* early Phoenician king†
Bitiās, ae *m.* Carthaginian courtier†
bonus, a, um good, kind(ly), useful*
celebrō (1) throng, attend, honor†
coetus, ūs *m.* assembly, crowd, company
dator, ōris *m.* giver, bestower†
dēpendeō, ēre hang down (from) (*abl.*)†
faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautus favor, befriend†
fīō, fierī, factus become, be made
fūnāle, is *n.* taper, lamp†
gemma, ae *f.* gem, jewel
gravis, e heavy, weighty, serious*
hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus drain, draw (off)†
hospes, itis *m.* guest, host, stranger†
impiger, gra, grum eager, quick†
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus light, inflame*
increpitō (1) challenge, chide†
jūs, jūris *n.* law, right, decree
laetitia, ae *f.* joy, gladness, delight
laquear, āris *n.* fretted (paneled) ceiling†
latex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine
lībō (1) taste, pour (as a libation)
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say*
lychnus, ī *m.* lamp, chandelier†
meminī, isse remember, recall (*gen.*)
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
merum, ī *n.* unmixed wine†
minōrēs, um *m.* descendants, posterity
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl†
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek*
proficīscor, ī, fectus set out, depart
silentium, (i)ī *n.* silence, quiet, repose†
soleō, ēre, solitus sum be accustomed†
strepitus, ūs *m.* noise, uproar
tenus up to, as far as (*abl.*)†
volūtō (1) roll, revolve, ponder

The wine was mixed with water and was not brought in till the guests had finished eating. **vīna corōnant:** *they encircle the wine* (bowls) with garlands and wreaths of leaves and flowers, a usual custom at Roman and Greek banquets.

725. strepitus: the sound of joyful revelry. **(in) tēctīs.**

726. (dē) laqueāribus. aureīs: two syllables by synizesis; App. 403.

728. pateram gravem gemmīs aurōque.

729. Bēlus: a remote ancestor of Dido, not to be confused with Belus, her father, mentioned in l. 621. **omnēs ā Bēlō:** *all those* (*descended from*) *Belus.*

730 solitī (erant implēre). facta (sunt). silentia: poetic plural. **(in) tēctīs.**

731. Juppiter: Dido invokes the blessing of Jupiter as god of hospitality.

732. velīs hunc diem esse laetum. (hīs) Trojā profectīs = Teucrīs.

733. velīs: opt. subj.; App. 253. **hujus (diēī).**

734. Adsit: opt.; App. 253. **laetitiae:** obj. gen. with **dator**; App. 284.

735. coetum: obj. of **celebrāte. faventēs:** *speaking no unpropitious word, graciously.*

736. honōrem: *honor* (to the gods), *offering.*

737. lībātō: impersonal abl. abs., *a libation having been poured;* App. 343. **summō ōre:** with a dainty feminine sip, to observe the ancient proprieties.

738. dedit (pateram).

spūmantem pateram *et* plēnō *sē* prōluit *aurō;*
post *aliī* procerēs. Citharā crīnītus Iōpās
personat aurātā, docuit *quem maximus* Atlās.
Hic canit *errantem* lūnam sōlis*que labōrēs,*
unde hominum *genus et* pecudēs, unde imber *et ignēs,*
Arctūrum pluviās*que* Hyadas *geminōsque* Triōnēs;
quid tantum Ōceanō properent *sē* tingere sōlēs
hībernī, *vel quae* tardīs mora *noctibus* obstet.
Ingeminant plausū *Tyriī,* Trōes*que sequuntur.*
Nec nōn et variō *noctem* sermōne *trahēbat*
īnfēlīx Dīdō longumque bibēbat *amōrem,*

Arctūrus, ī *m.* bright star in the constellation Boötes, which rose in the stormy season†
Atlās, antis *m.* god who supported the sky on his shoulders; high mountain of northwest Africa†
aurātus, a, um gilded†
bibō, ere, ī drink (of, in)
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, proclaim*
cithara, ae *f.* harp, lyre, cither†
crīnītus, a, um long-haired†
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, instruct*
hībernus, a, um wintry, of winter
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
Hyades, um *f.* constellation, rising in the stormy season†
imber, bris *m.* rain, flood, water
ingeminō (1) redouble†
Iōpās, ae *m.* Phoenician bard†
lūna, ae *f.* moon†*
mora, ae *f.* delay, hindrance, hesitation*
obstō, āre, stitī, status oppose, hinder (*dat.*)†
Ōceanus, ī *m.* ocean
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl
pecus, udis *f.* member of flock, animal†*
personō, āre, uī, itus sound, play†
plausus, ūs *m.* clapping, applause†
plēnus, a, um full, filled
pluvius, a, um watery, rainy†
post after (*acc.*); afterward, then*
procer, eris *m.* noble, lord†
prōluō, ere, uī, ūtus drench, wash†
properō (1) hasten, hurry†
sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray
tardus, a, um slow, late, lazy†
ting(u)ō, ere, tīnxī, tīnctus wet, dip†
Triōnēs, um *m.* constellations, the Greater and Lesser Bear†
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
unde whence, from what source (cause)*
varius, a, um varied, different*

---

739. plēnō aurō: *the full* (*cup of*) *gold.*

740. post = posteā. **procerēs** (**pateram hausērunt**). **Citharā:** abl. of instrument or means; App. 331. **crīnītus:** *long-haired,* a style often affected by artists even today.

742. Hic: Iōpās. lūnam, labōrēs: cognate acc. with **canit,** stating themes of the song; cf. **arma virumque canō** (l. 1). **sōlis labōrēs:** *eclipses,* since the sun was thought of as struggling and suffering during an eclipse.

743. unde hominum genus (**sit**): the first of a series of indirect questions depending on **canit. unde** (**sint**) **ignēs** (**Jovis**): *lightnings.*

745. quid hībernī sōlēs properent tantum: why the winter days are so short and the nights so long. (**in**) **Ōceanō.**

746. properent, obstet: subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349. **tardīs noctibus** (**hībernīs**): dat. with compound; App. 298.

748–756. Dido, smitten with love for Aeneas, begs him to tell all about himself and his adventures, beginning with the fall of Troy.

748. Nec nōn et: *likewise, also.*

749. īnfēlīx: cf. **pestī dēvōta futūrae,** (l. 712). **longum amōrem:** *deep* (*draughts of*) *love.*

multa super Priamō rogitāns, *super* Hectore *multa;*
nunc quibus Aurōrae *vēnisset* fīlius *armīs,*
nunc quālēs Diomēdis *equī, nunc* quantus Achillēs.
"Immō *age et ā prīmā dīc,* hospes, orīgine *nōbīs*
īnsidiās" inquit "*Danaum cāsūsque tuōrum*
errōrēs*que tuōs; nam tē jam* septima portat
omnibus errantem terrīs et flūctibus aestās."

Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
aestās, ātis *f.* summer
Aurōra, ae *f.* goddess of dawn, mother of Memnon, a Trojan ally†*
Diomēdēs, is *m.* Greek chieftain, who captured the horses of Aeneas, the finest under the sun†
error, ōris *m.* wandering, straying†
fīlius, (i)ī *m.* son
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader*
hospes, itis *m.* guest, host, stranger
immō nay (rather), rather†
inquam, is, it say*
īnsidiae, ārum *f.* ambush, treachery, snare, trick†
orīgō, inis *f.* origin, beginning, source
portō (1) carry, bear, bring*
quālis, e of what sort, such (as)*
quantus, a, um how great, how much, how many, as*
rogitō (1) ask (often, eagerly)†
septimus, a, um seventh†

750–752 Dido's questions indicate that her primary interest is not in the things about which she inquires but in Aeneas.

751. quibus armīs . . . vēnisset: indir. quest.; App. 349.

752. quālēs (essent) equī, quantus (esset) Achillēs: indirect questions; App. 349.

753. dīc: imp. of dīcō; App. 202.

754. Dana(ōr)um.

756. (in) terrīs et (in) flūctibus.

BOOK II

CONTICUĒRE *omnēs* intentī*que ōra tenēbant.*
Inde torō *pater Aenēās sīc* orsus *ab altō:*
"Īnfandum, *rēgīna, jubēs* renovāre dolōrem,
Trojānās *ut* opēs *et* lāmentābile *rēgnum*
ēruerint *Danaī, quaeque ipse miserrima vīdī*
et quōrum pars magna fuī. Quis tālia fandō
Myrmidonum Dolopum*ve aut* dūrī mīles Ulixī
temperet *ā lacrimīs? Et jam nox* ūmida *caelō*
praecipitat suādent*que* cadentia *sīdera somnōs.*
Sed sī tantus amor cāsūs cognōscere *nostrōs*

---

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus learn; know
conticēscō, ere, ticuī become silent, hush†
Dolopes, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly†
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, anger, pain, passion*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, tear up†
inde thence, afterward, thereupon*
īnfandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
intentus, a, um intent, eager, strained†
lāmentābilis, e lamentable, pitiable, sad†
mīles, itis *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)†
Myrmidones, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly, subjects of Achilles†
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
ordior, īrī, orsus begin, undertake
praecipitō (1) throw (headlong), fall†
renovō (1) renew, revive†
suādeō, ēre, āsī, āsus advise, urge
temperō (1) control, restrain, refrain
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, cushion*
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader†*
ūmidus, a, um moist, dewy, damp†

1–12. Acceding to Dido's request Aeneas agrees to describe the fall of Troy, in spite of the sorrow renewed by such memories.

1. conticuēre (= **conticuērunt**), **tenēbant**: observe the difference in tenses, the perfect denoting instantaneous, completed result, *they grew silent;* the imperf. continued action, *they continued to hold;* App. 351, 2 and 4. **ōra** (**in, ad Aenēān**) **tenēbant.**

2. pater: simply a title of honor and veneration, because of its Roman associations, where it was regularly used of a member of the senatorial and ruling aristocracy. **ab altō torō**: on which he was reclining at the banquet. **orsus** (**est**): from **ordior.**

3. Īnfandum: emphatic by position. **jubēs** (**mē**) **renovāre.**

4. Trojānās: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b.* (**fandō**) **ut Danaī ēruerint Trojānās opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum** (**fandō**)**que** (**ea**) **miserrima quae** (**ego**) **ipse vīdī. fandō**: *by telling.* **ut**: *how.*

5. ēruerint: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. **miserrima**: substantively: *the heart-breaking events.*

6. tālia: substantively, obj. of **fandō** in l. 6. **fandō**: gerund of **for**; abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329.

7. (**quis**) **mīles. Myrmidonum Dolopumve**: part. genitives, depending on **quis**; App. 286.

8. temperet: deliberative subj.; App. 348. (**dē**) **caelō**: the night is personified; App. 437; after passing the zenith at midnight in her chariot, she is now rushing down into the western wave; it is thus after midnight.

9. praecipitat (**in mare**).

10. sī amor (**est tibi**) **cognōscere** = **sī vīs** (from **volō**) **cognōscere**; App. 264.

et breviter *Trojae suprēmum audīre labōrem*,
quamquam *animus* meminisse horret lūctū*que* refūgit
incipiam.
Frāctī *bellō fātīsque* repulsī
ductōrēs *Danaum* tot *jam lābentibus* annīs
īnstar *montis equum* dīvīnā Palladis arte
aedificant, sectā*que* intexunt abiete costās;
vōtum prō reditū simulant; *ea fāma* vagātur.
Hūc dēlēcta *virum* sortītī *corpora* fūrtim
inclūdunt caecō laterī penitus*que* cavernās
ingentīs uterum*que* armātō mīlite complent.

---

abiēs, etis *f.* fir, pine†
aedificō (1) build, construct, erect†
annus, ī *m.* year, season*
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish†*
ars, artis *f.* art(istry), skill, artifice*
breviter shortly, briefly, concisely
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
caverna, ae *f.* hollow, cavity, cavern†
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete†
costa, ae *f.* rib, side
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select†
dīvīnus, a, um divine, celestial, holy
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, chieftain, guide
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter*
fūrtim stealthily, secretly, furtively†
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, tremble*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
inclūdō, ere, sī, sus inclose, confine†
īnstar *n. indecl.* likeness, image (*gen.*)†
intexō, ere, xuī, xtus (in)weave, cover†
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow†
meminī, isse remember, recall
mīles, itis *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
penitus deep(ly), within, completely*
prō before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)*
quamquam although; however, but†
reditus, ūs *m.* return (home)†
refugiō, ere, fūgī flee, retreat, recoil†
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus drive back, repel†
secō, āre, uī, sectus cut, slice, cleave*
simulō (1) pretend, imitate, feign
sortior, īrī, ītus draw (by) lot, allot†
tot so many, as many*
uterus, ī *m.* belly, womb†
vagor, ārī, ātus wander, spread abroad†
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus vow, consecrate

---

11. Trojae: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b*. **suprēmum labōrem**: *the final agony*.

12. lūctū: abl. of cause; App. 332.

13–20. After ten years of unsuccessful effort, the Greeks, worn out by the long siege and lacking confidence in their strength and courage, resort to strategy. They pretend to flee but hide in the neighboring island of Tenedos, leaving behind an enormous wooden horse, in which are concealed the bravest of the Greek leaders.

13. bellō, fātīs: ablatives of means; App. 331.

14. ductōrēs = **ducēs**. **Dana(ōr)um**: App. 37, *d*. **lābentibus annīs**: abl. abs., denoting cause; App. 343. The siege of Troy was now in its tenth and final year.

15. aedificant equum īnstar montis: "big as a mountain," hyperbole; App. 428. **Palladis arte**: as goddess of wisdom and the arts, Minerva had inspired the Greeks with the idea and with the skill necessary for its execution.

16. abiete: pronounce **abjete** here, making the first syllable long by position; App. 401.

17. (Danaī) simulant (equum esse) vōtum prō (suō) reditū: *for their (safe) return (home)*.

18. dēlēcta vir(ōr)um corpora = **virōs dēlēctōs. Hūc** (= **in hunc equum**) **caecō laterī fūrtim inclūdunt dēlēcta corpora vir(ōr)um, sortītī (ea)**.

19. caecō laterī = **in caecum latus**, dat. of direction or with compound; App. 306, 298.

Est in cōnspectū Tenedos, nōtissima *fāmā*
īnsula, dīves opum *Priamī dum rēgna manēbant,*
nunc tantum sinus *et* statiō male fīda carīnīs:
hūc sē prōvectī dēsertō *in lītore* condunt.
Nōs abiisse ratī *et ventō petiisse* Mycēnās.
Ergō *omnis longō* solvit *sē* Teucria lūctū:
panduntur portae, juvat *īre et* Dōrica castra
dēsertōs*que vidēre locōs lītusque relictum:*
hīc Dolopum *manus, hīc* saevus *tendēbat* Achillēs;
classibus hīc locus, hīc aciē certāre solēbant.
Pars stupet innūptae *dōnum* exitiāle Minervae

---

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus depart, go (away)*
Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek leader*
aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; battle line, army*
carīna, ae *f.* keel, ship†*
castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment*
certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish; hide*
cōnspectus, ūs *m.* sight, view
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy (*gen.*)
Dolopes, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly
Dōricus, a, um Doric, Spartan, Greek†
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
exitiālis, e fatal, destructive, deadly†
fīdus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe*
innūptus, a, um unwed, virgin†
īnsula, ae *f.* island
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow
male badly, illy, not†
Minerva, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts†
Mycēnae, ārum *f.* Greek city; Greece
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, open, loosen*
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey†
reor, rērī, ratus suppose, think, reckon†
saevus, a, um stern, fierce, raging*
sinus, ūs *m.* fold, hollow, bosom, bay*
soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
statiō, ōnis *f.* station, anchorage†
stupeō, ēre, uī be dazed, stand agape (at)
tantum so much, so great, only
Tenedos, ī *f.* small island near Troy†
Teucria, ae *f.* Troy, Troyland†

21–30. After the departure of the Greeks, the Trojans rush out to see the deserted camp.

21. Est: *there is.* **in cōnspectū (Trojae). fāmā:** abl. of respect; App. 325.

22. opum: gen. of respect with the adj. **dīves**; App. 294. **Priamī rēgna:** poetic plural; App. 243.

23. nunc (īnsula est) tantum sinus. male fīda = īnfīda: *unsafe, treacherous;* litotes; App. 431. **carīnīs = nāvibus:** dat. with **īnfīda**; App. 304, 443.

24. hūc = ad hanc īnsulam. (Danaī) prōvectī (per pelagus).

25. Nōs: contrasted with the treacherous Greeks; App. 247. **Nōs ratī (sumus Danaōs) abiisse. ventō:** abl. of means; App. 331. **Mycēnās = Graeciam,** *Greece;* App. 443.

26. lūctū: abl. of separation; App. 340. **omnis longō Teucria lūctū:** interlocked order; App. 442

27. juvat (nōs) īre (ex urbe): impersonal, *it pleases* (*us*), *we delight.*

29–30. hīc manus (tendēbat). hīc . . . hīc . . . hīc: the Trojans point out these places to one another. The anaphora adds to the vividness; App. 413. **hīc (erat) locus classibus (Danaōrum):** refers to the place where the Greek vessels had been drawn up on shore. **classibus = nāvibus:** dat. of reference; App. 301. **aciē:** abl. of manner; App. 328. **hīc (Danaī) aciē certāre solēbant.**

31–56. The more prudent among them urge the Trojans to destroy the wooden horse. Laocoön takes the lead in this proposal and strikes the side of the horse with his spear.

31. stupet = mīrātur: its object is **dōnum. exitiāle:** *fatal* (for Troy), as will be seen in the sequel. **Minervae:** obj. gen.; App. 284.

et mōlem mīrantur *equī; prīmusque* Thymoetēs
dūcī intrā mūrōs hortātur *et arce* locārī,
sīve dolō seu *jam Trojae sīc fāta ferēbant.*
At Capys, *et quōrum* melior sententia *mentī,*
aut pelagō Danaum īnsidiās suspecta*que dōna*
praecipitāre *jubent* subjectīs*que* ūrere *flammīs,*
aut terebrāre cavās uterī *et* temptāre latebrās.
Scinditur incertum studia *in* contrāria vulgus.
Prīmus ibi *ante omnīs magnā* comitante catervā
Lāocoōn *ardēns summā* dēcurrit *ab arce,*
et procul: 'Ō miserī, quae tanta īnsānia, cīvēs?
Crēditis āvectōs hostīs? *Aut ūlla* putātis
dōna carēre dolīs *Danaum? Sīc* nōtus Ulixēs?

āvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus, carry, convey (away)
Capys, yos *m.* Trojan leader
careō, ēre, uī, itus be free from, lack (*abl.*)†
caterva, ae *f.* crowd, band, troop
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
cīvis, is *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot†
comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort, follow†
contrārius, a, um opposite, opposing
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
dēcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run down†
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
hortor, ārī, ātus exhort, urge, incite†*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
ibi there, then†
incertus, a, um uncertain, wavering†
īnsānia, ae *f.* madness, frenzy, folly†
īnsidiae, ārum *f.* snare, ambush, treachery
intrā within, inside, in(to) (*acc.*)
Lāocoōn, ontis *m.* Trojan priest of Neptune†
latebra, ae *f.* hiding place, cavern, lair†
locō (1) place, locate, establish*
melior, ius better, superior, nobler
mīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, structure, burden
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
praecipitō (1) throw (headlong), fall
putō (1) suppose, think, consider†
scindō, ere, scidī, scissus split, divide
sententia, ae *f.* opinion, purpose, view
sīve, seu or (if), whether, either
studium, (i)ī *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit
subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place under†
suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus suspect
temptō (1) try, test, examine, explore*
terebrō (1) bore into, pierce†
Thymoetēs, ae *m.* Trojan leader†
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn, consume
uterus, ī *m.* belly, womb
vulgus, ī *n.* (*m.*) rabble, crowd, herd

---

32. mīrantur: pl. with a collective noun, **pars**, although the preceding verb, **stupet**, is singular; App. 236, *a*.

33. hortātur (equum) dūcī et (in) arce locārī = hortātur ut equus dūcātur et locētur in arce (Trojae): App. 360.

34. dolō: abl. of cause; App. 332. **fāta (sē) ferēbant:** *fates were tending;* an oracle had foretold that a child born on a certain day would cause the destruction of Troy. When a child was born to Thymoetes and Paris was born to Priam on that day, Priam put to death the son of Thymoetes, thinking thereby to avert ruin for the state.

35. et (eī) quōrum sententia melior (erat) mentī: *and those whose mind had a better counsel.* **mentī:** dat. of possession; App. 299.

36. pelagō: dat. of direction; App. 306. **Dana(ōr)um īnsidiās suspectaque dōna = equum.**

37. -que = -ve; some advise the destruction of the horse in the sea or by fire; others an examination of its contents. **(nōs) jubent. ūrere (equum) flammīs:** abl. of means; App. 331.

38. cavās latebrās: obj. of both **terebrāre** and **temptāre.**

40. comitante catervā: abl. abs.; App. 343.

42. et procul (clāmat). īnsānia (est ista).

43. āvectōs (esse).

44. dolīs: abl. of separation with **carēre**; App. 340. **dōna Dana(ōr)um. nōtus (est vōbīs) Ulixēs:** Ulysses, the

Aut hōc inclūsī lignō occultantur Achīvī,
aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta *est* māchina mūrōs,
īnspectūra *domōs ventūraque* dēsuper *urbī*,
aut aliquis latet error; *equō nē* crēdite, *Teucrī*.
Quidquid *id est*, timeō *Danaōs et dōna ferentīs*.'
Sīc fātus validīs *ingentem vīribus* hastam
in latus *inque* ferī curvam compāgibus alvum
contorsit. *Stetit illa* tremēns, uterō*que* recussō
īnsonuēre cavae gemitum*que dedēre* cavernae.
Et, sī fāta deum, sī mēns nōn laeva *fuisset*,
impulerat *ferrō* Argolicās foedāre latebrās,
Trojaque nunc stāret, Priamīque arx alta manērēs.

Achīvus, a, um Achaean, Greek
aliquis (quī), qua, quid (quod) some(one), any(one)*
alvus, ī *f.* belly, body†
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek†
caverna, ae *f.* hollow, cavity, cave
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
compāgēs, is *f.* joint, seam, fastening
contorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus hurl, twirl†
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
curvus, a, um curved, crooked†*
dēsuper from above
error, ōris *m.* error, deceit, trick
fabricō (1) fashion, make†
ferus, ī *m.* beast, monster, horse*
foedō (1) befoul, defile; mar, mangle†
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, moan*
hasta, ae *f.* spear, lance, dart
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus impel, drive
inclūdō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, confine
īnsonō, āre, uī (re)sound, roar, echo†
īnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look into†
laevus, a, um left, foolish, unlucky*
latebra, ae *f.* hiding place, cavern, lair
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
lignum, ī *n.* wood, timber†
māchina, ae *f.* machine, engine, device†
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
occultō (1) hide, conceal, secrete†
quisquis, quidquid whoever, whatever
recutiō, ere, cussī, cussus strike (back), shake†
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
uterus, ī *m.* belly, womb
validus, a, um strong, stout, mighty

---

leader of the Greeks in cunning, craft, and treachery.

45. (in) **hōc lignō** = **in hōc equō, quī est dē lignō factus**: metonymy; App. 433.

46. māchina (bellī).

47. īnspectūra, ventūra: the fut. participles denote purpose; App. 274. **urbī**: dat. of direction = **in urbem**; App. 306.

48. nē crēdite: **nē** with the imp. is a poetic use; App. 256, *a*. **equō**: dat. with **crēdō**; App. 297.

49. timeō Danaōs et (*even*) **dōna ferentīs**: a favorite quotation. The Greeks are so treacherous that they are not to be trusted even when making gifts (sacrificing, as in this case) to their gods.

50. validīs ingentem vīribus hastam: interlocked order; App. 442. **vīribus**: abl. of manner; App. 328; from **vīs**, not **vir**, as may be seen from the quantity of the **i** as well as from its case form.

51. ferī = **equī. compāgibus**: with **curvam**, abl. of manner or means; App. 328, 331.

52. illa = **hasta. uterō recussō**: abl. abs. with causal force; App. 343, *a*.

53. īnsonuēre, dedēre = **īnsonuērunt, dedērunt**: App. 204, 4. **gemitum**: merely the hollow sound.

54. sī, sī: rhetorical repetition, called anaphora; App. 413.

54–56. fuisset, stāret, manērēs: condition contrary to fact, with mixed apodosis (**impulerat**) for **impulisset**: App. 382, *d*. **sī fāta de(ōr)um** (**nōn laeva fuissent**). **laeva**: *unfavorable, hostile*.

55. (**Lāocoōn nōs**) **impulerat.**

56. Troja: pronounce **Trojja**; App. 6, *b*. **manērēs**: observe the change to the second person; personification and apostrophe add to the pathos; App. 417, 437.

Ecce, *manūs* juvenem intereā post terga revīnctum
pāstōrēs *magnō ad rēgem clāmōre trahēbant*
Dardanidae, *quī sē* ignōtum *venientibus* ultrō,
hoc ipsum ut strueret *Trojamque* aperīret Achīvīs,
obtulerat, fīdēns *animī atque in* utrumque *parātus*,
seu versāre dolōs seu certae occumbere *mortī*.
Undique vīsendī studiō Trojāna juventūs
circumfūsa *ruit* certant*que* inlūdere captō.
Accipe nunc Danaum īnsidiās *et* crīmine *ab ūnō*
disce *omnīs*.
Namque ut cōnspectū *in mediō* turbātus, inermis,

Achīvus, a, um Achaean, Greek
aperiō, īre, uī, rtus open, reveal*
captus, ī *m.* captive, prisoner†
certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie
certus, a, um sure, certain, fixed, reliable*
circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour round
cōnspectus, ūs *m.* sight, view, (crowd of) spectators
crīmen, inis *n.* crime, guilt, charge†
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
discō, ere, didicī learn; *perf.* know
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
ecce see! look! behold!†*
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum trust (in) (*dat.*, *abl.*)†*
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
inermis, e unarmed
inlūdō, ere, sī, sus mock, insult (*dat.*)†
īnsidiae, ārum *f.* snare, ambush, treachery
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men*
occumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall; meet (*dat.*)
offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present, place before, offer
pāstor, ōris *m.* shepherd, herdsman†
post, afterward(s); behind (*acc.*)*
revinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, tie back†
sīve, seu or (if), whether, either
struō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build, contrive
studium, (i)ī *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit
tergum, ī *n.* back, rear; skin, hide*
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
turbō (1) confuse, agitate, disturb*
ultrō further(more), voluntarily†*
undique on (from) all sides†*
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both†*
versō (1) keep turning; employ
vīsō, ere, sī, sus see, gaze on, visit†

57–198. Sinon, a lying Greek, is captured and brought to Priam. He says the horse is an offering to Minerva and will bring good fortune and victory to its possessors.

57–59. Ecce intereā Dardanidae pāstōrēs trahēbant juvenem revīnctum manūs post terga. Ecce: introducing a new element in the story. **manūs:** acc., obj. of the middle part. **revīnctum,** *his hands bound behind his back*, or acc. of respect; App. 309, *a*; 311.

58. rēgem (Priamum). magnō (cum) clāmōre: abl. of manner; App. 328.

59. (juvenem) quī ultrō obtulerat sē ignōtum (pāstōribus Dardanidīs = Teucrīs) venientibus: his name was Sinon.

60. hoc: pronounce **hocc**; App. 107, 3,c. **hoc ipsum:** *this very thing*, i.e., to be brought before the king and questioned. **strueret, aperīret:** purpose; App. 359.

61. animī: a loc., *in his soul;* App. 37, *c*.

62. mortī: dat. with compound; App. 298. **versāre, occumbere:** apposition with **utrumque.**

63. vīsendī: gen. of gerund, depending on **studiō**, abl. of cause; App. 332. **Trojāna:** pronounce **Trojjāna**; App. 6, *b*.

64. captō: dat. with compound; App. 298. **ruit certantque:** for use of singular and plural cf. **stupet et mīrantur,** ll. 31–32; App. 236, *a*.

65. Dana(ōr)um: App. 37, *d*.

66. omnīs (Danaōs): a general conclusion from a specific instance. For the incomplete line, see the note on I, 534.

67. ut: *as*, its usual meaning with the ind. **turbātus:** a pretense on the part of Sinon.

cōnstitit *atque oculīs* Phrygia *agmina* circumspexit:
'*Heu, quae mē tellūs*' inquit '*quae mē aequora possunt*
accipere? aut quid jam miserō mihi dēnique restat,
cui neque apud *Danaōs* ūsquam *locus, et super ipsī*
Dardanidae īnfēnsī *poenās cum sanguine* poscunt?'
Quō gemitū conversī *animī* compressus *et omnis*
impetus. Hortāmur *fārī quō sanguine* crētus,
quidve ferat; memoret *quae sit* fīdūcia *captō.*
[*Ille haec* dēpositā *tandem* formīdine *fātur:*]
'*Cūncta* equidem *tibi, rēx, fuerit* quodcumque, fatēbor
vēra,' inquit; '*neque mē* Argolicā *dē gente* negābō;
hoc prīmum; nec, sī miserum fortūna Sinōnem

---

apud among, at, in (*acc.*)†
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
circumspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look round (on)†
comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus check, crush, repress†
cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand (fast)
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change
crētus, a, um born, sprung†
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
dēnique finally, at last, at length†
dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay down, drop†
equidem indeed, truly*
fateor, ērī, fassus confess, agree†
fīdūcia, ae *f.* trust, reliance, faith
formīdō, inis *f.* fear, fright, dread, terror†
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, moan*
hortor, ārī, ātus urge, exhort, incite*
impetus, ūs *m.* onset, violence†
īnfēnsus, a, um hostile, bitter†
inquam, is, it say*
memorō (1) recall, recount, relate*
negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)†
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whatever*
restō, āre, stitī remain, be left
Sinōn, ōnis *m.* a lying Greek†
ūsquam anywhere, ever
vērus, a, um true, real, honest*

---

68. circumspexit: the spondaic close, with its slow movement, helps the reader to visualize the slow-turning glance of Sinon as he looks over the crowd.

69. Heu: Sinon artfully seeks to rouse the pity and then to win the confidence of the Trojans. He pretends to be in despair. To his former enemies the Trojans who are in possession of the land are now added the equally hostile Greeks who control the sea. He plays his part with consummate skill and ingenuity. **quae tellūs (potest mē accipere).**

71. cui locus (est): dat. of possession; App. 299. **neque = nōn. et (ā quō). super:** adv., *besides.*

72. poenās cum sanguine (meō) poscunt: *they demand punishment with my blood,* i.e., *my life as penalty.*

73. conversī (sunt) animī et compressus (est) impetus. (nostrī) animī: *feelings.*

74. Hortāmur (illum) fārī. quō sanguine: abl. of source; App. 323. **crētus (sit):** indir. quest.; App. 349.

75. quid (= quem nuntium) ferat: *what he has to say;* indir. quest.; App. 349. **memoret:** indir. command, representing an imp. in dir. disc., depending on **hortāmur;** App. 390. **sit:** subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. **(eī) captō:** dat. of possession; App. 299; i.e., what grounds of confidence had induced him to surrender voluntarily and on what did he base his hopes of mercy.

76. haec (dicta). dēpositā formīdine: abl. abs.; App. 343. The "fear" is pretended.

77. fuerit quodcumque: *come what may,* i.e., *no matter what may happen to me.*

78. mē (esse).

79. hoc prīmum (fatēbor, dīcam): by first making a true statement of an undoubted fact, but one which a desperate man might have denied, Sinon wins the confidence of the Trojans, who are now more likely to believe the rest of his story. **Sinōnem = mē,** used for the rhetorical effect. "Others may be liars, but not

fīnxit, vānum etiam mendācem*que* improba finget. 80
Fandō aliquod *sī forte tuās* pervēnit *ad* aurīs
Bēlīdae *nōmen* Palamēdis *et* incluta *fāmā*
glōria, *quem* falsā *sub* prōditiōne Pelasgī
īnsontem īnfandō indiciō, quia *bella* vetābat,
dēmīsēre necī, *nunc* cassum *lūmine* lūgent: 85
illī mē comitem et cōnsanguinitāte propinquum
pauper *in arma pater prīmīs hūc mīsit ab* annīs.
Dum stābat rēgnō incolumis *rēgumque* vigēbat

---

aliquis (quī), qua, quid (quod) some, any*
annus, ī *m.* year, season*
auris, is *f.* ear*
Bēlīdēs, ae *m.* descendant of Belus†
cassus, a, um empty, deprived of (*abl.*)†
cōnsanguinitās, ātis *f.* kinship (by blood)†
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send down, drop, lower*
etiam also, even, besides, furthermore*
falsus, a, um false, untrue, deceitful
fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus make, form†
glōria, ae *f.* glory, renown, fame, pride†
improbus, a, um wicked, bad, cruel†
inclutus, a, um famous, renowned†
incolumis, e safe, unharmed, intact†
indicium, (i)ī *n.* charge, information†
īnfandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
īnsōns, ontis innocent, guiltless†
lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, lūctus mourn, lament†
mendāx, ācis lying, false, deceitful†
nex, necis *f.* death, murder, destruction†
Palamēdēs, is *m.* wily Greek, destroyed by Ulysses†
pauper, eris poor, needy; lowly†
Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus arrive, come (to)†
prōditiō, ōnis *f.* (charge of) treason†
propinquus, a, um near (of kin), close†
quia because†
vānus, a, um empty, idle, false, vain
vetō, āre, uī, itus forbid, prevent, hinder
vigeō, ēre, uī flourish, thrive†

Sinon." **miserum**: pred., *if fortune has made Sinon* (*me*) *unfortunate.*

80. vānum, mendācem: pred., as is **miserum**, l. 79. **improba (fortūna) finget (mē).**

81. Fandō (for): abl. of the gerund, *by report;* App. 269.

81–82. aliquod nōmen: *any* (*mention of the*) *name.*

81–83. pervēnit nōmen et glōria: the verb is sing. to agree with its nearest subj.; App. 236, *b.*

82. fāmā: abl. of respect with **incluta**; App. 325.

82–83. glōria incluta fāmā.

83. falsā sub prōditiōne: *under a false* (*accusation of*) *treason.*

84. īnfandō indiciō: abl. of means; App. 331. According to the story, Ulysses had hidden a sum of money and a forged letter of Priam in Palamedes's tent; then, on a suggestion of Ulysses, the Greeks searched the tent, found the money and letter, and condemned Palamedes to death. **quia vetābat**: indicative, since it gives the reasons of the speaker; App. 357. This statement of Sinon is calculated to win the sympathy of the Trojans by showing that he and his friend were at heart on the Trojan side and were opposed to the war.

85. dēmīsēre = dēmīsērunt: App. 204, 4. **necī = ad necem**: dat. of direction; App. 306. **(illum) cassum lūmine (vītae). lūmine**: abl. of separation; App. 340.

86. illī: emphatic by position; a dat. of reference; App. 301. **comitem**: (*as*) *a comrade.* **cōnsanguinitāte**: abl. of respect; App. 325.

87. pauper, prīmīs ab annīs, mīsit: clever suggestions of Sinon to arouse pity and to excuse his part in the war by saying that he had been sent when he was a mere child and that his father was forced to this action by his poverty. Going to war as a "soldier of fortune" was a common method among the ancients of gaining wealth. **hūc** = *to Troy.* **prīmīs ab annīs**: "from my earliest youth."

88. rēgnō: abl. of respect with **incolumis**, or abl. of place where; App. 325, 319.

88–89. (Palamēdēs) stābat rēgumque (Danaōrum) vigēbat (in) conciliīs. nōs: emphatic; App. 247.

conciliīs, *et nōs* aliquod *nōmenque* decus*que*
gessimus. Invidiā postquam pellācis Ulixī
(*haud* ignōta loquor) *superīs* concessit *ab ōrīs*,
adflictus *vītam in* tenebrīs lūctū*que trahēbam*
et cāsum īnsontis *mēcum* indignābar amīcī.
Nec tacuī dēmēns *et mē, fors sī qua tulisset,*
sī patriōs umquam remeāssem *victor ad* Argōs,
prōmīsī ultōrem *et* verbīs odia aspera *mōvī*.
Hinc mihi prīma malī lābēs, *hinc* semper Ulixēs
crīminibus terrēre *novīs*, *hinc* spargere *vōcēs*
in vulgum ambiguās *et quaerere* cōnscius *arma*.
Nec requiēvit enim, dōnec Calchante ministrō —

adflīgō, ere, xī, ctus crush, strike down
aliquī (quis), qua, quod (quid) some(one), any(one)*
ambiguus, a, um of double meaning, doubtful, obscure, ambiguous
amīcus, ī *m.* friend, comrade*
Argī, ōrum *m.* Argos, a city of southern Greece; Greece
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce*
Calchās, antis *m.* a famous Greek seer†
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, yield†
concilium, (i)ī *n.* council, assembly†
cōnscius, a, um conscious (of guilt)
crīmen, inis *n.* crime, guilt, charge
decus, oris *n.* ornament, glory, dignity
dēmēns, entis mad, insane, foolish†
dōnec until, while, as long as
enim for, indeed, surely*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus bear, carry (on)*
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
indignor, ārī, ātus be angry (at)
īnsōns, ontis innocent, guiltless
invidia, ae *f.* envy, malice, grudge†
lābēs, is *f.* slip, defect, stain, ruin†
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell*
lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow
malum, ī *n.* evil, trouble, misfortune*
minister, trī *m.* servant, helper
odium, (i)ī *n.* hate, hatred, enmity
pellāx, ācis deceitful, wily, crafty†
postquam after (that), when*
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus promise*
remeō (1) return, go back†
requiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, repose†
semper always, ever*
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sow*
taceō, ēre, uī, itus be silent, hush*
tenebrae, ārum *f.* darkness, gloom†
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
ultor, ōris *m.* avenger†
umquam ever, at any time†
verbum, ī *n.* word, speech, talk
vulgus, ī *n.* (*m.*) rabble, crowd, herd

89. (in) conciliīs, abl. of place where; App. 319. **et nōs**: *I also;* the "editorial we."

90. Invidiā Ulixī: Ulysses is said to have borne a special grudge against Palamedes, because the latter detected his pretended madness when he was trying to avoid going to the Trojan War. **Invidiā**: abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332.

91. (Palamēdēs) superīs concessit ab ōrīs = *died,* used euphemistically for *was killed;* App. 423.

93. mēcum = **cum mē**: *privately, in secret;* App. 321.

93–96. mē prōmīsī ultōrem: *I promise myself (as) an avenger.*

94. dēmēns: "fool that I was." **sī qua fors (mē) tulisset (ad Argōs patriōs).**

95. Argōs: used for Greece; App. 443.

96. verbīs (meīs). odia (Ulixis).

97. lābēs (mihi fuit). Ulixēs: nom. subject of the hist. infinitives **terrēre, spargere, quaerere**; App. 277. **mihi**: dat. of reference; App. 301.

98. terrēre (mē). vōcēs: *rumors.*

99. vulgum: masc. acc., a rare form. **cōnscius (suī malī)**: *conscious (of his guilt).* **arma (in mē)**: an opportunity to use violence against me.

100. Calchante ministrō: abl. abs.; App. 343; for the aposiopesis, see the note on **Quōs ego**, I, 135, and compare App. 416. Sinon skillfully stops his narrative, just when he has aroused the curiosity of his audience to the highest pitch.

sed quid ego haec autem nēquīquam ingrāta revolvō,
quidve moror? *Sī omnīs ūnō* ordine *habētis* Achīvōs,
idque audīre sat *est*, jamdūdum sūmite *poenās:*
hoc Ithacus *velit et magnō* mercentur Atrīdae.'
Tum vērō *ardēmus* scītārī *et quaerere* causās,
ignārī scelerum *tantōrum* artis*que* Pelasgae.
Prōsequitur pavitāns *et* fictō *pectore fātur:*
'Saepe *fugam Danaī Trojā* cupiēre *relictā*
mōlīrī *et longō fessī* discēdere *bellō;*
fēcissentque utinam! Saepe *illōs* aspera pontī
interclūsit hiems *et* terruit Auster *euntīs.*
Praecipuē *cum jam hic* trabibus contextus acernīs

acernus, a, um (of) maple†
Achīvus, a, um Achaean, Greek
ars, artis *f.* art(istry), skill, cunning*
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce*
Atrīdēs, ae *m.* son of Atreus: (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaüs
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
autem moreover, but, however†*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
contexō, ere, xuī, xtus weave, construct†
cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus desire, wish†
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart†
fictus, a, um feigned, false, pretended
hiems, emis *f.* winter; storm*
ignārus, a, um ignorant, inexperienced*
ingrātus, a, um unpleasant, ungrateful†
interclūdō, ere, sī, sus shut off, hinder†
Ithacus, a, um Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses†
jamdūdum long since, at once
mercor, ārī, ātus buy, purchase, trade
mōlior, īrī, ītus undertake, do, make, build
moror, ārī, ātus delay, linger; detain*
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly†*
ordō, inis *m.* order, array, rank, row*
pavitō (1) tremble, be afraid†
Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
praecipuē especially, particularly
prōsequor, ī, secūtus proceed, follow†
revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus (un)roll, revolve, tell†
saepe often, frequently*
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)†*
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
scītor, ārī, ātus inquire, seek to know†
sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take, exact†
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, timber
utinam O that! would that!
vērō truly, indeed, but

101. ego: observe the emphasis denoted by the pronoun as though to say "who am I to be telling you this?" See App 247. **haec (dicta vōbīs) ingrāta.**

102. quid (*why*) **(vōs) moror. Sī omnīs ūnō ordine habētis Achīvōs:** *if you consider all Greeks in the same class* (*as scoundrels*); abl. of manner; App. 328.

103. id audīre = mē esse Danaum (Achīvum). sūmite poenās: punishment was looked upon as a fine, which the inflictor *takes* and the sufferer *gives*. Hence **sūmere poenās** = *inflict* (literally *take*) *punishment*, while **dare poenās** = *suffer* (literally *give*) *punishment*.

104. hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c*. **Ithacus = Ulixēs. velit, mercentur:** subjunctives; apodosis (conclusion) of less vivid future with the protasis (condit. clause) omitted; App. 381. **magnō:** abl. of price, used substantively, *with a great* (*price*); App. 336. A clever suggestion; the Trojans would please their own bitterest foes, Ulysses and the sons of Atreus, if they should put Sinon to death.

107. (Sinōn) prōsequitur. fictō pectore: abl. of manner; App. 328.

108. Trojā: pronounce Trojjā; App. 6, *b*; 15. **Trojā relictā:** abl. abs.; App. 343. **cupiēre = cupiērunt:** App. 204, 4.

108–109. bellō: abl. of means with **fessī**; App. 331. **fugam:** obj. of **mōlīrī = parāre magnō cum labōre.**

110. fēcissent (id): subj. in an unfulfilled wish (opt.); App. 253.

111. (illōs) euntīs: *trying to go*. a conative pres. part.; the storms prevented them as often as they tried to sail home; App. 351, 1, *c*.

112. acernīs: the horse is variously

stāret equus tōtō sonuērunt aethere nimbī.
Suspēnsī Eurypylum scītātum ōrācula Phoebī
mittimus, isque adytīs *haec trīstia dicta* reportat:
"*Sanguine* plācāstis *ventōs et* virgine caesā,
cum prīmum Īliacās, *Danaī, vēnistis ad ōrās:*
sanguine quaerendī reditūs *animāque* litandum
Argolicā." Vulgī *quae vōx ut vēnit ad* aurīs,
obstipuēre *animī* gelidus*que per īma* cucurrit
ossa tremor, *cui fāta parent, quem* poscat Apollō.
Hīc Ithacus *vātem magnō* Calchanta tumultū

---

adytum, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary†
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy†*
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
auris, is *f.* ear*
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus cut (down), slay†
Calchās, antis *m.* a famous Greek seer
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus run, flow
Eurypylus, ī *m.* Greek leader†
gelidus, a, um icy, cold, chilly†
Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*
Ithacus, a, um Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses
litō (1) sacrifice (acceptably), appease†
nimbus, ī *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
obstipēscō, ere, stipuī be dazed, stand agape*
ōrāculum, ī *n.* oracle, prophecy†
os, ossis *n.* bone*
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
plācō (1) appease, propitiate, placate
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
reditus, ūs *m.* return (home)
reportō (1) bring back, report†
scītor, ārī, ātus inquire, seek to know
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
suspēnsus, a, um doubtful, anxious†
tremor, ōris *m.* trembling, shaking†
tumultus, ūs *m.* uproar, tumult, hubbub†
virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*
vulgus, ī *n.* (*m.*) crowd, rabble, herd

---

represented by Vergil; here it is of maple; in l. 16 it was of pine; in the later passages it is of oak. Instead of using the general word *wood*, the poet strives to employ specific terms, at the expense of consistency.

113. stāret: subj. with descriptive **cum**; App. 378. **tōtō aethere:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

114. (nōs) suspēnsī. scītātum: supine after a verb of motion to express purpose; App. 270. **ōrācula Phoebī:** apparently at Delphi, where the most famous oracle of Apollo was located. The next most important oracle was at Delos, Apollo's birthplace.

115. (ex) adytīs (Phoebī).

116. plācā(vi)stis. virgine caesā: this refers to the sacrifice of Iphigenia, daughter of Agamemnon, at Aulis, where the Greek fleet was detained by adverse winds on the eve of sailing for Troy. After Iphigenia had been sacrificed to Diana in obedience to the divine command, the gods sent favorable winds which wafted the Greek fleet straight to Troy. For a modern treatment of this story read Tennyson's *Dream of Fair Women*.

118. sanguine: cf. **sanguine** in l. 116, and for the rhetorical repetition known as *anaphora* see App. 413. **quaerendī (sunt nōbīs) reditūs, litandum (est nōbīs):** passive periphrastics denoting necessity; App. 199, *b*. Observe the shift from the personal (**quaerendī**) to the impersonal (**litandum**) construction. **reditūs:** poetic plural; App. 243. **animā:** abl. of means. **litandum (est):** *it must be sacrificed, sacrifice must be made.*

119. quae vōx ut vēnit ad aurīs vulgī: *as (when) this report had come to the ears of the rabble.* Observe the Latin use of the relative pronoun where English prefers the demonstrative.

120. obstipuēre = obstipuērunt: App. 204, 4. **per īma ossa:** *through the marrow;* literally *through the innermost (part of their) bones:* App. 246.

121. cui fāta (tālem mortem) parent. parent, poscat: subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349.

122. vātem magnō Calchanta (acc.) **tumultū:** interlocked order; App. 442.

prōtrahit *in mediōs; quae sint ea nūmina dīvum*
flāgitat. *Et mihi jam multī* crūdēle canēbant
artificis scelus, *et* tacitī ventūra *vidēbant.*
Bis quīnōs silet *ille diēs* tēctus*que* recūsat
prōdere *vōce suā* quemquam *aut* oppōnere *mortī.*
Vix tandem, magnīs Ithacī *clāmōribus āctus,*
compositō rumpit *vōcem et mē* dēstinat *ārae.*
Adsēnsēre *omnēs et, quae sibi* quisque timēbat,
ūnius in miserī exitium conversa *tulēre.*
Jamque diēs īnfanda *aderat; mihi sacra parārī*
et salsae frūgēs *et circum* tempora vittae.
Ēripuī, fateor, lētō *mē et* vincula rūpī,
līmōsō*que* lacū *per noctem* obscūrus *in* ulvā

adsentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus assent, agree†
artifex, ficis *m.* contriver, plotter
bis twice*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), prophesy, proclaim, chant*
compositum, ī *n.* compact, agreement, prearrangement
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
dēstinō (1) mark, intend, destine†
exitium, (i)ī *n.* destruction, ruin†
fateor, ērī, fassus confess, agree
flāgitō (1) demand (urgently), importune†
frūx, frūgis *f.* fruit, grain, meal
īnfandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
Ithacus, a, um Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere†
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin†*
līmōsus, a, um muddy, slimy, miry†
obscūrus, a, um dark, hidden, obscure*
oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus oppose, expose†
prōdō, ere, didī, ditus hand over, betray
prōtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus drag (forth)†
quīni, ae, a five (each), by fives†
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam any(one, thing)
quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque) each, every (one)†
recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object†
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth), utter†*
salsus, a, um salted, salty, briny†
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still, hush
tacitus, a, um silent, peaceful, quiet
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide†*
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
ulva, ae *f.* sedge, marsh grass†
ventūrum, ī *n.* the future, what is (was) to come
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, chain, cable*
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band†*

123. prōtrahit: Sinon represents Calchas as pretending to be unwilling. **in (nōs) mediōs:** *into our midst;* App. 246. **sint:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **dīv(ōr)um.**

124. mihi: *for me;* App. 301. **mihi jam multī:** alliteration; App. 411.

125. artificis = Ulixis. **tacitī:** through fear of Ulysses. **ventūra:** substantively, "what was coming."

126. quīnōs: the distributive numeral for the cardinal, quīnque, as is usual with adverbs of multiplication, as bis. Cf. I, 381, note. **īlle** = Calchās. **tēctus:** in his tent.

127. oppōnere (quemquam) mortī.

129. (ex, dē) compositō (cum Ulixe). ārae: dat. **rumpit vōcem:** cognate acc., *he breaks (into) speech = he speaks;* or the verb is used in a causative sense, *he causes his voice to break (forth);* App. 313, 307.

130. Adsēnsēre = adsēnsērunt.

130–131. et (fāta Danaī) tulēre (= tulērunt): the Greeks were content to let Sinon suffer.

131. ūnius in miserī exitium conversa: (*when*) *turned to the destruction of one poor wretch.*

132. parārī: hist. inf.; App. 257.

133. salsae frūgēs: *salted meal,* sprinkled on the victim's head, as a preparation for sacrifice. **(mea) tempora. vittae:** *fillets,* regularly bound on the heads of sacrificial victims.

134. Ēripuī mē lētō: dat. or abl. of separation; App. 305, 340. **fateor:** as a victim devoted to the gods, it was sac-

dēlituī *dum vēla darent, sī forte dedissent.*
Nec mihi jam patriam *antīquam* spēs *ūlla videndī,*
nec dulcīs *nātōs* exoptātum*que parentem,*
quōs illī fors et poenās ob nostra reposcent
effugia, *et* culpam *hanc miserōrum morte* piābunt.
Quod *tē per superōs et* cōnscia *nūmina* vērī,
per sī qua est quae restet adhūc mortālibus ūsquam
intemerāta fidēs, ōrō, miserēre *labōrum*
tantōrum, miserēre *animī nōn* digna *ferentis.'*
Hīc lacrimīs vītam damus et miserēscimus ultrō.
Ipse virō prīmus manicās *atque* arta levārī
vincla *jubet Priamus dictīsque* ita *fātur* amīcīs:
'Quisquis *es* (āmissōs *hinc jam* oblīvīscere Grajōs)
noster eris; mihique haec ēdissere vēra rogantī:

---

adhūc still, as yet, up to this point
amīcus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)†*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus lose, let go*
artus, a, um close, tight, narrow*
cōnscius, a, um conscious, aware
culpa, ae *f.* fault, blame, guilt, sin†
dēlitēscō, ere, lituī hide, skulk, lurk†
dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, deserved
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
ēdisserō, ere, uī, rtus tell, set forth†
effugium, (i)ī *n.* flight, escape†
exoptō (1) desire, long for, crave†
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, fidelity, trust(worthiness), reliance*
Grajus, a, um Greek*
intemerātus, a, um inviolate, pure†
ita thus, so†
levō (1) lift, relieve, lighten, remove
manicae, ārum *f.* handcuff, bond, manacle†
misereor, ērī, itus pity, commiserate (*gen.*)†
miserēscō, ere pity, commiserate†
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
oblīvīscor, ī, lītus forget (*gen., acc.*)†
ōrō (1) beseech, entreat, pray (for)*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
piō (1) appease, expiate, atone for†
quisquis, quaequae, quidquid whoever, whatever
quod because, but, therefore†
reposcō, ere demand, seek, claim†
restō, āre, stitī remain, be left
rogō (1) ask, seek, request, beg†
spēs, speī *f.* hope, expectation*
ultrō further, voluntarily*
ūsquam anywhere, ever
vērum, ī *n.* truth, right, reality†
vērus, a, um true, real, honest*
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, chain, cable*

---

rilege for Sinon to escape and thus thwart the divine will.

136. **dum (Danaī) vēla darent; (vēla) dedissent:** subjunctives of anticipation; App. 374.

137. **mihi:** dat. of possession; App. 299. **spēs ūlla (est). patriam:** obj. of **videndī,** the gen. of the gerund.

138. **nātōs:** inconsistent with **prīmīs ab annīs,** l. 87; but great poets such as Vergil and big liars such as Sinon rarely worry over logical consistency.

139. **quōs poenās:** with **reposcent,** which takes two accusatives; App. 316. In English we should say *demand punishment of them.* **illī (Danaī). fors et = forsitan,** *perhaps.*

140. **(meam) culpam. (illōrum) miserōrum.**

141–143. **tē (= Priamum) ōrō.**

142–143. **per (intemerātam fidem), sī est (ali)qua intemerāta fidēs quae restet. quae restet:** rel. clause of characteristic: App. 389.

143–144. **miserēre (meōrum) labōrum, miserēre (meī) animī:** rhetorical repetition of the deponent imperative **miserēre** which governs the genitives, **labōrum** and **animī;** App. 289, 413.

144. **digna:** substantively, object of **ferentis.**

145. **miserēscimus (Sinōnem).**

146. **virō:** dat of reference; App. 301.

147. **dictīs:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

148. **oblīvīscere:** imp. **Grajōs:** pronounce **Grajjōs;** App. 6, *b*; 15; the acc. instead of the gen. commonly used with **oblīvīscor;** App. 288, *a.*

148–149. **Quisquis es, noster eris:** said to be the technical formula used by a Roman general when receiving a deserter from the enemy.

quō mōlem *hanc immānis equī* statuēre? *Quis* auctor?
Quidve petunt? Quae relligiō? *Aut quae* māchina *bellī?'*
Dīxerat. Ille dolīs īnstrūctus *et* arte Pelasgā
sustulit exūtās vinclīs *ad sīdera* palmās:
'Vōs aeternī *ignēs, et nōn* violābile vestrum
testor *nūmen,' ait, 'vōs ārae* ēnsēs*que* nefandī,
quōs fūgī, vittae*que deum, quās* hostia gessī:
fās *mihi* Grajōrum sacrāta resolvere jūra,
fās ōdisse *virōs atque omnia ferre sub aurās,*
sī qua tegunt; *teneor* patriae *nec* lēgibus *ūllīs.*
Tū modo prōmissīs *maneās servātaque servēs*
Troja fidem, *sī* vēra *feram, sī magna* rependam.
Omnis spēs *Danaum et* coeptī fīdūcia *bellī*
Palladis auxiliīs semper *stetit.* Impius *ex quō*

---

aeternus, a, um eternal, undying*
ars, artis *f.* art(istry), cunning, skill*
auctor, ōris *m.* author, maker, originator†
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance*
coepī, isse, ptus begin, commence
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, treachery, fraud*
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife†*
exuō, ere, uī, ūtus strip, free, doff
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, fidelity, trustworthiness, reliance*
fīdūcia, ae *f.* confidence, reliance, trust
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus bear, wear*
Grajus, a, um Greek*
hostia, ae *f.* (sacrificial) victim
impius, a, um impious, disloyal, wicked
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus instruct, construct, build, arrange
jūs, jūris *n.* law, right, oath, justice
lēx, lēgis *f.* law, decree, regulation
māchina, ae *f.* machine, engine, device
modo only, (just) now
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, structure, burden*
nefandus, a, um unutterable, accursed
ōdī, isse hate, loathe, detest†
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek
prōmissum, ī *n.* promise, agreement
re(l)ligiō, ōnis *f.* religion, offering†
rependō, ere, ī, pēnsus repay, requite
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus break, free†
sacrō (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow*
semper always, ever*
spēs, speī *f.* hope, expectation*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, establish
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide*
testor, ārī, ātus (call to) witness, invoke†
vērum, ī *n.* truth, right, reality
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, chain, cable*
violābilis, e violable, to be violated†
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band*

---

150. quō: *for what purpose?* **statuēre** = **statuērunt (Danaī). quis (fuit) auctor.**

151. quae (est), quae (est). Sinon had, of course, been waiting for just such questions.

152. dīxerat (Priamus). ille (Sinōn).

153. vinclīs: abl. of separation; App. 340; the form **vinculīs** (- ˘ -) can not be used in hexameter.

154. aeternī ignēs = sīdera, although it is broad daylight. **nōn violābile** = *inviolable; not to be desecrated* (by perjury).

156. de(ōr)um. hostia: (*as*) *a sacrificial victim.* Sinon swears by all that is good and holy, that he may gain greater credence for the lies he is planning to tell.

157–158. fās (est), fās (est): rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

158. sub aurās = *into the light of day.*

159. sī qua (Danaī) tegunt: the use of the indicative would imply that there *are* secrets to disclose. **nec teneor patriae lēgibus ūllīs.**

160. (in) prōmissīs: abl. of place where; App. 319. **maneās, servēs:** vol. subj.; App. 254.

161. Troja: vocative. **magna (praemia):** *rich returns.*

162. Dana(ōr)um. bellī: obj. gen.; App. 284.

163. auxiliīs: abl. of means or place;

Tȳdīdēs *sed* enim scelerum*que* inventor Ulixēs
fātāle adgressī sacrātō āvellere templō
Palladium caesīs *summae* custōdibus *arcis*
corripuēre *sacram* effigiem *manibusque* cruentīs
virgineās ausī *dīvae* contingere vittās:
ex illō fluere *ac* retrō sublāpsa *referrī*
spēs *Danaum*, frāctae *vīrēs*, āversa *deae mēns*.
Nec dubiīs *ea* signa *dedit* Trītōnia mōnstrīs.
Vix positum castrīs simulācrum: *arsēre* coruscae
lūminibus flammae arrēctīs, salsus*que per* artūs
sūdor *iit*, ter*que ipsa* solō (mīrābile *dictū*)
ēmicuit parmam*que ferēns* hastam*que* trementem.

adgredior, ī, gressus attack, undertake†
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, arouse
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear away†
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus, turn away, avert*
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus cut (down), kill
castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment*
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch; befall*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
coruscus, a, um flashing, bright, quivering
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
dubius, a, um doubtful, uncertain
effigiēs, ēī *f.* image, statue, effigy†
ēmicō, āre, uī flash forth, dash forth†
enim for, indeed, truly*
fātālis, e fatal, fated, fateful†
fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow, ebb, vanish
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter*
hasta, ae *f.* spear, dart, lance
inventor, ōris *m.* inventor, contriver†
mīrābilis, e wonderful, marvelous
mōnstrum, ī *n.* prodigy, omen, portent†*
Palladium, (ī)i *n.* statue of Pallas†
parma, ae *f.* shield, buckler†
retrō back, backward†
sacrō (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow*
salsus, a, um salted, salty, briny
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
signum, ī *n.* sign, mark, token, signal*
simulācrum, ī *n.* image, statue, likeness†
solum, ī *n.* soil, ground, earth*
spēs, speī *f.* hope, expectation*
sublābor, ī, lāpsus slip down, fall†
sūdor, ōris *m.* sweat, perspiration†
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
ter thrice, three times*
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
Trītōnia, ae *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts†
Tȳdīdēs, ae *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes, a Greek leader
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
virgineus, a, um maidenly, pure†
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band*

App. 331, 319. **ex quō (tempore)**: correlative with **ex illō (tempore)** in l. 169.

165. templō: abl. of separation; App. 320, 340.

165–166. fātāle Palladium: the oracle had proclaimed that Troy was fated to be impregnable so long as the image of Pallas (the Palladium) remained in the citadel of Troy. Ulysses and Diomedes disguised themselves, entered the citadel, and succeeded in carrying off the image to the Greek camp.

166. caesīs custōdibus: abl. abs.; App. 343.

167. corripuēre = **corripuērunt**; App. 204, 4.

168. ausī (sunt). vittās: fillets were commonly worn by images of the gods, by their representatives (priests and priestesses), and by sacrificial victims, such as Sinon (l. 133). **dīvae**: *Minerva's*.

169. ex illō (tempore): correlative with **ex quō (tempore)**, l. 163. **fluere, referrī**: historical infinitives, App. 257.

170. frāctae (sunt) vīrēs, āversa (est) deae mēns.

171. ea signa: perhaps here for **ejus reī signa**, a common usage; i.e., signs of her anger.

172. positum (erat in) castrīs (Danaōrum). arsēre = **arsērunt**; App. 204, 4.

173. lūminibus (= oculīs) arrēctīs (īrā). lūminibus: abl. of separation; App. 340.

174. ipsa (dea): the image itself, i.e., without external aid. **(ā) solō**: abl. of separation; App. 340. **mīrābile dictū**: App. 271, 325.

Extemplō temptanda *fugā* canit *aequora* Calchās,
nec posse Argolicīs exscindī Pergama *tēlīs*
ōmina nī repetant Argīs *nūmenque* redūcant
quod pelagō et curvīs *sēcum* āvēxēre carīnīs.
Et nunc quod patriās ventō petiēre Mycēnās,
arma deōsque parant comitēs pelagōque remēnsō
improvīsī *aderunt.* Ita dīgerit ōmina Calchās.
Hanc prō Palladiō monitī, prō *nūmine* laesō
effigiem statuēre, nefās *quae trīste* piāret.
Hanc tamen immēnsam Calchās attollere mōlem
rōboribus textīs *caelōque* ēdūcere *jussit,*
nē recipī portīs *aut dūcī in moenia posset,*

Argī, ōrum *m.* Argos, a city of southern Greece; Greece
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
attollō, ere lift, raise, rear*
āvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry away; convey
Calchās, antis *m.* a famous Greek seer
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), proclaim, prophesy, chant*
carīna, ae *f.* keel, ship*
curvus, a, um curved, bent, winding*
dīgerō, ere, gessī, gestus distribute; explain†
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw out, erect
effigiēs, ēī *f.* image, statue, effigy
exscindō, ere, scidī, scissus cut out, destroy†
extemplō immediately, at once, suddenly
immēnsus, a, um immense, immeasurable†
improvīsus, a, um unforeseen, sudden
ita thus, so
laedō, ere, sī, sus hurt, offend, strike
mōlēs, is *f.* mass, structure, burden*
moneō, ēre, uī, itus warn, advise†
Mycēnae, ārum *f.* a Greek city
nefās *n. indecl.* guilt, impiety†*
nisi, nī unless, if not*
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, sign, portent*
Palladium, (i)ī *n.* statue of Pallas
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
piō (1) appease, expiate, atone for
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
prō before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, accept*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead back, bring back, restore
remētior, īrī, mēnsus remeasure, recross†
repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus reseek, repeat
rōbur, oris *n.* oak, strength†*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, establish
tamen nevertheless, however, but*
temptō (1) try, test, seek, examine*
texō, ere, xuī, xtus weave, cover†

176–177. temptanda (esse) aequora, posse: indir. disc. with **canit**; App. 263.

178. repetant (ex) Argīs, redūcant: subjunctives in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, *b*. This refers to a Roman custom. If a general met with bad luck on an expedition, he returned to Rome to obtain new auspices (**ōmina repetere**).

179. quod: refers to **nūmen**, *the divine favor* which they had brought with them when they came from Greece. **sēcum = cum sē**; App. 321, *a*. **curvīs carīnīs:** abl. of means; App. 331 **pelagō:** *by sea*, abl. of the route; App. 338. **āvēxēre = āvēxērunt.**

180. ventō: abl. of means; App. 331. **petiēre = petīvērunt.**

181. arma (nova). pelagō remēnsō: abl. abs.; App. 343. **remēnsō:** with passive force, although a deponent verb.

182. ita: refers to ll. 176–179, the following sentence being thrown in parenthetically by Sinon as representing his own view.

183. (Danaī) monitī: by the prodigies and their interpretation by Calchas, ll. 172–179.

184. statuēre = statuērunt. nefās: the theft of the Palladium by Ulysses and Diomedes, ll. 164–168. **piāret:** rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

185. immēnsam: pred. acc.; the Greeks were to build the image so large that the Trojans would not be able to take it into the city and thus secure its protecting power for themselves.

186. rōboribus: abl. of material; App. 324. See the note on **acernīs**, l. 112. **caelō:** dat. of direction; App. 306.

187. nē posset: negative purpose: App. 359.

neu populum *antīquā sub* relligiōne tuērī.
Nam sī vestra *manus* violāsset *dōna* Minervae,
tum magnum exitium (*quod dī* prius ōmen *in ipsum*
convertant!) *Priamī imperiō* Phrygibus*que futūrum;*
sīn *manibus* vestrīs vestram ascendisset *in urbem,*
ultrō Asiam *magnō* Pelopēa *ad moenia bellō*
ventūram et nostrōs ea fāta manēre nepōtēs.'
Tālibus īnsidiīs perjūrīque arte Sinōnis
crēdita *rēs, captīque* dolīs *lacrimīsque* coāctīs
quōs neque Tȳdīdēs *nec* Lārīsaeus Achillēs,
nōn annī domuēre decem, *nōn* mīlle carīnae.
Hīc aliud majus miserīs multōque tremendum
objicitur magis *atque* imprōvida *pectora* turbat.

Achillēs, is (ī, eī) *m.* Greek leader*
annus, i *m.* year, season*
ars, artis *f.* art(istry), cunning, skill*
a(d)scendō, ere, ī, ēnsus ascend, mount
Asia, ae *f.* Asia (Minor)
carīna, ae *f.* keel, ship*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus force, compel*
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
decem ten†
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
domō, āre, uī, itus subdue, crush†
exitium, (i)ī *n.* destruction, ruin
imprōvidus, a, um unforeseeing, heedless†
insidiae, ārum *f.* ambush, snare, treachery
Lārīs(s)aeus, a, um Larissaean, of Larissa, a city of northern Greece†
magis more, rather*
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
Minerva, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant†*
nēve, neu nor, neither, or lest
objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus present, place before†
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, sign, portent*
Pelopēus, a, um of Pelops, legendary Greek king for whom the Peloponnesus was named; Greek†
perjūrus, a, um perjured, treacherous†
Phryx, Phrygis *m.* Phrygian, Trojan
populus, ī *m.* people, race, nation*
prius sooner, before
re(l)ligiō, ōnis *f.* religion, offering
sīn but if, if, however
Sinōn, ōnis *m.* a lying Greek
tremendus, a, um terrible, dreadful
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, protect*
turbō (1) confuse, agitate, disturb*
Tȳdīdēs, ae *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes, a Greek leader
ultrō voluntarily, further*
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
violō (1) violate, outrage, profane†

188. antīquā sub re(l)ligiōne: *under shelter of their ancient faith.* The horse if taken into the city would serve the purpose of the stolen Palladium in protecting Troy. **neu (haec effigiēs posset) tuērī populum (Trojae).**

189. sī violāsset: subj. in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, *b*. **Minervae:** obj. gen.; App. 284.

190. ipsum (Calchanta).

190–191. exitium futūrum (esse): inf. in indir. disc., quoting Calchas's supposed statement; App. 263.

191. convertant: opt. subj.; App. 253.

192. sīn ascendisset (ille equus): subj. in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; cf. **violāsset** in l. 189; App. 390, *b*

193. Asiam: Trojam. Pelopēa: the Greek leaders, Agamemnon and Menelaüs, were descendants of Pelops.

194. ventūram (esse), manēre: indir. disc.; App. 263. **nepōtēs:** obj. of **manēre.**

196. crēdita (est), captīque (sumus). rēs: the story of Sinon.

197. neque Tȳdīdēs (domuit) nec Achillēs (domuit).

198. domuēre = domuērunt.

199–227. As a punishment for Laocoön, who had struck the wooden horse with his spear, Minerva sends two horrible serpents which destroy him and his two little sons.

199–200. Hīc aliud (*another omen*) majus multōque magis tremendum objici-

Corcoran Gallery of Art

THE TROJAN HORSE

Henri Paul Motte

Alinari, Rome *Vatican Museum*

LAOCOÖN AND HIS SONS

Lāocoōn, *ductus* Neptūnō sorte sacerdōs,
sollemnīs taurum *ingentem* mactābat *ad ārās*.
Ecce autem *geminī ā* Tenedō tranquilla *per* alta
(horrēscō *referēns*) immēnsīs orbibus anguēs
incumbunt *pelagō* pariter*que ad lītora tendunt;*
pectora quōrum inter flūctūs arrēcta jubae*que*
sanguineae superant *undās; pars* cētera pontum
pōne legit sinuat*que* immēnsa volūmine terga.
Fit sonitus spūmante salō; *jamque arva tenēbant*
ardentīsque oculōs suffectī *sanguine et ignī*
sībila lambēbant linguīs vibrantibus *ōra*.
Diffugimus vīsū exsanguēs. *Illī agmine* certō
Lāocoönta *petunt; et prīmum* parva duōrum
corpora nātōrum serpēns amplexus uterque

---

altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold†*
anguis, is *m.* (*f.*) snake, serpent†
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, rear
autem moreover, but, however*
certus, a, um sure, fixed, certain, reliable*
cēterus, a, um rest, remaining, other
diffugiō, ere, fūgī flee apart, scatter†
duo, ae, o two†*
ecce see! look! behold!*
exsanguis, e bloodless, lifeless, pale†
fīō, fierī, factus become, arise
horrēscō, ere, horruī shudder, tremble†
immēnsus, a, um immense, immeasurable
incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean upon, overhang, lower (over) (*dat.*)
juba, ae *f.* mane, crest†
lambō, ere lick, lap†
Lāocoōn, ontis *m.* Trojan priest of Neptune
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose; skim*
lingua, ae *f.* tongue, language†
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor†
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
orbis, is *m.* circle, fold, coil; earth*
pariter equally, side by side*
parvus, a, um small, little†*
pōne behind, after†
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
sacerdōs, dōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
salum, ī *n.* (the salt) sea, brine
sanguineus, a, um bloody, blood-red†
serpēns, entis *m.* (*f.*) serpent, snake†
sībilus, a, um hissing, whirring†
sinuō (1) fold, curve, twist, wind†
sollemnis, e annual, customary, solemn†
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, noise, crash†
sors, rtis *f.* lot, fate, destiny, oracle*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus supply, suffuse†
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
taurus, ī *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
Tenedos, ī *f.* small island near Troy
tergum, ī *n.* back, body, rear*
tranquillus, a, um tranquil, calm†
uterque, utraque, utrumque each, both*
vibrō (1) quiver, vibrate, dart†
vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, view, vision, aspect†
volūmen, inis *n.* fold, coil, roll†

---

tur (nōbīs) miserīs. majus: pronounce **majjus**; App. 6, *b*.

201. Neptūnō: dat. of reference; App. 301. **ductus sorte**: *drawn (chosen) by lot.*

203–204. autem ecce geminī anguēs immēnsibus orbibus — horrēscō (haec dicta) referēns — (venientēs) ā Tenedō: symbolizing the later coming of the Greek ships from Tenedos, bringing destruction with them. **immēnsibus orbibus**: abl. of quality or manner; App. 330, 328.

205. pelagō: dat. with compound; App. 298.

208. volūmine: abl. of manner or respect; App. 328, 325.

209. spūmante salō: abl. abs.; App. 343.

210. oculōs: obj. of the middle participle **suffectī**; App. 309, *a*.

212. vīsū: abl. of cause with **exsanguēs**; App. 332.

213. Lāocoönta: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

implicat *et miserōs* morsū dēpascitur artūs;
post *ipsum* auxiliō *subeuntem ac tēla ferentem*
corripiunt spīrīs*que* ligant *ingentibus; et jam*
bis *medium* amplexī, bis collō squāmea *circum*
terga *datī* superant *capite et* cervīcibus *altīs.*
Ille simul manibus tendit dīvellere nōdōs
perfūsus saniē vittās *ātrōque* venēnō,
clāmōrēs simul horrendōs *ad sīdera tollit:*
quālis mūgītus, *fūgit cum* saucius *āram*
taurus *et* incertam excussit cervīce secūrim.
At geminī lāpsū dēlūbra *ad summa* dracōnēs
effugiunt saevae*que petunt* Trītōnidis *arcem,*
sub pedibusque deae clipeī*que sub* orbe teguntur.
Tum vērō tremefacta *novus per pectora cūnctīs*

amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance*
bis twice*
cervīx, īcis *f.* neck
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler†*
collum, ī *n.* neck*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus seize, snatch up*
dēlūbrum, ī *n.* shrine, temple, fane†
dēpascor, ī, pāstus feed on, devour†
dīvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear apart†
dracō, ōnis *m.* dragon, serpent†
effugiō, ere, fūgī flee, escape†
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off*
horrendus, a, um horrible, horrifying*
implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus) entwine
incertus, a, um uncertain, ill-aimed
lāpsus, ūs *m.* gliding, rolling, sinking†
ligō (1) bind, tie, fasten†
morsus, ūs *m.* bite, biting, jaws, fangs
mūgītus, ūs *m.* bellow(ing), roar†
nōdus, ī *m.* knot; fold, coil
orbis, is *m.* circle, fold, coil; earth*
perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus soak, drench†
post after(ward); behind (*acc.*)*
quālis, e (such) as, of what sort*
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
saniēs, ēī *f.* blood, gore†
saucius, a, um wounded, stricken†
secūris, is *f.* ax†
spīra, ae *f.* fold, coil, spire†
squāmeus, a, um scaly†
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive
taurus, ī *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide*
tergum, ī *n.* back, body, rear*
tremefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus make tremble, appall, alarm†
Trītōnis, idis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts†
venēnum, ī *n.* poison, venom, drug
vērō truly, indeed, but
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band*

216. post: *afterward,* adv. **ipsum (Lāocoönta).** **auxiliō:** dat. of purpose; App. 303.

218. circum: with **datī = circumdatī,** *placed around;* App. 445. **medium (illum = Lāocoönta).** **collō:** dat. with the compound **circumdatī;** App. 298.

219. terga: obj. of the middle part. **datī,** *having placed;* App. 309, *a.* **superant (illum = Lāocoönta). capite:** for **capitibus,** which could not be used in dactylic verse because of its three successive short syllables; abl. of means or degree of difference; App. 331, 335.

220. Ille: Lāocoōn.

221. vittās: acc. with **perfūsus,** a middle part. or acc. of respect; App. 309, *a*; 311.

223. (tālis est mūgītus Lāocoöntis) quālis (est) mūgītus (taurī); a simile: App. 441.

224. (ā) cervīce.

225. lāpsū: *with a gliding (movement);* abl. of manner; App. 328. **dēlūbra summa = dēlūbra arcis Trojae,** where the temple of Minerva stood, l. 226.

226. saevae: *angry, hostile (to the Trojans).*

227. deae = the statue of the goddess. **teguntur:** a middle use = **sē tegunt;** App. 309. Many statues of Minerva show a snake at her feet, which may have given rise to this feature of the story.

228–249. Partly induced by the lying speech of Sinon and partly frightened by

īnsinuat pavor, *et* scelus expendisse merentem
Lāocoönta *ferunt, sacrum quī* cuspide rōbur
laeserit *et* tergō scelerātam intorserit hastam.
Dūcendum ad sēdēs simulācrum ōrandaque *dīvae*
nūmina conclāmant.
Dīvidimus mūrōs *et moenia* pandimus *urbis*.
Accingunt *omnēs* operī *pedibusque* rotārum
subjiciunt lāpsūs, *et* stuppea vincula collō
intendunt: scandit fātālis māchina mūrōs
fēta *armīs*. *Puerī circum* innūptaeque puellae
sacra canunt fūnemque *manū* contingere gaudent:
illa subit mediaeque mināns inlābitur *urbī*.
Ō patria, *Ō dīvum domus* Īlium *et* incluta *bellō*

accingō, ere, cinxī, cīnctus gird (on), equip
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant*
collum, ī *n.* neck*
conclāmō (1) cry, shout, exclaim†
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, befall*
cuspis, pidis *f.* point, spear, lance
dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus divide, separate
expendō, ere, ī, pēnsus expiate, pay (for)†
fātālis, e fatal, deadly, fated, fateful
fētus, a, um teeming, pregnant, filled
fūnis, is *m.* rope, cable†
gaudeō, ēre, gāvisus sum rejoice, exult
hasta, ae *f.* spear, dart, lance
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy
inclutus, a, um famous, renowned
inlābor, ī, lāpsus glide in(to) (*dat.*)†
innūptus, a, um unmarried, virgin
īnsinuō (1) wind, creep, coil†
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, extend†
intorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus hurl (against) (*dat.*)†
laedō, ere, ī, sus strike, hurt, offend
Lāocoōn, ontis *m.* Trojan priest of Neptune
lāpsus, ūs *m.* gliding, rolling, sinking
māchina, ae *f.* machine, engine, device
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, merit, earn†*
minor, ārī, ātus tower; threaten (*dat.*)
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
opus, eris *n.* work, task, deed, labor*
ōrō (1) entreat, pray (for), beseech*
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, open, loosen*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
pavor, ōris *m.* terror, shuddering, alarm†
puella, ae *f.* girl†
rōbur, oris *n.* oak, strength*
rota, ae *f.* wheel
scandō, ere, ī, scānsus mount, climb†
scelerātus, a, um criminal, wicked†
scelus, eris *n.* crime, impiety, sin*
simulācrum, ī *n.* image, statue, likeness
stuppeus, a, um hempen, (of) tow†
subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place under (*dat.*)
tergum, ī *n.* back, body, rear*
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* chain, bond, cable*

the portentous death of Laocoön, the Trojans make a breach in the walls of the city, drag the horse inside, and hold high carnival as a thanksgiving to the gods for the preservation of their city.

228. cūnctīs: dat. of reference; App. 301.

229–230. īnsinuat (sē). expendisse: indir. disc. with ferunt, *say;* App. 263.

231. laeserit, intorserit: causal relative clause, or characteristic, with causal force; App. 389. tergō: dat. with compound; App. 298.

232. Dūcendum (esse), ōranda (esse). ad sēdēs (deōrum) = ad dēlūbra summa, 225 = arcem. dīvae (Minervae).

234. For the unfinished line, see the note on I, 534.

235. omnēs (sē) accingunt operī. operī: dat. of purpose; App. 303. rotārum lāpsūs: *rollings* (*glidings*) *of wheels* = *rolling wheels;* App. 425. pedibus (equī): dat. with compound.

236. (ā) collō: App. 340; or dat. with a compound; App. 298.

238. armīs: abl. with fēta; App. 337. circum (equum).

239. sacra (carmina): *sacred songs.*

240. illa (māchina) = equus. urbī: dat. with compound; App. 298.

241. dīv(ōr)um domus: in apposition with Īlium. Note the apostrophe and personification; App. 417, 437.

moenia Dardanidum! quater *ipsō in līmine* portae
substitit *atque* uterō sonitum quater *arma dedēre;*
īnstāmus tamen immemorēs caecī*que* furōre
245 prō mōnstrum *īnfēlīx* sacrātā sistimus *arce.*
Tunc etiam *fātīs* aperit Cassandra *futūrīs*
ōra deī jussū *nōn* umquam crēdita *Teucrīs.*
Nōs dēlūbra *deum miserī, quibus* ultimus *esset*
ille diēs, fēstā vēlāmus fronde *per urbem.*
250 Vertitur intereā *caelum et ruit* Ōceanō *nox*
involvēns *umbrā magnā terramque* polum*que*
Myrmidonum*que* dolōs; *fūsī per moenia Teucrī*
conticuēre; sopor *fessōs* complectitur artūs.

aperiō, īre, uī, rtus open, disclose*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
Cassandra, ae *f.* Trojan prophetess, never believed†
complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold
conticēscō, ere, ticuī become silent, hush
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
dēlūbrum, ī *n.* shrine, temple, fane
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, treachery, fraud*
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
fēstus, a, um festal, festive†
frōns, frondis *f.* branch, foliage†*
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
immemor, oris unmindful, heedless†
īnstō, āre, stitī press on, pursue
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
involvō, ere, ī, volūtus wrap, envelop†
jussus, ūs *m.* command, order, behest†
mōnstrum, ī *n.* omen, portent, monster*
Myrmidones, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly, subjects of Achilles
Ōceanus, ī *m.* ocean
polus, ī *m.* pole; heavens, sky
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
quater four times
sacrō (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow*
sistō, ere, stetī, status stand, stop, stay†
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise
sopor, ōris *m.* sleep, slumber†
subsistō, ere, stitī stop, halt, resist†
tamen nevertheless, however, but*
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest†*
umquam ever, at any time
uterus, ī *m.* belly, womb
vēlō (1) veil, cover, deck, clothe†
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, revolve, change*

242. Dardanid(ār)um: App. 34, *b.* **in līmine:** to stop or stumble on the threshold was considered a bad omen and sure to bring misfortune.

243. (ab) uterō: abl. of separation; App. 340. **dedēre = dedērunt:** App. 204, 4.

245. (in) sacrātā arce: as containing the temple and statues of the gods; abl. of place where; App. 319, *b.*

246. fātīs futūrīs: abl. of means or dat. of purpose; App. 331, 303.

247. deī: Apollo. **nōn crēdita:** Cassandra had been beloved of Apollo, who had granted her the gift of prophecy. Because she finally played him false, Apollo placed upon her the necessity of forever prophesying and of never being believed. Even today such a prophet is often called a Cassandra. **Teucrīs:** dat. of agent; App. 302.

248. quibus esset: adversative rel. clause or characteristic with accessory notion of cause; App. 388, 389.

248–249. Nōs: emphatic; App. 247. **Nōs miserī, quibus ille diēs esset ultimus, vēlāmus dēlūbra de(ōr)um.**

250–267. That night, while the Trojans sleep, the Greeks return from Tenedos and enter the city through the breach made by the Trojans to introduce the horse. Sinon opens the fastenings of the horse, releasing the Greek warriors, who open the gates of Troy and join their forces with the troops from the ships and proceed to lay waste the city with fire and sword.

250. Vertitur caelum: The ancients believed that the earth remained stationary, while the heavens, including sun, moon, and stars, revolved around it. **(ex) Ōceanō:** night was conceived as "rising" from the ocean as the sun sank into it.

252. fūsī per moenia: thus scattered and disorganized the Trojans were later unable to oppose the attacking Greeks.

253. conticuēre = conticuērunt.

Gramstorff Bros. *Rossetti*

CASSANDRA, THE PROPHETESS, ON THE WALLS OF TROY

This Trojan princess was granted the gift of prophecy by Apollo, who later as punishment decreed that no one

Alinari, Rome *Vatican Museum*

MINERVA

On her breast is the Medusa and coiling at her feet the serpent.

Et jam Argīva phalānx īnstrūctīs *nāvibus ībat*
ā Tenedō tacitae *per* amīca silentia lūnae
lītora nōta *petēns, flammās cum* rēgia *puppis*
extulerat, *fātīsque deum* dēfēnsus inīquīs
inclūsōs uterō *Danaōs et* pīnea fūrtim
laxat claustra Sinōn. *Illōs* patefactus *ad aurās*
reddit *equus, laetīque* cavō *sē* rōbore prōmunt
Thessandrus Sthenelus*que* ducēs *et* dīrus Ulixēs,
dēmissum *lāpsī per* fūnem, Acamās*que* Thoās*que*
Pēlīdēs*que* Neoptolemus *prīmus*que Machāōn
et Menelāus *et ipse* dolī fabricātor Epēos.

Acamās, antis *m.* Greek leader†
amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
Argīvus, a, um Argive, Greek
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
claustra, ōrum *n.* barrier, bar, bolt
dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus ward off, protect†
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let down, drop*
dīrus, a, um dire, fearful, dreadful*
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, treachery, trick, fraud*
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus lift, carry off*
Epēos, ī *m.* Greek leader, maker of the wooden horse†
fabricātor, ōris *m.* constructor, maker†
fūnis, is *m.* rope, cable
fūrtim stealthily, furtively, secretly
inclūdō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, confine
inīquus, a, um unfair, unjust, hostile†
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus equip, array, build; instruct
laxō (1) loosen, free, open, release†
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
Machāōn, onis *m.* Greek leader and surgeon†
Menelāus, ī *m.* Greek leader, Helen's husband†
Neoptolemus, ī *m.* Greek leader, son of Achilles†
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus lay open†
Pēlīdēs, ae *m.* descendant of Peleus†
phalānx, angis *f.* phalanx, troop†
pīneus, a, um of pine†
prōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus bring forth†
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, give back, render*
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
rōbur, oris *n.* oak, strength*
silentium, (i)ī *n.* silence, quiet, stillness
Sinōn, ōnis *m.* a lying Greek
Sthenelus, ī *m.* Greek leader†
tacitus, a, um silent, still, quiet
Tenedos, ī *f.* small island near Troy
Thessandrus, ī *m.* Greek leader†
Thoās, antis *m.* Greek leader†
Ulixēs, is (**eī, ī**) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
uterus, ī *m.* womb, belly

254. phalānx īnstrūctīs nāvibus: the fleet in battle order; abl. of quality; App. 330.

255. amīca: *friendly* (to the attacking Greeks). **tacitae lūnae:** cf. "how still the moonlight sleeps upon that bank."

256. flammās: as a signal for the other ships, but especially for Sinon, that he might know when to open the horse and let out the Greeks. **rēgia puppis:** the flagship of the commander-in-chief, Agamemnon. **nōta:** since they had encamped there for ten years.

257. de(ōr)um. inīquīs: *unfriendly* (to the Trojans).

258. (in) uterō (equī): abl. of place where; App. 319, *b*. **pīnea:** in l. 16 the horse is of fir, in l. 112 of maple, in l. 186 of oak, here of pine; but there is no accounting for poetic caprice.

258–259. Danaōs et claustra laxat: for the hysteron proteron, see l. 353; for the zeugma see I, 356 and II, 54, and compare App. 429, 447. **ad aurās:** *to the open air.*

260. (ex) rōbore.

262. lāpsī: *having descended*, deponent participle.

263. prīmus: *noble;* Machaon was probably not the first to climb down, and he was certainly not the leader or most prominent.

264. dolī fabricātor = equī fabricātor here.

Invādunt *urbem somnō* vīnō*que* sepultam;
caeduntur vigilēs, portīs*que* patentibus *omnīs*
accipiunt sociōs atque agmina cōnscia jungunt.
Tempus erat quō prīma quiēs mortālibus aegrīs
incipit *et dōnō dīvum* grātissima serpit.
In somnīs, ecce, *ante oculōs* maestissimus Hector
vīsus adesse mihī largōs*que* effundere flētūs,
raptātus bīgīs *ut quondam*, *āterque* cruentō
pulvere *perque pedēs* trājectus lōra tumentīs.
Ei *mihi*, quālis *erat*, quantum mūtātus *ab illō*
Hectore *quī* redit exuviās indūtus Achillī,
vel Danaum Phrygiōs jaculātus *puppibus ignīs;*
squālentem barbam *et* concrētōs *sanguine* crīnīs

Achillēs, ī (is, eī) *m.* Greek leader*
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
barba, ae *f.* beard, whiskers†
bīgae, ārum *f.* two-horse chariot†
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus cut (down), kill
concrētus, a, um grown together, hardened, matted†
cōnscius, a, um conscious; confederate
crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
ecce look! see! behold!*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
ei alas! ah!†
exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, booty; slough†
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament†
grātus, a, um welcome, pleasing, grateful†
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
induō, ere, uī, ūtus don, clothe, put on
invādō, ere, sī, sus attack, invade†
jaculor, ārī, ātus hurl, throw, fling
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, unite*
largus, a, um abundant, copious
lōrum, ī *n.* thong, leather strap, rein
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mortālis, is *m.* mortal, man, human*
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, be evident
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust
quālis, e (such) as, of what sort*
quantus, a, um how great, how much, how many, as*
quiēs, ētis *f.* quiet, rest, sleep, peace*
raptō (1) snatch, drag, carry off
redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus return†
sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), pultus bury†
serpō, ere, psī, ptus creep (on), crawl†
squāleō, ēre, uī be rough, be filthy†
trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw across, pierce
tumeō, ēre, uī swell, be swollen†
vigil, ilis *m.* (*f.*) guard, watchman, sentinel†
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*

266. portīs: abl. of route, a variety of the abl. of means; App. 338, 331.
267. sociōs (ex nāvibus).

268–297. The ghost of Hector appears to Aeneas in a dream and urges him to flee from the doomed city and to rescue the paternal gods from destruction.

268. quō: abl. of time when; App. 322.
269. dīv(ōr)um.
270. (meōs) oculōs.
271. vīsus (est) adesse: *seemed to appear.*
272. raptātus bīgīs (Achillis): for the story, cf. I, 483–484 and the note.
273. pedēs trājectus lōra: *his feet pierced with thongs;* pedēs is used with the preposition per and lōra is object of the participle trājectus used as a middle; App. 309, *a.*
274. mihi: dat. of reference or interest with the interjection ei; App. 301.
275. exuviās: object of indūtus, used as a middle participle; App. 309, *a.* Hector had slain and despoiled Patroclus, who was wearing the armor of his friend Achilles.
276. Dana(ōr)um puppibus: dat. of direction or reference; App. 306, 301. This refers to the battle around the Greek ships, when the Trojans under Hector almost captured the Greek camp and set fire to several of the ships.

vulneraque *illa* gerēns, *quae circum plūrima* mūrōs
accēpit patriōs. Ultrō flēns *ipse vidēbar*
compellāre *virum et* maestās exprōmere *vōcēs:*
'Ō lūx Dardaniae, spēs *Ō* fīdissima *Teucrum,*
quae tantae tenuēre morae? *Quibus* Hector *ab* ōrīs
exspectāte *venīs? Ut tē* post *multa tuōrum*
fūnera, post variōs hominumque *urbisque labōrēs*
dēfessī aspicimus! *Quae* causa indigna serēnōs
foedāvit vultūs? *Aut* cūr *haec* vulnera *cernō?'*
Ille nihil, *nec mē quaerentem* vāna morātur,
sed graviter gemitūs *īmō dē pectore dūcēns,*
'Heu fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs' ait 'ēripe flammīs.
Hostis *habet* mūrōs; *ruit altō ā* culmine *Troja.*
Sat patriae *Priamōque datum: sī* Pergama *dextrā*
dēfendī *possent,* etiam *hāc* dēfēnsa *fuissent.*
Sacra suōsque tibī commendat *Troja* penātīs;
hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quaere
magna, pererrātō statuēs *quae* dēnique pontō.'

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look (at)
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
commendō (1) intrust, commit†
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to
culmen, inis *n.* top, summit, peak, roof†*
cūr why? for what reason?
Dardania, ae *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy†
dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus defend, protect
dēfessus, a, um weary, tired, worn
dēnique finally, at last
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
exprōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus express, bring forth†
exspectō (1) await (eagerly), expect†*
fīdus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe*
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, lament†
foedō (1) defile, befoul, mar, mangle
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, lament, roar*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus bear, carry (on)*
graviter heavily, grievously
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader*
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
indignus, a, um undeserved, unworthy†
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, heed*
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
nihil, nīl nothing, not at all†
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
pererrō (1) wander through, traverse†
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
post after, behind (*acc.*); afterward*
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
serēnus, a, um serene, calm, fair, clear†
spēs, speī *f.* hope, expectation*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, establish
ultrō voluntarily, further*
vānus, a, um vain, idle, useless, false
varius, a, um various, manifold, diverse*
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

278. circum mūrōs.
281. Teucr(ōr)um.
282. tenuēre = (tē) tenuērunt.
282–283. Hector expectāte: voc. (tū) venīs.
283. Ut: *how gladly.*
285–286. serēnōs vultūs (tuōs), haec vulnera (tua).
287. Ille (dīcit) nihil.
289. nāte: voc. nāte deā: *goddess-born;* literally, *born from a goddess.*
291–292. Sat . . . datum (est ā tē). sī (quā) dextrā dēfendī possent, hāc (dextrā meā), dēfēnsa fuissent.
293. (sua) sacra: the sacred emblems, statues, etc. comitēs: (*as*) *comrades,* in apposition with hōs.
294. moenia = urbem, as often. hīs (penātibus): dat. of reference; App. 301.
295. pererrātō pontō: abl. abs.; App. 343. quae (moenia magna) dēnique statuēs, pontō pererrātō.

Sīc ait et manibus vittās Vestam*que* potentem
aeternum*que* adytīs effert penetrālibus *ignem*.
Dīversō intereā miscentur *moenia* lūctū,
et magis *atque* magis, quamquam sēcrēta *parentis*
Anchīsae domus arboribus*que* obtēcta recessit,
clārēscunt sonitūs *armōrumque* ingruit horror.
Excutior *somnō et summī* fastīgia *tēctī*
ascēnsū superō *atque* arrēctīs auribus astō:
in segetem velutī *cum flamma furentibus* Austrīs
incidit, *aut* rapidus montānō flūmine torrēns
sternit agrōs, sternit sata *laeta* boum*que labōrēs*
praecipitis*que trahit silvās:* stupet īnscius *altō*
accipiēns sonitum *saxī dē* vertice pāstor.
Tum vērō manifesta fidēs, *Danaumque* patēscunt

adytum, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
aeternus, a, um eternal, undying*
ager, grī *m.* field, territory, land*
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree, wood(s)*
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, prick up
a(d)scēnsus, ūs *m.* climbing, ascent†
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)*
auris, is *f.* ear*
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
bōs, bovis *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow†
clārēscō, ere, clāruī grow clear†
dīversus, a, um diverse, scattered*
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry forth, lift*
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake out*
fastīgium, (i)ī *n.* roof, battlement, top
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, fidelity, trustworthiness*
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
horror, ōris *m.* horror, alarm, fright†
incidō, ere, cidī fall (on) (*dat.*)†
ingruō, ere, uī rush (on, in), assail (*dat.*)†
īnscius, a, um ignorant, inexperienced
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, sorrow, lament
magis more, rather*
manifestus, a, um clear, plain, manifest†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle, confuse*
montānus, a, um (of a) mountain†
obtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide†
pāstor, ōris *m.* shepherd, herdsman
patēscō, ere, patuī lie open, be disclosed†
penetrālis, e inmost, interior†
potēns, entis powerful, mighty*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, precipitate†*
quamquam although, however, but
rapidus, a, um swift, whirling, hurrying*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus retire, withdraw†
sata, ōrum *n.* crops, harvest†
sēcrētus, a, um separate, remote, secret†
seges, etis *f.* crop, harvest, grain field†
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, noise, crash*
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew, spread*
stupeō, ēre, uī be dazed (at), stand agape
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
torrēns, entis *m.* torrent
velut(ī) as, just as*
vērō truly, indeed, but
vertex, icis *m.* vertex, summit, peak*
Vesta, ae *f.* goddess of the hearth
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band*

297. aeternum ignem: the sacred fire of Vesta which was never allowed to go out, and from which was always kindled the fire which was given to each colony sent out from Rome.

298–369. Aeneas, however, preferring an honorable death to what he considered a dishonorable flight, finds a few comrades and rushes vainly into battle.

298. moenia = urbs = Troja. **miscentur:** *is filled;* the word suggests confusion.

301. (nōbīs) ingruit horror.

302. somnō: abl. of separation; App. 340.

304. furentibus Austrīs: abl. abs., denoting attendant circumstance; App. 343.

305. montānō flūmine: abl. of means with either **rapidus** or **sternit**; App. 331.

306. sternit, sternit: rhetorical repetition called anaphora; App. 413. **bo(v)um labōrēs:** (*the products of*) *the oxen's toil.*

308. accipiēns = audiēns.

309. manifesta (est) fidēs: *the truth* (of the situation) *was fully revealed;* or *Sinon's perjured faith was manifest.*

īnsidiae. *Jam* Dēiphobī *dedit* ampla ruīnam
Volcānō superante *domus, jam* proximus *ardet*
Ūcalegōn; Sīgēa *ignī* freta lāta relūcent.
Exoritur *clāmorque virum* clangor*que* tubārum.
Arma āmēns *capiō; nec* sat ratiōnis *in armīs,*
sed glomerāre *manum bellō et* concurrere *in arcem*
cum sociīs ardent animī; furor *īraque mentem*
praecipitat, pulchrum*que* morī succurrit *in armīs.*
Ecce autem *tēlīs* Panthūs ēlāpsus Achīvum,
Panthūs Othryadēs, *arcis* Phoebī*que* sacerdōs,
sacra manū victōsque deōs parvum*que* nepōtem
ipse trahit cursūque āmēns *ad līmina tendit.*

Achīvus, a, um Achaean, Greek
āmēns, entis mad, insane, distracted†
amplus, a, um spacious, large, full, wide
autem but, however, moreover*
clangor, ōris *m.* clang, blare, noise†
concurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run together, fight (with), struggle
Dēiphobus, ī *m.* Trojan leader, Helen's husband after the death of Paris†
ecce see! look! behold!*
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip out, escape
exorior, īrī, ortus arise, spring up†
fretum, ī *n.* strait, sea, waters
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
glomerō (1) gather, roll together
īnsidiae, ārum *f.* ambush, treachery, snare
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish†*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
Othryadēs, ae *m.* son of Othryst
Panthūs, ī *m.* Trojan leader†
parvus, a, um small, little*
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
praecipitō (1) throw headlong, urge on, fall, sink
proximus, a, um next, neighbor(ing)
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, illustrious, glorious*
ratiō, ōnis *f.* reason, cause, method†
relūceō, ēre, lūxī shine back, reflect†
ruīna, ae *f.* downfall, ruin, collapse
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
Sīgēus, a, um of Sigeüm, a promontory near Troy†
succurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus succor, occur
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
tuba, ae *f.* trumpet†
Ūcalegōn, ontis *m.* Trojan leader†
Volcānus (Vulcānus), ī *m.* Vulcan, (god of) fire†

310. Dēiphobī: as Helen's present husband he draws the pent-up fury of the Greeks.

311. dedit ruīnam = ruit. **Volcānō** = **ignī:** metonymy; abl. abs.; App. 433, 343.

311–312. ardet Ūcalegōn: a shortened way of saying **domus Ūcalegontis ardet.**

312. ignī: abl. of means; App. 331.

313. Exoritur: of the third conjugation here; it agrees with the nearest subject; App. 236, *b.* **vir(ōr)um.**

314. nec (est) ratiōnis: part. gen. with **sat(is);** App. 286; I am too dazed to form a clear plan and I seize my arms without any adequate reason.

315–316. (meī) animī ardent glomerāre et concurrere. bellō: dat. of purpose; App. 303. **(meī) animī:** poetic plural; App. 243. **(meam) mentem.**

317. (esse) pulchrum morī in armīs succurrit (mihi): *it occurs to me that it is glorious to die in arms.*

318. Panthūs: nom. sing. with **ū,** a Greek form; App. 67. **Achīv(ōr)um.**

318–319. Panthūs, Panthūs: observe the rhetorical effect obtained by repetition; App. 413.

319. arcis: site of the temple of Apollo as well as that of various other shrines of the gods.

320. sacra: as in l. 293. **victōs deōs:** the gods fought for their people; and when the gods were conquered the people were also defeated.

321. (nostra) līmina = **līmina Anchī-**

'*Quō rēs summa locō*, Panthū? *Quam* prendimus *arcem?*'
Vix ea fātus eram gemitū *cum tālia* reddit:
'*Vēnit summa diēs et* inēluctābile *tempus*
Dardaniae. *Fuimus* Trōes, *fuit* Īlium *et ingēns*
glōria *Teucrōrum;* ferus *omnia Juppiter* Argōs
trānstulit; incēnsā *Danaī* dominantur *in urbe.*
Arduus armātōs *mediīs in moenibus* astāns
fundit equus victorque Sinōn incendia miscet
īnsultāns. Portīs *aliī* bipatentibus *adsunt,*
mīlia quot *magnīs* umquam *vēnēre* Mycēnīs;
obsēdēre *aliī tēlīs* angusta *viārum*
oppositīs; *stat ferrī* aciēs mūcrōne coruscō
stricta, *parāta* necī; *vix prīmī* proelia temptant

---

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; battle line, army*
angustum, ī *n.* narrow place, strait†
arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering†*
Argī, ōrum *m.* city and district of southern Greece
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)*
bipatēns, entis doubly open, double†
coruscus, a, um flashing, bright, quivering
Dardania, ae *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy
dominor, ārī, ātus rule, hold sway
ferus, a, um wild, fierce, cruel, savage†*
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, lament, roar*
glōria, ae *f.* glory, renown, fame, pride
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy
incendium, (i)ī *n.* fire, conflagration
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, inflame, fire*
inēluctābilis, e inevitable, inescapable†
īnsultō (1) leap upon, taunt, insult†
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
misceō, ēre, cuī, mixtus mix, mingle, confuse*
mūcrō, ōnis *m.* point, edge, blade†
Mycēnae, ārum *f.* city of Greece, home of Agamemnon, leader of the Greeks against Troy
nex, necis *f.* death, destruction, murder
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus besiege, beset†
oppositus, a, um opposing, hostile
Panthūs, ī *m.* Trojan leader
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp†
proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, fray, fight†
quot as many as, how many†
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, reply*
Sinōn, ōnis *m.* a lying Greek
stringō, ere, īnxī, ictus draw, graze
temptō (1) try, test, venture, examine*
trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātus transfer
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
umquam ever, at any time

---

sae, meī patris. cursū: abl. of manner; App. 328.

322. Quō (in) locō (est) rēs summa = *in what situation is the state* **(rēs summa)?** or *in what spot is the chief conflict?* **Panthū:** voc., a Greek form; App. 67. **pre(he)ndimus:** with a future sense; *what position are we trying to hold, now that the main arx is untenable?* See App. 351, 1, *c*; 348, *a*.

323. tālia (dicta). gemitū: abl. of manner; App. 328.

324. Panthus practically says: "No use to resist; we have no position anywhere to defend; our last day has come." **summa:** *final.*

325. Dardaniae: dat. of direction or reference; App. 306, 301. **Trōes fuimus, fuit Īlium:** observe the pathos of the tense: *We have been (but we are no longer) Trojans; Troy is a thing of the past;* App. 351, 4, *a*.

326. ferus: *hostile* (to the Trojans). **(ad) Argōs** = *to Greece;* App. 443.

328. Arduus armātōs: alliteration; App. 411. **equus armātōs (virōs) fundit.**

330. aliī . . . aliī: *some . . . others.* **Portīs bipatentibus:** *through wide-open gates;* abl. of route; App. 338.

331. mīlia quot: *as many thousands as.* **vēnēre** (= **vēnērunt**) **Mycēnīs:** abl. of place whence; App. 320.

332. obsēdēre = **obsēdērunt. aliī (Danaī). tēlīs oppositīs:** abl. of means; App. 331. **angusta (loca).**

333. mūcrōne coruscō: abl. of quality; App. 330.

334. necī (Teucrōrum): *for the slaughter* (of the Trojans).

portārum vigilēs *et* caecō Mārte resistunt.'
Tālibus Othryadae *dictīs et nūmine dīvum*
in flammās et in arma feror, quō trīstis Erīnys,
quō fremitus *vocat et sublātus ad* aethera *clāmor.*
Addunt *sē sociōs* Rhīpeus *et maximus armīs*
Ēpytus, oblātī *per* lūnam, Hypanis*que* Dymās*que*
et laterī adglomerant *nostrō,* juvenis*que* Coroebus
Mygdonidēs — *illīs ad Trojam forte diēbus*
vēnerat īnsānō Cassandrae incēnsus *amōre*
et gener auxilium *Priamō* Phrygibus*que ferēbat,*
īnfēlīx quī nōn spōnsae praecepta *furentis*
audierit!
Quōs ubi cōnfertōs audēre *in* proelia *vīdī,*
incipiō *super hīs:* 'Juvenēs, fortissima frūstrā

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
adglomerō (1) roll together, gather, join†
aethēr, eris, *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
Cassandra, ae *f.* prophetess, daughter of Priam, never believed
cōnfertus, a, um crowded, packed†
Coroebus, ī *m.* suitor of Cassandra, daughter of Priam†
Dymās, antis *m.* Trojan leader†
Ēpytus, ī *m.* Trojan leader†
Erīnys, yos *f.* a Fury, Curse†
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
fremitus, ūs *m.* (up)roar, din, applause†
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
gener, erī *m.* (prospective) son-in-law†
Hypanis, is *m.* Trojan leader†
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, fire, inflame*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
īnsānus, a, um mad, insane, frenzied†
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
Mārs, rtis *m.* (god of) war
Mygdonidēs, ae *m.* son of Mygdon†
offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present
Othryadēs, ae *m.* son of Othrys, **Panthus**
Phryx, Phrygis *m.* Phrygian, Trojan
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
praeceptum, ī *n.* precept, advice†
proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, fray, fight
resistō, ere, stitī resist, halt, stop
Rhīpeus, ī *m.* Trojan leader†
spōnsa, ae *f.* fiancée, wife†
vigil, ilis *m.* guard, watchman, sentinel

335. caecō Mārte (= bellō): *in blind warfare,* that is fighting in the dark; abl. of place where; App. 319, 433.

336. dictīs: abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332. **dīv(ōr)um.**

337. trīstis Erīnys (bellī mē vocat): *the fell fury (of battle calls me).*

338. aethera: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

339. sociōs (mihi). armīs: abl. of respect with **maximus,** *mighty in battle;* App. 325.

340. oblātī (mihi) per lūnam (= lūcem lūnae).

341. laterī nostrō (sē) adglomerant: *attach (themselves) to me.*

342. illīs diēbus: abl. of time when; App. 322.

343. (Coroebus) vēnerat. Cassandrae: *for Cassandra,* obj. gen.; App. 284.

344. gener: *as a (prospective) son-in-law.*

345. īnfēlīx (vir). furentis: to the ancients and to primitive peoples a raving person was "touched of God," and his utterances were inspired by the divinity; so of Cassandra (**spōnsae**) here.

346. audierit: rel. clause of characteristic, with accessory notion of cause; App. 389; cf. l. 231.

347. audēre in proelia: *were bold for battle.*

348. super: adv. **hīs (dictīs):** abl. of means. **frūstrā:** *in vain;* since resistance is useless.

pectora, sī vōbīs audentem extrēma cupīdō
certa *sequī, quae sit rēbus fortūna vidētis;*
excessēre *omnēs* adytīs *ārīsque relictīs*
dī quibus imperium hoc steterat; succurritis *urbī*
incēnsae: moriāmur *et in media arma ruāmus.*
Ūna salūs *victīs nūllam* spērāre salūtem.'
Sīc animīs juvenum furor additus. Inde, lupī ceu
raptōrēs *ātrā in* nebulā, *quōs* improba ventris
exēgit caecōs rabiēs catulī*que relictī*
faucibus exspectant siccīs, *per tēla, per* hostīs
vādimus *haud* dubiam *in mortem mediaeque tenēmus*
urbis iter; *nox ātra* cavā circumvolat *umbrā.*
Quis clādem *illīus noctis, quis* fūnera *fandō*
explicet *aut possit lacrimīs* aequāre *labōrēs?*

---

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
adytum, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
aequō (1) equal(ize), match, level*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
catulus, ī *m.* cub, puppy, whelp†
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
certus, a, um fixed, sure, certain, reliable*
ceu as, just as, as if†
circumvolō (1) flit around, hover around†
clādēs, is *f.* slaughter, ruin, havoc†
cupīdō, inis *f.* love, desire, eagerness†
dubius, a, um doubtful, uncertain
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, retire
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive (out)
explicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus) express, unfold, explain†
exspectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
extrēma, ōrum *n.* extremity, last hazard, death*
faucēs, ium *f.* throat, jaws; pass†
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
improbus, a, um wicked, evil, cruel
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, fire, inflame*
inde thence, thereupon, next*
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
lupus, ī *m.* wolf†
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
nebula, ae *f.* cloud, fog, mist
rabiēs, ēī *f.* rage, madness, fury
raptor, ōris *m.* robber; *adj.* ravenous†
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, security, health
siccus, a, um dry, thirsty†
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
succurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run to aid, succor (*dat.*)
vādō, ere go, advance, rush, march†
venter, tris *m.* belly, stomach†

349–350. pectora: apposition with **juvenēs. sī vōbīs (est) certa cupīdō sequī (mē) audentem extrēma. vōbīs:** dat. of possession; App. 299. **cupīdō (est). sequī:** depends on **cupīdō**; App. 264. **quae fortūna sit:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **(nostrīs) rēbus:** dat. of possession; App. 299.

351. adytīs ārīsque relictīs: abl. abs.; App. 343. **excessēre dī:** the ancient gods are regularly represented as deserting cities about to be captured.

352. quibus: *by whose aid;* abl. of means; App. 331. **urbī:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

353. moriāmur et ruāmus: volitives; App. 254. This is an example of hysteron proteron; App. 429; i.e., the act represented by **ruāmus** really comes before that of **moriāmur**, although **moriāmur** precedes in the sentence. This is a permissible device, as it indicates *priority of interest*, instead of the usual priority of time. See the note on 258–259.

354. Ūna salūs (est) victīs. victīs: dat. of possession; App. 299.

355. additus (est).

356–357. ventris rabiēs = *mad hunger, raving hunger.*

360. urbis: gen. of possession; App. 283, or of quality; App. 285.

361. fūnera fandō: alliteration; App. 411. **Quis (explicet) clādem.**

362. explicet, possit: deliberative or potential subjunctives; App. 348, 252. **lacrimīs:** abl. of means, App. 331.

Urbs antīqua ruit multōs domināta *per* annōs;
plūrima perque viās sternuntur inertia passim
corpora perque domōs et relligiōsa *deōrum*
līmina. Nec sōlī poenās dant sanguine Teucrī;
quondam etiam *victīs* redit *in* praecordia virtūs
victōrēsque cadunt *Danaī.* Crūdēlis ubīque
lūctus, ubīque pavor *et plūrima mortis* imāgō.
Prīmus sē Danaum magnā comitante catervā
Androgeōs offert *nōbīs,* socia *agmina* crēdēns
īnscius, *atque* ultrō verbīs compellat amīcīs:
'Fēstīnāte, *virī! Nam quae* tam sēra morātur
sēgnitiēs? *Aliī* rapiunt incēnsa *feruntque*
Pergama: *vōs* celsīs *nunc prīmum ā nāvibus ītis?'*
Dīxit, et extemplō (*neque* enim respōnsa *dabantur*
fīda satis) sēnsit *mediōs* dēlāpsus *in* hostīs.

amīcus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
Androgeōs, ī (ō) *m.* Greek leader†
annus, ī *m.* year, season*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
caterva, ae *f.* crowd, troop, band
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort, follow
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust*
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip, fall, sink†
dominor, ārī, ātus rule, hold sway
enim for, indeed, truly
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
extemplō suddenly, at once, immediately
fēstīnō (1) hurry, hasten, speed†*
fīdus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
imāgo, inis *f.* image, form, ghost*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, inflame*
iners, rtis inactive, lifeless, tame†
īnscius, a, um ignorant, unaware
lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, sorrow, lament
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, detain*
offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present
passim everywhere, all about†*
pavor, ōris *m.* terror, shuddering, alarm
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
praecordia, ōrum *n.* heart, breast†
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus plunder, snatch (up)
redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus return
re(l)ligiōsus, a, um holy, sacred†
respōnsum, ī *n.* answer, reply†
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
sēgnitiēs, ēī *f.* sloth, laziness†
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive, feel
sērus, a, um (too) late, slow†
socius, a, um allied, associated†
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew, spread*
tam so (much), so very, such*
ubīque everywhere, anywhere
ultrō voluntarily, further*
verbum, ī *n.* word, speech, talk
virtūs, ūtis *f.* valor, manhood, excellence*

364–365. inertia corpora: of the slain Trojans.

365. et = *and even.*

366. poenās dant: *suffer punishment;* see the note on **sūmite poenās** in l. 103.

367. victīs: dat. of reference; App. 301.

369. lūctus (est). pavor: with the final syllable lengthened for metrical reasons; App. 394, *a.* **plūrima:** *many a.*

370–402. Aeneas and his comrades gain some initial successes, and on the advice of Coroebus, one of their number, they exchange their own armor for that of the Greeks they had slain. This trick gives them an advantage, and their success increases.

370. Dana(ōr)um: App. 37, *d.*

371. crēdēns (nōs esse) socia agmina (= **Danaōs**).

372. (nōs) compellat.

373. (vōs) morātur.

374. incēnsa Pergama: obj. of both **rapiunt** and **ferunt.**

375. vōs: emphatic, as always when expressed as subject; App. 247.

377. dēlāpsus (esse) = **sē dēlāpsum esse.**

Obstipuit retrōque *pedem cum vōce* repressit.
Imprōvīsum asprīs velutī *quī* sentibus anguem
pressit humī nītēns trepidus*que* repente refūgit
attollentem *īrās et* caerula colla tumentem,
haud secus Androgeōs vīsū tremefactus abībat.
Inruimus dēnsīs *et* circumfundimur *armīs*,
ignārōs*que locī* passim *et* formīdine *captōs*
sternimus. Aspīrat *prīmō Fortūna labōrī*.
Atque hīc successū exsultāns *animīsque* Coroebus
'*Ō sociī*, quā *prīma*' inquit '*fortūna* salūtis
mōnstrat iter, quā*que* ostendit *sē dextra, sequāmur:*
mūtēmus clipeōs *Danaumque* īnsignia *nōbīs*
aptēmus. Dolus an virtūs, *quis in* hoste requīrat?

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus depart, retreat*
an whether, or*
Androgeōs, ī (ō) *m.* Greek leader
anguis, is *m.* snake, serpent
aptō (1) fit (on, out), equip, furnish*
asper, (e)ra, (e)rum harsh, rough, fierce*
a(d)spīrō (1) breathe upon, favor (*dat.*)
attollō, ere lift, raise, rear*
caerul(e)us, a, um dark blue, bluish black†*
circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour round
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
collum, ī *n.* neck*
Coroebus, ī *m.* suitor of Cassandra
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense†*
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, treachery, fraud*
exsultō (1) leap forth, dance, surge, exult†
formīdō, inis *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
humus, ī *f.* ground, earth, soil*
ignārus, a, um ignorant, inexperienced*
imprōvīsus, a, um unforeseen, unexpected
inquam, is, it say*
inruō, ere, uī rush in†
īnsigne, is *n.* mark, badge, device†
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, teach*
mūtō (1) (ex)change, alter, transform*
nītor, ī, sus (nixus) strive, climb, step firmly†
obstipēscō, ere, puī be dazed, stand agape*
ostendō, ere, ī, tus show, display*
passim everywhere, all about*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, trample*
quā where(by), in any (some) way
refugiō, ere, fūgī flee, retreat, recoil
repente suddenly, quickly, unexpectedly
reprimō, ere, pressī, pressus check†
requīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus seek, ask (for)
retrō back, backward
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, deliverance, health
secus otherwise, differently†
sentis, is *m.* brier, bramble†
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew, spread*
successus, ūs *m.* success, progress†
tremefactus, a, um trembling, appalled
trepidus, a, um alarmed, agitated†
tumeō, ēre, uī swell; be swollen
velut(ī) as, just as*
virtūs, ūtis *f.* valor, manhood, excellence*
vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, appearance, view

378. retrō: pleonastic with the re in **repressit**; App. 438.

379. asprīs = asperīs, a form (- ˘ ˘ -) which could not be used in hexameter; (**in**) **sentibus asprīs**. **velutī (ille) quī**.

380. humī: loc.; App. 37, *c*.

381. (anguem) attollentem. colla: acc. of respect; App. 311.

382. haud secus: litotes; App. 431.

383. circumfundimur (iīs): middle; *we pour ourselves around* (*them*), i.e., *we surround them;* App. 309. **dēnsīs (armīs)**: abl. of means.

385. labōrī: dat. with compound; App. 298.

386. successū, animīs: ablatives of cause; App. 332.

387–388. salūtis: obj. gen. with **iter**; App. 284. (**fortūna**) **ostendit sē. dextra**: irregularly agreeing with **fortūna** instead of with **sē**.

388–390. sequāmur, mūtēmus, aptēmus: vol. subjunctives; App. 254.

390. Dolus an virtūs (sit): indir. quest.; App. 349. **requīrat**: deliberative quest.; App. 348.

Arma aabunt ipsī.' Sīc fātus deinde comantem
Androgeō galeam clipeī*que* īnsigne decōrum
induitur laterī*que* Argīvum accommodat ēnsem.
Hoc Rhīpeus, *hoc ipse* Dymās *omnisque* juventūs
laeta facit: spoliīs *sē* quisque recentibus armat.
Vādimus immixtī *Danaīs haud nūmine nostrō*
multaque per caecam congressī proelia *noctem*
cōnserimus, *multōs Danaum* dēmittimus Orcō.
Diffugiunt *aliī ad nāvīs et lītora cursū*
fīda *petunt; pars ingentem* formīdine turpī
scandunt rūrsus *equum et* nōtā conduntur *in* alvō.
Heu nihil invītīs fās quemquam fīdere *dīvīs!*

accommodō (1) fit, adjust†
alvus, ī *f.* belly, body
Androgeōs, ī (ō) *m.* Greek leader
Argīvus, a, um Argive, Greek
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
comāns, antis hairy, crested†
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, hide*
congredior, ī, gressus meet, encounter
cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus join, engage in†
decōrus, a, um ornamental, becoming
deinde thereupon, then, next
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send down*
diffugiō, ere, fūgī flee (apart), scatter
Dymās, antis *m.* Trojan leader
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum trust, confide, rely (in, on) (*dat., abl.*)*
fīdus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe*
formīdō, inis *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
galea, ae *f.* helmet
immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mingle, mix (with) (*dat.*)†
induō, ere, uī, ūtus, don, clothe, put on
īnsigne, is *n.* mark, badge, device
invītus, a, um unwilling, unfriendly†
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
nihil, nīl nothing, not at all
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
Orcus, ī *m.* (god of) death, Hades†
proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, fray, fight
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam any(one, thing)
quisque, quaeque, quodque each, every (one)
recēns, entis recent, fresh, new, late
Rhīpeus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)†*
scandō, ere, ī, ānsus climb, mount
spolium, (i)ī *n.* spoils, booty, plunder
turpis, e shameful, disgraceful, foul†
vādō, ere go, advance, rush, march

391. deinde: two syllables by synizesis; App. 403.

392. Androgeō: gen., a Greek form; App. 67.

394. Hoc (facit) Rhīpeus. hoc: pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.* **ipse:** *also*, a not uncommon meaning. **omnis juventūs = omnēs juvenēs.**

396. Danaīs: dat. with compound; App. 298. **haud nūmine nostrō:** abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329; *not under the protection of our own (= friendly) divinities.* By donning Greek armor, the Trojans forfeit the protection of their own gods.

397. congressī (Danaōs).

398. Dana(ōr)um. Orcō: dat. of direction, = **ad Orcum**; App. 306.

399. aliī (Danaī). cursū: abl. of manner; App. 328.

400. fīda lītora: where their ships were.

401. conduntur: middle = **sē condunt**; App. 309.

402–430. The Trojans, disguised in Greek armor, see Cassandra, the betrothed of Coroebus, being dragged from the shrine of Minerva by Ajax and his comrades. In trying to rescue her, Coroebus is killed, and the other Trojans are overwhelmed by the weapons of their friends who are ignorant of their disguise.

402. fās (est). nihil: adverbial, *not at all.* **dīvīs:** dat. with a special verb, **fīdere**; App. 297.

Ecce *trahēbātur* passīs Priamēia virgō
crīnibus *ā* templō Cassandra adytīs*que* Minervae
ad caelum tendēns ardentia lūmina frūstrā,
lūmina, nam tenerās arcēbant vincula palmās.
Nōn tulit hanc speciem furiātā *mente* Coroebus
et sēsē medium injēcit peritūrus *in agmen.*
Cōnsequimur *cūnctī et* dēnsīs incurrimus *armīs.*
Hīc prīmum ex altō dēlūbrī culmine *tēlīs*
nostrōrum obruimur oritur*que miserrima* caedēs
armōrum faciē *et* Grajārum errōre jubārum.
Tum Danaī gemitū *atque ēreptae* virginis *īrā*
undique collēctī invādunt, ācerrimus Ajāx
et geminī Atrīdae Dolopum*que* exercitus *omnis;*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited*
adytum, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
Ajāx, ācis *m.* Greek leader, captor of Cassandra*
arceō, ēre, uī confine, restrain, defend
Atrīdēs, ae *m.* son of Atreus: (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaüs
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, massacre, murder
Cassandra, ae *f.* prophetess, daughter of Priam, never believed
colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather
cōnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake†
Coroebus, ī *m.* suitor of Cassandra
crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
culmen, inis *n.* top, summit, peak, roof*
dēlūbrum, ī *n.* shrine, temple, fane
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
Dolopes, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly
ecce see! look! behold!*
error, ōris *m.* error, deceit, trick
exercitus, ūs *m.* army, host, band†
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, form, aspect*
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
furiō (1) frenzy, madden, infuriate†
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
Grajus, a, um Greek*
incurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run in(to), attack†
injiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw in(to)†
invādō, ere, sī, sus attack, march in
juba, ae *f.* mane, crest
Minerva, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts
obruō, ere, uī, utus overwhelm, crush
orior, īrī, ortus (a)rise, spring (up)
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand*
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, spread, loosen, dishevel*
pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus perish, die†
Priamēius, a, um of Priam, Priam's†
speciēs, ēī *f.* sight, spectacle, appearance†
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
tener, era, erum tender, delicate, soft†
undique on (from) all sides*
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* chain, bond, cable*
virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en), daughter*

403. trahēbātur: by Ajax; see I, 39–45; observe the picturesque effect of the imperf.; App. 351. 2. **Priamēia virgō:** *the daughter of Priam*, the adj. being equivalent to the gen., as often.

403–404. passīs crīnibus: abl. of means or quality; App. 331, 330.

405–406. lūmina, lūmina: repetition for the sake of the rhetorical effect; App. 413.

407. Coroebus: Cassandra's lover, ll. 341–346.

409. (Danaīs) incurrimus. dēnsīs armīs: abl. of means; cf. l. 383.

410. prīmum: correlative with **tum**, l. 412. **dēlūbrī:** of Minerva, l. 404.

411. obruimur: with the final syllable long under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a*. **oritur:** of the third conjugation here. Cf. **exoritur**, l. 313.

412. faciē, errōre: ablatives of cause; App. 332. **Grajārum:** pronounce **Grajjārum**; App. 6, *b*. **errōre jubārum:** *the mistake of (caused by) the Greek crests*, subj. gen.; App. 284.

413. ēreptae virginis (Cassandrae): subj. gen.; *the wrath of (caused by) the girl snatched (from them)*, or gen. of definition; App. 284, 282. **gemitū:** abl. of manner; App. 328. **īrā:** abl. of cause; App. 332.

414. collēctī: middle; App. 309. **invādunt (nōs). Ajāx:** pronounced **Ajjāx**; App. 6, *b*.

415. geminī = duo: they were not twins.

adversī ruptō ceu *quondam* turbine *ventī*
cōnflīgunt, Zephyrus*que* Notus*que et laetus* Eōīs
Eurus *equīs;* strīdunt *silvae* saevit*que* tridentī
spūmeus *atque īmō* Nēreus ciet *aequora* fundō.
Illī etiam, *sī quōs* obscūrā *nocte per umbram*
fūdimus īnsidiīs *tōtāque* agitāvimus *urbe,*
appārent; *prīmī* clipeōs mentīta*que tēla*
agnōscunt *atque ōra* sonō discordia signant.
Īlicet obruimur numerō; *prīmusque* Coroebus
Pēneleī *dextrā dīvae* armipotentis *ad āram*
prōcumbit; cadit *et* Rhīpeus, jūstissimus *ūnus*
quī fuit in Teucrīs et servantissimus aequī
(*dīs* aliter *vīsum*); pereunt Hypanis*que* Dymās*que*

---

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
aequum, ī *n.* justice, right(eousness)†
agitō (1) drive, stir, buffet, pursue†
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
aliter otherwise, differently
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
armipotēns, entis powerful in arms†
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
ceu (just) as, as if
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus stir (up), arouse*
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
cōnflīgō, ere, xī, ctus clash, struggle†
Coroebus, ī *m.* suitor of Cassandra
discors, rdis differing, discordant†
Dymās, antis *m.* Trojan leader
Eōus, a, um eastern, of the dawn
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
Eurus, ī *m.* (east) wind
fundus, ī *m.* bottom, base, depth(s)†
Hypanis, is *m.* Trojan leader
īlicet immediately, at once†
īnsidiae, ārum *f.* ambush, snare, treachery
jūstus, a, um just, fair, right(eous), true
mentior, īrī, ītus deceive, lie, pretend†
Nēreus, ī *m.* a minor sea god†
Notus, ī *m.* (south) wind
numerus, ī *m.* number, multitude*
obruō, ere, ruī, rutus overwhelm, crush
obscūrus, a, um dark, hidden, gloomy*
Pēneleus, eī *m.* Greek leader†
pereō, īre, iī (**īvī**), **itus** perish, die
prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall, sink†
Rhīpeus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
saeviō, īre, īvī (**iī**) **ītus** rage, be fierce
servāns, antis observant, heedful†
signō (1) observe, mark, indicate†
sonus, ī *m.* sound, noise, speech†
spūmeus, a, um foamy, frothy†
strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī creak, roar, rustle
tridēns, entis *m.* trident, three-pronged spear
turbō, inis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm
Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind

416–417. ceu quondam turbine ruptō, ventī cōnflīgunt adversī: a simile; App. 441. **turbine ruptō:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

418. equīs: abl. of cause with **laetus**; App. 332. The wind god was conceived as driving his swift steeds like some great warrior. **strīdunt:** of the third conjugation here, but ordinarily of the second. **tridentī:** abl. of means; App. 331.

418–419. Note the alliteration of s; App. 411.

419. spūmeus Nēreus. (ex) fundō.

420–422. Illī (**Danaī**) **appārent. sī quōs:** indef. **īnsidiīs:** by the trick o exchanging armor and insignia; see ll. 389–395. **tōtā urbe** abl. of route or space over which; App. 338.

422–423. (illī Danaī) prīmī . . . agnōscunt atque . . . signant. sonō: abl. of respect with **discordia**; App. 325. The Trojans and Greeks are represented as speaking the same language (**ōra**) but with a dialect differing (**discordia**) in sound (**sonō**). (**nostra**) **ōra.**

425. dextrā (manū). dīvae armipotentis: Minervae.

426. jūstissimus ūnus: ūnus is often thus used simply to emphasize the superlative and is not to be translated.

427. servantissimus aequī: *most devoted to justice;* **aequī** is used substantively as an obj. gen.; App. 284.

428. dīs aliter vīsum (est): *the gods decreed otherwise* (lit., *it seemed otherwise*

cōnfīxī ā *sociīs; nec tē tua plūrima*, Panthū,
lābentem pietās *nec* Apollinis īnfula tēxit.
Īliacī cinerēs *et flamma* extrēma *meōrum*,
testor, *in* occāsū vestrō *nec tēla nec ūllās*
vītāvisse vicēs *Danaum et, sī fāta fuissent*
ut caderem, meruisse *manū*. Dīvellimur inde,
Īphitus *et* Peliās *mēcum* (*quōrum* Īphitus aevō
jam gravior, Peliās *et* vulnere tardus Ulixī),
prōtinus *ad sēdēs Priamī clāmōre vocātī*.
Hīc vērō *ingentem* pugnam, ceu cētera nūsquam
bella forent, nūllī tōtā morerentur *in urbe*,
sīc Mārtem indomitum *Danaōsque ad tēcta ruentīs*

aevum, ī *n.* age, life, time, eternity†
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
cēterus, a, um other, remaining, rest
ceu as, just as, as if
cinis, eris *m.* cinder(s), ashes (of the dead)†*
cōnfīgō, ere, xī, xus pierce, transfix†
dīvellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear apart
extrēmus, a, um extreme, final, last*
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*
inde thence, thereupon, next*
indomitus, a, um uncontrolled, ungovernable†
īnfula, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band†
Īphitus, ī *m.* Trojan leader†
Mārs, rtis *m.* (god of) war
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, merit, earn*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
nūsquam nowhere, never†
occāsus, ūs *m.* sinking, fall, destruction
Panthūs, ī *m.* Trojan leader
Peliās, ae *m.* Trojan leader†
pietās, ātis *f.* piety, devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
prōtinus immediately, at once†
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, fray, combat*
tardus, a, um slow, retarded, lazy, late
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*
testor, ārī, ātus call to witness, testify
Ulixēs, is (**eī, ī**) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
vērō truly, indeed, but
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vicis (*gen.*) *f.* (inter)change; fortune†
vītō (1) shun, avoid, dodge, escape†
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

to the gods); the underlying thought seems to be: "if any one deserved to survive the fall of Troy it was the righteous Rhipeus, but the ways of the gods are past finding out."

429. (**suīs**) **sociīs**: Trojans on the roof of the temple, misled by their armor into believing Aeneas and his companions to be Greeks. **Panthū**: voc., a Greek form; App. 67.

430. īnfula: fillets were worn by priests and others, such as sacrificial victims, to indicate their sanctity and their consecration to the divinity.

431–505. Aeneas and his comrades hasten to the palace of Priam, which is being stormed.

431. meōrum: substantively, *of my people*, as though the flames of Troy were the funeral flames of his people. **cinerēs, flamma**: vocatives.

432–433. (**vōs**) **testor, (mē) vītāvisse**, indir. statement; App. 263.

433. vicēs Dana(ŏr)um: *perils of (from) the Greeks*, subj. gen.; App. 284. **sī fuissent**: protasis of condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

434. ut caderem: depends partly on **fāta**, partly on **meruisse**; App. 364. (**mē**) **meruisse (ut caderem) manū** (*for my deeds*); or construe: **Dana(ŏr)um manū.**

435–436. Īphitus et Peliās: in partitive apposition with **nōs** understood as subject of **dīvellimur. mēcum = cum mē**: App. 321, *a*. **quōrum Īphitus (est) gravior, et Peliās (est) tardus. Ulixī**: subj. gen. with **vulnere**, *the wound of (inflicted by) Ulysses;* App. 284.

437. vocātī: agrees with the subj. of **dīvellimur.**

438. pugnam (**cernimus**).

439. ceu . . . forent, (ceu) . . . morerentur: condit. comparisons; App. **383.**

cernimus obsessum*que* *āctā* testūdine *līmen.*
Haerent parietibus scālae postīs*que* *sub ipsōs*
nītuntur gradibus clipeōs*que* *ad tēla* sinistrīs
prōtēctī objiciunt, prēnsant fastīgia *dextrīs.*
Dardanidae contrā turrīs *ac tōta domōrum*
culmina convellunt; *hīs sē,* quandō ultima *cernunt,*
extrēmā *jam in morte parant* dēfendere *tēlīs;*
aurātās*que* trabēs, veterum decora *alta parentum,*
dēvolvunt; *aliī* strictīs mūcrōnibus *īmās*
obsēdēre forēs, *hās servant agmine* dēnsō.
Īnstaurātī *animī rēgis* succurrere *tēctīs*
auxiliō*que* levāre *virōs vimque* addere *victīs.*
Līmen erat caeca*que* forēs *et* pervius ūsus
tēctōrum inter sē Priamī, postēs*que* *relictī*

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
aurātus, a, um gilded, golden
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
contrā opposite, on the other side*
convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear up, shatter
culmen, inis *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
decus, oris *n.* ornament, glory, dignity
dēfendō, ere, ī, ēnsus defend, protect
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
dēvolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll down†
extrēmus, a, um extreme, utter, last*
fastīgium, (i)ī *n.* roof, top, summit
foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance
gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, stride, rung
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus hang, cling to (*dat.*)*
īnstaurō (1) renew, refresh†
levō (1) relieve, lighten, lift, remove
mūcrō, ōnis *m.* edge, point, sword
nītor, ī, sus (nixus) climb on, rest on (*abl.*)
objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hold toward
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus besiege, beset
pariēs, ietis *m.* house-wall, wall†
pervius, a, um passable, traversable†
postis, is *m.* post, door, gate†
pr(eh)ēnsō (1) seize, grasp, clutch†
prōtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect†
quandō when, since, because
scālae, ārum *f.* ladder, stairway†
sinistra, ae *f.* left hand†
stringō, ere, īnxī, ictus draw, strip, graze
succurrō, ere, ī, cursus succor (*dat.*)
testūdō, inis *f.* tortoise, roof of overlapping shields held by soldiers over their heads
trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, timber
turris, is *f.* tower, turret†
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*
ūsus, ūs *m.* employment, use†
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

441. āctā testūdine: abl. abs.; App. 343. An assaulting party, protected by their upraised shields and bearing a fancied resemblance to a tortoise shell; hence the Romans gave it the name, **testūdō,** *tortoise.*

442. parietibus: dat. or abl. with **haerent**; App. 319, 297; pronounced here as though spelled **parjetibus** so that it may be used in dactylic hexameter; App. 401.

443. gradibus: *up the rungs;* abl. of route; App. 338.

445–446. contrā: adv. **turrīs, culmina:** objects of **convellunt. ultima (fāta) = mortem.**

446–447. hīs tēlīs: abl. of means; App. 331. **sē dēfendere parant.**

449. aliī (Teucrī).

450. obsēdēre = obsēdērunt: App. 204, 4.

451. Īnstaurātī (sunt) animī (nostrī). tēctīs: dat. with compound, **succurrere**; App. 298.

452. auxiliō: abl. of means; App. 331. **victīs (Teucrīs):** dat. with compound; App. 298.

453. erat: agreeing with its nearest subject, **līmen**; App. 236, *b.* **pervius ūsus:** *a passable use, a way through which one might pass,* coördinate with **līmen, forēs,** and **postēs.**

454. inter sē: connecting the different parts of the palace (**tēctōrum**) with each other. **tēctōrum:** poetic plural; App. 243. **relictī:** *secluded,* unknown except to members of Priam's family.

ā tergō, *īnfēlīx* quā *sē*, *dum rēgna manēbant*,
saepius Andromachē *ferre* incomitāta solēbat
ad socerōs *et* avō *puerum* Astyanacta *trahēbat*.
Ēvādō *ad summī* fastīgia culminis, unde
tēla manū miserī jactābant inrita *Teucrī*.
Turrim *in* praecipitī *stantem summīsque sub* astra
ēductam *tēctīs*, unde *omnis Troja vidērī*
et Danaum solitae *nāvēs et* Achāica castra,
adgressī *ferrō circum*, quā *summa* labantīs
jūnctūrās tabulāta *dabant*, convellimus *altīs*
sēdibus impulimus*que*; *ea lāpsa* repente ruīnam
cum sonitū *trahit et Danaum super agmina* lātē
incidit. *Ast aliī subeunt, nec saxa nec ūllum*
tēlōrum intereā cessat *genus*.
Vestibulum *ante ipsum prīmōque in līmine* Pyrrhus

Achāicus, a, um Achaean, Greek†
adgredior, ī, gressus approach, attack
Andromachē, ēs (a, ae) *f.* wife of Hector†
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
Astyanax, actis *m.* infant son of Hector and Andromache†
avus, ī *m.* grandfather; ancestor†
castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment*
cessō (1) yield, delay, cease
convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear up, shatter
culmen, inis *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead forth, raise
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus go out, traverse, mount†
fastīgium, (i)ī *n.* roof, top, summit
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus push forward
incidō, ere, ī fall (on); chance upon
incomitātus, a, um unaccompanied†
inritus, a, um useless, vain, unavailing†
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
jactō (1) hurl, toss, buffet; utter*
jūnctūra, ae *f.* joint, fastening†
labō (1) totter, waver, vacillate†
lātē widely, far and wide
praeceps, cipitis *n.* precipice, sheer edge*
Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles†
quā where(by), in any (some) way
repente suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly
ruīna, ae *f.* ruin, downfall, collapse
saepe often, frequently*
socer, erī *m.* father (parent)-in-law†
soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, noise, crash*
tabulātum, ī *n.* floor, story†
tergum, ī *n.* back, body, rear*
turris, is *f.* tower, turret
unde whence, from which place*
vestibulum, ī *n.* entry, vestibule†

---

455. rēgna (Priamī): poetic plural; App. 243.

455–456. īnfēlīx Andromachē sē ferre solēbat. To Aeneas, who is relating the story, Andromache was **īnfēlīx**, because of the loss of Hector who had been slain by Achilles and because of the death of her son Astyanax, who was killed by the Greeks after the fall of Troy.

456. saepius: *very often, quite often*, a common use of the comparative.

457. socerōs: *parents-in-law*, Priam and Hecuba. **avō = Priamō**: dat. of direction; App. 306 = **ad Priamum. Astyanacta**: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

458. Ēvādō ad fastīgia: *I mount to the roof* (after entering the palace by the secret passage just described).

460–464. Turrim adgressī convellimus impulimusque. tēctīs: abl. of separation; App. 340. **in praecipitī**: *on the sheer edge.* **Troja (solita est) vidērī et nāvēs Dana(ōr)um solitae (sunt vidērī)**: a watch tower. **ferrō**: iron tools, such as crow-bars.

464–465. (ex) altīs sēdibus: abl. of separation; App. 340.

466. Dana(ōr)um.

467. aliī (Danaī).

468. cessat: agrees with **ūllum genus**, its nearest subject; App. 236, *b*.

469. Pyrrhus: Achilles's young son who has just come to Troy.

exsultat *tēlīs et lūce* coruscus aēnā;
quālis *ubi in lūcem* coluber mala grāmina pāstus,
frīgida *sub terrā* tumidum *quem* brūma tegēbat,
nunc, positīs novus exuviīs nitidus*que* juventā,
lūbrica convolvit *sublātō pectore* terga
arduus *ad* sōlem, *et* linguīs micat *ōre* trisulcīs.
Ūnā *ingēns* Periphās *et equōrum* agitātor Achillis,
armiger Automedōn, ūnā *omnis* Scȳria pūbēs
succēdunt *tēctō et flammās ad* culmina jactant.
Ipse inter prīmōs correptā dūra bipennī
līmina perrumpit postīs*que ā* cardine vellit
aerātōs; *jamque* excīsā trabe firma cavāvit
rōbora *et ingentem* lātō *dedit ōre* fenestram.

Achillēs, is (ī, eī) *m.* Greek leader*
aēnus, a, um bronze, brazen
aerātus, a, um bronze, brazen†
agitātor, ōris *m.* driver, charioteer†
arduus, a, um high, steep, lofty*
armiger, erī *m.* armorbearer, squire†
Automedōn, ontis *m.* Greek leader†
bipennis, is *f.* double ax†
brūma, ae *f.* midwinter†
cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
cavō (1) hollow out
coluber, brī *m.* snake, serpent†
convolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll, coil†
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
coruscus, a, um flashing, bright, waving
culmen, inis *n.* top, summit, peak, roof*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
excīdō, ere, ī, sus cut out; destroy
exsultō (1) leap forth, dance, surge, exult
exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils; skin, slough
fenestra, ae *f.* window, opening, breach†
firmus, a, um firm, strong, solid†
frīgidus, a, um cold, frosty, chill†
grāmen, inis *n.* grass, herb, plant†
jactō (1) hurl, toss, buffet; utter*
juventa, ae *f.* youth, young manhood
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
lingua, ae *f.* tongue, language
lūbricus, a, um slippery, slimy†
malus, a, um bad, evil, wicked, baneful*
micō, āre, uī flash, quiver, dart
nitidus, a, um shining, bright, sleek†
pascor, ī, pāstus feed (on), graze, eat
Periphās, antis *m.* Greek leader†
perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break through†
postis, is *m.* post, door, gate
pūbēs, is *f.* youth, young men*
quālis, e such (as), of what sort*
rōbur, oris *n.* oak, strength*
Scȳrius, a, um Scyrian, of Scyros, an island of the Aegean where Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus) was born†
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach (*dat.*)
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*
tergum, ī *n.* back, body, rear*
trabs (trabēs), is *f.* beam, timber
trisulcus, a, um threefold, tripartite, forked†
tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling
ūnā together, at the same time
vellō, ere, vulsī, vulsus tear (up)†

470. tēlīs et lūce aēnā coruscus = *flashing and gleaming in his bronze armor.* For a further description see III, 467–468.

471–475. quālis est coluber ubi, pāstus mala grāmina, quem tumidum frīgida brūma sub terrā tegēbat, nunc novus, exuviīs positīs, nitidusque juventā, in lūcem (ēvādēns) sublātō pectore arduus ad sōlem lūbrica terga convolvit, et linguīs trisulcīs (in) ōre micat. **mala grāmina pāstus:** the ancients thought that serpents derived their venom from feeding on poisonous herbs (**mala grāmina**). **tumidum:** with venom. **positīs:** *shed.* **linguīs trisulcīs:** abl. of means; App. 331; the ancients thought that the serpent's tongue had three forks.

478. tēctō (Priamī): dat. with compound; App. 298.

479. Ipse (Pyrrhus): see the note on ipsius, I, 114. **correptā bipennī:** abl. abs. or means; App. 343, 331.

479–480. correptā dūra bipennī līmina: interlocked order; App. 442. **līmina:** *the doors.*

482. lātō ōre: *wide-mouthed;* abl. of quality; App. 330.

Appāret *domus* intus *et* ātria *longa* patēscunt,
appārent *Priamī et* veterum penetrālia *rēgum*,
armātōsque *vident stantīs in līmine prīmō*.
At domus interior gemitū *miserōque* tumultū
miscētur, penitusque cavae plangōribus aedēs
fēmineīs ululant; ferit aurea *sīdera clāmor*.
Tum pavidae *tēctīs mātrēs ingentibus errant*
amplexaeque *tenent* postīs *atque* ōscula fīgunt.
Īnstat *vī patriā* Pyrrhus; *nec* claustra *nec ipsī*
custōdēs sufferre valent; labat ariete crēbrō
jānua, *et* ēmōtī prōcumbunt cardine postēs.
Fit *via vī;* rumpunt aditūs *prīmōsque* trucīdant
immissī *Danaī et* lātē *loca* mīlite complent.

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance†
aedēs, ium *f.* house, home†
amplector, ī, exus embrace, encompass*
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
ariēs, etis *m.* (battering) ram†
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
ātrium, (i)ī *n.* great hall, atrium
aureus, a, um golden, (of) gold*
cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
claustrum, ī *n.* bolt, fastening, barrier
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete
crēber, bra, brum frequent, repeated*
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
ēmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move from†
fēmineus, a, um feminine, women's†
feriō, īre strike, smite, beat, kill
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, print*
fīō, fierī, factus become, be made
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus let in†
īnstō, āre, stitī press on, urge on
interior, ius inner, interior
intus within, inside
jānua, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance†
labō (1) totter, waver, vacillate
lātē widely, far and wide
mīles, itis *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
ōsculum, ī *n.* dainty lips; kiss
patēscō, ere, uī open up, be revealed
pavidus, a, um fearful, frightened†
penetrālia, ium *n.* chamber, sanctuary, inner room
penitus (deep) within, inside, completely*
plangor, ōris *m.* clamor, wailing, beating (of the breast), shriek†
postis, is *m.* post, door, gate
prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall, sink
Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
sufferō, ferre, sustulī, sublātus withstand, endure†
trucīdō (1) slay, slaughter, butcher†
tumultus, ūs *m.* uproar, tumult, hubbub
ululō (1) howl, shriek, wail†
valeō, ēre, uī be strong, avail, be able†
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

483. ātria: Vergil has in mind the general arrangement of a Roman house rather than that of an ancient Trojan palace.

483–484. Appāret, appārent: rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

485. armātōs (Teucrōs): mentioned in ll. 449–450. **(Danaī) vident.**

486. domus interior: *the inner house = the interior of the house;* App. 246; contrasted with the scene at the entrance (in **līmine prīmō**).

488. ferit sīdera clāmor: hyperbole; App. 428.

489. (in) tēctīs.

490. ōscula: of farewell.

491. vī patriā: *with his father's might,* **patriā = patris = Achillis** (gen.).

492. sufferre (Pyrrhum). ariete crēbrō: abl. of means; App. 331; *with the frequent (battering) ram, with the repeated blows of the battering ram;* **ariete,** pronounced **arjete** here, that it may be used in dactylic hexameter; App. 401.

493. cardine: abl. of separation with **ēmōtī;** App. 340.

494. via vī: alliteration; App. 411. **aditūs:** acc. of effect; App. 307; cf. "he broke a hole in the ice." **prīmōs (virōs):** mentioned in l. 485.

Nōn sīc, aggeribus ruptīs *cum* spūmeus amnis
exiit oppositās*que* ēvīcit gurgite mōlēs,
fertur in arva furēns cumulō *campōsque per omnīs*
cum stabulīs armenta *trahit. Vīdī ipse furentem*
caede Neoptolemum *geminōsque in līmine* Atrīdās,
vīdī Hecubam centum*que* nurūs *Priamumque per ārās*
sanguine foedantem *quōs ipse* sacrāverat *ignīs.*
Quīnquāgintā *illī* thalamī, spēs ampla nepōtum,
barbaricō postēs *aurō* spoliīs*que* superbī
procubuēre; *tenent Danaī* quā dēficit *ignis.*
Forsitan *et Priamī fuerint quae fāta* requīrās.
Urbis utī captae cāsum convulsa*que vīdit*
līmina tēctōrum et medium in penetrālibus hostem,

agger, eris *m.* mound, heap, dike, dam
amnis, is *m.* river, stream, torrent†*
amplus, a, um ample, full, spacious, wide
armentum, ī *n.* herd, flock, drove, cattle
Atrīdēs, ae *m.* son of Atreus: (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaüs
barbaricus, a, um barbaric, foreign†
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
centum hundred*
convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear up, shatter
cumulus, ī *m.* heap, mass, pile
dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, be lacking†
ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus overcome, surmount†
exeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus go forth, depart
foedō (1) defile, pollute, disfigure
fors(it)an perhaps, possibly, perchance†
gurges, itis *m.* whirlpool, abyss, gulf*
Hecuba, ae *f.* wife of Priam†
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, structure, dike*
Neoptolemus, ī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
nurus, ūs *f.* daughter(-in-law)†
oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus oppose, place against
penetrālia, ium *n.* chamber, sanctuary, inner room
postis, is *m.* post, door, gate
prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall (forward), sink
quā where(by), in any (some) way
quīnquāgintā fifty
requīrō, ere, sīvī, sītus ask, seek
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
sacrō (1) hallow, consecrate, dedicate*
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
spolium, (i)ī *n.* spoils, booty, plunder
spūmeus, a, um foamy, frothy
stabulum, ī *n.* stable, stall, abode†
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
thalamus, ī *m.* marriage chamber, bedroom†*

496–498. Nōn sīc spūmeus amnis fertur = *not so (furiously) does a foaming river rush onward;* litotes and a simile; App. 431, 441. **exiit:** from its channel. **fertur furēns, cumulō campōs:** double alliteration; App. 411. **cumulō:** abl. of manner; App. 328; as in I, 105.

500. caede: abl. of manner with **furentem**; App. 328, *a*.

501. nurūs: daughters and daughters-in-law; Priam and Hecuba had fifty of each.

502. foedantem ignīs.

503. illī: *those famous,* as often. **thalamī:** of Priam's fifty sons and their wives.

504. aurō spoliīsque: abl. of means or cause limiting **superbī**; App. 331, 332. **barbaricō:** from a Roman or Greek point of view; *foreign.*

505. prōcubuēre = **prōcubuērunt**; App. 204, 4.

506–558. Hecuba and Priam take refuge at the altar in the court of the palace, but Priam is nevertheless ruthlessly slain by Pyrrhus.

506. quae fuerint Priamī fāta: indir. quest.; App. 349. **requīrās:** potential subjunctive; or it may be taken as a subjunctive in an indirect question introduced by **an** and dependent upon **fors sit (in forsitan)**; **sit** would then be a potential subjunctive.

arma diū senior dēsuēta trementibus aevō
circumdat nēquīquam *umerīs et* inūtile *ferrum*
cingitur, *ac* dēnsōs *fertur* moritūrus *in* hostīs.
Aedibus *in mediīs* nūdō*que sub* aetheris axe
ingēns āra fuit juxtā*que* veterrima laurus
incumbēns *ārae atque umbrā* complexa penātīs.
Hīc Hecuba *et* nātae nēquīquam altāria *circum,*
praecipitēs *ātrā* ceu tempestāte columbae,
condēnsae *et dīvum* amplexae simulācra sedēbant.
Ipsum autem sūmptīs *Priamum* juvenālibus *armīs*
ut vīdit, 'Quae mēns tam dīra, *miserrime conjūnx,*
impulit *hīs* cingī *tēlīs? Aut quō ruis?'* inquit.
'Nōn tālī auxiliō *nec* dēfēnsōribus istīs
tempus eget; *nōn, sī ipse meus nunc adforet* Hector.

aedēs, ium *f.* house, home
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether
aevum, ī *n.* age, life, time, eternity
altāria, ium *n.* altar†
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold*
autem but, however, moreover*
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
axis, is *m.* axle, axis; height†
ceu (just) as, as if
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird, encircle*
circumdō, dare, dedī, datus surround, place around (*dat.*)
columba, ae *f.* dove, pigeon†
complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold
condēnsus, a, um crowded, thick, dense†
dēfēnsor, ōris *m.* defender, protector†
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
dēsuētus, a, um unaccustomed, unused
dīrus, a, um dire, awful, dreadful*
diū a long time, long
egeō, ēre, uī need, lack, require (*abl.*)
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader, son of Priam and Hecuba*
Hecuba, ae *f.* wife of Priam
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus urge, drive
incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean (on, over) (*dat.*)
inquam, is, it say*
inūtilis, e useless, futile, valueless†
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)†*
juvenālis, e youthful, of a young man†
juxtā next, close at hand†*
laurus, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel (tree)†
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
nāta, ae *f.* daughter
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
nūdus, a, um naked, bare, nude, open
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, precipitate*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit*
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire†
simulācrum, ī *n.* image, statue, likeness
sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take, assume
tam so (much), such*
tempestās, ātis *f.* tempest, storm; season*
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
vetus, eris ancient, old, aged, former*

509–510. senior (Priamus) umerīs trementibus aevō arma diū dēsuēta nēquīquam circumdat. senior: with the intensive meaning of the comparative, *though a very old man.*

510. umerīs: dat. with compound; App. 298. **ferrum:** obj. of the middle verb **cingitur,** *he girds on his sword;* App. 309.

512. Aedibus in mediīs: *in the inner court of the palace,* open to the sky; App. 246. As usual in such descriptions, the details are those of a wealthy Roman house of Vergil's own time.

514. ārae: dat. with compound; App. 298.

515. altāria circum = circum altāria: App. 414.

516. ātrā tempestāte: abl. of means with the verbal idea implied in **praecipitēs.**

517. dīv(ōr)um.

518. sūmptīs armīs: abl. abs.; App. 343.

520. (tē) impulit. cingī: middle, *to gird yourself;* App. 309.

521. auxiliō, dēfēnsōribus: ablatives with **eget;** App. 340. The idea seems to be: "human strength is unavailing, and only the gods and their sacred altars can protect us now."

522. adforet = adesset: condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

Hūc tandem concēde; *haec āra* tuēbitur *omnīs,*
aut morière *simul.' Sīc ōre* effāta recēpit
ad sēsē et sacrā longaevum *in sēde* locāvit.
Ecce autem ēlāpsus Pyrrhī *dē* caede Polītēs,
ūnus nātōrum Priamī, per tēla, per hostīs
porticibus *longīs fugit et* vacua ātria lūstrat
saucius. *Illum ardēns* īnfēstō vulnere Pyrrhus
īnsequitur, *jam jamque manū tenet et* premit hastā.
Ut tandem ante oculōs ēvāsit *et ōra parentum,*
concidit *ac multō vītam cum sanguine fūdit.*
Hīc Priamus, quamquam *in mediā jam morte tenētur,*
nōn tamen abstinuit *nec vōcī īraeque* pepercit:
'*At tibi* prō scelere,' exclāmat, 'prō *tālibus* ausīs
dī, si qua est caelō pietās *quae tālia* cūret,
persolvant grātēs dignās *et* praemia reddant

---

abstinēō, ēre, uī, tentus refrain, restrain†
ātrium, (i)ī *n.* great hall, atrium
ausum, ī *n.* daring deed, daring†
autem but, however, moreover*
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, come
concidō, ere, ī fall (in a heap)†
cūrō (1) regard, care (for), heed†
dignus, a, um worthy, suitable, fit(ting)
ecce see! look! behold!*
effor, ārī, ātus speak, utter, say†
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip out, escape
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus escape, come forth
exclāmō (1) cry (out), shout, exclaim†
grātēs, ium *f.* thanks, requital, reward
hasta, ae *f.* spear, lance, dart
hostis, is *m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger*
īnfēstus, a, um hostile, threatening†
īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue*
locō (1) place, establish, locate*
longaevus, a, um aged, very old†
lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare (*dat.*)
persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus pay fully
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, righteousness, justice, sense of duty, nobility*
Polītēs, ae *m.* son of Priam, slain by Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus)†
porticus, ūs *f.* colonnade, corridor, portico†
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, pierce*
prō for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
quamquam although, however, but
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, accept*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, render*
saucius, a, um wounded, hurt
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) protect, watch*
vacuus, a, um empty, vacant, free†
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

523. concēde: imp.; *come here.* (nōs) omnīs.

524. morière = moriēris, fut. 2nd sing.; App. 204, 4. simul (cum nōbīs). ōre: picturesque pleonasm; App. 438. recēpit (longaevum Priamu n).

525. sacrā in sēde = in ārā.

526. Pyrrhī: subj. gen. with caede; App. 284.

528. porticibus: around the inner court of the palace; abl. of the route; App. 338.

529. Illum: Polītēn. īnfēstō vulnere: *with hostile weapon* (which would inflict a wound).

530. (illum) tenet et (illum) premit. jam jam: rhetorical repetition to portray the excited anticipation of Pyrrhus and the frenzied fear of Polites; App. 413.

531. ante oculōs et ōra parentum.

534. vōcī īraeque: datives with special verb; App. 297.

535–537. At dī tibi persolvant grātēs (= grātiās) dignās. (in) caelō. quae

dēbita, *quī nātī* cōram *mē cernere* lētum
fēcistī et patriōs foedāstī fūnere vultūs.
At nōn ille, satum *quō tē* mentīris, Achillēs
tālis in hoste *fuit Priamō; sed* jūra fidem*que*
supplicis ērubuit *corpusque* exsangue sepulcrō
reddidit Hectoreum *mēque in mea rēgna* remīsit.'
Sīc fātus senior *tēlumque* imbelle sine ictū
conjēcit, raucō *quod* prōtinus aere repulsum,
et summō clipeī nēquīquam umbōne pependit.
Cui Pyrrhus: '*Referēs* ergō *haec et* nuntius *ībis*
Pēlīdae *genitōrī. Illī mea trīstia* facta
dēgenerem*que* Neoptolemum nārrāre mementō.

Achillēs, is (ī, eī) *m.* Greek leader*
aes, aeris *n.* bronze*
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl, shoot†
cōram before the face, face to face
dēbitus, a, um due, owed, destined†
dēgener, eris degenerate, ignoble, base†
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
ērubēscō, ere, ērubuī reverence, blush (before)†
exsanguis, e bloodless, lifeless, pale
factum, ī *n.* deed, exploit, undertaking*
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, fidelity, reliance*
foedō (1) defile, pollute, disfigure
fūnus, eris *n.* death, funeral, disaster*
Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, Trojan leader, son of Priam
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, wound†
imbellis, e unwarlike, harmless†
jūs, jūris *n.* law, right, justice
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
meminī, isse remember, recall
mentior, ītī, ītus lie, deceive, pretend
nārrō (1) relate, recount, report, narrate†
Neoptolemus, ī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
nuntius, (i)ī *m.* messenger, message†
Pēlīdēs, ae *m.* descendant of Peleus, Achilles†
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang*
prōtinus immediately, forthwith
Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
raucus, a, um hoarse, sounding, clanging†
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, render*
remittō, ere, mīsī, missus send back†
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus drive back, repel
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire
sepulcrum, ī *n.* tomb, burial†
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget†*
sine without (*abl.*)*
supplex, icis *m.* (*f.*) suppliant*
umbō, ōnis *m.* boss, knob, shield†
vultus, ūs *m.* face, countenance, gaze*

cūret: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **persolvant, reddant**: opt.; App. 253. **grātēs**: *reward, requital.*

538. (tibi) quī. mē cernere = ut cernam: depends on fēcistī.

539. foedā(vi)stī. fūnere (nātī).

540. ille: *that famous*, as often. (ex) quō mentīris tē (esse) satum. mentīris: *you falsely say.* quō: abl. of source; App. 323.

541. After the death of Hector, Priam had ransomed his corpse from Achilles. Cf. I, 483–484. in hoste Priamō: *in the case of, toward his enemy Priam;* Priam's use of his own name adds a touch of pathos.

542. sepulcrō: dat. of purpose; App. 303.

543. Hectoreum = Hectoris: an adj. for a gen. is a common usage.

544. Sīc fātus (est) senior.

545. repulsum (est).

546. (dē) summō umbōne: App. 246; Priam's spear had stuck in the top of the boss of Pyrrhus's shield and now hung there harmless.

547. Pyrrhus (dīxit). Referēs et ībis: hysteron proteron; App. 429; the futures are here used with the force of imperatives, *go and tell;* App. 351, 3, *a.* nuntius: (*as*) *a messenger.*

548. (meō) genitōrī = Achillī.

548–549. mea trīstia facta dēgenerem*que* Neoptolemum: ironical and mocking.

549. mementō: imp.

Nunc morere.' *Hoc dīcēns* altāria *ad ipsa* trementem
trāxit et in multō lāpsantem *sanguine nātī*,
implicuit*que* comam laevā, *dextrāque* coruscum
extulit *ac* laterī capulō tenus abdidit ēnsem.
Haec fīnis Priamī fātōrum, hic exitus *illum*
sorte *tulit Trojam* incēnsam *et* prōlāpsa *videntem*
Pergama, tot *quondam* populīs *terrīsque* superbum
rēgnātōrem Asiae. Jacet *ingēns lītore* truncus,
āvulsum*que umerīs caput et* sine *nōmine corpus.*
At mē tum prīmum saevus circumstetit horror.
Obstipuī; *subiit* cārī *genitōris* imāgō,
ut rēgem aequaevum crūdēlī vulnere *vīdī*
vītam exhālantem; *subiit* dēserta Creūsa
et dīrepta *domus et* parvī *cāsus* Iūlī.

---

abdō, ere, didī, ditus hide, bury
aequaevus, a, um of equal age†
altāria, ium *n.* altar
Asia, ae *f.* Asia (Minor)
āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear from
capulus, ī *m.* hilt, handle, head†
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
circumstō, āre, stetī surround, stand around†
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
coruscus, a, um flashing, bright, waving
Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, lost at the sack of Troy†
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, bitter*
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dīripiō, ere, uī, reptus plunder, ravage
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus raise, lift*
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
exhālō (1) breathe out, exhale†
exitus, ūs *m.* exit, issue, end†
horror, ōris *m.* shudder(ing), horror, alarm
imāgō, inis *f.* image, picture, likeness*
implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus) entwine
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, fire*
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
laeva, ae *f.* left hand
lāpsō, āre slip, stumble, totter, fall†
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
obstipēscō, ere, stipuī be dazed, stand agape*
parvus, a, um small, little*
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
prōlābor, ī, lāpsus slide, fall, perish†
rēgnātor, ōris *m.* ruler, sovereign, lord†
saevus, a, um cruel, stern, fierce*
sine without (*abl.*)*
sors, rtis *f.* lot, fate, destiny; oracle*
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
tenus, to, up to, as far as (*abl.*)
tot so many*
tremō, ere, uī tremble, shake, quiver*
truncus, ī *m.* trunk, body, torso†
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

550. morere: imp. **altāria ad ipsa:** an act of unspeakable impiety. **trementem (Priamum):** from old age and anger, not from fear.

551. lāpsantem sanguine nātī: a touch of pathos.

552–553. coruscum (ēnsem). laterī = in latus: dat. of direction; App. 306.

554. Haec (fuit) fīnis: Haec is attracted to the gender of the predicate, **fīnis,** which is here feminine, though ordinarily masculine. **hic(c) exitus (vītae).**

556. populīs terrīsque: ablatives of cause with **superbum;** App. 332.

557. Asiae: obj. gen. with **rēgnātōrem;** App. 284. **(in) lītore:** his headless corpse is thrown out on the beach for the dogs and birds to devour. It is said that Vergil here has in mind the fate of Pompey, once one of the world's most powerful men; he was defeated in battle, lost his power, and was finally beheaded in Egypt, where his body was cast out and allowed to lie on the beach.

559–566. The sight of Priam so brutally slain reminds Aeneas of the danger of his own aged father, Anchises, and of his wife and child.

560. subiit (meam mentem).

561. aequaevum: Anchises was of about the same age as Priam.

563. dīrepta: in my imagination. **domus:** nom. sing. with the final syllable

Respiciō *et quae sit mē circum* cōpia lūstrō.
Dēseruēre *omnēs* dēfessī, *et corpora* saltū
ad terram mīsēre aut ignibus aegra *dedēre.*
Jamque adeō *super ūnus eram, cum līmina* Vestae
servantem et tacitam sēcrētā *in sēde* latentem
Tyndarida aspiciō; *dant* clāra incendia *lūcem*
errantī passim*que oculōs per cūncta ferentī.*
Illa sibi īnfēstōs ēversa ob Pergama *Teucrōs*
et poenās Danaum et dēsertī *conjugis* īrās
praemetuēns, *Trojae et* patriae commūnis Erīnys,
abdiderat *sēsē atque* ārīs invīsa sedēbat.
Exarsēre *ignēs animō; subit īra* cadentem

---

abdō, ere, didī, ditus hide, bury
adeō indeed, so much, truly
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look (at)*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
commūnis, e common, mutual, general†
cōpia, ae *f.* abundance, plenty, forces
dēfessus, a, um tired, weary, worn
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
Erīnys, yos *f.* Fury, Curse
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, destroy
exardēscō, ere, arsī, arsus blaze (up)†
incendium, (i)ī *n.* blaze, conflagration
īnfēstus, a, um hostile, threatening
invīsus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
lateō, ēre, uī hide, lie hid, lurk*
lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*
ob on account of, for (*acc.*)
passim everywhere, all about*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
praemetuō, ere fear beforehand†
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look back†*
saltus, ūs *m.* leap, bound, dancing†
sēcrētus, a, um remote, hidden, secret
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit*
tacitus, a, um silent, still, quiet
Tyndaris, idis *f.* daughter of Tyndarus, Helen†
Vesta, ae *f.* goddess of the hearth

---

long under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a*.

564. Respiciō: Aeneas on the roof of the palace had been so fascinated in looking down on the murder of Priam that he had forgotten all else. He now looks around for his followers and finds them gone. quae cōpia (virōrum). sit: indir. quest.; App. 349. mē circum = circum mē: App. 414.

565. saltū: abl. of means or manner.

565–566. dēseruēre, mīsēre, dedēre = dēseruērunt, mīsērunt, dedērunt.

566. aegra (corpora): *wearied and wounded* (*bodies*).

567–633. Seeing that all is lost, Aeneas turns to go, when he catches sight of Helen, the cause of all the trouble, crouching just inside a temple of Vesta. He prepares to kill her but is restrained by his mother, Venus, who appears and urges him to hurry home to protect his family.

567–588. The best manuscripts of Vergil do not have these lines, and many scholars consider the passage spurious, as they are inconsistent with VI, 494–530. This inconsistency may be due to the unfinished condition of the poem or to the unaccountable caprice of the poet.

567. super: adv. to be taken with eram. ūnus supereram: *I alone survived.*

569. Tyndarida: acc., a Greek form; App. 68. clāra incendia lūcem dant: explains why Aeneas could see Helen.

570. (mihi) errantī.

571–573. Illa, commūnis Erīnys Trojae et patriae (suae), praemetuēns Teucrōs īnfēstōs sibi, etc. Dana(ōr)um: subj. gen.; App. 284. dēsertī conjugis īrās: Menelaüs's anger.

574. (in) ārīs. (Tyndaris) invīsa (ab omnibus) sedēbat.

575. ignēs (īrae). Exarsēre = exarsērunt. (in meō) animō. subit (mē) ulcīscī et sūmere: the infinitives are complementary, depending on the idea of wishing implied in īra, *the angry desire;* App. 259, 264.

ulcīscī patriam *et* scelerātās sūmere *poenās.*
'Scīlicet *haec* Spartam incolumis *patriāsque* Mycēnās
aspiciet, partō*que ībit rēgīna* triumphō,
conjugium*que domumque patris nātōsque vidēbit*
Īliadum turbā *et* Phrygiīs comitāta ministrīs? 580
Occiderit *ferrō Priamus? Troja arserit ignī?*
Dardanium totiēns sūdārit *sanguine lītus?*
Nōn ita. *Namque* etsī *nūllum* memorābile *nōmen*
fēmineā *in poenā est nec habet* victōria laudem,
exstīnxisse nefās tamen *et* sūmpsisse merentīs 585
laudābor *poenās, animumque* explēsse juvābit
ultrīcis *flammae et* cinerēs satiāsse *meōrum.'*

---

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look (at)*
cinis, eris *m.* cinder(s), ashes (of the dead)*
comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort, follow
conjugium, (i)ī *n.* marriage; husband†
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
etsī although, even if†
expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill (with), sate (*gen.*)
exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus extinguish, destroy†
fēmineus, a, um of (over) a woman, feminine
Īlias, adis *f.* Trojan woman
incolumis, e safe, sound, unharmed
ita thus, so
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
laudō (1) praise, commend, laud, extol†
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
memorābilis, e memorable, glorious†
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
minister, trī *m.* attendant, servant
Mycēnae, ārum *f.* a city of Greece, home of Agamemnon
nefās *n. indecl.* wrong, impiety, impious wretch*
occidō, ere, ī, cāsus fall, sink, die†
pariō, ere, peperī, partus gain, produce†
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
satiō (1) satisfy, sate, satiate, glut†
scelerātus, a, um criminal, wicked, infamous
scīlicet doubtless, of course, forsooth†
Sparta, ae *f.* country of Greece, home of Helen and Menelaüs†
sūdō (1) sweat, perspire†
sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take, exact
tamen however, nevertheless, moreover*
totiēns so many times
triumphus, ī *m.* triumph, victory†
turba, ae *f* mob, crowd, throng; tumult
ulcīscor, ī, ultus avenge; punish†
ultrīx, īcis avenging, vengeful†
victōria, ae *f.* victory, conquest, triumph†

---

576. sūmere: *exact, inflict.* **scelerātās poenās** = **sceleris poenās:** *punishment of (for) her crime.*

577. Scīlicet: *forsooth;* ironical; App. 430.

578. partō triumphō: abl. abs.; App. 343.

579. conjugium = conjugem.

580. turbā, ministrīs: ablatives of accompaniment with the participle **comitāta,** which here has a passive meaning; App. 321.

581–582. Occiderit, arserit, sūdā(ve)rit: fut. perfects; i.e., shall she return in triumph home when all Troy has perished?

583. Nōn ita (erit): *it shall not be!* See App. 351, 3, *a.*

584. fēmineā in poenā: the adj. is here equivalent to the obj. gen.; App. 284; *punishment (exacted) of a woman.* **(fēminea) victōria:** *victory over a woman.*

585–586. exstīnxisse nefās laudābor: *I shall be praised for having destroyed that abomination;* i.e., Helen. **merentīs poenās** = **meritās poenās:** *deserved punishment.*

586. (mē) juvābit: used impersonally, with **explē(vi)sse et satiā(vi)sse** as its subject; App. 258.

587. flammae: gen. with the special verb, **explē(vi)sse,** *to have sated my soul with the vengeful flame;* App. 287. **meōrum:** substantively, *of my people.*

Tālia jactābam *et* furiātā *mente ferēbar,*
cum mihi sē, nōn ante oculīs tam clāra, *videndam*
obtulit *et* pūrā *per noctem in lūce* refulsit
alma *parēns,* cōnfessa *deam* quālis*que vidērī*
caelicolīs *et* quanta solet, *dextrāque* prehēnsum
continuit roseō*que haec* īnsuper addidit *ōre:*
'*Nāte, quis* indomitās *tantus* dolor excitat *īrās?*
Quid furis aut quōnam *nostrī tibi cūra* recessit?
Nōn prius aspiciēs *ubi fessum* aetāte *parentem*
līqueris *Anchīsēn,* superet *conjūnxne* Creūsa
Ascaniusque *puer? Quōs omnīs* undique Grajae
circum *errant* aciēs *et,* nī *mea cūra* resistat,
jam flammae tulerint inimīcus *et* hauserit ēnsis.

---

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; battle line, army*
addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
aetās, ātis *f.* age, (time of) life, time
almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look (at)*
caelicola, ae *m.* (*f.*) divinity, deity†
circum around, about†
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
cōnfiteor, ērī, fessus confess, reveal†
contineō, ēre, uī, tentus hold together, restrain, check†
Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, lost at the sack of Troy
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, anger, pain, passion*
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
excitō (1) arouse, stir up, excite†
furiō (1) madden, frenzy, infuriate
Grajus, a, um Greek*
hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus drain, drink; destroy
indomitus, a, um uncontrolled, ungovernable
inimīcus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
īnsuper in addition, above
jactō (1) toss, buffet, ponder, blurt out*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, forsake*
nisi, nī unless, if not*
offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present
pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp
prius sooner, before, first
pūrus, a, um pure, bright, clean, clear†
quālis, e (such) as, of what sort*
quantus, a, um as great as, how great*
quōnam whither, where on earth†
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, retire, withdraw
refulgeō, ēre, lsī, lsus shine, gleam
resistō, ere, stitī resist, oppose
roseus, a, um rosy, red, pink
soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
superō (1) overcome, surmount, survive*
tam so (much), such*
undique everywhere, from all sides*

---

588. Tālia (dicta).

589–591. cum (mea) alma parēns nōn ante tam clāra (meīs) oculīs obtulit sē mihi videndam. videndam: the gerundive expressing purpose, *to be seen;* App. 268. alma parēns Aenēae = Venus. cōnfessa (sē esse) deam.

591–593. caelicolīs: dat. with vidērī. quālis, quanta: the gods surpassed human beings in form and stature. dextrā mē prehēnsum continuit: *grasped me by my right hand and held me back;* Aeneas had already raised his sword to strike Helen.

593–594. haec (dicta). Nāte: voc. (tuās) īrās. quis: the regular form of the interrog. adj. is quī; App. 111, *a.*

595. nostrī: *for me* (and mine); obj. gen.; App. 284, 247, *a.* Venus thus identifies herself with the family of Aeneas. tibi: ethical dat. or dat. of reference; App. 300, 301.

596–597. Nōn = nōnne. ubi: *in what condition.* ubi . . . līqueris, conjūnxne superet: indir. questions; App. 349.

598. Quōs omnīs circum = circum quōs omnīs; App. 414.

599–600. nī resistat, (eōs) tulerint, (eōs) hauserit: condit. and conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382, *c.*

Nōn tibi Tyndaridis faciēs invīsa Lacaenae
culpātus*ve* Paris, *dīvum* inclēmentia, *dīvum*,
hās ēvertit opēs sternit*que ā* culmine *Trojam*.
Aspice (*namque omnem, quae nunc* obducta tuentī
mortālīs hebetat vīsūs *tibi et* ūmida *circum* 605
cālīgat, nūbem *ēripiam; tū nē qua parentis*
jussa timē neu praeceptīs pārēre recūsā):
hīc, ubi disjectās mōlēs āvulsa*que saxīs*
saxa vidēs, mixtō*que* undantem pulvere fūmum,
Neptūnus mūrōs *magnōque* ēmōta tridentī 610
fundāmenta quatit *tōtamque ā sēdibus urbem*

---

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look (at)*
āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear from
cālīgō, āre, āvī be dark, darken†
culmen, inis *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
culpō (1) blame, censure, reprove†
disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw apart, scatter
ēmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove, upheave
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, destroy
faciēs, ēī *f.* face, appearance, form*
fūmus, ī *m.* smoke, vapor, fog, fume†
fundāmentum, ī *n.* foundation, base
hebetō (1) blunt, dull, dim, weaken†
inclēmentia, ae *f.* cruelty, harshness†
invīsus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
Lacaenus, a, um Laconian, of Laconia (Sparta), a district of southern Greece, home of Helen†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, structure, burden*
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
nēve, neu neither, nor, or not
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
obdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw over†
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)
Paris, idis *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
praeceptum, ī *n.* advice, instruction
pulvis, eris *m.* dust
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter†
recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew, spread*
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
tridēns, entis *m.* trident, symbol of Neptune
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, protect*
Tyndaris, idis *f.* daughter of Tyndarus, Helen
ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, dewy
undō (1) swell, roll, wave†
vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, view, aspect, vision

---

601. tibi: ethical dat. or dat. of reference. **nōn Tyndaridis faciēs (hās opēs ēvertit).**

602. dīv(ōr)um, dīv(ōr)um: rhetorical repetition; App. 413; emphasizing that it is the vengeance of the gods, not Helen's beauty, which is responsible for the destruction of Troy. Juno and Minerva were vengeful toward Troy because of the adverse Judgment of Paris, while Neptune was angry at being cheated by Laomedon; see note on l. 610.

604. Aspice: imp.

604–606. namque ēripiam omnem nūbem, quae nunc obducta hebetat mortālīs vīsūs tibi tuentī, et (ēripiam omnem nūbem quae) ūmida circum (tē). tibi is dat. of reference with **hebetat vīsūs**; App. 301. **(quae) ūmida circum (tē) cālīgat:** *which spreads a dark veil of mist around (you).*

606. parentis: use of the noun, instead of the personal pronoun, **meī**, for rhetorical effect.

606–607. tū: nē timē, neu recūsā: the pres. imp. with **nē** is chiefly poetical; App. 256, *a*. **praeceptīs:** dat. with special verb; App. 297.

609. mixtō pulvere: abl. abs.

610. Neptūnus: Neptune and Apollo had built the walls of Troy for Laomedon, father of Priam. When the work was finished, Laomedon not only refused to pay the gods the price agreed upon, but expelled them from his kingdom. Neptune is now getting his revenge by destroying the walls he had built.

ēruit. *Hīc Jūnō* Scaeās saevissima portās
prīma tenet sociumque *furēns ā nāvibus agmen*
ferrō accīncta *vocat.*
Jam summās arcēs Trītōnia, respice, Pallas
īnsēdit limbō effulgēns *et* Gorgone saevā.
Ipse pater Danaīs animōs vīrīsque secundās
sufficit, *ipse deōs in* Dardana suscitat *arma.*
Ēripe, nāte, fugam fīnemque impōne *labōrī.*
Nūsquam aberō *et* tūtum *patriō tē līmine* sistam.'
Dīxerat et spissīs *noctis sē* condidit *umbrīs.*
Appārent dīrae faciēs inimīcaque *Trojae*
nūmina magna deum.
Tum vērō *omne mihī vīsum* cōnsīdere *in ignīs*
Īlium *et ex īmō* vertī Neptūnia *Troja;*
ac velutī *summīs antīquam in montibus* ornum
cum ferrō accīsam crēbrīsque *bipennibus* īnstant
ēruere agricolae certātim; *illa* ūsque minātur

---

absum, esse, āfuī be absent, be distant
accīdō, ere, ī, sus cut, hew†
accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird, equip
agricola, ae *m.* farmer, rustic†
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
bipennis, is *f.* double ax
certātim in rivalry, zealously†
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, hide*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus settle, sink*
crēber, bra, brum frequent, incessant*
Dardanus, a, um Dardanian, Trojan†
dīrus, a, um dire, fearful, dreadful*
effulgeō, ēre, lsī flash, glitter, gleam†
ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, tear up
faciēs, ēī *f.* face, form, appearance*
Gorgō, onis *f.* Gorgon, a monster with serpent locks and the power of turning beholders into stone; the head of one of them, Medusa, was fixed on the Aegis, the serpent-fringed shield of Minerva†
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place (on) (*dat.*)*
inimīcus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
īnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit in (on), occupy
īnstō, āre, stitī press, urge (on)
limbus, ī *m.* border, hem, fringe†
minor, ārī, ātus threaten, menace; tower
Neptūnius, a, um of Neptune, god of the sea†
nūsquam nowhere, never
ornus, ī *f.* ash (tree)†
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look back (at)*
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
Scaeus, a, um Scaean, name of chief gate at Troy†
secundus, a, um favorable, prosperous, second*
sistō, ere, stetī, status stand, set(tle), stop
socius, a, um allied, associated, friendly
spissus, a, um thick, dense, crowded†
sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus supply, suffuse
suscitō (1) arouse, stir up, excite†
Trītōnius, a, um Tritonian
tūtus, a, um safe, secure, protected*
ūsque continuously, constantly†
velut(ī) as, just as*
vērō truly, indeed, but
vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change*

612–613. Jūnō prīma (*as leader, foremost*) furēns.

613. socium agmen (Danaōrum).

615. respice: imp.

617. Ipse pater (Juppiter).

618. in: *against.*

619. Ēripe: imp. (tuam) fugam, (tuō) labōrī.

620. (in) līmine patriō: *at your father's threshold, on your father's doorstep.*

622. dīrae faciēs (deōrum): made visible to Aeneas by his mother's magic power, ll. 604–606.

623. de(ōr)um.

624. vīsum (est) cōnsīdere in ignīs: *seemed to sink into flames.*

625. Neptūnia Troja: because, according to the myth, Neptune had built the walls of Troy. See the note on l. 610.

626–628. ac velutī cum agricolae in

et tremefacta comam concussō vertice nūtat,
vulneribus dōnec paulātim ēvicta *suprēmum*
congemuit *trāxitque* jugīs āvulsa ruīnam.
Dēscendō *ac dūcente deō flammam inter et* hostīs
expedior: *dant tēla locum flammaeque* recēdunt.
Atque ubi jam patriae perventum *ad līmina sēdis*
antīquāsque domōs, genitor, quem tollere in altōs
optābam *prīmum montīs prīmumque petēbam*,
abnegat excīsā *vītam* prōdūcere *Trojā*
exsiliumque patī. '*Vōs Ō, quibus* integer aevī
sanguis,' *ait*, 'solidaeque *suō stant* rōbore *vīrēs*,
vōs agitāte *fugam*.
Mē sī caelicolae *voluissent dūcere vītam*,
hās mihi servāssent sēdēs. Satis *ūna superque*

---

abnegō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)†
aevum, ī *n.* age, life, time, eternity
agitō (1) pursue, drive, buffet, hasten
āvellō, ere, (vul)ī, vulsus tear from
caelicola, ae *m.* (*f.*) divinity, deity
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses, foliage*
concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake†
congemō, ere, uī groan, moan, sigh†
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend†
dōnec until, while, as long as
ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus overcome
excīdō, ere, ī, sus cut off, destroy
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus extricate, bring out, prepare
exsilium, (i)ī *n.* exile, place of exile†
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
integer, gra, grum whole, sound†
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
nūtō (1) nod, totter, sway†
optō (1) wish, desire, choose, select*
patior, ī, passus suffer, endure; permit*
paulātim gradually, little by little
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus arrive
prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus prolong†
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw
rōbur, oris *n.* oak, strength*
ruīna, ae *f.* ruin, downfall, collapse
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
solidus, a, um solid, firm, staunch†
tremefactus, a, um trembling, quivering
vertex, icis *m.* summit, top, head*
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

summīs montibus certātim antīquam ornum ēruere īnstant: a simile; App. 441. **illa (ornus) minātur**: *it threatens (to fall)*.

629. comam: acc. of respect with **tremefacta**; App. 311. **vertice**: abl. of means; *the tree nods (with) its head.*

630. suprēmum: substantively; *has groaned its last.*

631. trāxit ruīnam: falls with a crash, dragging down other objects with it. **(ā) jugīs (montis) āvulsa.**

632. Dēscendō (ex arce). dūcente deō (Venere): abl. abs.; App. 343. **deō**: feminine here, referring to Venus. **inter flammam et hostīs.**

633. expedior: middle = **mē expediō**; App. 309. **dant (mihi) locum**: *give way before me.*

634–704. Anchises at first refuses to survive the destruction of the city, but is finally induced by a double portent of the gods to flee with Aeneas.

634. perventum (est mihi) = **pervēnī**: with the emphasis upon the action rather than the actor.

635. tollere: Anchises had been lamed by lightning and could not walk; see note on ll. 648–649.

635–636. altōs montīs.

636. prīmum, prīmum: rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

637. excīsā Trojā: abl. abs.

638. Vōs: emphatically contrasted with **mē** in l. 641; App. 247. **quibus**: dat. of possession; App. 299. **aevī**: gen. with integer; App. 287.

639. sanguis (est). rōbore: abl. of means.

640. vōs: emphatic; App. 247, 413.

641–642. sī voluissent, servā(vi)ssent: condit. contrary to fact; App. 382. **satis**

vīdimus excidia *et captae* superāvimus *urbī.*
Sīc Ō sīc positum adfātī discēdite *corpus.*
Ipse manū mortem inveniam; miserēbitur hostis
exuviāsque *petet.* Facilis jactūra sepulcrī.
Jam prīdem invīsus *dīvīs et* inūtilis annōs
dēmoror, *ex quō mē dīvum pater atque* hominum *rēx*
fulminis adflāvit *ventīs et* contigit *ignī.*'
Tālia perstābat memorāns fīxusque *manēbat.*
Nōs contrā effūsī *lacrimīs conjūnxque* Creūsa
Ascaniusque *omnisque domus, nē* vertere *sēcum*

---

adflō (1) breathe upon, blow upon (*dat.*)
adfor, fārī, fātus address, accost*
annus, ī *m.* year, season*
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach*
contrā on the other side*
Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy
dēmoror, ārī, ātus delay, hinder, prolong†
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, withdraw
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
excidium, (i)ī *n.* destruction, downfall
exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, plunder, booty
facilis, e easy, endurable, favorable
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, imprint*
fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
inūtilis, e useless, futile, valueless
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus find, come upon†
invīsus, a, um hateful, hated, odious
jactūra, ae *f.* throwing away, loss†
memorō (1) recount, (re)call, say*
misereor, ērī, itus pity, commiserate (*gen.*)*
perstō, āre, stitī, status persist, continue†
prīdem long since, long ago, for some time
sepulcrum, ī *n.* tomb, burial
superō (1) surmount, survive (*dat.*)*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change*

ūna superque: *enough and more* (*than enough*) *have I seen one destruction and have survived one capture of the city.* Anchises refers to a previous capture of Troy by Hercules, who had been promised the hand of the Princess Hesione in marriage. When her father, King Laomedon, broke the promise, Hercules captured and sacked the city.

643. urbī: dat. with compound (**superāvimus** = **superfuimus**); App. 298.

644. adfātī (meum) corpus: refers to the custom of calling "**valē**" thrice to the dead before the body was buried or burned. **positum:** *laid out,* **pōnere** being the technical expression for laying out a corpse. Anchises thus bids them to treat him as already dead. Probably he stretches himself out on a couch as though dead to add vividness to his appeal.

645. manū mortem inveniam: alliteration; App 411. **manū:** I shall die fighting (**manū**), i.e., by provoking the enemy to kill me; or **manū** may hint at suicide. Cf. l. 434, **ut caderem meruisse manū. miserēbitur hostis:** or an enemy through pity (said ironically) will be willing to kill me.

646. Facilis (est) jactūra sepulcrī: said with the greatest bitterness and the resignation of despair, since the loss of ceremonial burial was counted one of the most grievous of calamities; see notes on I, 95, 353.

647–648. Jam prīdem dēmoror annōs: *too long have I delayed the years* (which wish to bear me to death); App. 351, 1, *b.* **ex (eō tempore) quō:** *since the time when.* **dīv(ōr)um pater atque hominum rēx** = Juppiter. Anchises had foolishly boasted of the love of Venus and had been lamed by a stroke of lightning for his impiety.

649. adflāvit (mihi). ventīs, ignī: ablatives of means; some ancient philosophers thought that lightning was driven by swift gusts of wind.

650. Tālia (dicta).

651. Nōs: emphatic contrast; App. 247. **effūsī (sumus) lacrimīs:** *we were dissolved in tears.* **lacrimīs** is abl. of manner or means.

651–653. -que . . . -que . . . -que: *both . . . and . . . and.*

652–653. nē . . . vellet: subst. clause developed from the vol., dependent on the idea of entreaty implied in **effūsī**

cūncta pater fātōque urgentī incumbere *vellet.*
Abnegat inceptō*que et sēdibus* haeret *in īsdem.*
Rūrsus *in arma feror mortemque miserrimus* optō. 655
Nam quod cōnsilium *aut quae jam fortūna dabātur?*
'*Mēne* efferre *pedem, genitor, tē posse relictō*
spērāstī *tantumque* nefās *patriō* excidit *ōre?*
Sī nihil *ex tantā superīs* placet *urbe relinquī,*
et sedet *hoc animō* peritūrae*que* addere *Trojae* 660
tēque tuōsque juvat: patet istī jānua lētō,
jamque aderit multō Priamī dē sanguine Pyrrhus,
nātum ante ōra patris, patrem quī obtruncat *ad ārās.*
Hoc erat, alma *parēns, quod mē per tēla, per ignīs*
ēripis, ut mediīs hostem *in* penetrālibus *utque* 665
Ascanium *patremque meum* juxtā*que* Creūsam

---

abnegō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
almus, a, um kind(ly), nurturing
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* Iulus, son of Aeneas*
cōnsilium, (i)ī *n.* plan, advice; council
Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bear forth, lift*
excidō, ere, ī fall (from), perish
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus hang, cling (to)*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
inceptum, ī *n.* beginning, plan, attempt
incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean on (*dat.*)
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
jānua, ae *f.* door, doorway, entrance
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
juxtā next, near(by), at the same time*
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
nefās *n. indecl.* crime, impiety, sin*
nihil, nīl nothing, not at all
obtruncō (1) slay, slaughter, butcher, kill†
optō (1) wish, desire, choose, select*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
penetrālia, ium *n.* sanctuary, chamber
pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus perish, die
placeō, ēre, uī, itus please (*dat.*)
Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
rūrsus, um again, anew, backward*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, be fixed*
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
urgeō, ēre, ursī press, urge, incite

(**sumus**). **sēcum** = **cum sē**; App. 321, *a.* **vertere sēcum cūncta**: because the rest of the family would remain with him, unless Anchises were willing to go. **fātō**: dat. with compound; App. 298. **incumbere**: *to lean on* (*add his weight to*) *our overwhelming fate.*

654. (**in eōdem**) **inceptō et sēdibus haeret in īsdem**: *he remains fixed in his purpose and his place.* One word thus governing two or more others in a different sense is an example of what is called *zeugma.* Compare Dickens, who says of a lady that she departed "in a flood of tears and a sedan chair," and see App. 447.

657–658. **spērā(vi)stīne, genitor, mē posse efferre pedem. tē relictō**: abl. abs.

659. **superīs**: dat. with special verb; App. 297. **nihil**: subj. of **relinquī.**

660. **hoc** = **hocc**: subject of **sedet,** and explained by the following clause; App. 107, 3, *c.* (**tuō**) **animō**: abl. of place where.

661. **tēque tuōsque**: objects of **addere. et sī** (**tē**) **juvat.**

662. **jam**: *in a moment, immediately.*

663. **patris, patrem**: with varying quantity of the first syllable, since it is composed of a short vowel followed by a mute and a liquid, making the syllable common, i.e., either long or short, according to whether it is read **pa-tris** or **pat-ris, pa-trem** or **pat-rem**; App. 11, 17, 18. (**quī obtruncat**) **nātum, (quī) patrem obtruncat**: the pres. ind., "Pyrrhus is accustomed to slaughter"; App. 351, 1.

664–665. **Hoc**: pronounce **hocc,** making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.* **Hoc erat quod mē ēripis**: *was it for this that*

alterum *in* alterius mactātōs *sanguine cernam?*
Arma, virī, ferte arma; vocat lūx ultima *victōs.*
Reddite *mē Danaīs;* sinite īnstaurāta revīsam
proelia. Numquam *omnēs* hodiē moriēmur inultī.'
Hinc ferrō accingor rūrsus clipeō*que* sinistram
īnsertābam aptāns *mēque* extrā *tecta ferēbam.*
Ecce autem complexa *pedēs in līmine conjūnx*
haerebat, parvum*que patrī tendēbat* Iūlum:
'*Sī* peritūrus abīs, *et nōs* rape *in omnia tēcum;*
sīn aliquam expertus sūmptīs spem *pōnis in armīs,*
hanc prīmum tūtāre *domum. Cui* parvus Iūlus,
cui pater et conjūnx quondam tua dicta relinquor?'
Tālia vōciferāns gemitū *tectum omne* replēbat,
cum subitum *dictū*que oritur mīrābile mōnstrum.
Namque manūs inter maestōrum*que ōra parentum*
ecce levis *summō dē* vertice *vīsus* Iūlī

---

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus depart*
accingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus gird, equip
aliquis, qua, quid some, any*
alter, era, erum the other (of two), one (of two)*
aptō (1) fit (on, out), equip, furnish
autem however, but, moreover*
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold
ecce see! look! behold!*
experior, īrī, pertus try, test
extrā outside, beyond (*acc.*)†
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus hang, cling (to)*
hodiē today, this day, now†
īnsertō (1) insert, thrust into†
īnstaurō (1) renew, refresh, repeat
inultus, a, um unavenged†
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
levis, e light, slight, flickering
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mīrābilis, e wonderful, marvelous
mōnstrum, ī *n.* omen, prodigy, monster*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
numquam never, at no time, not†
orior, īrī, ortus (a)rise, spring up
parvus, a, um small, little*
pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus perish, die
proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, fray, combat
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch, drag*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, give back*
repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill†
revīsō, ere see again, revisit
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
sīn but if
sinistra, ae *f.* left hand
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs permit, allow*
spēs, speī *f.* hope, expectation*
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take (up)
tūtor, ārī, ātus protect, guard†
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*
vertex, icis *m.* summit, head, peak*
vōciferor, ārī, ātus scream, shout†

---

you save(d) me? **alma parēns** = Venus.
ut, ut: rhetorical repetition, indicating excitement; App. 413.

667. alterum in alterius mactātōs: *slaughtered, one in the blood of the other.*
ut . . . cernam: clause of purpose in apposition with **hoc**; App. 359.

668. lūx = **diēs** or **lūx (vītae).**

669. īnstaurāta = **īnstaurem et. (ut) revīsam:** a subst. vol. clause used as obj. of **sinite**; App. 360.

671. ferrō accingor: middle; *I gird (myself) with my sword;* App. 309.

674. patrī = **mihi:** but thus used here to emphasize the paternal relation.

675. et: *also.* **tēcum** = **cum tē:** App. 321, *a.*

677. tūtāre: imp. **Iūlus (relinquitur).**

678. (tuus) pater (relinquitur). dicta (= **vocāta**): in agreement with **ego** understood subj. of **relinquor.**

679. Tālia (dicta).

680. dictū: supine; abl. of respect with **mīrābile**; App. 271, 325.

681. inter manūs et ōra.

682–684. levis apex (flammae) vīsus

fundere lūmen apex, tāctūque innoxia mollīs
lambere *flamma* comās *et circum* tempora pascī.
Nōs pavidī trepidāre metū crīnemque flagrantem
excutere *et* sānctōs restinguere fontibus *ignīs.*
At pater Anchīsēs oculōs ad sīdera laetus
extulit *et caelō* palmās *cum vōce tetendit:*
'*Juppiter* omnipotēns, precibus *sī* flecteris *ūllīs,*
aspice *nōs, hoc* tantum, *et sī* pietāte merēmur,
dā deinde augurium, *pater, atque haec* ōmina firmā.'
Vix ea fātus erat senior, subitōque fragōre
intonuit laevum, *et dē caelō lāpsa per umbrās*
stēlla facem *dūcēns multā cum lūce* cucurrit.
Illam summa super lābentem culmina *tēctī*
cernimus Īdaeā clāram *sē* condere *silvā*

apex, apicis *m.* point, spike, tongue†
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus behold, look (at)*
augurium, (i)ī *n.* omen, augury
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish; hide*
crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
culmen, inis *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus run, speed
deinde then, thereupon, next*
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus lift, carry off*
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off, shake out*
fax, facis *f.* torch, blaze, firebrand*
firmō (1) confirm, strengthen, ratify†
flagrō (1) blaze, burn, glow
flectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, turn
fōns, fontis *m.* fountain, water
fragor, ōris *m.* crash, thunder, roar
Īdaeus, a, um of Ida, a high mountain near Troy†
innoxius, a, um harmless, innocent†
intonō, āre, uī thunder, roar
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
lambō, ere lick, lap
mereor, ērī, itus deserve, merit, earn
metus, ūs *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
mollis, e soft, gentle, delicate, mild
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, prodigy, portent
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand*
pascor, ī, pāstus feed (on), graze
pavidus, a, um frightened, timid
pietās, ātis *f.* piety, devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty†*
restinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus extinguish†
sānctus, a, um holy, sacred, revered*
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire
stēlla, ae *f.* star, meteor†
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
tāctus, ūs *m.* touch†
tantum only (so much)
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
trepidō (1) tremble, hurry excitedly†

(est) **fundere lūmen, flammaque, innoxia tāctū,** (vīsa est) **lambere mollīs comās. fundere lūmen apex:** supposed by those versed in omens to presage future royal power, the subject of such a divine demonstration becoming the light of his people. According to the tradition, Servius Tullius, one of the legendary kings of early Rome, had a similar experience as a child. **tāctū:** abl. of respect, "doing no harm by touching"; App. 325.

685–686. Nōs: emphatic; App. 247. **trepidāre, excutere, restinguere:** historical infinitives, with a conative meaning for the last two, *we tried to;* App. 257; 351, 1, *c.*

686. sānctōs: because of their divine origin. **fontibus = aquīs:** *water;* metonymy; App. 433, 243.

688. caelō = ad caelum: dat. of direction; App. 306.

690. hoc tantum (quaerō): *only so much (do I ask).*

690–691. a(d)spice, dā, firmā: imperatives. The Romans often asked for a second omen to confirm the first.

692. senior: as in ll. 509, 544.

693. intonuit laevum: *it thundered on the left,* which was considered a good omen. **laevum:** best taken as an adverbial acc.; App. 93, 94, 310.

694. stēlla: *a meteor.* **facem dūcēns:**

signantemque viās; tum longō līmite sulcus
dat lūcem et lātē circum loca sulphure fūmant.
Hīc vērō victus genitor sē tollit ad aurās
adfāturque deōs et sānctum sīdus adōrat.
'Jam iam nūlla mora est; sequor et quā dūcitis adsum,
dī patriī; servāte domum, servāte nepōtem.
Vestrum hoc augurium, vestrōque in nūmine Troja est.
Cēdō equidem nec, nāte, tibī comes īre recūsō.'
Dīxerat ille, et jam per moenia clārior ignis
audītur, propiusque aestūs incendia volvunt.
'Ergō age, cāre pater, cervīcī impōnere nostrae;
ipse subībō umerīs nec mē labor iste gravābit;
quō rēs cumque cadent, ūnum et commūne perīclum,
ūna salūs ambōbus erit. Mihi parvus Iūlus
sit comes, et longē servet vestīgia conjūnx.

---

adfor, fārī, fātus address, accost*
adōrō (1) entreat, worship, honor
aestus, ūs *m.* flood, tide, surge; heat
ambō, ae, ō both
augurium, (i)ī *n.* omen, augury
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, cease; go†*
cervīx, īcis *f.* neck
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
commūnis, e common, mutual, general
cumque *see* **quō . . . cumque**†
equidem indeed, truly*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
fūmō (1) smoke, reek, fume†
gravō (1) burden, load, oppress†
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place (on) (*dat.*)*
incendium, (i)ī *n.* flame, conflagration
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
lātē widely, far and wide
līmes, itis *m.* path, boundary, trail†
longē far (away), (from) afar*
mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
parvus, a, um small, little*
perīc(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk
prope near; *compar.* **propius** nearer*
quā where(by), in any (some) way
quō . . . cumque (quōcumque) whereso-ever, whithersoever†
recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, deliverance, health
sānctus, a, um holy, sacred, revered*
signō (1) mark (out), indicate
sulcus, ī *m.* furrow, trench, track
sulphur, uris *n.* sulphur, brimstone†
vērō truly, indeed, but
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace†*

---

making a trail of light by "drawing a torch" across the sky.

697. (nostrās) **viās:** indicating that they should flee to the forests of Mt. Ida for protection. **longō līmite:** *long drawn;* abl. of quality; App. 330.

698. circum: adv.

699. sē tollit ad aurās: *arises* (from his couch).

702. domum: *family, household;* metonymy; App. 433. **(meum) nepōtem = Ascanium.**

703. Vestrum (est), vestrō: rhetorical tepetition; App. 413. **Troja:** Anchises considered that all that remained of Troy was this one family.

705–745. Aeneas places his aged father, Anchises, on his shoulders, and thus bearing him and the images of the gods, he flees, accompanied by his young son, Ascanius, and his wife, Creüsa, but loses Creüsa on the way.

706. aestūs: acc. plural.

707. impōnere: imp. middle, *place yourself;* App. 309. **cervīcī:** *on my shoulders;* dat. with compound; App. 298.

708. (tē) **subībō. umerīs:** abl. of means.

709. quō . . . cumque: separated by tmesis; App. 445. **perīc(u)lum (erit).**

710. (nōbīs) **ambōbus. Mihi:** dat. of possession or reference; App. 299, 301.

711. sit, servet: volitive subjunctives; App. 254. **(mea) vestīgia:** i.e., let Creüsa follow.

Art Extension Society, New York *Baroccio*

THE FALL OF TROY

Aeneas is carrying his father, Anchises. Little Iulus is at the left and Creüsa, his wife, is following him.

Hector Le Roux

Metropolitan Museum of Art

ROMAN LADIES AT THE TOMBS OF THEIR ANCESTORS

Vōs, famulī, *quae dīcam animīs* advertite vestrīs.
Est urbe ēgressīs tumulus templum*que* vetustum
dēsertae Cereris, juxtā*que antīqua* cupressus
relligiōne *patrum multōs servāta per* annōs.
Hanc ex dīversō *sēdem veniēmus in ūnam.*
Tū, genitor, cape sacra manū patriōsque penātīs;
mē bellō ē tantō dīgressum *et* caede recentī
attrectāre nefās, dōnec *mē* flūmine vīvō
abluerō.'
Haec fātus lātōs *umerōs* subjecta*que* colla
veste *super* fulvī*que* īnsternor pelle leōnis,
succēdō*que* onerī; *dextrae sē* parvus Iūlus
implicuit *sequiturque patrem nōn* passibus aequīs;
pōne *subit conjūnx. Ferimur per* opāca *locōrum,*

abluō, ere, ī, ūtus wash, purify†
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn toward, regard†
aequus, a, um equal, even, just
annus, ī *m.* year, season*
attrectō (1) handle, touch†
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, blood(shed), murder
Cerēs, eris *f.* (goddess of) grain
collum, ī *n.* neck*
cupressus, ī *f.* cypress†
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dīgredior, ī, gressus (de)part, go away†
dīversus, a, um different, various*
dōnec until, as long as, while
ēgredior, ī, gressus go forth, depart
famulus, ī *m.* servant, attendant
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus) enfold, wind, twine, cling (*dat.*)
īnsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay on, cover, spread, strew†
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
juxtā next, near (by), close, nigh*
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
leō, ōnis *m.* lion†
nefās *n. indecl.* guilt, impiety, wrong*
onus, eris *n.* burden, load, weight
opācus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy†
parvus, a, um small, little*
passus, ūs *m.* step, pace, gait, stride†
pellis, is *f.* hide, skin, pelt†
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
pōne behind, from behind
recēns, entis recent, fresh, new, late
re(l)ligiō, ōnis *f.* religion, sanctity
subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place under
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go under, approach (*dat.*)
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, hill†*
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
vetustus, a, um old, ancient, former†
vīvus, a, um living, alive; running

712. (ea) quae dīcam: *what I shall say;* dīcam is fut. indic.

713–714. (ex) urbe. (illīs) ēgressīs: dat. of reference; App. 301. templum dēsertae Cereris: hypallage for dēsertum templum Cereris; App. 426. cupressus (est).

715. re(l)ligiōne: abl. of cause; App. 332; an example of tree worship, one of the more primitive forms of religion.

716. in hanc ūnam sēdem. ex dīversō: *from different* (*directions*); they were not to go together, because so large a group would be sure to attract the attention of the Greeks.

717. Tū: emphatically contrasted with mē; App. 247.

718–719. nefās (est) mē, dīgressum ē tantō bellō et caede recentī, attrectāre (sacra patriōsque penātīs). flūmine vīvō: running water was supposed to be especially pure and was much used in religious ceremonies.

721. umerōs, colla: objects of īnsternor, used as a middle; *I cover my shoulders and neck;* App. 309.

722. veste, pelle: ablatives of means. super: adv.

723. onerī: dat. with compound; App. 298. dextrae: dat. with compound.

725. opāca locōrum = opāca loca.

et mē, quem dūdum *nōn ūlla* injecta *movēbant*
tēla neque adversō glomerātī *ex agmine* Grajī,
nunc omnēs terrent *aurae,* sonus excitat *omnis*
suspēnsum *et* pariter *comitīque* onerīque timentem.
Jamque propinquābam portīs *omnemque vidēbar*
ēvāsisse *viam,* subitō *cum* crēber *ad* aurīs
vīsus adesse pedum sonitus, *genitorque per umbram*
prōspiciēns '*nāte*' exclāmat '*fuge, nāte;* propinquant.
Ardentīs clipeōs *atque* aera micantia *cernō.*'
Hīc mihi nescio *quod* trepidō male *nūmen* amīcum
cōnfūsam *ēripuit mentem. Namque* āvia *cursū*
dum sequor et nōtā excēdō regiōne *viārum,*
heu miserō conjūnx fātōne ērepta Creūsa
substitit, *errāvitne viā* seu lassa resēdit,
incertum; *nec* post *oculīs est* reddita *nostrīs.*
Nec prius āmissam respexī *animumve* reflexī

adversus, a, um opposing, facing*
aes, aeris *n.* bronze*
amīcus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
auris, is *f.* ear*
āvius, a, um pathless, remote†
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus confuse†
crēber, bra, brum frequent, numerous*
Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy
dūdum for a long time, long since†
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus traverse, escape
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart
excitō (1) arouse, startle, stir (up)
exclāmō (1) cry out, shout, exclaim
glomerō (1) roll together, assemble
Grajus, a, um Greek*
incertus, a, um uncertain, doubtful
injiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast on
lassus, a, um tired, weary, worn (out)†
male badly, poorly, not
micō, āre, uī flash, glitter, vibrate, dart
nesciō, īre, īvī (iī) not know, know not
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
onus, eris *n.* burden, load, weight
pariter equally, side by side*
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
post behind, after (*acc.*); afterward*
prius sooner, before, formerly
propinquō (1) draw near, approach (*dat.*)†
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look forth
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, give back, render*
reflectō, ere, flexī, flexus turn back†
regiō, ōnis *f.* region, district
resīdō, ere, sēdī sit down
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look back (at, for)*
sīve, seu or (if), whether
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, crash, roar, noise*
sonus, ī *m.* sound, noise, roar,
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
subsistō, ere, stitī halt, stop, withstand
suspēnsus, a, um doubtful, anxious
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
trepidus, a, um agitated, alarmed

726–729. omnēs aurae mē suspēnsum et timentem terrent. Grajī: pronounce Grajjī, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b.* **comitī: Ascaniō. onerī: Anchīsae.**

730. portīs: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

732. vīsus (est): *seemed.*

733. (Danaī) propinquant.

734. aera = tēla.

735. mihi trepidō: dat. of separation; App. 305. **nescio:** with the final **o** irregularly short; **nescio quod nūmen:** *I don't know what divinity* = *some divinity or other.* **male amīcum** = **inimīcum:** *unfriendly, hostile;* litotes; App. 431.

736. āvia (loca): *out-of-the-way section.*

738–740. heu, conjūnxne Creūsa, ērepta miserō fātō, substitit, errāvitne (ex) viā, seu lassa resēdit, (est) incertum: *snatched away, alas! by an unhappy fate, did my wife Creüsa halt?* etc. **(mihi) miserō:** dat. of separation; App. 305. **-ne . . . -ne, seu:** *whether . . . or, or;* the three clauses depend loosely on **incertum (est).**

741. Nec (eam = **Creūsam) āmissam**

quam tumulum *antīquae* Cereris *sēdemque* sacrātam
vēnimus: hīc demum collēctīs *omnibus ūna*
dēfuit, *et comitēs nātumque virumque* fefellit.
Quem nōn incūsāvī āmēns hominum*que deōrumque,*
aut quid in ēversā *vīdī* crūdēlius *urbe?*
Ascanium *Anchīsēnque patrem Teucrōsque* penātīs
commendō *sociīs et* curvā valle recondō;
ipse urbem repetō *et* cingor fulgentibus *armīs.*
Stat cāsūs renovāre *omnīs omnemque* revertī
per Trojam et rūrsus *caput* objectāre perīclīs.
Principiō mūrōs obscūra*que līmina* portae,
quā gressum extuleram, repetō *et* vestīgia retrō
observāta *sequor per noctem et lūmine* lūstrō:
horror ubīque *animō, simul ipsa* silentia terrent.

āmēns, entis mad, insane, distracted
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
Cerēs, eris *f.* (goddess of) grain
cingō, ere, c.nxī, cīnctus gird, encircle*
colligō, ere lēgī, lēctus collect, gather
commendō (1) intrust, commit
crūdēlis, e cruel, harsh, bloody*
curvus, a, um curved, winding, bent*
dēmum at length, finally
dēsum, esse, fuī be absent, lack†
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry forth, raise, lift*
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus overturn, destroy
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, baffle, elude, escape the notice of*
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsī gleam, flash, glitter†
gressus, ūs *m.* step, course, gait
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
horror, ōris *m.* horror, terror, shudder(ing)
incūsō (1) accuse, blame, chide
lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
objectō (1) throw to, expose†
obscūrus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy*
observō (1) observe, watch, note†
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
perīc(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
principiō first(ly), at first†
quā where(by), in any (some) way
quam than, how, as*
recondō, ere, didī, ditus establish; hide
renovō (1) renew, revive
repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus seek again
retrō back(ward), again
revertor, ī, rsus return, turn back†
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
silentium, (i)ī *n.* silence, stillness, quiet
terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify
tumulus, ī *m.* hill, mound*
ubīque everywhere, anywhere
vallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace*

respexī animumve reflexī: *nor did I look back for her lost as she was or cast a thought behind.* In the excitement and confusion, Aeneas forgets to look back for his wife or even to think of her. Thus he loses her. It may be noted here that it is essential to the plot that Aeneas should be without a wife both at Carthage and when he finally arrives in Latium.

742. (ad) tumulum, (ad) sēdem.

743. collēctīs omnibus: abl. abs.

745. Quem hominumque deōrumque: partitive genitives; App. 286. deōrumque: the final e is elided before the initial diphthong of the next verse, making l. 745 hypermetric; App. 402.

746–794. Aeneas returns to search for Creüsa, but is met by her ghost, who informs him of her death and urges him to hasten his flight from Troy.

748. (in) curvā valle.

749. urbem repetō et cingor armīs: for the hysteron proteron, see the note on l. 353; App. 429. cingor: middle = mē cingō; App. 309.

750. Stat (mihi sententia): *I am determined.*

751. (meum) caput = vītam.

752. Principiō: correlative with inde, in l. 756.

754. lūmine = oculō: used here for the sake of the alliteration or for metrical reasons, or both.

755. horror (est meō) animō.

Inde *domum, sī forte pedem, sī forte tulisset,*
mē referō: inruerant *Danaī et tēctum omne tenēbant.*
Īlicet *ignis* edāx *summa ad* fastīgia *ventō*
volvitur; exsuperant *flammae, furit* aestus *ad aurās.*
Prōcēdō *et Priamī sēdēs arcemque* revīsō:
et jam porticibus vacuīs *Jūnōnis* asȳlō
custōdēs lēctī Phoenīx *et* dīrus Ulixēs
praedam adservābant. *Hūc* undique Trōia gaza
incēnsīs *ērepta* adytīs, mēnsae*que deōrum*
crātēres*que aurō* solidī, captīva*que* vestis
congeritur. *Puerī et* pavidae *longō* ordine *mātrēs*
stant circum.
Ausus quīn etiam *vōcēs* jactāre *per umbram*
implēvī *clāmōre viās,* maestus*que* Creūsam
nēquīquam ingemināns iterum*que* iterum*que vocāvī.*
Quaerentī et tēctīs urbis sine *fīne ruentī*
īnfēlīx simulācrum *atque ipsius umbra* Creūsae

---

adservō (1) guard, watch†
adytum, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
aestus, ūs *m.* flood, tide, surge; heat
asȳlum, ī *n.* refuge, sanctuary†
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
captīvus, a, um captive, captured†
congerō, ere, gessī, gestus heap up†
crātēr, ēris *m.* mixing bowl
Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), keeper*
dīrus, a, um dire, terrible, cursed*
edāx, ācis devouring, eating, consuming†
etiam even, also, besides, yet, still*
exsuperō (1) surmount, mount (high)†
fastīgium, (i)ī *n.* top, roof, summit
gaza, ae *f.* wealth, treasure
īlicet immediately, at once
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, kindle*
inde thence, thereupon*
ingeminō (1) redouble, repeat, increase
inruō, ere, uī rush in
iterum again, anew, a second time†*
jactō (1) hurl, toss, fling; utter*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, collect*
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
ordō, inis *m.* order, array, row*
pavidus, a, um terrified, fearful
Phoenīx, īcis *m.* Greek leader†
porticus, ūs *f.* colonnade, portico
praeda, ae *f.* booty, spoils, prey
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance†
quīn nay even, (but) that*
revīsō, ere see again, revisit
simulācrum, ī *n.* image, phantom, likeness
sine without (*abl.*)*
solidus, a, um solid, firm, massive
Trōius, a, um Trojan*
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
undique everywhere, from all sides*
vacuus, a, um empty, vacant, free
vestis, is *f.* garment, cloth(ing), robe*

---

756. sī forte, sī forte: rhetorical repetition, representing the repeated thought in the mind of Aeneas; App. 413. **sī tulisset:** implied indir. disc.; App. 390.

759. ad aurās = ad caelum.

761. (in) porticibus: ablative of place where. **asȳlō:** in apposition with **porticibus;** the use of this Greek word, meaning *a place not to be plundered,* emphasizes the impiety of the Greeks in thus desecrating the holy sanctuary of Juno's temple.

764. adytīs: dat. of separation; App. 305. **mēnsae:** *tables* on which food and other offerings were placed for the gods.

765. aurō: abl. of material; App. 324.

766. congeritur: agreeing in number with the nearest subject; App. 236, *b.* **Puerī, mātrēs** (= **fēminae**): to be carried off into slavery.

770. iterumque iterumque: rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

771. (in) tēctīs.

771–773. mihi quaerenti et ruenti si-

vīsa mihi ante oculōs et nōtā *major* imāgō.
Obstipuī, *steteruntque* comae *et vōx* faucibus haesit.
Tum sīc adfārī *et cūrās hīs* dēmere *dictīs:*
'*Quid tantum* īnsānō juvat indulgēre dolōrī,
Ō dulcis *conjūnx? Nōn haec* sine *nūmine dīvum*
ēveniunt; *nec tē hinc comitem* asportāre Creūsam
fās, *aut ille* sinit *superī* rēgnātor Olympī.
Longa tibi exsilia *et vastum maris aequor* arandum,
et terram Hesperiam *veniēs, ubi* Lȳdius *arva*
inter opīma *virum* lēnī fluit *agmine* Thybris:
illīc *rēs laetae rēgnumque et* rēgia *conjūnx*
parta *tibī; lacrimās* dīlēctae pelle Creūsae.
Nōn ego Myrmidonum *sēdēs* Dolopumve superbās

adfor, fārī, fātus address, accost*
arō (1) plow, furrow, till*
asportō (1) carry away, carry from†
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy
dēmō, ere, mpsī, mptus remove, take away†
dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus love, cherish
Dolopes, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, anger, pain, passion*
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
ēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus come out, happen†
exsilium, (i)ī *n.* exile, place of exile
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
faucēs, ium *f.* jaws, throat; pass
fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow, ebb, stream
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus stick, cling (to)*
Hesperius, a, um Hesperian, western, Italian
illīc there, at that place
imāgō, inis *f.* image, phantom, likeness*
indulgeō, ēre, lsī, ltus indulge in, yield to (*dat.*)†
īnsānus, a, um mad, frantic, insane
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
lēnis, e gentle, soft, mild†
Lȳdius, a, um Lydian, of Lydia, a country of Asia Minor, earlier home of the Etruscans who settled in Italy and probably founded Rome†
Myrmidones, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
obstipēscō, ere, stipuī be dazed, stand agape*
Olympus, ī *m.* a Greek mountain, home of the gods, heaven
opīmus, a, um rich, fertile, sumptuous
pariō, ere, peperī, partus acquire, win, produce
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive (away), dismiss
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
rēgnātor, ōris *m.* ruler, sovereign, lord
sine without (*abl.*)*
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs permit, allow*
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
Thybris, (id)is *m.* Tiber, a river of Italy†

umulācrum et umbra Creūsae vīsa (est). **īnfēlīx**: a transferred epithet; App. 446. **ipsius**: for the short penult, see the note on illius, I, 16. **vīsa (est)**: agrees with its nearest subject. **(imāgine mihi) nōtā**: abl. with comparative; App. 327. The shades of the dead, as well as the gods, regularly appeared as larger than human beings.

774. stetĕrunt: with short penult.

775. (Creūsa) adfārī et dēmere: historical infinitives; App. 257.

776. Quid = **cūr**: *why?* **(tē) juvat. dolōrī**: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

777. Nōn sine nūmine: litotes; App. 431. **dīv(ōr)um.**

778. comitem: (*as*) *a comrade.*

779. fās (est). aut = **nec. rēgnātor**: Jupiter.

780. exsilia tibi (ferenda sunt). arandum (est tuīs nāvibus).

781. (ad) terram.

782. vir(ōr)um: gen. with **opīma**; App. 287.

783. rēgia conjūnx: Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus, was married to Aeneas shortly after his arrival in Italy.

784. parta (est): agrees with the nearest subject; App. 236, *b*. **Creūsae**: obj. gen., *tears of (for) Creüsa;* App. 284.

785. ego: emphatic, as always when expressed; App. 247.

aspiciam *aut* Grajīs servītum *mātribus ībō*,
Dardanis *et dīvae* Veneris nurus;
sed mē magna deum genetrīx *hīs* dētinet *ōrīs*.
Jamque valē *et nātī servā* commūnis *amōrem*.'
Haec ubi dicta dedit, lacrimantem *et multa volentem*
dīcere dēseruit, tenuīs*que* recessit *in aurās*.
Ter cōnātus ibī collō *dare* bracchia *circum*;
ter frūstrā comprēnsa *manūs* effūgit imāgō,
pār levibus *ventīs* volucrī*que* simillima *somnō*.
Sīc dēmum *sociōs* cōnsūmptā *nocte* revīsō.
Atque hīc ingentem comitum adflūxisse *novōrum*
inveniō admīrāns numerum, *mātrēsque virōsque*,
collēctam exsiliō pūbem, miserābile vulgus.
Undique convēnēre *animīs* opibus*que parātī*

---

adfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow together†
admīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire†
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look (at)*
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* (fore)arm†*
colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather
collum, ī *n.* neck*
commūnis, e common, mutual, general
compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus grasp†
cōnor, ārī, ātus attempt, try, endeavor†
cōnsūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus consume, waste†
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus come together, assemble
Dardanis, idis *f.* Trojan woman†
dēmum at length, finally
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus detain, hold back†
effugiō, ere, fūgī escape, flee from
exsilium, (i)ī *n.* exile, place of exile
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
genetrīx, īcis *f.* mother
Grajus, a, um Greek*
ibī there, then
imāgō, inis *f.* image, likeness, phantom*
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus find, come upon
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament
levis, e light, unsubstantial, slight
miserābilis, e miserable, wretched
numerus, ī *m.* number, multitude*
nurus, ūs *f.* daughter-in-law
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
pār, paris equal, like, similar (*dat.*)*
pūbēs, is *f.* youth, young men*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, retire
revīsō, ere revisit, see again
serviō, īre, īvī (ii), ītus be a slave, serve (*dat.*)†
similis, e like, similar (*dat.*)*
tenuis, e slight, thin, fine†
ter thrice, three times*
undique everywhere, from all sides*
valeō, ēre, uī be strong, fare well, be able
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
volucer, cris, cre winged, swift*
vulgus, ī *n.* (*m.*) crowd, rabble, herd

---

786. servītum: supine in **um** after a verb of motion, to express purpose; App. 270.

788. de(ōr)um genetrīx: Cybele, the Great Mother of the Gods. **(in) ōrīs.**

790. (mē) lacrimantem.

792. cōnātus (sum). collō dare bracchia circum: *to place my arms around her neck;* **circum** is here an adverb.

794. ventīs, somnō: dat. with the adj., **pār**; App. 304.

795–804. Aeneas returns to his comrades and finds a great number of men and women collected ready to follow wherever he may be willing to lead them.

798. exsiliō: dat. of purpose; App. 303.

799. convēnēre = convēnērunt. animīs, opibus: ablatives of respect; App. 325. **parātī (īre mēcum).**

in quāscumque *velim pelagō* dēdūcere *terrās.* 800
Jamque jugīs *summae surgēbat* Lūcifer Īdae
dūcēbatque diem, Danaīque obsessa *tenēbant*
līmina portārum, *nec* spēs opis *ūlla dabātur.*
Cessī *et sublātō montīs genitōre petīvī.*

---

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, depart*
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead forth, launch†
Īda, ae *f.* mountain near Troy†
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
Lūcifer, erī *m.* morning star, light-bringer†
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus besiege, beset
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, wealth, power*
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whatever*
spēs, speī *f.* hope, expectation*

---

800. velim: subj. in implied indir. disc.; App. 390. **dēdūcere:** the technical word among the Romans for leading out a colony.

801. (in) jugīs: abl. of place where.

803. spēs opis: hope of helping Troy or of receiving help from Troy.

804. montīs: Mt. Ida, near Troy, thus following the trail blazed out by the meteor; see l. 697.

BOOK III

POSTQUAM *rēs* Asiae *Priamīque* ēvertere *gentem*
immeritam *vīsum superīs*, ceciditque superbum
Īlium *et omnis* humō fūmat Neptūnia *Troja*,
dīversa exsilia *et* dēsertās *quaerere terrās*
auguriīs *agimur dīvum, classemque sub ipsā*
Antandrō *et* Phrygiae mōlīmur *montibus* Īdae,
incertī *quō fāta ferant, ubi* sistere *dētur*,
contrahimusque *virōs. Vix prīma* incēperat aestās
et pater Anchīsēs dare fātīs vēla jubēbat,
lītora cum patriae lacrimāns *portūsque relinquō*
et campōs ubi Troja fuit. Feror exsul *in* altum

---

aestās, ātis *f.* summer, summer time
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
Antandros (us), ī *f.* town near Troy†
Asia, ae *f.* Asia (Minor)
augurium, (i)ī *n.* omen, prophecy
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
contrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus draw together, gather†
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, abandon*
dīversus, a, um separated, far apart*
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus overturn, destroy
exsilium, (i)ī *n.* (place of) exile
exsul, ulis *m.* (*f.*) exile, refugee†
fūmō (1) smoke, reek, fume
humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
Īda, ae *f.* mountain near Troy
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy
immeritus, a, um undeserving, guiltless†
incertus, a, um doubtful, uncertain
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament
mōlior, īrī, ītus do, make, build, effect
Neptūnius, a, um Neptunian, of Neptune, god of the sea, who with the help of Apollo built the walls of Troy
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
postquam after (that), when*
sistō, ere, stetī, status set(tle), stop
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*

1–12. The Trojan survivors build a fleet near Antandros at the foot of Mt. Ida and set sail in search of new homes.

1. rēs, gentem: objects of **ēvertere**. **ēvertere:** subj. of **vīsum (est)**, *it seemed (best);* App. 258.

2. immeritam: emphatic by position. **superīs (deīs).**

3. (ab) humō: abl. of separation; App. 340. **Neptūnia Troja:** see II, 610, 625, and note.

4. dēsertās: the small band of Trojans were too weak to seize any lands already occupied.

5. auguriīs dīv(ōr)um.

7. incertī: an inconsistency with the prediction of Creüsa, II, 781; due either to the caprice of the poet, to the unfinished condition of the poem, or to the fact that Aeneas did not trust the prophecies of his wife. **(nōs) ferant, dētur:** indirect questions, depending on **incertī**; App. 349. **dētur (nōbīs):** *it is granted;* the subject is **sistere**; App. 258.

8. prīma aestās: *the first (of) summer;* App. 246; the Trojan fugitives had spent the winter near Antandros.

9. pater Anchīsēs: in ancient Roman times the father (**pater familiās**) was the recognized head of the house. **dare fātīs vēla:** modeled on the expression **dare ventīs vēla**, but indicating the spirit of the Trojans as they set out trusting to the gods and "with a heart for any fate."

11. Troja fuit: cf. II, 325, **fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium,** and the note.

cum sociīs nātōque, penātibus *et magnīs dīs.*
Terra procul vastīs colitur Māvortia *campīs*
(Thrāces arant) ācrī *quondam* rēgnāta Lycūrgō,
hospitium *antīquum Trojae* sociīque penātēs
dum fortūna fuit. Feror hūc et lītore curvō
moenia prīma locō *fātīs* ingressus inīquīs
Aeneadāsque *meō nōmen dē nōmine* fingō.
Sacra Diōnaeae *mātrī dīvīsque ferēbam*
auspicibus coeptōrum operum, *superōque* nitentem
caelicolum *rēgī* mactābam *in lītore* taurum.
Forte fuit juxtā tumulus, *quō* cornea *summō*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited*
Aeneadae, ārum *m.* descendants (followers) of Aeneas
arō (1) plow, till, cultivate
auspex, icis *m.* (*f.*) seer, guardian, guide†
caelicola, ae *m.* (*f.*) god, divinity
coepī, isse, ptus begin, undertake
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor*
corneus, a, um of cornel, a kind of tree†
curvus, a, um bent, curved, winding*
Diōnaeus, a, um Dionean, of Dione, mother of Venus†
fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus form, make, fashion
hospitium, (i)ī *n.* hospitality, ally, alliance, friend(ship)
ingredior, ī, gressus enter, begin, land†
inīquus, a, um unfavorable, unjust, unfair, adverse
juxtā close, near, next, nigh (*acc.*)*
locō (1) place, establish, locate*
Lycūrgus, ī *m.* king of Thrace†
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor
Māvortius, a, um martial, beloved of Mars, god of war
nitēns, entis shining, white, sleek
opus, eris *n.* work, task, labor, deed*
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
rēgnō (1) rule, reign, govern, sway
socius, a, um allied, friendly
taurus, ī *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
Thrāx, ācis *m.* Thracian†
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, hill, tomb*

---

12. cum sociīs nātōque, penātibus et magnīs dīs: indicating the various factors of most importance for the future. The **penātēs**, household gods, are here distinguished from the major divinities (**magnī dī**), such as Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, Minerva, Vesta, etc. Observe the spondaic verse giving a solemn and majestic close; App. 395.

13–18. Founding of Aenos, or Aenea, in Thrace.

13. procul (ā Trojā): *at a (little) distance*, only across the Hellespont, a narrow strait. **campīs:** abl. of quality or of place where; App. 330, 319. **terra Māvortia:** the chief god of the fierce Thracians was Mars, the brutal god of war.

14. Thrācēs: nom. pl., a Greek form; App. 65, *a*. **(illam terram) Thrāces arant. ācrī Lycūrgō:** dat. of agent; App. 302. He had attacked the women attendants of Bacchus with an ox goad. For this he was first blinded and then destroyed by Jupiter.

15. hospitium antīquum Trojae (fuit) et penātēs (fuērunt) sociī (cum penātibus Trojae).

16. dum fortūna (Trojae) fuit: some of the same pathos as in II, 325, **fuit Īlium. (in) lītore.**

17. ingressus (terram). fātīs inīquīs: abl. abs.; App. 343.

18. Aeneadās: apposition with **nōmen**; App. 241. Either Aenos, at the mouth of the Hebrus, or Aenea, on the west coast of Thrace, may be referred to here; or Vergil may have confused the two towns. **nōmen (meīs virīs) fingō.**

19–48. Aeneas prepares to offer sacrifice, but is deterred by the omens of the murdered Polydorus.

19. Diōnaeae mātrī: Venus, the mother of Aeneas and daughter of Dione. **dīvīsque (aliīs).**

20–21. auspicibus: apposition with **mātrī dīvīsque**; App. 241. **superō regī caelicol(ār)um:** Jupiter.

22. tumulus: a mound formed by the

virgulta *et* dēnsīs hastīlibus horrida myrtus.
Accessī viridem*que ab* humō convellere *silvam*
cōnātus, rāmīs tegerem *ut* frondentibus *ārās*,
horrendum *et dictū videō* mīrābile mōnstrum.
Nam quae prīma solō ruptīs rādīcibus arbōs
vellitur, *huic ātrō* līquuntur *sanguine* guttae
et terram tābō maculant. *Mihi* frīgidus horror
membra quatit gelidus*que* coīt formīdine *sanguis*.
Rūrsus *et* alterius lentum convellere vīmen
īnsequor *et* causās penitus temptāre latentīs:
āter et alterius *sequitur dē* cortice *sanguis*.
Multa movēns animō nymphās venerābar agrestīs

---

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, reach
agrestis, e rustic, rural†
alter, era, erum another (of two), second*
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree, wood(s)*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
coëō, īre, iī (īvī), itus come together, curdle†
cōnor, ārī, ātus try, attempt, endeavor
convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear up, shatter
cortex, icis *m.* (*f.*) bark, rind, shell†
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
formīdō, inis *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
frīgidus, a, um cold, chilly, frosty
frondēns, entis leafy, fronded†
gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
gutta, ae *f.* drop†
hastīle, īlis *n.* spear-shaft, shoot
horrendus, a, um dreadful, horrible*
horridus, a, um bristling, horrible
horror, ōris *m.* shudder, terror, dread
humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, proceed*
latēns, entis hiding, hidden, secret
lentus, a, um pliant, tough, flexible†
līquor, ī flow, trickle, drip, run†
maculō (1) spot, stain, pollute†
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
mīrābilis, e wonderful, marvelous
mōnstrum, ī *n.* omen, prodigy, monster*
myrtus, ī *f.* myrtle, a shrub sacred to Venus and the dead†
nympha, ae *f.* nymph, one of the demi-goddesses who presided over the sea, rivers, fountains, forests, trees, etc.
penitus within, far, wholly, deeply*
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter
rādīx, īcis *f.* root†
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, bough, shoot†*
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
solum, ī *n.* ground, soil*
tābum, ī *n.* corruption; gore, blood†
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*
temptō (1) try, test, explore, examine*
vellō, ere, vulsī, vulsus tear (up)
veneror, ārī, ātus reverence, supplicate†
vīmen, inis *n.* twig, shoot, withe†
virgultum, ī *n.* thicket, bush, copse†
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous†*

---

action of the wind and waves over the unburied body of Polydorus. **quō (in) summō (erant)**: *on the summit of which (were)*; App. 246.

23. virgulta (erant). hastīlibus: the cornel and myrtle shoots were often used as spear shafts and are here called **hastīlia** for the additional reason given in the story which follows.

24. (tumulum) accessī. silvam: *thicket*. **cōnātus (sum). ut tegerem**: purpose; App. 359.

26. dictū: supine, used as abl. of respect with **mīrābile**; App. 271.

27-28. ruptīs rādīcibus: abl. abs.; App. 343. **nam guttae ātrō sanguine** (= ātrī sanguinis) **līquuntur huic arborī** (= ex hāc arbore) **quae vellitur prīma. (ex) solō. arbōs**: attracted into the rel. clause, becoming nom. instead of dat.; App. 242, *a*. **huic (arborī)**: dat. of separation; App. 305. **ātrō sanguine**: abl. of quality denoting material; App. 330, 324.

29. Mihi: dat. of reference equivalent to a possessive adjective.

30. gelidus: proleptic; App. 440. **formīdine**: abl. of cause; App. 332.

31. alterius (arboris).

34. movēns: *pondering*. **(meō) animō**: abl. of place where or means; App. 319, 331. **nymphās**: as patron deities of the

Grādīvumque *patrem*, Geticīs *quī* praesidet *arvīs*,
rīte secundārent vīsūs ōmenque levārent.
Tertia *sed* postquam *majōre* hastīlia nīsū
adgredior genibusque adversae obluctor harēnae
(ēloquar an sileam?) gemitus lacrimābilis *īmō*
audītur tumulō *et vōx* reddita *fertur ad* aurīs:
'*Quid miserum, Aenēā*, lacerās? *Jam* parce sepultō,
parce *piās* scelerāre *manūs*. *Nōn mē tibi Troja*
externum *tulit aut* cruor *hic dē* stīpite mānat.
Heu fuge crūdēlīs *terrās, fuge lītus* avārum:
nam Polydōrus *ego*. *Hīc* cōnfīxum ferrea tēxit
tēlōrum seges *et* jaculīs incrēvit acūtīs.'

---

acūtus, a, um sharp, keen, pointed
adgredior, ī, gressus approach, attack†
adversus, a, um opposite, facing, opposing*
an whether, or*
auris, is *f.* ear*
avārus, a, um greedy, avaricious
cōnfīgō, ere, xī, xus pierce, transfix
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore†
ēloquor, ī, locūtus speak (out), declare†
externus, a, um foreign, strange†
ferreus, a, um (of) iron†
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
genū, ūs *n.* knee
Geticus, a, um Getic, of the Getae, a people on the Danube†
Grādīvus, ī *m.* Mars, god of war†
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
hastīle, ilis *n.* spear shaft, spear-like shoot
incrēscō, ere, crēvī, crētus grow up (in)†
jaculum, ī *n.* spear, javelin†
lacerō (1) tear, lacerate, mutilate†
lacrimābilis, e tearful, mournful†
levō (1) lighten, alleviate, lift, remove
mānō (1) flow, drip, ooze (out)†
nīsus, ūs *m.* effort, struggle, exertion†
obluctor, ārī, ātus struggle against (*dat.*)†
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, sign, portent*
parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare, refrain, forbear (*dat.*)
Polydōrus, ī *m.* son of Priam, killed by Polymnestor, king of Thrace†
postquam after (that), when*
praesideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus preside over (*dat.*)†
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give (back), utter, render, return*
rīte duly, fittingly, with due ceremony†
scelerō (1) defile, pollute, stain
secundō (1) prosper, make favorable†
seges, etis *f.* crop, harvest, grain field
sepultus, ī *m.* one buried, corpse
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still, hush
stīpes, itis *m.* trunk, stock, shoot†
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*
tertius, a, um third*
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, hill, tomb*
vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, view, vision, aspect

---

place. All trees, groves, fountains, and streams were sacred to the nymphs.

35. arvīs: dat. with compound; App. 298.

36. (ut) secundārent, levārent: subst. clauses developed from vol. or opt. and depending upon venerābar, *I was beseeching;* App. 360, 253.

38. genibus: abl. of manner or means; App. 328, 331. harēnae: dat. with compound; App. 298.

39–40. ēloquar an sileam: deliberative questions; App. 348. (ex) īmō tumulō: *from the lowest (depths of the) mound;* App. 246. (meās) aurīs.

41. (mē) miserum. (mihi) sepultō: dat. with special verb, parce; App. 297.

42–43. piās manūs. tibi externum. cruor (externus tuō cruōrī). nōn dē stīpite (arboris sed dē meō corpore) hic cruor mānat.

44. crūdēlīs, avārum: transferred epithets; App. 446.

45–46. ego (sum). (mē) cōnfīxum. ferrea tēlōrum seges: Polydorus had been pierced with a number of spears, which had taken root in his slain body and produced the myrtle grove. jaculīs acūtīs: abl. of quality or material with seges; App. 330, 324.

Tum vērō ancipitī *mentem* formīdine pressus
obstipuī *steteruntque* comae *et vōx* faucibus haesit.
Hunc Polydōrum *aurī quondam cum* pondere *magnō*
īnfēlīx Priamus fūrtim mandārat alendum
Thrēiciō *rēgī, cum jam* diffīderet *armīs*
Dardaniae cingī*que urbem* obsidiōne *vidēret.*
Ille, ut opēs frāctae *Teucrum et Fortūna* recessit,
rēs Agamemnoniās victrīcia*que arma secūtus*
fās *omne* abrumpit: Polydōrum obtruncat, *et aurō*
vī potītur. *Quid nōn* mortālia *pectora* cōgis,
aurī sacra famēs! Postquam pavor ossa *relīquit,*
dēlēctōs populī *ad* procerēs *prīmumque parentem*

---

abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break (off)†
Agamemnonius, a, um of Agamemnon, leader of the Greeks against Troy†
alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, rear†
anceps, cipitis doubtful, double†
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird(le)*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus force (together), drive*
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
Dardania, ae *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select
diffīdō, ere, sus sum distrust, mistrust (*dat.*)†
famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed
fās *n. indecl.* justice, right, divine will*
faucēs, ium *f.* throat, jaws; pass
formīdō, inis *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter*
fūrtim stealthily, secretly, furtively
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus stick (to) (*dat.*)*
mandō (1) intrust, commit†
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
obsidiō, ōnis *f.* siege, blockade†
obstipēscō, ere, stipuī be amazed, stand agape*
obtruncō (1) kill, slaughter, slay, butcher
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
os, ossis *n.* bone
pavor, ōris *m.* terror, shudder(ing), alarm
Polydōrus, ī *m.* son of Priam, treacherously murdered by Polymnestor, king of Thrace
pondus, eris *n.* weight, burden, mass, load
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
postquam after (that), when*
potior, īrī, ītus possess, gain (*abl.*)
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (op)press, repress, check, control*
procer, eris *m.* leader, chief, noble
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, depart
Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace. a country northeast of Greece†
vērō truly, indeed, but
victrīx, īcis *f.* victorious, conquering†

---

47. ancipitī formīdine: from the sight and the voice. mentem: acc. of respect with pressus (= oppressus); App. 311.

48. stetērunt: with short penult.

49–56. The story of the murder of Polydorus.

50. mandā(ve)rat. alendum: the gerundive expressing purpose, *to be reared;* App. 268.

51–52. Thrēiciō rēgī: Polymnēstor. armīs: abl. or dat. with diffīderet; App. 297, 325. (Priamus) diffīderet, vidēret: cum descriptive; App. 378.

53. Ille = Thrēicius rēx (l. 51) = Polymnēstor. frāctae (sunt). Teucr(ōr)um. Fortūna (Teucrōrum).

54. rēs: *fortunes.* secūtus: (treacherously) *going over to.*

55. fās omne abrumpit: he was bound by treaty and by the sacred ties of hospitality to Troy. aurō: abl. with potītur; App. 342.

56. vī: abl. of manner; App. 328. potītur: here of the third conjugation, but ordinarily of the fourth. Quid: cognate acc. (inner obj.); App. 313; or supply facere.

57–68. The Trojans in solemn session decide to give Polydorus a proper burial and abandon the haunted spot.

57. aurī: obj. gen., *greed, hunger of (for) gold;* App. 284. sacra: *accursed;* sacer meant anything *set aside or consecrated to the gods,* and hence here *devoted to destruction.* (mea) ossa.

58. prīmum parentem (meum): Aeneas

mōnstra *deum referō, et quae sit* sententia poscō.
Omnibus īdem animus, scelerātā excēdere *terrā,*
linquī pollūtum hospitium *et dare classibus* Austrōs.
Ergō īnstaurāmus Polydōrō fūnus: *et ingēns*
aggeritur tumulō *tellūs; stant* mānibus *ārae,*
caeruleīs maestae vittīs *ātrāque* cupressō,
et circum Īliades crīnem *dē* mōre solūtae;
īnferimus tepidō spūmantia cymbia lacte
sanguinis et sacrī paterās, *animamque* sepulcrō
condimus *et magnā suprēmum vōce* ciēmus.

aggerō, ere, gessī, gestus heap (up)†
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
caeruleus, a, um dark (blue), sable*
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus rouse, summon, stir (up), excite, invoke*
condō, ere, didī, ditus lay (away), hide, found, establish*
crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
cupressus, ī *f.* cypress, a tree sacred to the dead and often planted around tombs
cymbium, (i)ī *n.* bowl†
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, depart (*abl.*)
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
hospitium, (i)ī *n.* hospitality, ally, alliance
Īlias, adis *f.* Trojan (woman)
īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus bring to, offer
īnstaurō (1) renew, refresh, repeat
lac, lactis *n.* milk†
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, shades, ghost; Hades†*
mōnstrum, ī *n.* omen, prodigy, monster*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, law*
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl
polluō, ere, uī, ūtus defile, profane, pollute†
Polydōrus, ī *m.* son of Priam
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
scelerō (1) defile, pollute, stain
sententia, ae *f.* opinion, purpose, view
sepulcrum, ī *n.* tomb, grave, burial
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, pay, free*
spūmō (1) foam, froth*
tepidus, a, um warm, tepid†
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, hill, tomb*
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*

consults the Trojan chiefs in turn, as though they were Roman senators; and Anchises, as **princeps**, *first* in rank and age, speaks first.

59. de(ōr)um. referō: according to the Roman custom of consulting the senate when important prodigies occurred, **referō** being the technical word for laying a matter before that body. **quae sententia sit**: indir. quest.; App. 349.

60–61. Omnibus (est): dat. of possession; App. 299. **(nōs) excēdere, (nōs) linquī, (nōs) dare**: in apposition with **animus**. **dare classibus Austrōs (ventōs)**: a poetical variation of the more usual expression **dare ventīs classēs (vēla)**. Cf. III, 9, **dare fātīs vēla**, and see App. 426.

62. īnstaurāmus: it was important that all funerals should be properly performed, with all due ceremonies, as otherwise the soul of the dead would not be able to rest in peace. Polymnestor had not given Polydorus a proper burial, and so this ceremony is duly performed by Aeneas. The description of the funeral is adapted to Roman custom.

63. mānibus (Polydōrī): *to the soul* (*of Polydorus*), dat. of reference; App. 301.

65. Īliades (stant). crīnem solūtae: a conventional sign of grief; **crīnem** is obj. of the middle part. **solūtae**; App. 309, *a*.

66. tepidō lacte: freshly milked; abl. of material; App. 324. Other common offerings to the dead were wine, honey, and oil.

67–68. sanguinis sacrī: the blood of victims sacrificed to the gods. **animam condimus**: *we "lay the ghost,"* by giving the body a proper burial, and thus enabling the soul to cross the river Styx and to rest in peace in Hades. The souls of the unburied must wander in misery for a hundred years. **suprēmum**: adverbial; *for the last* (*time*); see note on I, 219, and on II, 644. The poet is describing the usual Roman rite.

Inde *ubi prīma* fidēs *pelagō*, plācātaque *ventī*
dant maria et lēnis crepitāns *vocat* Auster *in* altum,
dēdūcunt *sociī nāvīs et lītora* complent.
Prōvehimur *portū terraeque urbēsque* recēdunt.
Sacra marī colitur *mediō* grātissima *tellūs*
Nēreïdum *mātrī et* Neptūnō Aegaeō,
quam pius Arquitenēns *ōrās et lītora circum*
errantem Myconō *ē* celsā Gyarō*que* revīnxit,
immōtamque colī *dedit et* contemnere *ventōs*.
Hūc feror: haec fessōs tūtō placidissima *portū*
accipit. Ēgressī venerāmur Apollinis *urbem*.

Aegaeus, a, um of the Aegean Sea†
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
Arquitenēns (arci-), entis *m.* archer, Apollo†
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor*
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete
contemnō, ere, tempsī, temptus despise, scorn†
crepitō (1) crackle, rustle, creak†
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw down, launch
ēgredior, ī, gressus step out, disembark
fides, eī *f.* faith, trust(worthiness)*
grātus, a, um pleasing, agreeable, grateful
Gyaros, ī *f.* an island in the Aegean†
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable
inde thence, after that, next*
lēnis, e gentle, soft, mild, light
Myconus, ī *f.* an island in the Aegean†
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
Nēreïs, idis *f.* a sea-nymph, daughter of Nereus†
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
plācō (1) propitiate, calm, quiet
prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry (forward), convey
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, recede
revinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind (fast)
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
veneror, ārī, ātus reverence, supplicate

69–89. They land in Delos to consult the oracle.

69. (est) **pelagō**: dat. of possession; App. 299; or abl. = **fidēs** (est **nōbīs** in) **pelagō**; App. 319; or dat. with the construction of **fīdō**; App. 297. **ventī** (positī).

70. vocat (nōs).

71. dēdūcunt: *launch;* **subdūcere** is the technical term for beaching vessels on the shore at the end of a voyage, and **dēdūcō** is the technical term for launching them or drawing them down into the water again.

72. (ā, ex) **portū. recēdunt**: an optical illusion familiar to all travelers.

73–74. (in) **mediō marī**: *in the midst of the sea.* **sacra tellūs**: the island of Delos, sacred to Apollo as his birthplace. **grātissima mātrī Nēreïdum et Neptūnō. Nēreïdum mātrī**: Doris, goddess of the sea and wife of the sea god Nereus. **mātrī et Neptūnō Aegaeō**: note the two cases of hiatus and the spondaic fifth foot; App. 399, 395.

75. pius Arquitenēns: (*Apollo*) *in* (*filial*) *devotion.* According to the story, the goddess Latona was an outcast and could find no land willing to receive her till she came to Delos, at that time a floating island. The island allowed her to remain, where she gave birth to the twins, Apollo and Diana. In gratitude for this hospitality, Apollo bound Delos fast to the neighboring islands and so made it a firm and habitable land. **errantem circum ōrās et lītora**: App. 414.

76. ē celsā Myconō Gyarōque: *off lofty Myconus and Gyaros.* Myconus is in fact a low island.

77. dedit (illam terram esse) **immōtam et colī et contemnere ventōs**: formerly the island had been floating around at the mercy of the wind and waves and was uninhabitable.

78–79. haec (**tellūs**) **accipit** (**nōs**) **fessōs. Apollinis urbem**: Delos, a city of the same name as the island.

Rēx Anius, *rēx īdem* hominum Phoebī*que* sacerdōs,
vittīs *et sacrā* redimītus tempora laurō
occurrit; veterem *Anchīsēn* agnōvit amīcum.
Jungimus hospitiō *dextrās et tēcta subīmus.*
Templa *deī saxō* venerābar strūcta vetustō:
'*Dā* propriam, Thymbraee, *domum; dā moenia fessīs*
et genus et mānsūram urbem; servā altera *Trojae*
Pergama, relliquiās *Danaum atque* immītis Achillī.
Quem sequimur? Quōve īre jubēs? Ubi pōnere sēdēs?
Dā, pater, augurium *atque animīs* inlābere *nostrīs.*'
Vix ea fātus eram: tremere *omnia vīsa* repente,
līminaque laurus*que deī, tōtusque movērī*
mōns circum et mūgīre adytīs cortīna reclūsīs.

Achillēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Greek leader*
adytum, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
alter, era, erum another (of two), second*
amīcus, ī *m.* friend, comrade*
Anius, (i)ī *m.* king of Delos†
augurium, (i)ī *n.* augury, omen, portent
cortīna, ae *f.* tripod, caldron, on which the priestess sat when delivering oracles†
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
hospitium, (i)ī *n.* hospitality, ally, alliance
immītis, e cruel, harsh, fierce, unfeeling
inlābor, ī, lāpsus glide (into) (*dat.*)
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
laurus, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel, an evergreen tree sacred to Apollo
mūgiō, īre, īvī (ii), **ītus** bellow, roar†
occurrō, ere, (cu)**currī, cursus** (run to) meet (*dat.*)
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
proprius, a, um one's own, secure, permanent
reclūdō, ere, ī, sus open, disclose
redimiō, īre, ii (īvī), **ītus** bind around, encircle†
re(l)liquiae, ārum *f.* rest, remnant, leavings
repente suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
struō, ere, ūxī, ūctus heap up, build
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
Thymbraeus, a, um of Thymbra, a city of the Troad, sacred to Apollo†
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
veneror, ārī, ātus reverence, supplicate
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
vetustus, a, um old, ancient, former
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*

---

80. īdem: the union of government and religion is common among primitive peoples, as at Rome under the early kings.

81. vittīs: as a symbol of his priestly office. **tempora:** *temples;* object of the middle participle **redimītus;** App. 309, *a.* **laurō sacrā (Apollinī).**

82. (nōbīs) occurrit. veterem amīcum.

83. hospitiō: abl. of manner; App. 328.

84. saxō vetustō: abl. of material; App. 324.

85. Thymbraee (Apollō): voc. Dā (nōbīs). dā (nōbīs) fessīs.

86. mānsūram: *that shall abide.*

87. re(l)liquiās Dana(ōr)um atque immītis Achillī: subj. genitives, as in I, 30, *the remnants of (allowed to escape by) the Danaans,* etc.; App. 284.

88. Quem sequimur: the pres. ind. is occasionally used where one would expect the fut. ind. (**quem sequēmur**) or the deliberative subj. (**quem sequāmur**); App. 348, *a,* 351, 1, c. See note on II, 322, **quam prendimus arcem.** (**jubēs**) **pōnere.**

89. pater: a common appellation for an ancient god. **animīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

90–98. The oracle bids them seek the "ancient mother of their race," i.e., the original home of the Trojans.

90. ea (dicta). vīsa (sunt): true pass. of **videō,** *were seen.*

91. līminaque: with **e** forming a long syllable; App. 394, *a.* Cf. **pulvis,** I, 478, and **domus,** II, 563.

92. mōns: Mt. Cynthus, sacred to

Summissī *petimus terram et vōx fertur ad* aurīs·
'Dardanidae dūrī, *quae vōs ā* stirpe *parentum*
prīma tulit tellūs, eadem vōs ūbere *laetō*
accipiet reducēs. *Antīquam* exquīrite *mātrem.*
Hīc domus Aenēae cūnctīs dominābitur *ōrīs*
et nātī nātōrum et quī nāscentur *ab illīs.'*
Haec Phoebus; mixtō*que ingēns* exorta tumultū
laetitia, *et cūnctī quae sint ea moenia quaerunt,*
quō Phoebus *vocet errantīs jubeatque* revertī.
Tum genitor veterum *volvēns* monimenta *virōrum*
'*Audīte, Ō* procerēs,' *ait* '*et* spēs discite vestrās.
Crēta *Jovis magnī mediō* jacet īnsula pontō,
mōns Īdaeus *ubi et gentis* cūnābula *nostrae.*
Centum *urbēs* habitant *magnās,* ūberrima *rēgna,*

---

auris, is *f.* ear*
centum hundred*
Crēta, ae *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean†
cūnābula, ōrum *n.* cradle, birthplace†
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
discō, ere, didicī learn (how)
dominor, ārī, ātus hold sway, rule, govern
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, rough*
exorior, īrī, ortus (a)rise, spring up
exquīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus search (out)†
habitō (1) dwell, inhabit, possess†
Īdaeus, a, um Idaean, of Ida, a mountain near Troy and one in Crete
īnsula, ae *f.* island
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
laetitia, ae *f.* joy, delight, gladness
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mingle, mix*
monimentum (monumentum), ī *n.* reminder, memorial, record, tradition†
nāscor, ī, nātus be born, arise*
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
procer, eris *m.* leader, chief, noble
redux, ducis returning, restored
revertor, ī, rsus turn back, return
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
stirps, is *f.* stock, lineage, stem, race
summissus, a, um prostrate, humble†
tumultus, ūs *m.* tumult, uproar, din
ūber, eris *n.* fertility, wealth, bosom; *adj.* rich, fertile†
vester, tra, trum your (own), yours*
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

Apollo. **cortīna**: *the kettle* on the tripod which served as a seat for the priestess when she delivered the oracles.

93. Summissī petimus terram: *we fall low on the ground, fall prostrate.*

94–95. Dardanidae: *descendants of Dardanus.* Dardanus had once lived in Italy, making the term especially appropriate here. **quae tellūs prīma tulit vōs**: as later developments show, this reference was to Italy, but the Trojans failed to understand it so. Ancient oracles were commonly ambiguous. **eadem (tellūs).**

97. Hīc = in hāc terrā, **vestrā antīquā mātre. ōrīs**: dat. with special verb, or abl. of place where; App. 297, 319.

98. et (eī) quī.

99–120. Led by Anchises's false interpretation of the oracle they sail for Crete.

99. Haec (dicta) Phoebus (fātus est). exorta (est). mixtō tumultū: abl. abs.; App. 343.

100–101. ea moenia: *the city;* promised by Apollo, ll. 95–98. **sint, vocet, jubeat**: subjunctives in indirect questions; App. 349. **quō Phoebus (nōs) errantīs vocet jubeatque (nōs) revertī.**

102. volvēns: as though written on a scroll, the form of the ancient book. **(meus genitor): Anchīsēs.**

104. Crēta Jovis magnī: since Jove was born and reared there. **mediō (in) pontō**: *in the midst of the sea;* App. 246.

105. mōns Īdaeus (est) et cūnābula (sunt). There was a Mt. Ida in Crete as well as in the Troad, evidence to Anchises of the Cretan origin of the Trojans.

106. (illī virī Crētae) habitant. rēgna: each city formed an independent kingdom.

maximus unde *pater, sī* rīte *audīta* recordor,
Teucrus Rhoetēās *prīmum est* advectus *in* ōrās,
optāvit*que locum rēgnō.* Nōndum Īlium *et arcēs*
Pergameae *steterant;* habitābant vallibus *īmīs.*
Hinc māter cultrīx Cybelī Corybantia*que* aera
Īdaeum*que* nemus, *hinc* fīda silentia *sacrīs,*
et jūnctī currum dominae *subiēre* leōnēs.
Ergō *agite et dīvum dūcunt* quā jussa *sequāmur:*
plācēmus *ventōs et* Gnōsia *rēgna petāmus.*
Nec longō distant *cursū:* modo *Juppiter adsit,*
tertia *lūx classem* Crētaeīs sistet *in* ōrīs.'
Sīc fātus meritōs *ārīs* mactāvit *honōrēs,*

---

advehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry to, convey
aes, aeris *n.* bronze, bronze cymbals, used in the worship of Cybele*
Corybantius, a, um of the Corybantes, priests of Cybele, Mother of the Gods†
Crētaeus, a, um Cretan, of Crete†
cultrīx, īcis *f.* dweller, inhabitant†
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
Cybelus, ī *m.* mountain in Phrygia, sacred to Cybele, the Great Mother of the Gods†
distō, āre stand apart, be distant†
domina, ae *f.* mistress, queen, lady†
ergō therefore, hence, consequently*
fīdus, a, um faithful, true, trustworthy*
Gnōs(s)ius, a, um of Gnossus, a city of Crete†
habitō (1) dwell, inhabit, possess
Īdaeus, a, um of Mt. Ida, near Troy and in Crete
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
leō, ōnis *m.* lion
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, merit, earn*
modo only, (just) now
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
nōndum not yet†
optō (1) wish (for), choose, hope (for)*
Pergameus, a, um of Pergamum, Trojan†
plācō (1) propitiate, calm, quiet, soothe
quā where(by), in any (some) way
recordor, ārī, ātus recall, remember†
Rhoetēus, a, um of Rhoeteüm, a promontory near Troy†
rīte duly, with proper ceremonies
silentium, (i)ī *n.* silence, mystery, quiet
sistō, ere, stetī, status station, set(tle)
tertius, a, um third*
Teucrus (cer), crī *m.* early king of Troy
unde whence, from which place*
vallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale

---

107. (noster) maximus (nātū) pater: *our eldest (earliest) ancestor.* audīta: *what I have heard.*

109. rēgnō: dat. of purpose; App. 303.

110. (illī virī) habitābant: cf. l. 106, **habitant.** (in) **vallibus.**

111. Hinc: ex Crētā. Hinc (vēnit) māter (deōrum) cultrīx (montis) Cybelī. Cybelī: obj. gen. with **cultrīx;** App. 284. **Corybantia aera:** the Corybantes, priests and attendants of Cybele, accompanied the processions of the goddess with loud clashing of cymbals and violent, ecstatic dancing and leaping.

112. Īdaeum nemus: a grove on Mt. Ida sacred to the goddess. **nemus:** with the last syllable lengthened under the verse accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a.* **silentia sacrīs:** according to this account, the secret and mysterious ceremonies of Cybele and the custom of representing her as being drawn in a chariot by a yoke of lions all came from Crete. **sacrīs:** dat. of reference with **vēnit** understood.

113. currum subiēre (= subiērunt): *went beneath the car = went beneath the yoke of the car.* Cybele was often represented in a chariot drawn by lions or other wild animals.

114–115. sequāmur, quā jussa de(ōr)um (nōs) dūcunt. sequāmur, plācēmus, petāmus: vol.; App. 254.

116. Nec longō cursū: about 150 miles; abl. of degree of difference; App. 335. **Juppiter:** as the god of the sky, of the weather, and of storms. **adsit:** subj. in a proviso clause; App. 375.

117. lūx (diēī). (nostram) classem.

118. sīc fātus (Anchīsēs).

taurum Neptūnō, taurum *tibi*, pulcher Apollō,
nigram Hiemī pecudem, Zephyrīs fēlīcibus albam.
Fāma volat pulsum *rēgnīs* cessisse paternīs
Īdomenēa ducem, dēserta*que lītora* Crētae,
hoste vacāre *domum sēdēsque* astāre *relictās*.
Linquimus Ortygiae *portūs pelagōque* volāmus
bacchātam*que* jugīs Naxum viridem*que* Donūsam,
Ōlearum niveam*que* Parum sparsās*que per aequor*
Cycladas, *et* crēbrīs legimus freta cōnsita *terrīs*.
Nauticus exoritur variō certāmine *clāmor:*
hortantur *socīī* Crētam proavōs*que petāmus*.
Prōsequitur *surgēns ā puppī ventus euntīs*,

albus, a, um white†*
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (by, ready)*
bacchor, ārī, ātus revel (over), traverse in Bacchic revel, celebrate the rites of Bacchus†
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, yield*
certāmen, inis *n.* rivalry, contest†*
cōnserō, ere, sēvī, situs sow, scatter, sprinkle†
crēber, bra, brum frequent, numerous*
Crēta, ae *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean
Cyclades, um *f.* islands of the Aegean†
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus abandon, desert*
Donūsa, ae *f.* island of the Aegean†
dux, ducis *m.* leader, guide, pilot*
exorior, īrī, ortus (a)rise, spring up
fēlīx, īcis happy, favorable, fortunate*
fretum, ī *n.* strait, sea, waters
Hiems, emis *f.* Winter, Storm*
hortor, ārī, ātus urge, encourage, incite*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
Īdomeneus, eī *m.* king of Crete†
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus gather, skim*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
nauticus, a, um of sailors, nautical†
Naxos, ī *f.* island of the Aegean†
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
niger, gra, grum black, gloomy, dusky*
niveus, a, um white, snowy
Ōlearus (os), ī *f.* island of the Aegean†
Ortygia, ae *f.* early name of Delos, an island of the Aegean†
Paros, ī *f.* island of the Aegean, famous for its clear white marble†
paternus, a, um paternal, ancestral†
pecus, udis *f.* animal, member of flock*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive (out)
proavus, ī *m.* ancestor, forefather†
prōsequor, ī, secūtus accompany, attend
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, illustrious, noble*
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus strew, scatter*
taurus, ī *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
vacō (1) be empty, be free (*abl.*)
varius, a, um varied, different, diverse*
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*
volō (1) fly (forth, abroad)*
Zephyrus, ī *m.* the (west) wind

120. albam (pecudem): white victims were offered to kindly divinities, black victims to destructive ones.

121–134. The founding of the Cretan Pergamum.

121–123. (ex) rēgnīs. cessisse, dēserta (esse), vacāre, astāre: indir. statement depending on **fāma volat** = **dīcunt**; App. 390. Observe the differences of tense; App. 351, 1 and 4. **Īdomenēa:** acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 69. The legend relates that Idomeneus was overtaken by a storm while returning from the expedition against Troy, and vowed to the god of the sea that he would sacrifice the first one who met him on his safe return home. This proved to be his own son, and the gods in anger at such a sacrifice sent a pestilence which caused Idomeneus to be driven from Crete and later to settle in Italy. **dēserta (esse). hoste:** abl. of separation with **vacāre**; App. 340.

124. pelagō: abl. of route; App. 338.

125–127. bacchātam: used passively. **(in) jugīs. Naxum, Donūsam, Ōlearum, Parum, Cycladas, freta:** objects of **legimus.**

128. variō certāmine: the ships are racing each other.

129. (ut) petāmus: subst. vol. clause; App. 360.

130. (nōs) euntīs: *as we sail.*

et tandem antīquīs Cūrētum adlābimur *ōrīs.*
Ergō avidus mūrōs optātae mōlior *urbis*
Pergameam*que vocō, et laetam* cognōmine *gentem*
hortor amāre focōs *arcemque* attollere *tēctīs.*
Jamque ferē siccō subductae *lītore puppēs;*
cōnūbiīs *arvīsque novīs* operāta juventūs;
jūra *domōsque dabam:* subitō *cum* tābida membrīs
corruptō *caelī* tractū miserand*aque vēnit*
arboribus*que* satīs*que* luēs *et* lētifer annus.
Linquēbant dulcīs *animās aut* aegra *trahēbant*
corpora; tum sterilīs exūrere Sīrius agrōs,

adlābor, ī, lāpsus glide to (*dat.*)†
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
ager, grī *m.* field, territory, land*
amō (1) love, cherish, like*
annus, ī *m.* year; season*
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree; wood(s)*
attollō, ere raise, lift, rear*
avidus, a, um eager, desirous
cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, title
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* marriage, wedlock
corrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break up, spoil, taint
Cūrētes, um *m.* Cretan priests of Jupiter identified with the Corybantes†
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn (up), consume
ferē almost, about†
focus, ī *m.* hearth, fireplace, home†
hortor, ārī, ātus urge, encourage, incite*
jūs, jūris *n.* law, right, justice, decree
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men*
lētifer, era, erum deadly, death-bearing†
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, give up*
luēs, is *f.* blight, pestilence, plague†
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
miserandus, a, um piteous, pitiable
mōlior, īrī, ītus do, make, build, effect
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
operor, ārī, ātus be busy, be occupied with (*dat.*)†
optō (1) desire, choose, wish, hope (for)*
Pergameus, a, um of Pergamum, Trojan
sata, ōrum *n.* crops, harvest
siccus, a, um dry, thirsty
Sīrius, (i)ī *m.* the dog star†
sterilis, e barren, unfruitful, sterile†
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw up, beach, remove
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
tābidus, a, um wasting, decayed†
tractus, ūs *m.* region, quarter†

131. Cūrētum: priests and attendants of Jupiter during his infancy in Crete. **ōrīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

133. (et hanc urbem) vocō Pergameam: Pergamum, a Cretan city, is thus connected by Vergil with Troy (Pergamum) and the wanderings of Aeneas. **cognōmine:** abl. of cause with **laetam**; App. 332.

134. hortor amāre = hortor ut ament: App. 360, *a.* **tēctīs:** *for (to protect) their homes;* dat. of reference; App. 301.

135–146. A grievous pestilence falls upon man and beast and all living things, and they prepare to consult the oracle again.

135. (in) lītore subductae (erant): the ships were drawn up on land when not in active use and were launched only on the occasion of a voyage. See the note on l. 71.

136. cōnūbiīs: pronounced here as though spelled **cōnūbjīs**, for the sake of the meter; App. 401. **cōnūbiīs, arvīs:** datives or ablatives of means with **operāta (erat)**; App. 331.

137–139. cum subitō, corruptō caelī tractū, vēnit (*there came*) **membrīs arboribusque satīsque tābida miserandaque luēs. membrīs:** dat. of direction with **vēnit**, or of reference; App. 306, 301.

138. corruptō tractū: abl. abs., or abl. of source; App. 343, 323. This was formerly a common explanation of plagues, usually interpreted as being produced by divine wrath.

141. sterilīs: proleptic; *Sirius parched the fields bare*, i.e., till they became bare; App. 440. **Sīrius:** the Dog Star rises with the sun in the latter part of summer,

ārēbant herbae *et* vīctum seges aegra negābat.
Rūrsus *ad* ōrāclum Ortygiae Phoebum*que* remēnsō
hortātur *pater īre marī* veniam*que* precārī,
quam fessīs fīnem rēbus ferat, unde *labōrum*
temptāre auxilium *jubeat, quō* vertere *cursūs.*
Nox erat et terrīs animālia *somnus habēbat:*
effigiēs *sacrae dīvum* Phrygiī*que* penātēs,
quōs mēcum ab Trojā mediīsque ex ignibus urbis
extuleram, *vīsī ante oculōs* astāre jacentis
in somnīs multō manifestī *lūmine,* quā *sē*
plēna *per* īnsertās *fundēbat* lūna fenestrās;
tum sīc adfārī *et cūrās hīs* dēmere *dictīs:*
'*Quod tibi* dēlātō Ortygiam *dictūrus* Apollō *est,*

---

adfor, fārī, fātus address, accost*
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
animal, ālis *n.* animal, living thing†
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
āreō, ēre, uī be dry; parch†
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (by, ready)*
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring (down) to, convey†
dēmō, ere, mpsī, mptus remove
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry forth, raise*
effigiēs, ēī *f.* image, likeness, ghost
fenestra, ae *f.* window, opening
herba, ae *f.* grass, herbage, sward*
hortor, ārī, ātus urge, encourage, incite*
īnserō, ere, uī, rtus place, insert†
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
manifestus, a, um clear, plain, manifest
negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
ōrāc(u)lum, ī *n.* oracle, prophecy
Ortygia, ae *f.* ancient name of Delos, an island in the Aegean
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
plēnus, a, um full, complete, swelling
precor, ārī, ātus pray (for, to), invoke†*
quā where, where(by), in any (some) way
remētior, īrī, mēnsus remeasure, retraverse
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
seges, etis *f.* crop, harvest, grain field
temptō (1) try, seek, test, examine*
unde whence, from what source*
venia, ae *f.* favor, pardon, grace
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, (ex)change*
vīctus, ūs *m.* food, living, victuals

---

during the intensely hot weather known as "dog days" (canicular days), once thought to be due to the combined heat of the Dog Star (Sirius) and the sun. **exūrere:** hist. inf.; App. 257.

143–144. remēnsō marī: abl. abs., remēnsō being used as a passive. **pater (Anchīsēs) hortātur (nōs) īre = ut eāmus;** App. 360, *a.*

145–146. quam fīnem ferat (Phoebus), unde (nōs) temptāre auxilium jubeat, quō (jubeat nōs) vertere cursūs: indir. questions depending on the idea of asking implied in **veniam precārī;** App. 349. **(nōbīs) fessīs. labōrum auxilium:** *help of (for) our troubles;* obj. gen.; App. 284.

147–171. The penates (household gods) appear to Aeneas by night and tell him to leave Crete and seek a western land called Hesperia by the Greeks but Italy by the inhabitants.

147. (in) terrīs.

148–151. effigiēs Phrygiīque penātēs . . . vīsī (sunt) astāre. dīv(ōr)um. jacentis (meī) in somnīs: *as I lay asleep.*

151. manifestī: modifying **effigiēs Phrygiīque penātēs,** and agreeing with the latter. **quā:** adv.

152. īnsertās: *set* (in the walls).

153. adfārī, dēmere: depending on **vīsī sunt** understood, or else historical infinitives, with **effigiēs Phrygiīque penātēs** (understood) as subject; App. 257. **cūrās (meās).**

154. dēlātō: *having arrived,* i.e., *if you should go.* **Ortygiam:** acc. of place to which; App. 315, *a.*

hīc canit *et tua nōs* ēn ultrō *ad līmina mittit.*
Nōs tē Dardaniā incēnsā *tuaque arma secūtī,*
nōs tumidum *sub tē* permēnsī *classibus aequor,*
īdem ventūrōs tollēmus in astra nepōtēs
imperiumque urbī dabimus. Tū moenia magnīs
magna parā longumque fugae nē linque *labōrem.*
Mūtandae *sēdēs. Nōn haec tibi lītora* suāsit
Dēlius *aut* Crētae *jussit* cōnsīdere Apollō.
Est locus, Hesperiam Grajī cognōmine *dīcunt,*
terra antīqua, potēns *armīs atque* ūbere glaebae;
Oenōtrī coluēre *virī; nunc fāma* minōrēs
Ītaliam dīxisse ducis *dē nōmine gentem:*
hae nōbīs propriae *sēdēs, hinc* Dardanus ortus
Īasius*que pater, genus ā quō* principe *nostrum.*

Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), prophesy, proclaim, chant*
cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, title
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor, foster*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down), settle
Crēta, ae *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean
Dardania, ae *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy
Dardanus, ī *m.* early king of Troy†
Dēlius, a, um Delian, of Delos, birthplace of Apollo†
dux, ducis *m.* leader, guide, pilot*
ēn lo! behold! see! look!
glaeba, ae *f.* soil, sod, glebe
Grajus, a, um Greek*
Hesperia, ae *f.* Italy, Westland
Īasius, (i)ī *m.* brother of Dardanus†
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, burn*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert, omit*
minōrēs, um *m.* descendants, posterity
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
Oenōtr(i)us, a, um of Oenotria, a district of southern Italy
orior, īrī, ortus (a)rise, spring up
permētior, īrī, mēnsus measure through, traverse†
potēns, entis powerful, mighty*
princeps, cipis *m.* first, chief, leader
proprius, a, um one's own, secure, permanent
suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus persuade, recommend
tumidus, a, um swollen, surging
ūber, eris *n.* udder, bosom, fertility
ultrō beyond, voluntarily*

156–157. Dardaniā incēnsā: abl. abs. **sub tē** = **tē** duce. **Nōs secūtī** (sumus), **nōs permēnsī** (sumus).

158. (**nōs**) **īdem. tuōs nepōtēs:** refers to the power and the glory of the Roman race, and especially to the deification of Julius and Augustus Caesar, who traced their ancestry to Aeneas.

159–160. (**tuae**) **urbī: Rome. moenia magnīs magna:** *mighty walls for the mighty.* With **magnīs** understand either **virīs** or **rēbus.** Perhaps the poet deliberately left it ambiguous. **moenia magnīs magna, longum linque labōrem:** intentionally impressive alliteration; App. 411.

160. parā, linque: imperatives; the use of **nē** with the imp. is poetic; App. 256, *a.*

161. Mūtandae (**sunt**).

162. Crētae: loc.; the only example in the *Aeneid* of the loc. case of an island; App 345.

163. Grajī: pronounce **Grajjī**; App. 6, *b.* (**quem**) **Grajī dīcunt** (= **vocant**) **Hesperiam.** ll. 163–166 = I, 530–533.

164. armīs, ūbere: ablatives of respect; App. 325.

165. Oenōtrī virī coluēre (= **coluērunt terram**). **fāma** (**est**) = **dīcunt.**

166. dīxisse (= **vocāvisse**) **gentem Ītaliam. dē nōmine ducis** (**Italī**).

167. sēdēs (**sunt**), **ortus** (**est**).

167–168. Dardanus Īasiusque: Dardanus and his brother Iasius were born in Etruria. On growing up, Dardanus emigrated to Asia Minor and married the

Surge age et haec laetus longaevō *dicta parentī*
haud dubitanda *refer:* Corythum *terrāsque* requīrat
Ausoniās: Dictaea negat *tibi Juppiter arva.'*
Tālibus attonitus vīsīs *et vōce deōrum*
(*nec* sopor *illud erat, sed* cōram agnōscere vultūs
vēlātāsque comās praesentiaque *ōra vidēbar;*
tum gelidus *tōtō* mānābat *corpore* sūdor)
corripiō *ē* strātīs *corpus tendōque* supīnās
ad caelum cum vōce manūs et mūnera lībō
intemerāta focīs. Perfectō *laetus honōre*
Anchīsēn faciō certum *remque* ordine pandō.
Agnōvit prōlem ambiguam *geminōsque parentīs,*
sēque novō veterum dēceptum errōre *locōrum.*
Tum memorat: *'Nāte,* Īliacīs exercite *fātīs,*

---

agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
ambiguus, a, um doubtful, ambiguous
attonitus, a, um thunderstruck, astounded†
Ausonius, a, um Italian, Ausonian
certus, a, um determined, sure, fixed, reliable; **certum facere** inform*
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
cōram face to face, before the face
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
Corythus, ī *m.* a city of northern Italy, Cortona†
dēcipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus deceive†
Dictaeus, a, um Dictean, of Dicte, a Cretan mountain†
dubitō (1) waver, doubt, hesitate†
error, ōris *m.* mistake, wandering
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, harass*
focus, ī *m.* hearth, fireplace, home
gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
intemerātus, a, um pure, undefiled
lībō (1) taste, pour (as a libation)
longaevus, a, um long-lived, aged
mānō (1) flow, drip, ooze (out)
memorō (1) (re)call, relate, recount, say*
negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
ordō, inis *m.* order, arrangement, array*
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, open, reveal*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus accomplish, execute, finish, perfect†
praesēns, entis present, at hand
prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
requīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus (re)seek
sopor, ōris *m.* slumber, sleep
strāta, ōrum *n.* bed; pavement
sūdor, ōris *m.* sweat, perspiration
supīnus, a, um supine, upturned†
vēlō (1) cover, veil, envelop, wrap (up)
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
vīsum, ī *n.* sight, appearance, vision†
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

daughter of Teucer or Teucrus (l. 108), from whom he inherited the kingdom of Troy. Iasius emigrated to Samothrace. **pater**: a purely honorary title here. **ā quō principe (Dardanō ortum est) nostrum genus.**

169. longaevō parentī (tuō): Anchises.

170. refer: imp. **(Anchīsēs) requīrat**: vol. (jussive) subj. or indir. command; App. 254, 390, *b*.

172–191. Aeneas reports his vision to Anchises, and the Trojans set sail happy at the prospect of soon ending their wanderings.

172. (ego) attonitus.

173. vultūs (deōrum).

175. corpore: abl. of separation; App. 340.

176–177. supīnās manūs: the attitude of prayer; compare the note on **palmās**, I, 93. **mūnera**: *offerings* of wine.

178. focīs: *upon the hearth*, which served as the altar of the penates; dat. of direction; App. 306.

180. ambiguam prōlem geminōsque parentīs: i.e., Teucer in Crete and Dardanus in Italy.

181. dēceptum (esse). locōrum: obj. gen.; App. 284. **novō veterum errōre locōrum**: interlocked order; App. 442.

182. Nāte, exercite: vocatives.

sōla mihī tālīs cāsūs Cassandra canēbat.
Nunc repetō *haec generī* portendere dēbita *nostrō*
et saepe Hesperiam, saepe Ītala *rēgna vocāre.*
Sed quis ad Hesperiae *ventūrōs lītora Teucrōs*
crēderet? *Aut quem tum vātēs* Cassandra *movēret?*
Cēdāmus Phoebō *et* monitī meliōra *sequāmur.'*
Sīc ait, et cūnctī dictō pārēmus ovantēs.
Hanc quoque dēserimus *sēdem* paucīsque *relictīs*
vēla damus vastumque cavā trabe currimus *aequor.*
Postquam altum *tenuēre* ratēs *nec jam* amplius *ūllae*
appārent *terrae, caelum* undique *et* undique pontus,
tum mihi caeruleus suprā *caput* astitit imber
noctem hiememque *ferēns, et* inhorruit *unda* tenebrīs.
Continuō *ventī volvunt mare magnaque surgunt*
aequora, dispersī jactāmur gurgite *vastō;*

---

altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
amplius *comp. adv.* more, farther
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (by, near)*
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue), gloomy*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), prophesy, chant, proclaim*
Cassandra, ae *f.* daughter of Priam, a prophetess whom none believed
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, fall to*
continuō immediately, at once†
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus run (over)
dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus owe, be due, be destined
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, abandon*
dispergō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, disperse†
gurges, itis *m.* whirl(pool, wind), flood*
Hesperia, ae *f.* Italy, Westland
hiems, emis *f.* storm, winter*
imber, bris *m.* rain, storm, flood, water
inhorreō, ēre, uī shiver, bristle†
Ītalus, a, um Italian, of Italy
jactō (1) toss (about), buffet, hurl, fling*
melior, ius better, superior, preferable
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn (of)
ovō (1) triumph, rejoice, exult†
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)
paucus, a, um small, few, meager*
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
pontus, ī *m.* sea; waves*
portendō, ere, ī, ntus foreshadow, stretch forth†
postquam after (that), when*
quoque also, even, too, likewise*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus reseek, recall, repeat
saepe often, frequently*
suprā over, above (*acc.*)†
tenebrae, ārum *f.* darkness, gloom
trabs (trabēs), **trabis** *f.* beam, timber, ship
undique on (from) all sides*

---

184. repetō (Cassandram) portendere (= **portendisse**). See the note on II, 247, for Cassandra's prophecies. **dēbita:** (*as*) *due.*

185. (Cassandram) saepe Hesperiam (vocāre), saepe Itala rēgna vocāre. vocāre: *spoke of, mentioned.*

186–187. crēderet, movēret: deliberative subjunctives; App. 348. **vātēs:** (*as*) *a seer.*

188. Cēdāmus: vol. subj.; App. 254.

189. dictō: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

190. paucīs relictīs: to account for the legend that Cretan Pergamum was founded by Trojans. See l. 133.

191. vēla (ventīs) damus.

192–218. Soon after leaving Crete a violent storm drives the Trojans out of their course to the Strophades, some small islands infested by Harpies.

192. tenuēre = **tenuērunt.**

193. (et postquam) caelum (appāret).

195. tenebrīs: abl. of manner or means; App. 328, 331.

196. ventī volvunt mare magna: double alliteration of **v v** and **m m.**

197. (in) gurgite.

involvēre *diem* nimbī *et nox* ūmida *caelum*
abstulit, ingeminant abruptīs nūbibus *ignēs*.
Excutimur *cursū et* caecīs *errāmus in undīs*.
Ipse diem noctemque negat discernere *caelō*
nec meminisse *viae mediā* Palinūrus *in undā*.
Trīs adeō incertōs caecā cālīgine sōlēs
errāmus pelagō, totidem sine *sīdere noctēs*.
Quārtō *terra diē prīmum sē* attollere *tandem*
vīsa, aperīre *procul montīs ac volvere* fūmum.
Vēla cadunt, *rēmīs* īnsurgimus; *haud* mora, nautae
adnixī torquent spūmās *et* caerula verrunt.
Servātum ex undīs Strophadum *mē lītora prīmum*
excipiunt. Strophades Grajō *stant nōmine dictae*
īnsulae Īoniō *in magnō, quās* dīra Celaenō

---

abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break off
adeō to such an extent, indeed
adnītor, ī, sus (nixus) lean upon, strive
aperiō, īre, uī, rtus open (out)*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away, rob†
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue), gloomy*
cālīgō, inis *f.* fog, darkness, gloom†
Celaenō, ūs *f.* a harpy†
dīrus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*
discernō, ere, crēvī, crētus distinguish, discern†
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, catch
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off, drive from*
fūmus, ī *m.* smoke, vapor, fume
Grajus, a, um Greek*
incertus, a, um indistinguishable, uncertain
ingeminō (1) redouble, increase, repeat
īnsula, ae *f.* island
īnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise (on) (*dat.*)†
involvō, ere, ī, volūtus envelop, wrap in
Īonius, a, um Ionian (Sea), Greek†
meminī, isse remember, recall (*gen.*)
mora, ae *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
nauta, ae *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner†
negō (1) deny, refuse, say not (no)
nimbus, ī *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot†*
quārtus, a, um fourth†
sine without (*abl.*)*
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
spūma, ae *f.* foam, froth, spray
Strophades, um *f.* islands of the Ionian Sea†
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, toss, sway*
totidem an equal number, so many
trēs, tria three*
ūmidus, a, um wet, damp, moist
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour

---

198. involvēre = involvērunt.

201. Ipse Palinūrus: *the master* (*pilot*). **(sē) discernere (in) caelō.**

202. viae: gen. with **meminisse**; App. 288. **nec meminisse** = et (negat sē) meminisse: inf. of indir. statement; App. 263.

203. Trīs incertōs sōlēs (= diēs): it was so dark that it was uncertain whether day or night prevailed; acc. of duration of time; App. 314. **caecā cālīgine:** abl. of cause with **incertōs**; App. 332.

204. (in) pelagō: or abl. of the route; App. 338. **totidem noctēs (errāmus).**

205–206. terra vīsa (est) sē attollere, aperīre, ac volvere. volvere fumum: *to send up wreaths of smoke.*

207. Vēla cadunt: on nearing the shore, the ancients furled the sails of their boats and used the oars. **rēmīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **mora (est).**

208. caerul(e)a (aequora).

210. dictae = vocātae. **stant** = sunt, but more picturesque.

211–213. īnsulae: with the final diphthong shortened before the initial vowel of the following word. This is called *semi-hiatus;* App. 400. **Īoniō (marī). Phīnēia domus:** to punish Phineus for his crimes, Jupiter blinded him and sent the Harpies, which defiled his food when he attempted to eat. Two

Harpyiaeque colunt *aliae*, Phīnēia postquam
clausa *domus* mēnsāsque metū līquēre priōrēs.
Trīstius haud illīs mōnstrum, *nec* saevior *ūlla*
pestis *et īra deum* Stygiīs *sēsē* extulit *undīs*.
Virgineī volucrum vultūs, foedissima ventris
prōluviēs uncaeque *manūs et* pallida semper
ōra famē.
Hūc ubi dēlātī *portūs* intrāvimus, ecce
laeta boum passim *campīs* armenta *vidēmus*
caprigenumque pecus *nūllō* custōde *per* herbās.
Inruimus *ferrō et dīvōs ipsumque vocāmus*
in partem praedamque *Jovem; tum lītore* curvō
exstruimusque torōs dapibusque epulāmur opīmīs.

---

armentum, ī *n.* herd, drove (of cattle)
bōs, bovis *m.* (*f.*) ox, bull, cow
caprigenus, a, um goat(-born)†
claudō, ere, ī, sus shut (in), (in)close*
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit*
curvus, a, um bent, curved, winding*
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), keeper*
daps, is *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring down, convey
ecce see! look! behold!*
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry (out), raise*
epulor, ārī, ātus feast, banquet (*abl.*)†
exstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build (up), pile†
famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed
foedus, a, um foul, filthy, loathsome†
Harpyia, ae *f.* harpy, a ravenous monster with the body of a bird and the face of a woman†
herba, ae *f.* grass, herb(age), sward*
inruō, ere, uī fall (on), rush on
intrō (1) enter, penetrate†
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
mōnstrum, ī *n.* portent, monster, prodigy*
opīmus, a, um rich, sumptuous, fertile
pallidus, a, um pale, pallid, wan
passim everywhere, all about*
pecus, oris *n.* herd, flock, drove*
pestis, is *f.* plague, pestilence, curse
Phīnēius, a, um of Phineus, king of Thrace, blinded by the gods and tormented by the harpies for his crimes†
postquam after (that), when*
praeda, ae *f.* booty, plunder, spoils
prior, ius former, previous, prior*
prōluviēs, ēī *f.* overflow, excrement†
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
semper always, ever*
Stygius, a, um Stygian, infernal, of the River Styx in Hades†*
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*
uncus, a, um curved, hooked, bent
venter, tris *m.* belly, maw
virgineus, a, um of a girl, maidenly; pure
volucris, is *f.* bird, fowl†
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

of the Argonauts, Zetes and Calais, finally chased the Harpies away, and they then took up their abode in the Strophades. **Harpyiae**: yi form a diphthong, pronounced *we*.

213. clausa (est). **metū**: abl. of cause; App. 332. **līquēre** = līquērunt.

214. illīs: abl. with comparative; App. 327. **mōnstrum (sē extulit)**.

215. de(ōr)um.

216. vultūs (erant).

218. famē: with long **e**, as though of the fifth declension; abl. of cause.

219–244. The Harpies rudely disturb the sacrificial banquet of the Trojans but are finally beaten off.

221. caprigenum pecus: *flock of goats*. **nūllō custōde**: *with no one to guard them;* abl. abs.; App. 343.

222–223. ferrō: abl. of means. **dīvōs vocāmus**: i.e., a portion of the booty was promised to the gods as a sacrifice, on condition that they would help the Trojans secure it. (in) **lītore**.

224. torōs: couches of turf on which

At subitae horrificō lāpsū *de montibus adsunt*
Harpyiae *et magnīs* quatiunt clangōribus ālās,
dīripiunt*que* dapēs contāctū*que omnia* foedant
immundō; *tum vōx* taetrum dīra *inter* odōrem.
Rūrsum *in* sēcessū *longō sub* rūpe cavātā
[arboribus clausā *circum atque* horrentibus *umbrīs*]
īnstruimus mēnsās *ārīsque* repōnimus *ignem;*
rūrsum *ex* dīversō *caelī* caecīs*que* latebrīs
turba sonāns praedam *pedibus* circumvolat uncīs,
polluit *ōre* dapēs. *Sociīs tunc arma* capessant
ēdīcō, *et* dīrā *bellum cum gente* gerendum.
Haud secus *ac jussī faciunt* tēctōs*que per* herbam
dispōnunt ēnsīs *et* scūta latentia condunt.
Ergō *ubi* dēlāpsae sonitum *per* curva *dedēre*

āla, ae *f.* wing*
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree, wood(s)*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
capessō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus seize (eagerly)
cavō (1) hollow (out)
circumvolō (1) fly around
clangor, ōris *m.* noise, whir, clang
claudō, ere, sī, sus shut (in), (in)close*
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, found, place; hide*
contāctus, ūs *m.* contact, touch†
curvus, a, um bent, curved, winding*
daps, is *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide down, slip (down)
dīripiō, ere, uī, reptus tear apart, plunder
dīrus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus arrange, distribute†
dīversus, a, um separate(d), different*
ēdīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus proclaim, order†
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
ergō therefore, hence, consequently*
foedō (1) defile, pollute, befoul
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus bear, wage*
Harpyia, ae *f.* harpy, a ravenous monster with the face of a woman and the body of a bird
herba, ae *f.* grass, herb(age), sward*
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder (at)*
horrificus, a, um horrible, horrifying†
immundus, a, um foul, filthy, dirty†
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build (up), equip, array, heap up, instruct
lāpsus, ūs *m.* gliding, slip, swoop
latebra, ae *f.* hiding place, retreat, lair
latēns, entis hiding, hidden, secret
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
odor, ōris *m.* odor, scent, stench
polluō, ere, uī, ūtus defile, pollute, profane
praeda, ae *f.* booty, plunder, spoils
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter
repōnō, ere, posuī, positus replace*
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
scūtum, ī *n.* shield
sēcessus, ūs *m.* retreat, recess, nook
secus otherwise, differently
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
taeter, tra, trum foul, filthy, loathsome†
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus hide, cover*
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, throng, uproar
uncus, a, um curved, bent, hooked

---

to recline at the banquet. dapibus: abl. with **epulāmur = vēscimur**; App. 342; a variety of the abl. of means.

226. magnīs clangōribus; *with a terrible din* of their wings.

228. vōx dīra (est).

229–230. Almost the same as I, 310–311.

232. dīversō = dīversā parte.

233. pedibus: abl. of means. **turba (Harpyiārum).**

234. (nostrās) dapēs. (ut) capessant: a subst. vol. clause, depending on **ēdīcō**; App. 360.

235. gerendum (esse): indir. statement, depending on **ēdīcō**; App. 263, 360, *a.* **dīrā gente (Harpyiārum).**

236–237. ac: *than.* **tēctōs, latentia:** proleptic; equivalent to **ita dispōnunt ēnsīs ut tegantur et ita condunt scūta ut lateant**; App. 440.

238. dedēre = dedērunt.

lītora, dat signum speculā Mīsēnus *ab altā*
aere cavō. Invādunt *sociī et nova* proelia temptant,
obscēnās *pelagī ferrō* foedāre volucrīs.
Sed neque vim plūmīs *ūllam nec* vulnera tergō
accipiunt, celerīque *fugā sub sīdera lāpsae*
sēmēsam praedam *et* vestīgia foeda *relinquunt*.
Ūna in praecelsā cōnsēdit rūpe Celaenō,
īnfēlīx vātēs, rumpit*que hanc pectore vōcem:*
'*Bellum* etiam prō caede boum strātīs*que* juvencīs,
Lāomedontiadae, *bellumne* īnferre *parātis*
et patriō Harpyiās īnsōntīs pellere *rēgnō?*
Accipite ergō *animīs atque haec mea* fīgite *dicta*,
quae Phoebō *pater* omnipotēns, *mihi* Phoebus Apollō
praedīxit, *vōbīs* Furiārum *ego maxima* pandō.

aes, aeris *n.* bronze (utensil, trumpet)*
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
bōs, bovis *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
Celaenō, ūs *f.* a harpy
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, speedy*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit, settle*
ergō therefore, hence, consequently*
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, (im)print*
foedō (1) defile, mangle, disfigure
foedus, a, um filthy, foul, loathsome
Furiae, ārum *f.* Furies, avenging spirits
Harpyia, ae *f.* harpy, a foul and ravenous monster with the body of a bird and the face of a woman
īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus bring to, offer, wage
īnsōns, ontis innocent, guiltless
invādō, ere, sī, sus go (into), attack
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, steer, ox†*
Lāomedontiadēs, ae *m.* descendant of Laomedon; Trojan†
Mīsēnus, ī *m.* Trojan trumpeter†
obscēnus, a, um disgusting, filthy, foul†
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
pandō, ere, ī, passus open (up), disclose*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive (away), strike
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
plūma, ae *f.* feather, plume†
praecelsus, a, um lofty, high†
praeda, ae *f.* booty, plunder, spoils
praedīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus foretell, predict†
prō in behalf of, (in return) for (*abl.*)*
proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, conflict, fray
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth), utter*
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
sēmēsus, a, um half-eaten†
signum, ī *n.* sign(al), mark, token*
specula, ae *f.* lookout, height, watch-tower†
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay (low, down), strew, spread, fell*
temptō (1) try, seek, test, examine*
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide, rear*
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace*
volucris, is *f.* bird, fowl
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

240. aere cavō = tubā, *with the trumpet.* nova proelia: *strange (unusual) combats.*

241. foedāre: in loose apposition with proelia.

242. (in) plūmīs, (in) tergō: the weapons of the Trojans glance from the feathers and the backs of the Harpies.

243. sub: *up toward.*

245–258. In revenge, Celaeno, leader of the Harpies, gives a horrifying oracle.

246. rumpit vōcem: *breaks forth (with) this cry;* vōcem is cognate acc.; App. 313. See II, 129, and note. (ex) pectore.

247. Bellum: emphatic by position and by rhetorical repetition; App. 413. prō (*in return for*) caede bo(v)um: sarcastic.

248. Lāomedontiadae: in derision, as Laomedon, the legendary ancestor of the Trojans, was a famous perjurer and cheat. See II, 610, and note. īnferre (nōbīs).

249. (ē) patriō rēgnō (nostrō). Harpyiās: yi form a diphthong pronounced *we.*

250–251. (in) animīs. quae Phoebō pater omnipotēns (praedīxit). pater omnipotēns: Jupiter.

252. (quae) ego maxima (nātū) Furiā-

Ītaliam cursū petitis ventīsque vocātīs:
ībitis Ītaliam portūsque intrāre licēbit.
Sed nōn ante datam cingētis *moenībus urbem*
quam *vōs* dīra famēs *nostraeque* injūria caedis
ambēsās subigat mālīs absūmere mēnsās.'
Dīxit, et in silvam pennīs ablāta refūgit.
At sociīs subitā gelidus formīdine *sanguis*
dēriguit: cecidēre *animī, nec jam* amplius *armīs,*
sed vōtīs precibus*que jubent* exposcere pācem,
sīve *deae* seu *sint* dīrae obscēnae*que* volucrēs.
Et pater Anchīsēs passīs *dē lītore* palmīs
nūmina magna vocat meritōs*que* indīcit *honōrēs:*
'*Dī*, prohibēte minās; *dī, tālem* āvertite *cāsum*
et placidī *servāte piōs.*' *Tum lītore* fūnem

---

absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus consume, destroy
ambedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus eat, gnaw around†
amplius more (abundantly)
auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus carry off, remove, bear away
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus avert, turn away*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird(le)*
dērigēscō, ere, riguī stiffen, freeze†
dīrus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*
exposcō, ere, poposcī demand, beg, ask†
famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed
formīdō, inis *f.* fear, fright, terror, dread
fūnis, is *m.* rope, cable, line, cord
gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus proclaim
injūria, ae *f.* wrong, injury, injustice
intrō (1) enter, penetrate
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is allowed*
māla, ae *f.* jaw, cheek-bone†
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, merit, earn*
minae, ārum *f.* threat, menace, danger†
obscēnus, a, um filthy, disgusting
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand*
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread (open), reveal*
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, indulgence, favor
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather†
placidus, a, um peaceful, gracious, calm*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty*
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus forbid, hinder
quam than, how, as†
refugiō, ere, fūgī flee (back), retire
sīve, seu whether, or (if)
subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus compel, force under
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
volucris, is *f.* bird, fowl
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

---

rum pandō: a poetic confusion of the Furies and Harpies, which were supposed to be distinct.

253–254. cursū: abl. of manner; App. 328. **ventīs vocātīs**: alliteration. **Ītaliam, Ītaliam**: intentionally impressive iteration. (ad) **Ītaliam**. (**vōbīs**) **licēbit**.

255. ante . . . quam: *sooner . . . than, until*. **datam** (ā **fātīs**).

256. famēs: a punishment to fit the crime. **nostrae injūria caedis**: *the wrong of our (attempted slaughter) = the wrong you have done by trying to slay us*, appositional gen.; App. 281. **nostrae**: equivalent to an obj. gen.; App. 284.

257. subigat: with **ante quam**; App. 376, *a*. **ambēsās mēnsās (vestrās)**: this dreadful prophecy is fulfilled in a harmless manner. The Trojans after arriving in Italy use broad cakes as plates on which to spread their food. After consuming the layer of food, they finally eat these cakes, thus devouring their "tables" and fulfilling the prophecy. See VII, 112–129.

259–288. In great alarm the Trojans depart and soon reach Actium where they celebrate games in honor of Apollo, and then remain for the winter.

259. sociīs: dat. of reference; App. 301.

260. cecidēre = **cecidērunt**.

261. jubent (**mē**).

262. sīve (illae Harpyiae) sint deae: subj. in informal indir. disc.; App. 390, *a*.

263. passīs palmīs: the usual attitude of prayer. See I, 93, and note.

266. (nōs) piōs. fūnem: collective.

dēripere excussōsque *jubet* laxāre rudentīs.
Tendunt vēla Notī: *fugimus* spūmantibus *undīs*
quā *cursum ventusque* gubernātor*que vocābat.*
Jam mediō appāret *flūctū* nemorōsa Zacynthos
Dūlichium*que* Samē*que et* Nēritos ardua *saxīs.*
Effugimus scopulōs Ithacae, Lāertia *rēgna,*
et terram altrīcem saevī exsecrāmur Ulixī.
Mox *et* Leucātae nimbōsa cacūmina *montis*
et formīdātus nautīs aperītur Apollō.
Hunc petimus fessī et parvae succēdimus *urbī;*
ancora *dē* prōrā jacitur, *stant lītore puppēs.*
Ergō īnspērātā *tandem tellūre* potītī
lūstrāmur*que Jovī* vōtīs*que* incendimus *ārās,*
Actia*que* Īliacīs celebrāmus *lītora* lūdīs.

Actius, a, um of Actium, a promontory of western Greece†
altrix, īcis *f.* nurse, nourisher†
ancora, ae *f.* anchor
aperiō, īre, uī, rtus open (out), loom*
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
arduus, a, um high, steep, difficult
cacūmen, inis *n.* summit, top, peak†
celebrō (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize
dēripiō, ere, uī, reptus tear away
Dūlichium, (i)ī *n.* island of the Ionian Sea†
effugiō, ere, fūgī escape (from), flee
ergō therefore, then, thence, consequently*
excutiō, ere, ī, cussus shake out, loose(n), unfold*
exsecror, ārī, ātus curse, execrate, revile†
formīdō (1) fear, dread, be afraid†
gubernātor, ōris *m.* helmsman, pilot†
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian, of Ilium*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, burn*
īnspērātus, a, um unhoped for†
Ithaca, ae *f.* island of the Ionian Sea, kingdom of Ulysses, wily Greek leader†
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw, hurl†
Lāertius, a, um of Laërtes, father of Ulysses†
laxō (1) loose(n), relax, open, free
Leucāta, ae *f.* promontory of Leucas in western Greece†
lūdus, ī *m.* play, game, sport, contest†
lūstrō (1) purify, traverse, survey*
mox presently, soon†
nauta, ae *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
nemorōsus, a, um wooded, woody†
Nēritos, ī *f.* island of the Ionian Sea†
nimbōsus, a, um cloudy, stormy
Notus, ī *m.* (south) wind
parvus, a, um small, little*
potior, īrī, itus gain, possess (*abl.*)
prōra, ae *f.* prow
quā where(by), in any (some) way
rudēns, entis *m.* rope, cable, sheet
saevus, a, um cruel, fierce, stern*
Samē, ēs *f.* island of the Ionian Sea†
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, crag, cliff*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach (*dat.*)
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, wily Greek leader*
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
Zacynthus (os), ī *f.* island of the Ionian Sea†

268. undīs: abl. of the route; App. 338.

270. (in) **flūctū.**

271. saxīs: abl. of cause. **ardua saxīs**: *with its lofty crags.*

273. Ulixī: obj. gen.; App. 284.

275. nautīs: dat. of agent or reference; App. 302, 301. **Apollō**: i.e., the temple of Apollo at Actium, *dreaded by sailors* on account of the dangers to navigation in that region.

276. Hunc (Apollinem) = hoc templum Apollinis. urbī: dat. with compound. Actium became famous as the scene of the great naval victory of Augustus over Antony and Cleopatra in 31 B.C.

277. (in) **lītore.**

278. tellūre: abl. with **potior**; App. 342.

279. vōtīs: abl. of means.

280. Īliacīs lūdīs: abl. of means. A festival had been celebrated here in an-

Exercent *patriās* oleō *lābente* palaestrās
nūdātī *sociī:* juvat ēvāsisse tot *urbēs*
Argolicās *mediōsque fugam tenuisse per* hostīs.
Intereā *magnum* sōl circumvolvitur annum
et glaciālis hiems Aquilōnibus asperat *undās:*
aere cavō clipeum, *magnī* gestāmen Abantis,
postibus adversīs fīgō *et rem* carmine signō:
AENĒĀS HAEC DĒ DANAĪS VICTŌRIBUS ARMA.
Linquere *tum portūs jubeō et* cōnsīdere trānstrīs.
Certātim *sociī* feriunt *mare et aequora* verrunt.
Prōtinus āeriās Phaeācum abscondimus *arcēs*
lītoraque Ēpīrī legimus *portūque subīmus*

Abās, antis *m.* king of Argos†
abscondō, ere, (di)dī, ditus hide; see disappear†
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
āerius, a, um airy, lofty, towering†
aes, aeris *n.* bronze (implement)*
annus, ī *m.* year, circuit; season*
Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
asperō (1) roughen†
carmen, inis *n.* song, verse, poem†
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
certātim in rivalry, emulously, eagerly
circumvolvō, ere, volūtus roll around†
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down), settle*
Ēpīrus, ī *f.* a district of northwestern Greece†
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus go forth, escape (from)
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus practice, drive, engage in, harass*
feriō, īre strike, smite, kill
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fasten, fix (im)print*
gestāmen, inis *n.* equipment, accoutrement†
glaciālis, e icy, cold†
hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm*
hostis, is *m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger*
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus gather, choose, pass (by), skirt*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
nūdō (1) bare, strip, expose, uncover
oleum, ī *n.* oil†
palaestra, ae *f.* wrestling (place, bout)†
Phaeāces, um *m.* Phaeacians, a mythical people off the western coast of Greece†
postis, is *m.* column, post, portal, door
prōtinus immediately, continuously
signō (1) sign, mark, designate
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
tot so many, as many*
trānstrum, ī *n.* cross bench, rowers' bench, thwart†
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour

---

cient times and was renewed by Augustus in honor of his victory at Actium in 31 B.C. Vergil assigns the original foundation of the festival and games to Aeneas, tc add to their renown and to bestow a bit of delicate flattery on Augustus.

281. oleō lābente: the ancient athletes, especially wrestlers, oiled themselves.

282. nūdātī: ancient athletes wore no clothing while playing their games. **juvat (nōs):** *we rejoice.*

284. annum: obj. of **circum** in **circumvolvitur**, or cognate acc. of the middle verb; App. 308, 309, 313.

286. aere cavō: abl. of quality denoting material; App. 330, 324.

287. (in) postibus adversīs: *on the entrance pillars* (of the temple). **carmine:** such poetical inscriptions were common.

288. *Aenēās* (dedit Apollinī) *Haec Arma* (tracta) *Dē Danaīs Victōribus.* **Victōribus:** *victorious*, but not wholly so, as Aeneas's inscription means to show.

289–299. They land in Epirus, now under the rule of Trojan Helenus and Andromache, after the death of Pyrrhus.

289. (in) trānstrīs.

292. portū: dat. with compound.

Chāoniō *et* celsam Būthrōtī accēdimus *urbem*.
Hīc incrēdibilis *rērum fāma* occupat aurīs,
Prīamidēn Helenum Grajās rēgnāre *per urbīs*
conjugiō Aeacidae Pyrrhī scēptrīs*que* potītum,
et patriō Andromachēn iterum cessisse marītō.
Obstipuī mīrō*que* incēnsum *pectus amōre*
compellāre *virum et cāsūs* cognōscere *tantōs*.
Prōgredior *portū classīs et lītora* linquēns,
sollemnīs *cum forte* dapēs *et trīstia dōna*
ante urbem in lūcō falsī Simoëntis *ad undam*
lībābat cinerī Andromachē mānīs*que vocābat*
Hectoreum *ad* tumulum, viridī *quem* caespite inānem

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, reach
Aeacidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Aeacus, grandfather of Achilles
Andromachē, ēs *f.* wife of Hector
auris, is *f.* ear*
Būthrōtum, ī *n.* city of Epirus†
caespes, itis *m.* turf, sod†
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, retire, fall to*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
Chāonius, a, um Chaonian, of Chaonia, a district of northwestern Greece†
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus learn
compellō (1) address, speak to, accost
conjugium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, wife, husband
daps, is *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
falsus, a, um false, pretended, mock, counterfeit
Grajus, a, um Greek*
Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan hero
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam†
inānis, e empty, vain, useless*
incendō, ere, ī, cēnsus kindle, burn*
incrēdibilis, e unbelievable, incredible†
iterum again, a second time, anew*
lībō (1) pour out, offer (as a libation)
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead*
marītus, ī *m.* husband†
mīrus, a, um wonderful, marvelous
obstipēscō, ere, stipuī be amazed, stand agape*
occupō (1) possess; surprise; occupy†
potior, īrī, ītus gain, possess (*abl.*)
Prīamidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Priam†
prōgredior, ī, gressus advance†
Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
rēgnō (1) reign, rule, govern, sway
scēptrum, ī *n.* scepter, (royal) power
Simoïs, entis *m.* river near Troy
sollemnis, e annual, solemn, customary
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

294. (nōstrās) aurīs.

295. rēgnāre: indir. statement depending on the idea of saying implied in **fāma**; App. 390, 263.

296. conjugiō (=conjuge=Andromachē) **scēptrīsque:** ablatives with the verb **potior**; App. 342. Andromache, the ill-fated wife of Hector, had been allotted in the distribution of the booty to Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus), son of Achilles and descendant of Aeacus. **scēptrīs:** poetic plural; App. 243.

297. patriō: i.e., Trojan.

298–299. amōre: abl. of means. **incēnsum (est) pectus (meum). amōre compellāre:** *desire to speak to.* Cf. **amor cognōscere**, II, 10, and see App. 264.

300–343. The pathetic meeting of Aeneas with Andromache at the empty tomb of Hector.

300. (ā) **portū.**

301. dapēs, dōna: food offerings to the dead. Such offerings usually consisted of wine, milk, oil, honey, and sometimes of more solid foods, such as eggs and beans.

302. falsī Simoëntis: i.e., a Simoïs named after the one at Troy.

303. cinerī: i.e., of Hector. **mānīs vocābat:** to the sacrificial meal.

304. tumulum inānem: an empty tomb erected here in honor of Hector, whose ashes had been buried at Troy. Such monuments, common in antiquity, were called *cenotaphs*. **caespite:** abl. of material; App. 324.

et geminās, causam *lacrimīs,* sacrāverat *ārās.*
Ut mē cōnspexit *venientem et* Trōia *circum*
arma āmēns *vīdit, magnīs* exterrita mōnstrīs
dēriguit vīsū *in mediō,* calor ossa *relīquit;*
lābitur et longō vix tandem tempore fātur:
'Vērane *tē* faciēs, vērus *mihi* nuntius adfers,
nāte deā? Vīvisne? *Aut, sī lūx* alma recessit,
Hector *ubi est?' Dīxit, lacrimāsque* effūdit *et omnem*
implēvit *clāmōre locum. Vix* pauca *furentī*
subjiciō *et* rārīs turbātus *vōcibus* hīscō:
'Vīvō equidem *vītamque* extrēma *per omnia dūcō;*
nē dubitā, *nam* vēra *vidēs.*
Heu! quis tē cāsus dējectam *conjuge tantō*
excipit, *aut quae* digna satis *fortūna* revīsit,
Hectoris Andromachē? Pyrrhīn cōnūbia *servās?'*

---

adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring to, present†
almus, a, um kind(ly), nourishing
āmēns, entis crazy, frantic, distracted
Andromachē, ēs *f.* wife of Hector
calor, ōris *m.* heat, warmth, glow†
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* marriage, wedlock
dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast down†
dērigēscō, ere, riguī stiffen, freeze
dignus, a, um worthy (of), suitable (*abl.*)
dubitō (1) doubt, hesitate, waver
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, shed*
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, catch
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, startle†
extrēma, ōrum *n.* extremity, death, end*
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, form*
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader*
hīscō, ere gape, falter, stammer†
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
mōnstrum, ī *m.* prodigy, omen, marvel*
nuntius, (i)ī *m.* messenger, message
os, ossis *n.* bone*
paucus, a, um small, few, scanty*
Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
rārus, a, um rare, disjointed, broken
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, recede, depart
revīsō, ere revisit, see again
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place beneath, interpose
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
turbō (1) disturb, trouble, agitate*
vērus, a, um true, real, genuine*
vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, view, vision, aspect
vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus live, be alive

---

305. causam lacrimīs: *a cause for tears;* dat. of reference; App. 301.

306. Ut (Andromachē) mē cōnspexit. Ut: *as, when.*

307. mōnstrīs: the sudden appearance of Aeneas, whom she thought dead, seems miraculous to her, and she thinks it must be his ghost.

308. vīsū in mediō: as she gazed; App. 246.

309. longō tempore = post longum tempus; App. 322.

310. faciēs, nuntius: in apposition with the subject of **adfers,** (*as*) *a true appearance and true messenger, do you present yourself?*

312. Hector ubi est: if Aeneas had come from the land of the shades, he should be accompanied by Hector or at least be able to bring news of him, since Hector was his old friend and comrade. Andromache's first thought is of her beloved Hector.

313. (eī) furentī: *with difficulty do I reply briefly to her in her passionate appeal.*

314. rārīs vōcibus: with broken words, abl. of manner; App. 328.

317. dējectam conjuge tantō: fallen from the high honor of being Hector's wife.

319. Pyrrhīn(e): Andromache had been married, against her will, to her captor Pyrrhus (Neoptolemus), son of Achilles, but he was now dead.

Dējēcit vultum *et* dēmissā *vōce* locūta *est:*
'*Ō* fēlīx *ūna ante aliās* Priamēia virgō,
hostīlem *ad* tumulum *Trojae sub moenibus altīs*
jussa morī, *quae* sortītūs *nōn* pertulit *ūllōs*
nec victōris herī tetigit captīva cubīle!
Nōs patriā incēnsā dīversa *per aequora* vectae
stirpis Achillēae fastūs juvenem*que* superbum
servitiō ēnixae *tulimus; quī* deinde *secūtus*
Lēdaeam Hermionēn Lacedaemoniōs*que* hymenaeōs
mē famulō famulam*que* Helenō trānsmīsit *habendam.*
Ast illum ēreptae magnō flammātus *amōre*
conjugis et scelerum Furiīs agitātus Orestēs

Achillēus, a, um of Achilles, a Greek leader†
agitō (1) drive, harass, pursue, agitate
captīvus, a, um captive, captured
cubīle, is *n.* couch, bed†
deinde then, thereafter, next*
dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast down
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send down, lower*
dīversus, a, um separate(d), different*
ēnītor, ī, sus (nixus) bear, give birth to†
famula, ae *f.* bondwoman, maidservant
famulus, ī *m.* slave, manservant
fastus, ūs *m.* disdain, insolence, pride†
fēlīx, īcis happy, fortunate, blessed*
flammō (1) inflame, fire, kindle†
Furiae, ārum *f.* Furies, avenging spirits
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
Hermionē, ēs *f.* daughter of Helen†
herus, ī *m.* master, owner, lord†
hostīlis, e hostile, of an enemy†
hymenaeus, ī *m.* Hymen, (god of) marriage
incendō, ere, ī, cēnsus kindle, burn*
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
Lacedaemonius, a, um of Lacedaemon (Sparta), a district of southern Greece†
Lēdaeus, a, um of Leda, mother of Helen†
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
Orestēs, is *m.* son of Agamemnon; he killed his mother to avenge the murder of his father, and for this was pursued by the Furies†
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country, home town*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus endure, bear (to the end)
Priamēius, a, um of Priam, king of Troy
scelus, eris *n.* crime, guilt, sin, villainy*
servitium, (i)ī *n.* slavery, bondage
sortītus, ūs *m.* (drawing of) lots, allotment†
stirps, is *f.* stock, lineage, stem, race
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach*
trānsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus transmit, hand over†
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey*
virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, daughter*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

321. Priamēis (= Priamī) virgō: Polyxena, who was sacrificed by the Greeks as an offering at the tomb of Achilles.

323. sortītūs: the captives and other booty were regularly distributed among the victors by lot.

325. nōs = ego: the "editorial we," contrasted with Polyxena; App. 247.

326. stirpis Achillēae: Pyrrhus (Neoptolemus), son of Achilles. **fastūs, juvenem:** objects of tulimus.

327. (in) **servitiō: *as a captive slave.*** **ēnixae:** *having borne (him) children,* a son Molossus according to tradition. **quī = is = Pyrrhus.**

328. Lēdaeam Hermionēn: Hermione, daughter of Helen and granddaughter of Leda. Her home was in Lacedaemon, a district of southern Greece.

329. famulō famulam: the words are intentionally emphasized by being brought together. **mē famulō famulam Helenō:** interlocked order; App. 442. **habendam:** gerundive expressing purpose; App. 268.

330–331. illum: Pyrrhus. **ēreptae conjugis:** obj. gen.; App. 284. Hermione had been betrothed to Orestes, but was later given in marriage to Pyrrhus. **scelerum Furiīs agitātus Orestēs:** on his return from the Trojan war, Agamemnon, father of Orestes, had been murdered by his own wife, Clytaemnestra, and her lover, Aegisthus. To avenge this crime, Orestes killed the guilty pair, but for

excipit incautum *patriāsque* obtruncat *ad ārās.*
Morte Neoptolemī *rēgnōrum* reddita cessit
pars Helenō, *quī* Chāoniōs cognōmine *campōs*
Chāoniam*que omnem* Trojānō *ā* Chāone *dīxit,*
Pergama*que* Īliacam*que* jugīs *hanc* addidit *arcem.*
Sed tibi quī cursum ventī, quae fāta dedēre?
Aut quisnam ignārum *nostrīs deus* appulit *ōrīs?*
Quid puer Ascanius? Superat*ne et* vēscitur *aurā?*
quem tibi jam Troja —
Ecqua tamen *puerō est* āmissae *cūra parentis?*
Ecquid *in antīquam* virtūtem *animōsque* virīlīs
et pater Aenēās et avunculus excitat Hector?'
Tālia fundēbat lacrimāns *longōsque* ciēbat
incassum flētūs, *cum sēsē ā moenibus* hērōs

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive to (*dat.*)
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
avunculus, ī *m.* maternal uncle†
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, fall to*
Chāōn, onis *m.* son of Priam
Chāonia, ae *f.* a region of northwestern Greece†
Chāonius, a, um Chaonian, of Chaonia, a district of northwestern Greece†
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus arouse, excite, produce, stir up*
cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, title
ecquis, qua, quid any(one, at all)†
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, catch
excitō (1) arouse, excite, stir up
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, lamentation, tears
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader*
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
incassum in vain, uselessly†
incautus, a, um heedless, unaware
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament
Neoptolemus, ī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
obtruncō (1) slay, kill, slaughter, butcher
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
quisnam, quaenam, quidnam who (which, what) in the world†
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give (back, duly), cede, return, render*
superō (1) overcome, surmount, survive*
tamen nevertheless, however, but*
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
vēscor, ī feed on, breathe (*abl.*)
virīlis, e manly, heroic, virile†
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manliness, valor, virtue*

murdering his mother he was driven mad by the Furies.

332. **patriās ad ārās:** at an altar raised to Achilles at Delphi.

333. Morte: abl. of time; App. 322.

334. **cognōmine:** abl. of respect; App. 325.

335. **omnem:** for **omne,** attracted to the gender of the predicate noun **Chāoniam,** *called the plains Chaonian and the whole land Chaonia,* from Chaon, a brother of Helenus, who had been accidentally killed by him. **dīxit** = **vocāvit.**

337. **venti (dedērunt). dedēre** = **dedērunt (cursum tibi).**

338. **(tē) ignārum:** *unaware* (that we lived here). **ōrīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

339. **Quid (agit) Ascanius:** *how fares Ascanius?* the usual Roman formula for inquiring of one's health. **surā:** abl. with **vēscor;** App. 342.

340. An incomplete verse and sentence, broken off for the pathetic effect. See the note on I, 534.

341. **āmissae parentis:** Creüsa; Andromache assumes that Creüsa has been killed or captured; **parentis** is obj. gen.; App. 284.

343. **avunculus Hector:** Creüsa was a sister of Hector. **excitat:** does the glory of their achievements rouse him to emulate them?

344–440. Helenus, who is both prophet and king, receives the Trojans hospitably and warns them of their coming dangers on land and sea.

344. **Tālia (dicta).**

Prīamidēs *multīs* Helenus comitantibus adfert,
agnōscit*que suōs laetusque ad līmina dūcit,*
et multum lacrimās verba *inter* singula *fundit.*
Prōcēdō *et* parvam *Trojam* simulāta*que magnīs*
Pergama *et* ārentem Xanthī cognōmine rīvum
agnōscō, Scaeae*que* amplector *līmina* portae.
Nec nōn et Teucrī sociā *simul urbe* fruuntur.
Illōs porticibus *rēx accipiēbat in* amplīs:
aulāī mediō lībābant pōcula Bacchī
impositīs *aurō* dapibus, paterās*que tenēbant.*
Jamque diēs alter*que diēs* prōcessit, *et aurae*
vēla vocant tumidō*que* īnflātur carbasus Austrō:
hīs vātem adgredior *dictīs ac tālia* quaesō:

---

adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring to, present
adgredior, ī, gressus approach, address
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
alter, era, erum another (of two), second*
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold*
amplus, a, um large, spacious, broad, full
ārēns, entis dry parched, arid
aula, ae *f.* hall, court, palace
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
Bacchus, ī *m.* (god of) wine
carbasus, ī *f.* flax, sail†
cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, title
comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort, follow
daps, dapis *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
fruor, ī, frūctus enjoy (*abl.*)†
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place (on)*
īnflō (1) blow in(to), inflate, swell†
lībō (1) pour (as a libation), offer
medium, (i)ī *n.* middle, midst, center
parvus, a, um small, little*
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
pōculum, ī *n.* (drinking) cup, goblet
porta, ae *f.* gate, exit, portal, entrance*
porticus, ūs *m.* colonnade, portico
Prīamidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Priam
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance, pass, proceed
quaesō, ere, sīvī, sītus beg, seek, inquire†
rīvus, ī *m.* stream, rivulet, brook†
Scaeus, a, um Scaean, name of a famous gate in the walls at Troy
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, make like
singulus, a, um separate, single, one by one
socius, a, um allied, associated, friendly
tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling
verbum, ī *n.* word, speech, talk
Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy†

---

347. suōs: *his fellow countrymen* = **nōs. dūcit (nōs).**

348. multum lacrimās fūndit: *weeps copious tears* (*of joy*). **multum:** adverb.

349–350. magnīs (Pergamīs): dat. with **simulāta. parvam, ārentem:** in this reproduction of their old Trojan home, everything is on a much smaller scale than the original; the city itself is **parva** and the river **ārēns** in marked contrast with the lofty Troy and the "deep-eddying" Xanthus in Asia Minor. **Xanthī:** appositive gen. with **cognōmine. cognōmine:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

351. amplector līmina: in joy at the revival of old memories, Aeneas embraces the gateway copied after the great Scaean gate at Troy. Embracing the gate or doorpost was an ancient custom of those who had been away from home a long time.

352. Nec nōn et: *likewise also.* **urbe:** abl. with **fruor;** App. 342.

353. rēx: Helenus. **accipiēbat:** imperf. of repeated action; App. 351, 2; *day after day the king entertained them,* l. 356.

354. aulāī = aulae: an archaic form; App. 34, *b.* Observe that it has three syllables (**au-lā-ī**) whereas **aulae** has only two (**au-lae**). **(in) mediō. Bacchī:** by metonymy for **vīnī,** *wine;* App. 433. **lībābant:** a ceremony regularly performed at each banquet; App. 351, 2.

355. impositīs dapibus: abl. abs.; App. 343. **aurō:** *gold* = golden trays; App. 433; dat. with compound, **impositīs;** App. 298. **paterās tenēbant:** a detail added for the sake of vividness.

356. diēs alterque diēs: *day after day.*

358. vātem: Helenus was a famous seer. **quaesō:** old form of **quaerō.**

'Trojugena, interpres *dīvum, quī nūmina* Phoebī,
quī tripodas, Clariī laurōs, *quī sīdera* sentīs
et volucrum linguās *et* praepetis ōmina pennae,
fāre age (*namque omnis cursum mihi* prospera *dīxit*
relligiō, *et cūnctī* suāsērunt *nūmine dīvī*
Ītaliam petere et terrās temptāre repostās;
sōla novum dictūque nefās Harpyia Celaenō
prōdigium canit *et trīstīs* dēnuntiat *īrās*
obscēnam*que* famem) *quae prīma* perīcula vītō?
Quidve sequēns tantōs possim superāre *labōrēs?*'
Hīc Helenus caesīs *prīmum dē* mōre juvencīs
exōrat pācem *dīvum* vittās*que* resolvit
sacrātī *capitis, mēque ad tua līmina,* Phoebe,
ipse manū multō suspēnsum *nūmine dūcit,*

caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus cut (down), kill
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
Celaenō, ūs *f.* chief harpy
Clarius, a, um Clarian, of Claros, a center of the worship of Apollo†
dēnuntiō (1) announce, foretell, threaten†
exōrō (1) entreat, beg, win, persuade†
famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed
Harpyia, ae *f.* harpy, a foul and ravenous monster with the body of a bird and the face of a woman
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
interpres, pretis *m.* interpreter, agent†
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, ox, steer*
laurus, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel, an evergreen sacred to Apollo
lingua, ae *f.* tongue, language
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, rule, ritual, law*
nefās *n. indecl.* wrong, impiety, sin*
obscēnus, a, um filthy, disgusting, foul
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, portent, sign*
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, grace, repose
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather
perīc(u)lum, ī *n.* peril, danger, risk
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
praepes, etis flying, flyer†
prōdigium, (i)ī *n.* omen, portent†
prosperus, a, um favorable, fortunate†
re(l)ligiō, ōnis *f.* religion, prophecy
repos(i)tus, a, um stored (up), remote
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, open
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive, understand, know
suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus persuade, urge
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
suspēnsus, a, um suspended, anxious
temptō (1) try, seek, test, attempt*
tripūs, podis *m.* tripod, oracle†
Trojugena, ae *m.* Trojan-born†
vītō (1) avoid, shun, dodge, escape
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, wreath*
volucris, is *f.* bird, fowl

359–360. Trojugena, interpres: vocatives. **dīv(ōr)um. quī (sentīs) nūmina Phoebī, quī (sentīs) tripodas, (quī sentīs) laurōs. tripodas, laurōs:** sacred to Apollo. **sīdera sentīs:** as an astrologer.

361. volucrum linguās: ancient seers were supposed to understand and interpret the language and movements of birds and animals.

362. fāre: imp. of for.

363–364. suāsērunt (mē) petere. repos(i)tās: the uncontracted form (˘˘˘–) could not be used in hexameter.

365–366. Harpyia: yi form a diphthong, pronounced *we.* **novum prōdigium. dictū nefās:** *a horror to tell,* **dictū** being the abl. of the supine; App. 271.

367. vītō: for the ind. compare the note on **sequimur,** III, 88, and see App 351, 1, *c*; 348, *a.*

368. Quid sequēns: (*by*) *following what* (*course*). **possim:** conclusion of a future less vivid condition, the condition being implied in **sequēns**; App. 381.

369. caesīs juvencīs: abl. abs.

370. pācem dīvum (Phoebum): two accusatives; App. 316. **vittās resolvit:** in order that he may yield himself completely to the influence of the god, the seer loosens the fillets, which he had worn while sacrificing, and unbinds his garments.

372. (mē) suspēnsum multō nūmine: *deeply moved by the divine presence.*

atque haec deinde canit dīvīnō *ex ōre* sacerdōs:
'*Nāte deā* (*nam tē majōribus īre per* altum
auspiciīs manifesta fidēs, *sīc fāta deum rēx*
sortītur *volvitque* vicēs, *is* vertitur ordō),
pauca *tibi ē multīs, quō* tūtior hospita lūstrēs
aequora et Ausoniō *possīs* cōnsīdere *portū*,
expediam *dictīs:* prohibent *nam* cētera Parcae
scīre Helenum *fārīque* vetat Sāturnia *Jūnō*.
Principiō *Ītaliam, quam tū jam* rēre propinquam
vīcīnōs*que*, ignāre, *parās* invādere *portūs*,
longa procul longīs via dīvidit invia *terrīs*.
Ante et Trīnacriā lentandus *rēmus in undā*
et salis Ausoniī lūstrandum *nāvibus aequor*
īnfernī*que* lacūs Aeaeae*que* īnsula Circae,

Aeaeus, a, um of Aeaea, of Colchis, original home of Circe†
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian†
auspicium, (i)ī *n.* augury, auspice(s)†
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
cēterus, a, um other, rest, remaining
Circē, ēs (ae) *f.* famous enchantress, daughter of the Sun, who settled on an island off the western coast of Italy†
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (on), settle*
deinde then, thereupon, next*
dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus divide, separate
dīvīnus, a, um divine, inspired, sacred
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus disentangle, explain
fidēs, ēī *f.* faith, fidelity, evidence*
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
hospitus, a, um strange; hospitable†
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
īnfernus, a, um of the underworld, infernal†
īnsula, ae *f.* island
invādō, ere, sī, sus go (into), attack
invius, a, um pathless, trackless
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere
lentō (1) bend†
lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify*
manifestus, a, um clear, evident
ordō, inis *m.* arrangement, order, rank*
Parcae, ārum *f.* the Fates
paucus, a, um little, slight, few*
principiō first(ly), in the first place
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus forbid, hinder
propinquus, a, um near, neighboring
reor, rērī, ratus think, suppose, reckon
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
sal, salis *m.* (*n.*) salt, sea, brine
Sāturnius, a, um of Saturn, father of the gods
sciō, īre, īvī, ītus know (how), understand
sortior, īrī, ītus obtain by lot, allot
Trīnacrius, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian
tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
vetō, āre, uī, itus forbid, prevent, hinder
vīcīnus, a, um near, close at hand†
vicis (*gen.; no nom.*) *f.* change, alternation, fortune

374–375. Nāte deā: *goddess-born!* **majōribus auspiciīs:** abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329. **tē īre:** indir. statement with **manifesta fidēs (est),** *it is clearly true;* App. 263.

376. ordō (rērum).

377–379. pauca expediam. quō (= ut eō) **lūstrēs et possīs:** purpose; App. 359. (in) **portū.**

380. Helenum = mē: intentionally impressive use of the third person instead of the first. **vetat** (eum = mē).

381. Ītaliam: the eastern coast of Italy was quite near, but not the part of Italy where Aeneas was fated to settle; this he must reach by a long and circuitous journey. **rēre** = rēris, from reor; App. 204, 4.

381–383. longa via invia dīvidit Ītaliam procul (ā tē) longīs terrīs. (cujus) portūs pāras invādere. Line 383 is an alliterative and jingling verse, to give an oracular effect. Observe the cumulative effect of **longa procul longīs,** to indicate the great distance to be traveled.

384–385. Ante: with **quam** in l. 387. **lentandus (est), lūstrandum (est).**

386. īnfernī lacūs: the region of

quam tūtā *possīs urbem* compōnere *terrā*.
Signa *tibī dīcam, tū* condita *mente tenētō*:
cum tibi sollicitō sēcrētī *ad* flūminis *undam*
lītoreīs *ingēns* inventa *sub* īlicibus sūs
trīgintā *capitum* fētūs ēnixa jacēbit,
alba, solō recubāns, albī *circum* ūbera *nātī*,
is locus urbis erit, requiēs *ea* certa *labōrum*.
Nec tū mēnsārum morsūs horrēsce *futūrōs*:
fāta viam invenient *aderitque vocātus* Apollō.
Hās autem *terrās* Italīque *hanc lītoris ōram*,
proxima *quae nostrī* perfunditur *aequoris* aestū,
effuge; *cūncta* malīs habitantur *moenia* Grajīs.
Hīc et Nāryciī *posuērunt moenia* Locrī,
et Sallentīnōs obsēdit mīlite *campōs*

---

aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
albus, a, um white*
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
autem but, however, moreover*
certus, a, um certain, sure, fixed, reliable*
compōnō, ere, posuī, positus put together, build, compose
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, found; hide*
effugiō, ere, fūgī escape (from), avoid
ēnītor, ī, sus (nixus) bear, give birth (to)
fētus, ūs *m.* young, offspring, brood
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood
Grajus, a, um Greek*
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess
horrēscō, ere, horruī shudder (at), dread
īlex, icis *f.* holm oak†
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus find, come upon
Ītalus, a, um Italian, of Italy
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
lītoreus, a, um of the shore†
Locrius, a, um Locrian, Greek†
malus, a, um bad, wicked, evil*
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
mīles, itis *m.* soldier(y), troops
morsus, ūs *m.* bite, eating, gnawing
Nārycius, a, um of Naryx, a city of Greece†
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus besiege, beset
perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour through, bathe
proximus, a, um next, nearest, closest
quam than, how, as*
recubō (1) lie, recline†
requiēs, ētis (ēī) *f.* rest, repose, respite†
Sallentīnus, a, um Sallentinian, of the Sallentini, an Italian tribe†
sēcrētus, a, um secret, secluded, remote, lonely
signum, ī *n.* sign, token, signal, mark*
sollicitus, a, um anxious, worried†
solum, ī *n.* ground, soil, earth*
sūs, suis *m.* (*f.*) hog, pig, swine
trīgintā thirty
tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*
ūber, eris *n.* udder, bosom, fertility

Avernus in Campania, where one of the entrances to the lower world was reputed to be.

387. possīs: subj. with ante quam; App. 376, *a*. (in) terrā.

388. (haec signa) condita mente tenētō. tenētō: fut. imp. of teneō.

389–390. tibi sollicitō: dat. of agent with inventa, or dat. of reference; App. 302, 301. lītoreīs: *growing on the banks* (of the Tiber).

391. trīgintā capitum: gen. of definition; App. 282. fētūs: obj. of ēnixa.

392. (in) solō = in terrā = humī. albī nātī (jacēbunt): the prophecy is fulfilled in VIII, 82.

393. ea (erit) certa requiēs.

394. horrēsce: imp.

396–398. Hās terrās, hanc ōram effuge: apparently Helenus points toward the nearest parts of Italy, inhabited by Greeks and hence called Magna Graecia, contrasted with the more remote section where Aeneas was to settle. Grajīs: pronounce Grajjīs; App. 6, *b*; dat. of agent; App. 302.

400. mīlite: collective, *soldiery;* abl. of means.

Lyctius Īdomeneus; *hīc illa* ducis Meliboeī
parva Philoctētae subnixa Petēlia mūrō.
Quīn *ubi* trānsmissae *steterint* trāns *aequora classēs*
et positīs ārīs jam vōta *in lītore* solvēs,
purpureō vēlāre comās adopertus amictū,
nē qua inter sānctōs *ignīs in honōre deōrum*
hostīlis faciēs occurrat *et* ōmina turbet.
Hunc socīī mōrem *sacrōrum, hunc ipse tenētō;*
hāc castī *maneant in* religiōne nepōtēs.
Ast ubi dīgressum Siculae *tē* admōverit *ōrae*
ventus, et angustī rārēscent claustra Pelōrī,
laeva *tibī tellūs et longō* laeva *petantur*
aequora circuitū; *dextrum fuge lītus et undās.*

---

admoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move to, bring to (*dat.*)†
adoperiō, īre, uī, rtus cover†
amictus, ūs *m.* veil, wrap, robe
angustus, a, um narrow, strait
castus, a, um pure, chaste, holy†
circuitus, ūs *m.* circuit, detour†
claustrum, ī *n.* barrier, straits, bar
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
dīgredior, ī, gressus separate, depart
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, form*
hostīlis, e hostile, unfavorable
Īdomeneus, eī *m.* Cretan king who settled in Italy
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
Lyctius, a, um Lyctian, of Lyctus, a Cretan city†
Meliboeus, a, um of Meliboea, a city of Thessaly†
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ceremony, ritual*
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus (run to) meet (*dat.*)
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, portent, sign*
parvus, a, um small, little*
Pelōrus (um), ī *m.* (*n.*) northeastern promontory of Sicily†
Petēlia, ae *f.* city of southern Italy founded by Philoctetes†
Philoctētēs, ae *m.* Greek leader of Meliboeus who settled in Italy†
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson
quīn nay even, but that, why not*
rārēscō, ere widen, (grow) thin†
re(l)igiō, ōnis *f.* religion, ritual, sacred custom
sānctus, a, um sacred, holy, revered*
Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily
solvō, ere, ī, solūtūs loose(n), discharge, pay*
subnītor, ī, sus (nixus) rest on, lean on (*dat.* or *abl.*)
trāns across, over, beyond (*acc.*)†
trānsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send across, transmit
turbō (1) disturb, confuse, agitate*
vēlō (1) veil, adorn, wrap, wreathe
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

---

401. Lyctius Īdomeneus: expelled from Crete; see III, 121–123. **illa:** *that renowned.*

402. Petēlia (est). **mūrō:** abl. of means with **subnītor.**

405. **vēlāre:** imp. passive, with middle force; *veil (for yourself) your head;* refers to the old Roman custom of covering the head while praying, to avoid seeing or hearing anything of evil omen (**hostīlis faciēs**); cf. l. 407. **comās:** obj. of **vēlāre;** App. 309, *a.*

408. **Hunc mōrem:** Vergil thus assigns a Trojan origin to this good old Roman custom. **socīī (tenentō). (tū) tenētō:** fut. imp.

410. **ōrae:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

412. **laeva tellūs:** Sicily. **tibī:** dat. of agent; App. 302.

413. **dextrum lītus:** Italy; i.e., instead of rounding the southern point of Italy, passing along the Italian coast through the straits and turning to the north, Aeneas is told to make the larger circuit around Sicily and thus avoid the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis. **fuge:** imp.

Haec loca vī quondam et vastā convulsa ruīnā
(*tantum* aevī longinqua valet mūtāre vetustās)
dissiluisse *ferunt, cum* prōtinus utraque *tellūs*
ūna foret: vēnit mediō *vī* pontus *et undīs*
Hesperium Siculō latus abscidit, *arvaque et urbēs*
lītore dīductās angustō interluit aestū.
Dextrum Scylla latus, laevum implācāta Charybdis
obsidet, *atque īmō* barathrī ter gurgite *vastōs*
sorbet *in* abruptum *flūctūs* rūrsus*que sub aurās*
ērigit alternōs, *et sīdera* verberat *undā*.
At Scyllam caecīs cohibet spēlunca latebrīs
ōra exsertantem *et nāvīs in saxa trahentem*.
Prīma hominis faciēs *et* pulchrō *pectore* virgō

---

abruptum, ī *n.* depth, abyss, bottom†
abscindō, ere, scidī, scissus cut off, tear (off), rend†
aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
aevum, ī *n.* age, life, time, eternity
alternus, a, um alternate, alternating
angustus, a, um narrow, strait
barathrum, ī *n.* abyss, chasm, pit†
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
Charybdis, is *f.* famous whirlpool near Scylla, between Italy and Sicily†
cohibeō, ēre, uī, itus restrain, confine†
convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear (up), shatter, rend
dīdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw apart, separate†
dissiliō, īre, uī leap apart†
ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, erect†
exsertō (1) thrust forth†
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, form*
gurges, itis *m.* whirlpool, gulf, abyss*
Hesperius, a, um Hesperian, western, Italian†
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
implācātus, a, um implacable, insatiable†
interluō, ere flow between, wash between†
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
latebra, ae *f.* hiding place, lair, retreat
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
longinquus, a, um long, distant†
medium, (i)ī *n.* middle, midst, center
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus besiege, beset
pontus, ī *m.* sea; waves*
prōtinus continually, continuously, right on(ward)
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, illustrious, noble*
ruīna, ae *f.* downfall, convulsion
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
Scylla, ae *f.* ravenous sea-monster with the body of a beautiful woman encircled about the waist with dogs or wolves, and with the tail of a fish†
Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily
sorbeō, ēre, uī suck in, swallow (up)†
spēlunca, ae *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
ter thrice, three times*
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), either*
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able
verberō (1) beat, lash, strike, whip†
vetustās, ātis *f.* antiquity, (lapse of) time†
virgō, inis *f.* girl, daughter, maiden*

414–417. ferunt (= dīcunt) haec loca quondam convulsa vī et vastā ruīnā dissiluisse. aevī = temporis. foret: cum concessive; App.379. mediō = in medium: dat. of direction; App. 306. vī: abl. of manner; App. 328. undīs: abl. of means.

418. Hesperium latus: *the western side* (*of Italy*). Siculō (latere): *from the Sicilian* (*side*).

419. lītore: abl. of respect; App. 325; the singular for the plural, referring to the shores on either side of the straits. angustō aestū: *with a narrow tideway.*

420. Scylla (obsidet).

421. (in) gurgite. ter: *three times* (a day).

422. (Charybdis) sorbet.

424–425. Scyllam ōra exsertantem et nāvīs trahentem.

426. Prīma: *in front.* hominis faciēs (est): *her appearance is that of a human.* pectore: abl. of quality; App. 330.

pūbe tenus, postrēma *immānī corpore* pistrīx
delphīnum caudās uterō commissa lupōrum.
Praestat Trīnacriī mētās lūstrāre Pachȳnī
cessantem, *longōs et* circumflectere *cursūs*,
quam semel īnformem *vastō vīdisse sub* antrō
Scyllam *et* caeruleīs canibus resonantia *saxa*.
Praetereā, *sī qua est* Helenō prūdentia *vātī*,
sī qua fidēs, *animum sī* vērīs implet Apollō,
ūnum illud tibi, nāte deā, prōque *omnibus ūnum*
praedīcam *et* repetēns iterum*que* iterum*que* monēbō,
Jūnōnis magnae prīmum prece *nūmen* adōrā,
Jūnōnī cane vōta libēns dominam*que* potentem

adōrō (1) honor, entreat, worship
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
canis, is *m.* (*f.*) dog, hound†
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
cauda, ae *f.* tail†
cessō (1) loiter, linger, delay, stop
circumflectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend around, turn around, double†
committō, ere, mīsī, missus join to(gether)
delphīn, īnis *m.* dolphin, a kind of fish†
domina, ae *f.* lady, mistress, queen
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, trust(worthiness)*
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
īnformis, e shapeless, monstrous†
iterum again, anew, repeatedly*
libēns, entis willing(ly), glad(ly)†
lupus, ī *m.* wolf
lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*
mēta, ae *f.* goal, turning point, limit
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn
Pachȳnus (um), ī *m.* (*n.*) southeastern promontory of Sicily†
pistrīx, īcis *f.* fish-like sea monster†
postrēmus, a, um hindmost, last†
potēns, entis powerful, ruling (*gen.*)*
praedīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus foretell, predict
praestō, āre, stitī, stitus stand before, be superior (better)
praetereā besides, also, in addition*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, vow, entreaty*
prō for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
prūdentia, ae *f.* foresight, discretion†
pūbēs, is *f.* waist, loins; youth*
quam than, how, as†*
repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus reseek, repeat, recall
resonō (1) (re)sound, roar†
Scylla, ae *f.* a sea-monster
semel once (for all)†
tenus up to, down to, as far as (*abl.*)
Trīnacrius, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian
uterus, ī *m.* womb, belly
vērum, ī *n.* truth, right(eousness)
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

427. postrēma (faciēs est): *behind.*

428. caudās: obj. of **commissa** used as a middle; App. 309, *a*. The tails of dolphins are joined to the bodies of wolves. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 650–655.

"The one seemed woman to the waist, and fair,
But ended foul in many a scaly fold
Voluminous and vast, a serpent armed
With mortal sting; about her middle round
A cry of hell-hounds never ceasing barked
With wide Cerberean mouths full loud."

429. mētās: used figuratively to indicate that they should sail around Pachynus as around a turning post in a race course. **(tē) lūstrāre:** subj. of **praestat**; App. 258.

430. cessantem (tē): subj. of **lūstrāre.**

432. canibus = the dogs or wolves of l. 428; a touch of the poetic caprice which scorns an unimaginative consistency.

433. Helenō = **mihi**: the third person is used in order to be more impressive.

434. fidēs (est mihi). animum (meum).

435. ūnum: emphatic by repetition, as is **iterum** below; App. 413.

437–438. adōrā: imp. **Jūnōnis, Jūnōnī:** emphatic by position and repetition. **cane vōta:** *utter* (*chant*) *your prayers;* Roman prayers were often made according to rhythmic formulas. Compare the English word *cant* from Latin **canō. dominam potentem** = **Jūnōnem.**

supplicibus superā *dōnīs: sīc* dēnique *victor*
Trīnacriā *fīnīs* Italōs *mittēre relictā.*
Hūc ubi dēlātus Cūmaeam accesseris *urbem*
dīvīnōs*que* lacūs *et* Averna sonantia *silvīs,*
īnsānam *vātem* aspiciēs, *quae* rūpe *sub īmā*
fāta canit foliīs*que* notās *et nōmina* mandat.
Quaecumque *in* foliīs dēscrīpsit carmina virgō
dīgerit *in* numerum *atque* antrō sēclūsa *relinquit:*
illa manent immōta *locīs neque ab* ordine cēdunt.
Vērum *eadem,* versō tenuis *cum* cardine *ventus*
impulit *et* tenerās turbāvit jānua frondēs,
numquam deinde cavō volitantia prendere *saxō*

---

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go to, approach
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look (at)
Averna, ōrum *n.* region about Lake Avernus in Italy†
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
carmen, inis *n.* song, verse, prophecy
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield (to), move*
Cūmaeus, a, um Cumaean, of Cumae, an Italian city, home of the Sibyl, an ancient prophetess†
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry down, convey
deinde then, thereupon, next*
dēnique finally, at last
dēscrībō, ere, psī, ptus write (down)†
dīgerō, ere, gessī, gestus distribute, arrange
dīvīnus, a, um divine, sacred, celestial
folium, (i)ī *n.* leaf, foliage
frōns, frondis *f.* leaf, frond, foliage*
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive, stir
īnsānus, a, um insane, frenzied, inspired
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
jānua, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere
mandō (1) intrust, command, commend
nota, ae *f.* mark, sign, letter, writing†
numerus, ī *m.* number, order, multitude*
numquam never, at no time
ordō, inis *m.* order, rank, position*
pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus grasp, seize
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whichever, whatever*
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus shut (off, up)
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
superō (1) surmount, overcome, surpass*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
tener, era, erum tender, soft, delicate
tenuis, e thin, slight, fine
Trīnacria, ae *f.* Trinacria, Sicily†
turbō (1) disturb, confuse, agitate*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
vērum but, truly, however
virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*
volitō (1) fly, flutter†

---

439. superā: imp.

440. (ad) fīnīs mittēre (= mittēris): App. 204, 4.

441–462. But Aeneas must first visit the Sibyl, the mad prophetess of Cumae, who will tell him all the rest he needs to know.

442. dīvīnōs: sacred to the gods of the lower world. **silvīs:** abl. of means with **sonantia.**

443. īnsānam vātem: the famous Cumaean Sibyl. Compare the note on **furēns, II, 345.**

444. notās et nōmina: written on leaves as prophetic utterances.

445. virgō: the Sibyl.

446. in numerum: in the order of occurrence of the events which she predicts. **(in) antrō = rūpe sub īmā** of l. 443.

447. (in) locīs.

448. eadem (folia): obj. of **pre(he)ndere,** in l. 450. **versō cardine (jānuae):** abl. abs.; App. 343.

449. jānua: when opened.

450. (in) cavō saxō = (in) antrō of l. 446.

nec revocāre sitūs *aut* jungere carmina cūrat.
Incōnsultī abeunt *sēdemque* ōdēre Sibyllae.
Hīc tibi nē qua morae *fuerint* dispendia *tantī*,
quamvīs increpitent *sociī et vī cursus in* altum
vēla vocet, possīsque sinūs implēre secundōs,
quīn adeās *vātem* precibus*que* ōrācula poscās
ipsa canat *vōcemque volēns atque ōra* resolvat.
Illa tibi Ītaliae populōs *ventūraque bella*
et quō quemque modō *fugiāsque ferāsque labōrem*
expediet, *cursūsque dabit* venerāta secundōs.
Haec sunt quae nostrā liceat *tē vōce* monērī.
Vāde *age et ingentem* factīs *fer ad* aethera *Trojam.'*

---

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus go away, depart*
adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus approach, visit
aethēr, eris, *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, heaven, ether
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
carmen, inis *n.* song, verse, prophecy
cūrō (1) care (to, for), regard, heed
dispendium, (i)ī *n.* expenditure, cost, loss†
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus disentangle, explain
factum, ī *n.* deed, achievement, exploit*
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
incōnsultus, a, um unconsulted; uncounseled†
increpitō (1) chide, challenge, rebuke
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke, unite*
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is allowed*
modus, ī *m.* measure, manner, way*
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn
mora, ae *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
ōdī, isse hate, detest, loathe
ōrāc(u)lum, ī *n.* oracle, prophecy
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, ask (for)*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
quamvīs although, however much†
quīn not that, but that, nay even, why not*
quisque, quaeque, quodque each (one), every(one)
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, open
revocō (1) call back, recall, restore
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess†
sinus, ūs *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
situs, ūs *m.* situation, position†
vādō, ere go, proceed, rush
veneror, ārī, ātus reverence, worship

---

451. revocāre sitūs: *to restore* (*them to*) *their places.*

452. abeunt: the subject is general, *people who have come to consult the oracle.* **ōdēre = ōdērunt.**

453–457. morae: subj. gen., *damage of delay*, i.e., damage caused by delay; App. 284; or appositional gen.; App. 281. **Hīc nē qua dispendia morae fuerint tantī tibi quīn adeās vātem precibusque poscās (ut) ipsa (Sibylla) canat ōrācula. fuerint:** vol. subj.; App. 254. **tantī:** *of so great value* (*importance*); gen. of value; App. 292. **vī:** abl. of manner. **increpitent, vocet, possīs:** concessive subjunctives introduced by **quamvīs**; App. 384. **sinūs (vēlōrum). sinūs implēre secundōs = sinūs implēre secundīs ventīs; secundōs** thus being a transferred epithet; App. 446. **quīn adeās, poscās:** result; App. 366; or with a negatived expression of preventing; App. 362. **(ut) canat, (ut) resolvat:** subst. clauses developed from the volitive depending on **poscās**; App. 360. **ipsa:** directly, not with leaves, as described in ll. 444 ff.

459. quō modō fugiās, ferās: indir. questions, *how you can avoid trouble* (*as far as possible*) *and how you can bear the rest;* App. 349.

460. venerāta: used passively, modifying **illa** in l. 458.

461. Haec sunt (dicta) quae liceat: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **quae:** retained secondary obj. of **monērī**; App. 309, *a*. **tē:** subj. of **monērī.**

462. Vāde, age, fer: imperatives. **aethera:** acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 68.

Quae postquam *vātēs sīc ōre* effātus amīcō ***est,***
dōna dehinc *aurō* gravia sectō*que* elephantō
imperat *ad nāvīs ferrī*, stīpat*que* carīnīs
ingēns argentum Dōdōnaeōs*que* lebētas,
lōrīcam cōnsertam hāmīs *aurōque* trilīcem,
et cōnum īnsignis galeae cristās*que* comantīs,
arma Neoptolemī. *Sunt et sua dōna parentī.*
Addit *equōs*, addit*que* ducēs,
rēmigium supplet, *sociōs simul* īnstruit *armīs.*
Intereā *classem vēlīs* aptāre *jubēbat*
Anchīsēs, fieret *ventō* mora *nē qua ferentī.*
Quem Phoebī interpres *multō* compellat *honōre:*
'Conjugiō, *Anchīsā*, Veneris dignāte superbō,
cūra deum, bis Pergameīs *ērepte* ruīnīs,

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
amīcus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
aptō (1) fit, equip, prepare, furnish
argentum, ī *n.* silver
bis twice*
carīna, ae *f.* keel, ship, boat*
comāns, antis hairy, shaggy
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to
conjugium, (i)ī *n.* marriage, wedlock
cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus join, fasten (together)
cōnus, ī *m.* cone, peak (of helmet)†
crista, ae *f.* crest, plume†
dehinc thence, thereupon, next
dignor, ārī, ātus deem worthy (*abl.*)
Dōdōnaeus, a, um of Dodona, seat of a famous Greek oracle†
dux, ducis *m.* leader, guide, pilot*
effor, fārī, fātus speak out, say
elephantus, ī *m.* elephant, ivory†
fīō, fierī, factus become, be made
galea, ae *f.* helmet
gravis, e heavy, serious, weighty*
hāmus, ī *m.* hook, link†
imperō (1) command, bid, order†
īnsignis, e marked, distinguished*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build up, equip
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
interpres, etis *m.* interpreter, prophet
lebēs, ētis *m.* basin, kettle, caldron†
lōrīca, ae *f.* breastplate, cuirass†
mora, ae *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
Neoptolemus, ī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
Pergameus, a, um of Pergamum, Trojan
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
postquam after (that), when*
rēmigium, (i)ī *n.* oarage, body of oarsmen
ruīna, ae *f.* downfall, ruin, destruction
secō, āre, uī, sectus cut, saw, slice*
stīpō (1) stuff, cram, stow, crowd
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
suppleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill (up), supply†
trilīx, īcis three-ply, triple†
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*

463–505. The Trojans, richly laden with gifts, depart amid the tears and lamentations of all.

464. dōna: making gifts at the meeting and parting of friends was a common mark of esteem and affection. An exchange of gifts was also common, as in I, 647. **gravia:** with the final syllable lengthened under the metrical accent.

466. Dōdōnaeōs lebētas: such kettles as were suspended in the sacred grove at Dodona, from the sound of which when struck the priests interpreted the will of Jupiter. **lebētās:** acc. pl., a Greek form: App. 65, *a.*

467. lōrīcam cōnsertam etc.: *a coat of mail triply woven of gold chains.*

469. sua: *appropriate;* **sua** is usually reflexive, but here refers to **parentī** instead of to the subject; App. 248, *a.* **parentī (meō):** Anchises.

473. fieret: negative purpose; App. 359. **ventō:** dat. of reference. **ferentī:** *favorable.*

474. Phoebī interpres: Helenus.

475–476. Conjugiō: abl. with **dignor**; App. 337, *a.* **dignāte:** deponent participle used in passive sense. **Anchīsā, dignāte, cūra, ērepte:** vocatives. **de-(ōr)um. bis:** compare the notes on **II, 642–643.**

ecce *tibi* Ausoniae *tellūs: hanc* arripe *vēlīs.*
Et tamen *hanc pelagō* praeterlābāre necesse *est:*
Ausoniae *pars illa procul quam* pandit Apollō.
Vāde,' *ait* '*Ō* fēlīx *nātī* pietāte. *Quid* ultrā
prōvehor *et fandō surgentīs* dēmoror Austrōs?'
Nec minus Andromachē dīgressū maesta *suprēmō*
fert pictūrātās *aurī* subtēmine vestīs
et Phrygiam Ascaniō chlamydem (*nec* cēdit *honōre*)
textilibus*que* onerat *dōnīs, ac tālia fātur*
'*Accipe et haec, manuum tibi quae* monimenta *meārum*
sint, puer, et longum Andromachae testentur *amōrem,*
conjugis Hectoreae. *Cape dōna* extrēma *tuōrum,*
Ō mihi sōla meī super Astyanactis imāgō.

Andromachē, ēs (ae) *f.* wife of Hector
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
arripiō, ere, uī, reptus seize (upon)†
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
Astyanax, actis *m.* infant child of Hector and Andromache, dashed to death from the walls of Troy by the Greeks
Ausonia, ae *f.* Ausonia, Italy†
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield (to), depart; be inferior*
chlamys, ydis *f.* cloak, mantle†
dēmoror, ārī, ātus delay, detain, hinder
dīgressus, ūs *m.* departure†
ecce see! look! behold!*
extrēmus, a, um final, uttermost, last*
fēlīx, īcis happy, blessed, fortunate*
Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan leader
imāgō, inis *f.* likeness, image, phantom*
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
minus less
monimentum (monumentum), ī *n.* reminder, memorial
necesse necessary; necessity†
onerō (1) burden, load, overwhelm
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread (open), disclose*
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
pictūrō (1) embroider, picture†
pietās, ātis *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
praeterlābor, ī, lāpsus glide past†
prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry forward, convey
subtēmen, inis *n.* woof, threads†
tamen nevertheless, however, but*
testor, ārī, ātus call to witness, testify (to)
textilis, e woven, textile†
ultrā beyond (*acc.*); further†
vādō, ere go, proceed, rush
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*

477–478. tibi: ethical dat.; App. 300; best left untranslated. **ecce tellūs (est)**: *yonder lies the land.* **hanc, hanc**: the first **hanc** refers to Italy in general, including the part where Aeneas was destined to settle, the second **hanc** refers to the eastern coast of Italy, forbidden to Aeneas. **arripe**: imp.

478. (ut) praeterlābāre = (ut) **praeterlābāris**: substantive clause developed from the volitive; App. 204, 4; 360; it is subject of **necesse est**.

479. pars illa (est) procul: refers to Latium on the western coast where Aeneas was destined to settle.

480. Vāde: imp. **pietāte**: abl. of cause with **fēlīx**; App. 332. **Quid dēmoror Austrōs**: *why do I delay the winds*, which are eager to waft your ships on their way? That is, why do I detain you from sailing with the favorable winds?

481. fandō: from **for**; gerund, abl. of means.

482. dīgressū: abl. of cause.

484. honōre: abl. of respect; App. 325. **nec (Helenō) cēdit honōre**: *and she vies with Helenus in showing us honor.*

485. tālia (dicta).

486–488. et haec: *these also*, as well as the gifts of Helenus. **Accipe, Cape**: imperatives. **quae sint, et testentur**: rel. clauses of purpose; App. 388.

489. sōla super: *sole surviving.* **super**: adverbial = **quae superēs**. **Astyanactis**: at the capture of Troy, the Greeks killed the boy Astyanax by hurling him from the wall.

Sīc oculōs, sīc ille manūs, sīc ōra ferēbat;
et nunc aequālī *tēcum* pūbēsceret aevō.'
Hōs ego dīgrediēns *lacrimīs* adfābar obortīs:
'Vīvite fēlīcēs, *quibus est fortūna* perācta
jam sua: nōs alia ex aliīs in fāta vocāmur.
Vōbīs parta quiēs: *nūllum maris aequor* arandum,
arva neque Ausoniae semper cēdentia retrō
quaerenda. Effigiem Xanthī *Trojamque vidētis*
quam vestrae *fēcēre manūs*, meliōribus, optō,
auspiciīs, *et quae fuerit* minus obvia Grajīs.
Sī quandō Thybrim vīcīna*que* Thybridis *arva*
intrārō *gentīque meae data moenia cernam*,
cognātās *urbēs* ōlim populōs*que* propinquōs,
Ēpīrō Hesperiam (*quibus īdem* Dardanus auctor

---

adfor, fārī, fātus address, accost*
aequālis, e equal, of the same age†
aevum, ī *n.* age, life, time, eternity
arō (1) plow, furrow, till
auctor, ōris *m.* founder, author, sponsor
Ausonia, ae *f.* Ausonia, Italy
auspicium, (i)ī *n.* omen, auspice(s)
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield (to), depart; be inferior*
cognātus, a, um kindred, akin†
Dardanus, ī *m.* early Trojan king
dīgredior, ī, gressus depart, separate
effigiēs, ēī *f.* likeness, image, statue
Ēpīrus, ī *f.* district of northwestern Greece
fēlīx, īcis happy, fortunate, blessed*
Grajus, a, um Greek*
Hesperia, ae *f.* Hesperia, Italy, Westland
intrō (1) enter, penetrate
melior, ius better, superior
minus less
oborior, īrī, ortus (a)rise, spring up†
obvius, a, um in the way, exposed (*dat.*)
ōlim once, at some time, formerly*
optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for)*
pariō, ere, peperī, partus bear, gain
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus accomplish, finish†
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
propinquus, a, um near, neighboring
pūbēscō, ere, pūbuī be a youth, grow (up)†
quandō ever, when, since
quiēs, ētis *f.* rest, quiet, peace, repose*
retrō back(ward), again, anew
semper always, ever, continually*
Thybris, (id)is *m.* Tiber, a river of Italy
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vīcīnus, a, um near, neighboring
vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus live, be alive
Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy

---

490. Sīc (ille ferēbat) oculōs.

491. pūbēsceret: implied condition contrary to fact; App. 382. **aevō:** abl. of quality; App. 330. Astyanax, if he had lived, would have been about as old as his cousin Ascanius.

493. Vīvite: imp. *farewell!* **quibus:** dat. of reference.

494. sua: irregularly referring to **quibus** instead of to the subject; App. 248, *a*. **alia ex aliīs in fāta:** *from one fate to another.*

495. Vōbīs: dat. of reference or of agent. **parta (est) quiēs. arandum (est vōbīs).**

497. quaerenda (sunt vōbīs).

498–499. fēcēre = fēcērunt. meliōribus auspiciīs: (*under*) *with better auspices* (than those of the original Troy); abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329.

499. fuerit: fut. perf., *will prove to be.*

500. Thybridis: gen. with **vīcīna**; App. 287.

501. intrā(ve)rō.

502–505. ōlim faciēmus cognātās urbēs populōsque propinquōs utramque ūnam Trojam animīs. After the battle of Actium in 31 B.C., Augustus founded Nicopolis in Epirus to commemorate his victory. Vergil is probably alluding to this fact in this passage.

503–504. Ēpīrō (cognātam et propinquam) Hesperiam. Hesperiam: in partitive apposition with **populōs. quibus:** dat. of possessor. **īdem auctor (erat), īdem cāsūs (erant). utramque = ambās urbēs.**

atque īdem cāsūs), *ūnam faciēmus* utramque
Trojam animīs: maneat nostrōs ea cūra nepōtēs.'
Prōvehimur *pelagō* vīcīna Ceraunia juxtā,
unde iter *Ītaliam cursusque* brevissimus *undīs*.
Sōl *ruit* intereā *et montēs* umbrantur opācī.
Sternimur optātae gremiō *tellūris ad undam*
sortītī *rēmōs* passim*que in lītore* siccō
corpora cūrāmus: *fessōs* sopor inrigat artūs.
Necdum orbem *medium Nox* Hōrīs *ācta subībat:*
haud sēgnis strātō *surgit* Palinūrus *et omnīs*
explōrat *ventōs atque* auribus āera captat;
sīdera cūncta notat tacitō *lābentia caelō*,
Arctūrum pluviās*que* Hyadas *geminōsque* Triōnēs

āēr, āeris, *acc.* **āera**, *m.* air, cloud, mist
Arctūrus, ī *m.* a bright star in the constellation Boötes
artus, ūs *m.* limb, joint, body*
auris, is *f.* ear*
brevis, e short, brief, shallow
captō (1) (try to) catch, listen (to, for)†
Ceraunia, ōrum *n.* mountain range of the western coast of Greece†
cūrō (1) care (for, to), heed, refresh
explōrō (1) search (out), test, examine
gremium, (i)ī *n.* bosom, lap, embrace
hōra, ae *f.* hour, season, time†
Hyades, um *f.* constellation supposed to bring rain
inrigō (1) irrigate, flow into, bedew
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
juxtā near, next (*acc.*)†*
necdum not yet
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
notō (1) mark, observe†
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy†
optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)*
orbis, is *m.* circle, orbit, earth*
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot
passim everywhere, all about*
pluvius, a, um rainy, rain-bringing
prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear forward, convey
sēgnis, e slow, slothful, inactive†
siccus, a, um dry, thirsty
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
sopor, ōris *m.* sleep, slumber
sortior, īrī, ītus get by lot, allot
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay (low), spread, stretch out*
strātum, ī *n.* bed, couch; pavement
tacitus, a, um silent, quiet, still
Triōnēs, um *m.* northern constellations, the Great and Little Bear
umbrō (1)* shade, shadow, cover†
unde whence, from which source*
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*
vīcīnus, a, um near, neighboring

---

utramque: in apposition with **urbēs** and **populōs**, but attracted to the gender of **Trojam**. **animīs**: abl. of respect; App. 325.

506–529. The Trojans skirt the coast of Greece to the point nearest Italy and, after a short rest, sail straight across; at dawn they catch sight of the Promised Land, which they joyfully greet as their future home.

506–507. pelagō, undīs: abl. of route. **iter (est ad) Ītaliam. brevissimus**: modifies both **iter** and **cursus**, but agrees with the nearest; the Adriatic is only some forty miles wide at this point.

508. Sōl ruit (in mare).

509. Sternimur: middle (reflexive), *we lay ourselves down.* **(in) gremiō. ad undam**: *near the water.*

510. sortītī: the hard work is distributed by lot as in I, 507–508; this is done in the evening, so that they may start during the night, if weather conditions prove favorable.

512. orbem: its course through the vaulted heavens. It was not yet midnight, as is seen from **necdum medium. hōrīs**: abl. of means.

513. strātō: abl. of separation.

514. auribus captat: *listens to.*

armātumque *aurō* circumspicit Ōrīōna.
Postquam *cūncta videt caelō* cōnstāre serēnō,
dat clārum *ē puppī* signum: *nōs* castra *movēmus*
temptāmusque *viam et vēlōrum* pandimus ālās.
Jamque rubēscēbat stēllīs Aurōra fugātīs
cum procul obscūrōs collīs humilemque *vidēmus*
Ītaliam. Ītaliam prīmus conclāmat Achātēs,
Ītaliam laetō socīī clāmōre salūtant.
Tum pater Anchīsēs magnum crātēra corōnā
induit implēvitque merō, *dīvōsque vocāvit*
stāns celsā *in puppī:*
'*Dī maris et terrae* tempestātumque potentēs,
ferte viam ventō facilem *et* spīrāte secundī.'
Crēbrēscunt optātae *aurae portusque* patēscit
jam propior, templumque appāret *in arce* Minervae.

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
āla, ae *f.* wing*
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) the dawn*
castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
circumspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look around (upon)
clārus, a, um clear, distinct, illustrious*
collis, is *m.* hill
conclāmō (1) shout, exclaim, cry out
cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand firm, be settled†
corōna, ae *f.* garland, wreath, crown
crātēr, ēris, *acc.* **ēra,** *m.* mixing bowl
crēbrēscō, ere, bruī become frequent, renew†
facilis, e easy, smooth, favorable
fugō (1) put to flight, rout, disperse
humilis, e low(ly), low-lying, humble†
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
induō, ere, uī, ūtus put on, clothe, wreathe
merum, ī *n.* (unmixed) wine
Minerva, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts
obscūrus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy*
optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)*
Ōrīōn, ōnis, *acc.* **ōna,** *m.* a bright constellation, supposed to represent a famous hunter armed with shining golden weapons
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread (open), reveal*
patēscō, ere, patuī open (up)
postquam after (that), when*
potēns, entis powerful, ruling (*gen.*)*
propior, ius nearer, closer, nigher
rubēscō, ere, rubuī blush, redden†
salūtō (1) greet, salute†
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
serēnus, a, um clear, calm, tranquil
signum, ī *n.* sign, signal, token, mark*
spīrō (1) breathe, blow, exhale
stēlla, ae *f.* star, constellation
tempestās, ātis *f.* weather, storm, season*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
temptō (1) try, test, attempt, examine*

517. aurō: referring to Orion's belt and upraised sword composed of shining golden stars. **Ōrīōna:** acc. sing., a Greek form; note the spondaic fifth foot; App. 395.

518. (in) caelō.

519. clārum signum: probably with a trumpet. **castra movēmus:** a military term, used also of naval expeditions.

523–524. Ītaliam: thrice repeated for effect; the Promised Land at last; cf. App. 413. **clāmōre:** abl. of manner. **socīī (mēī).**

525. crātēra: acc. sing., a Greek form; see note on I, 724.

527. in puppī: where the images of the patron gods of the ship were carried.

528. maris, terrae, tempestātum: objective genitives, with **potentēs**; App. 284.

529. (nōbīs) ferte: imp. ventō: abl. of means. **spīrāte:** imp.

530–547. The Trojans land and sacrifice according to the Trojan ritual.

530. portus: probably Portus Veneris in southeast Italy.

Vēla legunt *sociī et* prōrās *ad lītora* torquent.
Portus ab Eurōō *flūctū* curvātus *in* arcum,
objectae salsā spūmant aspergine cautēs,
ipse latet: *geminō* dīmittunt bracchia mūrō
turrītī scopulī refugit*que ab lītore* templum.
Quattuor *hīc, prīmum* ōmen, *equōs in* grāmine *vīdī*
tondentīs *campum* lātē, candōre nivālī.
Et pater Anchīsēs: 'Bellum, Ō terra hospita, portās:
bellō armantur *equī, bellum haec* armenta minantur.
Sed tamen *īdem* ōlim currū succēdere suētī
quadripedēs *et* frēna jugō concordia *ferre:*
spēs *et* pācis' *ait. Tum nūmina* sāncta precāmur
Palladis armisonae, *quae prīma accēpit* ovantīs,

---

arcus, ūs *m.* arch, bow*
armentum, ī *n.* herd, drove (of cattle)
armisonus, a, um (re)sounding with arms†
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
a(d)spergō, inis *f.* sprinkling, spray†
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* arm, forearm*
candor, ōris *m.* whiteness, gleam, glow†
cautēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, ledge†
concors, rdis harmonious, concordant†
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
curvō (1) curve, bend, arch, wind†
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send away, extend
Eurōus, a, um East, Eastern†
frēnum, ī *n.* rein, curb, bridle†
grāmen, inis *n.* grass, herb(age), sward
hospitus, a, um strange, hospitable
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
lātē widely, far and wide
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, choose, furl, gather in*
minōr, ārī, ātus threaten, menace; tower
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
nivālis, e snowy†
objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place before
ōlim once, (at) some time, formerly*
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, portent, sign*
ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, repose, grace
portō (1) carry, bear, bring, convey*
precor, ārī, ātus pray, beg, entreat*
prōra, ae *f.* prow*
quadripēs (upēs), edis *m.* quadruped, horse†
quattuor four†
refugiō, ere, fūgī flee back, recede
salsus, a, um briny, salty
sānctus, a, um sacred, holy, revered*
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach submit (to) (*dat.*)
suēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus accustom, be accustomed†
tamen nevertheless, however, but*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear, crop
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus turn, twist, sway*
turrītus, a, um tower-like, with towers, turreted†

---

532. Vēla legunt: they furl their sails and then row the ships to the land.

533. ab Eurōō flūctū: abl. of agent, of a non-person, a rare usage; App. 333, 437.

535. ipse (portus). geminō mūrō: abl. of quality; App. 330. **dīmittunt (in mare).**

536. refugit: as they near the shore, the temple is seen to be farther back than appeared at a distance.

537. prīmum ōmen: the first sight to strike the eyes in a new land was often taken as an omen.

538. candōre: abl. of quality.

540. bellō: dat. of purpose; App. 303. **bellum:** observe the rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

541–542. īdem quadripedēs suētī (sunt) succēdere currū. currū: dat. with compound; App. 298. **jugō:** abl. of means.

543. spēs (est) et (*also*) pācis.

544. Palladis armisonae: they had landed near a temple of Minerva at

et capita ante ārās Phrygiō vēlāmur amictū,
praeceptīs*que* Helenī, *dederat quae maxima*, rīte
Jūnōnī Argīvae *jussōs* adolēmus *honōrēs*.
Haud mora, continuō perfectīs ordine vōtīs
cornua vēlātārum obvertimus antemnārum,
Grajugenum*que domōs* suspecta*que* linquimus *arva*.
Hinc sinus Herculeī (*sī* vēra *est fāma*) Tarentī
cernitur, attollit *sē dīva* Lacīnia contrā,
Caulōnis*que arcēs et* nāvifragum Scylacēum.
Tum procul ē flūctū Trīnacria *cernitur* Aetna,
et gemitum *ingentem pelagī* pulsāta*que saxa*
audīmus longē frāctās*que ad lītora vōcēs*,
exsultant*que* vada *atque* aestū miscentur harēnae.

adoleō, ēre, uī, adultus worship, burn
aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
Aetna, ae *f.* volcano in Sicily†
amictus, ūs *m.* wrap, robe, garment
antemna, ae *f.* sail-yard†
Argīvus, a, um Argive, Greek
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
Caulōn, ōnis *m.* city of South Italy†
continuō immediately, forthwith
contrā opposite, in reply (to) (*acc.*)*
cornū, ūs *n.* horn, tip, end
exsultō (1) leap up, rejoice, exult
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, smash*
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
Grajugena, ae *m.* Grecian-born, Greek†
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
Herculeus, a, um Herculean, of Hercules, god of strength, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, celebrated for his twelve labors while on earth†
Lacīnius, a, um of Lacinium, a promontory of South Italy with a temple of Juno†
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
longē far (away), at a distance*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mora, ae *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
nāvifragus, a, um ship-wrecking†
obvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn toward†
ordō, inis *m.* order, arrangement, row*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, accomplish
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
praeceptum, ī *n.* precept, command
pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, batter†
rīte duly, according to custom
Scylacēum, ī *n.* city in southern Italy†
sinus, ūs *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look up at; suspect
Tarentum, ī *n.* city of southern Italy, founded by Hercules†
Trīnacrius, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian
vadum, ī *n.* shallow, depths (of waters)
vēlō (1) veil, cover (the face), wrap, equip with sails
vērus, a, um true, real, genuine, honest*
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

Castrum Minervae; see l. 531. **accēpit** (nōs).

545. capita: object of the middle verb **vēlāmur**, *we veil* (for ourselves); App. 309. They thus follow the instructions given in ll. 405–409.

546. praeceptīs: *according to the behests;* abl. of accordance; App. 326. **maxima**: (*as*) *most important.*

547. Jūnōnī Argīvae: Argos was a famous center of the worship of Juno.

548–569. They sail southward along the eastern coast of Italy and of Sicily to Mt. Etna, where they land.

548. Haud mora (est). ordine: *in due form.*

549. cornua antemnārum: *the tips of the yards.* Note the spondaic fifth foot; App. 395.

550. Grajugen(ār)um.

552. dīva Lacīnia = Juno; here refers to a temple of Juno on the promontory of Lacinium.

553. arcēs (sē attollunt).

554. ē flūctū: (rising) *from the waves.*

555. pulsāta (undīs).

556. vōcēs (undārum): *the roar of the breakers.*

Et pater Anchīsēs: 'Nīmīrum *hīc illa* Charybdis:
hōs Helenus scopulōs, *haec saxa* horrenda canēbat.
Ēripite, Ō sociī, pariterque īnsurgite *rēmīs.'*
Haud minus *ac jussī faciunt, prīmusque* rudentem
contorsit laevās prōram Palinūrus *ad undās;*
laevam *cūncta* cohors *rēmīs ventīsque petīvit.*
Tollimur in caelum curvātō gurgite, *et īdem*
subductā *ad* mānīs *īmōs* dēsēdimus *undā.*
Ter scopulī *clāmōrem inter* cava *saxa dedēre,*
ter spūmam ēlīsam *et* rōrantia *vīdimus* astra.
Intereā *fessōs ventus cum* sōle *relīquit,*
ignārīque *viae* Cyclōpum adlābimur *ōrīs.*
Portus ab accessū *ventōrum* immōtus *et ingēns*
ipse: sed horrificīs juxtā tonat Aetna ruīnīs,
interdumque *ātram* prōrumpit *ad* aethera nūbem

accessus, ūs *m.* approach, access†
adlābor, ī, lāpsus glide to (*dat.*)
aethēr, eris, *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky, heaven*
Aetna, ae *f.* volcano of Sicily
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
Charybdis, is *f.* whirlpool opposite Scylla, between Sicily and Italy
cohors, rtis *f.* troop, mass, fleet†
contorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, whirl
curvō (1) curve, bend, arch, wind
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-eyed giants on the eastern coast of Sicily near Mt. Etna†
dēsīdō, ere, sēdī sink down, subside†
ēlīdō, ere, sī, sus dash (out, up)†
gurges, itis *m.* whirl(pool, wind), depth*
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
horrendus, a, um dreadful, horrible*
horrificus, a, um terrifying, horrifying
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable
īnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise (on) (*dat.*)
interdum at times, meanwhile
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
juxtā near, next (*acc.*); close at hand*
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
minus less
nīmīrum doubtless, no wonder, of course†
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot*
pariter equally, all together, in unison, side by side*
prōra, ae *f.* prow*
prōrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break forth, shoot forth
rōrō (1) drip with dew, be dewy†
rudō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus roar, creak†
ruīna, ae *f.* downfall, ruin; convulsion
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
spūma, ae *f.* foam, froth, spray
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus withdraw (from beneath), remove
ter thrice, three times*
tonō, āre, uī, itus thunder, roar†

558. hīc (est) illa Charybdis.

559. Helenus (canēbat), (Helenus) canēbat.

560. Ēripite (vōs), īnsurgite: imperatives.

561. ac: *than.*

564. (nōs) īdem.

565. subductā undā: abl. abs., implying cause.

566. dedēre = dedērunt.

568. cum sōle: *at sundown.* (nōs) fessōs.

569. Cyclōpum ōrīs: dat. with compound; the east coast of Sicily near Mt. Etna.

570–587. The Trojans pass an uneasy night in the neighborhood of the volcano.

570–571. Portus (est). ingēns ipse: *spacious (in) itself.*

571. ruīnīs: *downfall* (of lava, etc.); abl. of cause.

572. nūbem: cognate acc. with prōrumpit; App. 313. Compare **rumpit**

turbine fūmantem piceō *et* candente favīllā,
attollit*que* globōs *flammārum et sīdera* lambit,
interdum scopulōs āvulsa*que* vīscera *montis*
ērigit ērūctāns, liquefacta*que saxa sub aurās*
cum gemitū glomerat fundō*que* exaestuat *īmō*.
Fāma est Enceladī sēmustum fulmine *corpus*
urgērī mōle *hāc, ingentemque* īnsuper Aetnam
impositam ruptīs *flammam* exspīrāre camīnīs,
et fessum quotiēns mūtet latus, intremere *omnem*
murmure Trīnacriam *et caelum* subtexere fūmō.
Noctem illam tēctī *silvīs immānia* mōnstra
perferimus, *nec quae* sonitum *det* causa *vidēmus*.
Nam neque erant astrōrum *ignēs nec* lūcidus aethrā
sīdereā polus, obscūrō *sed* nūbila *caelō*,

---

aethra, ae *f.* radiance, bright light†
Aetna, ae *f.* volcano of Sicily
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear away
camīnus, ī *m.* furnace, chimney†
candēns, entis shining, white, hot†
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
Enceladus, ī *m.* one of the fire-breathing giants who attempted to capture heaven, overthrown by Jupiter's thunderbolt and buried under Mt. Etna†
ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, upheave
ērūctō (1) belch forth, vomit forth†
exaestuō (1) boil forth, seethe, surge†
exspīrō (1) breathe out, exhale, die
favīlla, ae *f.* hot ashes, embers†
fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
fūmō (1) smoke, steam, fume, reek
fūmus, ī *m.* smoke, vapor, fume, fog
fundus, ī *m.* bottom, foundation, base
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
globus, ī *m.* ball, globe, sphere†
glomerō (1) roll together, assemble
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place upon, pile upon*
īnsuper (from) above
interdum at times, meanwhile
intremō, ere, uī tremble, quake, shake†
lambō, ere lick, lap
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
liquefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus melt, liquefy†
lūcidus, a, um bright, clear, shining†
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
mōnstrum, ī *n.* portent, marvel, monster*
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
mūtō (1) (ex)change, turn, transform*
nūbila, ōrum *n.* clouds, cloudiness†
obscūrus, a, um dark, gloomy, obscure*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus endure
piceus, a, um pitchy, black†
polus, ī *m.* pole, sky, heaven
quotiēns as often as†
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sēmustus, a, um half-burnt, half-consumed†
sīdereus, a, um starry, of the stars†
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
subtexō, ere, uī, xtus weave beneath, veil (from below)†
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, bury, hide*
Trīnacria, ae *f.* Trinacria, Sicily
turbō, inis *m.* whirl(pool, wind), storm
urgeō, ēre, ursī press (upon), urge, incite
vīscus, eris *n.* vitals, bowels, flesh

---

vōcem, II, 129; III, 246. **aethera**: acc. sing., a Greek form.

577. fundō: abl. of separation.

578–580. corpus exspīrāre flammam: thus the ancients accounted for the volcano by the story of a great fire-breathing giant buried beneath the mountain.

578. Fāma est = **dīcunt**, and so followed by indir. disc.; App. 390.

579. mōle hāc (montis).

581. mūtet latus: turns over; thus the ancients accounted for earthquakes, by the story of a great giant buried alive who shook the earth when he tried to turn over.

583. mōnstra: the mysterious noises.

585–586. polus (erat) lūcidus. aethrā: abl. of cause. **nūbila (erant) caelō. caelō**: dat. of possessor or abl. of place.

et lūnam *in* nimbō *nox* intempesta *tenēbat.*
Postera *jamque diēs prīmō surgēbat* Eōō
ūmentem*que* Aurōra polō dīmōverat *umbram,*
cum subitō *ē silvīs* maciē cōnfecta *suprēmā*
ignōtī *nova* forma *virī* miseranda*que* cultū
prōcēdit supplex*que manūs ad lītora tendit.*
Respicimus. Dīra inluviēs immissa*que* barba,
cōnsertum tegimen spīnīs: *at* cētera Grajus,
et quondam patriīs ad Trojam missus in armīs.
Isque ubi Dardaniōs habitūs *et* Trōia *vīdit*
arma procul, paulum aspectū conterritus haesit
continuit*que* gradum; mox *sēsē ad lītora* praeceps
cum flētū precibus*que tulit: 'Per sīdera* testor,
per superōs atque hoc caelī spīrābile *lūmen,*
tollite mē, Teucrī; quāscumque abdūcite *terrās:*

abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead away, carry away†
a(d)spectus, ūs *m.* appearance, sight
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of the) dawn*
barba, ae *f.* beard, whiskers
cēterus, a, um other, rest, remaining
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus accomplish, finish, do thoroughly, wear out†
cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus fasten, join
conterreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify†
contineō, ēre, uī, tentus hold together, check
cultus, ūs *m.* dress, mode of life†
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
dīmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move apart, disperse†
dīrus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*
Eōus, ī *m.* eastern star, morning star, dawn
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament
forma, ae *f.* form, shape, beauty*
gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, stride, rung
Grajus, a, um Greek*
habitus, ūs *m.* garb, appearance, dress
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus stick (to, fast), halt*
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, let grow
inluviēs, ēī *f.* filth, dirt, squalor†
intempestus, a, um unseasonable, gloomy†
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
maciēs, ēī *f.* leanness, emaciation†
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
mox soon, presently
nimbus, ī *m.* (rain-)cloud*
paulum a little, slightly†
polus, ī *m.* pole, sky, heaven
posterus, a, um following, rear, next
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whichever, whatever; any*
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back), look at*
spīna, ae *f.* thorn, backbone†
spīrābilis, e breathable, vital†
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
teg(i)men, inis *n.* covering, garment
testor, ārī, ātus call to witness, testify
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
ūmēns, entis dewy, wet†

587. nox intempesta: *the dead of night.*

588–611. While preparing to set sail the Trojans discover Achaemenides, a Greek who had been deserted by Ulysses when he escaped from the cave of the Cyclops.

588. prīmō Eōō: *at daybreak,* abl. of time.

591. nova: *strange.*

593. Respicimus: the Trojans were departing when their attention is called by the appearance of the strange figure, and they look back. **inluviēs (erat illī), barba (erat illī).**

594. cōnsertum (erat). cētera: acc. of respect; App. 311. **Grajus (erat).**

599. testor (vōs) = ōrō, precor.

600. lūmen = āera.

601. tollite mē (vōbīscum): *take me* (with you). **(ad) quāscumque terrās.**

hoc sat *erit.* Scio *mē Danaīs ē classibus ūnum*
et bellō Īliacōs fateor *petiisse* penātīs.
Prō *quō, sī* sceleris *tanta est* injūria *nostrī,*
spargite *mē in flūctūs vastōque* immergite pontō;
sī pereō, hominum *manibus* periisse juvābit.'
Dīxerat et genua amplexus genibus*que* volūtāns
haerēbat. *Quī sit fārī, quō sanguine* crētus,
hortāmur, *quae* deinde agitet *fortūna* fatērī.
Ipse pater dextram Anchīsēs haud multa morātus
dat juvenī *atque animum* praesentī pignore firmat.
Ille haec dēpositā *tandem* formīdine *fātur:*
'*Sum* patriā *ex* Ithacā, *comes īnfēlīcis* Ulixī,
nōmine Achaemenidēs, *Trojam genitōre* Adamastō
paupere (*mānsissetque* utinam *fortūna!*) profectus.

Achaemenidēs, ae *m.* comrade of Ulysses, rescued by Aeneas from the land of the Cyclopes†
Adamastus, ī *m.* father of Achaemenides†
agitō (1) drive, pursue, agitate, harass
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold*
crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētus grow, spring
deinde then, thereupon, next*
dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay aside
fateor, ērī, fassus confess, admit
firmō (1) confirm, strengthen, encourage
formīdō, inis *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
genū, ūs *n.* knee
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus stick (to), cling (to) (*dat.*)*
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
hortor, ārī, ātus encourage, urge, incite*
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
immergō, ere, rsī, rsus plunge into (*dat.*)†
injūria, ae *f.* wrong, injury, injustice
Ithaca, ae *f.* island-kingdom of Ulysses, wily Greek leader
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man woman)*
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
moror, ārī, ātus delay, hesitate, detain*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
pauper, eris poor, needy
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
pereō, īre, ii (īvī), itus perish, die
pignus, oris *n.* pledge, token, security†
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
praesēns, entis present, immediate
prō for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
proficīscor, ī, fectus set out, go
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
scelus, eris *n.* crime, guilt, sin, villainy*
sciō, īre, īvī, ītus know (how), understand
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, strew*
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
utinam would that! O that!
volūtō (1) roll (over and over), revolve

---

602. Sciō: with final vowel irregularly short. mē (esse).

605. spargite, immergite: imperatives. (in) pontō.

606. pereō hominum: hiatus; App. 399. juvābit (mē).

607–609. genua (nostra) amplexus genibus (suīs) volūtāns (nōbīs) haerēbat. hortāmur (illum) fārī quī (= quis) sit (ille) (et) quō sanguine (sit) crētus. (hortāmur eum) fatērī quae fortūna (eum) agitet.

611. praesentī pignore: *by an immediate pledge* (of friendship); i.e., the right hand just given him by Anchises.

612–654. Warned by Achaemenides of the ferocity of the Cyclopes, the Trojans immediately set sail, taking Achaemenides with them.

613. īnfēlīcis: from the point of view of a Greek.

614–615. nōmine: abl. of respect; App. 325. (ad) Trojam. genitōre paupere: abl. abs.; *because of my father's poverty;* said to excuse his part in the Trojan War and to win the sympathy of his hearers. Compare Sinon's tale to the same effect, II, 87. mānsisset utinam fortūna: opt. subj.; App. 253;

Hīc mē, dum trepidī crūdēlia *līmina* linquunt,
in [illegible]morēs *sociī vastō* Cyclōpis *in* antrō
dēseruēre. *Domus* saniē dapibus*que* cruentīs,
intus opāca, *ingēns. Ipse* arduus, *altaque* pulsat
sīdera (*dī tālem terrīs* āvertite pestem!)
nec vīsū facilis *nec dictū* adfābilis *ūllī;*
vīsceribus *miserōrum et sanguine* vēscitur *ātrō.*
Vīdī egomet duo *dē* numerō *cum corpora nostrō*
prēnsa *manū magnā mediō* resupīnus *in* antrō
frangeret *ad saxum,* saniē*que* aspersa natārent
līmina; vīdī ātrō cum membra fluentia tābō
manderet *et* tepidī tremerent *sub* dentibus artūs —
haud impūne quidem, *nec tālia* passus Ulixēs
oblītus*ve suī est* Ithacus discrīmine *tantō.*
Nam simul explētus dapibus vīnō*que* sepultus

adfābilis, e may be addressed, may be spoken to, approachable, affable†
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
a(d)spergō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle†
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn aside, avert*
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, bitter*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants in Sicily
daps, dapis *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
dēns, dentis *m.* tooth†
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
discrīmen, inis *n.* crisis, danger, distinction, difference
duo, ae, o two, a pair*
expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, stuff, fulfil
facilis, e easy, endurable, favorable
fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow, stream
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, smash, crush*
immemor, oris unmindful, forgetful
impūne with impunity, without punishment†
intus within, on the inside
Ithacus, ī *m.* native of Ithaca, Ulysses
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
mandō, ere, ī, mānsus crunch, chew†
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
natō (1) swim, float, overflow†
numerus, ī *m.* number, order*
oblīviscor, ī, lītus forget (*gen.*)
opācus, a, um dark, gloomy, obscure
patior, ī, passus suffer, endure, permit*
pestis, is *f.* plague, curse, scourge
pre(he)endō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp
pulsō (1) beat, smite, lash, batter
quidem indeed, surely, at least†
resupīnus, a, um supine, flat on the back
saniēs, ēī *f.* blood, gore
sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), sepultus bury, inter
tābum, ī *n.* corruption, gore
tepidus, a, um warm, tepid
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
trepidus, a, um trembling, alarmed
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
vēscor, ī feed on (*abl.*)
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*
vīscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh, bowels

would that our fortune had remained, so that it would not have been necessary for me to go forth as a soldier of fortune!

616. dum: regularly with the pres. ind.; App. 372. trepidī (sociī).

617. immemorēs (meī). Cyclōpis: Polyphemus was the name of this particular Cyclops.

618 dēseruēre = dēseruērunt. Domus (Cyclōpis est). saniē, dapibus: ablatives of quality; App. 330

619. Ipse (Cyclōps est) arduus.

620. dī: voc. āvertite: imp.

621. vīsū, dictū: supines; ablatives of respect; App. 271. ūllī: dat. of reference.

622. vīsceribus, sanguine: ablatives with vēscor; App. 342.

628. passus (est).

629. suī: gen. with oblīviscor; App. 288; *forgot himself,* i.e., his accustomed cunning.

630. simul (atque): *as soon as.*

cervīcem īnflexam *posuit*, jacuit*que per* antrum
immēnsus saniem ērūctāns *et* frusta cruentō
per somnum commixta merō, *nōs magna* precātī
nūmina sortītī*que* vicēs ūnā undique *circum*
fundimur, et tēlō lūmen terebrāmus acūtō
ingēns quod torvā *sōlum sub* fronte latēbat,
Argolicī clipeī *aut* Phoebēae lampadis īnstar,
et tandem laetī sociōrum ulcīscimur *umbrās*.
Sed fugite, Ō miserī, fugite atque ab lītore fūnem
rumpite.
Nam quālis quantus*que* cavō Polyphēmus *in* antrō
lānigerās claudit pecudēs *atque* ūbera pressat,
centum *aliī* curva *haec* habitant *ad lītora* vulgō
īnfandī Cyclōpes *et altīs montibus errant*.
Tertia *jam* lūnae *sē* cornua *lūmine* complent

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, acute
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
centum hundred*
cervīx, īcis *f.* neck
claudō, ere, sī, sus shut (in), (in)close*
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle†
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete
cornū, ūs *n.* horn, tip, end
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
curvus, a, um curved, curving, arched*
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants
ērūctō (1) belch out, vomit (forth)
frōns, frontis *f.* forehead, front, brow*
frustum, ī *n.* piece, fragment, morsel
fūnis, is *m.* rope, cable, cord
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess
immēnsus, a, um enormous, immense
īnfandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
īnflectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, turn†
īnstar *n.* likeness, appearance (*gen.*)
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
lampas, adis *f.* torch, lamp, light†
lāniger, era, erum wool-bearing, woolly†
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
merum, ī *n.* (unmixed) wine
pecus, udis *f.* animal, member of flock*
Phoebēus, a, um of Phoebus (Apollo), god of light, music, and prophecy†
Polyphēmus, ī *m.* a one-eyed, man-eating giant, one of the Cyclopes†
precor, ārī, ātus pray (to, for), entreat*
pressō (1) press, squeeze, crush†
quālis, e of what sort, what kind*
quantus, a, um how great, how much, as great as*
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
saniēs, ēī *f.* blood, gore
sortior, īrī, ītus obtain by lot, allot
terebrō (1) bore, pierce
tertius, a, um third*
torvus, a, um fierce, scowling, grim†
ūber, eris *n.* udder, breast, fertility
ulcīscor, ī, ultus avenge, punish
ūnā together, at the same time
undique on (from) all sides*
vicis (*gen.; no nom.*) *f.* change, alternation; danger
vulgō commonly, everywhere†

631. (Cyclōps) **posuit. per:** denoting the huge size of the monster.

633. merō: given to the Cyclops by Ulysses.

634. vicēs (nostrās): the part each is to play in the following action.

635. tēlō: a sharpened stake, with blazing point. **lūmen** = **oculum**, as often.

636. latēbat: the deep-set eye seemed to hide beneath his beetling brow.

637. Argolicī clipeī (īnstar): the **clipeus** was a large round shield, bright and shining, and big enough to cover the body of a man. **Phoebēae lampadis:** *the sun;* gen. with **īnstar**, referring to the size and dazzling effect of the Cyclops's eye.

639–640. fugite, rumpite: imperatives.

641–643. quālis quantusque (est) Polyphēmus (quī) claudit, centum (tālēs tantīque) aliī habitant.

644. (in) **montibus. Cyclōpĕs:** with short **ĕ**, a Greek form; App. 65, *a*.

645. Tertia: translate as though an

cum vītam in silvīs inter dēserta ferārum
lūstra *domōsque trahō, vastōsque ab* rūpe Cyclōpas
prōspiciō sonitum*que pedum vōcemque* tremēscō.
Vīctum *īnfēlīcem*, bācās lapidōsa*que* corna,
dant rāmī, *et* vulsīs pascunt rādīcibus herbae.
Omnia conlūstrāns *hanc prīmum ad lītora classem*
cōnspexī *venientem. Huic mē*, quaecumque *fuisset*,
addīxī: satis *est gentem* effūgisse nefandam.
Vōs animam hanc potius quōcumque absūmite lētō.'
Vix ea fātus erat summō cum monte vidēmus
ipsum inter pecudēs *vastā sē* mōle *moventem*
pāstōrem Polyphēmum *et lītora* nōta *petentem*,
mōnstrum horrendum, īnforme, *ingēns, cui lūmen* adēmptum.

---

absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus consume, destroy
addīcō, ere, dixī, dictus assign to, surrender†
adlmō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus remove†
bāca, ae *f.* berry†
conlūstrō (1) light up, survey, traverse†
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at
cornum, ī *n.* cornel berry†
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
effugiō, ere, fūgī escape, shun, avoid
fera, ae *f.* wild beast, animal
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
horrendus, a, um horrifying, horrible*
īnformis, e shapeless, monstrous
lapidōsus, a, um stony, hard†
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
lūstrum, ī *n.* bog, fen, lair†
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
mōnstrum, ī *n.* portent, monster, marvel*
nefandus, a, um unspeakable, terrible
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed (on), graze
pāstor, ōris *m.* shepherd, herdsman
pecus, udis *f.* animal, member of a herd*
Polyphēmus, ī *m.* a one-eyed, man-eating giant, one of the Cyclopes
potius rather, preferably†
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus discern, look forth (on)
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whichever, whatever*
rādīx, īcis *f.* root
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, bough, twig*
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
sat(is) sufficient(ly), enough*
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
tremēscō, ere tremble (at), shake†
vellō, ere, vulsī, vulsus pluck, pull (up)
vīctus, ūs *m.* food, victuals, living

---

adverb, *for the third time;* i.e., the moon has been full three times since . . .

646–647. cum trahō: English employs the perfect, *since I have been dragging* (*out*). The present tense is used, as in French, to indicate that this condition continues into the present: *I am still dragging* (*out*); App. 351, 1, *b*.

650. dant (mihi), pascunt (mē). vulsīs rādīcibus: abl. of means.

652. quaecumque fuisset: *whatever it should be*, implied indir. disc.; App. 390.

653. gentem nefandam = the Cyclopes.

654. hanc (meam) animam = vītam. **potius (quam mē relinquātis). absūmite:** imp.

655–714. Frightened by the appearance of Polyphemus and the other Cyclopes, the Trojans flee in terror, but remembering the advice of Helenus, they avoid the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis and sail around the eastern, southern, and western coast of Sicily to Drepanum, where Anchises dies.

655. summō (in) monte.

656. vastā mōle: abl. of quality or manner; App. 330, 328.

658. A shaggy verse, corresponding to the sense. **cui:** dat. of separation; App. 305. **lūmen** (= oculus) **adēmptum (erat).**

Trunca *manum* pīnus regit *et* vestīgia firmat;
lānigerae comitantur ovēs; *ea sōla* voluptās
sōlāmen*que* malī.
Postquam *altōs* tetigit *flūctūs et ad aequora vēnit,*
lūminis effossī fluidum lavit inde cruōrem
dentibus īnfrendēns gemitū, graditur*que per aequor*
jam medium, necdum *flūctus* latera ardua tīnxit.
Nōs procul inde *fugam* trepidī celerāre receptō
supplice *sīc* meritō tacitī*que* incīdere fūnem,
vertimus *et* prōnī certantibus *aequora rēmīs.*
Sēnsit, *et ad* sonitum *vōcis* vestīgia torsit.
Vērum *ubi nūlla datur dextrā* adfectāre potestās
nec potis Īoniōs *flūctūs* aequāre *sequendō,*

---

adfectō (1) grasp (at), seize†
aequō (1) equal(ize), match, even, level*
arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering*
celerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
certō (1) strive, struggle, vie
comitor, ārī, ātus accompany, attend, escort, follow*
cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
dēns, dentis *m.* tooth
effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus dig out, gouge out, excavate
firmō (1) strengthen, support
fluidus, a, um flowing, liquid, fluid†
fūnis, is *m.* rope, cable, cordage
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
gradior, ī, gressus walk, stride, march, go
incīdō, ere, ī, sus cut†
inde then(ce), thereupon, next*
īnfrend(e)ō, ĕre gnash, grate†
Īonius, a, um Ionian, a sea off the western coast of Greece
lāniger, era, erum wool-bearing, woolly
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
lavō, āre (ere), (āv)ī, ātus (lautus) wash†
malum, ī *n.* trouble, evil, woe, misfortune*
mereor, ērī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
necdum not yet
ovis, is *f.* sheep, ewe†
pīnus, ūs (ī) *f.* pine tree†
postquam after (that), when*
potestās, ātis *f.* power, ability, opportunity†
potis, e able, powerful†
prōnus a, um bending forward, sloping
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus take (back), welcome, receive*
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, guide*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive, understand, feel
sōlāmen, inis *n.* solace, consolation†
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
tacitus, a, um silent, noiseless, still
tangō, ere, tetigī, tactus touch, reach*
ting(u)ō, ere, tīnxī, tīnctus wet, tinge
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, whirl, sway, turn*
trepidus, a, um trembling, alarmed
truncus, a, um lopped, trimmed†
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour
vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change*
vērum but, indeed, truly
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* (foot)step, trace, track*
voluptās, ātis *f.* pleasure, joy, delight†

---

659. manum: i.e., he uses the trunk of a pine tree as a cane.

660. (illum) comitantur. ea (erat illī): ea, although referring to **ovēs,** is attracted into the number and gender of the predicate noun **voluptās;** App. 240, *a.*

662. aequora (alta).

663. inde: with water from the sea.

664. dentibus: abl. of means. **gemitū:** abl. of manner.

666–667. celerāre, incīdere: historical infinitives; App. 257. **receptō supplice:** abl. abs., referring to Achaemenides. **sīc meritō:** *having deserved* (it, by warning us of the danger).

668. vertimus et = et vertimus. rēmīs: abl. of means.

669. (Polyphēmus id) sēnsit. vōcis: *the splash* (of the oars).

670. adfectāre (nōs) potestās: for the prose construction **adfectandī (nōs) potestās;** App. 264.

671. potis (est Polyphēmus) = potest Polyphēmus. sequendō (nōs).

clāmōrem immēnsum *tollit, quō* pontus *et omnēs*
contremuēre *undae,* penitus*que* exterrita *tellūs*
Ītaliae curvīs*que* immūgiit Aetna cavernīs.
At genus ē silvīs Cyclōpum *et montibus altīs*
excītum *ruit ad portūs et lītora* complent.
Cernimus astantīs nēquīquam *lūmine* torvō
Aetnaeōs frātrēs *caelō capita alta ferentīs,*
concilium horrendum: quālēs *cum* vertice celsō
āeriae quercūs *aut* cōniferae cyparissī
cōnstiterunt, *silva alta Jovis* lūcus*ve* Diānae.
Praecipitīs metus ācer *agit* quōcumque rudentīs
excutere *et ventīs* intendere *vēla* secundīs.

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited*
āerius, a, um airy, lofty
Aetna, ae *f.* volcano of Sicily
Aetnaeus, a, um of Etna, a volcano of Sicily†
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)*
caverna, ae *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete
concilium, (i)ī *n.* gathering, assemblage
cōnifer, era, erum cone-bearing†
cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand (firm)
contremīscō, ere, tremuī tremble, shake†
curvus, a, um curved, curving, winding*
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants
cyparissus, ī *f.* cypress, an evergreen tree sacred to Diana and the dead†
Diāna, ae *f.* goddess of the chase, of the moon, and of Hades
exciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus summon (forth), arouse†
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake out, loosen*
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify
frāter, tris *m.* brother*
horrendus, a, um horrifying, terrible*
immēnsus, a, um immense, enormous
immūgiō, īre, īvī (iī) bellow, roar†
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch (out, to, toward)
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
penitus within, deep(ly), wholly*
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
quālis, e of what sort, of what kind, such (as)*
quercus, ūs *f.* oak, a tree sacred to Jove†
quōcumque where(so)ever
rudēns, entis *m.* cable, rope, cordage
secundus, a, um favorable, second*
torvus, a, um savage, scowling, grim
vertex, icis *m.* peak, summit, head, top*

---

672. quō: abl. of cause.

673. contremuēre = contremuērunt. exterrita (est).

675–676. genus ruit et complent: observe the singular verb followed by the plural, since genus is collective and may take either; App. 236, *a*.

677. lūmine torvō: *with glaring eye;* effective use of the singular to emphasize the fact that each Cyclops had but one eye. **nēquīquam:** because unable to do us harm.

678. caelō: dat. of direction; App. 306. **Aetnaeōs frātrēs:** the Cyclopes who lived around Mt. Etna.

679. (in) vertice (montis).

681. cōnstitērunt: with the penult irregularly short. **silva Jovis = quercūs; lūcus Diānae = cyparissī;** since the oak was sacred to Jove and the cypress to Hecate, the Diana of Hades.

682. metus ācer agit (nōs) praecipitīs.

683. ventīs secundīs: abl. of means; apparently a south wind. In their anxiety to escape the Cyclopes the Trojans flee with the wind, in spite of the warning of Helenus, but suddenly recalling the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis, they turn back, and with the aid of the wind, which has veered to the north, they sail safely past the land of the Cyclopes.

Contrā jussa monent Helenī, Scyllam *atque* Charybdim
inter, utramque *viam* lētī discrīmine parvō,
nī *teneant cursūs;* certum *est dare* lintea retrō.
Ecce autem Boreās angustā *ab sēde* Pelōrī
missus adest: vīvō praetervehor ōstia *saxō*
Pantagiae Megarōs*que* sinūs Thapsum*que* jacentem.
Tālia mōnstrābat relegēns *errāta* retrōrsus
lītora Achaemenidēs, *comes īnfēlīcis* Ulixī.
Sīcaniō praetenta sinū jacet īnsula contrā
Plēmyrium undōsum, *nōmen dīxēre* priōrēs
Ortygiam. Alphēum *fāma est hūc* Ēlidis amnem

Achaemenidēs, ae *m.* comrade of Ulysses, rescued by Aeneas from the land of the Cyclopes
Alphēus, ī *m.* Greek river (god) in love with the nymph Arethusa, whom he pursued under the sea to Sicily where he reappeared in her fountain at Syracuse†
amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
angustus, a, um narrow, strait
autem moreover, however, but*
Boreās, ae *m.* north wind†
certus, a, um certain, fixed, sure, determined*
Charybdis, is *f.* dangerous whirlpool opposite Scylla, between Italy and Sicily
contrā opposite, on the contrary, facing (*acc.*)*
discrīmen, inis *n.* crisis, difference; danger
ecce see! look! behold!*
Ēlis, idis *f.* district of southwestern Greece†
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
īnsula, ae *f.* island
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
linteum, ī *n.* linen; sail†
Megarus, a, um of Megara, a city of Sicily†
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, teach*
nisi, nī if not, unless*
Ortygia, ae *f.* an island off Syracuse
ōstium, (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance, harbor
Pantagiās, ae *m.* river of Sicily†
parvus, a, um small, little*
Pelōrus, ī *m.* promontory of northeast Sicily
Plēmyrium, (i)ī *n.* promontory of Sicily near the harbor of Syracuse†
praetendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch before†
praetervehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry (beyond), convey (past)†
prior, ius former, sooner, prior*
relegō, ere, lēgī, lēctus retrace, pass over again†
retrō back(ward), again, anew
retrōrsus, um back(ward)†
Scylla, ae *f.* sea-monster, with the head and body of a woman, girt with dogs or wolves
Sīcanius, a, um Sicanian, Sicilian†
sinus, ūs *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
Thapsus, ī *m.* city of Sicily†
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
undōsus, a, um full of waves, wave-beaten†
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*
vīvus, a, um living, alive, natural

684–685. Contrā inter Scyllam atque Charybdim: App. 414. **utramque viam:** in apposition with **Scyllam atque Charybdim. discrīmine parvō:** abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329. Translate, *each a way of death with little difference.*

686. nī (sociī meī) teneant cursūs: *that they should not hold their course;* substantive clause developed from volitive, the object of monent; App. 360. **nī** is here equivalent to **nē. certum est (nōbīs):** *we decide;* i.e., we determine to risk the dangers of the Cyclopes rather than those of Scylla and Charybdis.

688. missus: by some thoughtful and sympathetic divinity. **vīvō saxō:** *living* (i.e., *natural*) *rock*, as in I, 167; abl. of material; App. 324.

690. errāta: *having been wandered over* (*before*), modifies lītora, and refers to his previous voyage with Ulysses.

692. Sīcaniō sinū: dat. with compound, refers to the harbor of Syracuse.

693. dīxēre = dīxērunt = vocāvērunt.

694–695. fāma est Alphēum amnem Ēlidis ēgisse hūc occultās viās.

occultās *ēgisse viās* subter *mare, quī nunc*
ōre, Arethūsa, *tuō* Siculīs cōnfunditur *undīs.*
Jussī nūmina magna locī venerāmur, *et* inde
exsuperō praepingue solum stāgnantis Helōrī.
Hinc altās cautēs prōjectaque *saxa* Pachȳnī
rādimus, *et fātīs* numquam concessa *movērī*
appāret Camerīna *procul campīque* Gelōī,
immānisque Gelā fluviī cognōmine *dicta.*
Arduus inde Acragās ostentat *maxima* longē
moenia, magnanimum *quondam* generātor *equōrum:*
tēque datīs linquō *ventīs,* palmōsa Selīnūs,
et vada dūra legō *saxīs* Lilybēia caecīs.

Acragās, antis *m.* Agrigentum, a Greek city of southwestern Sicily†
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering*
Arethūsa, ae *f.* nymph of a famous Syracusan fountain, beloved by the river (god) Alpheüs†
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, secret*
Camerīna, ae *f.* a Greek city of southern Sicily†
cautēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, ledge
cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, title
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, allow
cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour together, mix
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, dangerous*
exsuperō (1) rise above, (sur)pass
fluvius, (i)ī *m.* river, stream, flood
Gelā, ae *f.* a Greek city of southern Sicily†
Gelōus, a, um of Gela, a city of southern Sicily†
generātor, ōris *m.* producer, breeder†
Helōrus, ī *m.* river of southeastern Sicily†
inde then(ce), thereupon, next*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus gather, collect, traverse, skim, skirt*
Lilybēius, a, um Lilybean, of Lilybaeum, a promontory on the western coast of Sicily†
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
longē far (away), at a distance*
magnanimus, a, um great-souled, generous, spirited
numquam never, at no time
occulō, ere, uī, ltus hide, secrete, conceal
ostentō (1) show, display, exhibit, parade†
Pachȳnus (um), ī *m.* (*n.*) promontory of southeastern Sicily
palmōsus, a, um full of palms, palmy†
praepinguis, e very fat, very rich†
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast forth, jut†
rādō, ere, ī, sus scrape, graze, skirt†
Selīnūs, untis *f.* city of southwestern Sicily†
Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily
solum, ī *n.* ground, soil, earth*
stāgnāns, antis stagnant, marshy†
subter beneath, under (*acc.*)†
vadum, ī *n.* shallow, ford, depth
veneror, ārī, ātus reverence, entreat

---

696. ōre, Arethūsa, tuō: *at your fountain* (ōre), *Arethusa.* According to the story, the river Alpheüs of Elis in Greece fell in love with the nymph of the fountain Arethusa and pursued her under the sea to Syracuse, where she emerged. Cf. Shelley's *Arethusa.*

697. Jussī: presumably by Helenus.

700. fātīs: abl. of accordance; App. 326.

701. Camerīna: contrary to the commands of an oracle, the people of Camerina drained a neighboring marsh of the same name, and through this space their enemies advanced and captured the city.

702. Gelā: nom. sing. with long final vowel, a Greek form. **fluviī:** there is only one other example in Vergil (IX, 151) of the double i in the gen. ending of nouns in **ius, ium.** **dicta = vocāta.**

704. magnanim(ōr)um: *spirited.* **quondam:** from the point of view of Vergil, not Aeneas.

705. datīs ventīs: the gods are with them and have again changed the winds for them, as they have now rounded the southern point of Sicily and are veering toward the north.

706. saxīs: abl. of cause with **dūra,** *dangerous.*

Hinc Drepanī *mē portus et* inlaetābilis *ōra*
accipit. Hīc pelagī tot tempestātibus *āctus*
heu, genitōrem, omnis cūrae cāsūsque levāmen,
āmittō *Anchīsēn. Hīc mē, pater* optime, *fessum*
dēseris, *heu, tantīs* nēquīquam *ērepte* perīclīs!
Nec vātēs Helenus, *cum multa* horrenda monēret,
hōs mihi praedīxit lūctūs, *nōn* dīra Celaenō.
Hic labor extrēmus, *longārum haec* mēta *viārum.*
Hinc mē dīgressum vestrīs *deus* appulit *ōrīs.*"
Sīc pater Aenēās intentīs *omnibus ūnus*
fāta renārrābat *dīvum cursūsque* docēbat.
Conticuit *tandem factōque hīc fīne* quiēvit.

āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive to (*dat.*)
Celaenō, ūs *f.* chief of the harpies, foul monsters with bodies of birds and faces of women
conticēscō, ere, ticuī become silent, hush
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dīgredior, ī, gressus depart, separate
dīrus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, inform, tell*
Drepanum, ī *n.* city of western Sicily†
extrēmus, a, um utmost, last, extreme*
Helenus, ī *m.* a seer, son of Priam
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dreadful*
inlaetābilis, e mournful, desolate†
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch (toward, to, out)
levāmen, inis *n.* alleviation, solace†
lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, sorrow, lament
mēta, ae *f.* turning point, goal, limit
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
optimus, a, um best, finest, dearest
perīc(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk
praedīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus foretell, predict
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus become quiet, rest*
renārrō (1) relate, recount†
tempestās, ātis *f.* weather, storm; season*
tot so many, as many*
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*

---

707. inlaetābilis: because Anchises died there.

709. cūrae cāsūsque: objective genitives; App. 284.

710–711. pater: voc., modified by optime and ērepte. **nēquīquam:** since he did not live to reach the Promised Land. **perīc(u)līs:** dat. of separation; the longer form (⏑ – ⏑ –) could not be used in hexameter.

712. monēret: cum concessive; App. 379.

713. Celaenō nōn (hōs mihi praedīxit lūctūs).

714. Hic (fuit), haec (fuit): the pronouns agree with their predicate nouns, **labor** and **mēta**; App. 240, *a*.

715–718. Setting sail from Drepanum for Italy, the goal of their wanderings, the Trojans are overtaken by a violent storm and driven to the northern coast of Africa, as described in the first book of the *Aeneid*. Aeneas thus completes the story of his adventures. During the whole recital Dido's interest has been growing, and she has fallen deeply in love with Aeneas as the hero of these marvelous adventures.

715. Hinc: the story thus connects with I, 34 (**vix ē cōnspectū Siculae tellūris**, etc.).

716. intentīs omnibus: just as in II, 1, at the beginning of Aeneas's speech.

717. renārrābat: *recounted, related* (not *retold*, but went through them again by thus recalling them). **dīv(ōr)um.**

718. factō fīne: abl. abs. and alliteration; App. 343, 411.

BOOK IV

AT rēgīna gravī jamdūdum saucia *cūrā*
vulnus alit vēnīs *et* caecō carpitur *ignī*.
Multa virī virtūs *animō multusque* recursat
gentis honōs: haerent īnfīxī *pectore* vultūs
verba*que, nec* placidam membrīs *dat cūra* quiētem.
Postera Phoebēā lūstrābat lampade *terrās*
ūmentem*que* Aurōra polō dīmōverat *umbram*,
cum sīc ūnanimam adloquitur male sāna sorōrem:
"Anna soror, *quae mē* suspēnsam īnsomnia terrent!
Quis novus hic nostrīs successit *sēdibus* hospes, 10

adloquor, ī, locūtus address, accost
alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, cherish
Anna, ae *f.* sister of Dido†
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume, waste
dīmoveō, ēre, ōvī, ōtus divide, remove
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus stick (to), cling (to) (*dat.*)*
hospes, itis *m.* (*f.*) guest, host, stranger
īnfīgō, ere, xī, xus fix (in, on), fasten
īnsomnium, (i)ī *n.* dream, vision in sleep†
jamdūdum long since, for some time
lampas, adis *f.* torch, lamp, light
lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify*
male badly, ill, scarce, not
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
Phoebēus, a, um of Phoebus (Apollo), god of light, music, and prophecy*
placidus, a, um calm, kindly, quiet*
polus, ī *m.* pole, sky, heaven
posterus, a, um following, later, next
quiēs, ētis *f.* quiet, sleep, rest*
recursō (1) run back, come back, recur
sānus, a, um sane, sound, rational†
saucius, a, um wounded, hurt
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach (*dat.*)
suspēnsus, a, um suspended, agitated
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
ūmēns, entis moist, dewy, wet
ūnanimus, a, um one-minded, sympathizing†
vēna, ae *f.* vein†
verbum, ī *n.* word, speech, talk
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manliness, virtue, valor*
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

1–30. Dido, madly in love with Aeneas, discloses her feelings to her sister Anna.

The Dido episode is one of the most famous in all literature, and its effect on later writers has been marked. One of the best known of the English versions is found in Chaucer's *Legend of Good Women*.

1. At: denotes the return of the poet to his own narrative and contrasts the restlessness of Dido with the calm (quiēvit) indicated by the last line of III. **rēgīna:** Dido. **gravī cūrā:** *passionate love.*

2. vēnīs, ignī: ablatives of means.

3. Multa, multus: the repetition intentionally strengthens and makes more vivid the idea of frequency and repetition; App. 413. **virī = Aenēae. animō = ad animum:** dat. of direction.

4. gentis honōs: his noble birth, being a member of the royal family and descended from Jupiter and Venus. **(in) pectore.**

5. verba: the four causes mentioned as arousing the love of the queen for Aeneas are: his courage (**virtūs**), his noble birth (**gentis honōs**), his handsome appearance (**vultūs**), and his fine words (**verba**).

6–7. Postera Aurōra lūstrābat. Phoebēā lampade = *with the sun's rays.*

7. IV, 7 = III, 589.

8. male sāna = nōn sāna = īnsāna: cf. **male fīda = īnfīda,** II, 23; litotes; App. 431.

10. Quis (est) hic novus hospes, (quī) nostrīs sēdibus successit: *what a marvelous stranger this is, who has come to our house!*

quem sēsē ōre ferēns, quam fortī *pectore et armīs!*
Crēdō equidem, *nec* vāna fidēs, *genus esse deōrum.*
Dēgenerēs *animōs* timor arguit. *Heu, quibus ille*
jactātus *fātīs! Quae bella* exhausta canēbat!
Sī mihi nōn animō fīxum immōtumque sedēret
nē cui mē vinclō *vellem* sociāre jugālī,
postquam *prīmus amor* dēceptam *morte* fefellit;
sī nōn pertaesum thalamī taedaeque *fuisset,*
huic ūnī forsan *potuī* succumbere culpae.
Anna, fatēbor enim, *miserī* post *fāta* Sychaeī
conjugis et sparsōs frāternā caede penātīs
sōlus hic inflexit sēnsūs *animumque* labantem

Anna, ae *f.* sister of Dido
arguō, ere, uī, ūtus prove, make clear†
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, recount*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
culpa, ae *f.* fault, blame, weakness, sin
dēcipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus deceive
dēgener, eris degenerate, base, ignoble
enim for, indeed, truly*
equidem indeed, truly*
exhauriō, īre, hausī, haustus drain, exhaust; bear [mock*
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, cheat, **fateor, ērī, fassus** confess, agree
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, belief, trust(worthiness)*
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, imprint*
fors(it)an perhaps, perchance
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
frāternus, a, um fraternal, of a brother†
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable
īnflectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, turn
jactō (1) toss, buffet, hurl, fling*
jugālis, e of wedlock, matrimonial†
labō (1) totter, waver, vacillate
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
pertaedet, ēre, taesum it wearies (*gen.*)†
post after, behind (*acc.*); later*
postquam after (that), when*
quam how, than, as*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle*
sēnsus, ūs *m.* feeling, perception, sense†
sociō (1) unite, ally, share (as partner)
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
succumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus yield (to) (*dat.*)†
Sychaeus, ī *m.* deceased husband of Dido
taeda, ae *f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)†
thalamus, ī *m.* (bridal) chamber, wedlock*
timor, ōris *m.* fear, dread, cowardice
vānus, a, um vain, empty, idle, groundless
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* chain, bond, cable*

---

11. quem sēsē ōre ferēns: *how noble in appearance.* quam fortī pectore et (fortibus) armīs: ablatives of quality; App. 330.

12. (illum) esse genus deōrum. nec (mea) fidēs (est) vāna.

13. Dēgenerēs: therefore Aeneas's soul is not dēgener, as he has always been so fearless.

14. jactātus (est).

15. (in) animō. Sī . . . nōn . . . sedēret: condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

16. nē vellem: *not to be willing,* substantive clause, subject of **sedēret**; App. 360. **cui:** indefinite, *any one.* **vinc(u)lō jugālī:** *in bonds of wedlock.*

17. (mē) dēceptam fefellit = mē dēcēpit et fefellit.

18. sī nōn (mē) pertaesum fuisset. thalamī, taedae: genitives with the impersonal **pertaedet**; App. 290. **taedae:** *the (marriage) torch,* by metonymy for *marriage;* App. 433. Torches were carried by attendants in the wedding procession. Cf. Milton, *Paradise Lost,* XI, 590–591:

"They light the nuptial torch and bid
Invoke Hymen."

19. potuī: the ind. instead of the more usual subj. expresses the conclusion in a more positive way, as though it were practically realized; App. 382, *d.* **huic ūnī culpae:** dat. with compound; Dido refers to the sin (**culpa**) of loving Aeneas after having sworn eternal fidelity to her former husband, Sychaeus.

21. frāternā: equivalent to a subj. gen. with **caede**; *the murder of Sychaeus by my brother.* Cf. I, 343–356.

22–23. sōlus hic (Aenēās). hic: with a short syllable here instead of the more usual long: App. 107, 3, *c.* **(meum)**

Gramstorff Bros. *Luigi Sabatelli*

THE GODS DECIDING THE FATE OF TROY

Gramstorff Bros. *P.-N. Guérin*

impulit. Agnōscō veteris vestīgia *flammae.*
Sed mihi vel tellūs optem prius *īma* dehīscat
vel pater omnipotēns abigat *mē* fulmine *ad umbrās,*
pallentīs *umbrās* Erebō *noctemque* profundam,
ante, pudor, quam *tē* violō *aut tua* jūra resolvō.
Ille meōs, prīmus quī mē sibi jūnxit, *amōrēs*
abstulit; *ille habeat sēcum servetque* sepulcrō."
Sīc effāta sinum *lacrimīs* implēvit obortīs.

Anna *refert:* "*Ō lūce* magis dīlēcta sorōrī,
sōlane perpetuā maerēns carpēre juventā
nec dulcīs *nātōs* Veneris *nec* praemia nōris?
Id cinerem *aut* mānīs crēdis cūrāre sepultōs?

---

abigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive (away), force†
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
Anna, ae *f.* sister of Dido
auferō, erre, abstulī, ablātus take away, carry off
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume, waste
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
cūrō (1) care (for, to), heed, regard
dehīscō, ere yawn, gape, open (up)
dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus love, cherish
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
effor, ārī, ātus speak out, say
Erebus, ī *m.* underworld, Hades†
fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus strike, drive on
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, sate*
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
jūs, jūris *n.* right, law, decree, justice
juventa, ae *f.* youth, young manhood, young womanhood
maereō, ēre mourn, grieve, pine
magis more, rather*
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; *perf.* know*
oborior, īrī, ortus (a)rise, spring up
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)*
pallēns, entis pale, pallid, wan†
perpetuus, a, um continual, lasting†
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
prius sooner, before
profundus, a, um deep, profound, vast
pudor, ōris *m.* shame, modesty, honor†
quam how, than, as*
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax
sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), pultus bury, inter
sepulcrum, ī *n.* tomb, grave, burial
sinus, ūs *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty, love*
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace*
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
violō (1) outrage, violate, defile

---

animum labantem impulit = meum animum sīc impulit ut labāret; App. 440.

24–25. tellūs īma: *the lowest (deeps of) the earth;* App. 246. **prius:** with **quam,** l. 27, but repeated as **ante** in l. 27 because of the intervening clauses. **optem:** potential subj.; App. 252. **(ut) dehīscat, (ut) abigat:** substantive clauses developed from the optative; App. 360. **pater omnipotēns = Juppiter. ad umbrās = ad mortem,** defined by the next verse.

27. ante: repeating **prius** of l. 24. **pudor:** the Romans considered it quite discreditable for a widow to marry.

28. Ille: Sychaeus.

29. habeat (meōs amōrēs) servetque (eōs in) sepulcrō: volitive (jussive) subjunctives; App. 254.

30. lacrimīs: an indication of the strength of the feeling she is trying to suppress.

31–53. Anna encourages Dido to look forward to marriage with Aeneas.

31. magis dīlēcta: *more beloved = dearer.* **lūce (= vītā):** abl. with comparative; App. 327. **sorōrī = mihi:** dat. of agent; App. 302.

32. juventā: abl. of time; practically equivalent to an acc. of duration; App. 322, 314. **carpēre = carpēris;** App. 204, 4.

33. Veneris praemia: *the joys of love.* **nō(ve)ris:** fut. perf.; with force of a fut.

34. Id: whether you remarry or not. **cinerem aut mānīs (Sychaeī). subjects** of **cūrāre.** Anna's answer to Dido's statement in ll. 28–29 is that her actions

Estō: aegram *nūllī quondam* flexēre marītī,
nōn Libyae, *nōn ante* Tyrō; dēspectus Iarbās
ductōrēs*que alīī, quōs* Āfrica *terra* triumphis
dīves alit: placitō*ne* etiam pugnābis *amōrī?*
Nec venit in mentem quōrum cōnsēderis *arvīs?*
Hinc Gaetūlae *urbēs, genus* īnsuperābile *bellō,*
et Numidae īnfrēnī cingunt *et* inhospita Syrtis;
hinc dēserta sitī regiō lātē*que furentēs*
Barcaeī. *Quid bella* Tyrō *surgentia dīcam*
germānī*que* minās?
Dīs equidem auspicibus reor *et Jūnōne* secundā

---

aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
Āfricus, a, um African, of Africa†
alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, rear
auspex, icis *m.* protector, guide; seer
Barcaeī, ōrum *m.* tribe of North Africa†
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird(le)*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down), settle*
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dēspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look down on, scorn, despise, disdain†
dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, chieftain, guide
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
flectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, move
Gaetūlus, a, um of the Gaetuli, a tribe of North Africa†
germānus, ī *m.* brother*
Iarbās, ae *m.* African chieftain, one of Dido's suitors†
īnfrēnus, a, um unbridled, without bridles†
inhospitus, a, um inhospitable, wild†
īnsuperābilis, e unconquerable†
lātē widely, far and wide
Libya, ae *f.* country of North Africa*
marītus, ī *m.* (prospective) husband, suitor
minae, ārum *f.* threat, menace, peril
Numidae, ārum *m.* tribe of North Africa†
placeō, ēre, uī, itus please (*dat.*)
pugnō (1) fight, oppose, resist (*dat.*)†
regiō, ōnis *f.* region, district, quarter
reor, rērī, ratus think, suppose, reckon
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
sitis, is *f.* thirst, drought†
Syrtis, is *f.* region of quicksand on the northern coast of Africa
triumphus, ī *m.* triumph, victory
Tyrus, ī *f.* famous city of Phoenicia, birthplace of Dido

---

cannot possibly disturb the ashes and shade of Sychaeus.

35. Estō: imp. 3d sing. of **sum**; (*so*) *be it, granted that.* (**tē**) **aegram:** *while you mourned for your husband* (during the time immediately following his death).

36. Libyae: loc.; App. 345. (**in**) **Tyrō:** loc. abl. **dēspectus (est tibi).**

37–38. Āfrica terra triumphīs dīves: Vergil is thinking of the many triumphs later celebrated by Roman generals for their victories in Africa, **triumphīs** being abl. of respect with **dīves**; App. 325. **placitō:** with active force, *agreeable, pleasing* (*to you*). **pugnābis** = **resistēs. amōrī:** dat. with special verb; App. 297.

39. Nec venit in (tuam) mentem: *does it not occur to you?* **quōrum consēderis (in) arvīs:** indir. quest.; App. 349; subject of **venit**; *what sort of people* (i.e., how fierce and hostile) *they are in whose territory you have settled.*

40–42. Hinc . . . hinc: *from this side . . . from that side.* **īnfrēnī:** *unbridled;* possibly a play on words, denoting that the Libyans rode their horses without bridles and that they were a wild, fierce, unrestrained (unbridled) tribe. **cingunt (tē). sitī:** abl. of cause with **dēserta.**

43. Barcaeī (sunt). Tyrō: abl. of place from which; App. 320, *a.*

44. germānī: Pygmalion. See I, 346–364, 563–564.

45. Dīs auspicibus, Jūnōne secundā: ablatives absolute. **Jūnōne:** both as goddess of marriage and as guardian of Carthage.

hunc cursum Īliacās *ventō tenuisse* carīnās.
Quam tū urbem, soror, *hanc cernēs, quae surgere rēgna*
conjugiō *tālī! Teucrum* comitantibus *armīs*
Pūnica *sē* quantīs attollet glōria *rēbus!*
Tū modo posce *deōs* veniam, *sacrīsque* litātīs
indulgē hospitiō causās*que* innecte morandī,
dum pelagō dēsaevit hiems *et* aquōsus Orīōn,
quassātae*que* ratēs, *dum nōn* tractābile *caelum.*"
Hīs dictīs impēnsō *animum* flammāvit *amōre*
spem*que dedit* dubiae *mentī* solvit*que* pudōrem.
Principiō dēlūbra adeunt pācem*que per ārās*
exquīrunt; mactant lēctās *dē* mōre bidentīs
lēgiferae Cererī Phoebō*que patrīque* Lyaeō,

---

adeō, īre, ii (īvī), itus approach
aquōsus, a, um watery, rainy†
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
bidēns, entis *f.* with two teeth, two-year old sheep†
carīna, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, pretext*
Cerēs, eris *f.* (goddess of) grain
comitor, ārī, ātus accompany, escort, attend, follow*
conjugium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, husband, wife
dēlūbrum, ī *n.* shrine, temple, sanctuary
dēsaeviō, īre, īvī (ii), ītus rage (furiously)†
dubius, a, um doubtful, wavering
exquīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus seek (out)
flammō (1) inflame, burn, fire
glōria, ae *f.* renown, glory, fame, pride
hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm*
hospitium, (i)ī *n.* hospitality, welcome
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
impēnsus, a, um vast, vehement†
indulgeō, ēre, lsī, ltus indulge, favor (*dat.*)
innectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus weave, connect†
lēgifer, era, erum law-bringing†
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, collect*
litō (1) sacrifice (favorably), appease
Lyaeus, ī *m.* Bacchus, (god of) wine
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor
modo only, (just) now
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
Ōrīōn, ōnis *m.* the storm-bringing constellation, named for a famous hunter transported to heaven
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, grace, repose
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
principiō first(ly), in the first place
pudor, ōris *m.* shame, modesty, honor
Pūnicus, a, um Punic, Carthaginian
quantus, a, um how great, how much, how many*
quassō (1) shake, shatter, toss
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), release, break down, free, pay*
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
tractābilis, e manageable, favorable†
venia, ae *f.* favor, pardon, grace

---

46. hunc cursum: *their course hither.*

47. Quam, quae: *how great! what (a)!* quam urbem hanc cernēs (surgere), quae rēgna (cernēs) surgere.

48. conjugiō tālī: abl. of cause. Teucr(ōr)um.

49. quantīs rēbus: *to what heights of achievement!*

50. deōs veniam: two accusatives with a verb of asking; App. 316.

52. Orīōn: a constellation rising at the rainy and stormy season.

53. quassātae (sunt) ratēs. nōn tractābile (est) caelum.

54–89. Love drives Dido to frenzy.

54. (jam) impēnsō.

56. (Dīdō Annaque) adeunt. dēlūbra (urbis), ārās (urbis). pācem (deōrum), or pācem (deōs).

57. bidentīs: literally *two-toothed*, because of the two prominent teeth sheep have when about two years old. At this age they were considered especially acceptable for sacrifice.

58. lēgiferae: *law-giving*, because of the civilizing influence of agriculture on early man.

Jūnōnī ante omnīs, cui vincla jugālia *cūrae.*
Ipsa tenēns dextrā pateram pulcherrima *Dīdō*
candentis vaccae *media inter* cornua *fundit,*
aut ante ōra deum pinguīs spatiātur *ad ārās,*
īnstauratque *diem dōnīs,* pecudumque reclūsīs
pectoribus inhiāns spīrantia cōnsulit exta.
Heu, vātum ignārae *mentēs! Quid* vōta *furentem,*
quid dēlūbra juvant? Ēst mollīs *flamma* medullās
intereā *et* tacitum vīvit *sub pectore* vulnus.
Ūritur *īnfēlīx Dīdō tōtāque* vagātur
urbe furēns, quālis conjectā cerva sagittā,
quam procul incautam nemora *inter* Crēsia fīxit
pāstor *agēns tēlīs* līquitque volātile *ferrum*
nescius: *illa fugā silvās* saltūsque peragrat

candēns, entis white, shining, sleek
cerva, ae *f.* deer, doe†
conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl, shoot
cōnsulō, ere, uī, ltus consult, consider†
cornū, ūs *n.* horn, tip, end
Crēsius, a, um of Crete, Cretan†
dēlūbrum, ī *n.* shrine, temple, sanctuary
edō, ere (ēsse), ēdī, ēsus eat, consume†
exta, ōrum *n.* entrails, vitals†
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, pierce, imprint*
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
incautus, a, um unaware, unsuspecting
inhiō (1) yawn, gape†
īnstaurō (1) renew, refresh, repeat
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
jugālis, e of wedlock, matrimonial
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
medulla, ae *f.* marrow†
mollis, e soft, yielding, tender
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, wood*
nescius, a, um ignorant, unaware
pāstor, ōris *m.* shepherd, herdsman
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl
pecus, udis *f.* animal (of the flock)*
peragrō (1) wander through, scour
pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, noble, splendid, handsome, illustrious*
quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*
reclūdō, ere, sī, sus open, disclose
sagitta, ae *f.* arrow
saltus, ūs *m.* forest, glade, pasture†
spatior, ārī, ātus walk, stride†
spīrō (1) breathe (forth), blow, quiver
tacitus, a, um silent, noiseless, secret
ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn, consume
vacca, ae *f.* heifer, young cow†
vagor, ārī, ātus wander, roam
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* chain, bond, cable*
vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus live, be alive
volātilis, e flying, winged, swift†
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

59. Jūnōnī: as presiding over marriage. ante omnīs (aliōs deōs). cui vinc(u)la (sunt) cūrae: cui and cūrae are double datives; App. 303, *a*.

61. fundit (vīnum, *wine*): it was customary to pour an offering of wine between the horns of the victim as part of the sacrificial ceremony.

62. ante ōra de(ōr)um: i.e., before their images. pinguīs: modifying ārās; observe the long vowel of the ending. The altars were fat (rich) with offerings.

63. dōnīs: *gifts* (to the gods), *sacrifices*.

64. pectoribus: with the final syllable irregularly long under the metrical accent; App. 394, *a*.

65. vātum: the seers who interpret the omens apparently encourage Dido in her hopeless love, not realizing (mentēs ignārae) that she is past praying for. quid vōta (juvant) furentem (amōre): *how can sacrifices help one crazed (with love)?*

66. Ēst: from edō; observe the long vowel.

69–71. (in) urbe. furēns (amōre). quālis cerva (vagātur), sagittā conjectā (abl. abs.), quam incautam inter Crēsia nemora pāstor agēns tēlīs procul fīxit. The chance shot of a shepherd has taken effect without his knowing it. quam: refers to the *deer* (cerva).

72. nescius: i.e., of the success of his shot. fugā: abl. of manner.

Dictaeōs; haeret laterī lētālis harundō.
Nunc media Aenēān sēcum per moenia dūcit
Sīdoniās*que* ostentat opēs *urbemque parātam,*
incipit effārī *mediāque in vōce* resistit;
nunc eadem lābente diē convīvia *quaerit,*
Īliacōs*que* iterum dēmēns *audīre labōrēs*
exposcit pendet*que* iterum nārrantis *ab ōre.*
Post *ubi* dīgressī, *lūmenque* obscūra vicissim
lūna premit suādent*que* cadentia *sīdera somnōs,*
sōla domō maeret vacuā strātīs*que relictīs*
incubat. *Illum* absēns absentem *auditque videtque,*
aut gremiō Ascanium *genitōris* imāgine *capta*
dētinet, īnfandum *sī* fallere *possit amōrem.*

absēns, entis absent, separated, distant
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, set*
convīvium, (i)ī *n.* feast, banquet
dēmēns, entis crazy, mad, distracted
dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus retain, hold back
Dictaeus, a, um of Dicte, a mountain in Crete; Cretan
dīgredior, ī, gressus (de)part, separate
effor, ārī, ātus speak (out), say
exposcō, ere, poposcī demand, entreat
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, cheat, mock, beguile*
gremium, (i)ī *n.* bosom, lap, embrace
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling to, stick to (*dat.*)*
harundō, inis *f.* reed, arrow†
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
imāgō, inis *f.* likeness, form, phantom*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
incubō, āre, uī, itus recline (upon) (*dat.*)
īnfandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable
iterum again, anew, a second time*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
lētālis, e deadly, mortal, lethal, fatal†
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
maereō, ēre mourn, grieve, pine
nārrō (1) narrate, tell, recount
obscūrus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy*
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, wealth, power*
ostentō (1) show (off), display, exhibit, parade
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, depend*
post after, behind (*acc.*); afterward*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press*
resistō, ere, stitī stop, resist (*dat.*)
Sīdonius, a, um of Sidon, a famous city of Phoenicia
strātum, ī *n.* bed, couch; pavement
suādeō, ēre, āsī, āsus persuade, advise
vacuus, a, um empty, free, vacant
vicissim in turn, by turns†

75–76. Sīdoniās: Dido came from Tyre not from Sidon. Vergil's knowledge of geography is hazy, and he often confuses Tyre and Sidon, the two great cities of Phoenicia. Cf. I, 338. **opēs urbemque:** subtle temptations to the needy Aeneas and his followers (**omnium egēnōs,** I, 599), who were so eager to found a city where they might end their wanderings. **mediā:** App. 246.

77. lābente diē: *as the day wanes,* the usual time for the chief meal.

78. dēmēns: Aeneas's presence would serve to aggravate her unhappy passion.

79. pendet ab ōre (Aenēae) nārrantis: *hangs on his words.*

80. Post: adv. **ubi (omnēs) dīgressī (sunt). lūmen (suum).**

81. premit = reprimit.

82. strātīs relictīs (ab Aenēā): in the banqueting hall, after the guests have departed, she throws herself on the couch which Aeneas had occupied, to appease her sense of desolation felt in the absence of one secretly loved.

83. absēns absentem: bringing the same or similar words together is a favorite type of play on words among many classical authors.

84. Ascanium: he has now been brought back from Idalium, and Cupid is no longer substituting for him. Vergil, however, tells us nothing of this second exchange. **genitōris imāgine:** i.e., his resemblance to his father.

85. sī possit: implied indir. quest.; App. 349.

Nōn coeptae adsurgunt turrēs, *nōn arma* juventūs
exercet *portūsve aut* prōpugnācula *bellō*
tūta *parant:* pendent opera interrupta minae*que*
mūrōrum *ingentēs* aequāta*que* māchina *caelō*.
Quam simul ac tālī persēnsit peste *tenērī*
cāra *Jovis conjūnx nec fāmam* obstāre furōrī,
tālibus adgreditur Venerem Sāturnia *dictīs:*
"Ēgregiam vērō laudem *et* spolia ampla *refertis*
tūque puerque tuus (*magnum et* memorābile *nūmen*),
ūna dolō *dīvum sī* fēmina *victa* duōrum *est*.
Nec mē adeō fallit veritam *tē moenia nostra*
suspectās *habuisse domōs* Karthāginis *altae*.
Sed quis erit modus, *aut quō nunc* certāmine *tantō?*
Quīn potius pācem aeternam pactōs*que* hymenaeōs

adeō to such an extent, so (much)
adgredior, ī, gressus attack, address
adsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise
aequō (1) (make) equal, match, level, even*
aeternus, a, um everlasting, eternal*
amplus, a, um large, grand, ample, wide
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
certāmen, inis *n.* contest, rivalry, strife*
coepī, isse, ptus begin, commence
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud*
duo, ae, o two*
ēgregius, a, um remarkable, noble
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, exercise*
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, cheat, mock, escape the notice (of)*
fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
hymenaeus, ī *m.* wedding (hymn); Hymen
interrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus interrupt†
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men*
Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of North Africa
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
māchina, ae *f.* machine, engine, device
memorābilis, e memorable, glorious
minae, ārum *f.* threat, menace, pinnacle
modus, ī *m.* manner, measure, limit*
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, battlement*
obstō, āre, stitī, status oppose, resist (*dat.*)
opus, eris *n.* work, labor, deed, task*
pacīscor, ī, pactus stipulate, bargain, fix†
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, grace, repose
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, depend*
persentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel deeply, perceive (thoroughly)†
pestis, is *f.* plague, destruction, scourge
potius rather, preferably
prōpugnāculum, ī *n.* rampart, battlement†
quīn that not, but that, why not, nay even*
Sāturnia, ae *f.* daughter of Saturn, Juno
spolium, (i)ī *n.* booty, spoils, plunder
suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look from beneath, suspect
turris, is *f.* tower, turret
tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty; love*
vereor, ērī, itus fear, dread, revere
vērō truly, indeed, but

87. bellō: dat. of purpose.

88–89. minae mūrōrum: *threatenings of walls = threatening walls.* Cf. II, 235, rotārum lāpsūs, *glidings of wheels = gliding wheels.*

90–128. Juno favors the marriage, that she may turn Aeneas aside from Italy, and so agrees to help Venus consummate the affair, promising to devise a suitable situation.

90. Quam: Dido; subj. of tenērī, *that she was held.* peste = amōre; or = peste amōris.

91. fāmam: (regard for) *her reputation, good name.* Jovis conjūnx: Juno.

93. Ēgregiam: scornful sarcasm. refertis: a technical term for carrying off the spoils won in battle.

94. puer tuus: Cupid. (est) nūmen (vestrum).

96–97. adeō: *to such an extent* (as you think). tē habuisse: subj. of fallit.

98. modus (certāminis), aut quō (tendimus) certāmine tantō. quō: *whither, how far.*

99. Quīn = cūr nōn. hymenaeōs (Dīdōnis Aenēaeque).

exercēmus? *Habēs tōtā quod mente petīstī:*
ardet amāns *Dīdō trāxitque per* ossa furōrem.
Commūnem *hunc* ergō populum paribus*que* regāmus
auspiciīs; liceat Phrygiō servīre marītō
dōtālīs*que tuae Tyriōs* permittere *dextrae.*"
Ollī (sēnsit enim simulātā *mente* locūtam,
quō rēgnum Ītaliae Libycās āverteret *ōrās*)
sīc contrā *est* ingressa Venus: "*Quis tālia* dēmēns
abnuat *aut tēcum* mālit contendere *bellō?*
Sī modo *quod* memorās factum *fortūna sequātur.*
Sed fātīs incerta *feror, sī Juppiter ūnam*
esse velit Tyriīs urbem Trojāque profectīs,
miscērī*ve* probet populōs *aut* foedera jungī.
Tū conjūnx, tibi fās *animum* temptāre precandō.

abnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod dissent, refuse†
amō (1) love, like, cherish*
auspicium, (i)ī *n.* auspices, power
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn aside, avert*
commūnis, e (in) common, joint, mutual
contendō, ere, ī, ntus strive, contend
contrā opposite, facing, in reply*
dēmēns, entis crazy, mad, distracted
dōtālis, e of a dower, as a dower†
enim for, indeed, truly*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, exercise, perform*
factum, ī *n.* deed, act, exploit*
fās *n.* right, justice, decree, law*
foedus, eris *n.* treaty, pact, alliance
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
incertus, a, um uncertain, doubtful
ingredior, ī, gressus enter, proceed
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
Libycus, a, um of Libya, a country of North Africa*
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
mālō, mālle, māluī prefer, wish rather†
marītus, ī *m.* husband
memorō (1) recall, recount, relate, say*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
modo only, (just) now
os, ossis *n.* bone*
pār, paris equal, like, similar*
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus intrust, allow
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
precor, ārī, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
probō (1) test, prove, approve†
proficīscor, ī, fectus set out, go
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, direct*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive
serviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus serve (*dat.*)
simulō (1) simulate, counterfeit, pretend
temptō (1) try, test, seek, examine*
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty; love*

101. ardet amāns Dīdō = ardet amōre Dīdō.

102–103. paribus auspiciīs: *with equal authority,* since only the highest Roman magistrates had the right to take the auspices. Juno proposes that she and Venus shall preside over the united peoples (Trojans and Carthaginians) with equal authority.

103. liceat (Dīdōnī): vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254. **marītō** = Aeneas: dat. with special verb, **servīre**; App. 297.

104. dōtālīs: predicatively, *as a dowry.*

105. Ollī (Jūnōnī): an archaic form of **illī**; it depends on **ingressa est (dīcere)** in l. 107. **sēnsit (Jūnōnem) locūtam (esse).**

106. rēgnum Ītaliae: *the (destined) kingdom of Italy.* **quō (= ut) āverteret:** purpose; App. 388. **(ad) ōrās.**

107. Quis dēmēns abnuat: deliberative subj.; App. 348.

109. Sī modo (= utinam) factum fortūna sequātur: *may fortune attend the deed* (of uniting the two peoples); opt. subj.; App. 253. Venus implies, but does not definitely promise, that she would consent under certain vaguely suggested conditions.

110–111. sī . . . velit: indir. quest.; App. 349. **(illīs) Trojā profectīs:** dat. of possession; equivalent to **Teucrīs.**

113. Tū (es) conjūnx (Jovis), tibi (est).

Perge, *sequar.*" *Tum sīc* excēpit rēgia *Jūnō:*
"*Mēcum erit* iste *labor. Nunc quā* ratiōne *quod* īnstat
cōnfierī *possit,* paucīs (adverte) docēbō.
Vēnātum *Aenēās* ūna*que miserrima Dīdō*
in nemus *īre parant, ubi prīmōs* crāstinus ortūs
extulerit Tītān radiīs*que* retēxerit orbem.
Hīs ego nigrantem commixtā grandine nimbum,
dum trepidant ālae saltūs*que* indāgine cingunt,
dēsuper īnfundam *et* tonitrū *caelum omne* ciēbō.
Diffugient *comitēs et nocte* tegentur opācā:
spēluncam *Dīdō* dux *et* Trojānus *eandem*
dēvenient. *Aderō et, tua sī mihi* certa voluntās,
cōnūbiō jungam stabilī propriam*que* dicābō.

---

advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to, heed
āla, ae *f.* wing, hunters, beaters*
certus, a, um fixed, sure, certain, reliable*
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus stir up, arouse*
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird(le)*
commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle
cōnfīō, fierī, fectus be done, be finished†
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, matrimony
crāstinus, a, um tomorrow's, of tomorrow†
dēsuper from above
dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus come down, arrive (at)
dicō (1) consecrate, assign, proclaim
diffugiō, ere, fūgī flee apart, scatter
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry (out), raise*
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus take up, rejoin
grandō, inis *f.* hail(storm, stones)†
indāgō, inis *f.* (circle of) nets, toils†
īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (into, upon)†
īnstō, āre, stitī press on, desire, urge
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, wood*
nigrāns, antis black, dusky, dark†
nimbus, ī *m.* (storm)cloud, rainstorm*
opācus, a, um dark, gloomy, dusky
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb(it), earth*
ortus, ūs *m.* rising, source†
paucus, a, um little, few, slight, scanty*
pergō, ere, perrēxī, rēctus proceed
proprius, a, um one's own, permanent
radius, (i)ī *m.* rod, spoke, ray†
ratiō, ōnis *f.* manner, purpose, reason
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
retegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus uncover, recover
saltus, ūs *m.* forest, glade, pasture
spēlunca, ae *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
stabilis, e firm, stable, lasting
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*
Tītān, ānis *m.* a god, the sun†
tonitrus, ūs *m.* thunder†
trepidō (1) tremble; scurry; quiver
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
ūnā at the same time, together
vēnor, ārī, ātus hunt, go hunting†
voluntās, ātis *f.* will, wish, consent†

115–116. mēcum = **cum mē**; App. 321, *a*; here equivalent to **meus. quod īnstat: *the business in hand;*** subj. of **possit. quā ratiōne . . . possit:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **paucīs** (dictīs).

117. Vēnātum: supine of **vēnor,** after a verb of motion, to express purpose; App. 270.

120–122. Hīs (Dīdōnī et Aenēae), dum ālae trepidant cinguntque saltūs indāgine, ego īnfundam dēsuper nimbum. ālae: troops of beaters, who frighten the game and drive them past the hunters.

122. tonitrū: ordinarily the prerogative of Jove, but here wielded by Juno, as by Pallas (Minerva) in I, 42.

124. (in) spēluncam.

125. Aderō: in her capacity of goddess of marriage (**Jūnō Prōnuba**). **voluntās (est).**

126. cōnūbiō: pronounced here as though spelled **cōnūbjō,** for the sake of the meter; App. 401. **jungam (Dīdōnem Aenēae) et (eam) propriam dicābō.** This verse is repeated from I, 73.

Hic hymenaeus *erit.*" *Nōn* adversāta *petentī*
adnuit *atque* dolīs rīsit Cytherēa repertīs.
Ōceanum intereā *surgēns* Aurōra *relīquit.*
It portīs jubare exortō dēlēcta juventūs,
rētia rāra, plagae, lātō vēnābula *ferrō,*
Massȳlī*que ruunt* equitēs *et* odōra canum *vīs.*
Rēgīnam thalamō cūnctantem *ad līmina prīmī*
Poenōrum exspectant, ostrō*que* īnsignis *et aurō*
stat sonipēs *ac* frēna ferōx spūmantia mandit.
Tandem prōgreditur *magnā* stīpante catervā
Sīdoniam pictō chlamydem circumdata limbō;
cui pharetra *ex aurō,* crīnēs nōdantur *in aurum,*
aurea purpuream subnectit fībula vestem.

---

adnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod assent, promise
adversor, ārī, ātus oppose, resist (*dat.*)†
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
canis, is *m.* (*f.*) dog, hound
caterva, ae *f.* band, troop, crowd
chlamys, ydis *f.* cloak, mantle, cape
circumdō, dare, dedī, datus surround, encircle
crīnis, is *m.* hair, tresses, locks*
cūnctor, ārī, ātus delay, linger, wait†
Cytherēa, ae *f.* Venus, born at Cythera
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud*
eques, itis *m.* horseman, knight†
exorior, īrī, ortus (a)rise, spring up
ex(s)pectō (1) expect, (a)wait, linger*
ferōx, ōcis fierce, spirited, fiery, wild
fībula, ae *f.* brooch, buckle, clasp†
frēnum, ī *n.* bridle, bit, curb
hymenaeus, ī *m.* wedding (hymn); Hymen
īnsignis, e marked, notable, splendid*
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
jubar, aris *n.* ray of light, sunshine†
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men*
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
limbus, ī *m.* border, fringe, hem
mandō, ere, ī, mānsus champ, chew
Massȳlus, a, um of the Massyli, a people of North Africa†
nōdō (1) (tie in a) knot, bind, fasten†
Ōceanus, ī *m.* Ocean
odōrus, a, um smelling, keen-scented†
ostrum, ī *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver
pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus paint, embroider
plaga, ae *f.* net, snare, toils†
Poenus, ī *m.* Carthaginian, Phoenician
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
prōgredior, ī, gressus advance, proceed
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson
rārus, a, um scattered, wide-meshed
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus find (out)†
rēte, is *n.* net, snare, toils†
rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsus smile, laugh (at)†
Sīdonius, a, um of Sidon, Sidonian
sonipēs, pedis *m.* prancing steed†
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
stīpō (1) stuff, stow, crowd, throng
subnectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus tie (beneath), fasten
thalamus, ī *m.* (bridal) chamber, wedlock*
vēnābulum, ī *n.* hunting spear†
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*

---

127. Hic: attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, *a*; pronounce **hicc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c*. **Nōn adversāta (Jūnōnī) petentī:** *not opposing her request.*

128. dolīs (Jūnōnis) repertīs: abl. abs.

129–159. Aeneas and Dido go on a hunting party.

130. portīs: abl. of the route or of separation. **jubare (sōlis) exortō:** abl. abs. **juventūs,** collective noun = **Tyriī et Teucrī.**

132. ruunt: zeugma, as it strictly applies to only the last two of its subjects, while with the first three it means *are hurried forth;* App. 447. **odōra canum vīs:** *keen-scented pack of hounds,* **odōra** being a transferred epithet; App. 446.

135. Note the alliteration; App. 411.

136. prōgreditur (Dīdō).

137. chlamydem: object of circumdata used as a middle; App. 309, *a*.

138. cui pharetra (est); dat. of possession. **crīnēs nōdantur in aurum:** *her hair is tied into a knot with gold,* i.e., with a golden cord or clasp of some sort.

Nec nōn et Phrygiī *comitēs et laetus* Iūlus
incēdunt. *Ipse ante aliōs* pulcherrimus *omnīs*
īnfert *sē socium Aenēās atque agmina* jungit.
Quālis *ubi* hībernam Lyciam Xanthī*que* fluenta
dēserit *ac* Dēlum māternam invīsit Apollō
īnstaurat*que* chorōs, mixtī*que* altāria *circum*
Crētes*que* Dryopes*que* fremunt pictī*que* Agathyrsī:
ipse jugīs Cynthī graditur mollī*que* fluentem
fronde premit crīnem fingēns *atque* implicat *aurō*,
tēla sonant *umerīs: haud illō* sēgnior *ībat*
Aenēās, tantum ēgregiō decus ēnitet *ōre*.
Postquam *altōs ventum in montīs atque* invia lūstra,
ecce ferae *saxī* dējectae vertice caprae

Agathyrsī, ōrum *m.* people of Scythia in southeastern Europe†
altāria, ium *n.* altar
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
capra, ae *f.* she-goat†
chorus, ī *m.* song, dance, choral band
Crētes, ium *m.* Cretans, inhabitants of Crete†
crīnis, is *m.* hair, tresses, locks*
Cynthus, ī *m.* mountain of Delos
decus, oris *n.* ornament, glory, dignity
dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw (down), dislodge
Dēlos, ī *f.* island of the Aegean, birthplace of Apollo†
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
Dryopes, um *m.* a people of northern Greece†
ecce see! look! behold!*
ēgregius, a, um remarkable, noble
ēniteō, ēre, uī shine forth, gleam, glitter†
ferus, a, um wild, savage, fierce, cruel*
fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, mold
fluentum, ī *n.* stream, flood†
fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow, stream, ebb
fremō, ere, uī, itus roar, shout, groan*
frōns, frondis *f.* leaf, foliage, garland*
gradior, ī, gressus walk, stride, march, go
hībernus, a, um wintry, of the winter, stormy
implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus) entwine
incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go (proudly)
īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring (to), present
īnstaurō (1) renew, refresh, repeat
invīsō, ere, ī, sus visit, look on, view†
invius, a, um pathless, trackless
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
lūstrum, ī *n.* marsh, bog, lair
Lycia, ae *f.* country of Asia Minor†
māternus, a, um maternal, of one's mother†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mollis, e soft, yielding, tender
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus paint, embroider, tattoo
postquam after (that), when*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, cover, confine*
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious*
quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*
sēgnis, e slow, slothful, inactive
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
vertex, icis *m.* peak, summit, head, top*
Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy†

140. Nec nōn: *likewise.*

142. Aenēās agmina (sua) jungit (agminibus Dīdōnis).

143. Quālis: Aeneas is here likened to Apollo, as Dido was likened to Diana in I, 498 ff. **hībernam Lyciam:** *his winter quarters in Lycia.*

146. Crētesque: with a long final syilable under the verse accent, before the pause, and before the following **Dr(-)**; App. 394, *a*; 16. **Crētes, Dryopes, Agathyrsī:** strange worshippers come from all sorts of remote regions.

147. ipse: Apollo.

148. fronde: of the laurel, sacred to Apollo.

149. tēla sonant umerīs: from Homer. Apollo was the archer god. **illō:** abl. with comparative; App. 327.

150. tantum (quantum Apollinis).

151. ventum (est illīs): *they came,* with the emphasis on the action rather than on the actors.

152. dējectae: by the beaters composing the **ālae** of l. 121.

dēcurrēre jugīs; *aliā dē parte* patentīs
trānsmittunt *cursū campōs atque agmina* cervī
pulverulenta *fugā* glomerant *montīsque relinquunt.*
At puer Ascanius *mediīs in* vallibus ācrī
gaudet *equō jamque hōs cursū, jam* praeterit *illōs,*
spūmantem*que darī* pecora *inter* inertia vōtīs
optat aprum, *aut* fulvum dēscendere *monte* leōnem.
Intereā *magnō* miscērī murmure *caelum*
incipit, īnsequitur commixtā grandine nimbus,
et Tyriī comitēs passim *et* Trojāna juventūs
Dardanius*que* nepōs Veneris dīversa *per* agrōs
tecta metū *petiēre; ruunt dē montibus* amnēs.
Spēluncam *Dīdō* dux *et* Trojānus *eandem*
dēveniunt. *Prīma et Tellūs et* prōnuba *Jūnō*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fiery*
ager, grī *m.* field, territory, land*
amnis, is *m.* river stream*
aper, prī *m.* wild boar
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
cervus, ī *m.* deer, stag
commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
dēcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run (down), hasten
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend
dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus come (down), arrive (at)
dīversus, a, um separated, different*
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
fulvus, a, um tawny, yellow, blond
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
glomerō (1) roll together, gather, collect
grandō, inis *f.* hail(storm, stones)
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
iners, rtis lazy, spiritless, tame, idle
īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow*
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men*
leō, ōnis *m.* lion
metus, ūs *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle, confuse*
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
nimbus, ī *m.* rainstorm, (storm)cloud*
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)*
passim everywhere, all about*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
pecus, oris *n.* flock, herd
praetereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus surpass, pass (by)†
prōnuba, ae *f.* matron of honor, bride-woman†
pulverulentus, a, um dusty†
spēlunca, ae *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
trānsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus cross, send across
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
vallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty; love*
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, desire*

---

154. (sē) **trānsmittunt cursū campōs: campōs** is object of the preposition **trāns** in composition, while **cursū** is abl. of manner; App. 308, 328.

157. equō: abl. of cause.

158. pecora inertia: as *ferae caprae* and *cervī*, which Ascanius disdainfully calls *tame herds.* **vōtīs:** (in answer) *to his prayers;* indir. obj. with **darī.**

160–172. While all are intent on the chase, Juno sends a sudden tempest, scattering the party and driving Aeneas and Dido to the same lonely cave, where they go through a form of marriage under unlucky omens.

163. nepōs Veneris = Ascanius.

166–168. Vergil here indicates the various features in a Roman wedding and represents Nature herself as performing these ceremonies. Earth and Heaven, as universal parents, take the part of human parents in bringing the couple together; the lightnings (**ignēs**) are the wedding torches (**taedae**); Juno performs the duty of the matron of honor (**prōnuba**), and the cries of the mountain nymphs

dant signum; fulsēre *ignēs et* cōnscius aethēr
cōnūbiīs, *summōque* ululārunt vertice nymphae.
Ille diēs prīmus lētī *prīmusque* malōrum
causa *fuit; neque* enim speciē *fāmāve movētur*
nec jam fūrtīvum *Dīdō* meditātur *amōrem:*
conjugium *vocat, hōc* praetexit *nōmine* culpam.
Extemplō Libyae *magnās it Fāma per urbēs,*
Fāma, malum *quā nōn aliud* vēlōcius *ūllum:*
mōbilitāte viget *vīrīsque* adquīrit *eundō,*
parva metū prīmō, mox *sēsē* attollit *in aurās*
ingrediturque solō *et caput inter* nūbila condit.
Illam Terra parēns īrā inrītāta *deōrum*
extrēmam, *ut* perhibent, Coeō Enceladō*que* sorōrem

adquīrō, ere, quīsīvī, sītus acquire, gain†
aether, eris *m.* upper air, heaven, ether*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
Coeus, ī *m.* one of the Titans, a giant, son of Earth†
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, hide*
conjugium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, husband, wife
cōnscius, a, um conscious, confederate, witness
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
culpa, ae *f.* fault, offense, guilt, blame
Enceladus, ī *m.* one of the Titans, a giant, son of Earth
enim for, indeed, truly*
extemplō immediately, at once, suddenly
extrēmus, a, um final, last, furthest*
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsī shine, flash, gleam
fūrtīvus, a, um secret, stolen†
ingredior, ī, gressus enter, proceed
inrītō (1) vex, enrage, provoke†
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
Libya, ae *f.* country of North Africa*
malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
meditor, ārī, ātus meditate, design
metus, ūs *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
mōbilitās, ātis *f.* activity, motion, speed†
mox soon, presently
nūbila, ōrum *n.* clouds, cloudiness
nympha, ae *f.* nymph, minor female divinity of the forests, waters, etc.
parvus, a, um small, little*
perhibeō, ēre, uī, itus present, say†
praetexō, ere, uī, xtus fringe, cloak†
prīmō at first, in the beginning
signum, ī *n.* sign, signal, token, mark*
solum, ī *n.* ground, soil, earth*
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
speciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, sight, aspect
ululō (1) howl, wail, shout, shriek
vēlōx, ōcis swift, quick, rapid, fleet†
vertex, icis *m.* peak, summit, head, top*
vigeō, ēre, uī flourish, be strong, thrive

take the place of the wedding song and festal cries. **Prīma Tellūs:** Earth was called **prīma** as the oldest of the gods; as Mother Earth, the producer and nurse of life, she presided over marriage. **prōnuba:** the matron whose function it was to join the hand of the bride to that of the groom at the wedding.

167. dant signum: i.e., for the wedding. **ignēs** (*lightnings*): instead of the marriage torches ordinarily employed at weddings. **cōnscius:** *witness* (to the marriage).

168. cōnūbiīs: *to the marriage;* poetic plural; pronounced here as though spelled **cōnūbjīs**, for the sake of the meter; App. 401. **ululā(vē)runt:** instead of the marriage songs ordinarily sung at weddings. (in) **vertice (montis).**

170–171. speciē fāmāve: *by* (regard for) *appearances or* (for) *her reputation.* **movētur nec Dīdō meditātur:** in Latin the subject of two such clauses is often placed in the second, contrary to English usage.

173–197. Dame Gossip (Rumor) spreads exaggerated reports of the love affair, finally carrying the news to Iarbas, an African chieftain and one of Dido's rejected suitors.

174. quā: abl. with compar.; App. 327. **nōn (est).**

175. eundō: abl. of the gerund of **eō**; App. 269.

177. (in) solō = (in) terrā.

178. deōrum: obj. gen. with **īrā**; App. 284. In anger at the gods for slaying her

prōgenuit *pedibus* celerem *et* pernīcibus ālīs,
mōnstrum horrendum, *ingēns, cui* quot *sunt corpore* plūmae,
tot vigilēs *oculī* subter (mīrābile *dictū*),
tot linguae, totidem *ōra* sonant, tot subrigit aurīs.
Nocte volat *caelī* mediō *terraeque per umbram*
strīdēns, *nec* dulcī dēclīnat *lūmina somnō;*
lūce sedet custōs *aut summī* culmine *tēctī*
turribus *aut altīs, et magnās* territat *urbēs,*
tam fictī prāvīque tenāx quam nuntia vērī.
Haec tum multiplicī populōs sermōne replēbat
gaudēns, *et* pariter facta *atque* īnfecta canēbat:
vēnisse Aenēān Trojānō *sanguine* crētum,
cui sē pulchra *virō* dignētur jungere *Dīdō;*

āla, ae *f.* wing*
auris, is *f.* ear*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, tell, proclaim, prophesy*
celer, eris, ere swift, speedy, quick*
crētus, a, um grown, sprung
culmen, inis *n.* roof, summit, top, peak*
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
dēclīnō (1) turn aside, bend down, droop†
dignor, ārī, ātus deem worthy, deign (*abl.*)
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
factum, ī *n.* deed, act, exploit*
fictum, ī *n.* falsehood, fiction†
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
horrendus, a, um awful, terrible, dire*
īnfectus, a, um not done, false†
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
lingua, ae *f.* tongue, language
medium, (i)ī *n.* middle, center
mīrābilis, e wonderful, marvelous
mōnstrum, ī *n.* prodigy, portent, monster*
multiplex, icis manifold, multiple†
nuntia, ae *f.* messenger†
pariter equally, alike*
pernīx, īcis active, nimble, swift†
plūma, ae *f.* feather, plume
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
prāvum, ī *n.* wrong, perverse act†
prōgignō, ere, genuī, genitus bring forth, bear†
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious, noble*
quam how, than, as*
quot as many as
repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, stuff
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit (down), settle*
sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, gossip
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī hiss, whir, rustle
subrigō, ere, surrēxī, rēctus raise, rise†
subter beneath, below†
tam so, as, such*
tenāx, ācis tenacious, holding (to)†
territō (1) frighten, terrify, alarm†
tot so many, as many*
totidem the same number, so many
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
turris, is *f.* tower, turret
vērum, ī *n.* truth, right, reality
vigil, ilis wakeful, watchful, sleepless†
volō (1) fly, flit, speed*

---

children, the Titans, Earth bore the giants, Rumor being one of them.

181. Rumor is covered with feathers; and beneath each feather is an eye, a tongue, a mouth, and an ear. **cui:** dat. of possessor.

182. oculī (sunt) subter (plūmās).

183. (Fāma) **subrigit tot aurīs:** *Rumor raises as many listening ears.*

184. caelī mediō terraeque: *'twixt heaven and earth.*

185. strīdēns: with her wings as she flies, referring to the buzz of gossip. **lūmina (sua) = oculōs,** as often.

186–187. lūce: *by day,* abl. of time; App. 322. **(in) culmine aut (in) turribus.**

188. fictī: gen. with **tenāx;** App. 287.

189. Haec = Fāma.

190. facta atque īnfecta: "fact and fiction." Literally, *things done and not done.* **canēbat:** followed by indir. disc.

192. virō = conjugī. jungere: complementary inf.; App. 259.

nunc hiemem *inter sē* luxū, quam *longa*, fovēre
rēgnōrum immemorēs turpī*que* cupīdine *captōs*.
Haec passim *dea* foeda *virum* diffundit *in ōra*.
Prōtinus *ad rēgem cursūs* dētorquet Iarbān
incendit*que animum dictīs atque* aggerat *īrās*.
Hic Hammōne satus raptā Garamantide nymphā
templa *Jovī* centum lātīs *immānia rēgnīs*,
centum *ārās posuit* vigilem*que* sacrāverat *ignem*,
excubiās *dīvum* aeternās, pecudum*que* cruōre
pingue solum *et* variīs flōrentia *līmina* sertīs.
Isque āmēns *animī et* rūmōre accēnsus amārō
dīcitur ante ārās media inter nūmina dīvum
multa Jovem manibus supplex ōrāsse supīnīs:

---

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, inflame
aeternus, a, um eternal, everlasting*
aggerō (1) heap up, pile up, increase†
amārus, a, um bitter, unpleasant†
āmēns, entis mad, crazy, frenzied
centum hundred*
cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
cupīdō, inis *f.* love, desire, longing
dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus turn (away)†
diffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus scatter, spread
excubiae, ārum *f.* watch(fire), sentinel†
flōreō, ēre, uī bloom, flourish, blossom†
foedus, a, um foul, loathsome, filthy
foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus cherish, fondle
Garamantis, idis of the Garamantes, an African tribe†
Hammōn, ōnis *m.* god of North Africa, famous for his oracle and identified by the Romans with Jupiter†
hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm*
Iarbās, ae *m.* African chieftain, one of Dido's unsuccessful suitors
immemor, oris unmindful, forgetful
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, burn, inflame*
lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious*
luxus, ūs *m.* luxury, splendor, excess
nympha, ae *f.* nymph, one of the minor divinities of the forests, waters, etc.
ōrō (1) beseech, pray (for), entreat*
passim everywhere, all about*
pecus, udis *f.* animal (of the flock)*
pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
prōtinus continuously, immediately
quam how, than, as*
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (away), seize, ravish*
rūmor, ōris *m.* rumor, report, gossip†
sacrō (1) consecrate, hallow, dedicate*
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget*
sertum, ī *n.* wreath, garland
solum, ī *n.* ground, soil, earth*
supīnus, a, um flat, upturned
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
turpis, e shameful, disgraceful
varius, a, um varied, different, diverse*
vigil, ilis watchful, wakeful, sleepless

---

193. (Dīdōnem et Aenēān) **inter sē fovēre hiemem quam longa (ea hiems sit). inter sē fovēre:** *were caressing one another the whole long winter;* **inter sē** is commonly thus employed to denote reciprocal action. **quam longa (sit):** *however long it may be.*

194. rēgnōrum: Carthage and Italy.

195. vīr(ōr)um.

198–218. Iarbas prays to his father, Jupiter Ammon, for help, reproaching him that he had allowed Aeneas, a mere adventurer, to be preferred to himself.

198. Hic: pronounce **hicc.**

199–200. templa centum (posuit), centum ārās posuit: Latin commonly expresses the verb with only the second of two such clauses, English with the first. Compare the note on ll. 170–171.

201. excubiās: apposition with **ignem**; the never-dying fire stands sentry in honor of the gods, like the sacred fire of Vesta at Rome.

202. pingue: from the blood and the fat of the many sacrifices.

203. Is: Iarbas. **animī:** gen. with **āmēns**; or loc.; App. 287, 37, *c.*

204. media inter nūmina: *amid the divine presences.*

"*Juppiter* omnipotēns, *cui nunc* Maurūsia pictīs
gēns epulāta torīs Lēnaeum lībat *honōrem*,
aspicis *haec?* An *tē, genitor, cum* fulmina torquēs
nēquīquam horrēmus, caecīque *in* nūbibus *ignēs*
terrificant *animōs et* inānia murmura miscent?
Fēmina, *quae nostrīs errāns in fīnibus urbem*
exiguam pretiō *posuit, cui lītus* arandum
cuique locī lēgēs *dedimus*, cōnūbia *nostra*
reppulit *ac* dominum *Aenēān in rēgna* recēpit.
Et nunc ille Paris *cum* sēmivirō comitātū,
Maeoniā mentum mitrā crīnem*que* madentem
subnexus, raptō potitur: *nōs mūnera* templīs
quippe *tuīs ferimus fāmamque* fovēmus inānem."
Tālibus ōrantem *dictīs ārāsque tenentem*

---

an whether, or*
arō (1) plow, till, furrow
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
comitātus, ūs *m.* retinue, train, company†
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
crīnis, is *m.* long hair, locks, tresses*
dominus, ī *m.* master, lord, ruler
epulor, ārī, ātus feast, banquet (*abl.*)
exiguus, a, um small, scanty, petty†
fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female
foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus cherish, fondle
fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
horreō, ēre, uī shudder (at), quake
inānis, e empty, useless, vain, idle*
Lēnaeus, a, um Lenaean, Bacchic, of Bacchus, god of wine†
lēx, lēgis *f.* law, jurisdiction, term
lībō (1) pour (as a libation), offer
madeō, ēre, uī drip, be wet, reek†
Maeonius, a, um Maeonian, Lydian, Asiatic†
Maurūsius, a, um Moorish†
mentum, ī *n.* chin, beard†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mitra, ae *f.* mitre, cap, turban†
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
ōrō (1) pray (for), beseech, entreat*
Paris, idis *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus paint, embroider
potior, īrī, ītus possess, gain (*abl.*)
pretium, (i)ī *n.* price, reward, value†
quippe forsooth, surely, indeed
raptum, ī *n.* plunder, prey, booty†
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, recover*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus reject, repel
sēmivir, virī half-man, effeminate†
subnectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus tie (under)
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
terrificō (1) frighten, terrify, alarm†
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, sway, hurl*
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*

206–207. Maurūsia gēns: the people of Iarbas.

208–210. "Are all your thunders and lightnings but empty threats? You do not really reward the good and punish the wicked."

211–212. Fēmina: Dido; emphatic by position. **pretiō:** abl. of price; App. 336. She had not taken the place by force, but had been compelled to buy it, a confession of weakness.

212–213. See the note on ll. 199–200.

214. dominum: said with bitter disdain.

215. Paris: Aeneas is another Paris in stealing the woman Iarbas was planning to marry. **sēmivirō:** the hardy African chieftain despises the more cultured Trojans as being effeminate Orientals.

216–217. mentum, crīnem: objects of the middle participle **subnexus**; App. 309, *a*. **madentem:** *dripping* (with perfume), another mark of effeminacy. **raptō:** abl. with **potior**; App. 342. **potītur:** with ī irregularly short.

218. quippe: ironical. **fāmam fovēmus inānem:** *we keep alive a baseless belief* in your power and justice.

219–237. Moved by the prayer of Iarbas, Jupiter sends Mercury to Aeneas to remind him of his high destiny and of his duty to his son Ascanius.

219. (Iarbān) ōrantem: obj. of **audiit.**

audiit Omnipotēns, *oculōsque ad moenia* torsit
rēgia *et* oblītōs *fāmae* meliōris amantīs.
Tum sīc Mercurium adloquitur *ac tālia* mandat:
"Vāde *age, nāte, vocā* Zephyrōs *et lābere* pennīs
Dardaniumque ducem, *Tyriā* Karthāgine *quī nunc*
exspectat *fātīsque datās nōn* respicit *urbēs*,
adloquere *et* celerīs dēfer *mea dicta per aurās*.
Nōn illum nōbīs genetrīx pulcherrima *tālem*
prōmīsit Grajumque ideō bis vindicat *armīs;*
sed fore quī gravidam *imperiīs bellōque* frementem
Ītaliam regeret, *genus altō ā sanguine* Teucrī
prōderet, *ac tōtum sub* lēgēs *mitteret* orbem.
Sī nūlla accendit *tantārum* glōria *rērum*
nec super ipse suā mōlītur laude *labōrem*,

---

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, inflame
adloquor, ī, locūtus address, accost
amāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) lover
bis twice*
celer, eris, ere swift, speedy, quick*
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry (down), report
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
ex(s)pectō (1) (a)wait, expect, linger, tarry, dally*
fremō, ere, uī, itus rage, roar, ring*
genetrīx, trīcis *f.* mother
glōria, ae *f.* renown, glory, fame, pride
Grajus, a, um Greek*
gravidus, a, um heavy, burdened, pregnant, filled, teeming†
ideō therefore, for this reason†
Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of North Africa
laus, laudis *f.* glory, praise, merit*
lēx, lēgis *f.* law, jurisdiction, term
mandō (1) command, intrust, enjoin
melior, ius better, superior, preferable
Mercurius, (i)ī *m.* messenger of the gods, god of commerce, and escort of departed souls to Hades†
mōlior, īrī, ītus do, (strive to) accomplish
oblīviscor, ī, lītus forget (*gen.*)
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb(it), earth*
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather
prōdō, ere, didī, ditus betray, transmit
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus promise*
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, noble, splendid, handsome, illustrious*
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, direct, guide*
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back) at, regard*
Teucer (crus), crī *m.* early king of Troy
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, sway, hurl*
vādō, ere go, proceed, advance
vindicō (1) vindicate, claim (as free), rescue†
Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind

220–221. moenia rēgia: of Carthage. **fāmae:** gen. with **oblītōs**; App. 288.

222. adloquitur: with final syllable irregularly long, due to the pause and the verse accent; App. 394, *a*.

223. Zephyrōs, pennīs: he is to use every contrivance for speed. **lābere:** imp. **pennīs:** attached to his sandals.

224. ducem: obj. of the imp. **adloquere**, l. 226.

226. dēfer: imp.; App. 202.

227. tālem (virum).

228. ideō: *for this purpose;* that he might dally at ease in Carthage. **bis vindicat:** *rescued;* once from Diomedes (I, 96–98, and notes), and again at the fall of Troy (II, 620 ff.). **armīs:** abl. of separation.

229–230. sed (genetrīx prōmīsit illum) fore (tālem) quī regeret: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **imperiīs:** *with* (future) *empire.*

231. tōtum orbem: through the later development of the Roman Empire, especially under Augustus, who is here thus complimented by the poet.

232. accendit (illum).

233–234. super laude suā. pater: emphatic; could a father do this, and have so little true paternal feeling? **Ascaniō:** indir. obj. of **invidet. arcēs:** dir. obj. of **invidet.**

Ascaniō*ne pater* Rōmānās invidet *arcēs?*
Quid struit? *Aut quā* spē inimīcā *in gente* morātur
nec prōlem Ausoniam *et* Lāvīnia respicit *arva?*
Nāviget! *Haec* summa *est, hic nostrī* nuntius *estō.*"
Dīxerat. Ille patris magnī pārēre *parābat*
imperiō: et prīmum pedibus tālāria nectit
aurea, *quae* sublīmem ālīs sīve *aequora* suprā
seu *terram* rapidō pariter *cum* flāmine portant.
Tum virgam *capit: hāc animās ille* ēvocat Orcō
pallentīs, *aliās sub* Tartara *trīstia mittit,*
dat somnōs adimit*que, et lūmina morte* resignat.
Illā frētus *agit ventōs et* turbida trānat
nūbila. *Jamque* volāns apicem *et* latera ardua *cernit*
Atlantis dūrī *caelum quī* vertice fulcit,

---

adimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus take away
āla, ae *f.* wing*
apex, icis *m.* peak, summit, head
arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering*
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
Atlās, antis *m.* god who supports heaven on his shoulders, grandfather of Mercury; a mountain of Northwest Africa
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ēvocō (1) call out, summon†
flāmen, inis *n.* breeze, blast, wind†
frētus, a, um relying (on) (*abl.*)†
fulciō, īre, lsī, ltus support, prop†
inimīcus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
invideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus begrudge (*dat.*)*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
Lāvīn(i)us, a, um of Lavinium, an early Italian city
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, detain*
nāvigō (1) (set) sail, navigate
nectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind, fasten
nūbila, ōrum *n.* clouds, cloudiness
nuntius, (i)ī *m.* messenger, message
Orcus, ī *m.* Hades, (god of) the lower world
pallēns, entis pale, pallid, wan
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)
pariter equally, alike*
portō (1) carry, bear, convey*
prōlēs, is *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
rapidus, a, um swift, snatching*
resignō (1) (un)seal, open, close†
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back) at, regard*
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
sīve, seu whether, or, either if, or if
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, plan
sublīmis, e on high, towering, lofty
summa, ae *f.* sum, substance, chief thing†
suprā over, above (*acc.*)
tālāria, ium *n.* (winged) sandals, anklets†
Tartara, ōrum *n.* Hades, the lower world†
trānō (1) swim across, float†
turbidus, a, um troubled, stormy†
vertex, icis *m.* peak, summit, head, top*
virga, ae *f.* staff, wand, twig†
volō (1) fly, speed, flit*

---

235. spē inimīcā: hiatus; App. 399. **inimīcā gente:** Vergil is thinking of later times when Rome and Carthage were such bitter foes.

237. Nāviget: vol. subj.; App. 254. **hic nostrī nuntius estō:** *this be our (my) message.* **nostrī:** gen. pl. of **ego.** **estō:** imp.

238–258. Mercury hastens from Olympus to Carthage.

240. ālīs: attached to the **tālāria.** **(illum) sublīmem. aequora suprā = suprā aequora:** anastrophe; App. 414.

242. virgam: the **cādūceus** or magic winged wand entwined with serpents. **hāc (virgā):** as escort of the souls of the dead, Mercury conducted them in both directions; to Hades after death, and back to the upper world as ghosts.

245. Compare the flight of Raphael in *Paradise Lost,* V, 255 ff. **Illā (virgā):** abl. of means with **frētus.** **agit ventōs:** *outstrips the winds.*

247. Atlantis: in the following description, Vergil skillfully mingles the conception of Atlas as a god and as a mountain.

Atlantis, cīnctum adsiduē *cui* nūbibus *ātrīs*
pīniferum *caput et ventō* pulsātur *et* imbrī,
nix umerōs īnfūsa tegit, *tum* flūmina mentō
praecipitant senis, *et* glaciē riget horrida barba.
Hīc prīmum paribus nītēns Cyllēnius ālīs
cōnstitit: *hinc tōtō* praeceps *sē corpore ad undās*
mīsit avī similis, *quae circum lītora, circum*
piscōsōs scopulōs humilis volat *aequora* juxtā.
Haud aliter *terrās inter caelumque* volābat
lītus harēnōsum *ad* Libyae, *ventōsque* secābat
māternō *veniēns ab* avō Cyllēnia prōlēs.
Ut prīmum ālātīs tetigit māgālia plantīs,
Aenēān fundantem *arcēs ac tēcta* novantem
cōnspicit. *Atque illī* stēllātus iaspide fulvā

---

adsiduē constantly, ever, continually†
āla, ae *f.* wing*
ālātus, a, um winged, furnished with wings†
aliter otherwise, differently*
Atlās, antis *m.* god who supports heaven on his shoulders, grandfather of Mercury; mountain of Northwest Africa
avis, is *f.* bird, fowl†
avus, ī *m.* grandfather; ancestor
barba, ae *f.* beard, whiskers
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird(le)*
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at
cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand firm, halt
Cyllēnius, (i)ī *m.* the Cyllenean, of Mt. Cyllene in Arcadia, birthplace of Mercury; *adj.*, **Cyllēnius, a, um** Cyllenean, of Mt. Cyllene in Arcadia, birthplace of Mercury†
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
fundō (1) found, build, establish†
glaciēs, ēī *f.* ice†
harēnōsus, a, um sandy†
horridus, a, um bristling, awful, rough
humilis, e low(ly), low-lying, humble
iaspis, idis *f.* jasper, a semi-precious stone†
imber, bris *m.* rain, flood, storm, water
īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour on (in)
juxtā close (to), next (to) (*acc.*)*
Libya, ae *f.* country of Northwest Africa*
māgālia, ium *n.* huts, hovels
māternus, a, um maternal, of a mother
mentum, ī *n.* chin, beard
nītor, ī, sus (nixus) strive, rest on (*abl.*)
nix, nivis *f.* snow†
novō (1) renew, make (new), build†
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
pār, paris equal, balanced, like*
pīnifer, era, erum pine-bearing†
piscōsus, a, um fishy, fish-haunted†
planta, ae *f.* heel; sole of foot†
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
praecipitō (1) fall headlong, hasten
prōlēs, is *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
pulsō (1) beat, strike. lash, batter
rigeō, ēre, uī be stiff, be rigid
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
senex, senis *m.* old man*
similis, e like, similar (*dat., gen.*)*
stēllātus, a, um starred, star-spangled†
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach*
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*
umerus, ī *m.* shoulder
volō (1) fly, speed, flit*

---

248. cīnctum (est). **cui:** *whose.*

250. (dē) mentō: abl. of separation.

252. Hīc: on the summit of Atlas. ālīs: abl. of means with nītēns.

257. ad lītus: App. 414.

258. māternō avō: Atlas. The mother of Mercury was Maja, daughter of Atlas.

259–278. Mercury finds Aeneas busily engaged in furthering Dido's plans; he delivers his message and disappears.

261–262. stēllātus ēnsis: only the hilt was studded.

ēnsis *erat Tyriōque ardēbat* mūrice laena
dēmissa *ex umerīs*, dīves *quae mūnera Dīdō*
fēcerat, et tenuī tēlās discrēverat *aurō*.
Continuō invādit: "*Tū nunc* Karthāginis *altae*
fundāmenta locās pulchram*que* uxōrius *urbem*
exstruis? *Heu, rēgnī rērumque* oblīte *tuārum!*
Ipse deum tibi mē clārō dēmittit Olympō
rēgnātor, *caelum ac terrās quī nūmine* torquet:
ipse haec ferre jubet celerīs mandāta *per aurās:*
Quid struis? *Aut quā* spē Libycīs teris ōtia *terrīs?*
Sī tē nūlla movet tantārum glōria *rērum*
[*nec super ipse tuā* mōlīris laude *labōrem,*]
Ascanium *surgentem et* spēs hērēdis Iūlī
respice, *cui rēgnum Ītaliae* Rōmāna*que tellūs*
dēbētur." *Tālī* Cyllēnius *ōre* locūtus
mortālīs vīsūs *mediō* sermōne *relīquit*
et procul in tenuem *ex oculīs* ēvānuit *auram*.

Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, speedy*
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
continuō immediately, at once
Cyllēnius, (i)ī *m.* the Cyllenean; Mercury, born on Mt. Cyllene
dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus owe, be due, be destined
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let down, send down, lower, drop*
dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy
discernō, ere, crēvī, crētus separate
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
ēvānēscō, ere, nuī vanish, disappear†
exstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build (up), rear
fundāmentum, ī *n.* foundation, base
glōria, ae *f.* glory, renown, fame, pride
hērēs, ēdis *m.* heir, successor†
invādō, ere, sī, sus attack, address
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of North Africa
laena, ae *f.* (woolen) mantle, cloak†
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*
locō (1) place, lay, establish, locate*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
mandātum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
mōlior, īrī, ītus undertake, accomplish, do
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
mūrex, icis *m.* purple (dye), crimson, scarlet†
oblīviscor, ī, lītus forget (*gen.*)
Olympus, ī *m.* Greek mountain, home of the gods; heaven
ōtium, (i)ī *n.* leisure, idleness, quiet†
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, noble, splendid, illustrious*
rēgnātor, ōris *m.* ruler, lord, director
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back) at, regard*
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, contrive
tēla, ae *f.* web, textile†
tenuis, e slight, thin, fine, delicate
terō, ere, trīvī, trītus rub, wear, waste†
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, hurl, sway*
uxōrius, a, um wife-ruled, uxorious, henpecked†
vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, vision, view, aspect

---

264. tenuī aurō: she had interwoven the warp with fine gold thread.

266. uxōrius: *wife-enslaved;* used as a term of reproach.

267. oblīte: vocative of the participle of oblīviscor. **rēgnī rērumque:** genitives with a verb of forgetting; App. 288.

274. Iūlī: obj. gen.

277. mediō (in) sermōne: *in the middle (of his) speech, abruptly;* App. 246.

278. in tenuem auram: cf. Shakespeare, *Tempest*, IV, i, 148–150:

> "These our actors,
> As I foretold you, were all spirits and
> Are melted into air, into thin air."

At vērō *Aenēās* aspectū obmūtuit āmēns,
arrēctae*que* horrōre comae *et vōx* faucibus haesit.
Ardet abīre *fugā* dulcīs*que relinquere terrās*,
attonitus *tantō* monitū *imperiōque deōrum*.
Heu quid agat? Quō nunc rēgīnam ambīre *furentem*
audeat adfātū? *Quae prīma* exordia sūmat?
Atque animum nunc hūc celerem *nunc* dīvidit illūc
in partīsque rapit variās *perque omnia* versat.
Haec alternantī potior sententia *vīsa est:*
Mnēsthea Sergestum*que vocat* fortem*que* Serestum,
classem aptent tacitī *sociōsque ad lītora* cōgant,
arma parent et quae rēbus sit causa novandīs
dissimulent; *sēsē* intereā, quandō optima *Dīdō*

---

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus depart*
adfātus, ūs *m.* address, speech†
alternō (1) change, alternate, waver†
ambiō, īre, īvī (iī), itus go around; conciliate†
āmēns, entis mad, frenzied, distraught
aptō (1) equip, make ready, furnish
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus erect, stand on end
a(d)spectus, ūs *m.* sight, appearance
attonitus, a, um thunderstruck, astounded
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
celer, eris, ere swift, speedy, quick*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus muster, compel*
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
dissimulō (1) conceal, dissimulate, pretend otherwise
dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus divide, distribute
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
exordium, (i)ī *n.* beginning, commencement†
faux, faucis *f.* jaws, throat; gulf
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to), halt (*dat.*)*
horror, ōris *m.* shudder(ing), horror, alarm
illūc thither, to that place†
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
Mnēstheus, eī (eos), *acc.* **ea**, *m.* Trojan leader†*
monitus, ūs *m.* advice, warning†
novō (1) renew, make new, alter, build
obmūtēscō, ere, tuī be dumb, stand speechless†
optimus, a, um best, finest
potior, ius preferable, better
quandō when, since, because
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus seize, snatch, rob*
sententia, ae *f.* opinion, resolve, view
Serestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader*
sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take, employ
tacitus, a, um silent, still, secret
varius, a, um various, different, diverse*
vērō truly, indeed, but
versō (1) keep turning, roll, revolve

279–295. Obeying the divine commands Aeneas instructs his followers to prepare secretly for the voyage, and seeks a favorable opportunity for informing Dido of his plan to depart.

281. fugā: abl. of manner. relinquere terrās (Carthāginis): Vergil constantly endeavors to represent his hero Aeneas as a man of such thorough devotion (pius Aenēās) that he is ever ready to sacrifice self to the will of Heaven and to surrender whatever life holds most dear, if it be the divine will.

283–284. agat, audeat, sūmat: deliberative subjunctives; App. 348. furentem (amōre).

285. animum celerem dīvidit: Cf. Tennyson, *Passing of Arthur*,

"This way and that dividing the swift mind."

286. rapit (animum), versat (animum).

287. (Aenēae) alternantī: whether he should inform Dido.

289–291. (ut) aptent, cōgant, parent, dissimulent: indir. commands after vocat, which implies et imperat or some such expression; App. 390. rēbus novandīs: an expression commonly used for taking a new step, such as a revolution. quae . . . sit causa: indir. quest.; App. 349.

291–293. sēsē temptātūrum (esse):

nesciat *et tantōs* rumpī *nōn* spēret *amōrēs*,
temptātūrum aditūs *et quae* mollissima *fandī*
tempora, quis rēbus dexter modus. Ōcius *omnēs*
imperiō laetī pārent *et* jussa facessunt.
At rēgīna dolōs (*quis* fallere *possit* amantem?)
praesēnsit, mōtūs*que* excēpit *prīma futūrōs*
omnia tūta timēns. *Eadem* impia *Fāma furentī*
dētulit armārī *classem cursumque parārī*.
Saevit inops *animī tōtamque* incēnsa *per urbem*
bacchātur, quālis commōtīs excita *sacrīs*
Thyias, *ubi audītō* stimulant trietērica Bacchō
orgia nocturnus*que vocat clāmōre* Cithaerōn.

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, access
amāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) lover
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
bacchor, ārī, ātus rush wildly, rave
Bacchus, ī *m.* (god of) wine
Cithaerōn, ōnis *m.* Greek mountain near Thebes, on which the rites of Bacchus were celebrated†
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, stir, shake, agitate
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry down, report
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud*
exciō, īre, īvī, itus arouse, excite, stir
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, catch, understand, reply
facessō, ere, (īv)ī, ītus do, make, fulfill†
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, cheat, mock*
impius, a, um wicked, accursed, disloyal
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, burn*
inops, opis needy, destitute, bereft (of)†
jussum, ī *n.* command, behest, order
modus, ī *m.* manner, limit, method*
mollis, e soft, yielding, easy, mild
mōtus, ūs *m.* movement, emotion†
nesciō, īre, īvī (iī) not know, be ignorant
nocturnus, a, um of the night, nocturnal
ōcior, ius swifter, quicker; very swift†
orgia, ōrum *n.* mystic rites, orgies†
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)
praesentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive first, suspect†
quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth), utter*
saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus rage, storm
spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
stimulō (1) spur, goad, prick, incite†
temptō (1) try, attempt, seek, test*
Thyias, adis *f.* Bacchante, a woman devotee of the worship of Bacchus†
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread*
trietēricus, a, um triennial†
tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*

implied indir. disc., dependent on **vocat**, l. 288, which implies **et dīcit** or some such expression; App. 390. **nesciat**: subj. in a dependent clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, *b*.

293–294. **quae tempora (sint), quis modus (sit)**: indir. questions, objects of **temptātūrum (esse)**; App. 349.

296–330. Dido, learning that the fleet was being equipped and suspecting the truth, bitterly reproaches Aeneas and with tears and prayers attempts to prevail on him to remain.

296. **possit**: deliberative subj.; App. 348.

298. **tūta**: (no matter how) *safe*, with **omnia**. **furentī** (Dīdōnī).

300. **animī**: gen. with adj. **inops**; App. 287.

302–303. **Thyias**: **yi** form a diphthong pronounced *we*. The Bacchic revels celebrated every third year on Mt. Cithaeron, near Thebes, were famous. When the **sacra** were brought out of the temple and shaken, the Thyiads or Bacchantes ran wild, dressed themselves in fawn skins, and joined the Bacchic orgies, where they brandished the **thyrsī** (*wands*), and danced to the accompaniment of clashing cymbals. Cf. Wordsworth, *Duddon Sonnets*, 20:

"Dance like a Bacchanal from rock to rock,
Tossing her frantic thyrsus wide and high."

audītō Bacchō: abl. abs.; *as the cry 'Bacchus' is heard*. The worshippers

Tandem hīs Aenēān compellat *vōcibus* ultrō:
"Dissimulāre etiam spērāstī, perfide, *tantum*
posse nefās tacitus*que meā* dēcēdere *terrā?*
Nec tē noster amor nec tē data dextera quondam
nec moritūra *tenet* crūdēlī fūnere *Dīdō?*
Quīn etiam hībernō mōlīris *sīdere classem*
et mediīs properās Aquilōnibus *īre per* altum,
crūdēlis? *Quid, sī nōn arva* aliēna *domōsque*
ignōtās *peterēs, et Troja antīqua manēret,*
Troja per undōsum *peterētur classibus aequor?*
Mēne fugis? Per ego hās lacrimās dextramque tuam tē
(quandō *aliud mihi jam miserae* nihil *ipsa relīquī*),
per cōnūbia *nostra, per* inceptōs hymenaeōs,
sī bene *quid dē tē* meruī, *fuit aut tibi* quicquam
dulce *meum*, miserēre *domūs lābentis et* istam,
ōrō, *sī quis* adhūc precibus *locus*, exue *mentem.*
Tē propter Libycae *gentēs* Nomadum*que* tyrannī
ōdēre, īnfēnsī *Tyriī; tē* propter *eundem*

---

adhūc to this point, till now
aliēnus, a, um belonging to another, other's, alien, foreign†
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind
bene well, rightly, securely, fully†
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, bitter*
dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart†
dissimulō (1) conceal, dissimulate, pretend otherwise
dulcis, e sweet, dear, pleasant, delightful*
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
exuō, ere, uī, ūtus bare, doff, discard
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
hībernus, a, um wintry, of the winter
hymenaeus, ī *m.* marriage (song), god of marriage, Hymen
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
īnfēnsus, a, um hostile, bitter
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
Libycus, a, um of Libya, a country of North Africa*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
misereor, ērī, itus pity, commiserate (*gen.*)*
mōlior, īrī, ītus prepare, attempt, do
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
nefās *n. indecl.* impiety, sin, crime*
nihil, nīl nothing, not at all
Nomas, adis *m.* tribe of North Africa†
ōdī, isse hate, detest, loathe
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
perfidus, a, um treacherous, perfidious†
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
properō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
propter on account of, near (*acc.*)†
quandō when, since, if ever, because
quīn why not, but that, nay even*
quisquam, quicquam anyone, anything
spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
tacitus, a, um silent, noiseless, secret
tyrannus, ī *m.* ruler, chieftain, tyrant
ultrō further, voluntarily*
undōsus, a, um billowy, wavy

---

shouted 'iō Bacche,' and 'Euoe Bacche.'
stimulant (illam), vocat (illam).

305–306. etiam spērā(vi)stī, perfide, (tē) posse dissimulāre tantum nefās?

309. hībernō sīdere = tempore. The ancients regularly suspended navigation during the winter months.

311–313. Quid, sī, etc.: you wouldn't sail now, even if you were going back to secure homes in Troy, and were not (as you are) sailing away to strange foreign lands (**arva aliēna**). **Troja peterētur (hībernō sīdere):** the conclusion of the conditions contrary to fact, **sī peterēs** and **sī manēret**; App. 382.

314–319. Mē: emphatic by position, obj. of **fugis. per lacrimās et per dextram. tē:** obj. of **ōrō. miserēre:** imp. **domūs:** gen. with **misereor**; App. 289.

319. sī quis (indef.). **locus (sit).**

320–321. gentēs et tyrannī ōdēre (mē). ōdēre = ōdērunt. īnfēnsī (mihi sunt)

exstīnctus pudor *et, quā sōlā sīdera* adībam,
fāma prior. *Cui mē* moribundam dēseris, — hospes
(*hoc solum nōmen* quoniam *dē conjuge* restat)?
Quid moror? An *mea* Pygmaliōn *dum moenia* frāter
dēstruat *aut captam dūcat* Gaetūlus Iarbās?
Saltem *sī qua mihī dē tē* suscepta *fuisset*
ante fugam subolēs, *sī quis mihi* parvulus aulā
lūderet *Aenēās, quī tē* tamen *ōre referret,*
nōn equidem omnīnō *capta ac* dēsorta *vidērer.*"
Dīxerat. Ille Jovis monitīs immōta *tenēbat*
lūmina et obnixus *cūram sub* corde premēbat.
Tandem pauca *refert: "Ego tē, quae plūrima fandō*
ēnumerāre valēs, numquam, *rēgīna,* negābō

---

adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus approach
an whether, or*
aula, ae *f.* hall, palace, court
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dēstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus destroy†
ēnumerō (1) recount, enumerate†
equidem indeed, truly, surely*
exsting(u)ō, ere, īnxī, īnctus extinguish, blot out, destroy, ruin
frāter, tris *m.* brother*
Gaetūlus, a, um of the Gaetuli, an African tribe
hospes, itis *m.* (*f.*) stranger, guest, host
Iarbās, ae *m.* African prince, one of Dido's suitors
immōtus, a, um unmoved, unshaken
lūdō, ere, sī, sus play, sport, mock
monitum, ī *n.* advice, warning
moribundus, a, um dying, about to die†
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
numquam never, at no time
obnītor, ī, sus (nixus) struggle†
omnīnō altogether, completely, utterly†
parvulus, a, um tiny, very small, little†
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, crush*
prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior*
pudor, ōris *m.* shame, modesty, honor
Pygmaliōn, ōnis *m.* wicked brother of Dido
quoniam since, because†
restō, āre, stitī remain, be left
saltem at least, at any rate
subolēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny, child†
suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus take up, beget, bear
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able, fare well

Tyriī: the native chieftains, as well as her own people, resented her kindly attitude toward Aeneas and the Trojans, who were foreigners.

322. et (fāma) quā sīdera adībam: *was about to gain immortal fame.* (**exstīncta est**) **fāma (mea):** (*my*) *reputation.*

323. moribundam = moritūram.

324. hoc nōmen = hospes. dē conjuge = dē nōmine conjugis.

325. Quid (= cūr) moror (mortem meam). An (moror): *am I waiting?* **dum dēstruat, dūcat:** anticipatory subjunctives with **dum**; App. 374.

327. suscepta: refers to the Roman custom of placing a new-born child on the ground before the father, who picked it up if he wished to acknowledge and rear it as his own.

329. referret: characteristic; App. 389.

331–361. Aeneas replies that he is not following his own desires but the plans of the gods and the stern decrees of fate.

331. Dīxerat (Dīdō). monitīs: abl. of cause with **tenēbat.**

332. lūmina = oculōs. premēbat = reprimēbat: repressing all outward indications of his feelings.

333–335. Ego, rēgīna, numquam negābō tē prōmeritam (esse dē mē) plūrima quae: answer to Dido's **sī meruī** of l. 317.

prōmeritam, *nec mē* meminisse pigēbit Elissae
dum memor *ipse meī, dum* spīritus *hōs* regit artūs.
Prō *rē* pauca loquar. *Neque ego hanc* abscondere fūrtō
spērāvī (*nē* finge) *fugam, nec conjugis* umquam
praetendī taedās *aut haec in* foedera *vēnī.*
Mē sī fāta meīs paterentur *dūcere vītam*
auspiciīs *et* sponte *meā* compōnere *cūrās,*
urbem Trojānam *prīmum* dulcīs*que meōrum*
relliquiās colerem, *Priamī tēcta alta manērent,*
et recidīva *manū posuissem* Pergama *victīs.*
Sed nunc Ītaliam magnam Grȳnēus Apollō,
Ītaliam Lyciae *jussēre* capessere sortēs;
hic amor, haec patria *est. Sī tē* Karthāginis *arcēs*
Phoenissam Libycae*que* aspectus dētinet *urbis,*
quae tandem Ausoniā *Teucrōs* cōnsīdere *terrā*

---

abscondō, ere, (di)dī, ditus hide
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, member, body*
a(d)spectus, ūs *m.* sight, appearance
Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian
auspicium, (i)ī *n.* auspices, authority
capessō, ere, īvī, ītus (try to) seize, reach
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, dwell (in), cherish, honor*
compōnō, ere, posuī, positus put together, settle, calm, quiet
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down), settle*
dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus hold back, detain
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
Elissa, ae *f.* Dido†
fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus fashion, pretend, imagine, form, mold
foedus, eris *n.* treaty, agreement, pact
fūrtum, ī *n.* stealth, theft, trick†
Grȳnēus, a, um of Grynium, a town in Asia Minor, with an oracle of Apollo†
Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of North Africa
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
Lycia, ae *f.* country of Asia Minor
meminī, isse remember, recall (*gen.*)
memor, oris mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
patior, ī, passus suffer, endure, allow*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty*
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician woman, Dido
piget, ēre, uit it displeases†
praetendō, ere, ī, ntus hold before, use as screen
prō instead of, in behalf of, for, before (*abl.*)*
prōmereor, ērī, itus deserve, render service, merit, earn†
recidīvus, a, um revived, renewed†
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, direct, guide*
re(l)liquiae, ārum *f.* remnants, relics, leavings
sors, rtis *f.* lot, fate, portion, oracle*
spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
spīritus, ūs *m.* breath, spirit, life, soul†
spōns, spontis *f.* wish, will, desire†
taeda, ae *f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
umquam ever, at any time

---

valēs = potes. **Elissae** = Dīdōnis; gen. with **meminī**; App. 288.

336. dum memor (sum) **meī.**

337. Prō rē: *in defense of my course.*

338. nē finge: poetical negative imperative for prose nōlī fingere; App. 256, *a.*

339. praetendī taedās: *held out (the prospect of) marriage.* **haec in foedera:** i.e., of marriage.

340. paterentur: condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

343–344. colerem, manērent, posuissem: conclusions contrary to fact; App. 382. **victīs** (**Teucrīs**): dat. of reference.

346. Lyciae sortēs = **sortēs Lycii Apollinis.**

347. hic: pronounce hicc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.* **hic** (**est**) **amor, haec patria est:** refer to Italy, each pronoun being attracted into the gender of its predicate noun; App. 240, *a.*

349–350. quae invidia est (**tibi**) **Teu-**

invidia *est?* *Et nōs* fās extera *quaerere rēgna.*
Mē patris Anchīsae, quotiēns ūmentibus *umbrīs*
nox operit *terrās,* quotiēns astra ignea *surgunt,*
admonet *in somnīs et* turbida terret imāgō;
mē puer Ascanius *capitisque* injūria cārī,
quem rēgnō Hesperiae fraudō *et* fātālibus *arvīs.*
Nunc etiam interpres *dīvum Jove missus ab ipsō*
(testor utrumque *caput*) celerīs mandāta *per aurās*
dētulit: *ipse deum* manifestō *in lūmine vīdī*
intrantem mūrōs *vōcemque hīs* auribus hausī.
Dēsine *mēque tuīs* incendere *tēque* querēlīs;
Ītaliam nōn sponte *sequor.*"
Tālia dīcentem jamdūdum āversa tuētur
hūc illūc *volvēns oculōs tōtumque* pererrat
lūminibus tacitīs *et sīc* accēnsa profātur:

---

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle, burn
admoneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn†
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
auris, is *f.* ear*
āvertor, ī, rsus turn away, avert
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, speedy*
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry down, report
dēsinō, ere, sīvī (iī), situs cease, desist†
etiam also, even, besides, furthermore*
exterus, a, um outside, foreign
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine law*
fātālis, e fated, fatal, destined
fraudō (1) defraud, deprive, cheat†
hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus drink (in), drain
Hesperia, ae *f.* Hesperia, Italy, Westland
igneus, a, um fiery, flaming†
illūc thither, to that place
imāgō, inis *f.* image, likeness, ghost*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle, burn*
injūria, ae *f.* wrong, injury, injustice
interpres, etis *m.* (*f.*) interpreter, agent
intrō (1) enter, penetrate
invidia, ae *f.* grudge, envy, jealousy
jamdūdum long since, for a long time
mandātum, ī *n.* command, mandate
manifestus, a, um clear, manifest
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, battlement*
operiō, īre, uī, rtus cover, hide†
pererrō (1) wander over, survey
profor, ārī, ātus speak (out), say
querēla, ae *f.* complaint, lament†
quotiēns how often, as often as
spōns, spontis *f.* wish, will, desire
tacitus, a, um silent, quiet, still, secret
terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify
testor, ārī, ātus call to witness, swear by, testify
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, protect, eye*
turbidus, a, um troubled, agitated
ūmēns, entis moist, dewy, damp
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*

---

crōs cōnsīdere: **cōnsīdere** is the subject and **invidia** the predicate of **est**.

350. Et: *also, too* (as well as you). **fās (est).**

351–353. **patris Anchīsae:** with **imāgō.**

354. **mē puer Ascanius (movet):** (the thought of) *my son Ascanius urges me on.* **capitis cārī = Ascanī;** obj. gen., *the wrong* (I am doing) *to Ascanius;* App. 284.

355. **rēgnō, arvis:** abl. of separation.

356. **interpres dīv(ōr)um:** Mercury.

357. **utrumque = et meum et tuum.**

361. **sponte (meā).**

362–392. Carried away by her furious passion, Dido curses Aeneas and all his race, hurries from his presence, and falls fainting into the arms of her attendants.

362. **tuētur:** of past action continued into the present, *has long been eyeing and is still eyeing;* App. 351, 1, *b.*

363. **tōtum (Aenēān) pererrat.**

"*Nec tibi dīva parēns generis nec* Dardanus auctor,
perfide, *sed* dūrīs genuit *tē* cautibus horrēns
Caucasus Hyrcānae*que* admōrunt ūbera tigrēs.
Nam quid dissimulō *aut quae mē ad majōra* reservō?
Num flētū ingemuit *nostrō?* Num *lūmina* flexit?
Num *lacrimās victus dedit aut* miserātus amantem *est?*
Quae quibus anteferam? *Jam jam nec maxima Jūnō*
nec Sāturnius *haec oculīs pater* aspicit aequīs.
Nūsquam tūta fidēs. Ējectum *lītore,* egentem
excēpī *et rēgnī* dēmēns *in parte* locāvī.
Āmissam *classem, sociōs ā morte* redūxī
(*heu* furiīs incēnsa *feror!*): *nunc* augur Apollō,
nunc Lyciae sortēs, *nunc et Jove missus ab ipsō*

---

admoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move to
aequus, a, um equal, propitious, favorable, just
amāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) lover
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus lose, let go*
anteferō, ferre, tulī, lātus set before, prefer, choose first†
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold, look (at)*
auctor, ōris *m.* (*f.*) author, founder, sponsor
augur, uris *m.* (*f.*) augur, prophet†
Caucasus, ī *m.* rugged mountain range between Europe and Asia†
cautēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag
Dardanus, ī *m.* early king of Troy
dēmēns, entis crazy, mad, frenzied
dissimulō (1) pretend otherwise, conceal, dissimulate
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, rough*
egēns, entis needy, in want, destitute
ējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast out, eject
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, take
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, trust, confidence*
flectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, move
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament
furiae, ārum *f.* furies, madness, frenzy
gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, produce, beget
horreō, ēre, uī shudder, be rough*
Hyrcānus, a, um Hyrcanian, of Hyrcania, a wild district on the Caspian Sea†
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle, burn*
ingemō, ere, uī groan, roar, lament
locō (1) place, locate, establish*
Lycius, a, um Lycian, of Lycia, a country of Asia Minor
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
num *interrog., expecting answer no*†
nūsquam nowhere, never
perfidus, a, um treacherous, perfidious
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead back, restore
reservō (1) reserve, keep back, save†
Sāturnius, a, um (born) of Saturn, father of Jupiter and Juno
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
tigris, (id)is *m.* (*f.*) tiger, tigress†
tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*
ūber, eris *n.* udder, breast, fertility

---

365. tibi (est).

366–367. dūrīs cautibus: abl. of cause with **horrēns** or of place where. These are stock comparisons for hard-heartedness in love. **admō(vē)runt ūbera (tibi):** *suckled you.*

368. majōra (mala): *greater wrongs.*

369. flētū: abl. of cause. **ingemuit:** the third person, since she contemptuously talks about rather than to him. **lūmina** = **oculōs.**

370. miseror: with the acc., while **misereor** takes the gen. **(mē) amantem.**

371. Quae quibus anteferam: *what shall I say (do) first?*

372. Sāturnius pater = **Juppiter.**

373. (in) lītore. (eum or tē) egentem: Aeneas had said of himself and his followers that they were **omnium egēnōs,** I, 599.

376–377. nunc, nunc, nunc: a scornful rejoinder to the **nunc, nunc** of Aeneas, ll. 345, 356: App. 413.

interpres *dīvum fert* horrida jussa *per aurās.*
Scīlicet *is superīs labor est, ea cūra* quiētōs
sollicitat. *Neque tē teneō neque dicta* refellō:
ī, sequere Ītaliam ventīs, pete rēgna per undās.
Spērō equidem *mediīs, sī quid pia nūmina possunt,*
supplicia hausūrum scopulīs *et nōmine Dīdō*
saepe *vocātūrum. Sequar ātrīs ignibus* absēns
et, cum frīgida *mors animā* sēdūxerit artūs,
omnibus umbra locīs aderō. Dabis, improbe, *poenās.*
Audiam et haec mānīs *veniet mihi fāma sub īmōs."*
Hīs medium dictīs sermōnem abrumpit *et aurās*
aegra *fugit sēque ex oculīs* āvertit *et* aufert,
linquēns *multa* metū cūnctantem *et multa parantem*
dīcere. Suscipiunt famulae conlāpsa*que* membra

abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break off
absēns, entis absent, separated
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away, remove
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
conlābor, ī, lāpsus collapse, faint†
cūnctor, ārī, ātus delay, hesitate, linger
equidem indeed, truly, surely*
famula, ae *f.* maid servant
frīgidus, a, um cold, chilly, frigid
hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus drink (in), drain
horridus, a, um rough, horrible
improbus, a, um wicked, cruel
interpres, etis *m.* (*f.*) interpreter, agent
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
quiētus, a, um quiet, serene, calm
refellō, ere, ī, contradict, refute†
saepe often, frequently, again and again*
scīlicet of course, forsooth, doubtless
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus withdraw, separate†
sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech
sollicitō (1) agitate, disquiet, disturb†
spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
supplicium, (i)ī *n.* punishment, torture†
suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus take up, rear

378–380. Scornfully sarcastic. **is**: subj., attracted into the gender of the predicate, App. 240, *a*. (**superōs**) **quiētōs.**

381. ī, sequere: imperatives. **sequere Ītaliam**: a contemptuous rejoinder to the **Ītaliam sequor** of l. 361.

382–384. mediīs (in) scopulīs: Dido hopes that the ships of Aeneas may be wrecked on reefs in the midst of the sea; App. 246. **quid**: indef., *anything*. (**tē**) **hausūrum (esse). Dīdō**: acc., a Greek form; obj. of **vocātūrum. ātrīs ignibus**: the remorseful thoughts about Dido will pursue Aeneas like furies with their *smoking torches*. The idea is that, although far away (**absēns**), she will pursue him with the pangs of a guilty conscience, and after death her ghost will haunt him wherever he may be. Cf. Tasso, *Jerusalem Delivered*, 16, 59–60:

"Go, cruel man, and take with thee that peace
Thou leav'st with me; I do not bid thee stay.
But I will follow — hope for no release —
My angry shade shall haunt thee on thy way;
Like a new Fury I will dog thy path,
With torch and serpents armed, to wreak my wrath."

385. animā: the ancients often thought of death as the separation of the body from the soul.

386. umbra: (*as*) *a ghost*. **Dabis poenās**: *you shall pay the penalty, suffer punishment.*

388–389. aurās (= **lūcem**) **fugit**: she rushes indoors.

390. metū: abl. of cause; *for fear* (of making matters worse).

391–392. Suscipiunt: *catch her* (as she faints and falls). **thalamō**: dat. of direction; equivalent to **in thalamum. (in) strātīs.**

marmoreō *referunt* thalamō strātīs*que* repōnunt.
At pius Aenēās, quamquam lēnīre dolentem
sōlandō cupit *et dictīs* āvertere *cūrās*,
multa gemēns *magnōque animum* labefactus *amōre*
jussa tamen *dīvum* exsequitur *classemque* revīsit.
Tum vērō *Teucrī* incumbunt *et lītore* celsās
dēdūcunt *tōtō nāvīs*. Natat ūncta carīna,
frondentīs*que ferunt rēmōs et* rōbora *silvīs*
īnfabricāta *fugae* studiō.
Migrantīs *cernās tōtāque ex urbe ruentīs*.
Ac velut *ingentem* formīcae farris acervum
cum populant hiemis memorēs *tēctōque* repōnunt,
it nigrum *campīs agmen* praedam*que per* herbās
convectant calle angustō: *pars* grandia trūdunt
obnixae frūmenta *umerīs*, *pars agmina* cōgunt

---

acervus, ī *m.* heap, pile, mass†
angustus, a, um narrow, strait
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert, divert*
callis, is *m.* path, track†
carīna, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus bring together, force*
convectō (1) convey, carry along†
cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus desire, wish
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead down, launch
doleō, ēre, uī, itus grieve, suffer, resent
exsequor, ī, secūtus follow out, perform†
far, farris *n.* spelt, a kind of grain†
formīca, ae *f.* ant†
frondēns, entis leafy, fronded
frūmentum, ī *n.* grain, corn†
gemō, ere, uī, itus groan, lament, roar
grandis, e large, great, tall, huge†
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm*
incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus recline upon, urge on (work)
īnfabricātus, a, um unfashioned, rough†
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
labefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus shake, stagger†
lēniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus soothe, calm
marmoreus, a, um (of) marble, white†
memor, oris mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
migrō (1) migrate, depart†
natō (1) swim, float, overflow
niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky*
obnītor, ī, sus (nixus) push against, strive
populō (1) devastate, plunder, ravage
praeda, ae *f.* booty, spoils, prey
quamquam although, and yet, however
repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus replace, lay away, store (up), deposit*
revīsō, ere revisit, see again, return to
rōbur, oris *n.* oak, strength*
sōlor, ārī, ātus console, comfort, solace
strātum, ī *n.* bed, couch; pavement
studium, (i)ī *n.* eagerness, desire, zeal
tamen nevertheless, however, but*
thalamus, ī *m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
trūdō, ere, sī, sus push, shove†
ung(u)ō, ere, ūnxī, ūnctus anoint, smear, calk†
velut(ī) as, just as*
vērō truly, indeed, but

393–449. Her own efforts proving unavailing, Dido sends her sister Anna, hoping that she may persuade Aeneas; but he is deaf to all entreaties.

393. dolentem (Dīdōnem).

395. animum: acc. of respect; App. 311.

397. incumbunt (labōrī).

399. frondentīs: in their eagerness, studiō, they do not take time to strip off the leaves.

401. cernās: potential subj.; App. 252.

404–405. it, convectant: the collective noun, agmen, may take its verb either in the sing. or pl.; App. 236, *a*.

406. agmina cōgunt: *close up the ranks*, to keep the others from straggling; a military term.

castīgant*que* morās, opere *omnis* sēmita fervet.
Quis tibi tum, Dīdō, cernentī tālia sēnsus,
quōsve dabās gemitūs, *cum lītora* fervere lātē
prōspicerēs *arce ex summā, tōtumque vidērēs*
miscērī *ante oculōs tantīs clāmōribus aequor!*
Improbe *Amor, quid nōn* mortālia *pectora* cōgis!
Īre iterum *in lacrimās*, iterum temptāre precandō
cōgitur *et* supplex *animōs* summittere *amōrī*,
nē quid inexpertum frūstrā moritūra *relinquat.*

"Anna, *vidēs tōtō* properārī *lītore circum:*
undique convēnēre; *vocat jam* carbasus *aurās*,
puppibus et laetī nautae imposuēre corōnās.
Hunc ego sī potuī tantum spērāre dolōrem,
et perferre, soror, *poterō. Miserae hoc* tamen *ūnum*
exsequere, Anna, *mihī; sōlam nam* perfidus *ille*
tē colere, arcānōs etiam *tibi* crēdere sēnsūs;

Anna, ae *f.* sister of Dido
arcānus, a, um secret, hidden
carbasus, ī *f.* linen; sail
castīgō (1) reprove, chastise, punish†
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus bring together, force*
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, honor*
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus come together, convene
corōna, ae *f.* wreath, garland, crown
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, (in)trust (*dat.*)*
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
exsequor, ī, secūtus follow out, perform
ferv(e)ō, ēre, (bu)ī boil, be busy
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place upon, set to (*dat.*)*
improbus, a, um wicked, cruel, bad
inexpertus, a, um untried†
iterum again, anew, a second time*
lātē widely, far and wide
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, loitering*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
nauta, ae *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
opus, eris *n.* work, toil, task, deed*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear, endure
perfidus, a, um treacherous, perfidious
precor, ārī, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
properō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold
sēmita, ae *f.* path
sēnsus, ūs *m.* feeling, perception, sense
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
summittō (sub), ere, mīsī, missus lower, submit
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
temptō (1) try, seek, attempt, test*
undique on (from) all sides*

---

408. sēnsus (erat).

409. fervĕre: as though of the third conjugation, although **fervet**, a second conjugational form, has just occurred, l. 407.

410. arce: probably some sort of tall watch tower of Dido's palace.

412. quid cōgis: see the note on **quid cōgis**, III, 56.

413. temptāre (Aenēān).

415. nē quid (indef.) inexpertum relinquat (et sīc moriātur) frūstrā: there would be no object in her dying so long as there was any possibility of winning back Aeneas.

416. properārī: used impersonally.

418. corōnās: as a sign of joy at the prospect of immediate departure. On entering or leaving port, sailors often decked their ships with garlands.

420. perferre poterō: Dido is deceiving Anna if she has already determined on suicide in case she loses Aeneas.

422. colere, crēdere: historical infinitives; App. 257.

sōla virī mollīs aditūs *et tempora* nōrās:
ī, soror, *atque* hostem supplex adfāre superbum:
nōn ego cum Danaīs Trojānam exscindere *gentem*
Aulide jūrāvī *classemve ad* Pergama *mīsī,*
nec patris Anchīsae cinerēs mānīsve revellī:
cūr *mea dicta* negat dūrās dēmittere *in* aurīs?
Quō ruit? Extrēmum *hoc miserae det mūnus* amantī:
exspectet facilemque *fugam ventōsque ferentīs.*
Nōn jam conjugium *antīquum, quod* prōdidit, ōrō,
nec pulchrō *ut* Latiō careat *rēgnumque relinquat:*
tempus ināne *petō,* requiem spatiumque furōrī,
dum mea mē victam doceat *fortūna* dolēre.
Extrēmam *hanc* ōrō veniam (miserēre sorōris),
quam mihi cum dederit cumulātam *morte* remittam."
Tālibus ōrābat, *tālīsque miserrima* flētūs
fertque refertque soror. *Sed nūllīs ille movētur*
flētibus, *aut vōcēs ūllās* tractābilis *audit;*
fāta obstant placidāsque *virī deus* obstruit aurīs.

---

adfor, ārī, ātus address, speak to*
aditus, ūs *m.* approach, access
amāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) lover
Aulis, idis *f.* port in eastern Greece whence the Greek fleet set sail to attack Troy†
auris, is *f.* ear*
careō, ēre, uī be without, lack (*abl.*)
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
conjugium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
cumulō (1) heap (up), pile (high)†
cūr why? wherefore?
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send down, let down, let fall; receive*
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
doleō, ēre, uī, itus grieve, suffer, resent
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
exscindō, ere, scidī, scissus destroy, root out
ex(s)pectō (1) (a)wait, expect, hope (for)*
extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme*
facilis, e easy, favorable, ready
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, tearful appeal, lament
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
inānis, e empty, idle, useless, vain*
jūrō (1) take oath, swear, conspire†
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district in central Italy*
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
misereor, ērī, itus pity, commiserate (*gen.*)
mollis, e soft, yielding, gentle, delicate
negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; *perf.* know*
obstō, āre, stitī, status hinder, oppose
obstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus block, stop†
ōrō (1) pray (to, for), entreat, beseech*
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
placidus, a, um calm, kind(ly), peaceful*
prōdō, ere, didī, ditus betray, hand down
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, noble, splendid, handsome, illustrious*
remittō, ere, mīsī, missus return, repay
requiēs, ētis (ēī) *f.* rest, respite, repose
revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear off (up, away)†
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
spatium, (i)ī *n.* space, time, period†
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
tractābilis, e manageable, gentle
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
venia, ae *f.* favor, pardon, grace

---

423. tempora: (*suitable*) *time* (for approach). nō(ve)rās.

429–430. det, exspectet: vol. (jussive); App. 254. **ventōs ferentīs:** *favorable winds*, a common meaning.

432. pulchrō Latiō: contemptuously; abl. with **careat. ut careat, (ut) relinquat:** subst. vol. clauses; obj. of **ōrō**; App. 360.

435. miserēre: imp.

436. cumulātam: participle with **quam**, referring to the favor (**veniam**) which she asks for. **morte:** abl. of time or means. The meaning of Dido's statement is obscure, perhaps intentionally so.

438. fertque refertque (ad Aenēān).

Ac velut annōsō validam *cum* rōbore quercum
Alpīnī Boreae *nunc hinc nunc* flātibus illinc
ēruere *inter sē* certant; *it* strīdor, *et altae*
cōnsternunt *terram* concussō stīpite frondēs;
ipsa haeret scopulīs *et* quantum vertice *ad aurās*
aetheriās, *tantum* rādīce *in* Tartara *tendit:*
haud secus adsiduīs *hinc atque hinc vōcibus* hērōs
tunditur, *et magnō* persentit *pectore cūrās;*
mēns immōta *manet, lacrimae volvuntur* inānēs.
Tum vērō *īnfēlīx fātīs* exterrita *Dīdō*
mortem ōrat; taedet *caelī* convexa tuērī.
Quō magis inceptum peragat *lūcemque relinquat,*
vīdit, tūricremīs *cum dōna* impōneret *ārīs,*
(horrendum *dictū*) laticēs nigrēscere *sacrōs*
fūsaque in obscēnum *sē* vertere vīna cruōrem.
Hoc vīsum *nūllī, nōn ipsī* effāta sorōrī.

---

adsiduus, a, um constant, unceasing†
aetherius, a, um high in the air, airy
Alpīnus, a, um Alpine, of the Alps†
annōsus, a, um aged, old, full of years†
Boreās, ae *m.* (north) wind
certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie
concutiō, ere, ussī, ussus shake, shatter
cōnsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew†
convexum, ī *n.* hollow, vault, dome
cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
effor, ārī, ātus speak out, say, tell
ēruō, ere, uī, utus uproot, overthrow
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
flātus, ūs *m.* blast, wind, blowing†
frōns, ondis *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to) (*dat.*)*
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
horrendus, a, um horrible, dreadful*
illinc from that side, thence†
immōtus, a, um unmoved, unshaken
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on (*dat.*)*
inānis, e empty, idle, useless, vain*
inceptum, ī *n.* beginning, undertaking
latex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine
magis more, rather, preferably*
nigrēscō, ere, gruī turn black, darken†
obscēnus, a, um foul, filthy, disgusting
ōrō (1) pray (for, to), entreat, beseech*
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus accomplish, finish
persentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive, feel
quantum how much, how greatly, (as much) as
quercus, ūs *f.* oak
rādīx, īcis *f.* root
rōbur, oris *n.* oak, strength*
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
secus otherwise, differently
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
stīpes, itis *m.* stock, trunk, stem
strīdor, ōris *m.* noise, creaking, roar
taedet, ēre, uit, taesum it wearies†
Tartara, ōrum *n.* the underworld, Hades
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, look at*
tundō, ere, tutūdī, tū(n)sus beat, assail
tūricremus, a, um incense-burning†
validus, a, um strong, mighty, sturdy
velut(ī) as, just as*
vērō indeed, truly, but
vertex, icis *m.* top, peak, head, summit*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*
vīsum, ī *n.* sight, appearance, vision

---

441. rōbore: abl. of quality; App. 330.
444. concussō stīpite: abl. abs.
445. ipsa (quercus).
446. in: *toward.*
447. hērōs (Aenēās).

450–473. Terrified by omens and disturbed by dreams, Dido determines to die.

451. taedet (eam).
452. Quō peragat, (quō) relinquat: subjunctives of purpose; App. 388.
453. ārīs: dat. with compound.
454–455. An omen of evil.
456. effāta (est Dīdō).

Praetereā *fuit in tēctīs dē* marmore templum
conjugis antīquī, mīrō *quod honōre* colēbat,
velleribus niveīs *et* fēstā fronde revīnctum:
hinc exaudīrī *vōcēs et* verba *vocantis*
vīsa virī, nox cum terrās obscūra *tenēret*,
sōlaque culminibus fērālī carmine būbō
saepe querī *et longās in* flētum *dūcere vōcēs;*
multaque praetereā *vātum* praedicta priōrum
terribilī monitū horrificant. *Agit ipse furentem*
in somnīs ferus *Aenēās*, semper*que relinquī*
sōla sibī, semper *longam* incomitāta *vidētur*
īre viam et Tyriōs dēsertā *quaerere terrā*,
Eumenidum velutī dēmēns *videt agmina* Pentheus
et sōlem *geminum et* duplicēs *sē* ostendere Thēbās,
aut Agamemnonius scaenīs agitātus Orestēs,
armātam facibus *mātrem et* serpentibus *ātrīs*

Agamemnonius, a, um of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae
agitō (1) drive, hunt, pursue, harass
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
būbō, ōnis *m.* (*f.*) owl†
carmen, inis *n.* song, chant, note
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, honor*
culmen, inis *n.* roof, top, peak, summit*
dēmēns, entis mad, crazy, frenzied
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
duplex, icis double, two-fold
Eumenides, um *f.* Furies, avenging spirits†
exaudiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus hear (from)
fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
fērālis, e funereal, of death, fateful†
ferus, a, um wild, savage, fierce*
fēstus, a, um festal, festive, holiday
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament
frōns, ondis *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
horrificō (1) horrify, terrify, alarm†
incomitātus, a, um unaccompanied, alone
marmor, oris *n.* marble†
mīrus, a, um wonderful, marvelous
monitus, ūs *m.* advice, warning
niveus, a, um white, snowy
obscūrus, a, um dark, dim, gloomy*
Orestēs, is (ae) *m.* son of Agamemnon and Clytaemnestra; he killed his mother for murdering his father and so was driven mad by the Furies
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display*
Pentheus, eī (eos) *m.* legendary king of Thebes, driven mad for opposing the worship of Bacchus; he began to see everything double, and was finally torn to pieces by his mother and auntst
praedictum, ī *n.* prophecy, prediction†
praetereā besides, also, in addition*
prior, ius former, ancient, prior*
queror, ī, questus complain, (be)wail
revinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, wreathe
saepe often, frequently, repeatedly*
scaena, ae *f.* stage, scene, background
semper always, ever, repeatedly*
serpēns, entis *m.* (*f.*) serpent, snake
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
terribilis, e terrible, terrifying, dire†
Thēbae, ārum *f.* famous Greek city†
vellus, eris *n.* fleece, wool†
velut(ī) as, just as*
verbum, ī *n.* word, speech, talk

---

457. templum: a little chapel in honor of her dead husband, in accordance with a common ancient custom. **in tēctīs:** probably in the open court within the palace.

460. hinc = ex hōc templō.

461. virī = conjugis.

462. culminibus: of the palace. **būbō (vīsa est):** another evil omen, and so considered by the superstitious even today.

466. in somnīs: *in her dreams*, a not uncommon meaning of **somnus**, especially in the plural.

468. viam: cognate acc.; App. 313.

471. Orestēs: a favorite subject of Greek and Roman drama; see the notes on III, 331.

cum fugit ultrīcēs*que* sedent *in līmine* Dīrae.
Ergō *ubi* concēpit furiās ēvicta dolōre
dēcrēvit*que* morī, *tempus sēcum ipsa* modum*que*
exigit, *et* maestam *dictīs* adgressa sorōrem
cōnsilium vultū tegit *ac* spem fronte serēnat:
"Invēnī, germāna, *viam* (grātāre sorōrī)
quae mihi reddat *eum vel eō mē* solvat amantem.
Ōceanī *fīnem* juxtā sōlem*que* cadentem
ultimus Aethiopum *locus est, ubi maximus* Atlās
axem *umerō* torquet stēllīs *ardentibus* aptum:
hinc mihi Massȳlae *gentis* mōnstrāta sacerdōs,
Hesperidum templī custōs, epulās*que* dracōnī
quae dabat et sacrōs servābat in arbore rāmōs,

adgredior, ī, gressus attack, address
Aethiops, opis *m.* Ethiopian, African†
amō (1) love, like, cherish*
aptus, a, um fitted, equipped, studded†
arbōs (or), **oris** *f.* tree; wood(s)*
Atlās, antis *m.* god who supported the heavens on his shoulders; high mountain in Northwest Africa
axis, is *m.* axle, axis, wheel, vault, sky
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
concipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus conceive, realize†
cōnsilium, (i)ī *n.* plan, advice; council
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus decide†
Dīrae, ārum *f.* Furies
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
dracō, ōnis *m.* serpent, dragon
epulae, ārum *f.* feast, banquet, food
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus conquer, master
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus work out, plan
frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, face*
furia, ae *f.* fury, madness, frenzy
germāna, ae *f.* sister
grātor, ārī, ātus congratulate, wish joy to (*dat.*)†
Hesperides, um *f.* daughters of Atlas and Hesperia, keepers of a dragon, which guarded a magic tree bearing golden apples†
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus find, come upon
juxtā close (to), next (*acc.*)*
maestus, a, um sad, gloomy, mournful*
Massȳlus, a, um of the Massylians, a tribe of North Africa
modus, ī *m.* manner, method, limit*
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, instruct*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
Ōceanus, ī *m.* Ocean
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give back, return, render, answer*
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle*
serēnō (1) (make) clear, make serene
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
stēlla, ae *f.* star, constellation
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus conceal, cover*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus turn, twist, sway*
ultimus, a, um last, utmost, farthest, remotest*
ultrīx, īcis avenging; avenger
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

473. in līmine: to prevent the escape of their victim.

474–503. Concealing her plans from her sister, Dido builds a great funeral pyre in the palace court, pretending that she is preparing a magic rite which will bring back Aeneas or else free her of her love for him.

478. sorōrī: dat. with **grātāre**, which is imp.; App. 297.

479. quae reddat, (quae) solvat: subjunctives of characteristic; App. 389.
eum, eō: Dido consciously avoids mentioning the name of Aeneas and refers to him in the vaguest way possible by using the colorless pronoun is rather than one more definite, such as **ille**.

483. hinc = ex hōc locō. mōnstrāta (est).

485. et (sīc) servābat: by means of the dragon, the priestess guards the magic tree with its golden apples.

spargēns ūmida mella sopōriferum*que* papāver.
Haec sē carminibus prōmittit solvere *mentēs*
quās velit, ast aliīs dūrās immittere *cūrās*,
sistere aquam fluviīs *et* vertere *sīdera* retrō,
nocturnōs*que movet* mānīs: mūgīre *vidēbis*
sub pedibus terram et dēscendere *montibus* ornōs.
Testor, cāra, *deōs et tē*, germāna, *tuumque*
dulce *caput*, magicās invītam accingier artīs.
Tū sēcrēta pyram *tēctō* interiōre *sub aurās*
ērige, *et arma virī* thalamō *quae* fīxa *relīquit*
impius exuviās*que omnīs* lectum*que* jugālem,
quō periī, superimpōnās: abolēre nefandī

---

aboleō, ēre, ēvī, itus destroy, abolish
accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird(le)
aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood*
ars, artis *f.* art, device, artifice, skill*
carmen, inis *n.* song, poem, incantation, charm
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus erect, raise
exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, relics, mementos
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, transfix*
fluvius, (i)ī *m.* river, stream
germāna, ae *f.* sister
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus send in (to), bring on
impius, a, um wicked, accursed, disloyal
interior, ius inner, interior
invītus, a, um unwilling, reluctant
jugālis, e of wedlock, matrimonial
lectus, ī *m.* bed, couch†
magicus, a, um magic†
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
mel, mellis *n.* honey
mūgiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus roar, bellow
nefandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable
nocturnus, a, um of the night, nocturnal†
ornus, ī *f.* ash tree
papāver, eris *n.* poppy, poppy juice
pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus, perish, die
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus promise*
pyra, ae *f.* funeral pile, pyre†
retrō backward(s), back
sēcrētus, a, um remote, secret, secluded
sistō, ere, stetī, status stop, stay, set(tle)
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
sopōrifer, era, erum sleep-bringing†
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
superimpōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay above†
testor, ārī, ātus call to witness, testify
thalamus, ī *m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, wet
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*

---

486. sopōriferum: used here as a purely ornamental general epithet, as a sleep-producing food would be the last thing in the world for the keeper to give to a dragon which was playing the part of a watchdog.

487–488. Haec (sacerdōs). mentēs (ā cūrīs) solvere, aliīs (mentibus) cūrās immittere.

489. sistere, vertere: some of the stock claims of witches and magicians. **fluviīs:** dat. of reference.

490–491. nocturnōs mānīs: ghosts ordinarily appear only at night. **terram mūgīre, dēscendere ornōs:** through the magic power of the priestess.

492–493. The better classes of Vergil's time condemned the use of witchcraft and magic as being unsportsmanlike. **(mē) invītam accingier = accingī:** an old form of the passive inf., used as a middle, with **artīs** as its obj.; App. 309.

494. (in) tēctō interiōre sub aurās: *in the courtyard.*

495. virī: Dido continues to avoid mentioning the name of Aeneas; **virī** here possibly means **conjugis**, as often.

495–496. thalamō, lectum jugālem: Dido persists in her contention that Aeneas was actually her husband. See ll. 172 and 324.

497. superimpōnās: vol., equivalent to an imp.; App. 254.

cūncta virī monimenta juvat mōnstrat*que* sacerdōs."
Haec effāta silet, pallor *simul* occupat *ōra.*
Nōn tamen Anna *novīs* praetexere fūnera *sacrīs*
germānam crēdit, *nec tantōs mente* furōrēs
concipit *aut* graviōra timet quam *morte* Sychaeī.
Ergō jussa *parat.*
At rēgīna pyrā penetrālī *in sēde sub aurās*
ērēctā *ingentī* taedīs *atque* īlice sectā,
intendit*que locum* sertīs *et* fronde corōnat
fūnereā; *super* exuviās ēnsem*que relictum*
effigiem*que* torō locat *haud* ignāra futūrī.
Stant ārae circum et crīnīs effūsa sacerdōs
ter centum tonat *ōre deōs,* Erebum*que* Chaos*que*

Anna, ae *f.* sister of Dido
centum hundred*
Chaos (*nom. and acc.*) *n.* Chaos, (god of) the lower world†
concipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus conceive, grasp
corōnō (1) crown, wreathe, encircle
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
effigiēs, ēī *f.* image, likeness, effigy
effor, ārī, ātus speak out, say, tell
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out; dishevel*
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
Erebus, ī *m.* Hades, (god of) the lower world
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus erect, raise
exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, relics, mementoes
frōns, ondis *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
fūnereus, a, um funereal, of death†
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
futūrum, ī *n.* the future†
germāna, ae *f.* sister
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
īlex, icis *f.* holm-oak
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, cover
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
locō (1) place, locate, establish*
monimentum (monumentum), ī *n.* reminder, memorial
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, instruct*
occupō (1) seize (beforehand), occupy
pallor, ōris *m.* paleness, pallor†
penetrālis, e inner, innermost
praetexō, ere, uī, xtus veil, cover, fringe
pyra, ae *f.* funeral pile, pyre
quam how, than, as*
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, slice, cleave*
serta, ōrum *n.* wreath, garland
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, hush, be still
Sychaeus, ī *m.* deceased husband of Dido
taeda, ae *f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)
tamen, however, nevertheless, but*
ter three times, thrice*
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
tonō, āre, uī, itus thunder, roar
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*

498. juvat (mē): the subj. is **abolēre. mōnstrat (mihi).**

500–502. tamen Anna nōn crēdit germānam (Dīdōnem) praetexere fūnera (hīs) sacrīs novīs, nec (Anna) tantōs furōrēs (Dīdōnis) concipit mente (suā). morte: abl. of time.

504–521. Dido offers prayers and sacrifices to the gods of the lower world.

504. penetrālī in sēde = in tēctō interiōre: see l. 494.

507. super: adverb.

508. effigiem (Aenēae): Greek and Roman magicians commonly thus employed an image of a person or something belonging to him, claiming that thus they could affect the one bewitched and cause him to suffer a fate similar to that experienced by the objects.

509. crīnīs: obj. of the middle part. **effūsa;** App. 309, *a.*

510–511. deōs: cognate acc.; App. 313. The lower world and its deities were especially invoked in witchcraft and magic rites. **ōra:** apposition with **Hecatēn. tria virginis ōra Diānae:** in apposition with and explanatory of **tergeminam Hecatēn,** as the goddess was Luna in heaven, Diana on earth, and

tergeminamque Hecatēn, tria virginis ōra Diānae.
Sparserat *et* laticēs simulātōs fontis Avernī,
falcibus *et* messae *ad* lūnam *quaeruntur* aēnīs
pūbentēs herbae nigrī *cum* lacte venēnī;
quaeritur et nāscentis *equī dē* fronte revulsus
et mātrī praereptus *amor*.
Ipsa molā *manibusque piīs* altāria juxtā
ūnum exūta *pedem* vinclīs, *in* veste recīnctā,
testātur moritūra *deōs et* cōnscia *fātī*
sīdera; tum, sī quod nōn aequō foedere amantīs
cūrae nūmen habet jūstumque memorque, precātur.
Nox erat et placidum carpēbant *fessa* sopōrem
corpora per terrās, silvaeque et saeva quiērant

---

aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen
aequus, a, um equal, mutual, just
altāria, ium *n.* altar
amāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) lover
Avernus, a, um of Lake Avernus in Italy, of the lower world*
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume, take; enjoy
cōnscius, a, um conscious; confederate
Diāna, ae *f.* goddess of the chase and the moonlight, identified with Hecate
exuō, ere, uī, ūtus bare, doff, put off
falx, falcis *f.* scythe, sickle†
foedus, eris *n.* treaty, agreement, pact
fōns, fontis *m.* fountain, source, spring
frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, face*
Hecatē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world, identified with Diana†
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
jūstus, a, um just, true, righteous, fair
juxtā next, close (to) (*acc.*)*
lac, lactis *n.* milk, juice, sap
latex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
memor, oris mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
metō, ere, messuī, messus reap, cut†
mola, ae *f.* meal†
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
nāscor, ī, nātus be born, arise*
niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky*
placidus, a, um calm, quiet, kind(ly)*
praeripiō, ere, uī, reptus seize first†
precor, ārī, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
pūbēns, entis growing, vigorous†
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus (become) quiet, rest*
recingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus ungirdle, loosen†
revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear (off, up), pluck
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, raging*
simulō (1) pretend, simulate, counterfeit
sopor, ōris *m.* sleep, slumber
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
tergeminus, a, um triple, three-fold†
testor, ārī, ātus call to witness, testify
trēs, tria three*
venēnum, ī *n.* poison, drug, venom
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, fastening, cable*
virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*

Hecate in Hades, and thus was often represented by a three-headed statue. Observe the interlocked order; App. 442.

513. ad lūnam: *at the right time of the moon*, or *by moonlight*. **aēnīs**: implements of bronze, as belonging to an earlier age, were much used in magical ceremonies.

515–516. amor revulsus dē fronte nāscentis equī et praereptus mātrī, quaeritur: the ancients believed that a tumor, called **hippomanēs**, was found on the forehead of a colt at its birth. The mother of the colt bit this off at once; but if she could be forestalled and this tumor secured, it made an unusually effective love charm (**amor**). **mātrī**: dat. with compound.

517. Ipsa: Dido; see note on **ipsa**, I, 42.

518. exūta pedem, recincta: see the note on l. 509 and the one on III, 370.

520–521. sī quod (*whatever*) **nūmen. nōn aequō foedere amantīs**: *those who love on unequal terms*, i.e., those whose love is unrequited.

521. cūrae habet (**sibi**): *cares for*; **cūrae** is dat. of purpose.

522–553. Dido bewails her fate and strengthens her resolve to die.

523. quiē(ve)rant.

aequora, cum mediō volvuntur sīdera lāpsū,
cum tacet *omnis* ager, pecudēs pictae*que* volucrēs,
quaeque lacūs lātē liquidōs *quaeque* aspera dūmīs
rūra *tenent, somnō positae sub nocte* silentī.
[Lēnībant *cūrās et* corda oblīta *labōrum.*]
At nōn īnfēlīx animī Phoenissa *neque* umquam
solvitur *in somnōs oculīsve aut pectore noctem*
accipit: ingeminant *cūrae* rūrsus*que* resurgēns
saevit *amor magnōque īrārum* flūctuat aestū.
Sīc adeō īnsistit *sēcumque* ita corde volūtat:
"Ēn, *quid agō?* Rūrsus*ne* procōs inrīsa priōrēs
experiar, Nomadum*que petam* cōnūbia supplex,
quōs ego sim totiēns *jam* dēdignāta marītōs?
Īliacās igitur *classīs atque* ultima *Teucrum*
jussa *sequar?* Quia*ne* auxiliō juvat *ante* levātōs

---

adeō to such an extent, so (greatly)
aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
ager, grī *m.* field, country, territory*
asper, era, erum rough, harsh*
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
dēdignor, ārī, ātus disdain, scorn†
dūmus, ī *m.* brier, thicket†
ēn see! look! behold!
experior, īrī, pertus test, try, learn
flūctuō (1) fluctuate, wave, surge†
igitur therefore, accordingly†
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
ingeminō (1) (re)double, repeat, increase
inrīdeō, ēre, sī, sus laugh (at), mock†
īnsistō, ere, stitī begin, continue†
ita thus, so, in this way
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere
lāpsus, ūs *m.* gliding, slipping, course
lātē widely, far and wide
lēniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus soothe, calm
levō (1) lift, raise, relieve, remove
liquidus, a, um clear, fluid, liquid†
marītus, ī *m.* husband
Nomas, adis *m.* tribe of North Africa
oblīvīscor, ī, lītus forget (*gen.*)
pecus, udis *f.* animal (of the flock)*
Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician (Dido)
pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus paint, embroider, variegate
prior, ius former, prior, ancient*
procus, ī *m.* suitor, lover, wooer†
quia because
resurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise again
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
rūs, rūris *n.* country, lands, fields
saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus rage, storm
silēns, entis silent, still, quiet
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax, pay*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
taceō, ēre, uī, itus be silent, hush*
totiēns so many times, so often
ultimus, a, um last, uttermost, utmost*
umquam ever, at any time
volucris, is *m.* (*f.*) bird, fowl
volūtō (1) revolve, keep turning; ponder

---

526. quaeque . . . quaeque: *both* (*those*) *which . . . and* (*those*) *which.* **dūmīs:** abl. of cause with **aspera.**

527. (in) **somnō. positae:** middle, *having lain down.*

528. Lēnībant = **lēniēbant,** which cannot be used in hexameter. **oblīta** (**erant**). **labōrum:** gen. with **oblīta;** App. 288.

529. animī: loc. or gen. with **īnfēlīx. At nōn Phoenissa** (**Dīdō cūrās suās lēnībat**).

534. quid agō = **quid agam:** with fut. or subj. meaning, as in II, 322. See App. 351, 1, *c*; 348, *a.* **inrīsa:** *only to be laughed at;* proleptic; App. 440.

535. experiar, petam: deliberative questions; App. 348.

536. quōs sim dēdignāta: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **marītōs:** (*as prospective*) *husbands.*

538–539. Quiane = **sequar ea jussa quia.** (**eōs**) **juvat** (**meō**) **auxiliō** (**sē esse**) **ante levātōs et apud** (**eōs**) **memorēs stat grātia** (**meī**) **factī:** bitterly ironical.

et bene apud memorēs veteris *stat* grātia factī?
Quis mē autem, *fac velle,* sinet ratibus*que* superbīs
invīsam *accipiet?* Nescīs *heu,* perdita, necdum
Lāomedontēae sentīs perjūria *gentis?*
Quid tum? Sōla fugā nautās comitābor ovantīs?
An *Tyriīs omnīque manū* stīpāta *meōrum*
īnferar *et, quōs* Sīdoniā *vix urbe* revellī,
rūrsus *agam pelagō et ventīs dare vēla jubēbō?*
Quīn morere *ut* merita *es, ferrōque* āverte dolōrem.
Tū lacrimīs ēvicta *meīs, tū prīma furentem*
hīs, germāna, malīs onerās *atque* objicis hostī.
Nōn licuit thalamī expertem sine crīmine *vītam*
dēgere mōre ferae, *tālīs nec* tangere *cūrās!*

---

an whether, or*
apud among, near, at (*acc.*)
autem moreover, however, but*
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
bene well, rightly, securely, fully
comitor, ārī, ātus accompany, attend, escort, follow*
crīmen, inis *n.* crime, guilt, sin; charge
dēgō, ere, ī spend, pass†
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus conquer, overcome
expers, rtis free from, without (*gen.*)†
factum, ī *n.* deed, achievement, act*
fera, ae *f.* wild beast
germāna, ae *f.* sister
grātia, ae *f.* favor, gratitude, grace†
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear (against); *pass.* proceed
invīsus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
Lāomedontēus, a, um of Laomedon, a notorious perjurer and founder of Troy†
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
memor, oris mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
mereor, ērī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, manner, way*
nauta, ae *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
necdum not yet
nesciō, īre, īvī (iī) be ignorant, not know
objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place before, expose (*dat.*)
onerō (1) load, burden, overwhelm
ovō (1) rejoice, exult, triumph
perdō, ere, didī, ditus destroy, lose, ruin†
perjūrium, (i)ī *n.* perjury, falsehood†
quīn but that, why not, nay even*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear (away, up), pluck
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive, feel
Sīdonius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a Phoenician city
sine without (*abl.*)*
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs allow, permit*
stīpō (1) crowd, attend, throng; stow
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach*
thalamus, ī *m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

---

540. fac (mē) velle (sequī jussa Teucrōrum). fac: *suppose;* imp.; App. 202.

541. perdita (Dīdō): addressing herself.

542. Lāomedontēae: see note on III, 248.

543. nautās (Teucrōs) ovantīs: cf. l. 418, laetī corōnās, and note.

545-546. īnferar (middle) **et rūrsus agam (Tyriōs), quōs vix revellī.**

547. Quīn morere: *nay die, die now.* She is addressing herself, as in l. 541. **morere:** imp.

548. tū prīma: Dido blames Anna for having first encouraged her to yield to her love for Aeneas. **(mē) furentem.**

549. germāna: voc., though of course Anna is not present.

550. thalamī expertem: *without marriage;* App. 287. **Nōn licuit (mihi):** exclamatory; (*alas*) *that I was not permitted!*

551. mōre: abl. of manner; *like some wild creature,* alone in the woods. **cūrās (amōris).**

Nōn servāta fidēs cinerī prōmissa Sychaeō.'"
Tantōs illa suō rumpēbat *pectore* questūs:
Aenēās celsā *in puppī jam* certus *eundī*
carpēbat *somnōs rēbus jam* rīte *parātīs.*
Huic sē forma *deī* vultū redeuntis *eōdem*
obtulit *in somnīs* rūrsus*que* ita *vīsa* monēre *est,*
omnia Mercuriō similis, *vōcemque* colōremque
et crīnīs flāvōs *et* membra decōra juventae:
"*Nāte deā, potes hōc sub cāsū dūcere somnōs,*
nec quae tē circum stent deinde perīcula *cernis,*
dēmēns, *nec* Zephyrōs *audīs* spīrāre secundōs?
Illa dolōs dīrum*que* nefās *in pectore* versat
certa morī, variōs*que ērārum* concitat aestūs.
Nōn fugis hinc praeceps, *dum* praecipitāre potestās?
Jam mare turbārī trabibus saevās*que vidēbis*

aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume, take; enjoy
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
certus, a, um certain, fixed, sure, reliable, determined (on) (*gen.*)*
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
color, ōris *m.* color, hue, appearance†
concitō (1) excite, arouse, stir (up)†
crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
decōrus, a, um beautiful, glorious, seemly
deinde then, thereupon, next*
dēmēns, entis mad, frenzied, distracted
dīrus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud, trick*
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, trust, fidelity*
flāvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
forma, ae *f.* shape, beauty, form*
ita thus, so, in this way
juventa, ae *f.* youth, young manhood
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
Mercurius, (i)ī *m.* Mercury, messenger of the gods
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
nefās *n. indecl.* crime, wickedness, impiety*
obferō, ferre, tulī, lātus present, offer
perīc(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk
potestās, ātis *f.* power, ability, chance
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
praecipitō (1) throw (fall) headlong, flee
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus promise*
questus, ūs *m.* complaint, lament†
redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus return
rīte properly, duly, ritually
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break (off), burst (forth), utter*
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, raging*
secundus, a, um favorable, second*
similis, e like, similar (*gen., dat.*)*
spīrō (1) breathe (forth), exhale, blow
Sychaeus, a, um of Sychaeus, deceased husband of Dido†
trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, ship
turbō (1) confuse, disturb, agitate*
varius, a, um varied, different, variable*
versō (1) keep turning, roll, revolve
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*
Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind

552. Nōn servāta (est mihi) fidēs.

553. rumpēbat questūs: same construction as **rumpit vōcem,** II, 129.

554–583. Again urged by Mercury to hasten his departure, Aeneas arouses his sleeping comrades and hurriedly sails away by night.

554. certus eundī: = **certus īre:** *determined to go;* **eundī** is objective genitive of the gerund from **eō.**

556. eōdem: *the same,* as in ll. 238 ff.

558. omnia: acc. of respect. **colōremque:** hypermetric; App. 402.

563. Illa: Dido.

564. morī: the inf. depends on **certa;** App. 265.

565. praecipitāre (tibi) potestās (est). praecipitāre: dependent on **potestās;** App. 264.

566. trabibus (Dīdōnis) = nāvibus Tyriīs.

conlūcēre facēs, *jam* fervere *lītora flammīs,*
sī tē hīs attigerit *terrīs* Aurōra morantem.
Heia *age,* rumpe morās. Varium *et* mūtābile semper
fēmina." *Sīc fātus noctī sē* immiscuit *ātrae.*
Tum vērō *Aenēās* subitīs exterritus *umbrīs*
corripit *ē somnō corpus sociōsque* fatīgat
praecipitīs: "Vigilāte, *virī, et* cōnsīdite trānstrīs;
solvite *vēla* citī. *Deus* aethere *missus ab altō*
fēstīnāre *fugam* tortō*sque* incīdere fūnīs
ecce iterum īnstimulat. *Sequimur tē,* sāncte *deōrum,*
quisquis *es, imperiōque* iterum pārēmus ovantēs.
Adsīs Ō placidus*que* juvēs *et sīdera caelō*
dextra ferās." Dīxit vāgīnā*que ēripit* ēnsem
fulmineum strictō*que* ferit retināculа *ferrō.*
Īdem omnīs simul ardor *habet,* rapiunt*que ruuntque;*
lītora dēseruēre, latet *sub classibus aequor,*

---

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
ardor, ōris *m.* ardor, zeal, heat†
attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
citus, a, um swift, stirred, quick
conlūceō, ēre, lūxī shine, gleam, glare†
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down), settle, subside*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
ecce see! look! behold!*
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
fatīgō (1) worry, weary, harass, rouse
fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female
ferīō, īre strike, smite, cut, kill
ferv(e)ō, ĕre, (bu)ī boil, glow
fēstīnō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
fulmineus, a, um flashing, lightning-like†
fūnis, is *m.* rope, cable, cord
heia ho! up! come!†
immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mingle (in) (*dat.*)
incīdō, ere, ī, sus cut (into)
īnstimulō (1) goad (on), urge, prick†
iterum again, anew, a second time*
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
mora, ae *f.* (cause of) delay, hindrance*
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
mūtābilis, e changeable, fickle†
ovō (1) rejoice, exult, triumph
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)
placidus, a, um calm, kind(ly), quiet*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
quisquis, quidquid whoever, whichever, whatever
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), plunder*
retināculum, ī *n.* cable, rope, hawser†
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break (off), burst (forth), utter*
sānctus, a, um holy, sacred, revered*
semper always, ever, continually*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax, pay*
stringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus brush, draw
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, whirl, sway*
trānstrum, ī *n.* rowing bench, thwart
vāgīna, ae *f.* sheath, scabbard†
varius, a, um varied, different, variable*
vērō truly, indeed, but
vigilō (1) awake, wake (up), watch†

---

567. fervĕre: as though of the third conjugation, as in l. 409. **flammīs** (tuārum nāvium).

568. attigerit: fut. perf.

569–570. Varium et mūtābile (est) fēmina: *woman is ever fickle and a changeable thing.* Observe the gender of the adjectives. **noctī:** dat. with **immiscuit**; App. 298.

571. umbrīs: *apparition.*

575. (nōs) fēstīnāre, (nōs) incīdere.

576. sāncte deōrum: *holy god;* part. gen.; App. 286.

578–579. Adsīs, juvēs, ferās: vol. or opt.; App. 254, 253. **sīdera dextra:** *favorable weather.*

581. Īdem ardor habet omnīs (Teucrōs). rapiuntque ruuntque: ailiteration; App. 411.

582. dēseruēre: instantaneous perfect.

adnixī torquent spūmās *et* caerula verrunt.
Et jam prīma novō spargēbat *lūmine terrās*
Tīthōnī croceum linquēns Aurōra cubīle.
Rēgīna ē speculīs *ut prīmam* albēscere *lūcem*
vīdit et aequātīs *classem* prōcēdere *vēlīs,*
lītoraque et vacuōs sēnsit sine rēmige *portūs,*
ter*que* quater*que manū pectus* percussa decōrum
flāventīs*que* abscissa comās "Prō *Juppiter! ībit*
hic," ait "et nostrīs inlūserit advena *rēgnīs?*
Nōn arma expedient *tōtāque ex urbe sequentur,*
dēripient*que* ratēs *aliī* nāvālibus? *Īte,*
ferte citī *flammās, date tēla,* impellite *rēmōs!*
Quid loquor? *Aut ubi sum? Quae mentem* īnsānia mūtat?
Īnfēlīx Dīdō, nunc tē facta impia tangunt?
Tum decuit, *cum* scēptra *dabās.* Ēn *dextra* fidēs*que,*

---

abscindō, ere, scidī, scissus tear, cut off
adnītor, ī, sus (nixus) lean (on), strive
advena, ae *m.* foreigner, adventurer†
aequō (1) equal(ize), level, square*
albēscō, ere become white†
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
caerula, ōrum *n.* the (blue) sea
citus, a, um quick, excited, swift
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
croceus, a, um yellow, saffron, ruddy
cubīle, is *n.* couch, bed
decet, ēre, uit be becoming, be fitting†
decōrus, a, um beautiful, glorious, seemly
dēripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch up, tear down
ēn see! look! behold!
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus disentangle, prepare, bring forth
factum, ī *n.* deed, achievement, act*
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, trust, fidelity*
flāvēns, entis yellow, tawny, blond†
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive on, impel
impius, a, um wicked, disloyal
inlūdō, ere, sī, sus mock, flout (*dat.*)
īnsānia, ae *f.* madness, frenzy, folly
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, forsake*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
mūtō (ex)change, transform, alter*
nāvālia, ium *n.* shipyard, arsenal†
percutiō, ere, cussī, cussus strike, shatter
prō oh! ah!
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance
quater four times
ratēs, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
rēmex, igis *m.* rower, oarsman, crew†
scēptrum, ī *n.* scepter, (royal) power
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive
sine without (*abl.*)*
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
specula, ae *f.* watch tower, lookout
spūma, ae *f.* foam, froth, spray
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach*
ter three times, thrice*
Tīthōnus, ī *m.* husband of Aurora†
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, whirl, sway*
vacuus, a, um empty, free, deserted
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour

584–629. Dido's frenzy increases as from her palace window she sees the Trojan fleet depart. She again calls down curses on Aeneas and his followers and prays that some avenger may rise from her ashes to punish such perfidy.

586. ē speculīs = arce ex summā: l. 410.

587. aequātīs vēlīs: the god has sent a favorable breeze blowing directly from behind.

588. vacuōs: predicate to both lītora and portūs; App. 238, 239.

589–591. pectus, comās: objects of the middle participles percussa and abscissa; App. 309, *a.* **terque quaterque:** *three times, yea even four times,* as in I, 94. **flāventīs comās:** blondes were much admired and preferred by the Greeks and Romans. **inlūserit:** fut. perf. **advena:** used scornfully, like English *adventurer.*

591. hic: pronounce hicc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.*

592. Nōn(ne) (Tyriī) expedient arma.

596. facta impia: her unfaithfulness to the memory of Sychaeus.

597. Tum decuit (tua facta impia

quem sēcum patriōs ajunt portāre penātīs,
quem subiisse umerīs cōnfectum aetāte *parentem!*
Nōn potuī abreptum dīvellere *corpus et undīs*
spargere? *Nōn sociōs, nōn ipsum* absūmere *ferrō*
Ascanium *patriīsque* epulandum *pōnere* mēnsīs?
Vērum anceps pugnae *fuerat fortūna. — Fuisset:*
quem metuī moritūra? Facēs *in* castra *tulissem*
implēssem*que* forōs *flammīs nātumque patremque*
cum genere exstīnxem, *mēmet super ipsa dedissem.*
Sōl, *quī terrārum flammīs* opera *omnia* lūstrās,
tūque hārum interpres *cūrārum et* cōnscia *Jūnō,*
nocturnīs*que* Hecatē triviīs ululāta *per urbēs*
et Dīrae ultrīcēs *et dī* morientis Elissae,
accipite haec, meritum*que* malīs advertite *nūmen*
et nostrās audīte precēs. *Sī* tangere *portūs*

abripiō, ere, uī, reptus tear away, seize
absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus destroy, consume
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to, heed
aetās, ātis *f.* age, life, time (of life)
anceps, cipitis doubtful, double
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment*
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus accomplish; wear out
cōnscius, a, um conscious; confederate
Dīrae, ārum *f.* Furies
dīvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear in pieces
Elissa, ae *f.* Dido, queen of Carthage
epulor, ārī, ātus feast (upon), banquet
exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus destroy, blot out, extinguish
fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
forus, ī *m.* deck, gangway†
Hecatē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world, identified with Diana
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
interpres, etis *m.* (*f.*) interpreter, agent
lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*
malum, ī *n.* evil, sin, misfortune, trouble
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
metuō, ere, uī fear, dread, be anxious
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
nocturnus, a, um of the night, nocturnal
opus, eris *n.* work, achievement, task*
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
portō (1) bear, carry, bring, take*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, imprecation, curse*
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, combat, fray*
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach*
trivium, (i)ī *n.* junction of three roads, crossroads†
ultrīx, īcis avenging; avenger
ululō (1) howl, wail, invoke, shriek
vērum but (yet), truly

tangere tē), cum scēptra dabās (Aenēae). dextra fidēsque (ejus).

598. ajunt: pronounce **ajjunt**, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b*.

599. quem (ajunt).

600. Nōn = nōnne, as often.

602. epulandum: a form of revenge mentioned more than once in ancient legend, the best-known instance being the famous feast where the sons of Thyestes were slain and served up to their father in a banquet.

603. fuerat: mixed condition; App. 382, *d*. Fuisset: concessive; (*suppose*) *it had been* (*so*); App. 384.

604–606. quem metuī moritūra: *whom had I to fear, since I was going to die anyway?* castra: where the Trojan ships were beached and protected. tulissem, implē(vi)ssem, exstīnx(iss)em, dedissem: *I could have hurled*, etc.; the subjunctives are best taken as potential; App. 252. cum genere (Teucrōrum). mē dedissem (in ignīs).

609. Hecatē triviīs: *Diana of the Crossroads*, where she was worshipped at night by weird cries, howls of dogs, and various magical ceremonies.

612–629. The curse of a dying person was supposed to be especially potent and almost sure to be fulfilled by the gods. Vergil represents this curse as being later fulfilled literally in the life and fortunes of Aeneas.

Īnfandum *caput ac terrīs* adnāre necesse *est*,
et sīc fāta Jovis poscunt, *hic* terminus haeret:
at bellō audācis populī vexātus *et armīs*,
fīnibus extorris, complexū āvulsus Iūlī
auxilium implōret *videatque* indigna *suorum*
fūnera: *nec, cum sē sub* lēgēs pācis inīquae
trādiderit, *rēgnō aut* optātā *lūce* fruātur,
sed cadat *ante diem mediāque* inhumātus harēnā.
Haec precor, *hanc vōcem* extrēmam *cum sanguine fundō*.
Tum vōs, Ō Tyriī, stirpem *et genus omne futūrum*
exercēte odiīs, cinerīque *haec mittite nostrō*
mūnera. *Nūllus amor* populīs *nec* foedera *suntō*.
Exoriāre aliquis *nostrīs ex* ossibus ultor
quī face Dardaniōs *ferrōque sequāre* colōnōs,
nunc, ōlim, quōcumque *dabunt sē tempore vīrēs*.

---

adnō (1) swim (float) to (*dat.*)
aliquis, qua, quid some (one, thing)*
audāx, ācis daring, bold, valiant†
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
āvellō, ere, (vul)ī, vulsus tear from
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
colōnus, ī *m.* settler, colonist, farmer
complexus, ūs *m.* embrace, grasp
Dardan(i)us, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus work, harass*
exorior, īrī, ortus (a)rise, spring up
extorris, e outside, foreign†
extrēmus, a, um final, last, extreme*
fax, facis *f.* torch, fire(brand)*
foedus, eris *n.* treaty, agreement, truce
fruor, ī, frūctus (fruitus) enjoy (*abl.*)
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to), stand fixed*
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
implōrō (1) implore, beseech, entreat†
indignus, a, um unworthy, undeserved
īnfandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable
inhumātus, a, um unburied
inīquus, a, um unequal, unjust, unfair
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
lēx, lēgis *f.* law, condition, compact
necesse *indecl.* necessary; necessity
odium, (i)ī *n.* hatred, enmity, grudge
ōlim once, formerly, at some time*
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)*
os, ossis *n.* bone*
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, agreement
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
precor, ārī, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whichever, whatever*
stirps, pis *m.* (*f.*) stock, lineage, stem, race
terminus, ī *m.* boundary, goal, end†
trādō, ere, didī, ditus deliver, transfer†
ultor, ōris *m.* avenger
vexō (1) agitate, vex, harass, annoy†

---

613. īnfandum caput = Aeneas.

615–620. It was customary even up to recent times to open at random some revered book such as the *Bible* or the *Aeneid*, and take the first passage meeting the eye as a prophecy of the future. It is said that Charles I of England once tried this and opened the *Aeneid* at this fateful passage; Introd. 9.

615. audācis populī: this people proved to be the Rutulians.

616. fīnibus: abl. of separation.

617–620. implōret, videat, fruātur, cadat: volitives or optatives; App. 254, 253. **lūce** (**vītae**). (**sit**) **inhumātus.**

621 ff. Dido's second prophecy and prayer are also framed in such a way as to find fulfillment in the Second Punic War, when in the "eternal enmity" between Rome and Carthage, Hannibal arose as Dido's avenger (ultor) and brought the Roman Republic to the verge of ruin.

624. populīs: Rome and Carthage; dat. of possession.

625. Exoriāre (= **exoriāris**): vol.; App. 254; *rise some avenger!*

626. quī sequāre (= **sequāris**): rel. clause of purpose or of characteristic; App. 388, 389.

627. dabunt sē = **dabuntur.**

Lītora lītoribus contrāria, *flūctibus undās*
imprecor, *arma armīs:* pugnent *ipsīque* nepōtēsque."
Haec ait, et partīs animum versābat *in omnīs,*
invīsam *quaerēns* quam *prīmum* abrumpere *lūcem.*
Tum breviter Barcēn nūtrīcem adfāta Sychaeī,
namque suam patriā *antīquā* cinis *āter habēbat:*
"Annam, cāra *mihī* nūtrīx, *hūc* siste sorōrem:
dīc corpus properet fluviālī spargere lymphā,
et pecudēs *sēcum et* mōnstrāta piācula *dūcat.*
Sīc veniat, tūque ipsa piā tege tempora vittā.
Sacra Jovī Stygiō, *quae* rīte incepta *parāvī,*
perficere *est animus fīnemque* impōnere *cūrīs*
Dardaniīque rogum *capitis* permittere *flammae.*"
Sīc ait. Illa gradum studiō celebrābat anīlī.

---

abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break off
adfor, ārī, ātus address, accost*
anīlis, e of an old woman, aged†
Anna, ae *f.* sister of Dido
Barcē, ēs *f.* nurse of Dido's deceased husband Sychaeus†
breviter briefly, shortly, concisely
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
celebrō (1) frequent; repeat; hasten
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead); tomb*
contrārius, a, um opposite, opposed
Dardan(i)us, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
fluviālis, e of a stream, flowing†
gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place (on, to) (*dat.*)*
imprecor, ārī, ātus imprecate, invoke†
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
invīsus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
lympha, ae *f.* water
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, instruct*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
nūtrīx, īcis *f.* nurse
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
pecus, udis *f.* animal (of the flock)*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, complete
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus permit, commit
piāculum, ī *n.* expiation, expiatory offering†
properō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
pugnō (1) fight, battle, oppose, contend
quam how, than, as; **quam prīmum** as soon as possible*
rīte duly, properly, ritually
rogus, ī *m.* funeral pyre†
sistō, ere, stetī, status stand, station, stop
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
studium, (i)ī *n.* desire, zeal, eagerness
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a river in Hades*
Sychaeus, ī *m.* deceased husband of Dido
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
versō (1) keep turning, roll, revolve
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*

628–629. contrāria: with **lītora, undās** and **arma. pugnent:** vol. or opt.; App. 254, 253. The verse is hypermetric; App. 402.

630–705. That nothing may interrupt her plan Dido sends away her husband's old nurse Barce and kills herself with Aeneas's sword on top of the pyre.

631. quam prīmum: *as soon as possible.*

633. suam (nūtrīcem). suam irregularly referring to Dido rather than to the subject of the sentence; App. 248, *a.*

635. dīc: imp.; App. 202. **(ut) properet:** subj. in indir. disc. for imp.; App. 390. **spargere:** as a ceremony of purification.

637. Sīc: with the animals for sacrifice, after she has duly purified herself. Dido's real object is to delay the return of the nurse and her sister so that she may kill herself in the meantime.

638. Jovī Stygiō = Pluto.

639. est animus (mihi) = volō; App. 264. Dido is concealing her real purpose.

640. Dardaniī capitis = Aeneas, whose name Dido avoids mentioning.

641. Illa: Barce, the nurse.

At trepida *et* coeptīs *immānibus* effera *Dīdō*
sanguineam *volvēns* aciem, maculīs*que* trementīs
interfūsa genās *et* pallida *morte futūrā*,
interiōra *domūs* inrumpit *līmina et altōs*
cōnscendit furibunda gradūs ēnsem*que* reclūdit
Dardanium, *nōn hōs quaesītum mūnus in* ūsūs.
Hīc, postquam Īliacās vestīs nōtum*que* cubīle
cōnspexit, paulum *lacrimīs et mente* morāta
incubuit*que* torō *dīxitque novissima* verba:
"Dulcēs exuviae, *dum fāta deusque* sinēbat,
accipite hanc animam mēque hīs exsolvite *cūrīs*.
Vīxī *et quem dederat cursum fortūna* perēgī,
et nunc magna meī sub terrās ībit imāgō.
Urbem praeclāram statuī, *mea moenia vīdī*,
ulta *virum poenās* inimīcō *ā* frātre recēpī,
fēlīx, *heu* nimium fēlīx, *sī lītora* tantum

---

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge, line, eye(sight)*
coeptum, ī *n.* undertaking, beginning
cōnscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus mount, climb
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold
cubīle, is *n.* couch, bed
Dardan(i)us, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
efferus, a, um wild, savage, mad†
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
exsolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free†
exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, relics, mementos
fēlīx, īcis happy, fortunate, blessed*
frāter, tris *m.* brother*
furibundus, a, um wild, frenzied†
gena, ae *f.* cheek†
gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
imāgō, inis *f.* likeness, image, ghost, soul, form*
incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus recline on (*dat.*)
inimīcus, a, um hostile, enemy, unfriendly
inrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break into†
interfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour among, suffuse†
interior, ius inner, interior
macula, ae *f.* spot, splotch, stain†
moror, ārī, ātus delay, hesitate, hinder*
nimium too (much), excessively†
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
pallidus, a, um pale, wan, pallid
paulum (a) little, slightly, somewhat
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus accomplish, finish
postquam after (that), when*
praeclārus, a, um very renowned†
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, take*
reclūdō, ere, sī, sus open, unsheathe
sanguineus, a, um bloody, bloodshot
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs permit, allow*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set (up), found
tantum so much, only, merely
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
trepidus, a, um trembling, excited
ulcīscor, ī, ultus avenge, punish
ūsus, ūs *m.* use, service, employment
verbum, ī *n.* word, speech, talk
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus live, be alive

---

642. coeptīs: abl. of cause.

643. aciem (oculōrum).

644. genās: acc. of respect; App. 311.

645. interiōra līmina: of the inner court, where the pyre had been erected.

647. quaesītum: Dido had apparently begged the sword of Aeneas, who had given it to her as a keepsake.

648. Īliacās vestīs: some more presents from Aeneas; cf. I, 648 ff.

649. lacrimīs et mente: *in tearful recollection;* abl. of manner; App. 328.

650. novissima: *last.*

652. exsolvite (per mortem).

657. fēlīx (fuissem): implied conclusion of a condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

numquam Dardaniae tetigissent *nostra* carīnae."
Dīxit, et ōs impressa torō "Moriēmur inultae,
sed moriāmur" *ait.* "*Sīc, sīc* juvat *īre sub umbrās.*
Hauriat *hunc oculīs ignem* crūdēlis *ab* altō
Dardanus, *et nostrae sēcum ferat* ōmina *mortis.*"
Dīxerat, atque illam media inter tālia ferrō
conlāpsam aspiciunt *comitēs*, ēnsem*que* cruōre
spūmantem sparsās*que manūs. It clāmor ad alta*
ātria: concussam bacchātur *Fāma per urbem.*
Lāmentīs gemitū*que et* fēmineō ululātū
tecta fremunt, resonat *magnīs* plangōribus aethēr,
nōn aliter quam *sī* immissīs *ruat* hostibus *omnis*
Karthāgō *aut antīqua* Tyros, *flammaeque furentēs*
culmina *perque* hominum *volvantur perque deōrum.*
Audiit exanimis trepidō*que* exterrita *cursū*
unguibus *ōra* soror foedāns *et pectora* pugnīs
per mediōs ruit, ac morientem *nōmine* clāmat:

---

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
aliter otherwise, differently*
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold*
ātrium, (i)ī *n.* hall, court, atrium
bacchor, ārī, ātus rave, rush wildly
carīna, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
clāmō (1) shriek, cry (out), call (on)†
concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake, shatter
conlābor, ī, lāpsus fall in a heap, faint
crūdēlis, e cruel, harsh, bloody*
cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
culmen, inis *n.* roof, peak, summit, top*
Dardan(i)us, (i)ī *m.* Trojan, Dardanian*
Dardan(i)us, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
exanimis, e breathless, lifeless†
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
fēmineus, a, um feminine, of women
foedō (1) pollute, defile, disfigure
fremō, ere, uī, itus shout, roar, groan*
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus drain, drink (in)
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, human, mortal*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus let in, send in
imprimō, ere, pressī, pressus press (upon), imprint†
inultus, a, um unavenged, unpunished
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
Karthāgō, inis *f.* city of North Africa
lāmenta, ōrum *n.* lamentation, shriek†
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
numquam never, at no time
ōmen, inis *n.* portent, omen, sign*
plangor, ōris *m.* wailing, beating (of breast)
pugnus, ī *m.* fist†
quam how, than, as*
resonō (1) (re)sound, roar
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach*
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*
trepidus, a, um trembling, excited
Tyrus (os), ī *f.* city of Phoenicia, birthplace of Dido
ululātus, ūs *m.* wail, shriek, howl, shout†
unguis, is *m.* nail, claw†

---

659. ōs: obj. of the middle part. impressa; a farewell kiss.

660. Sīc, sīc: possibly Dido stabs herself with each sīc.

661–662. Hauriat, ferat: volitives; App. 254. Dardanus = Aeneas. ōmina: which will bring him continual sorrow and misfortune.

663. ferrō: abl. of means.

667. fēmineō ululātū: hiatus; App. 399.

669. quam sī ruat: conditional clause of comparison; App. 383.

670. Tyrōs: nom. sing., a Greek form; App. 67.

671. culmina (tēctōrum Dīdōnis).

672. cursū: abl. of manner.

673. ōra foedāns et pectora: as an expression of grief.

A Roman Peristyle

The court of a Roman house in the Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York, around which the antiquities of the Museum are exhibited

Alinari, Rome — *Guercino*

THE DEATH OF DIDO

Until comparatively recently artists painted classical or biblical characters in contemporary

"*Hoc illud*, germāna, *fuit? Mē* fraude *petēbās?*
Hoc rogus iste *mihi, hoc ignēs āraeque parābant?*
Quid prīmum dēserta querar? *Comitemne* sorōrem
sprēvistī moriēns? *Eadem mē ad fāta vocāssēs:*
īdem ambās *ferrō* dolor *atque eadem* hōra *tulisset.*
Hīs etiam strūxī *manibus patriōsque vocāvī*
vōce deōs, sīc tē ut positā, crūdēlis, abessem?
Exstīnxtī *tē mēque*, soror, populum*que patrēsque*
Sīdoniōs *urbemque tuam. Date*, vulnera lymphīs
abluam *et*, extrēmus *sī quis super* hālitus *errat*,
ōre legam." *Sīc fāta* gradūs ēvāserat *altōs*,
sēmianimem*que* sinū germānam amplexa fovēbat
cum gemitū *atque ātrōs* siccābat veste cruōrēs.
Illa gravīs *oculōs* cōnāta attollere rūrsus
dēficit; īnfīxum strīdit *sub pectore* vulnus.
Ter *sēsē* attollēns cubitō*que* adnixa levāvit,
ter revolūta torō *est oculīsque errantibus altō*

abluō, ere, uī, ūtus wash (off)
absum, esse, āfuī be away, be distant
adnītor, ī, sus (nixus) lean on, struggle
ambō, ae, ō both
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
cōnor, ārī, ātus attempt, try, endeavor
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, hardhearted*
cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
cubitum, ī *n.* elbow, arm†
dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, faint
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
etiam also, even*
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus go forth (from), pass over
exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus blot out, destroy, extinguish
extrēmus, a, um, final, last, extreme*
foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus fondle, cherish
fraus, fraudis *f.* deceit, guile, fraud†
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
germāna, ae *f.* sister
gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
hālitus, ūs *m.* breath, exhalation†
hōra, ae *f.* hour, season, time
īnfīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, pierce, fasten
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather, catch*
levō (1) lift, lighten, raise, relieve
lympha, ae *f.* water
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
queror, ī, questus complain, (be)wail
revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll over, revolve
rogus, ī *m.* funeral pyre
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
sēmianimis, e half-dead, dying†
siccō (1) dry, stanch†
Sīdonius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a city of Phoenicia
sinus, ūs *m.* fold; bosom; bay; hollow*
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
spernō, ere, sprēvī, sprētus scorn, reject
strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī hiss, gurgle, rustle
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, plan
ter three times, thrice*
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting, funeral) couch, bed*
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

675–676. Hoc, hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable. **Hoc (fuit) illud (quod parābās):** *was this* (your own death) *that which you were planning?*

677. Quid querar: deliberative question; App. 348.

678–679. vocā(vi)ssēs, tulisset: best taken as optatives; App. 253.

680. strūxī (tuum rogum).

681. ut abessem: purpose; App. 359.

682. Exstīnx(is)tī.

684. (ut) abluam: an obj. clause. **super:** adv.

685. ōre legam: it was a Roman custom to catch with a kiss the last breath of a dying kinsman or friend. **gradūs:** of the funeral pyre.

686. sēmianimem: pronounce **sēmjanimem** here; App. 401.

689. strīdit: from the gurgling blood.

690. cubitō: abl. of means with **adnītor.**

691. (in) torō.

quaesīvit caelō lūcem ingemuit*que* repertā.
Tum Jūnō omnipotēns *longum* miserāta dolōrem
difficilīs*que* obitūs Īrim dēmīsit Olympō
quae luctantem *animam* nexōs*que* resolveret artūs.
Nam quia *nec fātō* meritā *nec morte* perībat,
sed misera ante diem subitō*que* accēnsa furōre,
nōndum *illī* flāvum Prōserpina vertice crīnem
abstulerat Stygiō*que caput* damnāverat Orcō.
Ergō Īris croceīs *per caelum* rōscida pennīs
mīlle *trahēns* variōs adversō sōle colōrēs
dēvolat *et* suprā *caput* astitit. "*Hunc ego* Dītī
sacrum jussa ferō tēque istō *corpore* solvō."
Sīc ait et dextrā crīnem secat: *omnis et* ūnā
dīlāpsus calor *atque in ventōs vīta* recessit.

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, burn
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, member*
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)*
auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus take away
calor, ōris *m.* heat, warmth, glow
color, ōris *m.* color, hue, tint
crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
croceus, a, um yellow, saffron, ruddy
damnō (1) condemn, sentence, doom, devote†
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send down, let go, drop, lower*
dēvolō (1) fly down†
difficilis, e difficult, hard, painful†
dīlābor, ī, lāpsus glide away, depart†
Dīs, Dītis *m.* Pluto, god of the lower world†
dolor, ōris, *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
flāvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
ingemō, ere, uī groan, roar, lament
Īris, (id)is *f.* goddess of the rainbow, messenger of Juno†
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
luctor, ārī, ātus struggle, wrestle
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
nectō, ere, nexuī, nexus weave, fasten, bind
nōndum not yet
obitus, ūs *m.* death, downfall, ruin†
Olympus, ī *m.* high Greek mountain, home of the gods; heaven
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
Orcus, ī *m.* (god of) the lower world, Hades
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather
pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus perish, die
Prōserpina, ae *f.* Pluto's queen, goddess of the lower world†
quia because
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, withdraw
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus find
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free
rōscidus, a, um dewy†
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a river in Hades*
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
suprā above, over (*acc.*)
ūnā together, at the same time
varius, a, um varied, different, diverse*
vertex, icis *m.* top, peak, head, summit*

692. repertā (lūce): abl. abs.

695. nexōs (animae). resolveret: rel. clause of purpose; App. 388. For the thought see the note on l. 385.

696. fātō: natural death was supposed to be occasioned by a decree of the gods.

698. illī: dat. of reference. Prōserpina: she was supposed to cut a lock from the head of the dying, as a sort of offering to the gods of the lower world.

701. The rainbow. adversō sōle: abl. abs. denoting cause.

702–703. Hunc (crīnem). ego jussa (ā Jūnōne). istō = tuō, as often.

705. in ventōs: the soul was identified with the breath, anima, spīritus (cf. the English word *spirit*) and at death vanished into the air.

BOOK V

INTEREĀ *medium Aenēās jam classe tenēbat*
certus iter *flūctūsque ātrōs* Aquilōne secābat
moenia respiciēns, *quae jam īnfēlīcis* Elissae
conlūcent *flammīs. Quae tantum* accenderit *ignem*
causa latet; dūrī *magnō sed amōre* dolōrēs
pollūtō, nōtum*que furēns quid* fēmina *possit,*
trīste per augurium *Teucrōrum pectora dūcunt.*
Ut pelagus tenuēre ratēs *nec jam* amplius *ūlla*
occurrit *tellūs, maria* undique *et* undique *caelum,*
ollī caeruleus suprā *caput* astitit imber

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle
amplius more, farther
Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)*
augurium, (i)ī *n.* portent, prophecy
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
certus, a, um certain, determined, fixed*
conlūceō, ēre shine (brightly), glare
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
Elissa, ae *f.* Dido
fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female
imber, bris *m.* rain, cloud, storm, flood
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
nōtum, ī, *n.* knowledge
occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus (run to) meet (*dat.*)
polluō, ere, uī, ūtus defile, outrage, profane
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back) at*
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
suprā above, over (*acc.*)
undique on (from) all sides*

1–41. On sailing from Carthage for Italy, Aeneas is driven by a tempest to Drepanum in Sicily, where Anchises had died the previous year. King Acestes again hospitably receives the Trojans.

The fifth book of the *Aeneid* forms a restful episode in the midst of the stirring action of the poem. This episode, with its somewhat tedious account of the games, does not serve any useful purpose in advancing the plot of the poem and may be omitted with less loss than any other of the six books. The fifth book, however, gives the poet a fine opportunity to develop the character of his hero as pius **Aenēās**, as here displayed in his deep devotion to the memory of his dead father. This is the best justification for the episode. It also furnishes an interesting picture of an ancient athletic contest.

1. Intereā: while Dido carries out her plan to commit suicide.

2. Aquilōne: with **ātrōs:** specific (north wind) for the general (wind), and really inapplicable here since the Trojans were sailing north. As often, the poet sacrifices logical consistency for the sake of vividness or metrical convenience.

4–5. Quae causa accenderit: indir. quest.; App. 349.

5–7. dūrī magnō sed amōre, etc.: *but the harsh sufferings when a great love is profaned and the knowledge (of) what a love-crazed woman may do lead the hearts of the Trojans through gloomy forebodings.* **amōre pollūtō:** from Dido's point of view; abl. abs. **quid possit:** indir.

noctem hiememque *ferēns et* inhorruit *unda* tenebrīs.
Ipse gubernātor *puppī* Palinūrus *ab altā:*
"*Heu* quianam *tantī* cīnxērunt aethera nimbī?
Quidve, pater Neptūne, *parās?*" *Sīc* deinde locūtus
colligere *arma jubet* validīsque incumbere *rēmīs,*
oblīquatque sinūs *in ventum ac tālia fātur:*
"Magnanime *Aenēā, nōn, sī mihi Juppiter* auctor
spondeat, *hōc* spērem *Ītaliam* contingere *caelō.*
Mūtātī trānsversa fremunt *et* vespere *ab ātrō*
cōnsurgunt *ventī, atque in* nūbem cōgitur āēr.
Nec nōs obnītī contrā *nec tendere tantum*
sufficimus. Superat quoniam *Fortūna, sequāmur,*
quōque vocat vertāmus iter. *Nec lītora* longē
fīda reor frāterna Erycis *portūsque* Sicānōs,
sī modo rīte memor *servāta* remētior astra."

āēr, āeris *m.* air, mist, fog
aethēr, eris, *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky*
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
auctor, ōris *m.* founder, originator, sponsor
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird(le)*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus force (together)*
colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise†
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus, touch, reach*
contrā against, opposite (*acc.*); in opposition*
deinde then, thence, thereupon*
Eryx, ycis *m.* son of Venus and half-brother of Aeneas; settled in Sicily
fīdus, a, um faithful, safe, trustworthy*
frāternus, a, um fraternal, of a brother
fremō, ere, uī, itus roar, groan, shout*
gubernātor, ōris *m.* pilot, helmsman
hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm*
incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus recline on, bend to (*dat.*)
inhorrēscō, ere, horruī grow rough, shudder
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
longē (from) afar, far off*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
magnanimus, a, um noble, great-souled
memor, oris mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
modo only, (just) now
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
nimbus, ī *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm*
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
oblīquō (1) turn sideways, slope, slant†
obnītor, ī, sus (nixus) lean against, struggle
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot*
quianam why? wherefore?†
quoniam since, because
remētior, īrī, mēnsus remeasure, retraverse
reor, rērī, ratus suppose, think, reckon
rīte duly, correctly, ritually
Sicānus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily†
sinus, ūs *m.* fold (of sails); bosom, bay*
spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
spondeō, ēre, spopondī, spōnsus promise, vouch for†
sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus suffice, be able
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
tenebrae, ārum *f.* darkness, gloom
trānsversa *adv.* crosswise, athwart (one's course)†
validus, a, um strong, powerful, stout
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
vesper, eris (erī) *m.* evening (star), west

---

quest., in apposition with **nōtum**; App. 349. **pectora = animōs, mentīs.**

15-16. arma (nāvium) = vēla, etc. **sinūs (vēlōrum).**

17. auctor: (*as*) *guarantor.*

18. spondeat: less vivid fut. condition; App. 381. **spērem:** conclusion.

20. cōgitur āēr: the ancients thought that clouds were composed of condensed air.

23. lītora (abesse): indir. statement with **reor**; App. 263.

24. frātērna = frātris tuī.

25. servāta astra: *previously observed,* i.e., on their voyage from Sicily to Carthage.

Tum pius Aenēās: "Equidem *sīc* poscere *ventōs*
jamdūdum *et* frūstrā *cernō tē tendere* contrā.
Fiecte *viam vēlīs.* An *sit mihi* grātior *ūlla,*
quōve magis *fessās* optem dēmittere *nāvīs,*
quam *quae* Dardanium *tellūs mihi servat Acestēn* 30
et patris Anchīsae gremiō complectitur ossa?"
Haec ubi dicta, petunt portūs et vēla secundī
intendunt Zephyrī; *fertur* cita gurgite *classis,*
et tandem laetī nōtae advertuntur harēnae.
At procul ex celsō mīrātus vertice *montis* 35
adventum sociās*que* ratēs occurrit *Acestēs,*
horridus *in* jaculīs *et* pelle Libystidis ursae,
Trōia Crīnīsō conceptum flūmine *māter*
quem genuit. Veterum *nōn* immemor *ille parentum*
grātātur reducēs *et* gazā *laetus* agrestī 40

---

adventus, ūs *m.* arrival, approach†
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to (*dat.*)
agrestis, e of the fields, rustic
an whether, or*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
citus, a, um quick, swift, excited
complector, ī, plexus embrace, hold
concipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus conceive
contrā opposite, against, in opposition*
Crīnīsus, ī *m.* river (god) of Sicily†
Dardanius, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send down, land, lower, drop*
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
flectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, turn
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
gaza, ae *f.* treasure, wealth
gignō, ere, genuī, genitus beget, bear
grātor, ārī, ātus congratulate, wish joy to
grātus, a, um agreeable, welcome
gremium, (i)ī *n.* bosom; lap; embrace
gurges, itis *m.* whirlpool, deep sea*
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
horridus, a, um rough, bristling
immemor, oris unmindful, forgetful
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, strain
jaculum, ī *n.* spear, dart
jamdūdum long since, for some time
Libystis, idis *f.* Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa†
magis more, rather, preferably*
mīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire*
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus (run to) meet
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)*
os, ossis *n.* bone*
pellis, is *f.* skin, hide, pelt
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, require, ask (for, to)*
quam how, than, as*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
redux, ucis led back, returned, restored
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
socius, a, um allied, fellow, friendly
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
ursa, ae *f.* she-bear†
vertex, icis *m.* top, peak, head*
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind

---

27. cernō: of a past action continuing into the present; *I (have long perceived and still) perceive;* App. 351, 1, *b.*

28. vēlīs: abl. of means. **ūlla (tellūs) sit:** potential; App. 252.

29. quō optem: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **quō = ad quam.**

30. quam (*than*) **tellūs quae.**

33. gurgite = undā: abl. of route; App. 338.

36. occurrit (illīs).

37. pelle: commonly worn in earlier times.

38. māter: Egesta or Segesta. **Crīnīsō flūmine:** abl. of source; App. 323.

39. Veterum parentum: *his ancestry,* which makes him related to Aeneas and the other Trojans.

40. (Teucrōs) reducēs.

excipit, *ac fessōs* opibus sōlātur amīcīs.
Postera *cum prīmō* stēllās Oriente fugārat
clāra *diēs*, *sociōs in* coetum *lītore ab omnī*
advocat *Aenēās* tumulīque *ex* aggere *fātur:*
"Dardanidae *magnī*, *genus altō ā sanguine dīvum*,
annuus exāctīs complētur mēnsibus orbis,
ex quō relliquiās dīvīnīque ossa *parentis*
condidimus *terrā* maestāsque sacrāvimus *ārās*.
Jamque diēs, nisi fallor, *adest*, *quem* semper acerbum,
semper honōrātum (*sīc dī voluistis*) *habēbō*.
Hunc ego Gaetūlīs *agerem sī* Syrtibus exsul,
Argolicōve *marī* dēprēnsus *et urbe* Mycēnae,
annua vōta tamen sollemnīsque ordine pompās
exsequerer strueremque *suīs* altāria *dōnīs*.

---

acerbus, a, um bitter, grievous, harsh
advocō (1) call (to), summon, invite†
agger, eris *m.* mound, embankment
altāria, ium *n.* altar
amīcus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
annuus, a, um annual, yearly†
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
coetus, ūs *m.* assembly, throng, troop
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, found; hide, bury*
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Dardanus, Trojan
dēpre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, catch†
dīvīnus, a, um divine, sacred, sainted
exāctus, a, um completed; learned
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, reply
exsequor, ī, secūtus fulfil, perform
exsul, ulis *m.* (*f.*) exile, refugee
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, trick*
fugō (1) rout, put to flight, disperse
Gaetūlus, a, um Gaetulian, of the Gaetuli, a North African tribe
honōrō (1) honor, respect, venerate, revere†
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mēnsis, is *m.* month
Mycēnae (ae), ārum (ae), *f.* city of Greece, capital of Agamemnon
nisi, nī if not, unless*
ops, opis *f.* help, wealth, resources, power*
orbis, is *m.* circle, circuit, orb(it), earth*
ordō, inis *m.* order, rank, succession*
Oriēns, entis *m.* East, dawn
os, ossis *n.* bone*
pompa, ae *f.* (solemn) procession, festival†
posterus, a, um later, following
re(l)liquiae, ārum *f.* remains, remnant, leavings, relics
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
semper always, ever, continually*
sollemnis, e solemn, annual, stated
sōlor, ārī, ātus console, comfort, solace
stēlla, ae *f.* star, constellation
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus heap up, build
Syrtis, is *f.* sand-banks off the northern coast of Africa
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

42–71. Announcement of the funeral games in honor of Anchises, and the prizes for the various contests.

42. fugā(ve)rat.

44. tumulīque ex aggere: as Roman generals in Vergil's day addressed their troops from a mound thrown up for the occasion.

45. genus (ortum): *a race sprung.*

46. exāctīs mēnsibus: abl. abs.

47. ex quō (tempore): *since.* **dīvīnī:** Anchises was thought of as having acquired sanctity after death.

50. sīc dī voluistis: one of the many examples of the unquestioning faith of the hero and his pious resignation to the will of the gods who do all things well.

51–52. Hunc (diem). (in) Gaetūlīs. (in) Syrtibus. (in) marī, (in) urbe. Mycēnae: appositional gen.; App. 281; this word usually has the plural form.

54. exsequerer strueremque: conclusions of implied condition contrary to

Nunc ultrō *ad* cinerēs *ipsīus et* ossa *parentis*
haud equidem sine *mente*, reor, sine *nūmine dīvum*
adsumus et portūs dēlātī intrāmus amīcōs.
Ergō *agite et laetum cūnctī* celebrēmus *honōrem:*
poscāmus *ventōs, atque haec mē sacra* quotannīs
urbe velit positā templīs *sibi ferre* dicātīs.
Bīna boum *vōbīs Trojā* generātus *Acestēs*
dat numerō *capita in nāvīs;* adhibēte penātīs
et patriōs epulīs *et quōs* colit hospes *Acestēs.*
Praetereā, *sī* nōna *diem* mortālibus almum
Aurōra extulerit radiīs*que* retēxerit orbem,
prīma citae *Teucrīs pōnam* certāmina *classis;*
quīque pedum cursū valet, *et quī vīribus* audāx
aut jaculō incēdit melior levibus*que* sagittīs,

adhibeō, ēre, uī, itus invite (to), employ†
almus, a, um kind(ly), nurturing
amīcus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
audāx, ācis daring, bold, valiant
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of the) dawn*
bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos
bōs, bovis *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow
celebrō (1) throng, solemnize, celebrate
certāmen, inis *n.* contest, struggle*
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
citus, a, um quick, swift, excited
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, honor*
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring (down, to land), convey
dicō (1) consecrate, dedicate, proclaim
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring out, raise*
epulae, ārum *f.* banquet, feast
equidem indeed, truly, surely*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
generātus, a, um born, descended†
hospes, itis *m.* host, guest, stranger
incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go, stride
intrō (1) enter, penetrate
jaculum, ī *n.* dart, spear
levis, e light, swift, slight, quick
melior, ius better, superior, preferable
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
nōnus, a, um ninth†
numerus, ī *m.* number, multitude*
orbis, is *m.* circle, circuit, orb(it), earth*
os, ossis *n.* bone*
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
praetereā besides, in addition, furthermore*
quotannīs annually, yearly†
radius, (i)ī *m.* spoke, rod, ray
reor, rērī, ratus suppose, think, reckon
retegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus unveil, reveal
sagitta, ae *f.* arrow, shaft, bolt
sine without (*abl.*)*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
ultrō further, voluntarily*
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able

fact; App. 382. **suīs**: irregularly referring to **altāria** instead of to the subject; App. 248, *a*.

56. haud sine mente (dīvōrum): i.e., *by the will of the gods.*

57. adsumus et intrāmus: hysteron proteron; App. 429. **intrāmus**: historical present; App. 351, 1, *a*.

59–60. poscāmus ventōs: vol.; App. 254; they are to pray to the manes of Anchises for favorable winds when they get ready to leave. **atque (ut pater Anchīsēs) velit, urbe positā, mē ferre quotannīs haec sacra templīs dicātīs sibi**: the reference is to the **parentālia**, an annual Roman festival in honor of the dead. The ut-clause is object of **poscāmus**; App. 360.

61. Trojā: abl. of origin with **generātus**; App. 323.

62–63. numerō: abl. of respect with **bīna**; App. 325. **adhibēte epulīs et patriōs penātīs et (penātīs) quōs Acestēs colit.**

64–65. nōna Aurōra: referring to the Roman ceremonies of the **novemdiāle**, a festival celebrated in honor of the deceased nine days after the funeral.

66. prīma: *first of all.*

67. quī: their antecedents are indicated in **cūnctī** of l. 70.

68. incēdit: more picturesque than **est.**

seu crūdō fīdit pugnam committere caestū,
cūnctī adsint meritae*que* exspectent praemia palmae.
Ōre favēte *omnēs et* cingite tempora rāmīs."
Sīc fātus vēlat māternā tempora myrtō.
Hoc Helymus *facit, hoc* aevī mātūrus *Acestēs,*
hoc puer Ascanius, *sequitur quōs* cētera pūbēs.
Ille ē conciliō *multīs cum* mīlibus *ībat*
ad tumulum *magnā medius* comitante catervā.
Hīc duo rīte merō lībāns carchēsia Bacchō
fundit humī, duo lacte *novō*, duo *sanguine sacrō*,
purpureōs*que* jacit flōrēs *ac tālia fātur:*
"Salvē, sāncte *parēns*, iterum salvēte, receptī
nēquīquam cinerēs *animaeque umbraeque* paternae.

aevum, ī *n.* age, time, life, eternity
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
Bacchus, ī *m.* (god of) wine
caestus, ūs *m.* boxing-glove, gauntlet, made of a thong of raw-hide with balls of lead or iron fastened in; wrapped around the hands of the boxer†
carchēsium (i)ī *n.* cup, goblet†
caterva, ae *f.* troop, band, crowd
cēterus, a, um rest, remaining, other(s)
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird(le)*
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort
committō, ere, mīsī, missus join, begin
concilium, (i)ī *n.* assembly, council
crūdus, a, um raw, rough, untanned†
duo, ae, o two*
exspectō (1) expect, await, tarry, hope (for)*
faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautus favor, befriend
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum trust (in) (*dat., abl.*)*
flōs, flōris *m.* flower, blossom, bloom
Helymus, ī *m.* Sicilian leader†
humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
iterum again, anew, a second time*
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw, hurl
lac, lactis *n.* milk
lībō (1) pour (as a libation), offer
māternus, a, um of a mother, maternal
mātūrus, a, um mature, grown, ripe, advanced†
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
merus, a, um pure, unmixed
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
myrtus, ī (ūs) *f.* myrtle, a tree sacred to Venus and to the dead
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly*
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize*
paternus, a, um of one's father, paternal
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
pūbēs, is *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, combat, fray*
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus get back, save*
rīte duly, correctly, ritually
salveō, ēre be well, hail, farewell†
sānctus, a, um sacred, blessed, sainted*
sīve, seu or (if), whether
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
vēlō (1) veil, cover, wrap, wreathe

69. caestū: the ancient boxing gloves, made of untanned (**crūdō**) hide and often weighted with lead and iron, were quite brutal and sometimes deadly. Boxers were often disfigured and sometimes killed in such contests.

71. Ōre favēte: *favor with your speech*, i.e., avoid all words of bad omen. The surest way to do this is to refrain from speaking; hence **ōre** (or **linguīs**) **favēre**, *preserve a holy silence*, is a common formula used by priests at the beginning of religious rites.

72–103. The propitiatory sacrifice to the manes of Anchises.

73. Hoc, hoc: pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c*. **aevī:** gen. of respect with **mātūrus**; App. 294.

75. Ille: Aenēās.

76. tumulum (Anchīsae).

77. Bacchō: abl. of quality; App. 330.

78. sanguine: of a sacrificial victim.

80–81. nēquīquam: since he did not live to reach Italy, the Promised Land. **cinerēs receptī (ex Trojā).**

Nōn licuit *fīnīs* Italōs fātāliaque *arva*
nec tēcum Ausonium, quīcumque *est, quaerere* Thybrim."
Dīxerat haec, adytīs *cum* lūbricus anguis *ab īmīs*
septem *ingēns* gȳrōs, septēna volūmina *trāxit*
amplexus placidē tumulum *lāpsusque per ārās,*
caeruleae *cui* terga notae maculōsus *et aurō*
squāmam incendēbat fulgor, ceu nūbibus arcus
mīlle jacit variōs adversō sōle colōrēs.
Obstipuit vīsū *Aenēās. Ille agmine longō*
tandem inter paterās *et* lēvia pōcula serpēns
lībāvitque dapēs rūrsusque innoxius *īmō*
successit tumulō *et* dēpāsta altāria līquit.
Hōc magis inceptōs *genitōrī* īnstaurat *honōrēs,*

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
adytum, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
altāria, ium *n.* altar
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, encircle*
anguis, is *m.* snake, serpent
arcus, ūs *m.* (rain)bow, arc, arch*
Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
ceu as, just as, as if
color, ōris *m.* color, hue, tint
daps, dapis *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
dēpascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed (on)
fātālis, e fatal, fated, destined
fulgor, ōris *m.* gleam, glitter, sheen†
gȳrus, ī *m.* fold, circle, coil†
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, brighten*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
innoxius, a, um harmless, innocent
īnstaurō (1) renew, refresh, repeat
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw, hurl
lēvis, e smooth, polished, slippery†
lībō (1) pour (out), offer, sip, taste
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, forsake*
lūbricus, a, um smooth, slippery, slimy
maculōsus, a, um spotted, mottled, flecked
magis more, rather, preferably*
mīlle: *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
nota, ae *f.* mark, sign, spot
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
obstipēscō, ere, puī be amazed*
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl, cup
placidē gently, calmly, peacefully†
pōculum, ī *n.* (drinking) cup, goblet
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whichever, whatever*
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
septem seven
septēnī, ae, a seven (each) by sevens†
serpō, ere, psī, ptus creep, crawl
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
squāma, ae *f.* scale(s)†
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach (*dat.*)
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
Thybris, (id)is *m.* Tiber, a river of Italy
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
varius, a, um varied, different, diverse*
vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, appearance, vision
volūmen, inis *n.* fold, coil, roll

82. licuit (mihi quaerere tēcum) fīnīs Italōs.

83. quīcumque est: *whatever the Tiber may be;* intentional insistence of the poet that his hero does not know the land to which he is going but is obediently following the will of the gods. There is perhaps also an additional touch of Roman pride in the implied contrast of the present fame of the Tiber and of Rome.

84. adytīs: the tomb served as a shrine. **anguis:** the protecting genius, or guardian spirit (divinity) of a place or of a dead person, was often represented as a serpent, and the worship of serpents was very common in antiquity.

85. septem septēna: seven, like three, was a sacred, mystical number, supposed to be of great potency in bringing good fortune.

87–88. cui terga caeruleae notae (incendēbant) et (cui) squāmam fulgor maculōsus aurō incendēbat: *whose back blue spots brightened,* etc., **cui** being dat. of reference. **nūbibus:** abl. of place where; App. 319, *b.*

90. Ille: *the serpent;* the pronoun being used, as often, to indicate a change of subject.

94. īnstaurat: because interrupted by the appearance of the serpent. **hōc:** *all the more;* abl. of degree of difference;

incertus geniumne *locī* famulumne *parentis*
esse putet; caedit bīnās *dē* mōre bidentīs
totque suēs, totidem nigrantīs terga juvencōs,
vīnaque *fundēbat* paterīs *animamque vocābat*
Anchīsae magnī mānīsque Acheronte remissōs.
Nec nōn et socīī, quae cuique *est* cōpia, *laetī*
dōna ferunt, onerant *ārās* mactantque juvencōs;
ordine aēna locant *aliī fūsīque per* herbam
subjiciunt veribus prūnās *et* vīscera torrent.
Exspectāta *diēs aderat* nōnamque serēnā
Aurōram Phaethontis *equī jam lūce* vehēbant,
fāmaque fīnitimōs *et* clārī *nōmen Acestae*
excierat: *laetō* complērant *lītora* coetū

Acherōn, ontis *m.* (river of) Hades†
aēnum, ī *n.* bronze (kettle, caldron)
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
bidēns, entis *f.* sheep (with two teeth)
bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus cut (down), kill
clārus, a, um clear, bright, famous*
coetus, ūs *m.* assembly, gathering
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete
cōpia, ae, *f.* abundance, supply; *pl.* forces
exciō, īre, īvī (iī), itus arouse, stir (up)
ex(s)pectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
famulus, ī *m.* servant, attendant
fīnitimus, ī *m.* neighbor; adjoining people†
genius, (i)ī *m.* guardian spirit, genius†
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
incertus, a, um uncertain, doubtful
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, ox, bull*
locō, (1) establish, place, locate, set up*
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
nigrāns, antis black, dusky, dark
nōnus, a, um ninth
onerō (1) load, burden, overwhelm
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, line*
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl, cup
Phaethōn, ontis *m.* the sun (god)†
prūna, ae *f.* live coal, ember†
putō (1) think, suppose, consider, reckon
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) each, every(one)
remittō, ere, mīsī, missus send back, let go
serēnus, a, um clear, calm, serene
subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place under (*dat.*)
sūs, suis *m.* (*f.*) hog, pig, swine
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
torreō, ēre, uī, tostus roast, boil, parch
tot so many*
totidem an equal number of, as many
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey*
verū, ūs *n.* spit, spike, broach
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*
vīscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh, bowels

App. 335; refers to the favorable omen of the snake's appearance.

95. famulum: thus indicating that Anchises had been admitted among the divinities and had been assigned his own personal attendant. **-ne . . . -ne:** *whether . . . or.*

96–97. putet: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. This sacrifice is called the *suovetaurilia* (**sūs, ovis, taurus**). **nigrantīs:** black victims were offered to the shades of the dead and to the gods of the lower world. **terga:** acc. of respect; App. 311.

99. mānīs (ex) Acheronte remissōs: the souls of the dead could thus be temporarily released from the lower world and partake of the funeral offerings made at their graves. See III, 303.

100. Nec nōn: *likewise.* **quae cuique est cōpia:** *each according to his means.*

102. fūsī: middle; App. 309.

104–113. The gathering of the contestants and spectators.

105. lūce: abl. of manner with **vehēbat** or of quality with **Aurōram**; App. 328, 330.

106. fāma: the report of the games and the prizes.

vīsūrī Aeneadās, *pars et* certāre *parātī*.
Mūnera principiō *ante oculōs* circō*que* locantur
in mediō, sacrī tripodes viridēs*que* corōnae
et palmae pretium *victōribus, armaque et* ostrō
perfūsae vestēs, argentī *aurīque* talentum;
et tuba commissōs *mediō* canit aggere lūdōs.
Prīma parēs ineunt gravibus certāmina *rēmīs*
quattuor *ex omnī* dēlēctae *classe* carīnae.
Vēlōcem Mnēstheus *agit* ācrī rēmige Pristim,
mox Italus Mnēstheus, *genus ā quō nōmine* Memmī,
ingentemque Gyās *ingentī* mōle Chimaeram,
urbis opus, triplicī pūbēs *quam* Dardana versū
impellunt, ternō cōnsurgunt ordine *rēmī;*
Sergestus*que, domus tenet ā quō* Sergia *nōmen,*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
Aeneadēs, ae *m.* descendant (follower) of Aeneas
agger, eris *m.* mound, embankment
argentum ī *n.* silver
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, proclaim, prophesy*
carīna, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
certāmen, inis *n.* contest, struggle*
certō (1) contend, compete, strive, vie
Chimaera, ae *f.* fire-breathing monster; name of a ship†
circus, ī *m.* circle, race-course†
committō, ere, mīsī, missus join, begin
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise
corōna, ae *f.* wreath, garland, crown
Dardanus, a, um Dardanian, Trojan
dēligo, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
Gyās, ae *m.* Trojan leader
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive, impel
ineō, īre, iī (īvī), itus enter†
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
locō (1) establish, plac-, locate, set up*
lūdus, ī *m.* game, sport, play, contest
Memmius, (i)ī *m.* noted Roman family†
Mnēstheus, eī (eos) *m.* Trojan leader*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
mox soon, presently
opus, eris *n.* work, toil, product, deed*
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, bank*
ostrum, ī *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize*
pār, paris equal, well-matched, similar*
perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus drench, dye
pretium, (i)ī *n.* reward, price, prize
principiō first(ly), in the first place
Pristis, is *f.* Sea Monster; name of a ship†
pūbēs, is *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
quattuor four
rēmex, igis *m.* rower, oarsman, crew
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader*
Sergius, a, um of Sergius, a famous Roman family†
talentum, ī *n.* talent, worth about $1200†
ternus, a, um three (each), triple
triplex, icis triple, threefold†
tripūs, odis *m.* tripod
tuba, ae *f.* trumpet
vēlōx, ōcis swift, speedy, fleet
versus, ūs *m.* row, tier, line,verse
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

108. vīsūrī: *desiring to see;* a common meaning of the fut. part.; App. 274. **certāre:** inf. with **parātī**, which is pl. with the collective noun **pars**; App. 265.

114–285. Cloanthus wins the boat race.

114. rēmīs: abl. of quality.

116. Pristim: *Sea Monster;* each of these ships probably bore a figurehead representing its name. **ācrī rēmige:** collective.

117. ā quō nōmine (est) genus Memmī: the great Roman families loved to trace their ancestry back to Troy. This passage of the *Aeneid* is a good example of the fanciful etymologizing often resorted to in order to establish the connection.

118. Gyās (agit).

119. urbis opus = urbis īnstar: *the size of a city.* **triplicī versū (rēmōrum):** a trireme.

121–123. Sergestus, Sergia, Cloanthus, Cluentī: more fanciful etymologies. **The**

Centaurō invehitur *magnā*, Scyllā*que* Cloanthus
caeruleā, *genus* unde *tibī*, Rōmāne Cluentī.
Est procul in pelagō saxum spūmantia contrā
lītora, quod tumidīs summersum tunditur ōlim
flūctibus hībernī condunt *ubi sīdera* Cōrī;
tranquillō silet immōtā*que* attollitur *undā*
campus et aprīcīs statiō grātissima mergīs.
Hīc viridem *Aenēās* frondentī *ex* īlice mētam
cōnstituit signum nautīs *pater*, unde revertī
scīrent *et longōs ubi* circumflectere *cursūs*.
Tum loca sorte legunt *ipsīque in puppibus aurō*
ductōrēs longē effulgent ostrō*que* decōrī;
cētera pōpuleā vēlātur fronde juventūs
nūdātōs*que umerōs* oleō perfūsa nitēscit.

---

aprīcus, a, um sunny, sun-loving†
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
Centaurus, ī *m.* monster with the head of a man and the body of a horse: *f.* name of a ship†
cēterus, a, um remaining, other, rest
circumflectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, turn
Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
Cluentius, (i)ī famous Roman family†
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, bury*
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus establish
contrā against, opposite (*acc.*)*
Cōrus, ī *m.* (northwest) wind†
decōrus, a, um beautiful, glorious, seemly
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, commander, chief
effulgeō, ēre, lsī gleam, shine, glitter
frondēns, entis leafy, fronded
frōns, frondis *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
grātus, a, um agreeable, welcome
hībernus, a, um of the winter, wintry
īlex, icis *f.* holm-oak
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable
invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather*
longē afar, from afar*
mergus, ī *m.* gull, diver†
mēta, ae *f.* turning point, goal, bound
nauta, ae *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
nitēscō, ere, nituī shine, glisten, gleam†
nūdō (1) bare, strip, uncover, expose
oleum, ī *n.* olive oil
ōlim at some time, once, formerly*
ostrum, ī *n.* purple, crimson, scarlet
perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus bathe, drench
pōpuleus, a, um (of) poplar, a tree sacred to Hercules, the perfect athlete and patron saint of athletes†
revertor, ī, rsus return, turn back
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
sciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus know (how), understand
Scylla, ae *f.* sea-monster; name of a ship†
signum, ī *n.* mark, sign, signal, token*
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, hush, be still
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
statiō, ōnis *f.* station, post, anchorage
summergō (subm-), **ere, rsī, rsus** submerge, sink
tranquillum, ī *n.* calm (weather)
tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling
tundō, ere, tutudī, tū(n)sus beat, buffet
unde whence, from which source*
vēlō (1) veil, cover, wrap, wreathe
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

---

ability to contrive such distorted derivations once passed as a mark of real scholarship. **Cloanthus (invehitur).**

124. saxum: a rock just at the surface of the water.

126. condunt (**nūbibus**, *with clouds*).

127. tranquillō: abl. of time when. **mmōtā undā**: abl. abs.

128. campus: (*as*) *a flat surface.*

130–131. unde = **ex quō locō. unde scīrent**: purpose.

134. cētera juventūs: *the crew*, as contrasted with the ductor of each ship.

135. umerōs: obj. of the middle part. **perfūsa**; App. 309, *a*. **oleō**: see note on III, 281.

Cōnsīdunt trānstrīs, intentaque bracchia *rēmīs;*
intentī exspectant signum, exsultantiaque haurit
corda pavor pulsāns laudumque arrēcta cupīdō.
Inde *ubi* clāra *dedit* sonitum tuba, *fīnibus omnēs,*
haud mora, prōsiluēre *suīs;* ferit aethera *clāmor*
nauticus, adductīs spūmant freta versa lacertīs.
Īnfindunt pariter sulcōs, *tōtumque* dehīscit
convulsum *rēmīs* rōstrīsque tridentibus *aequor.*
Nōn tam praecipitēs bijugō certāmine *campum*
corripuēre *ruuntque* effūsī carcere currūs,
nec sīc immissīs aurīgae undantia lōra
concussēre jugīs prōnīque *in* verbera pendent.
Tum plausū fremitūque *virum* studiīsque faventum

---

adūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw to, lead to†
aethēr, eris, *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, heaven*
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, rouse
auriga, ae *m.* charioteer, driver†
bijugus, a, um double-yoked, two-horsed; team, chariot†
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* (fore)arm*
carcer, eris *m.* prison, barrier, starting point
certāmen, inis *n.* struggle, contest*
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake, shatter
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (on), settle*
convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear up, shatter
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch up, dash over*
cupīdō, inis *f.* desire, love, passion
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
dehīscō, ere, hīvī yawn, open, gape
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, let go*
ex(s)pectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
ex(s)ultō (1) leap up, exult, rejoice
favēns, entis *m.* (*f.*) partisan, supporter
ferīō, īre strike, smite, beat, cut, kill
fremitus, ūs *m.* roar, shout(ing)
fretum, ī *n.* strait, sea, waters
hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus drain, exhaust
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go
inde thence, after that, next*
īnfindō, ere, fidī, fissus split, cleave†
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, strain
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, team; (mountain) ridge*
lacertus, ī *m.* (upper) arm†
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
lōrum, ī *n.* thong, rein, check
mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
nauticus, a, um of sailors, nautical
pariter equally, side by side*
pavor, ōris *m.* fear, alarm, anxiety
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang*
plausus, ūs *m.* applause, clapping
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
prōnus, a, um leaning forward, prone
prōsiliō, īre, uī (īvī, iī) leap forward†
pulsō (1) beat, lash, strike, throb, batter
rōstrum, ī *n.* beak, snout; prow†
signum, ī *n.* mark, sign, signal, token*
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
studium, (i)ī *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit
sulcus, ī *m.* furrow, track, trench
tam so (much), so greatly, such*
trānstrum, ī *n.* rowing-bench, thwart
tridēns, entis triple-pointed, three-toothed
tuba, ae *f.* trumpet
undō (1) wave, sway, undulate, fluctuate
verber, eris *n.* blow, lash, whip†
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour
vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change*

---

136. intenta (sunt).

139. fīnibus: *from their starting places.*

140. haud mora (est) = sine morā.

141. adductīs (ad pectora): as they make the stroke. **versa:** probably from **vertō,** *turn,* but possibly from **verrō,** *sweep.*

144 bijugō: with the first syllable short, since the j was originally initial, **bijugō** being a compound of **bis,** *double,* and **jugum,** *yoke;* App. 6, *b.*

145. effūsī: middle; App. 309. The galleys are compared to chariots in a race, the commanders to the charioteers and the rowers to the horses. **carcere = fīnibus** of l. 139.

147. jugīs = equīs: metonymy and dat. of reference; App. 433, 301. **in verbera (danda) = ut verbera dent.**

148. vir(ōr)um.

cōnsonat *omne* nemus, *vōcemque* inclūsa volūtant
lītora, pulsātī collēs *clāmōre* resultant.
Effugit *ante aliōs prīmīsque* ēlābitur *undīs*
turbam *inter* fremitum*que* Gyās; *quem* deinde Cloanthus
cōnsequitur, melior *rēmīs*, *sed* pondere pīnus
tarda *tenet*. Post *hōs* aequō discrīmine Pristis
Centaurus*que locum tendunt* superāre priōrem;
et nunc Pristis *habet*, *nunc victam* praeterit *ingēns*
Centaurus, *nunc* ūnā ambae jūnctīs*que feruntur*
frontibus *et longā* sulcant vada salsa carīnā.
Jamque propinquābant scopulō mētam*que tenēbant*
cum princeps *mediōque* Gyās *in* gurgite *victor*
rēctōrem *nāvis* compellat *vōce* Menoetēn:
"*Quō tantum mihi dexter* abīs? *Hūc* dērige gressum;
lītus amā *et* laevā stringat sine palmula cautēs;

---

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus depart*
aequus, a, um equal, just, even, fair
ambō, ae, ō both
amō (1) love, cherish; hug*
carīna, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
cautēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, ledge
Centaurus, ī *m.* monster with the head of a man and the body of a horse; *f.* name of a ship
Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
collis, is *m.* hill
compellō (1) speak to, address, accost
cōnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake
cōnsonō, āre, uī (re)sound, echo†
deinde then, thence, thereupon, next*
dērigō (dī-), ere, rēxī, rēctus direct
discrīmen, inis *n.* difference, interval
effugiō, ere, fūgī escape, shoot forth
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide forth, escape
fremitus, ūs *m.* roar, shout(ing)
frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, face*
gressus, ūs *m.* step, course, gait, pace
gurges, itis *m.* whirlpool, sea, gulf*
Gyās, ae *m.* Trojan leader
inclūdō, ere, sī, sus shut (in), inclose
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
melior, ius better, superior, preferable
Menoetēs, ae *m.* Trojan pilot†
mēta, ae *f.* goal, turning point, bound
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
palmula, ae *f.* oar-blade, oar†
pīnus, ūs (ī) *f.* pine tree; ship
pondus, eris *n.* weight, burden, mass
post after, behind (*acc.*); afterward*
praetereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus pass
princeps, cipis first, leading, (as) leader
prior, ius former, first, prior*
Pristis, is *f.* Shark; name of a ship
propinquō (1) approach, (draw) near (*dat.*)
pulsō (1) beat, strike, lash, throb, batter
rēctor, ōris *m.* pilot, leader, master†
resultō (1) rebound, re-echo, reverberate†
salsus, a, um briny, salty
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs allow, permit*
stringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus brush, graze
sulcō (1) plow, furrow, cleave†
superō (1) surmount, overcome, surpass, survive*
tardus, a, um delayed, slow, late, lazy
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, throng, uproar
ūnā together, at the same time
vadum, ī *n.* shoal, sea
volūtō (1) roll, revolve, ponder

---

149. inclūsa: *surrounded* (by the hills).

151. prīmīs undīs: *over the foremost waves*, in front of the other ships.

152. inter turbam fremitumque.

153. pīnus = nāvis: metonymy; App. 433.

154. (Cloanthum) tenet. aequō discrīmine: abl. of degree of difference; App. 335.

155. locum superāre priōrem: *to gain the lead.*

156. habet (priōrem) locum.

157–158. jūnctīs frontibus = pariter; cf. l. 142.

159. tenēbant: *were about to reach*; App. 351, 2, *a*.

160. victor: Gyas had been leading thus far.

162. mihi: dat of reference, "to my hurt," or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

163. lītus amā: *hug the shore*; i.e., the

altum *alīī teneant.*" *Dīxit; sed* caeca Menoetēs
saxa timēns prōram *pelagī* dētorquet *ad undās.*
"*Quō* dīversus abīs?" Iterum "*Pete saxa,* Menoetē!"
cum clāmōre Gyās revocābat, *et* ecce Cloanthum
respicit īnstantem tergō *et* propiōra *tenentem.*
Ille inter nāvemque Gyae scopulōs*que* sonantīs
rādit iter laevum interior subitō*que* priōrem
praeterit *et* mētīs *tenet aequora* tūta *relictīs.*
Tum vērō exarsit juvenī dolor ossibus *ingēns*
nec lacrimīs caruēre genae, sēgnem*que* Menoetēn
oblītus decoris*que suī sociumque* salūtis
in mare praecipitem *puppī* dēturbat *ab altā;*
ipse gubernāclō rēctor *subit, ipse* magister
hortātur*que virōs* clāvum*que ad lītora* torquet.
At gravis *ut* fundō *vix tandem* redditus *īmō est*
jam senior madidā*que* fluēns *in* veste Menoetēs

---

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus depart*
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
careō, ēre, uī be free from, lack (*abl.*)
clāvus, ī *m.* helm, rudder, tiller
Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
decus, oris *n.* beauty, grace, dignity
dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn (aside)
dēturbō (1) hurl down, cast down†
dīversus, a, um apart, separated, aside*
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
ecce see! look! behold!*
exardēscō, ere, arsī, arsus flame forth
fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow, stream, drip
fundus, ī *m.* bottom, foundation, base
gena, ae *f.* cheek
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
gubernāc(u)lum, ī *n.* helm, rudder, tiller†
Gyās, ae *m.* Trojan leader
hortor, ārī, ātus urge, encourage, incite*
īnstō, āre, stitī press on, urge (on) (*dat.*)
interior, ius inner, inside, interior
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
iterum again, anew, a second time*
juvenis, is *m.* youth, young (man, woman)*
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
madidus, a, um wet, dripping†
magister, trī *m.* master, skipper, pilot
Menoetēs, ae *m.* Trojan pilot
mēta, ae *f.* goal, turning point, bound
oblīvīscor, ī, lītus forget (*gen.*)
os, ossis *n.* bone*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
praetereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus pass
prior, ius former, first, prior*
propior, ius nearer, closer
prōra, ae *f.* prow*
rādō, ere, sī, sus scrape, shave; skirt
rēctor, ōris *m.* pilot, leader, master
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, render*
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see (behind), look back (at), regard*
revocō (1) call back, recall, restore
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, health, welfare
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sēgnis, e slow, lazy, inactive
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide, rear*
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn, sway*
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
vērō indeed, truly, but
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*

---

saxum of l. 124 which served as a turning point. (ut) **stringat**: obj. of **sine**, an imp. **laevā (manū)** *on the left.*

167. revocābat: conative, *he kept trying to call back;* App. 351, 2, *a.*

168. tergō: dat. with compound. **(loca) propiōra (saxō)**: *the inside track,* since the rock served as the turning point.

169. Ille (Cloanthus).

170. iter: cognate acc.; App. 313. **interior**: between Gyas and the rock.

172. juvenī: dat. of reference.

174. soci(ōr)um.

176. ipse (Gyās) rēctor: (*as*) *pilot.*

summa petit scopulī siccā*que in* rūpe resēdit.
Illum et lābentem Teucrī et rīsēre natantem
et salsōs rīdent revomentem *pectore flūctūs.*
Hīc laeta extrēmīs spēs *est* accēnsa duōbus,
Sergestō Mnēstheī*que*, Gyān superāre morantem.
Sergestus *capit ante locum* scopulō*que* propinquat,
nec tōtā tamen *ille* prior praeëunte carīnā;
parte prior, partim rōstrō premit aemula Pristis.
At mediā sociōs incēdēns *nāve per ipsōs*
hortātur Mnēstheus: "*Nunc, nunc* īnsurgite *rēmīs,*
Hectoreī *sociī, Trojae quōs* sorte *suprēmā*
dēlēgī *comitēs; nunc illās* prōmite *vīrīs,*
nunc animōs, quibus in Gaetūlīs Syrtibus ūsī
Īoniō*que marī* Maleae*que* sequācibus *undīs.*
Nōn jam prīma petō Mnēstheus *neque vincere* certō
(quamquam *Ō! —sed* superent *quibus hoc,* Neptūne, *dedistī*),

---

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle
aemulus, a, um emulous, jealous†
carīna, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
certō (1) struggle, contend, vie, compete
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select
duo, ae, o two*
extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme*
Gaetūlus, a, um Gaetulian, of the Gaetuli, an African tribe
Gyās, ae *m.* Trojan leader
Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan leader
hortor, ārī, ātus urge, encourage, incite*
incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go, stride
īnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise (on) (*dat.*)
Īonius, a, um Ionian, a sea off the west coast of Greece
Malea, ae *f.* promontory of southern Greece, dangerous to navigation†
Mnēstheus, eī (eos) *m.* Trojan leader*
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
natō (1) swim, float, overflow
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
partim partly, partially†
praeeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus go before, lead†
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, pursue*
prior, ius former, prior, first*
Pristis, is *f.* Shark; name of a ship
prōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus put forth
propinquō (1) approach, (draw) near (*dat.*)
quamquam although, however, but
resīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down), settle
revomō, ere, uī vomit (forth), disgorge†
rīdeō, ēre, sī, sus laugh (at), smile
rōstrum, ī *n.* beak, snout; prow
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
salsus, a, um briny, salty
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sequāx, ācis pursuing, swift†
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader*
siccus, a, um dry, thirsty
sors, rtis *f.* lot, fortune, portion; oracle*
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
superō (1) surmount, overcome, surpass, win, survive*
Syrtis, is *f.* sand-bank off the northern coast of Africa
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
ūtor, ī, ūsus use, employ, enjoy (*abl.*)

---

183. extrēmīs duōbus: dat. of reference.

184. Mnēsthei: dat., a Greek form; two syllables by synizesis; App. 69, 403.

185. ante: adverbial, *first, before* (*the others*).

186. praeeunte: with the first syllable short. This prefix is often shortened before a following vowel.

190. sorte suprēmā: abl. of time when.

192. (illōs) animōs, quibus ūsī (estis). quibus: abl. with ūtor; App. 342.

194. prīma (loca). Mnēstheus = ego.

195. quamquam Ō: a wish left unexpressed and thus made more vivid; a good example of effective aposiopesis; App. 416. Cf. I, 135, note.

extrēmōs pudeat rediisse: *hoc vincite,* cīvēs,
et prohibēte nefās." *Ollī* certāmine *summō*
prōcumbunt: *vastīs* tremit ictibus aerea *puppis*
subtrahitur*que* solum, *tum* crēber anhēlitus artūs
āridaq*ue ōra* quatit, sūdor fluit undique rīvīs.
Attulit *ipse virīs* optātum *cāsus honōrem.*
Namque furēns animī dum prōram *ad saxa* suburget
interior spatiō*que subit* Sergestus inīquō,
īnfēlīx saxīs in prōcurrentibus haesit.
Concussae cautēs *et* acūtō *in* mūrice *rēmī*
obnixī crepuēre inlīsa*que* prōra pependit.
Cōnsurgunt nautae *et magnō clāmōre* morantur
ferrātās*que* trudēs *et* acūtā cuspide contōs
expediunt frāctōs*que* legunt *in* gurgite *rēmōs.*
At laetus Mnēstheus successū*que* ācrior *ipsō*
agmine rēmōrum celerī *ventīsque vocātīs*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, acute
adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring to
aereus, a, um bronze, bronze-clad
anhēlitus, ūs *m.* panting, gasping†
āridus, a, um dry, parched
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, member*
cautēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, ledge
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet*
certāmen, inis *n.* contest, struggle, race*
cīvis, is *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot
concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake, shatter
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise
contus, ī *m.* boat hook, pike, pole†
crēber, bra, brum frequent, hurried*
crepō, āre, uī, itus clatter, crash†
cuspis, idis *f.* point
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus disentangle, bring forth
extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme*
ferrātus, a, um shod with iron, iron-clad†
fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow, stream, drip
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter*
gurges, itis *m.* whirlpool, sea, gulf*
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to), stick*
ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
inīquus, a, um unfavorable, unjust
inlīdō, ere, sī, sus strike on, dash on
interior, ius inner, inside, interior
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, choose*
Mnēstheus, eī (eos) *m.* Trojan leader*
moror, ārī, ātus delay, hinder, tarry*
mūrex, icis *m.* purple (mollusk), rock
nauta, ae *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
nefās *n. indecl.* sin, shame, impiety*
obnītor, ī, sus (nixus) press against, struggle
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang*
procumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean forward, incline, recline
prōcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus jut, project†
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus prevent, forbid
prōra, ae *f.* prow*
pudet, ēre, uit it shames†
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter
redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus return
rīvus, ī *m.* stream, rivulet
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader*
solum, ī *n.* ground, surface (of the sea)*
spatium, (i)ī *n.* space, position
subtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus draw (up), withdraw†
suburgeō, ēre press close†
successus, ūs *m.* success, progress
sūdor, ōris *m.* sweat, perspiration
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
trudis, is *f.* pole, pike†
undique on (from) all sides*

---

196. (nōs) extrēmōs.
197. nefās: i.e., of being last (extrēmōs rediisse).
199. solum (maris).
200. rīvīs: *in streams,* abl. of means.
201. virīs: to Mnestheus's crew.
202. animī: loc., or a gen. of respect with furēns; App. 345, 294.
204. in saxīs prōcurrentibus: *on rocks jutting out;* beneath the water and hence hidden (caeca), l. 164.
205. Concussae (sunt).

prōna *petit maria et pelagō* dēcurrit apertō.
Quālis spēluncā subitō commōta columba,
cui domus et dulcēs latebrōsō *in* pūmice nīdī,
fertur in arva volāns plausum*que* exterrita pennīs
dat tēctō ingentem, mox āere *lāpsa* quiētō
rādit iter liquidum celerīs *neque* commovet ālās:
sīc Mnēstheus, *sīc ipsa fugā* secat ultima Pristis
aequora, sīc illam fert impetus *ipse* volantem.
Et prīmum in scopulō luctantem dēserit *altō*
Sergestum brevibus*que* vadīs frūstrā*que vocantem*
auxilia *et* frāctīs discentem currere *rēmīs.*
Inde Gyān *ipsamque ingentī* mōle Chimaeram
cōnsequitur; cēdit, quoniam spoliāta magistrō *est.*
Sōlus jamque ipsō superest *in fīne* Cloanthus:
quem petit et summīs adnixus *vīribus* urget.
Tum vērō ingeminat *clāmor cūnctīque sequentem*

---

adnītor, ī, sus (nixus) struggle, strive
āēr, āeris *m.* air, mist, fog
āla, ae *f.* wing*
apertus, a, um open, clear, free
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance*
brevis, e short, shallow, brief
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, fall behind*
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet*
Chimaera, ae *f.* fire-breathing monster; name of a ship
Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
columba, ae *f.* dove, pigeon
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, startle
cōnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus run, hasten
dēcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run down
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
discō, ere, didicī learn (how); *perf.* know
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter*
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
Gyās, ae *m.* Trojan leader
impetus, ūs *m.* impetus, momentum
inde then, thence, next*
ingeminō (1) reiterate, (re)double, increase
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
latebrōsus, a, um sheltering, crannied†
liquidus, a, um liquid, fluid, clear
luctor, ārī, ātus struggle, wrestle
magister, trī *m.* master, skipper, pilot
Mnēstheus, eī (eos) *m.* Trojan leader*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
mox soon, presently
nīdus, ī *m.* nest(ling)†
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather
plausus, ūs *m.* clapping, beating
Pristis, is *f.* Shark; name of a ship
prōnus, a, um leaning forward, sloping downward
pūmex, icis *m.* pumice, a porous stone†
quālis, e of what kind, (such) as*
quiētus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet
quoniam since, because
rādō, ere, sī, sus shave, graze, skim
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader*
spēlunca, ae *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
spoliō (1) deprive (of), rob, despoil (*abl.*)†
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
supersum, esse, fuī remain, be left
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*
urgeō, ēre, ursī press, urge
vadum, ī *n.* shoal, sea
vērō indeed, truly, but
volō (1) fly, speed, hasten*

---

212. prōna: to one standing on the shore, the sea seems higher than the land and to slope down to it. Cf. dēvēnēre, I, 365; dēlātō, III, 154; dēmittere, V. 29; dēlātī, V, 57.

213–215. Quālis columba, subitō (ex) spēluncā commōta, cui domus et dulcēs nīdī (sunt) in latebrōsō pūmice, fertur, etc.

216. (ex) tēctō = ē spēluncā.

218–219. ipsa Pristis secat ultima aequora. ultima aequora: *the home stretch.* illam (Pristim).

220. (Pristis) dēserit.

221. vocantem: *calling for.*

224. cēdit (Chimaera).

227. clāmor: of those on shore.

īnstīgant studiīs, resonat*que* fragōribus aethēr.
Hī proprium decus *et* partum indignantur *honōrem*
nī *teneant, vītamque volunt* prō laude pacīscī;
hōs successus alit: *possunt*, quia *posse videntur.*
Et fors aequātīs *cēpissent* praemia rōstrīs,
nī palmās pontō *tendēns* utrāsque Cloanthus
fūdissetque precēs *dīvōsque in* vōta *vocāsset:*
"*Dī, quibus imperium est pelagī, quōrum aequora* currō,
vōbīs laetus ego hōc candentem *in lītore* taurum
cōnstituam *ante* ārās vōtī reus, exta*que* salsōs
prōjiciam *in flūctūs et* vīna liquentia *fundam.*"
Dīxit, eumque īmīs sub flūctibus audiit omnis
Nēreidum Phorcī*que* chorus Panopēa*que* virgō,
et pater ipse manū magnā Portūnus *euntem*
impulit: *illa* Notō citius volucrī*que* sagittā
ad terram fugit et portū sē condidit *altō.*
Tum satus *Anchīsā cūnctīs ex* mōre *vocātīs*

---

aequō (1) equal(ize), even, level, match*
aethēr, eris, *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky*
alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, support
candēns, entis white, shining, sleek
chorus, ī *m.* band, company, dance
citō quickly, swiftly
Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
condō, ere, didī, ditus found; bury, hide*
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus place, stand
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus run, speed (over)
decus, oris *n.* beauty, glory, dignity
exta, ōrum *n.* entrails, vitals
fragor, ōris *m.* crash, uproar
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive on
indignor, ārī, ātus disdain, be angry
instīgō (1) goad, incite, spur, urge on†
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
liquēns, entis liquid, clear
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
Nēreis, idis *f.* Nereid, a sea-nymph, daughter of Nereus, a sea-god
nisi, nī if not, unless*
Notus, ī *m.* (south) wind
pacīscor, ī, pactus pledge, stake
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize*
Panopēa, ae *f.* a sea-nymph, daughter of Nereus†
pariō, ere, peperī, partus gain, bear
Phorcus, ī *m.* a sea-god†
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
Portūnus, ī *m.* god of harbors†
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
prō for, before, on behalf of (*abl.*)*
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast forth†
proprius, a, um one's own, secure
quia because
resonō (1) (re)sound, roar
reus, ī *m.* defendant, debtor, payer†
rōstrum, ī *n.* beak, snout; prow
sagitta, ae *f.* arrow, bolt, shaft
salsus, a, um briny, salty
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget*
studium, (i)ī *n.* desire, eagerness, zeal, favor, partisanship
successus, ūs *m.* success, progress
taurus, ī *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*
virgō, inis *f.* girl, daughter, maiden*
volucer, cris, cre winged, fleet, swift*
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

229–231. Hī . . . hōs: *the sailors of Cloanthus . . . the sailors of Mnestheus.*
nī teneant: subordinate clause in implied indir. disc.; App. 358.
232. fors: *perhaps.*
233. pontō: dat. of direction.
235. aequora: obj. of **currō,** used transitively.
237. vōtī: gen. with a word of condemning, **reus;** App. 291.
241. (nāvem) euntem.
242. illa (nāvis Cloanthī). Notō, sagittā: ablatives with the comparative; App. 327.
244. satus Anchīsā: Aeneas.

victōrem magnā praecōnis *vōce* Cloanthum
dēclārat viridīque advēlat tempora laurō,
mūneraque in nāvīs ternōs optāre juvencōs
vīna*que et* argentī *magnum dat ferre* talentum.
Ipsīs praecipuōs ductōribus addit *honōrēs:*
victōrī chlamydem aurātam, *quam plūrima circum*
purpura Maeandrō duplicī Meliboea cucurrit,
intextus*que puer* frondōsā rēgius Īdā
vēlōcīs jaculō cervōs *cursūque* fatīgat
ācer, anhēlantī similis, *quem* praepes *ab* Īdā
sublīmem pedibus rapuit *Jovis* armiger uncīs:
longaevī palmās nēquīquam *ad sīdera tendunt*
custōdēs, saevit*que* canum lātrātus *in aurās.*
At quī deinde *locum tenuit* virtūte secundum,

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
advēlō (1) veil, cover, wreathe†
anhēlō (1) pant, gasp, puff†
argentum, ī *n.* silver
armiger, erī *m.* armor-bearer
aurātus, a, um gilded, embroidered with gold
canis, is *m.* (*f.*) dog, hound
cervus, ī *m.* deer, stag
chlamys, ydis *f.* cloak, scarf, cape
Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus, run, speed (over)
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
dēclārō (1) proclaim, make clear†
deinde then, next, after that*
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, commander, chief
duplex, icis twofold, double
fatīgō (1) weary, chase, harass, rouse
frondōsus, a, um leafy, fronded†
Īda, ae *f.* mountain near Troy
intexō, ere, uī, xtus weave in
jaculum, ī *n.* spear, dart, lance
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
lātrātus, ūs *m.* bark(ing), howl(ing)†
laurus, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel
longaevus, a, um aged, long-lived
Maeander, drī *m.* winding river of Asia Minor; meandering pattern†
Meliboeus, a, um Meliboean, of Meliboea, a Thessalian town
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
praecipuus, a, um especial, choice†
praecō, ōnis *m.* crier, herald†
praepes, petis swift, swooping
purpura, ae *f.* purple, crimson†
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), rob*
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, princely*
saeviō, īre, ii (īvī), **ītus** rage, storm
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
similis, e like, similar (*dat.*)*
sublīmis, e lofty, aloft, on high
talentum, ī *n.* a talent, worth about $1200
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
ternī, ae, a three (each), by threes
uncus, a, um crooked, curved
vēlōx, ōcis swift, speedy, fleet
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, merit, courage*

247–248. optāre, ferre: infinitives of purpose; App. 261.

250–251. circum quam (chlamydem) plūrima purpura cucurrit.

251. Maeandrō: abl. of manner.

252. puer rēgius: Ganymede, son of Tros, king of Troy. He was carried to heaven by an eagle, to be Jove's cupbearer. Cf. I, 28. Two scenes are woven in the robe; the first representing the boy as hunting and the second his being carried away by the eagle while his aged guardians lift their hands toward heaven and his dogs bark at the eagle.

255. Jovis armiger: the eagle was often represented by the ancients as bearing in his talons the thunderbolt, the weapon of Jupiter. Some United States coins bear this device.

257. lātrātus: *barking* (at the eagle).

258. quī: its antecedent is **huic,** in l. 259.

lēvibus *huic* hāmīs cōnsertam *aurōque* trilīcem
lōrīcam, *quam* Dēmoleō dētrāxerat *ipse*
victor apud rapidum Simoënta *sub* Īliō *altō*,
dōnat *habēre*, *virō* decus *et* tūtāmen *in armīs*.
Vix illam famulī Phēgeus Sagaris*que ferēbant*
multiplicem cōnixī *umerīs*; indūtus *at* ōlim
Dēmoleos *cursū* pālantīs Trōas *agēbat*.
Tertia *dōna facit geminōs ex* aere lebētas
cymbia*que* argentō perfecta *atque* aspera signīs.
Jamque adeō dōnātī *omnēs* opibus*que* superbī
pūnicеīs *ībant* ēvīnctī tempora taenīs,
cum saevō *ē* scopulō *multā vix* arte revulsus
āmissīs *rēmīs atque* ordine dēbilis *ūnō*
inrīsam sine *honōre* ratem Sergestus *agēbat*.

---

adeō to such an extent, so
aes, aeris *n.* bronze*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus lose, let go*
apud among, at, near (*acc.*)
argentum, ī *n.* silver
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, device, cunning*
asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce*
cōnītor, ī, sus (nixus) struggle†
cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus fasten, join
cymbium, (i)ī *n.* bowl, cup
dēbilis, e weakened, crippled†
decus, oris *n.* ornament, glory, dignity
Dēmoleos (us), ī (ō) *m.* Greek leader†
dētrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus strip (off) (*abl.*)†
dōnō (1) present, give, bestow, grant†
ēvinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, tie†
famulus, ī *m.* slave, attendant
hāmus, ī *m.* hook, link
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Troy, Ilium
induō, ere, uī, ūtus clothe, don
inrīdeō, ēre, sī, sus laugh at, ridicule
lebēs, ētis *m.* kettle, caldron
lēvis, e smooth, polished, slippery
lōrīca, ae *f.* breastplate, cuirass
multiplex, icis with many folds
ōlim once, formerly, at some time*
ops, opis *f.* aid, wealth, resources, power*
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, bank*
pālor, ārī, ātus straggle, scatter†
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, form
Phēgeus, ī *m.* Trojan slave†
pūniceus, a, um purple, crimson†
rapidus, a, um swift, quick, whirling*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
revellō, ere, (vul)sī, vulsus tear away
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
Sagaris, is *m.* Trojan slave†
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader*
signum, ī *n.* mark, sign, signal, figure*
Simoïs, entis *m.* river near Troy
sine without (*abl.*)*
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
taenia, ae *f.* ribbon, band, fillet†
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
tertius, a, um third*
trilīx, līcis three-leashed, triple-threaded
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
tūtāmen, inis *n.* protection, defense†

---

260. Dēmoleō: dat. of separation. **ipse** (Aenēās).

261. Īliō altō: semi-hiatus; App. 400.

262. habēre: inf. of purpose; App. 261. **in armīs** = **in bellō**: metonymy; App. 433.

263. Vix ferēbant: tradition, which is regularly handed down by the old men, continually insists that everything was much better ' in the good old days " and that men of former generations were much stronger and braver than their degenerate descendants.

265. cursū: abl. of manner; App. 328.

266. dōna, lebētas: two accusatives with a verb of making; App. 316, *a*. **lebētās**: acc. pl., a Greek form; App. 65, *a*.

267. aspera signīs: *embossed with figures*.

269. taen(i)īs.

271. ordine ūnō: *in one bank of oars*; abl. of respect; App. 325.

Quālis saepe *viae* dēprēnsus *in* aggere serpēns,
aerea *quem* oblīquum rota trānsiit *aut* gravis ictū
sēminecem līquit *saxō* lacerum*que* viātor;
nēquīquam *longōs fugiēns dat corpore* tortūs
parte ferōx *ardēnsque oculīs et* sībila colla
arduus attollēns; *pars* vulnere clauda retentat
nexantem nōdīs *sēque in sua* membra plicantem:
tālī rēmigiō *nāvis sē* tarda *movēbat;*
vēla facit tamen *et vēlīs subit* ōstia plēnīs.
Sergestum *Aenēās* prōmissō *mūnere* dōnat
servātam ob *nāvem laetus sociōsque* reductōs.
Ollī serva *datur* operum *haud* ignāra Minervae,
Crēssa *genus*, Pholoē, *geminīque sub* ūbere *nātī*.
Hōc pius Aenēās missō certāmine *tendit*
grāmineum *in campum, quem* collibus undique curvīs

---

aereus, a, um bronze, bronze-clad*
agger, eris *m.* mound, embankment
arduus, a, um lofty, steep, upraised*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
certāmen, inis *n.* struggle, contest, race*
claudus, a, um lame, crippled†
collis, is *m.* hill
collum, ī *n.* neck*
Crēssa, ae *f.* Cretan (woman), of Crete†
curvus, a, um curving, bent, winding*
dēpre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, catch
dōnō (1) give, present, bestow, grant
ferōx, ōcis fierce, spirited, wild
grāmineus, a, um grassy, of grass†
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
ictus, ūs *m.* blow, stroke, wound
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
lacer, era, erum mangled, lacerated†
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
Minerva, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom, the arts and handicrafts
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
nexō, āre bind, twine, weave, coil†
nōdus, ī *m.* knot, fold, coil
ob on account of, for (the sake of) (*acc.*)
oblīquus, a, um aslant, across†
opus, eris *n.* work, labor, art, product*
ōstium, (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance, harbor
Pholoē, ēs *f.* a Cretan slave†
plēnus, a, um full, filled, swelling
plicō, āre, uī (āvī), itus (ātus) fold, coil†
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus promise*
quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead back, bring back
rēmigium, (i)ī *n.* oarage, rowing
retentō (1) hold back, retard, detain†
rota, ae *f.* wheel, chariot, car
saepe often, frequently, repeatedly*
sēminex, necis half-dead†
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader*
serpēns, entis *m.* (*f.*) serpent, snake
serva, ae *f.* female slave†
sībilus, a, um hissing
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
tardus, a, um slow, late, lazy
tortus, ūs *m.* twisting, writhing†
trānseō, īre, iī (īvī), itus cross, pass (by, beyond)
ūber, eris *n.* udder, breast, fertility
undique on (from) all sides*
viātor, ōris *m.* traveler, wayfarer†
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

273. Quālis: correlative with **tālī** in l. 280. **viae aggere:** the Roman roads were carried across valleys on high embankments or on arches of masonry.

274–278. rota: of a wagon or chariot. **gravis ictū = gravī ictū. ictū, parte, oculīs:** ablatives of respect; App. 325.

276. fugiēns: the present of attempted action (conative present); App. 351, I, *c*.

284. datur: with the final syllable lengthened before the pause and under the metrical accent; App. 394, *a*. **Minervae:** such as spinning, weaving, and other household accomplishments.

285. genus: acc. of respect; App. 311. **sub ūbere:** *at her breast.*

286–362. By a trick of Nisus, Euryalus wins the foot race.

cingēbant *silvae, mediāque in* valle theātrī
circus *erat; quō sē multīs cum* mīlibus hērōs
cōnsessū *medium tulit* exstrūctō*que* resēdit.
Hīc, quī forte velint rapidō contendere *cursū,*
invītat pretiīs *animōs, et* praemia *pōnit.*
Undique conveniunt *Teucrī* mixtī*que* Sicānī,
Nīsus *et* Euryalus *prīmī,*
Euryalus formā īnsignis viridī*que* juventā,
Nīsus *amōre piō puerī; quōs* deinde *secūtus*
rēgius ēgregiā *Priamī dē* stirpe Diōrēs;
hunc Salius *simul et* Patrōn, *quōrum* alter Acarnān,
alter *ab* Arcadiō Tegeaeae *sanguine gentis:*
tum duo Trīnacriī juvenēs, Helymus Panopē*sque,*
adsuētī *silvīs, comitēs* senīōris *Acestae;*
multī praetereā, *quōs fāma* obscūra recondit.

Acarnān, ānis *m.* Acarnanian, of Acarnania in northwestern Greece†
adsuēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus accustom (to)†
alter, era, erum one (of two), the other (of two)*
Arcadius, a, um Arcadian, of Arcadia in southern Greece†
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus surround, gird(le)*
circus, ī *m.* circle, race-course
cōnsessus, ūs *m.* assembly, spectators†
contendō, ere, ī, ntus strive, contend
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus assemble
deinde then, next, after that*
Diōrēs, is *m.* Trojan noble†
duo, ae, o two*
ēgregius, a, um eminent, noble, remarkable
Euryalus, ī *m.* a Trojan†
exstrūctum, ī *n.* mound, raised platform
forma, ae *f.* form, shape, beauty*
Helymus, ī *m.* a Sicilian
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
īnsignis, e distinguished, marked*
invītō (1) invite, summon, induce, tempt†
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
juventa, ae *f.* youth, young manhood
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
Nīsus, ī *m.* a Trojan†
obscūrus, a, um dim, obscure, dusky*
Panopēs, ae *m.* a Sicilian†
Patrōn, ōnis *m.* a Greek†
praemium, (i)ī *n.* prize, reward*
praetereā besides, in addition*
pretium, (i)ī *n.* prize, reward, price
rapidus, a, um swift, speedy, whirling*
recondō, ere, didī, ditus establish, hide
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, princely*
resīdō, ere, sēdī sit (down)
Salius, (i)ī *m.* a Greek†
senex, senis; *comp.* **senior** old, aged*
Sicānus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily†
stirps, is *f.* stock, lineage, race, stem
Tegeaeus, a, um Tegean, of Tegea, a city of Arcadia†
theātrum, trī *n.* theater, grandstand
Trīnacrius, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian
undique on (from) all sides*
vallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

288–289. theātrī circus: the ancient theater was semicircular in shape. Advantage was usually taken of the head of a valley on a curving hillside as a suitable location for placing the seats. **hērōs (Aenēās).**

290. cōnsessū: dat. of purpose, *for an assembly;* or else dat. of direction, *to the assembly.* (in) **exstrūctō:** Aeneas prepares to address the assembly, just as a Roman general was accustomed to speak to his soldiers from a raised platform (agger), usually made by heaping up earth and stones.

291–292. invītat pretiīs animōs (eōrum) quī velint. velint: implied indir. disc.; App. 357. Pope parodies this contest in the *Dunciad,* II, 35 ff.

294. Nīsus et Euryalus: the heroes of one of Vergil's most beautiful episodes (IX, 176 ff.) are very effectively introduced here.

296. puerī: Euryalus. **secūtus (est).**

298. Salius (secūtus est). alter (erat).

Aenēās quibus in mediīs sīc deinde locūtus:
"*Accipite haec animīs laetāsque* advertite *mentēs.*
Nēmō *ex hōc* numerō *mihi nōn* dōnātus abībit.
Gnōsia bīna *dabō* lēvātō lūcida *ferrō*
spīcula caelātam*que* argentō *ferre* bipennem;
omnibus hīc erit ūnus honōs. Trēs praemia *prīmī*
accipient flāvā*que caput* nectentur olīvā.
Prīmus equum phalerīs īnsignem *victor habētō;*
alter Amāzoniam pharetram plēnam*que* sagittīs
Thrēiciīs, lātō *quam circum* amplectitur *aurō*
balteus *et* teretī subnectit fībula gemmā;
tertius Argolicā *hāc* galeā contentus abītō."
Haec ubi dicta, locum capiunt signō*que* repente
corripiunt spatia *audītō līmenque relinquunt,*
effūsī nimbō similēs: *simul* ultima signant.
Prīmus abit longē*que ante omnia corpora* Nīsus

---

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus depart*
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn (to), heed
alter, era, erum one (of two), the other (of two)*
Amāzonius, a, um of the Amazons, a race of warlike women†
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, encircle*
argentum, ī *n.* silver
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
balteus, ī *m.* belt, baldric†
bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos
bipennis, is *f.* two-edged ax
caelō (1) engrave, chase, carve
contentus, a, um content, satisfied†
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch up, speed over*
deinde then, next, thereafter*
dōnō (1) present, give, reward, bestow
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour forth, stream*
fībula, ae *f.* brooch, buckle, clasp
flāvus, a, um yellow(ish), tawny, blond
galea, ae *f.* helmet
gemma, ae *f.* gem, jewel
Gnōs(s)ius, a, um Gnossian, of Gnossus, a Cretan city
īnsignis, e marked, distinguished, noble*
lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious*
lēvō (1) polish, smooth†
longē (from) afar, (by) far*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk*
lūcidus, a, um shining, bright, clear
nectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind, fasten
nēmō, inis *m.* (*f.*) no one, none†
nimbus, ī *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
Nīsus, ī *m.* a Trojan
numerus, ī *m.* number, throng, order*
olīva, ae *f.* olive†
phalerae, ārum *f.* trappings†
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver
plēnus, a, um full, filled, teeming
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
repente suddenly, quickly, unexpectedly
sagitta, ae *f.* arrow, shaft, bolt
signō, (1) mark, observe, note
signum, ī *n.* sign, signal, mark, token*
similis, e like, similar (*dat., gen.*)*
spatium, (i)ī *n.* space, distance, course
spīculum, ī *n.* spear, dart, arrow†
subnectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind (fasten) under
teres, etis smooth, polished, rounded†
tertius, a, um third*
Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace
trēs, tria three*
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*

---

305. mihi: dat. of agent; App. 302.
306. (cuique) **dabō.**
307. ferre: inf. of purpose; App. 261.
308. ūnus = īdem.
309. caput: obj. of the middle verb, **nectentur**; App. 309.
312. lātō aurō: abl. of means.
313. teretī gemmā: abl. of means.
314. galeā: abl. with **contentus**; App. 337. **abītō**: imper.
316. līmen: *the starting point.*
317. ultima (**loca**): *the goal.* **signant** (**oculīs**).

ēmicat *et ventīs et* fulminis ōcior ālīs;
proximus *huic, longō sed* proximus intervallō,
īnsequitur Salius; spatiō post deinde *relictō*
tertius Euryalus;
Euryalum*que* Helymus *sequitur; quō* deinde *sub ipsō*
ecce volat calcem*que* terit *jam* calce Diōrēs
incumbēns *umerō*, spatia *et sī plūra* supersint
trānseat ēlāpsus prior ambiguum*que relinquat.*
Jamque ferē spatiō extrēmō *fessīque sub ipsam*
fīnem adventābant, lēvī *cum sanguine* Nīsus
lābitur īnfēlīx, caesīs *ut forte* juvencīs
fūsus humum viridīs*que super* madefēcerat herbās.
Hīc juvenis *jam victor* ovāns vestīgia pressō
haud tenuit titubāta solō, *sed* prōnus *in ipsō*
concidit immundō*que* fimō *sacrōque* cruōre.
Nōn tamen Euryalī, *nōn ille* oblītus *amōrum:*

---

adventō (1) approach, keep coming nearer†
āla, ae *f.* wing*
ambiguus, a, um doubtful, uncertain
caedō, ere, cecīdi, caesus cut (down), kill
calx, calcis *f.* heel, foot†
concidō, ere, ī fall (in a heap)
cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
deinde then, next, thereafter*
Diōrēs, is *m.* Trojan nobleman
ecce see! look! behold!*
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip out, get ahead
ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus flash forth, dart
Euryalus, ī *m.* a Trojan
extrēmus, a, um final, last, extreme*
ferē almost, about
fimus (um), ī *m.* (*n.*) filth, manure†
fulmen, inis *n.* lightning, thunderbolt*
Helymus, ī *m.* a Sicilian
herba, ae *f.* grass, herb(age), plant*
humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
immundus, a, um filthy, dirty, foul
incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean on, (*dat.*)
īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue*
intervallum, ī *n.* interval, space between†
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) young (man, woman)*
lēvis, e smooth, slippery, polished
madefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus wet, soak†
Nīsus, ī *m.* a Trojan
oblīviscor, ī, lītus forget (*gen.*)
ocior, ius swifter, faster
ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph
post behind, after (*acc.*); afterward*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press*
prior, ius prior, former, first*
prōnus, a, um prone, flat
proximus, a, um next, closest
Salius, (i)ī *m.* a Greek
solum, ī *n.* ground, soil, earth*
spatium, (i)ī *n.* space, distance, course
supersum, esse, fuī remain, be left
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
terō, ere, trīvī, trītus rub, graze
tertius, a, um third*
titubō, (1) totter, stagger, reel†
trānseō, īre, iī (īvī), itus pass by
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, foothold, track*
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*
volō (1) fly, speed, hasten*

---

319. fulminis ālīs: the ancients often represented the thunderbolt as winged.

320. A spondaic line; App. 395.

323. quō sub ipsō: *close upon him.*

324. calcem calce = pedem pede; App. 443.

325–326. supersint: the present here instead of the more usual pluperfect in conditional sentences contrary to fact; App. 382. **trānseat, relinquat:** conclusions contrary to fact.

328. fīnem: irregularly feminine.

330. super: adv. *on the surface.* **fūsus** (erat sanguis).

333. sacrō: *sacrificial.*

334. Nōn (Nīsus oblītus est) Euryalī: gen. with a verb of forgetting; App. 288.

nam sēsē opposuit Saliō *per* lūbrica *surgēns*,
ille autem spissā jacuit revolūtus harēnā:
ēmicat Euryalus *et mūnere victor* amīcī
prīma tenet, plausūque volat fremitūque secundō.
Post Helymus *subit et nunc* tertia palma Diōrēs.
Hīc tōtum caveae cōnsessum *ingentis et ōra*
prīma patrum magnīs Salius *clāmōribus* implet,
ēreptumque dolō reddī *sibi* poscit *honōrem*.
Tūtātur favor Euryalum *lacrimaeque* decōrae,
grātior *et* pulchrō *veniēns in corpore* virtūs.
Adjuvat *et magnā* prōclāmat *vōce* Diōrēs,
quī subiit palmae frūstrāque *ad* praemia *vēnit*
ultima, *sī prīmī* Saliō reddentur *honōrēs*.
Tum pater Aenēās "Vestra" inquit "*mūnera vōbīs*
certa *manent, puerī et* palmam *movet* ordine nēmō;
mē liceat *cāsūs* miserārī īnsontis amīcī."
Sīc fātus tergum Gaetūlī *immāne* leōnis

---

adjuvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, assist†
amīcus, ī *m.* friend, lover, comrade*
autem however, moreover, but*
cavea, ae *f.* hollow, seats (for spectators), grand stand†
certus, a, um fixed, certain, sure, reliable*
cōnsessus, ūs *m.* assembly, spectators
decōrus, a, um beautiful, becoming
Diōrēs, is *m.* Trojan nobleman
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud, trick*
ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus flash forth, dart
Euryalus, ī *m.* a Trojan
favor, ōris *m.* favor, popularity†
fremitus, ūs *m.* shout(ing), roar
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
Gaetūlus, a, um Gaetulian, of Gaetulia in Northwest Africa
grātus, a, um welcome, agreeable
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
Helymus, ī *m.* a Sicilian
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
inquam, is, it say*
īnsōns, ontis innocent, guiltless
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
leō, ōnis *m.* lion
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted, it is allowed *
lūbricus, a, um slippery, smooth, slimy
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate (*gen.*)*
nēmō, inis *m.* (*f.*) no one, none
oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus place in the way of (*dat.*)
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, array*
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
plausus, ūs *m.* clapping, applause
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
post behind, after (*acc.*); later*
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
prōclāmō (1) proclaim, announce†
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious, noble*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, (duly) render, give back*
revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll over, revolve
Salius, (i)ī *m.* a Greek
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
spissus, a, um thick, dense, crowded
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
tertius, a, um third*
tūtor, ārī, ātus protect, guard, defend
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, excellence, courage*
volō (1) fly, speed, hasten*

---

335. lūbrica (loca).
336. ille: Salius.
337. Euryalus: with the last syllables lengthened under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a*.
340–341. ōra prīma patrum: in the Roman theater the front seats were occupied by the senators (**patrēs**) and other distinguished persons.
342. reddī = **ut reddātur.**
345. Adjuvat (Euryalum).
350. liceat: vol.; App. 254.

dat Saliō villīs onerōsum *atque* unguibus aureīs.
Hīc Nīsus "*Sī tanta*" inquit "*sunt* praemia *victīs*,
et tē lāpsōrum miseret, *quae mūnera* Nīsō
digna *dabis*, *prīmam* meruī *quī* laude corōnam
nī *mē*, *quae* Salium, *fortūna* inimīca *tulisset?*"
Et simul hīs dictīs faciem ostentābat *et* ūdō
turpia membra fimō. Rīsit *pater* optimus *ollī*
et clipeum efferrī *jussit*, Didymāonis artīs,
Neptūnī *sacrō Danaīs dē* poste refīxum.
Hōc juvenem ēgregium praestantī *mūnere* dōnat.
Post, *ubi* cōnfectī *cursūs et dōna* perēgit:
"*Nunc, sī cui* virtūs *animusque in pectore* praesēns,
adsit et ēvīnctīs attollat bracchia palmīs."
Sīc ait, et geminum pugnae prōpōnit *honōrem*,

ars, artis *f.* art, skill, workmanship*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* forearm*
clipeus (um), ī *m.* (*n.*) shield, buckler*
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, use up
corōna, ae *f.* crown, wreath, chaplet
Didymāōn, onis *m.* an unknown artist†
dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, seemly
dōnō (1) present, give, bestow, grant
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring forth, raise*
ēgregius, a, um eminent, noble, remarkable
ēvinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, tie
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
fimus (um), ī *m.* (*n.*) filth, manure
inimīcus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
inquam, is, it say*
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
miseret, ēre, uit, itum it distresses (*gen.*)
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
nisi, nī if not, unless, except*
Nīsus, ī *m.* a Trojan
onerōsus, a, um heavy, burdensome†
optimus, a, um best, finest
ostentō (1) keep showing, exhibit, display
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus complete, finish
post behind, after (*acc.*); later*
postis, is *m.* column, post, door, gate
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
praesēns, entis present, ready, prompt
praestāns, antis excellent, surpassing
prōpōnō, ere, posuī, positus set forth, display†
pugna, ae *f.* fight, battle, fray, combat*
refīgō, ere, xī, xus unfasten, take down†
rīdeō, ēre, sī, sus laugh (at), smile
Salius, (i)ī *m.* a Greek
turpis, e shameful, filthy, disgraceful
ūdus, a, um wet, moist, damp†
unguis, is *m.* claw, nail, talon
villus, ī *m.* shaggy hair, tuft, nap
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, excellence, valor*

352. aureīs: two syllables here by synizesis; App. 403.

354. tē lāpsōrum (virōrum): acc. and gen. with a verb of pitying; App. 289. Nīsō = mihi; therefore quī meruī instead of quī meruit.

355–356. meruī, tulisset: mixed condition; App. 382, *d*. nī eadem (inimīca) fortūna, quae Salium (tulit), mē tulisset. tulisset: *had ruined me*.

357. dictīs: abl. of accompaniment with simul; App. 321.

359. artīs: apposition with clipeum.

360. Danaīs: dat. of agent; App. 302. Apparently this shield had been taken by Aeneas as spoils from the Greeks, who had removed (refīxum) it from a temple of Neptune, where it had formerly been dedicated by some worshipper.

363–484. The aged Entellus defeats the youthful boaster, Dares, in boxing.

363. cui (indef.): dat of possession. virtūs (est).

364. adsit: vol. (hortatory); App. 254. ēvīnctīs: i.e., with the caestūs, *boxing gloves*, mentioned in l. 69.

victōrī vēlātum *aurō* vittīs*que* juvencum,
ēnsem *atque* īnsignem galeam sōlācia *victō*.
Nec mora; continuō *vastīs cum vīribus* effert
ōra Darēs *magnōque virum sē* murmure *tollit*,
sōlus quī Paridem solitus contendere contrā,
īdemque ad tumulum *quō maximus* occubat Hector
victōrem Būtēn *immānī corpore, quī sē*
Bebryciā *veniēns* Amycī *dē gente ferēbat*,
perculit *et* fulvā moribundum extendit harēnā.
Tālis prīma Darēs *caput altum in* proelia *tollit*,
ostendit*que umerōs* lātōs alterna*que* jactat
bracchia prōtendēns *et* verberat ictibus *aurās*.
Quaeritur huic alius; nec quisquam *ex agmine tantō*
audet adīre *virum manibusque* indūcere caestūs.
Ergō alacris *cūnctōsque* putāns excēdere palmā
Aenēae stetit ante pedēs, nec plūra morātus

---

adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus approach
alacer (cris), cris, cre eager, elated†
alternus, a, um alternate, in (by) turns†
Amycus, ī *m.* famous boxer†
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
Bebrycia, ae *f.* Bebrycia, a country in Asia Minor†
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* forearm*
Būtēs, ae *m.* famous boxer†
caestus, ūs *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet, made of rawhide wrapped around bits of lead and iron
contendō, ere, ī, ntus struggle, contend
continuō at once, immediately
contrā against, opposite (*acc.*); in reply*
Darēs, (ēt)is *m.* Trojan boxer†
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bear forth, raise*
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, retire
extendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch out, extend†
fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
galea, ae *f.* helmet
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader*
ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw on†
īnsignis, e marked, distinguished, noble*
jactō (1) toss, buffet, swing, strike*
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious*
mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
moribundus, a, um dying, ready to die
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
murmur, is *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
occubō, āre lie (dead, buried)
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display*
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
Paris, idis *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
percellō, ere, culī, culsus strike down†
proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, fight, contest
prōtendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch forth†
putō (1) think, suppose, consider, ponder
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam any(one, thing)
sōlācium, (i)ī *n.* solace, consolation†
soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
vēlō (1) veil, cover, wreathe, clothe
verberō (1) strike, lash, beat, whip
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*

---

366. vēlātum aurō: referring to the custom of gilding the horns of sacrificial victims.

369. vir(ōr)um.

370. Paridem: Paris, the idol of the ladies, was a great athlete.

371–374. ad tumulum: funeral games were celebrated at the tombs of great warriors. **īdem (Darēs) perculit Būtēn, quī veniēns (ex) Bebrycia ferēbat sē (esse) dē gente Amycī. victōrem:** *champion.*

378. huic alius: *another to match him.*

380. alacris: alacer is the more common form of the nom. masc.

tum laevā taurum cornū *tenet atque* ita *fātur:*
"*Nāte deā, sī* nēmō audet *sē* crēdere pugnae,
quae fīnis standī? Quō *mē* decet ūsque *tenērī?*
Dūcere dōna jubē." *Cūnctī simul ōre* fremēbant
Dardanidae reddī*que virō* prōmissa *jubēbant.*

Hīc gravis Entellum *dictīs* castīgat *Acestēs,*
proximus *ut* viridante torō cōnsēderat herbae:
"Entelle, hērōum *quondam* fortissime frūstrā,
tantane tam patiēns *nūllō* certāmine *tollī*
dōna sinēs? *Ubi nunc nōbīs deus ille* (magister
nēquīquam memorātus) Eryx? *Ubi fāma per omnem*
Trīnacriam *et* spolia *illa tuīs* pendentia *tēctīs?*"
Ille sub haec: "*Nōn* laudis *amor nec* glōria cessit
pulsa metū; *sed* enim gelidus tardante senectā
sanguis hebet, frīgent*que* effētae *in corpore vīrēs.*
Sī mihi quae quondam fuerat quāque improbus iste
exsultat fīdēns, *sī nunc foret illa* juventās,

audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
castīgō (1) chastise, rebuke, punish
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, give in*
certāmen, inis *n.* struggle, contest, strife*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down), settle*
cornū, ūs *n.* horn, tip, end
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Trojan, Dardanian
decet, ēre, uit it is fitting, it is proper
effētus, a, um worn out, exhausted†
enim for, truly, indeed*
Entellus, ī *m.* Sicilian boxer†
Eryx, ycis *m.* famous Sicilian boxer, half-brother of Aeneas†
ex(s)ultō (1) exult, vaunt, boast, rejoice
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum trust in) (*dat.*, *abl.*)*
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
fremō, ere, uī, itus rage, roar, shout*
frīgeō, ēre be cold, be stiff, freeze†
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
glōria, ae *f.* fame, glory, reputation
gravis, e heavy, weighty, venerable*
hebeō, ēre be blunt, be sluggish†
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
improbus, a, um shameless, wicked
iste, ta, tud that one (you mention)*
ita thus, so, in this way
juventās, ātis *f.* youth, young manhood†*
laeva, ae *f.* left hand*
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
magister, trī *m.* master, trainer, chief
memorō (1) recount, recall, celebrate*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
nēmō, inis *m.* (*f.*) no one, none
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
patiēns, entis patient, calm, enduring
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus strike, drive (out)
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, depend*
prōmissum, ī *n.* promise, agreement
proximus, a, um next, closest, nearest
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
quō . . . ūsque = quoūsque how long, to what extent†
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give (back), render (duly)*
senecta, ae *f.* old age, eld, senility†
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs allow, permit*
spolium, (i)ī *n.* spoils, trophy, plunder
tam so, to such an extent, such*
tardō (1) hinder, check, retard, impede†
taurus, ī *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
torus, ī *m.* couch, bank*
Trīnacria, ae *f.* Sicily
ūsque *see* quō . . . ūsque†
viridāns, antis green, flourishing†

384. fīnis: more commonly *mas.* Quō . . . ūsque = quoūsque: an example of what is known as tmesis; App. 445.

385. jubē (mē) dūcere dōna.

391–392. Ubi nōbīs (est) ille deus Eryx, memorātus nēquīquam (tuus) magister? Ubi (est) fāma? nōbīs: ethical dat.; App. 300.

393. spolia: won in boxing contests.

397. Sī mihi (foret illa juventās), quae quondam fuerat. quā: abl. of cause. improbus iste: *that braggart* = Dares.

haud equidem pretiō inductus pulchrō*que* juvencō
vēnissem, nec dōna moror." *Sīc* deinde locūtus
in medium *geminōs immānī* pondere caestūs
prōjēcit, *quibus* ācer Eryx *in* proelia suētus
ferre manum dūrō*que* intendere bracchia tergō.
Obstipuēre *animī: tantōrum ingentia* septem
terga boum plumbō īnsūtō *ferrō*que rigēbant.
Ante omnīs stupet *ipse* Darēs longē*que* recūsat,
magnanimus*que* Anchīsiadēs *et* pondus *et ipsa*
hūc illūc vinclōrum immēnsa volūmina versat.
Tum senior *tālīs referēbat pectore vōcēs:*
"*Quid, sī quis* caestūs *ipsīus et* Herculis *arma*
vīdisset trīstemque hōc ipsō in lītore pugnam?
Haec germānus Eryx *quondam tuus arma* gerēbat
(*sanguine cernis* adhūc sparsō*que* īnfecta cerebrō),
hīs magnum Alcīden contrā *stetit, hīs ego* suētus,

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
adhūc to this point, thus far, still, yet
Alcīdēs, ae *m.* descendant of Alceus, Hercules†
Anchīsiadēs, ae *m.* descendant of Anchises, Aeneas†
bōs, bovis *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* forearm*
caestus, ūs *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
cerebrum, ī *n.* brain†
contrā against, opposite (*acc.*)*
Darēs, (ēt)is *m.* Trojan boxer
deinde then, next, thereupon*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
Eryx, ycis *m.* Sicilian boxer, half-brother of Aeneas
germānus, ī *m.* brother*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on), wear*
Herculēs, is *m.* god of strength, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, noted for his twelve labors
illūc thither, in that direction
immēnsus, a, um boundless, vast
indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead on, draw on
īnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus taint, stain†
īnsuō, ere, uī, ūtus sew in†
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch (out)
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
longē (from) afar*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk*
magnanimus, a, um great-souled
medium, (i)ī *n.* middle, midst, center
moror, ārī, ātus delay, care for, hinder*
obstipēscō, ere, puī be amazed*
plumbum, ī *n.* lead†
pondus, eris *n.* weight, burden, mass
pretium, (i)ī *n.* prize, reward, price
proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, fight, contest
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw forward
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious*
recūsō (1) decline, refuse, recoil, be reluctant
rigeō, ēre, uī be stiff, be rigid
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire
septem seven
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
stupeō, ēre, uī be amazed
suēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus be(come) accustomed
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide; boxing glove*
versō (1) roll, revolve, keep turning
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, fastening*
volūmen, inis *n.* coil, fold, roll

---

402. **suētus** (erat).
409. **senior**: Entellus.
410. **ipsīus Herculis**: *of Hercules himself.* The **et** connects **caestūs** and **arma.**
411. **trīstem pugnam**: because Eryx was killed in it.
412. **germānus tuus**: he is speaking to Aeneas.
413. **sanguine, cerebrō**: of men he had killed in his day.
414. **Alcīdēn**: the form **Herculēn** (– ◡ –) could not be used in dactylic hexameter. **suētus (eram pugnāre,** *to fight*).

dum melior *vīrīs sanguis dabat*, aemula necdum
temporibus *geminīs* cānēbat sparsa senectūs.
Sed sī nostra Darēs *haec* Trōius *arma* recūsat
idque piō sedet *Aenēae*, probat auctor *Acestēs*,
aequēmus pugnās. Erycis *tibi* terga remittō
(solve metūs), *et tū* Trojānōs exue caestūs."
Haec fātus duplicem *ex umerīs* rejēcit amictum
et magnōs membrōrum artūs, *magna* ossa lacertōs*que*
exuit *atque ingēns mediā* cōnsistit harēnā.
Tum satus *Anchīsā* caestūs *pater* extulit aequōs
et paribus palmās ambōrum innexuit *armīs*.
Cōnstitit *in* digitōs extemplō arrēctus uterque
bracchia*que ad superās* interritus extulit *aurās*.
Abdūxēre retrō longē *capita* ardua *ab* ictū
immiscent*que manūs manibus* pugnam*que* lacessunt,
ille pedum melior mōtū frētus*que* juventā,

abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus withdraw
aemulus, a, um emulous, jealous
aequō (1) equal(ize), match, even*
aequus, a, um equal, even, just, fair
ambō, ae, ō both
amictus, ūs *m.* cloak, wrap, mantle
arduus, a, um lofty, upraised, steep*
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, lift
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, member*
auctor, ōris *m.* author, backer, founder
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* forearm*
caestus, ūs *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
cāneō, ēre, uī be white (gray, hoary)†
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)*
Darēs, (ēt)is *m.* Trojan boxer
digitus, ī *m.* finger, toe†
duplex, icis double, twofold
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring forth, raise*
Eryx, ycis *m.* Sicilian boxer, half-brother of Aeneas
extemplō suddenly, immediately, forthwith
exuō, ere, uī, ūtus doff, bare, remove
frētus, a, um depending on (*abl.*)
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle
innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind, fasten
interritus, a, um undaunted, fearless†
juventa, ae *f.* youth, young manhood
lacertus, ī *m.* upper arm
lacessō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus provoke†
longē (from) afar, far (away)*
melior, ius better, superior, preferable
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
mōtus, ūs *m.* movement, motion, agility
necdum not yet
os, ossis *n.* bone*
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
pār, paris equal, like, similar*
probō (1) test, try, prove, approve
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
recūsō (1) decline, refuse, recoil, be reluctant
rejiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw back†
remittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, give up
retrō back(ward), again
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle; suit*
senectūs, ūtis *f.* old age, eld, senility†
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), dismiss*
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide; boxing glove*
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*

415. aemula: *jealous* of my youthful strength.

418. Aenēae: dat. of reference.

419. tibi: dat. of reference. **terga** = **caestūs.**

421. rejēcit: pronounce **rejjēcit** here, making the first syllable long by position.

422. lacertōsque: hypermetric; App. 402.

424. Anchīsā: abl. of source; App. 323.

426. in digitōs (pedum), *on their toes.*

429. They begin by sparring.

430–431. ille, hic: *the former* (**Dares**), *the latter* (**Entellus**).

hic membrīs *et* mōle valēns; *sed* tarda trementī
genua labant, *vastōs* quatit aeger anhēlitus artūs.
Multa virī nēquīquam *inter sē* vulnera jactant,
multa cavō laterī ingeminant *et pectore vastōs*
dant sonitūs, *erratque* aurīs *et* tempora *circum*
crēbra *manus*, dūrō crepitant *sub* vulnere mālae.
Stat gravis Entellus nīsū*que* immōtus *eōdem*
corpore tēla modo *atque oculīs* vigilantibus exit.
Ille, velut celsam oppugnat *quī* mōlibus *urbem*
aut montāna sedet *circum* castella *sub armīs*,
nunc hōs, *nunc illōs* aditūs, *omnemque* pererrat
arte *locum et* variīs adsultibus inritus urget.
Ostendit *dextram* īnsurgēns Entellus *et* altē
extulit: *ille* ictum *venientem ā* vertice vēlōx
praevīdit celerī*que* ēlāpsus *corpore* cessit;
Entellus *vīrīs in ventum* effūdit *et* ultrō

---

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, access
adsultus, ūs *m.* assault, attack†
aeger, gra, grum sick, painful, weary*
altē (on) high, loftily
anhēlitus, ūs *m.* panting, gasping
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, stratagem, cunning*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, member*
auris, is *f.* ear*
castellum, ī *n.* fort, castle, fastness†
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, withdraw*
celer, eris, ere quick, swift, speedy, fast*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
crēber, bra, brum frequent, repeated*
crepitō (1) rattle, crash, rustle
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring forth, lift*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip (out, aside)
Entellus, ī *m.* Sicilian boxer
exeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus go out, escape
genū, ūs *n.* knee
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable
ingeminō (1) (re)double, repeat, reiterate
inritus, a, um useless, ineffectual
īnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise (on)
jactō (1) toss, hurl, buffet, fling*
labō (1) totter, stagger, waver
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
māla, ae *f.* jaw
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
modo only, (just) now
mōlēs, is *f.* mass, bulk; war engine*
montānus, a, um mountain(ous)
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
nīsus, ūs *m.* effort, strain, po(i)se
oppugnō (1) attack, storm, assault†*
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display*
pererrō (1) wander over, survey, traverse
praevideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus foresee†
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle; encamp*
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, noise, roar
tardus, a, um slow, late, lazy, retarded
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
tremō, ere, uī tremble, shake, quaver*
ultrō further, voluntarily*
urgeō, ēre, ursī press (hard), push, urge
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able
varius, a, um varying, different, diverse*
vēlōx, ōcis swift, quick, fleet, fast
velut(ī) as, just as*
vertex, icis *m.* summit, head, top, peak*
vigilāns, antis watchful, watching
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

431. (eī) trementī: dat. of reference.
432. genua: pronounce as two syllables here, genva; App. 401.
434. multa (vulnera).
439. An attempt to capture a city by assault. Ille: Dares.
440. Siege operations.
444. ā vertice: *from above.*

THE VENUS OF MELOS

Louvre

Alinari, Rome *Vatican Museum*

APOLLO OF THE BELVEDERE

On his back, a quiver full of arrows. His right hand draws back the string, and with his left he holds his bow.

ipse gravis graviter*que ad terram* pondere *vastō*
concidit, *ut quondam* cava concidit *aut* Erymanthō
aut Īdā *in magnā* rādīcibus ēruta pīnus.
Cōnsurgunt studiīs *Teucrī et* Trīnacria pūbēs;
it clāmor caelō prīmusque accurrit *Acestēs*
aequaevum*que ab* humō miserāns attollit amīcum.
At nōn tardātus *cāsū neque* territus hērōs
ācrior *ad* pugnam redit *ac vim* suscitat *īra;*
tum pudor incendit *vīrīs et* cōnscia virtūs,
praecipitem*que* Darēn *ardēns agit aequore tōtō*
nunc dextrā ingemināns ictūs, *nunc ille* sinistrā.
Nec mora *nec* requiēs: quam *multā* grandine nimbī
culminibus crepitant, *sīc* dēnsīs ictibus hērōs
crēber utrāque *manū* pulsat versat*que* Darēta.

Tum pater Aenēās prōcēdere longius *īrās*
et saevīre *animīs* Entellum *haud* passus acerbīs,

---

accurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run up†
ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
acerbus, a, um bitter, harsh, sad
aequaevus, a, um equal-aged, of the same age
amīcus, ī *m.* friend, lover, comrade*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
concidō, ere, ī fall (in a heap)
cōnscius, a, um conscious, aware
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise
crēber, bra, brum frequent, incessant*
crepitō (1) rattle, crash, rustle
culmen, inis *n.* peak, summit, roof, top*
Darēs, (ēt)is, *acc.* ēn (ēta), *m.* Trojan boxer
dēnsus, a, um thick, frequent, constant*
Entellus, ī *m.* Sicilian boxer
ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, ruin
Erymanthus, ī *m.* Greek mountain†
grandō, inis *f.* hail(stone, storm)
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
graviter heavily, grievously, seriously
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
Īda, ae *f.* mountain near Troy
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, burn*
ingeminō (1) (re)double, repeat, reiterate
longē far, (from) afar*
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
nimbus, ī *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
patior, ī, passus endure, suffer, allow*
pīnus, ūs (ī) *f.* pine tree
pondus, eris *n.* weight, burden, mass
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance
pūbēs, is *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
pudor, ōris *m.* (sense of) shame, honor
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, throb
quam how, than, as*
rādīx, īcis *f.* root
redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus return
requiēs, ētis (ēī) *f.* rest, respite, repose
saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus rage, storm
sinister, tra, trum left (hand)
studium, (i)ī *n.* desire, zeal, eagerness
suscitō (1) (a)rouse, stir up
tardō (1) check, hinder, retard
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
Trīnacrius, a, um Sicilian
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*
versō (1) keep turning, spin, revolve
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, excellence, valor*

448–449. cava pīnus. (in) **Erymanthō. rādīcibus:** abl. of separation.

451. caelō = ad *caelum*: dat. of direction; App. 306.

456. aequore: *over the plain;* abl. of route; App. 338. **Darēn:** acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

458. quam multā grandine: *as thick as the hail.*

460. Darēta: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

sed fīnem imposuit pugnae *fessumque* Darēta
ēripuit mulcēns *dictīs ac tālia fātur:*
"*Īnfēlīx, quae tanta animum* dēmentia *cēpit?*
Nōn vīrīs aliās conversa*que nūmina* sentīs?
Cēde *deō.*" *Dīxitque et* proelia *vōce* dirēmit.
Ast illum fīdī aequālēs genua aegra *trahentem*
jactantem*que* utrōque *caput* crassum*que* cruōrem
ōre ējectantem mixtōs*que in sanguine* dentēs
dūcunt ad nāvīs; galeam*que* ēnsem*que vocātī*
accipiunt, palmam Entellō taurum*que relinquunt.*
Hīc victor superāns *animīs* taurō*que* superbus
"*Nāte deā, vōsque haec*" inquit "cognōscite, *Teucrī,*
et mihi quae fuerint juvenālī *in corpore vīrēs*
et quā servētis revocātum *ā morte* Darēta."
Dīxit, et adversī contrā *stetit ōra* juvencī
quī dōnum astābat pugnae, dūrōs*que* reductā
lībrāvit *dextrā media inter* cornua caestūs
arduus, effrāctō*que* inlīsit *in* ossa cerebrō:
sternitur exanimis*que* tremēns prōcumbit hūmī bōs.

---

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
aeger, gra, grum sick, painful, weary*
aequālis, is *m.* (*f.*) comrade, mate
arduus, a, um high, upraised, steep*
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (near, by)*
bōs, bovis *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow
caestus, ūs *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, retire*
cerebrum, ī *n.* brain
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus learn, recognize; *perf.* know
contrā against, opposite (*acc.*)*
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change
cornū, ūs *n.* horn, tip, end
crassus, a, um thick, clotted, coarse†
cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
Darēs, (ēt)is, *acc.* **ēn (ēta),** *m.* Trojan boxer
dēmentia, ae *f.* madness, folly, frenzy†
dēns, dentis *m.* tooth
dīrimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus separate, end†
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
effringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus shatter†
ējectō (1) cast out, vomit, eject†
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
Entellus, ī *m.* Sicilian boxer
exanimis, e breathless, lifeless
fīdus, a, um faithful, safe, trusty*
galea, ae *f.* helmet
genū, ūs *n.* knee
humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place (on) (*dat.*)*
inlīdō, ere, sī, sus strike in, dash (in, on)
inquam, is, it say*
jactō (1) toss, hurl, buffet, fling*
juvenālis, e youthful, young
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
librō (1) poise, balance, brandish†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus soothe, calm, allay
os, ossis *n.* bone*
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus sink forward, fall; recline
proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, fight, contest
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw back
revocō (1) recall, call back, restore
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay (low), fell*
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
superō (1) surpass, win, triumph*
taurus, ī *m.* bull, ox, bullock*
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
utrōque to each side, from side to side†

---

466. conversa nūmina: the gods have deserted you and are on the side of Entellus, to whom they have given new strength (**aliās vīrēs**).

473. taurō: abl. of cause.

481. The monosyllabic ending suggests the thud of the falling animal.

Ille super tālīs effundit *pectore vōcēs:*
"*Hanc tibi,* Eryx, meliōrem *animam* prō *morte* Darētis
persolvō; *hīc victor* caestūs artem*que* repōnō."
Prōtinus *Aenēās* celerī certāre sagittā
invītat *quī forte velint et* praemia *dīcit,*
ingentīque manū mālum *dē nāve* Serestī
ērigit *et* volucrem trājectō *in* fūne columbam,
quō tendant ferrum, mālō suspendit *ab altō.*
Convēnēre *virī* dējectam*que* aerea sortem
accēpit galea; *et prīmus clāmōre* secundō
Hyrtacidae *ante omnīs* exit *locus* Hippocoöntis;
quem modo nāvālī Mnēstheus certāmine *victor*
cōnsequitur, viridī Mnēstheus ēvīnctus olīvā.
Tertius Eurytiōn, *tuus, Ō* clārissime, frāter,

---

aereus, a, um bronze, bronze-clad
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, stratagem, cunning*
caestus, ūs *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet*
certāmen, inis *n.* contest, struggle*
certō (1) struggle, compete, contest, vie
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
columba, ae *f.* dove, pigeon
cōnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus assemble
Darēs, (ēt)is, *acc.* **ēn (ēta),** *m.* Trojan boxer
dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast (down)
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus erect, raise
Eryx, ycis *m.* Sicilian boxer, half-brother of Aeneas
Eurytiōn, ōnis *m.* Lycian archer, ally of the Trojans†
ēvinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, wreathe
exeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus go forth, escape
frāter, tris *m.* brother*
fūnis, is *m.* rope, cord, cable
galea, ae *f.* helmet
Hippocoōn, ontis *m.* Trojan archer†
Hyrtacidēs, ae *m.* son of Hyrtacus, a Trojan†
invītō (1) invite, challenge, summon, induce
mālus, ī *m.* mast, staff, pole†
melior, ius better, preferable, superior*
Mnēstheus, eī (eos) *m.* Trojan leader*
modo only, (just) now
nāvālis, e naval, of the ships
olīva, ae *f.* olive
persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus pay (fully), render
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize, premium*
prō before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
prōtinus immediately, continuously
repōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay down, resign*
sagitta, ae *f.* arrow, bolt, shaft
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
Serestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus suspend*
tertius, a, um third*
trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus pass (through, across, over, around)
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*
volucer, cris, cre winged, fleet, swift*

---

483. meliōrem: as a more acceptable offering to the god than would be the life of a man.

485–544. Eurytion is first in archery, but the first prize is awarded to Acestes, on account of his age and dignity and because his arrow shot at random into the sky miraculously took fire and left behind a trail of light.

486. invītat (eōs) quī velint: implied indir. disc.; App. 357.

488. trājectō: *thrown over* (the mast).

489. quō tendant ferrum (= sagittam): rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

490. sortem: the lots were placed in a helmet which was then shaken. The order in which the lots fell out of the helmet determined the order in which the contestants were to try their skill.

491–492. prīmus exit locus: Hippocoön's lot was the first to fall out.

493. victor: he had won second place.

Pandare, *quī quondam jussus* cōnfundere foedus
in mediōs tēlum torsistī *prīmus* Achīvōs.
Extrēmus galeā*que īmā* subsēdit *Acestēs*,
ausus *et ipse manū* juvenum temptāre *labōrem*.
Tum validīs flexōs incurvant *vīribus* arcūs
prō *sē* quisque *virī et* dēprōmunt *tēla* pharetrīs,
prīmaque per caelum nervō strīdente sagitta
Hyrtacidae juvenis volucrīs dīverberat *aurās*,
et venit adversī*que* īnfīgitur arbore mālī.
Intremuit mālus timuit*que* exterrita pennīs
āles, *et ingentī* sonuērunt *omnia* plausū.
Post ācer Mnēstheus adductō cōnstitit arcū
alta *petēns*, pariter*que oculōs tēlumque tetendit*.
Ast ipsam miserandus avem contingere *ferrō*
nōn valuit; nōdōs *et* vincula līnea rūpit

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
Achīvus, a, um Achaean, Greek
addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw (to)
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
āles, itis *m.* (*f.*) bird, fowl
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); the height, heaven
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree, wood(s)*
arcus, ūs *m.* bow, arch, arc*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
avis, is *f.* bird, fowl
cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus confuse, shatter
cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand (fast)
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach*
dēprōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus draw forth†
dīverberō (1) strike apart, divide, cleave, cut†
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme*
flectō, ere, flexī, flexus curve, bend
foedus, eris *n.* treaty, agreement, truce
galea, ae *f.* helmet
Hyrtacidēs, ae *m.* son of Hyrtacus, a Trojan archer
incurvō (1) bend, arch, curve†
īnfīgō, ere, xī, xus fasten in, impale
intremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake†
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
līneus, a, um of linen, flaxen†
mālus, ī *m.* mast, staff, pole
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
Mnēstheus, eī (eos) *m.* Trojan leader*
nervus, ī *m.* tendon, bowstring†
nōdus, ī *m.* knot, fold, coil
Pandarus, ī *m.* Lycian archer, ally of the Trojans. While a truce was being arranged between the Greeks and Trojans he was instigated by Minerva to wound Menelaüs, thus breaking the truce†
pariter equally, side by side*
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver
plausus, ūs *m.* clapping, applause
post after, behind (*acc.*); later*
prō before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) each (one), every (one)
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
sagitta, ae *f.* arrow, bolt, shaft
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī hiss, whir, buzz, crash
subsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus subside, remain†
temptō (1) try, test, attempt; examine*
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, whirl, shoot*
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able
validus, a, um strong, mighty, stout
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* fastening, band, cord*
volucer, cris, cre winged, swift, fleet

496. jussus (ā Minervā).

498. Acestēs = sors Acestae. Acestes's lot came out last.

499. et ipse: in spite of the fact that he was well advanced in years (**aevī mātūrus**, of l. 73).

501. quisque prō sē: *each for himself*, quisque being in partitive apposition with virī.

505. timuit pennīs: *fluttered its wings in terror (feared by flapping its wings).*

508. alta petēns: *aiming aloft.*

quīs innexa *pedem* mālō pendēbat *ab altō;*
illa Notōs *atque alta* volāns *in* nūbila *fūgit.*
Tum rapidus, jamdūdum arcū contenta *parātō*
tēla tenēns, frātrem Eurytiōn *in* vōta *vocāvit,*
jam vacuō *laetam caelō* speculātus *et* ālīs
plaudentem nigrā fīgit *sub* nūbe columbam.
Dēcidit exanimis *vītamque relīquit in* astrīs
aetheriīs fīxam*que refert* dēlāpsa sagittam.
Āmissā *sōlus* palmā superābat *Acestēs,*
qui tamen āeriās *tēlum* contorsit *in aurās*
ostentāns artem*que pater* arcum*que* sonantem.
Hīc oculīs subitum objicitur *magnōque futūrum*
auguriō mōnstrum; docuit post exitus *ingēns*
sēra*que* terrificī cecinērunt ōmina *vātēs.*
Namque volāns liquidīs *in* nūbibus *arsit* harundō
signāvit*que viam flammīs* tenuīs*que* recessit

āerius, a, um airy, lofty, towering
aetherius, a, um of the upper air, ethereal
āla, ae *f.* wing*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
arcus, ūs *m.* bow, arch, arc*
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, stratagem, cunning*
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
augurium, (i)ī *n.* omen, portent, augury
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, predict, proclaim*
columba, ae *f.* dove, pigeon
contendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, aim, strive
contorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, whirl, shoot
dēcidō, ere, ī fall, drop†
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide down, descend
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
Eurytiōn, ōnis *m.* Lycian archer, brother of Pandarus, ally of Troy
exanimis, e breathless, lifeless
exitus, ūs *m.* outcome, result
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, pierce, imprint*
frāter, tris *m.* brother*
harundō, inis *f.* reed, arrow, shaft
innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus tie, fasten
jamdūdum long since, for some time
liquidus, a, um liquid, fluid, clear
mālus, ī *m.* mast, staff, pole
mōnstrum, ī *n.* portent, monster, sign*
niger, gra, grum black, dusky*
Notus, ī *m.* (south) wind
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
nūbila, ōrum *n.* clouds, cloudiness
objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus oppose (to), present (to)
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, portent, token*
ostentō (1) exhibit, show, display, parade
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang*
plaudō, ere, sī, sus clap, flap†
post after, behind (*acc.*); later*
rapidus, a, um swift, quick, whirling*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, disappear
sagitta, ae *f.* arrow, bolt, shaft
sērus, a, um (too) late, tardy
signō (1) mark, observe, note, notice
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
speculor, ārī, ātus spy (out), watch
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
superō (1) surmount, surpass, remain*
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
tenuis, e thin, slight, fine, delicate
terrificus, a, um terrifying, diref†
vacuus, a, um empty, free, vacant
volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

511. quīs = **quibus**: App. 109, *c.* **pedem**: obj. of the middle part. **innexa**; App. 309, *a.*

512. (in) **Notōs.**

514. tēla: poetic plural. **frātrem**: Pandarus, patron saint of archery.

513. fīxam (in corpore). **refert** (ad terram).

521. pater: with the final syllable lengthened under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a.*

522–523. mōnstrum subitum futūrumque magnō augurīō.

523. augurīō: dat. of purpose; App. 303. **post**: adv., *afterward.*

524. sēra: *the seers chanted forth the*

cōnsūmpta *in ventōs: caelō* ceu saepe refīxa
trānscurrunt crīnem*que* volantia *sīdera dūcunt.*
Attonitīs haesēre *animīs superōsque* precātī
Trīnacriī *Teucrīque virī, nec maximus* ōmen
abnuit *Aenēās, sed laetum* amplexus *Acestēn*
mūneribus cumulat *magnīs ac tālia fātur;*
"Sūme, *pater: nam tē voluit rēx magnus* Olympī
tālibus auspiciīs exsortem *dūcere honōrēs.*
Ipsius Anchīsae longaevī *hoc mūnus habēbis,*
crātēra impressum signīs, *quem* Thrācius ōlim
Anchīsae genitōrī in magnō mūnere Cisseus
ferre suī dederat monimentum *et* pignus *amōris.*"
Sīc fātus cingit viridantī tempora laurō
et prīmum ante omnīs victōrem appellat *Acestēn.*
Nec bonus Eurytiōn praelātō invīdit *honōrī,*

abnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod dissent, deny, reject
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold*
appellō (1) name, call, address, proclaim†
attonō, āre, uī, itus stupefy, astound
auspicium, (i)ī *n.* auspice, omen, sign
bonus, a, um good(ly), kind(ly), noble*
ceu as, just as
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, encircle*
Cisseus, eī *m.* king of Thrace and father of Hecuba, wife of Priam†
cōnsūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus consume
crātēr, ēris, *acc.* **ēra,** *m.* mixing bowl
crīnis, is *m.* hair, (flowing) train, locks*
cumulō (1) heap up, load (down), increase
Eurytiōn, ōnis *m.* Lycian archer, ally of Troy
exsors, rtis choice, special, exempt from lot†
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling to (*dat.*); halt, be amazed*
imprimō, ere, pressī, pressus impress, embrace
invideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus begrudge, envy (*dat.*)*
laurus, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel
longaevus, a, um aged, long-lived
monimentum (monumentum) ī *n.* reminder, memorial
ōlim formerly, once, at some time*
Olympus, ī *m.* high mountain in Thessaly, home of the gods, heaven
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, portent, token*
pignus, oris *n.* pledge, token, proof
praeferō, ferre, tulī, lātus prefer†
precor, ārī, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
refīgō, ere, xī, xus unfasten. The ancients thought stars were fixed, a belief perpetuated in the term *fixed stars.*
saepe often, frequently*
signum, ī *n.* sign, figure, mark, carving*
sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take, use, select
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
Thrācius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace†
trānscurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run across†
Trīnacrius, a, um Sicilian
viridāns, antis green, verdant, flourishing
volō, (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

omens (*interpretation*) *late;* i.e., after the event had taken place. It is uncertain to what event the poet here refers.

527. (dē) caelō.

530–531. nec ōmen abnuit: the Romans immediately accepted omens which they thought were good, by saying, "Ōmen accipiō." They refused to accept those which they considered of evil portent. By this method they hoped to secure the advantages and avoid the disadvantages of the various prodigies sent as signs by the gods. **laetum:** apparently Acestes also considers it a good omen.

534. exsortem: a term applied to a part of the booty excepted from the general distribution by lot (**sors**) and bestowed upon some warrior who had especially distinguished himself.

538. ferre: inf. of purpose; App. 261. **suī:** obj. gen. with **monimentum;** App. 284.

539. tempora (Acestae).

541. Nec praelātō invīdit honōrī: bo-

quamvīs *sōlus* avem *caelō* dējēcit *ab altō*.
Proximus ingreditur *dōnīs quī* vincula rūpit,
extrēmus volucrī *quī* fīxit harundine mālum.
At pater Aenēās nōndum certāmine *missō*
custōdem *ad sēsē comitemque* impūbis Iūlī
Ēpytidēn *vocat, et* fīdam *sīc fātur ad* aurem:
"Vāde *age et* Ascaniō, *sī jam* puerīle *parātum*
agmen habet sēcum cursūsque īnstrūxit *equōrum,*
dūcat avō turmās *et sēsē* ostendat *in armīs*
dīc" *ait. Ipse omnem longō* discēdere circō
īnfūsum populum *et campōs jubet esse* patentīs.
Incēdunt *puerī* pariter*que ante ōra parentum*
frēnātīs lūcent *in equīs, quōs omnis euntīs*
Trīnacriae mīrāta fremit *Trojaeque* juventūs.
Omnibus in mōrem tōnsā coma pressa corōnā;

Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
auris, is *f.* ear*
avis, is *f.* bird, fowl
avus, ī *m.* grandfather, ancestor
certāmen, inis *n.* contest, struggle*
circus, ī *m.* circle, race course, circuit
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
corōna, ae *f.* wreath, garland, crown
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus strike down
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw
Ēpytidēs, ae *m.* son of Epytus, a Trojan†
extrēmus, a, um final, last, extreme*
fīdus, a, um faithful, safe, trusty*
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, pierce, imprint*
fremō, ere, uī, itus roar, applaud*
frēnō (1) bridle, curb, check, restrain
harundō, inis *f.* reed, arrow (shaft)
impūbēs, is youthful, boyish†
incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance, stride
īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour in
ingredior, ī, gressus advance, enter
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus array, arrange, equip
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men*
lūceō, ēre, lūxī shine, glisten, gleam†
mālus, ī *m.* mast, staff, pole
mīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
nōndum not yet
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, exhibit*
pariter equally, evenly, side by side*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press*
proximus, a, um next, closest
puerīlis, e boyish, of boys†
quamvīs although, as (much as) you wish
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear, clip
Trīnacria, ae *f.* Sicily
turma, ae *f.* band, troop, company†
vādō, ere go (on), proceed
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, fastening, cable*
volucer, cris, cre winged, swift; fleet*

---

grudged not the honor (to Acestes) preferred (to his own).

543. **dōnīs**: abl. of respect with **proximus**; App. 325.

545–603. Ascanius and the noblest of the Trojan youth stage equestrian games and a sham battle in honor of the sainted Anchises.

547. **fīdam ad aurem**: *secretly.* Aeneas plans a surprise for the spectators.

548–551. **Ascaniō dīc**: observe the shorter form of the imperatives, **dīc, dūc, fac, fer**; App. 202. **(ut) dūcat, (ut) ostendat**: indir. commands; App. 390. **avō (Anchīsae)**: dat. of reference, *in honor of his grandfather.* **Ipse (Aenēās)**: see note on I, 42. **longō circō**: the space cleared was oblong, not round.

554–555. **quōs euntīs**: obj. of **mīrāta**. **omnis juventūs**.

556. **in mōrem = dē mōre**: *according to custom.* Vergil is here representing that this sport (the **Lūdus Trojae**), which was an annual affair at Rome in his own day, was of great and revered antiquity. See the note on **Iliacis lūdis, III, 280.** **pressa (est)**.

cornea bīna *ferunt* praefīxa hastīlia *ferrō*,
pars lēvīs *umerō* pharetrās; *it pectore summō*
flexilis obtortī *per* collum circulus *aurī*.
Trēs equitum numerō turmae ternī*que* vagantur
ductōrēs; *puerī* bis sēnī quemque *secūtī*
agmine partītō fulgent paribus*que* magistrīs.
Ūna aciēs juvenum, *dūcit quam* parvus ovantem
nōmen avī *referēns* Priamus, *tua* clāra, Polītē,
prōgeniēs, auctūra Italōs; *quem* Thrācius albīs
portat *equus* bicolor maculīs, vestīgia *prīmī*
alba *pedis* frontem*que* ostentāns arduus albam.
Alter Atys, *genus* unde Atiī *dūxēre* Latīnī,
parvus Atys *puerō*que *puer* dīlēctus Iūlō.

---

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge, battle-line, army*
albus, a, um white*
alter, era, erum the other (of two), the one (of two)*
arduus, a, um high, lofty, steep*
Atius, (i)ī *m.* famous Roman family†
Atys, yos *m.* a Trojan†
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus increase, magnify†
avus, ī *m.* grandfather, ancestor
bicolor, ōris dappled, of two colors†
bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos
bis twice*
circulus, ī *m.* circlet, necklace†
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
collum, ī *n.* neck*
corneus, a, um of cornel wood, cornel
dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus love, cherish
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, guide, chief
eques, itis *m.* horseman, knight
flexilis, e pliant, flexible†
frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, brow*
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsī gleam, glitter, shine
hastīle, is *n.* spear(shaft)
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
Latīnus, a, um Latin, of Latium, Roman
lēvis, e smooth, polished, slippery
macula, ae *f.* spot, stain, splotch
magister, trī *m.* master, trainer, chief
numerus, ī *m.* number, throng, order*
obtorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist†
ostentō (1) show, display, exhibit, parade
ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph
pār, paris equal, similar, like, even; pair*
partior, īrī, ītus divide, part, distribute
parvus, a, um small, little*
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver
Polītēs, ae *m.* Trojan leader, legendary founder of Politorium, an Italian city
portō (1) bear, carry, convey, bring*
praefīgō, ere, xī, xus tip, point†
Priamus, ī *m.* a Trojan, grandson of Priam, king of Troy†
prōgeniēs, ēī *f.* progeny, descendant
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) each (one)
sēnī, ae, a six (each), by sixes
ternī, ae, a three (each), by threes
Thrācius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace
trēs, tria three*
turma, ae *f.* band, troop, company
unde whence, from which source*
vagor, ārī, ātus wander, roam, stray
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* foot(print), step, track*

557–558. (pars) ferunt, pars (ferunt). **pectore summō**: *at their throats;* abl. of place; App. 319, 246.

559. per = circum.

560. turmae equitum (sunt) trēs numerō: abl. of respect; App. 325.

561. quemque (ductōrem). bis sēnī: thus making thirty-six boys, in addition to their three leaders.

562. magistrīs: the ductōrēs of l. 561. **agmine partītō** (in trīs turmās).

563. aciēs (est).

564. Polītē: voc., a Greek form; App. 66.

565. auctūra Italōs: by his descendants and great achievements. According to legend, the Italian city Politorium was founded by Polites.

566–567. prīmī pedis: *the first* (*part*) *of the foot*, just above the hoof; App. 246.

568. Alter (ductor est) Atys. Atys, Atiī: more fanciful etymologizing.

569. puerōque puer dīlēctus Iūlō: a fine touch of the poet in representing

Extrēmus formā*que ante omnīs* pulcher Iūlus
Sīdoniō *est* invectus *equō, quem* candida *Dīdō*
esse suī dederat monimentum *et* pignus *amōris.*
Cētera Trīnacriīs pūbēs seniōris *Acestae*
fertur equīs.
Excipiunt plausū pavidōs gaudent*que* tuentēs
Dardanidae, veterum*que* agnōscunt *ōra parentum.*
Postquam *omnem laetī* cōnsessum *oculōsque suōrum*
lūstrāvēre *in equīs,* signum *clāmōre parātīs*
Ēpytidēs longē *dedit* īnsonuit*que* flagellō.
Ollī discurrēre parēs *atque agmina* ternī
dīductīs solvēre chorīs, rūrsus*que vocātī*
convertēre *viās* īnfēsta*que tēla tulēre.*
Inde *aliōs* ineunt *cursūs aliōsque* recursūs
adversī spatiīs, alternōs*que* orbibus orbīs

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
alternus, a, um alternate, alternating
candidus, a, um lustrous, white, fair†
cēterus, a, um other, remaining, rest
chorus, ī *m.* band, train, chorus
cōnsessus, ūs *m.* assembly, crowd
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Trojan, Dardanian
dīdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw apart
discurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run apart†
Ēpytidēs, ae *m.* son of Epytus, a Trojan
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, welcome
extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme*
flagellum, ī *n.* whip, scourge, lash†
forma, ae *f.* form, beauty, shape*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
inde thence, thereupon, next*
ineō, īre, iī (īvī), itus enter, undertake
īnfēstus, a, um hostile, threatening
īnsonō, āre, uī (re)sound, roar
invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
longē (from) afar, far (away)*
lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify*
monimentum (monumentum), ī *n.* reminder, memorial
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb(it), earth*
pār, paris equal, similar, like, even; pair*
pavidus, a, um fearful, nervous, timid
pignus, oris *n.* pledge, token, proof
plausus, ūs *m.* clapping, applause
postquam after (that); when*
pūbēs, is *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, noble, splendid, illustrious*
recursus, ūs *m.* a running back, retreat†
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire
Sīdonius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a Phoenician city
signum, ī *n.* sign, signal, token, mark*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), separate*
spatium, (i)ī *n.* space, place, interval
ternī, ae, a three (each), by threes
Trīnacrius, a, um Sicilian
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, gaze (on)*
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

Atys, the ancestor of the Atii, as a bosom friend of Iulus, the ancestor of the Julii. Octavius (Augustus) Caesar was by birth a member of the **gēns Atia**, Julius Caesar of the **gēns Jūlia**. **puerō Iūlō**: dat. of agent; App. 302.

572. esse: inf. of purpose; App. 261. **suī monimentum.**

575. (eōs puerōs) pavidōs: *shy, nervous*, since they were unaccustomed to performing in public.

576. agnōscunt (in puerīs).

579. flagellō: abl. of means.

580–582. Vergil is apparently describing the intricate movements of the **Lūdus Trojae**, which he had himself witnessed at Rome. The various figures and evolutions may be compared to those performed by a well-trained chorus of ballet dancers, with much apparent confusion but always preserving the strictest order. **discurrēre, solvēre, tulēre** = discurrērunt, etc. **īnfēsta tēla**: a sham battle, as **pugnae simulācra** in l. 585.

584. spatiīs: abl. of respect with **adversī.**

impediunt pugnae*que* cient simulācra *sub armīs;*
et nunc terga *fugā* nūdant, *nunc* spīcula vertunt
īnfēnsī, *factā* pariter *nunc* pāce *feruntur.*
Ut quondam Crētā *fertur* Labyrinthus *in altā*
parietibus textum caecīs iter ancipitem*que*
mīlle *viīs habuisse* dolum, quā signa *sequendī*
frangeret indēprēnsus *et* inremeābilis error:
haud aliō Teucrum nātī vestīgia *cursū*
impediunt texunt*que fugās et* proelia lūdō,
delphīnum similēs *quī per maria* ūmida nandō
Carpathium Libycum*que* secant (lūdunt*que per undās*).
Hunc mōrem *cursūs atque haec* certāmina *prīmus*
Ascanius, Longam mūrīs *cum* cingeret Albam,
rettulit et prīscōs docuit celebrāre Latīnōs,
quō puer ipse modō, *sēcum quō* Trōia pūbēs;

Alba, ae *f.* Alba Longa, a city in Latium, mother of Rome
anceps, cipitis doubtful, perplexing
Ascanius, (l)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
Carpathius, a, um Carpathian, of Carpathus, an island of the Aegean Sea†
celebrō (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize
certāmen, inis *n.* contest, struggle*
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus stir, (a)rouse*
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround, gird(le)*
Crēta, ae *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean
delphīn, īnis *m.* dolphin, a fish
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, puzzle, trick, fraud*
error, ōris *m.* wandering, maze, error
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break (off)*
impediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus hinder, entangle†
indēprēnsus, a, um undiscovered, insoluble†
īnfēnsus, a, um hostile, threatening
inremeābilis, e irretraceable†
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
Labyrinthus, ī *m.* the Labyrinth, a famous structure in Crete built by Daedalus for King Minos and full of intricate, winding passages†
Latīnus, a, um Latin, of Latium, Roman
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*
Longa, ae *see* **Alba**
lūdō, ere, sī, sus sport, play, mock
lūdus, ī *m.* sport, play, game, contest
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
modus, ī *m.* manner, measure, limit*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
nō (1) swim, float
nūdō (1) bare, expose, denude, strip
pariēs, etis *m.* (house) wall
pariter equally, evenly, side by side*
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, quiet, rest
prīscus, a, um ancient, primitive†
proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, fight, contest, fray
pūbēs, is *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
quā where, whereby; in any (some) way
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
signum, ī *n.* sign, signal, mark, token*
similis, e like, similar (*gen., dat.*)*
simulācrum, ī *n.* likeness, appearance, pretence, phantom
spīculum, ī *n.* spear, dart, arrow
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide, rear*
texō, ere, uī, xtus weave, intertwine
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
ūmidus, a, um moist, watery, wet
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace*

---

589. parietibus: pronounce **parjetibus** here; App. 401.

590–591. mīlle viīs dolum: *a maze with a thousand winding ways;* abl. of quality. **quā frangeret:** rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

593. lūdō: abl. of manner.

594. delphīnum: gen. with adj., **similis**; App. 287.

595. Carpathium Libycumque (mare).

599. quō modō puer ipse (celebrāvit), quō (modō) Trōia pūbēs (celebrāvit).

Albānī docuēre *suōs; hinc maxima* porrō
accēpit Rōma *et patrium servāvit honōrem;*
Trojaque *nunc puerī,* Trojānum *dīcitur agmen.*
Hāc celebrāta tenus sānctō certāmina *patrī.*
Hinc prīmum Fortūna fidem mūtāta novāvit.
Dum variīs tumulō *referunt* sollemnia lūdīs,
Īrim *dē caelō mīsit* Sāturnia *Jūnō*
Īliacam *ad classem ventōsque* aspīrat *euntī,*
multa movēns necdum *antīquum* saturāta dolōrem.
Illa viam celerāns *per* mīlle colōribus arcum
nūllī vīsa citō dēcurrit trāmite virgō.
Cōnspicit *ingentem* concursum *et lītora* lūstrat
dēsertōsque *videt portūs classemque relictam.*
At procul in sōlā sēcrētae Trōades actā
āmissum *Anchīsēn* flēbant, *cūnctaeque* profundum

---

acta, ae *f.* beach, shore†
Albānus, a, um Alban, of Alba Longa
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
arcus, ūs *m.* (rain)bow, arch, arc*
a(d)spīrō (1) breathe (blow) upon
celebrō (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize
celerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
certāmen, inis *n.* contest, struggle, game*
citus, a, um quick, swift
color, ōris *m.* color, hue, tint
concursus, ūs *m.* crowd, throng
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at
dēcurro, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run down
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, protection, fidelity*
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, bewail, lament
hāc ... tenus = **hāctenus** so far, still, yet†
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
Īris, idis *f.* goddess of the rainbow, messenger of Juno
lūdus, ī *m.* sport, game, play, contest
lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify*
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
mūtō (1) change, transform, shift, alter*
necdum not yet
novō (1) make new, alter
porrō further, in succession†
profundus, a, um deep, profound, vast
Rōma, ae *f.* Rome
sānctus, a, um holy, sainted, sacred*
Sāturnius, a, um of Saturn, ancient Italian god of agriculture, father of Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, and several other gods
satiō (1) sate, assuage, fill, satisfy†
sēcrētus, a, um remote, secluded, secret
sollemne, is *n.* ceremony, rite
tenus *see* **hāc ... tenus**†
trāmes, itis *m.* path†
Trōas, adis (ados) *f.* Trojan woman†
Troja, ae *f.* Troy; name of an equestrian game†
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
varius, a, um varying, different, diverse*
virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*

---

602. **puerī (dīcuntur = vocantur) Troja = is cursus puerōrum dīcitur Troja. dīcitur = vocātur.** Vergil is thus assigning a Trojan origin to these games and equestrian evolutions, which had in fact been instituted by Sulla and revived by Julius and Augustus Caesar. See Introd. 6.

603. **Hāc ... tenus = hāctenus:** a case of tmesis or separation of a compound word into its original parts; App. 445. **celebrāta (sunt) certāmina patrī (Anchīsae).**

604–663. Juno sends Iris from heaven to the Trojan women, who are weary of their wanderings, and instigates them to set fire to the fleet, in the hope that Aeneas will be forced to give up his undertaking and to settle in Sicily.

604. **novāvit:** *changed* (from good to bad). See the note on **novandīs**, IV, 290.

605. (in) **tumulō.**

607. (eī) **euntī.**

608. **dolōrem:** obj. of the middle part. **saturāta**; App. 309, *a.*

609–610. **mīlle colōribus:** abl. of quality; App. 330. **Illa virgō = Īris. per arcum:** *down a rainbow.* **citō trāmite:** abl. of the route.

pontum aspectābant flentēs. *Heu* tot vada *fessīs*
et tantum superesse *maris, vōx omnibus ūna.*
Urbem ōrant, taedet *pelagī* perferre *labōrem.*
Ergō *inter mediās sēsē haud* ignāra nocendī
conjicit *et* faciem*que deae* vestem*que* repōnit;
fit Beroē, Tmariī *conjūnx* longaeva Doryclī,
cui genus et quondam nōmen nātīque fuissent,
ac sīc Dardanidum *mediam sē mātribus* īnfert.
"*Ō miserae, quās nōn manus*" inquit "Achāica *bellō*
trāxerit ad lētum patriae *sub moenibus! Ō gēns*
īnfēlīx, cui tē exitiō *Fortūna* reservat?
Septima post *Trojae* excidium *jam* vertitur aestās,
cum freta, *cum terrās omnīs,* tot inhospita *saxa*
sīderaque ēmēnsae *ferimur, dum per mare magnum*
Ītaliam sequimur fugientem et volvimur undīs.
Hīc Erycis *fīnēs* frāternī *atque* hospes *Acestēs:*
quis prohibet mūrōs jacere *et dare* cīvibus *urbem?*

Achāicus, a, um Achaean, Greek
aestās, ātis *f.* summer (time)
a(d)spectō (1) look at, behold
Beroē, ēs *f.* a Trojan woman†
cīvis, is *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot
conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl, fling
Dardanis, idis *f.* Trojan woman
Doryclus, ī *m.* a Greek, husband of Beroë†
ēmētior, īrī, mēnsus measure off, traverse†
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
Eryx, ycis *m.* half-brother of Aeneas, settled in Sicily
excidium, (i)ī *n.* destruction, downfall
exitium, (i)ī *n.* destruction, doom
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
fiō, fierī, factus become, be made
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, bewail, lament
frāternus, a, um of a brother, fraternal
fretum, ī *n.* strait, sea, waters
hospes, itis *m.* host, guest, stranger, friend
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear in(to)
inhospitus, a, um inhospitable, wild
inquam, is, it say*
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw (up), erect
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
noceō, ēre, uī, itus harm, hurt†
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear, endure
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
post after, behind (*acc.*); later*
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus prevent, prohibit
repōnō, ere, posuī, positus replace, lay aside*
reservō (1) keep (back), reserve, save (up)
septimus, a, um seventh
supersum, esse, fuī remain, be left
taedet, ēre, uit, taesum it wearies
Tmarius, a, um Tmarian, of Tmarus, a Greek mountain†
tot so many, as many*
vadum, ī *n.* shallow, sea
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, revolve, roll (round)*
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*

---

616. superesse: exclamatory inf.; App. 262. **vōx (est) ūna** (= eadem).

617. Urbem (deōs) ōrant: taedet (eōs). such verbs may take two accusatives, one of the person asked and the other of the thing requested; App. 316.

618. nocendī: gen. of the gerund with adj.; App. 287, 266.

619. (Īris) conjicit.

620–621. Beroë cui (magnum) genus et (magnum) nōmen nātīque (multī) fuissent: rel. clause of characteristic, with accessory idea of cause; App. 389.

623–624. trāxerit: causal rel. clause; App. 357. For a similar thought compare I, 94–96; III, 321–324.

627. freta (omnia).

Ō patria *et* raptī nēquīquam *ex* hoste penātēs,
nūllane jam Trojae dīcentur moenia? Nūsquam
Hectoreōs amnīs, Xanthum *et* Simoënta, *vidēbō?*
Quīn *agite et mēcum* īnfaustās exūrite *puppīs.*
Nam mihi Cassandrae *per somnum vātis* imāgō
ardentīs dare vīsa facēs: *'Hīc quaerite Trojam;*
hīc domus est' inquit *'vōbīs.' Jam tempus agī rēs,*
nec tantīs mora prōdigiīs. Ēn quattuor *ārae*
Neptūnō; *deus ipse* facēs *animumque* ministrat." 640
Haec memorāns *prīma* īnfēnsum *vī* corripit *ignem*
sublātāque procul dextrā cōnixa coruscat
et jacit. Arrēctae *mentēs* stupefactaque corda
Īliadum. *Hīc ūna ē multīs, quae maxima* nātū,
Pyrgō, tot *Priamī nātōrum* rēgia nūtrīx: 645
"*Nōn* Beroē *vōbīs, nōn haec* Rhoetēia, *mātrēs,*
est Doryclī *conjūnx;* dīvīnī signa decōris
ardentīsque notāte *oculōs; quī* spīritus *illī,*
quis vultus *vōcisque* sonus *vel* gressus *euntī.*

amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, rouse
Beroē, ēs *f.* a Trojan woman
Cassandra, ae *f.* prophetess, daughter of Priam, believed by none
cōnītor, ī, sus (nixus) struggle, strain
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
coruscō (1) flash, wave, brandish†
decor, ōris *m.* beauty, grace, charm†
dīvīnus, a, um divine, heavenly, sacred
Doryclus, ī *m.* a Greek
ēn see! look! behold!
exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn (up), consume
fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
gressus, ūs *m.* walk, gait, step, tread
Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan leader
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
Īlias, adis *f.* Trojan woman, Ilian
imāgō, inis *f.* form, likeness, ghost*
īnfaustus, a, um ill-omened, accursed†
īnfēnsus, a, um hostile, dangerous
inquam, is, it say*
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw (up), erect
memorō (1) recall, recount, relate*
ministrō (1) tend, serve, furnish, provide
mora, ae *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
nātus, ūs *m.* (*only in abl. sing.*) birth†
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
notō (1) observe, mark, note, notice
nūsquam nowhere, never
nūtrīx, īcis *f.* nurse
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
prōdigium, (i)ī *n.* omen, portent, prodigy
Pyrgō, ūs *f.* nurse of Priam's children†
quattuor four
quīn that not, but that, why not, nay even*
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (away), rob*
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
Rhoetēius, a, um Rhoeteian, of Rhoeteüm, a promontory near Troy, Trojan†
signum, ī *n.* sign, mark, signal, token*
Simoīs, entis *m.* river near Troy
sonus, ī *m.* sound, tone, noise
spīritus, ūs *m.* spirit, air, life, soul
stupefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus astound†
tot so many*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*
Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy

632. nēquīquam: if we must always wander.

633. dīcentur = vocābuntur.

636. Cassandrae: eagerly accepted by the women here as prophesying something they want.

638. tempus (est) rēs agī: rēs being subject of the passive inf. agī.

639. nec tantīs (est) mora prōdigiīs: *nor do such prodigies* (dat.) *admit delay.*

644. quae maxima nātū (erat): *who was oldest.*

646. vōbīs: ethical dat.; App. 300.

648. quī spīritus (sit) illī: indir. quest. after notāte; App. 349.

Ipsa egomet dūdum Beroën dīgressa *relīquī*
aegram, indignantem *tālī* quod *sōla* carēret
mūnere nec meritōs *Anchīsae* īnferret *honōrēs.*"
Haec effāta.
At mātrēs prīmō ancipitēs *oculīsque* malignīs
ambiguae spectāre ratēs *miserum inter amōrem*
praesentis *terrae fātīsque vocantia rēgna:*
cum dea sē paribus *per caelum sustulit* ālīs
ingentemque fugā secuit *sub* nūbibus arcum.
Tum vērō attonitae mōnstrīs *āctaeque* furōre
conclāmant, rapiunt*que* focīs penetrālibus *ignem*
(*pars* spoliant *ārās*), frondem *ac* virgulta facēs*que*
conjiciunt. *Furit* immissīs Volcānus habēnīs
trānstra *per et rēmōs et* pictās abiete *puppīs.*
Nuntius *Anchīsae ad* tumulum cuneōs*que* theātrī
incēnsās perfert *nāvīs* Eumēlus, *et ipsī*
respiciunt *ātram in* nimbō volitāre favīllam.

---

abiēs, etis *f.* fir
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
āla, ae *f.* wing*
ambiguus, a, um doubtful, hesitating
anceps, cipitis doubtful, uncertain
arcus, ūs *m.* (rain)bow, arch, arc*
attonitus, a, um amazed, astounded
Beroë, ēs *f.* a Trojan woman
careō, ēre, uī lack, have no part in (*abl.*)
conclāmō (1) shout, call, exclaim
conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl, fling
cuneus, eī *m.* wedge, block (of seats)†
dīgredior, ī, gressus depart, separate
dūdum just now, lately
effor, ārī, ātus speak, say, declare
Eumēlus, ī *m.* a Trojan†
favīlla, ae *f.* cinder, ashes, embers
fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
focus, ī *m.* fireplace, altar
frōns, frondis *f.* foliage, frond*
furor, ōris *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
habēna, ae *f.* rein, curb, check
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, loose
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, fire*
indignor, ārī, ātus disdain, fret
īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear to (*dat.*)
malignus, a, um hostile, spiteful†
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
mōnstrum, ī *n.* portent, omen, sign*
nimbus, ī *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm*
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
nuntius, (i)ī *m.* messenger, message
pār, paris equal, even, well-balanced*
penetrālis, e inner(most)
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring, report
pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus paint, embroider
praesēns, entis present, ready
quod because, the fact that
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), rob*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back) at, regard*
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
spectō (1) look at, see, view, watch†
spoliō (1) strip, plunder, despoil
theātrum, ī *n.* theater, grandstand
trānstrum, ī *n.* rowing-bench, thwart
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
vērō indeed, truly, but
virgultum, ī *n.* brushwood, bush
Volcānus (Vulcānus), ī *m.* (god of) fire
volitō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

---

651. carēret: subj. giving the reason of some one (Beroë) other than the speaker; App. 358.

655. spectāre: hist. inf.; App. 257.

656. fātīs: abl. of means. **rēgna (Ītaliae sē) vocantia.**

658. arcum: acc. of the thing effected; App. 307.

662. habēnīs: the fire rushes like a swift horse when given free rein.

663. (ex) abiete: pronounce here as though spelled **abjete**; App. 401.

664–679. Ascanius rushes from the games to save the ships and is followed by Aeneas. The Trojan women hide.

664. cuneōs: *the wedge-shaped blocks* of seats of the theater.

666. in nimbō: *in a cloud* (of smoke).

Prīmus et Ascanius, *cursūs ut laetus* equestrīs
dūcēbat, sīc ācer *equō* turbāta *petīvit*
castra, *nec* exanimēs *possunt* retinēre magistrī.
"*Quis* furor iste *novus? Quō nunc, quō tenditis*" inquit,
"*heu, miserae* cīvēs? *Nōn* hostem inimīca*que* castra
Argīvum, vestrās spēs ūritis. Ēn, *ego* vester
Ascanius!" — galeam *ante pedēs* prōjēcit inānem,
quā lūdō indūtus *bellī* simulācra ciēbat.
Accelerat *simul Aenēās, simul agmina Teucrum.*
Ast illae dīversa metū *per lītora* passim
diffugiunt, *silvāsque et* sīcubi concava fūrtim
saxa petunt; piget inceptī *lūcisque, suōsque*
mūtātae agnōscunt excussa*que pectore Jūnō est.*
Sed nōn idcircō *flamma atque* incendia *vīrīs*
indomitās *posuēre;* ūdō *sub* rōbore vīvit
stuppa vomēns tardum fūmum, lentus*que* carīnās

---

accelerō (1) hasten (up), hurry†
ācer, cris, cre keen, spirited, fierce*
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
Argīvus, a, um Argive, Greek
Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
carīna, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment*
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus stir, (a)rouse*
cīvis, is *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot
concavus, a, um hollow, cavernous†
diffugiō, ere, fūgī flee apart, disperse
dīversus, a, um separated, various*
ēn see! look! behold!
equester, tris, tre equestrian, cavalry†
exanimis, e breathless, lifeless
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off*
fūmus, ī *m.* smoke, vapor, fume
furor, ōris *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
fūrtim stealthily, by stealth, furtively
galea, ae *f.* helmet
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
idcircō for this (reason), therefore†
inānis, e empty, useless, vain*
incendium, (i)ī *n.* fire, conflagration
inceptum, ī *n.* beginning, undertaking
indomitus, a, um untamed, wild, fierce
induō, ere, ī, ūtus don, clothe, put on
inimīcus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
inquam, is, it say*
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
lentus, a, um pliant, slow, tough
lūdus, ī *m.* game, sport, play, contest
magister, trī *m.* trainer, master, chief
metus, ūs *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
passim everywhere, all about*
piget, ēre, uit, itum it wearies, it repents
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl, fling
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus hold back†
rōbur, oris *n.* oak; strength*
sīcubi if anywhere, wherever†
simulācrum, ī *n.* likeness, appearance, pretence, phantom
spēs, speī *f.* hope, expectation*
stuppa, ae *f.* tow, calking, hemp†
tardus, a, um slow, lazy, late, retarded
turbō (1) confuse, disorder, disturb*
ūdus, a, um moist, damp, wet
ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vīvō, ere, vīxī, victus live, be alive
vomō, ere, uī, itus vomit, belch forth†

---

668. sīc: *just as he was* dressed for the games.

669. castra (nāvium).

671. cīvēs (meae): *my people;* an appeal to their loyalty.

673. ante pedēs (eārum): Ascanius remains on his horse.

678. piget (eās).

679. Jūnō: (*the power of*) *Juno.*

680–699. Four of the ships burn; but in answer to the fervent prayer of Aeneas, Jupiter sends a heavy rainstorm which extinguishes the fire and saves the rest.

681–682. vīvit stuppa = vīvit ignis in stuppā, the stuppa serving as calking.

ēst vapor *et tōtō* dēscendit *corpore* pestis,
nec vīrēs hērōum īnfūsa*que* flūmina prōsunt.
Tum pius Aenēās umerīs abscindere vestem
auxiliō*que vocāre deōs et tendere* palmās:
"*Juppiter* omnipotēns, *si* nōndum exōsus *ad ūnum*
Trojānōs, *sī quid* pietās *antīqua labōrēs*
respicit hūmānōs, *dā flammam* ēvādere *classī*
nunc, pater, et tenuīs *Teucrum rēs ēripe* lētō.
Vel tū, quod superest, īnfēstō fulmine *mortī,*
sī mereor, dēmitte *tuāque hīc* obrue *dextrā.*"
Vix haec ēdiderat *cum* effūsīs imbribus *ātra*
tempestās sine mōre *furit* tonitrū*que* tremēscunt
ardua *terrārum et campī; ruit* aethere *tōtō*
turbidus imber aquā dēnsīs*que* nigerrimus Austrīs,
implentur*que super puppēs*, sēmusta madēscunt
rōbora, restīnctus dōnec vapor *omnis et omnēs*
quattuor āmissīs *servātae ā* peste carīnae.
At pater Aenēās cāsū concussus acerbō

abscindō, ere, scidī, scissus tear from
acerbus, a, um bitter, harsh, sad
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
aqua, ae *f.* water, flood, waves*
arduum, ī *n.* height, steep
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance*
carīna, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake, shatter
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send (hurl) down*
dēnsus, a, um thick, dense, repeated*
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend, sink
dōnec until, while, as long as
ēdō, ere, didī, ditus put forth, utter†
edō, ere (ēsse), ēdī, ēsus eat, consume
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus escape, come out
exōsus, a, um hating utterly, detesting†
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
fulmen, inis *n.* lightning, thunderbolt*
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
hūmānus, a, um human, mortal, earthly
imber, bris *m.* rain, flood, storm, water
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
īnfēstus, a, um hostile, destructive
īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (on, in)
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
madēscō, ere, duī drip, become wet†
mereor, ērī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, wont, precedent*
niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky*
nōndum not yet
obruō, ere, uī, utus overwhelm, bury
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
pestis, is *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of duty, mercy, justice, nobility*
prōsum, desse, fuī be helpful, avail†
quattuor four
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back) at, regard*
restinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus extinguish
rōbur, oris *n.* oak; strength*
sēmustus, a, um half-burned
sine without (*abl.*)*
supersum, esse, fuī remain, be left
tempestās, ātis *f.* storm; season*
tenuis, e slight, slender, fine, thin
tonitrus, ūs *m.* thunder
tremēscō, ere tremble, shake, quiver
Trojānus, a, um Trojan*
turbidus, a, um confused, turbid
vapor, ōris *m.* heat, fire, vapor†
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*

683. ēst: from edō; observe the long ē.

685–686. abscindere, vocāre, tendere: hist. infinitives; App. 257.

687. exōsus (es). ad ūnum: *to a man, utterly.*

688. (tua) pietās.

691–692. dēmitte (id). quod superest: *this remnant;* obj. of dēmitte.

700–718. Nautes advises Aeneas to allow those who are weak and tired out by the journey to found a colony in Sicily.

nunc hūc ingentīs, nunc illūc *pectore cūrās*
mūtābat versāns, Siculīs*ne* resīderet *arvīs*
oblītus *fātōrum*, Italās*ne* capesseret *ōrās*.
Tum senior Nautēs, *ūnum* Trītōnia Pallas
quem docuit *multāque* īnsignem reddidit arte
(*haec* respōnsa *dabat, vel quae* portenderet *īra*
magna deum vel quae fātōrum posceret ordō) —
isque hīs Aenēān sōlātus *vōcibus* īnfit:
"*Nāte deā, quō fāta trahunt* retrahunt*que sequāmur;*
quidquid *erit*, superanda *omnis fortūna ferendō est.*
Est tibi Dardanius dīvīnae stirpis *Acestēs:*
hunc cape cōnsiliīs *socium et* conjunge *volentem;*
huic trāde āmissīs superant *quī nāvibus et quōs*
pertaesum *magnī* inceptī *rērumque tuārum est;*
longaevōs*que* senēs *ac fessās aequore mātrēs*
et quidquid *tēcum* invalidum metuēns*que* perīclī *est*
dēlige, *et hīs habeant terrīs* sine *moenia fessī;*

āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, wisdom, cunning*
capessō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus strive to gain
conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, unite
cōnsilium, (i)ī *n.* plan, advice, design
Dardanius, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select
dīvīnus, a, um divine, heavenly, sacred
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, show, tell*
illūc thither, in that direction
inceptum, ī *n.* beginning, undertaking
īnfit speak, say†
īnsignis, e marked, eminent, notable*
invalidus, a, um weak, feeble, infirm†
Ītalus, a, um Italian, of Italy
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
metuēns, entis fearful, afraid
mūtō (1) (ex)change, alter, transform, shift*
Nautēs, ae *m.* a Trojan†
oblīvīscor, ī, lītus forget (*gen.*)
ordō, inis *m.* order, rank, succession*
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
perīc(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk
pertaedet, ēre, taesum it wearies thoroughly
portendō, ere, ī, ntus presage, portend
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quodquod) whoever, whatever, whichever
reddō, ere, didī, ditus render, return*
resīdō, ere, sēdī settle, sit (down)
respōnsum, ī *n.* reply, answer, response
retrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus drag, draw (back), recall† .
senex, is *m.* old man, sire*
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire
Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs allow, permit*
sōlor, ārī, ātus console, comfort, solace
stirps, is *f.* stock, lineage, race, stem
superō (1) surmount, overcome, remain*
trādō, ere, didī, ditus deliver, transfer
Trītōnius, a, um Tritonian, title of Pallas
versō (1) keep turning, revolve, ponder

702–703. -ne . . . -ne: *whether . . . or.*
resīderet, capesseret: subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349.

706–707. haec respōnsa dabat vel quae portenderet īra de(ōr)um: *she* (*Pallas*) *always gave him answers either* (as to) *what the anger of the gods portended or;*
portenderet, posceret: indir. questions; App. 349.

708. isque hīs vōcibus: *and he thus.*

711. tibi: dat. of possession. **stirpis:** gen. of quality; App. 285.

713. huic: to Acestes. **(eōs) quī.**

716. perīc(u)lī: obj. gen. with **metuēns.**

717. sine: imp. (in) **terrīs. (ut) habeant:** obj. of **sine. fessī: substantively,** *the weary, the wearied.*

urbem appellābunt permissō *nōmine* Acestam."
Tālibus incēnsus *dictīs* seniōris amīcī
tum vērō *in cūrās animō* dīdūcitur *omnīs*.
Et Nox ātra polum bīgīs subvecta *tenēbat:*
vīsa dehinc *caelō* faciēs dēlāpsa *parentis*
Anchīsae subitō *tālīs* effundere *vōcēs:*
"*Nāte, mihī vītā quondam, dum vīta manēbat,*
cāre magis, nāte, Īliacīs exercite *fātīs,*
imperiō Jovis hūc veniō, quī classibus ignem
dēpulit, *et caelō tandem* miserātus *ab altō est.*
Cōnsiliīs pārē *quae nunc* pulcherrima Nautēs
dat senior; lēctōs juvenēs, fortissima corda,
dēfer *in Ītaliam. Gēns* dūra *atque* aspera cultū
dēbellanda *tibī* Latiō *est.* Dītis tamen *ante*
īnfernās accēde *domōs et* Averna *per alta*

---

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, come to, go to, reach
Acesta, ae *f.* Segesta, a city of Sicily†
amīcus, ī *m.* friend, comrade, lover*
appellō (1) call, name, proclaim
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce*
Averna, ōrum *n.* region around Lake Avernus, Avernian realms, entrance to Hades, the infernal regions, Hades
bīgae, ārum *f.* yoke, team, chariot
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
cōnsilium, (i)ī *n.* plan, advice, design
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
cultus, ūs *m.* culture, mode of life
dēbellō (1) war down, conquer†
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear away
dehinc thence, then, next
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide down, descend.
dēpellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive off†
dīdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus separate, distract
Dīs, Dītis *m.* Pluto, god of the lower world
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, utter*
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, harass*
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, fire*
īnfernus, a, um of the lower world, infernal
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather*
magis more, rather, preferably*
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
Nautēs, ae *m.* a Trojan
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus allow
polus, ī *m.* pole, sky, heaven
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, splendid, good fine, noble*
senex, is old, aged; **senior, ōris** very old, older*
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
subvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey†
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
vērō truly, verily, indeed, but

---

718. permissō (ā tē): ordinarily Aeneas would be expected to name the city for himself. **Acestam:** Vergil thus traces the origin of Segesta to his own day.

719–745. That night the ghost of Anchises appears to Aeneas in a dream, counsels him to follow the advice of Nautes, and urges him to sail away to Cumae in Italy to consult the Sibyl who will disclose the future to him and conduct him to the lower world, where the future destiny of the Trojan race will be revealed.

720. in cūrās omnīs (in) animō dīdūcitur: Aeneas cannot decide what to do; hence the dream.

722–723. vīsa (est) effundere.

724–725. Nāte cāre: voc. **vītā:** abl. with comparative; App. 327. **cāre magis** = **cārior.**

727. miserātus est (tē).

730. dēfer: imp.; App. 202. **Gēns dūra:** the Rutulians.

731. ante: adv.

congressūs *pete, nāte, meōs. Nōn mē* impia *namque*
Tartara *habent, trīstēs umbrae, sed* amoena *piōrum*
concilia Ēlysium*que* colō. *Hūc* casta Sibylla
nigrārum *multō* pecudum *tē sanguine dūcet.*
Tum genus omne tuum et quae dentur moenia discēs.
Jamque valē; torquet *mediōs Nox* ūmida *cursūs*
et mē saevus *equīs* Oriēns adflāvit anhēlīs."
Dīxerat et tenuīs *fūgit* ceu fūmus *in aurās.*
Aenēās "Quō deinde *ruis? Quō* prōripis?" inquit,
"Quem fugis? Aut quis tē nostrīs complexibus arcet?"
Haec memorāns cinerem *et* sōpītōs suscitat *ignīs,*
Pergameum*que* larem *et* cānae penetrālia Vestae
farre *piō et* plēnā supplex venerātur acerrā.
Extemplō *sociōs prīmumque* accersit *Acestēn*

---

accersō, ere, sīvī, sītus summon†
acerra, ae *f.* censer (for incense)†
adflō (1) breathe upon, blow upon
amoenus, a, um pleasant, delightful†
anhēlus, a, um panting, heaving†
arceō, ēre, uī hinder, restrain, defend
castus, a, um chaste, holy, pure, sacred
cānus, a, um hoary, gray, venerable
ceu as, just as
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit, honor, cherish*
complexus, ūs *m.* embrace, grasp
concilium, (i)ī *n.* assembly, gathering
congressus, ūs *m.* meeting, encounter†
deinde then, next*
discō, ere, didicī learn (how); *perf.* know
Ēlysium, (i)ī *n.* abode of the blest in Hades†
extemplō immediately, at once
far, farris *n.* spelt, a grain
fūmus, ī *m.* smoke, vapor, fog
impius, a, um wicked, accursed, disloyal
inquam, is, it say*
lar, laris *m.* household god†
memorō (1) (re)call, recount, relate*
niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky*
Oriēns, entis *m.* East, dawn
pecus, udis *f.* animal of the flock*
penetrālia, ium *n.* shrine, chapel
Pergameus, a, um Trojan
plēnus, a, um full, filled, complete
prōripiō, ere, uī, reptus tear away†
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
Sibylla, ae *f.* a Sibyl, famous Italian prophetess
sōpītus, a, um slumbering, sleeping
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
suscitō (1) stir, (a)rouse, rekindle
Tartara, ōrum *n.* (abode of sinners in) Hades
tenuis, e thin, slight, fine, delicate
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn, sway*
ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, dewy
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able, fare well
veneror, ārī, ātus worship, honor, venerate
Vesta, ae *f.* goddess of the hearth

---

733. meōs = mēcum.

734. trīstēs umbrae: apposition with **Tartara.**

735. colō. Hūc: hiatus; App. 399.

736. nigrārum: the appropriate color for victims offered to the gloomy gods of the dark world of the dead. See l. 97, and VI, 243 ff. **multō sanguine:** abl. of means.

737–738. genus: your later descendants who shall be distinguished in Italy. Ghosts commonly appear at night and greatly dislike the light of day. Cf. *Hamlet*, I, 5, 58 ff.:

"But, soft! methinks I scent the morning air:
Brief let me be . . . Fare thee well at once:
The glow-worm shows the matin to be near,
And 'gins to pale his uneffectual fire."

739. saevus: *cruel*, since he must flee with the coming of dawn.

741. Quō (tē) prōripis.

744. cānae: a term applied to Vesta as one of the oldest of the divinities.

746–778. Obeying the commands of

et Jovis imperium et cārī praecepta *parentis*
ēdocet *et quae nunc animō* sententia cōnstet.
Haud mora cōnsiliīs, *nec* jussa recūsat *Acestēs.*
Trānscrībunt *urbī mātrēs* populum*que volentem*
dēpōnunt, *animōs* nīl *magnae* laudis egentīs.
Ipsī trānstra novant *flammīsque* ambēsa repōnunt
rōbora nāvigiīs, aptant *rēmōsque* rudentīs*que*,
exiguī numerō, *sed bellō* vīvida virtūs.
Intereā *Aenēās urbem* dēsignat arātrō
sortītur*que domōs; hoc* Īlium *et haec loca Trojam*
esse jubet. Gaudet *rēgnō* Trojānus *Acestēs*
indīcit*que* forum *et patribus dat* jūra *vocātīs.*
Tum vīcīna astrīs Erycīnō *in* vertice *sēdēs*

---

ambedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus eat, consume
aptō (1) fit, equip, furnish, prepare
arātrum, ī *n.* plow†
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
cōnsilium, (i)ī *n.* plan, advice, design
cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand fast
dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay down, leave (behind)
dēsignō (1) mark off, trace†
ēdoceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, explain†
egeō, ēre, uī lack, require, need, desire, want (*gen.*)
Erycīnus, a, um of Eryx, a Sicilian mountain†
exiguus, a, um slight, small, scanty
forum, ī *n.* market-place, assembly†
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Troy, Ilium
indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus proclaim, appoint
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
jūs, jūris *n.* law, decree, justice, right
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
nāvigium, (i)ī *n.* ship, galley†
nihil, nīl nothing, not (at all)
novō (1) renew, change, alter
numerus, ī *m.* number, multitude*
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
praeceptum, ī *n.* instruction, advice
recūsō (1) refuse, decline; recoil
repōnō, ere, posuī, positus replace*
rōbur, oris *n.* oak; strength*
rudēns, entis *m.* rope, cable, hawser
sententia, ae *f.* opinion, purpose, view
sortior, īrī, ītus allot, cast lots (for)
trānscrībō, ere, psī, ptus copy off, transfer†
trānstrum, ī *n.* rowing-bench, thwart
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
vertex, icis *m.* top, head, summit, peak*
vīcīnus, a, um near, neighboring
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, excellence, courage*
vīvidus, a, um living, vigorous†

---

his father's ghost, Aeneas founds a city in Sicily which he names Acesta, in honor of his old friend, Acestes. There he leaves the women, the old men, and the weaklings, while he with the braver and stronger part of his followers sets out for Italy.

748. quae sententia cōnstet: indir. quest.; App. 349.

749. cōnsiliīs: dat. of possession with **mora (est).**

750. populum volentem: *any of the people who wish to stay.*

751. animōs: apposition with **mātrēs and populum. laudis:** gen. with a verb of lacking; App. 287.

752. Ipsī: the real men.

753. A hypermetric verse; App. 402.

754. numerō: abl. of respect. **bellō:** dat. of purpose. **virtūs (est).**

755. arātrō: the ancient Roman method of marking out the bounds of a new city or colony, as seen in I, 425.

756–757. jubet hoc (esse) Īlium et haec loca esse Trojam: the second half of the sentence repeats the first, as **Īlium = Troja. hoc:** pronounce **hocc,** making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.*

758. patribus dat jūra vocātīs: as Augustus was doing at Rome in Vergil's time.

759. Erycīnō in vertice sēdēs: a famous temple to Venus stood on Mt. Eryx.

fundātur Venerī Īdaliae, tumulō*que* sacerdōs
ac lūcus lātē *sacer* additur Anchīsēō.
Jamque diēs epulāta novem *gēns omnis, et ārīs*
factus honōs: placidī strāvērunt *aequora ventī*
crēber *et* aspīrāns rūrsus *vocat* Auster *in* altum.
Exoritur prōcurva *ingēns per lītora* flētus;
complexī *inter sē noctemque diemque* morantur.
Ipsae jam mātrēs, ipsī, quibus aspera *quondam*
vīsa maris faciēs *et nōn* tolerābile *nūmen,*
īre volunt omnemque fugae perferre *labōrem.*
Quōs bonus *Aenēās dictīs* sōlātur amīcīs
et cōnsanguineō lacrimāns commendat *Acestae.*
Trīs Erycī vitulōs *et* Tempestātibus agnam
caedere deinde *jubet* solvī*que ex* ordine fūnem.
Ipse caput tōnsae foliīs ēvīnctus olīvae
stāns procul in prōrā pateram *tenet,* extā*que* salsōs
prōjicit *in flūctūs ac* vīna liquentia *fundit.*

---

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
agna, ae *f.* ewe-lamb†
altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
amīcus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
Anchīsēus, a, um of Anchises†
asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce*
a(d)spīrō (1) breathe (upon), blow
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
bonus, a, um good, noble, kind*
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus cut (down), kill
commendō (1) intrust, commend
complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold
cōnsanguineus, ī *m.* kinsman (by blood)†
crēber, bra, brum frequent, repeated*
deinde then, next, thereupon*
epulor, ārī, ātus feast, banquet
Eryx, ycis *m.* half-brother of Aeneas
ēvinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, tie
exorior, īrī, ortus rise, spring up
exta, ōrum *n.* entrails, vitals
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament
folium, (i)ī *n.* leaf, foliage
fundō (1) found, establish, build
fūnis, is *m.* rope, cable, cord
Īdalius, a, um of Idalium in Cyprus, a mountain and city sacred to Venus
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament
lātē widely, far and wide
liquēns, entis clear, liquid, fluid
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
novem nine
olīva, ae *f.* olive
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, array*
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus endure, bear
placidus, a, um gentle, peaceful, calm*
prōcurvus, a, um winding, curved†
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl forth
prōra, ae *f.* prow*
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
salsus, a, um briny, salty
sōlor, ārī, ātus console, comfort, solace
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), release*
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, becalm, spread, strew*
Tempestās, ātis *f.* Storm, Tempest*
tolerābilis, e bearable, endurable†
tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear, clip, trim, cut
trēs, tria three*
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*
vitulus, ī *m.* (bull) calf, bullock†

760–761. Anchises is thus officially deified. **Anchīsēō:** a spondaic fifth foot; App. 395.

762–763. diēs novem: the conventional number of days for funeral ceremonies. **epulāta (erat). factus (erat in) ārīs.**

766. inter sē: *each other.*

773. jubet (Teucrōs).

774. caput: obj. of the middle part., ēvīnctus; App. 309, *a.*

775. procul (ab aliīs). pateram tenet: to pour a libation.

Prōsequitur surgēns *ā puppī ventus euntīs;*
certātim *sociī* feriunt *mare et aequora* verrunt.
At Venus intereā Neptūnum exercita *cūrīs*
adloquitur *tālīsque* effundit *pectore* questūs:
"*Jūnōnis* gravis *īra neque* exsaturābile *pectus*
cōgunt *mē,* Neptūne, precēs dēscendere *in omnīs;*
quam nec longa diēs pietās *nec* mītigat *ūlla,*
nec Jovis imperiō fātīsque īnfrācta quiēscit.
Nōn mediā dē gente Phrygum exēdisse nefandīs
urbem odiīs satis *est nec poenam trāxe per omnem*
relliquiās *Trojae:* cinerēs *atque* ossa perēmptae
īnsequitur. Causās *tantī* sciat *illa* furōris.
Ipse mihī nūper Libycīs *tū* testis *in undīs*
quam mōlem subitō excierit: *maria omnia caelō*
miscuit Aeoliīs nēquīquam frēta procellīs,
in rēgnīs hoc ausa *tuīs.*

---

adloquor, ī, locūtus address, accost
Aeolius, a, um of Aeolus, god of winds†
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, pretext*
certātim in rivalry, emulously
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus force (together)*
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend, stoop
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, utter*
exciō, īre, īvī (iī), itus (a)rouse, stir (up)
exedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus devour, destroy†
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, harass*
exsaturābilis, e satiable, placable†
feriō, īre strike, smite, cut, kill
frētus, a, um relying on (*abl.*)
furor, ōris *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
īnfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter†
īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue*
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mītigō (1) soften, appease, pacify†
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
nefandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
nūper recently, lately†
odium, (i)ī *n.* hate, hatred, enmity
os, ossis *n.* bone*
perimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus destroy†
Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of duty, justice, nobility*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
procella, ae *f.* blast, gust, storm
prōsequor, ī, secūtus follow, attend
questus, ūs *m.* complaint, lament
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, desist, repose*
re(l)liquiae, ārum *f.* remnant(s), rest, leavings, relics
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
sciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus know (how)
subitō, suddenly, unexpectedly*
surgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus (a)rise
testis, is *m.* (*f.*) witness†
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour

779–834. Neptune, won over by the entreaties of Venus, calms the sea for Aeneas, giving him a safe voyage to Italy.

781. neque = et nōn.

783. quam: referring to Jūnōnis of l. 781. **nec longa diēs (mītigat) nec ūlla pietās (Aenēae) mītigat. longa diēs = longum tempus.**

785. exēdisse: a Homeric touch.

786. urbem (Trojam). trāx(iss)e.

787. perēmptae (Trojae).

788. sciat illa: *let her know,* since no one else does; a vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

789–792. tū testis (erās): the reference is to the storm described in I, 81–156. **excierit:** subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. **hoc:** pronounce **hocc, making a** long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.*

Per scelus ecce etiam Trojānīs *mātribus āctīs*
exussit foedē *puppīs et classe* subēgit
āmissā *sociōs* ignōtae linquere *terrae.*
Quod superest, ōrō, liceat *dare* tūta *per undās*
vēla tibī, liceat Laurentem attingere Thybrim,
sī concessa *petō, sī dant ea moenia* Parcae."
Tum Sāturnius *haec* domitor *maris* ēdidit *altī:*
"Fās *omne est,* Cytherēa, *meīs tē* fīdere *rēgnīs,*
unde *genus dūcis.* Meruī quoque; saepe furōrēs
compressī *et* rabiem *tantam caelīque marisque.*
Nec minor *in terrīs,* Xanthum Simoënta*que* testor,
Aenēae mihi cūra tuī. Cum Trōia Achillēs
exanimāta *sequēns* impingeret *agmina* mūrīs,
mīlia *multa daret* lētō, gemerent*que* replētī
amnēs *nec* reperīre *viam atque* ēvolvere *posset*
in mare sē Xanthus, Pēlīdae *tunc ego* fortī

Achillēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* famous Greek leader*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach
comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus restrain
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, grant
Cytherēa, ae *f.* (goddess) of Cythera, Venus
domitor, ōris *m.* tamer, subduer, ruler†
ecce see! look! behold!*
ēdō, ere, didī, ditus put forth, utter
etiam also, even, besides, too*
ēvolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll forth†
exanimātus, a, um breathless, lifeless†
exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn, consume
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum trust, believe (*dat.*)*
foedē shamefully, foully†
fortis, e strong, brave, valiant, stout*
furor, ōris *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
gemō, ere, uī, itus groan, lament
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
impingō, ere, pēgī, pāctus dash against†
Laurēns, entis Laurentian, of Laurentum, an Italian city†
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
minor, us less, smaller, slighter
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, battlement*
ōrō (1) beseech, pray (for), entreat*
Parcae, ārum *f.* the (three) Fates
Pēlīdēs, ae *m.* son of Peleus, Achilles
quoque also, too, even, likewise*
rabiēs, ēī *f.* rage, frenzy, fury, madness
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus find
repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, cram, jam
saepe often, frequently*
Sāturnius, a, um Saturnian, of Saturn, early Italian god and father of Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, and several other gods
scelus, eris *n.* crime, guilt, sin*
Simoīs, entis *m.* river near Troy
subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus force, compel
supersum, esse, fuī remain, survive
testor, ārī, ātus call to witness, testify
Thybris, idis *m.* Tiber, an Italian river
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
unde whence, from which source*
Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy

794–795. classe āmissā: abl. abs. **subēgit (Aenēān). terrae:** loc. or dat. of indir. obj.

796. Quod superest: *the remnant;* cf. l. 691. **ōrō:** parenthetical. **liceat:** vol.

797. tibi = marī: Neptune being god of the sea. **liceat (Aenēae) attingere Laurentem Thybrim.**

798. ea moenia: the city to be founded by Aeneas in Italy.

801. unde genus dūcis: according to one account, Venus was born from the foam of the sea near Cythera, hence her name, **Cytherēa,** l. 800. **Meruī (tē fīdere meīs rēgnīs).**

804–807. mihi cūra (est). cum: descrip-

congressum *Aenēān nec dīs nec vīribus aequīs*
nūbe cavā rapuī, c.iperem *cum* vertere *ab īmō*
strūcta *meīs manibus* perjūrae *moenia Trojae.*
Nunc quoque *mēns eadem* perstat *mihi;* pelle timōrēs.
Tūtus, *quōs* optās, *portūs* accēdet Avernī.
Ūnus erit tantum āmissum *quem* gurgite *quaerēs;*
ūnum prō *multīs dabitur caput.*"
Hīs ubi laeta deae permulsit *pectora dictīs,*
jungit *equōs aurō genitor,* spūmantia*que* addit
frēna ferīs *manibusque omnīs* effundit habēnās.
Caeruleō *per summa* levis volat *aequora* currū;
subsīdunt *undae* tumidum*que sub* axe tonantī
sternitur *aequor* aquīs, *fugiunt vastō* aethere nimbī.
Tum variae *comitum* faciēs, *immānia* cētē,

---

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, reach
addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood*
Avernus, ī *m.* lake near Cumae in Italy where there was an entrance to Hades*
axis, is *m.* axis, axle, wheel, car
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
cētus, ī *m.; pl.* **cētē** *n.* whale, sea-monster†
congredior, ī, gressus meet (*dat.*)
cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus desire, wish
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, let go*
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
ferus, ī *m.* beast, horse*
frēnum, ī *n.* rein, bridle, curb, bit
gurges, itis *m.* whirlpool, sea, gulf*
habēna, ae *f.* rein, curb, check
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke*
levis, e light, unsubstantial, slight
nimbus, ī *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm*
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive, dismiss
perjūrus, a, um perjured, treacherous
permulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus soothe, calm†
perstō, stāre, stitī, status stand fast, persist
prō for, on behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
quoque also, even, too, likewise*
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (away), rob*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, becalm, strew, spread*
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, heap up
subsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus subside
tantum only, so much, so great(ly)
timor, ōris *m.* fear, dread, anxiety
tonō, āre, uī, itus thunder, roar
tumidus, a, um swelling, swollen
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
varius, a, um various, different, diverse*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change*
volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

---

tive with impingeret, daret, gemerent, posset; App. 378. **replētī (corporibus virōrum).**

809. nec dīs nec vīribus aequīs: abl. abs.; aequīs modifies both nouns. The ancient warriors were often assisted by their gods. In this case the gods helping Achilles were superior to those aiding the Trojans.

810. cum cuperem: *although I desired;* concessive subj.; App. 379.

811. perjūrae: referring to the famous perjury of Laomedon, who refused to pay Neptune and Apollo the price agreed upon for building the walls of Troy. See note on II, 610.

813. portūs Avernī: Cumae near Lake Avernus, where was the fabled entrance to the lower world. From Cumae the rest of Aeneas's voyage to the Tiber was short and uneventful.

814. Ūnus: Palinurus, the pilot who fell overboard and was drowned, as is related in lines 833–860.

816. laeta: proleptic; App. 440.

817. aurō: *with gold* (*harness*).

818. ferīs = equīs, as ferī = equī in II, 51.

820. sub axe (currūs).

821. aquīs: abl. of respect with tumidum; App. 325.

822. faciēs (vīsae sunt, adsunt). cētē: nom. pl., a Greek form.

et senior Glaucī chorus Īnōus*que* Palaemōn
Trītōnes*que* citī Phorcī*que* exercitus *omnis;*
laeva *tenent* Thetis *et* Melitē Panopēa*que* virgō,
Nīsaeē Spīō*que* Thalīa*que* Cymodocē*que.*
Hīc patris Aenēae suspēnsam blanda vicissim
gaudia pertemptant *mentem; jubet* ōcius *omnīs*
attollī mālōs, intendī bracchia *vēlīs.*
Ūnā *omnēs fēcēre pedem* pariter*que* sinistrōs,
nunc dextrōs solvēre sinūs; ūnā ardua torquent
cornua dētorquent*que; ferunt sua* flāmina *classem.*
Princeps *ante omnīs* dēnsum Palinūrus *agēbat*
agmen; ad hunc alīī cursum contendere *jussī.*
Jamque ferē *mediam caelī Nox* ūmida mētam
contigerat, placidā laxābant membra quiētē
sub rēmīs fūsī per dūra sedīlia nautae:

---

arduus, a, um lofty, upraised, steep*
attollō, ere lift, raise, rear*
blandus, a, um persuasive, flattering
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* arm; yardarm*
chorus, ī *m.* (dancing) band, troop
citus, a, um quick, swift, hurried
contendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, strain, direct
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach*
cornū, ūs *n.* horn; yardarm; tip
Cymodocē, ēs *f.* a sea-nymph†
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist (aside), haul down
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
exercitus, ūs *m.* army, host, band
ferē almost, about, nearly
flāmen, inis *n.* breeze, blast, wind
gaudium, (i)ī *n.* joy, delight, pleasure
Glaucus, ī *m.* minor sea-god†
Īnō, ūs *f.* minor sea-goddess†
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, strain
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
laxō (1) relax, loose(n), relieve, free
mālus, ī *m.* mast, staff, pole
Melitē, ēs *f.* a sea-nymph†
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
mēta, ae *f.* turning-point, goal, bound
nauta, ae *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
Nīsaeē, ēs *f.* a sea-nymph†
ōcius more quickly, very quickly
Palaemōn, onis *m.* minor sea-god†
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot*
Panopēa, ae *f.* a sea-nymph
pariter equally, evenly, concertedly*
pertemptō (1) test, seize, pervade
Phorcus, ī *m.* minor sea-god
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
princeps, cipis first, (as) leader
quiēs, ētis *f.* rest, sleep, peace, quiet*
sedīle, īlis *n.* seat, bench
senex, is old, aged; **senior, ōris** older, very old*
sinister, tra, trum left (hand), on the left
sinus, ūs *m.* fold (of sail), bosom, bay*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
Spīō, ūs *f.* a sea-nymph†
suspēnsus, a, um suspended, bewildered, in suspense
Thalīa, ae *f.* a sea-nymph†
Thetis, idis (idos) *f.* sea-goddess, mother of Achilles†
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn, whirl*
Trītōn, ōnis *m.* minor sea-god
ūmidus, a, um moist, wet, dewy
ūnā together, at the same time
vicissim in turn, by turns, alternately
virgō, inis *f.* girl, daughter, virgin*

823–826. Vergil is apparently describing a famous sculptured group which in his day stood in the Circus Flaminius at Rome. **laeva (loca).**

830. fēcēre pedem: *hauled the sheet.*

832. sua: *favorable;* irregularly referring to **classem** instead of to the subject: App. 248, *a.*

834. agmen (nāvium). hunc: Palinurus.

835–861. Seeing that everything is so secure, the pilot, Palinurus, succumbs to sleep during the night voyage. He falls overboard and is drowned.

835. mediam mētam: *the zenith,* making it midnight. See III, 429.

cum levis aetheriīs dēlāpsus *Somnus ab* astrīs
āera dīmōvit tenebrōsum *et* dispulit *umbrās*,
tē, Palinūre, *petēns*, *tibi* somnia *trīstia* portāns
īnsontī; *puppīque deus* cōnsēdit *in altā*
Phorbantī similis *funditque hās ōre* loquēlās:
"Īasidē Palinūre, *ferunt ipsa aequora classem*,
aequātae spīrant *aurae*, *datur* hōra quiētī.
Pōne caput fessōsque oculōs fūrāre *labōrī*.
Ipse ego paulisper prō *tē tua mūnera* inībō."
Cui vix attollēns Palinūrus *lūmina fātur*:
"*Mēne* salis placidī vultum *flūctūsque* quiētōs
ignōrāre *jubēs? Mēne huic* cōnfīdere mōnstrō?
Aenēān crēdam (*quid* enim?) fallācibus *aurīs*
et caelō, totiēns dēceptus fraude serēnī?"
Tālia dicta dabat, clāvumque adfīxus *et* haerēns
nūsquam āmittēbat *oculōsque sub* astra *tenēbat*.

---

adfīgō, ere, xī, xus fasten to, join to†
aequō (1) equal(ize), balance, adjust*
āēr, āeris, *acc.* **āera,** *m.* air, fog, mist
aetherius, a, um of the upper air, heavenly
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
attollō, ere lift, raise, rear*
clāvus, ī *m.* nail, tiller, rudder†
cōnfīdō, ere, sus sum trust, believe (*dat.*)
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down), settle*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
dēcipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus beguile, deceive
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide down, descend
dīmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move apart, sunder
dispellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive apart, dispel
enim for, indeed, truly*
fallāx, ācis deceitful, treacherous†
fraus, fraudis *f.* deceit, treachery, fraud
fūror, ārī, ātus steal (away), withdraw†
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to)*
hōra, ae *f.* hour, season, time
Īasidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Iasius, son of Jupiter and Electra, and brother of Dardanus†
ignōrō (1) not know, mistake, ignore†
ineō, īre, iī (īvī) itus enter (upon)
īnsōns, ontis innocent, guiltless
levis, e light, unsubstantial, slight
loquēla, ae *f.* voice, speech, conversation†
mōnstrum, ī *n.* portent, monster, sign*
nūsquam nowhere, never
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot*
paulisper gradually, (for) a little while†
Phorbās, antis *m.* son of Priam, killed in the Trojan war†
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
portō (1) carry, bear, bring, convey*
prō before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
quiēs, ētis *f.* rest, sleep, peace, quiet*
quiētus, a, um quiet, undisturbed, calm
sal, is *m.* (*n.*) salt, brine; sea
serēnum, ī *n.* fair weather, calm
similis, e similar, like (*dat.*)*
somnium, (i)ī *n.* dream, vision†
spīrō (1) breathe, blow, exhale, expire
tenebrōsus, a, um dark, dusky, gloomy†
totiēns so many times, so often
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

841. deus = Somnus of l. 838.

844. aequātae aurae: see note on IV, 587.

845. labōrī: dat. of separation; App. 305.

847. lūmina = **oculōs.**

849. (jubēs)ne mē cōnfīdere huic mōnstrō (= marī): dat. with special verb; the sea as a thing of treachery and danger is a cruel monster.

850–851. crēdam: deliberative subj.; App. 348. **quid enim (id faciam). aurīs et caelō:** datives with **crēdam. fraude:** abl. of means or cause with **dēceptus.**

852. āmittēbat: with the final syllable lengthened under the metrical accent and

Ecce *deus* rāmum Lēthaeō rōre madentem
vīque sopōrātum Stygiā *super* utraque quassat
tempora, cūnctantī*que* natantia *lūmina* solvit.
Vix prīmōs inopīna quiēs laxāverat artūs,
et superincumbēns *cum puppis parte* revulsā
cumque gubernāclō liquidās prōjēcit *in undās*
praecipitem *ac sociōs* nēquīquam saepe *vocantem;*
ipse volāns tenuīs *sē sustulit* āles *ad aurās.*
Currit iter tūtum *nōn* sētius *aequore classis*
prōmissīs*que patris* Neptūnī interrita *fertur.*
Jamque adeō scopulōs Sīrēnum advecta *subībat,*
difficilīs *quondam multōrumque* ossibus albōs
(*tum* rauca adsiduō longē sale *saxa* sonābant),

---

adeō to such an extent, to that point
adsiduus, a, um constant, incessant
advehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry to(ward)
albus, a, um white*
āles, itis winged; bird
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
cūnctor, ārī, ātus delay, linger, hesitate
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus run, speed
difficilis, e difficult, dangerous, painful
ecce see! look! behold!*
gubernāc(u)lum, ī *n.* rudder, helm
inopīnus, a, um unexpected, unforeseen†
interritus, a, um unafraid, unterrified
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
laxō (1) relax, loose(n), relieve, free
Lēthaeus, a, um Lethean, of Lethe, the river of forgetfulness in Hades†
liquidus, a, um clear, liquid, fluid
longē (from) afar*
madeō, ēre, uī drip, be wet
natō (1) swim, float, overflow
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
os, ossis *n.* bone*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl, fling, cast
prōmissum, ī *n.* promise, pledge
quassō (1) shake, shatter
quiēs, ētis *f.* rest, sleep, peace, quiet*
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, bough, limb*
raucus, a, um hoarse, thunderous
revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear off, dislodge
rōs, rōris *m.* dew, moisture†
saepe often, frequently*
sal, is *m.* (*n.*) salt, brine; sea
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
secus; *compar.* **sētius** otherwise, differently
Sīrēnes, um *f.* beautiful maidens who by their sweet songs lured sailors to their destruction†
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax*
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
sopōrō (1) make sleepy, drug†
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a river in Hades*
superincumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean over, swoop upon†
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
tenuis, e slight, thin, fine, delicate
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*
volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

---

before the pause; App. 394, *a.* **sub astra**: *fixed on the stars.*

854–855. deus = Somnus of l. 838. **Lēthaeō, Stygiā**: referring to the underworld streams which brought forgetfulness and death.

856. (**Palinūrō**) **cūnctantī**: dat. of reference.

857. prīmōs: agrees with **artūs** but goes in thought with **laxāverat.**

859. (**eum**) **prōjēcit** (Somnus).

861. ipse: Somnus.

862–871. Awakening and perceiving that the ship is drifting unsteadily, Aeneas seizes the tiller and steers the vessel safe to the harbor of Cumae, the home of the Sibyl.

862. iter: cognate acc.; App. 313.

863. prōmissīs = ll. 812–815.

865. quondam: from the point of view of Vergil, not of Aeneas.

866. sale saxa sonābant: alliteration; App. 411.

cum pater āmissō fluitantem *errāre* magistrō
sēnsit, *et ipse* ratem nocturnīs rēxit *in undīs*
multa gemēns *cāsūque animum* concussus amīcī:
870 "*Ō* nimium *caelō et pelagō* cōnfīse serēnō,
nūdus *in* ignōtā, Palinūre, jacēbis harēnā."

---

amīcus, ī *m.* friend, comrade, lover*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake, shatter
cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum trust, believe (*dat.*)
fluitō (1) waver, drift, float†
gemō, ere, uī, itus groan, lament, mourn
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
magister, trī *m.* master, pilot, chief
nimium too much, too (greatly)
nocturnus, a, um nocturnal, of the night
nūdus, a, um naked, bare; unburied
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, direct, guide*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive
serēnus, a, um calm, clear, serene

---

867. pater (Aenēās). āmissō magistrō (Palinūrō): abl. abs.: App. 343. **fluitantem (nāvem). errāre:** *was drifting unsteadily;* indir. disc.; App. 390.

868. ipse (Aenēās); *the master;* see the note on **ipsōs,** I, 40.

869. multa: adverbial; App. 93–94. **animum:** acc. of respect; App. 311.

870–871. Ō Palinūre nimium cōnfīse: *O Palinurus* (*who*) *trusted too much in,* etc. **nūdus:** *unburied;* a piteous fate according to ancient ideas.

Anderson *Michelangelo*

THE CUMAEAN SIBYL

From the Sistine Chapel in the Vatican

E. Forti, Rome

CENTAURS AND DRYAD

BOOK VI

SĪC fātur lacrimāns, *classīque* immittit habēnās
et tandem Euboïcīs Cūmārum adlābitur *ōrīs*.
Obvertunt *pelagō* prōrās; *tum* dente tenācī
ancora fundābat *nāvīs et lītora* curvae
praetexunt *puppēs*. Juvenum *manus* ēmicat *ardēns*
lītus in Hesperium; *quaerit pars* sēmina *flammae*
abstrūsa *in* vēnīs silicis, *pars* dēnsa ferārum
tēcta rapit *silvās* inventa*que* flūmina mōnstrat.
At pius Aenēās arcēs quibus altus Apollō
praesidet horrendae*que procul* sēcrēta Sibyllae,
antrum *immāne, petit, magnam cui mentem animumque*

ābstrūdō, ere, sī, sus hide (away)†
adlābor, ī, lāpsus glide to, approach (*dat.*)
ancora, ae *f.* anchor
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
Cūmae, ārum *f.* city on the bay of Naples, founded by settlers from Chalcis, a city of Euboea†
curvus, a, um winding, rounded, bent*
dēns, dentis *m.* tooth; fluke (of an anchor)
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus flash forth, dart out
Euboïcus, a, um Euboean, of Euboea, a large island off the eastern coast of Greece†
fera, ae *f.* wild beast
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
fundō (1) found, establish, make fast
habēna, ae *f.* rein, curb, check
Hesperius, a, um western, Italian
horrendus, a, um dreadful, dire; revered*
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus send in (to). loose(n), give freely
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus find, come upon
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament
mōnstrō (1) point out, show, teach, guide*
obvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to (*dat.*)
praesideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus rule, protect (*dat.*)
praetexō, ere, uī, xtus fringe, cloak
prōra, ae *f.* prow*
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), scour*
sēcrētum, ī *n.* secret (place, sanctuary)
sēmen, inis *n.* seed, germ, element†
Sibylla, ae *f.* the Sibyl, an ancient Italian prophetess
silex, icis *m.* (*f.*) flint, rock, crag
tenāx, ācis gripping, tenacious
vēna, ae *f.* vein

1–32. Aeneas lands at Cumae and visits the temple of Apollo founded by Daedalus, near which is the grotto of the Sibyl.

1. Sīc fātur (Aenēās): refers to the lament of Aeneas over Palinurus, who fell overboard and was drowned, as told in the latter part of Book V. **habēnās:** *reins*, as though the ships were so many fiery steeds surging at the bit.

3. prōrās: ships were anchored with their prows turned seaward.

6. sēmina: *sparks*, which seemed to be hidden in the flint till struck out by the steel.

8. silvās: apposition with **tēcta.**

9. altus: referring to the lofty situation of the temple, which stood on the top of a high hill and was connected in some way with the cave of the Sibyl.

10. procul (ā portū).

Dēlius īnspīrat *vātēs* aperit*que* futūra.
Jam subeunt Triviae lūcōs *atque* aurea *tēcta*.
Daedalus, *ut fāma est, fugiēns* Mīnōia *rēgna*
praepetibus pennīs ausus *sē* crēdere *caelō*
īnsuētum *per* iter gelidās ēnāvit *ad* Arctōs,
Chalcidicā*que* levis *tandem super* astitit *arce*.
Redditus *hīs prīmum terrīs tibi*, Phoebe, sacrāvit
rēmigium ālārum *posuit que immānia* templa.
In foribus lētum Androgeō; *tum* pendere *poenās*

āla, ae *f.* wing*
Androgeōs (ūs), eō (eī) *m.* son of Minos, king of Crete, for whose murder the Athenians were compelled annually to choose by lot seven youths and seven maidens, who were sent to Crete and fed to the Minotaur†
aperiō, īre, uī, ertus open, disclose, reveal*
Arctos (us), ī *f.* the Bear, a northern constellation†
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (by, near)*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
Chalcidicus, a, um Chalcídian, of Chalcis, a city of Euboea, from which Cumae was founded†
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
Daedalus, ī *m.* famous Greek artisan, father of Icarus and builder of the Labyrinth for King Minos in Crete; inventor of the first wings by means of which he and Icarus escaped from Crete†
Dēlius, a, um Delian, of Delos, birthplace of Apollo
ēnō (1) swim out, fly forth, float†
foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance
futūrum, ī *n.* the future, what is to be
gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
īnspīrō (1) breathe into, inspire, blow into
īnsuētus, a, um unaccustomed, unused†
iter, itineris, *n.* way, road, journey*
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
levis, e light, swift, nimble, unsubstantial
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
Mīnōius, a, um Minoan, of Minos, king of Crete†
pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsus weigh out, pay†
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
praepes, etis swift, flying
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, restore*
rēmigium, (i)ī, *n.* oarage, rowing equipment
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
Trivia, ae *f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world

12. Dēlius vātēs: Apollo, born at Delos, and giver of oracles.

13. subeunt (Aenēās et sociī). Triviae lūcōs: the grove was sacred to Hecate (Trivia), since it stood near the entrance to the lower world.

14. Daedalus: the most famous artisan of antiquity. With his son, Icarus, he had emigrated to Crete, where Pasiphaë, queen of Minos, had fallen in love with a beautiful bull. He assisted her to gratify her unholy passion, and from this love was born the Minotaur, a savage monster, half-man and half-bull. Daedalus was then compelled by Minos to build the Labyrinth within whose winding passages the Minotaur might be confined. Finally Daedalus contrived wings for himself and his son Icarus and thus escaped from Crete. During their flight, Icarus flew too close to the sun, which melted the waxen fastenings of his wings and allowed him to fall into the sea and drown. After the death of Icarus, Daedalus continued his flight to Cumae, where he erected a temple to Apollo, to whom he dedicated his wings, and where he made some beautiful carved doors for the temple. On these doors he engraved the scenes described in ll. 20–30.

15. pennīs: abl. of means.

16. īnsuētum iter: the air.

20–30. A description of the scenes engraved by Daedalus on the temple doors at Cumae, which are: (1) death of Androgeos; (2) drawing of lots to see who shall be sent as victims of the Minotaur; (3) Pasiphaë and the Minotaur; (4) the Labyrinth with Ariadne and Theseus. **lētum (est). Androgeō:** gen., a Greek form; App. 67. The Athenians had murdered him and as a punishment had

Cecropidae *jussī* (*miserum!*) septēna quotannīs
corpora nātōrum; stat ductīs sortibus urna.
Contrā ēlāta *marī* respondet Gnōsia *tellūs:*
hīc crūdēlis *amor* taurī suppostaque fūrtō
Pāsiphaē mixtumque *genus* prōlēsque biformis
Mīnōtaurus inest, Veneris monimenta nefandae;
hīc labor ille domūs et inextrīcābilis error;
magnum rēgīnae sed enim miserātus *amōrem*
Daedalus *ipse* dolōs *tēctī* ambāgēsque resolvit,
caeca regēns fīlō vestīgia. *Tū* quoque *magnam*

ambāgēs, is *f.* winding (passage)
biformis, e two-formed, double-shaped†
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
Cecropidēs, ae *m.* descendants of Cecrops, Athenians†
contrā opposite, facing*
crūdēlis, e cruel, pitiless, bloody*
Daedalus, ī *m.* famous Greek artisan, and the first aviator; builder of the Labyrinth constructed to confine the Minotaur
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, fraud, trick, scheme*
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus lift (up), raise*
enim for, indeed, truly*
error, ōris *m.* wandering, maze, error
fīlum, ī *n.* thread, clew, cord†
fūrtum, ī *n.* theft, stealth, fraud
Gnōs(s)ius, a, um Gnossian, of Gnossus, a city of Crete
inextrīcābilis, e inextricable, insoluble†
īnsum, esse, fuī be in, be present†
Mīnōtaurus, ī *m.* savage Cretan monster, half bull and half man, the memorial of Pasiphaë's love for the bull†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
monimentum (monumentum), ī *n.* reminder, memorial
nefandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable
Pāsiphaë, ēs *f.* wife of Minos, king of Crete, who fell in love with a beautiful bull and was assisted by Daedalus to gratify her passion†
prōlēs, is *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
quoque also, even, too, likewise*
quotannīs annually, yearly
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, direct, guide*
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), unravel
respondeō, ēre, ī, ōnsus answer, correspond*
septēnus, a, um seven (each), by sevens
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
suppōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place under, subject to†
taurus, ī *m.* bull, ox, bullock*
urna, ae *f.* urn, vase (used in drawing lots)†
Venus, eris *f.* (goddess of) love*
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace*

been compelled by Minos to send annually seven youths and seven maidens as tribute to Crete, where they were thrown into the Labyrinth to be eaten by the Minotaur. The Minotaur was finally killed by Theseus, an Athenian prince, who had been sent as one of the seven annual victims. He was assisted by Ariadne, daughter of Minos, who had fallen in love with him and had given him a clew of thread with which to guide his steps and thus find his way out of the Labyrinth with its countless winding passages.

21. Cecropidae (sunt). miserum: acc. of exclamation; App. 318.

22. ductīs sortibus: abl. abs. **stat urna:** represents the scene where the lots had just been drawn from the urn at Athens, to see who should be sent as victims of the Minotaur.

23. Contrā: *on the opposite door.* **marī:** ab' of separation.

24. hīc: on the door just mentioned. **amor taurī:** *the love* (of Pasiphaë) *for the bull;* **taurī** is obj. gen.; App. 284.

26. Veneris = **amōris.**

27. labor ille domūs: *that famous house, so laboriously built,* i.e., the Labyrinth; **domūs** is gen. of apposition.

28. rēgīnae: *the princess,* Ariadne, who fell in love with Theseus and assisted his escape.

30. vestīgia: (Theseus's returning) *steps.*

partem opere *in tantō*, sineret dolor, Īcare, *habērēs*.
Bis cōnātus *erat cāsūs* effingere *in aurō*,
bis *patriae* cecidēre *manūs*. Quīn prōtinus *omnia*
perlegerent *oculīs*, nī *jam* praemissus Achātēs
adforet atque ūnā Phoebī Triviae*que* sacerdōs,
Dēiphobē Glaucī, *fātur quae tālia rēgī:*
"*Nōn hoc* ista *sibī tempus* spectācula poscit;
nunc grege *dē* intāctō septem mactāre juvencōs
praestiterit, totidem lēctās *dē* mōre bidentīs."
Tālibus adfāta *Aenēān* (*nec sacra* morantur
jussa virī) *Teucrōs vocat alta in* templa sacerdōs.

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
adfor, ārī, ātus address, speak to*
bidēns, entis *f.* sheep (with two front teeth)
bis twice*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, fail, sink, die*
cōnor, ārī, ātus attempt, try, endeavor
Dēiphobē, ēs *f.* prophetess and priestess of Apollo and Hecate†
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
effingō, ere, finxī, fictus fashion, portray†
Glaucus, ī *m.* a sea-god gifted with prophetic powers, father of Deiphobe, the Cumaean Sibyl
grex, gregis *m.* herd, flock†
Īcarus, ī *m.* son of Daedalus, who in his flight with his father from Crete flew too near the sun, melted his wings, fell into the sea, and was drowned†
intāctus, a, um untouched, unbroken
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, ox*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather*
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
nisi, nī if not, unless*
opus, eris *n.* work (of art); toil, labor*
perlegō, ere, lēgī, lēctus survey, examine†
Phoebus, ī *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus send forward
praestō, āre, stitī, status (stitus) excel, be better
prōtinus continuously, at once
quīn (but) that, nay even, why not*
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
septem seven
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs permit, allow*
spectāculum, ī *n.* sight, spectacle†
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
totidem as many, so many
Trivia, ae *f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world
ūnā together, at the same time

---

31. **sineret dolor:** *did grief permit;* equivalent to a condition contrary to fact. **habērēs:** conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382.

32. **(Daedalus) bis cōnātus erat cāsūs (Īcarī) effingere in aurō.**

33–76. In obedience to the command of the Sibyl, Aeneas performs the customary sacrifices, prays to the gods, imploring their favor, entreats the help of the prophetess, and vows to Apollo and Diana a temple, with sacred games to Apollo and a special sanctuary and college of priests to the Sibyl.

33. **omnia:** pronounce here as though spelled **omnja**, the **i** becoming consonantal; App. 401.

34. **(Aenēās et sociī) perlegerent, nī adforet:** conclusion and condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

35–36. **sacerdōs:** the Sibyl who is priestess of Apollo and Hecate. **Glaucī:** (*daughter*) *of Glaucus.* **rēgī (Aenēae).**

37. **hoc:** pronounce hocc, making a long syllable. **ista spectācula:** *those sights on which you are gazing.*

38. **intāctō:** *untouched (by the yoke).*

39. **praestiterit:** *it were better;* potential subj.; App. 252.

40. **sacra:** substantively, *sacrifices,* modified by **jussa**, and object of **morantur** whose subject is **virī (Teucrī).**

41. **templa:** a cave in the rocky hillside, as is seen from the following line.

Excīsum Euboïcae latus *ingēns* rūpis *in* antrum,
quō lātī *dūcunt* aditūs centum, ōstia centum,
unde *ruunt* totidem *vōcēs*, respōnsa Sibyllae.
Ventum erat ad līmen, cum virgō "Poscere *fāta*
tempus" ait; "deus ecce *deus!" Cui tālia fantī*
ante forēs subitō *nōn* vultūs, *nōn* color *ūnus*,
nōn cōmptae *mānsēre* comae; *sed pectus* anhēlum,
et rabiē fera corda tument, *majorque vidērī*
nec mortāle sonāns, adflāta *est nūmine* quandō
jam propiōre *deī*. "Cessās *in* vōta precēs*que*,
Trōs" *ait "Aenēā?* Cessās? *Neque* enim *ante* dehīscent
attonitae *magna ōra domūs." Et tālia fāta*
conticuit. Gelidus *Teucrīs per* dūra cucurrit
ossa tremor, *funditque* precēs *rēx pectore ab īmō:*

---

adflō (1) breathe upon, blow upon, inspire
aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance
anhēlus, a, um panting, gasping
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
attonitus, a, um thunderstruck, amazed
centum hundred*
cessō, (1) cease, pause, delay, hesitate
color, ōris *m.* color, hue, tint
cōma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
cōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus arrange (properly)†
conticēscō, ere, ticuī become silent, hush
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus run, course
dehīscō, ere, hīvī yawn, gape, open
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ecce see! look! behold!*
enim for, indeed, truly*
Euboïcus, a, um Euboean, of Euboea, a large island off the eastern coast of Greece, from which Cumae was settled
excīdō, ere, ī, sus cut, hew (out)
ferus, a, um wild, fierce, untamed*
foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance
gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
os, ossis *n.* bone*
ōstium, (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty*
propior, ius nearer, closer
quandō when, since, because
rabiēs, ēī *f.* rage, fury, frenzy
respōnsum, ī *n.* answer, reply, response
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
totidem as many, so many
tremor, ōris, *m.* trembling, shudder
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
tumeō, ēre, uī swell, be swollen
unde whence, from which source*
virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

42. Euboïcae: see l. 2 and vocabulary.

45. Ventum erat (ā Teucrīs et Sibyllā): *they had come.* **līmen (antrī).**

45–46. Poscere fāta tempus (est): *it is time to ask for the oracles.* **deus ecce deus:** the Sibyl apparently falls into a trance and sees a vision of the god approaching.

47. nōn vultūs (mānsēre): *her countenance changed.* **ūnus = īdem,** as often.

48. comae: under the influence of the god, her hair streams forth in wild disorder. **pectus (est) anhēlum.**

49. major (est) vidērī: *she is larger to look upon* = **major vīsa est.** One of the effects of her inspiration is to make her appear larger.

50. mortāle: cognate acc.; App. 313. **nec mortāle sonāns (est):** *her voice does not sound human.*

51. Cessās (īre).

52. Neque ante(quam in vōta eās).

53. attonitae domūs: *of the cave, awestruck* (by the presence of the god). **fāta:** from for.

55. rēx (Aenēās).

"Phoebe, gravīs *Trojae* semper miserāte *labōrēs*,
Dardana *quī* Paridis dērēxtī *tēla manūsque*
corpus in Aeacidae, *magnās* obeuntia *terrās*
tot *maria* intrāvī duce *tē* penitus*que* repostās
Massȳlum *gentīs* praetenta*que* Syrtibus *arva:*
jam tandem Ītaliae fugientis prendimus *ōrās*,
hāc Trojāna tenus *fuerit fortūna secūta.*
Vōs quoque Pergameae *jam* fās *est* parcere *gentī*,
dīque deaeque omnēs, quibus obstitit Īlium *et ingēns*
glōria Dardaniae. *Tūque, Ō* sānctissima *vātēs*,
praescia ventūrī, *dā* (*nōn* indēbita poscō
rēgna meīs fātīs) Latiō cōnsīdere *Teucrōs*
errantīsque deōs agitāta*que nūmina Trojae.*
Tum Phoebō *et* Triviae solidō *dē* marmore templum

Aeacidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Aeacus, Achilles
agitō (1) drive, harass, toss, agitate
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down); settle*
Dardania, ae *f.* Troy, city of Dardanus
Dardanus, a, um Trojan, Dardanian
dērigō (dīrigō), **ere, rēxī, rēctus** direct, guide
dux, ducis, *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
glōria, ae *f.* glory, fame, reputation
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
hāc . . . tenus = **hāctenus** thus far, hitherto
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Troy, Ilium
indēbitus, a, um not due, not owed, undue†
intrō (1) enter, penetrate
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy*
marmor, oris *n.* marble
Massȳlī, (ōr)um *m.* tribe of North Africa
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
obeō, īre, iī (īvī), **itus** approach, traverse, skirt†
obstō, āre, stitī, status stand in the way, oppose (*dat.*)
parcō, ere, pepercī (**parsī**), **parsus** spare (*dat.*)
Paris, idis (os) *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
penitus deep(ly), (from) within*
Pergameus, a, um Trojan
Phoebus, ī *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
praescius, a, um foreknowing, prescient (*gen.*)†
praetendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch before, extend
pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp
quoque also, furthermore, too, likewise
repos(i)tus, a, um secluded, remote
sānctus, a, um holy, sacred, sainted*
semper always, ever*
solidus, a, um solid, whole, firm
Syrtis, is *f.* quicksands off the northern coast of Africa
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
tenus *see* **hāc . . . tenus**
tot so many*
Trivia, ae *f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
ventūrum, ī *n.* the future, what is to come

---

56. Phoebe miserāte: voc.

57. dērēx(is)tī: Apollo as god of archery had directed the fatal arrow of Paris, which struck Achilles in his heel, his only vulnerable spot, and killed him.

60. Syrtibus: dat. with compound.

62. hāctenus Trojāna fortūna fuerit secūta: *thus far, and thus far only let Trojan misfortune have followed me.* **fuerit:** vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

66–67. ventūrī: more picturesque than **futūrī**; gen. with **praescia. dā cōnsīdere:** *grant that the Trojans may settle;* the inf. with a verb of granting; App. 260. **(in) Latiō.**

68. deōs: especially the Trojan penates.

69–70. Vergil here refers to the magnificent temples on the Palatine, built by Augustus to Apollo and Diana, and to

īnstituam fēstōs*que diēs dē nōmine* Phoebī.
Tē quoque *magna manent rēgnīs* penetrālia *nostrīs:*
hīc ego namque tuās sortīs arcāna*que fāta*
dicta meae gentī pōnam, lēctōs*que* sacrābō,
alma, *virōs.* Foliīs tantum *nē* carmina mandā,
nē turbāta volent rapidīs lūdibria *ventīs:*
ipsa canās ōrō." *Fīnem dedit ōre* loquendī.
At Phoebī nōndum patiēns *immānis in* antrō
bacchātur *vātēs, magnum sī pectore possit*
excussisse *deum; tantō* magis *ille* fatīgat
ōs rabidum, fera corda domāns, fingit*que* premendō.
Ōstia *jamque domūs* patuēre *ingentia* centum
sponte *suā vātīsque ferunt* respōnsa *per aurās:*
"*Ō tandem magnīs pelagī* dēfūncte perīclīs

almus, a, um nourishing, kind(ly)
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
arcānus, a, um secret, hidden
bacchor, ārī, ātus rave, storm, rage
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
carmen, inis *n.* song, verse, oracle
centum hundred*
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
dēfungor, ī, fūnctus perform, finish (*abl.*)†
domō, āre, uī, itus tame, subdue
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off*
fatīgō (1) weary, tire (out), harass
ferus, a, um wild, fierce, untamed*
fēstus, a, um festal, festival, holiday
fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus mold, train
folium, (i)ī *n.* leaf, foliage
īnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, ordain†
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus select, gather*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
lūdibrium, (i)ī *n.* sport, mockery†
magis more, rather*
mandō (1) order, intrust, commend
nōndum not yet
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
ōstium, (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
patiēns, entis enduring, tolerating (*gen.*)
penetrālia, ium *n.* inner part, sanctuary
perīc(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk
Phoebus, ī *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, control*
quoque also, too, even, furthermore*
rabidus, a, um raving, mad, frenzied†
rapidus, a, um swift, snatching, whirling*
respōnsum, ī *n.* answer, reply, response
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
spōns, spontis *f.* free will, choice
tantum only, so much, so far
turbō (1) confuse, disarrange, disturb*
volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

the **Lūdī Apollinārēs**, a great Roman festival in honor of Apollo.

71. Tē: addressed to the Sibyl; refers to the keeping of the famous Sibylline books in the Capitol at Rome.

73. lēctōs virōs: at first two, then ten, and finally fifteen men (the **quīndecemvirī**) were intrusted with the care of the Sibylline books, which were supposed to contain prophecies dealing with the fate of Rome and which were consulted in times of great crisis.

74. nē mandā: cf. III, 444, 456, 457, and notes. **nē** with the imp. is chiefly poetic; App. 256, *a*.

75. ventīs: dat. of reference.

76. (ut tū) **ipsa canās**: obj. of **ōrō**.

77–97. The Sibyl announces to Aeneas his future wars and urges him to be steadfast and endure to the end.

77. nōndum Phoebī patiēns: *not yet submissive to Phoebus*, i.e., she still struggles against the inspiration of the god.

78. sī possit: a conditional clause, used virtually as an indir. quest.

80. fingit (eam): a picture from breaking a spirited horse, as is the figure of the preceding verse.

83. Ō (tū) dēfūncte: voc. **perīc(u)līs**: abl. with **dēfungor**; App. 342.

(*sed terrae* graviōra *manent*), *in rēgna* Lavīnī
Dardanidae *venient* (*mitte hanc dē pectore cūram*),
sed nōn et vēnisse volent. Bella, horrida *bella,*
et Thybrim *multō* spūmantem *sanguine cernō.*
Nōn Simoīs *tibi nec* Xanthus *nec* Dōrica castra
dēfuerint; *alius* Latiō *jam* partus Achillēs,
nātus *et ipse deā; nec Teucrīs* addita *Jūnō*
ūsquam aberit, *cum tū* supplex *in rēbus* egēnīs
quās gentīs Italum *aut quās nōn* ōrāveris *urbēs!*
Causa malī *tantī conjūnx* iterum hospita *Teucrīs*
externī*que* iterum thalamī.
Tū nē cēde malīs, *sed* contrā audentior *ītō*
quā *tua tē fortūna* sinet. *Via prīma* salūtis,
quod minimē rēris, Grajā pandētur *ab urbe.*"
Tālibus ex adytō *dictīs* Cūmaea Sibylla

---

absum, esse, fuī be absent, be lacking
Achillēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* famous Greek chieftain*
addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
adytum, ī *n.* inner sanctuary, shrine
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment*
causa, ae *f.* reason, cause, occasion*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, go*
contrā opposite, facing*
Cūmaeus, a, um of Cumae, a city near Naples
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Trojan, Dardanian*
dēsum, esse, fuī be lacking, be absent
Dōricus, a, um Doric, Greek
egēnus, a, um needy, poor; critical
externus, a, um outer, foreign
Grajus, a, um Greek*
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
horridus, a, um bristling, terrible
hospitus, a, um strange, foreign
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
iterum again, anew, a second time*
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy*
Lavīnium, (i)ī *n.* city near Rome
malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, disaster*
minimē least, not at all†
nāscor, ī, nātus be born, rise*
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, open*
pariō, ere, peperī, partus produce, gain
quā where(by), wherever, in any (some) way
reor, rērī, ratus think, suppose, reckon
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, salvation, health
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
Simoīs, entis *m.* river near Troy
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs permit, allow*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
thalamus, ī *m.* bridal chamber, wedlock*
Thybris, (id)is, *acc.* **brim,** *m.* the Tiber, a river of Italy
ūsquam anywhere, ever
Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy

---

84. graviōra (perīcula).

86. sed et volent nōn vēnisse. et = **etiam:** *even, also.*

89. dēfuerint: fut. perf. Translate as a fut. **alius Achillēs:** Turnus who plays a prominent part in the last six books of the *Aeneid.* See the note on IV, 615.

90. et: *also, too.*

91. supplex: Aeneas is compelled to go as a suppliant to Evander, who lives on the Palatine, the later site of Rome, as is related in the latter part of the *Aeneid.*

92. Ital(ōr)um.

93. Causa (erit). conjūnx hospita: Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus. She had been betrothed to Turnus, but on the arrival of Aeneas she was pledged by her father to him, and like a second Helen (iterum) she was the cause of war.

95. ītō: *continue to go.*

96. quā (viā).

97. (id) quod. Grajā urbe: *from a Greek city,* Pallanteum on the Tiber, where Rome afterward stood.

98–123. Aeneas begs the Sibyl to guide him on his journey to the lower

horrendās canit ambāgēs antrō*que* remūgit,
obscūrīs vēra involvēns: *ea* frēna *furentī*
concutit *et* stimulōs *sub pectore* vertit Apollō.
Ut prīmum cessit furor *et* rabida *ōra* quiērunt,
incipit *Aenēās* hērōs: "*Nōn ūlla labōrum,*
Ō virgō, *nova mī* faciēs inopīna*ve surgit;*
omnia praecēpī *atque animō mēcum ante* perēgī.
Ūnum ōrō: quandō *hīc* īnfernī jānua *rēgis*
dīcitur et tenebrōsa palūs Acheronte refūsō,
īre ad cōnspectum cārī *genitōris et ōra*
contingat; doceās iter *et sacra* ōstia pandās.
Illum ego per flammās et mīlle *sequentia tēla*
ēripuī hīs umerīs mediōque ex hoste recēpī;
ille meum comitātus iter *maria omnia mēcum*
atque omnīs pelagīque minās *caelīque ferēbat,*
invalidus, *vīrīs* ultrā sortem*que* senectae.

Acherōn, ontis *m.* river of Hades
ambāgēs, is *f.* winding; mystery
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, depart*
comitor, ārī, ātus accompany, attend, escort, follow*
concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake, shatter
cōnspectus, ūs *m.* sight, interview
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, befall*
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
frēnum, ī *n.* rein, curb, check
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dire*
hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
īnfernus, a, um nether, infernal
inopīnus, a, um unexpected, sudden
invalidus, a, um weak, feeble, infirm
involvō, ere, ī, volūtus wrap, infold
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
jānua, ae *f.* door, entrance
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
minae, ārum *f.* threat, menace; pinnacle
obscūrus, a, um dark, dim, obscure*
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
ōstium, (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere†
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, disclose*
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus traverse, finish
praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus anticipate, teach
quandō when, since, because
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, calm, cease*
rabidus, a, um raving, mad, frenzied
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus recover, rescue*
refundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (back, out)
remūgiō, īre bellow, roar†
senecta, ae *f.* old age, eld
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
stimulus, ī *m.* goad, spur, prick†
tenebrōsus, a, um dark, gloomy
ultrā beyond, more than (*acc.*)†
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
vērum, ī *n.* truth, reality, right
virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*

---

world, that he may meet the shade of his father Anchises.

99. (ex) antrō.

100. ea (= tālia) frēna: the figure of horsemanship is continued from ll. 77–80.

102. quiē(vē)runt.

104. mī = mihi.

107. dīcitur (esse). Acheronte refūsō: abl. abs.; the overflow of the Acheron was supposed to form Lake Avernus.

109. contingat (mihi): vol. clause in apposition with ūnum in l. 106. doceās, pandās: vol. subjunctives; App. 254.

112. iter: obj. of the middle part., comitātus.

Quīn, *ut tē* supplex *peterem et tua līmina* adīrem,
īdem ōrāns mandāta *dabat. Nātīque patrisque,*
alma, precor, miserēre (*potes namque omnia, nec tē*
nēquīquam lūcīs Hecatē praefēcit Avernīs),
sī potuit mānīs accersere *conjugis* Orpheus
Thrēiciā frētus citharā fidibus*que* canōrīs,
sī frātrem Pollūx alternā *morte* redēmit
itque redit*que viam* totiēns. *Quid* Thēsea, *magnum*
quid memorem Alcīdēn? *Et mī genus ab Jove summō."*
Tālibus ōrābat *dictīs ārāsque tenēbat,*
cum sīc orsa loquī *vātēs:* "Sate *sanguine dīvum,*

accersō, ere, sīvī, sītus summon, invite
adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus approach
Alcīdēs, ae *m.* Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, who as one of his labors descended to Hades and carried off Cerberus, the watchdog of Pluto
almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)
alternus, a, um alternate, alternating
Avernus, a, um of Lake Avernus in Campania, where there was an entrance to Hades*
canōrus, a, um tuneful, musical†
cithara, ae *f.* lyre, harp, cither
fidēs, ium *f.* lyre, strings, cords; chords†*
frāter, tris *m.* brother*
frētus, a, um relying on (*abl.*)
Hecatē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell*
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
mandātum, ī *n.* command, charge, behest
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
memorō (1) (re)call, recount, relate*
misereor, ērī, itus pity, commiserate (*gen.*)
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
ordior, īrī, orsus begin, undertake
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
Orpheus, ī *m.* famous poet and musician of Thrace who went down to Hades to bring back his wife Eurydice, but failed†
Pollūx, ūcis *m.* son of Jupiter and Leda; after the death of Castor, his twin brother, Pollux, shared his immortality with him on alternate days†
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus set over (*acc.*, *dat.*)†
precor, ārī, ātus pray, entreat*
quīn (but) that, nay even, why not*
redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus return
redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus redeem†
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
Thēseus, eī (eos), *acc.* **ea**, *m.* early king of Athens, who, among other exploits, descended to Hades with his friend Pirithoüs to carry off Proserpina†
Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace, a region northeast of Greece
totiēns so many times, so often

115. ut peterem: subst. clause of vol. origin in apposition with **mandāta.**

116. Nātī, patris: genitives with **miserēre** (imp.); App. 289.

117. potes omnia: *you can* (*do*) *all things.*

120. citharā, fidibus: ablatives of means with **frētus.**

122. viam: cognate acc.; App. 313. **Thēsea:** acc., a Greek form; App. 69.

123. Alcīdēn = Hercules, a word which cannot be used in dactylic hexameter (– ◡ –). As one of Hercules's celebrated twelve labors, he descended to Hades and carried off Cerberus, the three-headed dog of Pluto, which guarded the entrance of the infernal regions. **mī genus (est). mī = mihi:** dat. of possession. **ab Jove:** through Venus, daughter of Jupiter.

124–155. The Sibyl informs Aeneas of the three conditions which must be fulfilled before he may gain admission to the lower world. The conditions are: (1) the bringing of the golden bough; (2) the purification of the fleet which had been polluted by the death of Misenus; (3) propitiatory sacrifices to the manes and gods of the lower world.

124. ārāsque tenēbat: as a suppliant.

125. orsa (est). Sate: voc.

Trōs Anchīsiadē, facilis dēscēnsus Avernō:
noctēs atque diēs patet *ātrī* jānua Dītis;
sed revocāre gradum *superāsque* ēvādere *ad aurās*,
hoc opus, *hic labor est.* Paucī, *quōs* aequus amāvit
Juppiter aut ardēns ēvēxit *ad* aethera virtūs, 130
dīs genitī *potuēre. Tenent* media *omnia silvae*,
Cōcȳtus*que* sinū *lābēns* circumvenit *ātrō*.
Quod *sī tantus amor mentī, sī tanta* cupīdō *est*
bis Stygiōs innāre lacūs, bis nigra *vidēre*
Tartara, *et* īnsānō juvat indulgēre *labōrī*, 135
accipe quae peragenda prius. Latet arbore opācā
aureus *et* foliīs *et* lentō vīmine rāmus,
Jūnōnī īnfernae *dictus sacer; hunc* tegit *omnis*
lūcus *et* obscūrīs claudunt convallibus *umbrae.*

---

aequus, a, um equal, level, impartial
aethēr, eris, *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, heaven, sky*
amō (1) love, cherish, like*
Anchīsiadēs, ae *m.* descendant of Anchises, Aeneas
arbōs (or), **oris** *f.* tree; wood*
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
Avernus, ī *m.* lake of central Italy, where there was an entrance to Hades; Hades*
bis twice*
circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus encircle†
claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, shut (in)*
Cōcȳtus, ī *m.* river of Hades†
convallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale†
cupīdō, inis *f.* desire, love, passion
dēscēnsus, ūs *m.* descent†
Dīs, Dītis *m.* Pluto, god of Hades
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus escape, come out
ēvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear (aloft)†
facilis, e easy, favorable, ready
folium, (i)ī *n.* leaf, foliage
gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, beget
gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
indulgeō, ēre, lsī, ltus indulge (in) (*dat.*)
īnfernus, a, um infernal, nether
innō (1) swim, float (in), navigate†
īnsānus, a, um mad, insane, frenzied
jānua, ae *f.* door, entrance
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
lentus, a, um pliant, tough, flexible
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
medium, (i)ī *n.* middle, midst, center
niger, gra, grum black, gloomy, dusky*
obscūrus, a, um dark, shadowy, gloomy*
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy
opus, eris *n.* work, task, toil, deed*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
paucus, a, um small, few, scanty
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus accomplish
prius first, sooner
quod because, but
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, bough, limb*
revocō (1) recall, call back, retrace
sinus, ūs *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*
Tartara, ōrum *n.* abode of the wicked in Hades
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
vīmen, inis *n.* twig, shoot
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, excellence, valor*

---

126. facilis (est) dēscēnsus Avernō (= **ad Avernum**): dat. of direction; *the descent is easy*, i.e., by dying.

129. hoc: pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable. **hoc, hic**; agree in gender with their predicate nouns, **opus, labor**; App. 240, *a*. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 432–433.

"Long is the way
And hard that out of hell leads up to light."

131. potuēre (hoc): *could do this.*

134. innāre: inf. with (tibi) **cupīdō est** which is equivalent to **cupīs**, *you wish.* **bis**: now and again at death.

136. peragenda (sint). (in) arbore.

137. foliīs, vīmine: ablatives of respect.

138. Jūnōnī īnfernae: *to Proserpina*, queen of the lower world. **dictus (esse).**

Sed nōn ante datur tellūris operta *subīre*
auricomōs quam *quī* dēcerpserit arbore fētūs.
Hoc sibi pulchra *suum ferrī* Prōserpina *mūnus*
īnstituit. *Prīmō* āvulsō *nōn* dēficit alter
aureus, *et* similī frondēscit virga metallō.
Ergō altē vestīgā *oculīs et* rīte repertum
carpe *manū; namque ipse volēns* facilis*que sequētur*,
sī tē fāta vocant; aliter *nōn vīribus ūllīs*
vincere nec dūrō *poteris* convellere *ferrō*.
Praetereā jacet exanimum *tibi corpus* amīcī
(*heu* nescīs) *tōtamque* incestat fūnere *classem,*
dum cōnsulta *petis nostrōque in līmine* pendēs.
Sēdibus hunc refer ante suīs et conde sepulcrō.
Dūc nigrās pecudēs; *ea prīma* piācula *suntō*.
Sīc dēmum lūcōs Stygis *et rēgna* invia vīvīs
aspiciēs." *Dīxit,* pressō*que* obmūtuit *ōre*.

aliter otherwise, differently*
altē on high, loftily
alter, era, erum (an)other (of two), second*
amīcus, ī *m.* friend, lover, comrade*
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree; wood(s)*
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold*
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
auricomus, a, um golden-haired, golden-leaved†
āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear (off)
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, pursue
condō, ere, didī, ditus found, hide, bury*
cōnsultum, ī *n.* resolve, decree, oracle†
convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear (off)
dēcerpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck (off)†
dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus lack, fail
dēmum finally, at last
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
exanimus, a, um breathless, lifeless
facilis, e easy, favorable, ready
fētus, ūs *m.* young, produce, growth
frondēscō, ere leaf, sprout†
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
incestō (1) defile, pollute†
īnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, ordain
invius, a, um pathless, trackless
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
metallum, ī *n.* metal, ore, mine†
nesciō, īre, īvī (iī) not know, be ignorant
niger, gra, grum black, dusky, gloomy*
obmūtēscō, ere, tuī become silent, hush
opertum, ī *n.* mystery, hidden part
pecus, udis *f.* animal (of the flock)*
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, tarry*
piāculum, ī *n.* expiation, crime
praetereā besides, also, furthermore*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, control*
Prōserpina, ae *f.* wife of Pluto and queen of Hades
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, noble, splendid*
quam how, than, as*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus find
rīte duly, properly, ritually
sepulcrum, ī *n.* tomb, grave
similis, e similar, like*
Styx, Stygis *f.* river of the lower world†
vestīgō (1) trace, search (for), track (out)†
virga, ae *f.* branch, rod, twig
vīvus, a, um alive, living

140–141. ante . . . quam: *until.* **auricomōs fētūs. quī:** indefinite. **dēcerpserit:** fut. perf.

145–146. vestīgā et rīte carpe.

149. jacet: *lies* (*unburied*). **tibi:** ethical dat.; best left untranslated.

150. tōtam classem: thus including Aeneas and making it impossible for him to sacrifice until he has been properly purified.

152. Sēdibus = **ad sēdēs:** dat. of direction. **refer:** imp.; App. 202. **suīs:** *his proper*, irregularly referring to **hunc** instead of to the subject. **(in) sepulcrō.**

153. Dūc: imp. **nigrās:** see V, 97, and 736, with notes. **ea:** attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, *a*. **suntō:** imp. of **sum**; App. 120.

Aenēās maestō dēfīxus *lūmina* vultū
ingreditur linquēns antrum, caecōs*que* volūtat
ēventūs *animō sēcum. Cui* fīdus Achātēs
it comes et paribus *cūrīs* vestīgia fīgit.
Multa inter sēsē variō sermōne serēbant,
quem socium exanimum *vātēs, quod corpus* humandum
dīceret. Atque illī Mīsēnum *in lītore* siccō,
ut vēnēre, vident indignā *morte* perēmptum,
Mīsēnum Aeolidēn, *quō nōn* praestantior alter
aere ciēre *virōs* Mārtem*que* accendere cantū.
Hectoris *hic magnī fuerat comes,* Hectora *circum*
et lituō pugnās īnsignis obībat *et* hastā.
Postquam *illum vītā victor* spoliāvit Achillēs,
Dardaniō *Aenēae sēsē* fortissimus hērōs
addiderat *socium, nōn īnferiōra secūtus.*
Sed tum, forte cavā *dum* personat *aequora* conchā,
dēmēns, *et* cantū *vocat in* certāmina *dīvōs,*

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, rouse
Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
Achillēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* Greek chieftain before Troy*
addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
Aeolidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Aeolus, Misenus
aes, aeris *n.* bronze (implement), trumpet*
alter, era, erum (an)other (of two), second*
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
cantus, ūs *m.* song, music, chant, tune
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
certāmen, inis *n.* contest, rivalry*
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus (a)rouse, stir (up)*
concha, ae *f.* (sea) shell, conch†
Dardanius, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
dēfīgō, ere, xī, xus fix (down), cast down
dēmēns, entis mad, crazy, foolish
ēventus, ūs *m.* outcome, result, event†
exanimus, a, um breathless, lifeless
fīdus, a, um faithful, trusty, safe*
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, plant, pierce*
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
hasta, ae *f.* spear, lance, dart
Hector, oris, *acc.* **ora,** *m.* Trojan leader*
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
humō (1) bury, inter, cover with earth†
indignus, a, um unworthy, undeserved
ingredior, ī, gressus advance, enter
īnsignis, e distinguished, marked*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, desert*
lituus, ī *m.* (curved) trumpet†
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
Mārs, rtis *m.* (god of) war
Mīsēnus, ī *m.* Trojan trumpeter
obeō, īre, iī (īvī), **itus** enter, approach
pār, paris equal, like, matched*
perimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus destroy
personō, āre, uī, itus sound through, make (re)sound
postquam after (that), when*
praestāns, antis excellent, superior
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, fray, combat*
sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech
serō, ere, uī, rtus join, discuss*
siccus, a, um dry, thirsty
spoliō (1) despoil, plunder, rob (*abl.*)
varius, a, um various, different, diverse*
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* track, footprint, step*
volūtō (1) revolve, turn (over), roll
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

156–182. Aeneas finds the corpse of the Trojan trumpeter, Misenus, on the shore and prepares his funeral pyre.

156. lūmina = oculōs; obj. of the middle part., dēfīxus.

159. cūrīs: abl. of manner.

162. quod corpus dīceret: indir. quest.

164. nōn alter (erat) praestantior.

165. ciēre: with praestantior; App. 265.

166. circum Hectora: acc., a Greek form.

168. illum: Hector.

171. conchā: Triton's horn; hence his jealousy.

aemulus exceptum Trītōn, *sī* crēdere dignum *est*,
inter saxa virum spūmōsā immerserat *undā*.
Ergō *omnēs magnō circum clāmōre* fremēbant,
praecipuē *pius Aenēās*. *Tum* jussa Sibyllae,
haud mora, fēstīnant flentēs *āramque* sepulcrō
congerere arboribus *caelōque* ēdūcere certant.
Ītur in antīquam silvam, stabula *alta* ferārum,
prōcumbunt piceae, sonat icta secūribus īlex
fraxineae*que* trabēs cuneīs *et* fissile rōbur
scinditur, advolvunt *ingentīs montibus* ornōs.
Nec nōn Aenēās opera *inter tālia prīmus*
hortātur *sociōs* paribus*que* accingitur *armīs*.
Atque haec ipse suō trīstī cum corde volūtat
aspectāns *silvam* immēnsam, *et sīc forte* precātur:
"*Sī nunc sē nōbīs ille* aureus arbore rāmus
ostendat nemore *in tantō!* Quandō *omnia* vērē

---

accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird(le)
advolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll†
aemulus, a, um emulous, jealous
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree; wood(s)*
a(d)spectō (1) look at, behold
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
certō (1) strive, fight, vie, contend
congerō, ere, gessī, gestus heap (up)
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust*
cuneus, ī *m.* wedge, block (of seats)
dignus, a, um worthy, deserving
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead out, raise
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus catch, receive
fera, ae *f.* wild beast
fēstīnō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
fissilis, e easily split, cleavable†
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, lament, mourn
fraxineus, a, um ashen, of ash-tree†
fremō, ere, uī, itus murmur, lament*
hortor, ārī, ātus urge, encourage, incite*
icō, ere, īcī, ictus strike, smite†
īlex, icis *f.* holm-oak
immēnsus, a, um boundless, measureless
immergō, ere, rsī, rsus plunge, drown
jussum, ī *n.* order, command, behest
mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, wood*
opus, eris *n.* work, task, deed, labor*
ornus, ī *f.* ash-tree
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display*
pār, paris equal, like, matched*
picea, ae *f.* pitch-pine†
praecipuē especially, particularly
precor, ārī, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall
quandō when, since, because
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, bough, limb*
rōbur, oris *n.* oak; strength*
scindō, ere, scidī, scissus split, cleave
secūris, is *f.* ax
sepulcrum, ī *n.* tomb, grave
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
spūmōsus, a, um foamy, frothy†
stabulum, ī *n.* stable, stall, lair, den
trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, timber, tree
Trītōn, ōnis *m.* sea-god famous for his skill in blowing a conch (sea shell) as a trumpet
vērē truly, correctly†
volūtō (1) revolve, roll (over)

---

173. **crēdere**: inf. with adj.; App. 265.

177. **haud mora (est)**.

178. **arboribus**: abl. of means. **caelō = ad caelum**: dat. of direction.

179. **Ītur**: impersonal; translate *they go*.

182. **scinditur**: agrees with the nearest subject.

183–211. Guided by the two doves, Aeneas discovers the golden bough, which he brings to the Sibyl.

184. **accingitur**: *girds himself;* a middle verb.

187. **Sī**: with pres. subj., expressing a wish, "O that," "would that"; App. 253. **(in) arbore.**

heu nimium *dē tē vātēs,* Mīsēne, locūta *est.*"
Vix ea fātus erat geminae cum forte columbae
ipsa sub ōra virī caelō vēnēre volantēs,
et viridī sēdēre solō. *Tum maximus* hērōs
māternās agnōscit avīs *laetusque* precātur:
"*Este* ducēs, *Ō, sī qua via est, cursumque per aurās*
dērigite *in* lūcōs *ubi* pinguem dīves opācat
rāmus humum. *Tūque, Ō,* dubiīs *nē* dēfice *rēbus,*
dīva parēns." *Sīc* effātus vestīgia pressit
observāns *quae* signa *ferant, quō tendere* pergant.
Pascentēs *illae tantum* prōdīre volandō
quantum aciē *possent oculī servāre sequentum.*
Inde *ubi vēnēre ad* faucēs grave olentis Avernī,
tollunt sē celerēs liquidum*que per* āera *lāpsae*
sēdibus optātīs *geminae super* arbore sīdunt,
discolor unde *aurī per* rāmōs *aura* refulsit.

---

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; eye(sight); battle line*
āēr, āeris, *acc.* **āera,** *m.* air, mist, fog
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree; wood(s)*
Avernus, ī *m.* lake in central Italy where there was an entrance to Hades*
avis, is *f.* bird, fowl
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet*
columba, ae *f.* dove, a bird sacred to Venus
dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, faint
dērigō (dīrigō), ere, rēxī, rēctus direct, guide
dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy
discolor, ōris of different color(s)†
dubius, a, um doubtful, wavering
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
effor, ārī, ātus speak (out), say
faucēs, ium *f.* throat, jaws; pass(age)
gravis, e heavy, foul, serious*
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
inde thence, next, thereupon*
liquidus, a, um clear, liquid, fluid
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell*
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
māternus, a, um of a mother, maternal
Mīsēnus, ī *m.* Trojan trumpeter
nimium too (much), excessively
observō (1) watch, guard, observe
oleō, ēre, uī smell, stink†
opācō (1) darken, shade, shadow†
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed, pasture
pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus proceed
pinguis, e fat, fertile, rich
precor, ārī, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press*
prōdeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus advance†
quantum (as much) as, as far as
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
refulgeō, ēre, lsī gleam, shine, glitter
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle*
sīdō, ere, (sēd)ī sit, settle†
signum, ī *n.* sign, signal, token, mark*
solum, ī *n.* ground, soil, earth*
unde whence, from what source*
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace*
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*
volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

---

191. ōra virī = **oculōs Aenēae.**
194. cursum (**vestrum**).
196. dubiīs rēbus: *wavering fortunes;* dat. with **dēfice.**
197. (re)**pressit.**
199. tantum: *only so far.* **prōdīre:** hist. inf.; App. 257. **volandō:** abl. of the gerund, expressing means.
200. aciē servāre: *keep them in sight.* **possent:** implied indir. disc.; App. 390. **sequent(i)um:** subst., *of those following (them).*
201. grave: translate as an adv.; App. 310.
203. (in) **sēdibus optātīs. geminae:** *the two* (doves). **super arbore:** *on top of the tree.*
204. discolor: *of a different color* from the rest of the tree. **aurī aura:** assonance and alliteration.

Quāle solet *silvīs* brūmālī frīgore vīscum
fronde virēre *novā, quod nōn sua* sēminat arbōs,
et croceō fētū teretīs circumdare truncōs,
tālis erat speciēs *aurī* frondentis opācā
īlice, *sīc* lēnī crepitābat brattea *ventō*.
Corripit *Aenēās* extemplō avidus*que* refringit
cūnctantem, *et vātis* portat *sub tecta* Sibyllae.
Nec minus intereā Mīsēnum *in lītore Teucrī*
flēbant *et* cinerī ingrātō *suprēma ferēbant*.
Principiō pinguem taedīs *et* rōbore sectō
ingentem strūxēre pyram, *cui* frondibus *ātrīs*
intexunt latera *et* fērālīs *ante* cupressōs
cōnstituunt, decorant*que super* fulgentibus *armīs*.
Pars calidōs laticēs *et* aēna undantia *flammīs*
expediunt, *corpusque* lavant frīgentis *et* unguunt.

---

aēnum, ī *n.* bronze (kettle, caldron)
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree, wood(s)*
avidus, a, um eager, greedy, ardent
brattea, ae *f.* thin sheet, plate, foil†
brūmālis, e wintry, of winter†
calidus, a, um hot, warm†
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
circumdō, dare, dedī, datus surround
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus place, set up
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
crepitō (1) rattle, rustle, crash
croceus, a, um yellow, saffron
cūnctor, ārī, ātus delay, cling, linger
cupressus, ī *f.* cypress, an evergreen tree sacred to the dead
decorō (1) adorn, ornament, decorate†
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), **ītus** bring forth
extemplō immediately, at once
fērālis, e funereal, of the dead, fateful
fētus, ūs *m.* offspring, fruit, shoot
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, lament, mourn
frīgēns, entis cold, stiff; lifeless
frīgus, oris *n.* cold, frost, chill
frondēns, entis leafy, fronded
frōns, frondis *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsī gleam, shine, glitter
īlex, icis *f.* holm-oak
ingrātus, a, um thankless, unfeeling
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
intexō, ere, uī, xtus interweave, interlace
latex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
lavō, āre, (āv)ī, **ātus** (lautus) wash, bathe
lēnis, e light, gentle, soft, moderate
minus less, in a less degree
Mīsēnus, ī *m.* Trojan trumpeter
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy
pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
portō (1) carry, bear, take, convey*
principiō first(ly), in the first place
pyra, ae *f.* funeral pyre
quālis, e (of) what sort, (such) as*
refringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break off†
rōbur, oris *n.* oak; strength*
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, slice, cleave*
sēminō (1) sow, produce, bear†
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
speciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, sight, aspect
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, heap (up)
suprēma, ōrum *n.* last rites, funeral
taeda, ae *f.* pine, pine (torch, faggot)
teres, etis smooth, rounded, polished
truncus, ī *m.* trunk, stem, body
undō (1) boil, wave, fluctuate, seethe
unguō, ere, ūnxī, ūnctus anoint
vireō, ēre be green, grow, flourish†
vīscum, ī *n.* mistletoe†

---

206. novā fronde: abl. of manner. **quod nōn sua sēminat arbōs:** the mistletoe is a parasite, and its leaves and berries therefore are different from those of the tree on which it grows (**arbōs sua**).

211. cūnctantem: as it seemed to Aeneas in his eager haste.

212–235. Aeneas erects a tomb for Misenus at the foot of a lofty mountain, henceforth known as Mt. Misenum.

213. ingrātō: *thankless*, because unfeeling. **suprēma ferēbant:** *were paying the last rites, honors.*

Fit gemitus. *Tum* membra torō dēflēta repōnunt
purpureāsque *super* vestīs, vēlāmina nōta,
conjiciunt. *Pars ingentī subiēre* feretrō,
trīste ministerium, *et* subjectam mōre *parentum*
āversī *tenuēre* facem. Congesta cremantur
tūrea *dōna*, dapēs, *fūsō* crātēres olīvō.
Postquam conlāpsī cinerēs *et flamma* quiēvit,
relliquiās vīnō *et* bibulam lāvēre favīllam,
ossaque lēcta cadō tēxit Corynaeus aēnō.
Īdem ter *sociōs* pūrā circumtulit *undā*
spargēns rōre levī *et* rāmō fēlīcis olīvae,
lūstrāvitque *virōs dīxitque novissima* verba.
At pius Aenēās ingentī mōle sepulcrum
impōnit *suaque arma virō rēmumque* tubamque
monte sub āeriō, *quī nunc* Mīsēnus *ab illō*
dīcitur aeternumque *tenet per* saecula *nōmen*.

aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen
āerius, a, um airy, lofty, towering
aeternus, a, um everlasting, eternal*
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
bibulus, a, um thirsty, absorbent†
cadus, ī *m.* cask, urn
cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
circumferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry round, go round; purify†
congerō, ere, gessī, gestus heap (up)
conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus heap (up)
conlābor, ī, lāpsus fall (in), collapse
Corynaeus, ī *m.* Trojan priest†
crātēr, ēris *m.* mixing bowl
cremō (1) burn, cremate, consume†
daps, dapis *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
dēfleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus bewail, lament†
favilla, ae *f.* cinder, ashes, embers
fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
fēlix, īcis happy, fruitful, fortunate*
feretrum, ī *n.* bier, death couch†
fiō, fierī, factus become, be made
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan(ing), wail(ing)*
impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place on*
lavō, āre, (āv)ī, ātus (lautus) wash, drench
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus gather, choose*
levis, e light, slight, swift, trivial
lūstrō (1) survey, traverse; purify*
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
ministerium, (i)ī *n.* service, duty, office†
Mīsēnus, ī *m.* Italian promontory†
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
olīva, ae *f.* olive (tree)
olīvum, ī *n.* (olive) oil†
os, ossis *n.* bone*
postquam after (that), when*
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson
pūrus, a, um pure, clear, clean
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus (become) quiet, rest*
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
re(l)liquiae, ārum *f.* remains, rest, leavings
repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus replace, remove*
rōs, rōris *m.* dew, moisture
saeculum, ī *n.* generation, age, eternity
sepulcrum, ī *n.* tomb, grave
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place under
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide*
ter three times, thrice*
torus, ī *m.* couch, bier*
tuba, ae *f.* trumpet
tūreus, a, um of incense†
vēlāmen, inis *n.* covering, veil, garment
verbum, ī *n.* word, speech, talk
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*

221. purpureās vestīs: the customary color at great Roman funerals.

222. feretrō: dat. with compound subeō, instead of the usual acc.

223. ministerium: apposition with pars subiēre feretrō. mōre parentum: Introd. 6.

229. circumtulit = lūstrāvit: *purified.*

231. novissima verba: "Valē," repeated three times. See notes on I, 219; II, 644; III, 68.

234. Mīsēnus: the place is still called Punta di Miseno, or Capo Miseno.

235. dīcitur = vocātur, as often.

Hīs āctīs properē exsequitur praecepta Sibyllae.
Spēlunca *alta fuit vastōque immānis* hiātū,
scrūpea, tūta lacū nigrō nemorum*que* tenebrīs,
quam super haud ūllae poterant impūne volantēs
ɹendere iter pennīs: *tālis sēsē* hālitus *ātrīs*
faucibus effundēns *supera ad* convexa *ferēbat:*
[unde *locum* Grajī *dīxērunt nōmine* Aornon.]
Quattuor *hīc prīmum* nigrantīs terga juvencōs
cōnstituit frontī*que* invergit vīna sacerdōs,
et summās carpēns *media inter* cornua saetās
ignibus impōnit *sacrīs*, lībāmina *prīma*,
vōce vocāns Hecatēn *caelōque* Erebō*que* potentem.
Suppōnunt *alī* cultrōs tepidum*que* cruōrem
suscipiunt paterīs. *Ipse ātrī* velleris agnam

agna, ae *f.* ewe lamb
Aornus, ī, *acc.* **on,** *m.* (*f.*) birdless (lake), Avernus†
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, take, consume
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus place, establish, stand
convexum, ī *n.* hollow, vault (of the sky)
cornū, ūs *n.* horn, tip, end
cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
culter, trī *m.* knife, butcher knife†
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
Erebus, ī *m.* the lower world, Hades
exsequor, ī, secūtus perform, execute
faucēs, ium *f.* jaws, throat, pass(age)
frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, brow*
Grajus, a, um Greek*
hālitus, ūs *m.* breath, exhalation
Hecatē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world
hiātus, ūs *m.* yawning (mouth)†
impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place on (*dat.*)*
impūne safely, with impunity
invergō, ere invert, pour on†
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, ox*
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere
lībāmen, inis *n.* libation, offering†
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
niger, gra, grum black, gloomy, dusky*
nigrāns, antis black, gloomy, dark
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather
potēns, entis powerful, ruling, mighty*
praeceptum, ī *n.* bidding, teaching
properē quickly, speedily†
quattuor four
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
saeta, ae *f.* hair, bristle†
scrūpeus, a, um stony, rugged, rough†
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
spēlunca, ae *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
suppōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place beneath
suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus catch up
tenebrae, ārum *f.* darkness, gloom
tepidus, a, um warm, tepid
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
unde whence, from which source*
vellus, eris *n.* fleece, wool, fillet
vīnum, ī *n.* wine*
volāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) bird, fowl, flying creature

236–263. Before the entrance to the lower world Aeneas and the Sibyl sacrifice by night to the gods of the lower world, and in answer to their prayers Hecate comes and opens the entrance shortly before daybreak.

236. (Aenēās) exsequitur.

237. Spēlunca: not the one mentioned in l. 42.

242. dīxērunt nōmine = vocāvērunt. Aornon: a Greek word meaning *birdless*. Avernus is thus fancifully derived from Aornos for the reasons given in ll. 239–241. This line is not found in the best manuscripts and may be a later addition to the poem.

243. nigrantīs: see the notes on V, 97.

244. frontī: dat. with compound.

247. (in) caelōque Erebōque potentem: she was Diana in Heaven and Hecate in Hades.

248. Suppōnunt: *place beneath* (the throats of the victims).

249. ātrī velleris: see the notes on V, 97.

Aenēās mātrī Eumenidum *magnaeque* sorōrī
ēnse ferit, sterilem*que tibī*, Prōserpina, vaccam.
Tum Stygiō *rēgī* nocturnās incohat *ārās*
et solida impōnit taurōrum vīscera *flammīs*,
pingue *super* oleum *fundēns ardentibus* extīs.
Ecce autem *prīmī sub lūmina* sōlis *et* ortūs
sub pedibus mūgīre solum *et* juga coepta *movērī*
silvārum, vīsaeque canēs ululāre *per umbram*
adventante *deā*. "*Procul Ō, procul este*, profānī"
conclāmat *vātēs*, "*tōtōque* absistite lūcō;
tūque invāde *viam* vāgīnā*que ēripe ferrum:*
nunc animīs opus, *Aenēā, nunc pectore* firmō."
Tantum effāta *furēns* antrō *sē* immīsit apertō;
ille ducem *haud* timidīs vādentem passibus aequat.
Dī, quibus imperium est animārum, umbraeque silentēs

absistō, ere, stitī depart, withdraw
adventō (1) keep coming nearer, arrive, approach
aequō (1) equal(ize), keep pace with*
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
apertus, a, um open(ed), revealed, clear
autem however, moreover, but*
canis, is *m.* (*f.*) dog, hound
coepī, isse, ptus begin, commence
conclāmō (1) call, shout, exclaim
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
ecce see! look! behold!*
effor, ārī, ātus speak, say, utter
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
Eumenides, um *f.* Furies
exta, ōrum *n.* entrails, vitals
feriō, īre strike, smite, cut, kill
firmus, a, um stout, firm, resolute
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus send in, fling into
impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place on (*dat.*)*
incohō (1) commence, begin, consecrate, build†
invādō, ere, sī, sus enter (on), attack
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
mūgiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus bellow, roar
nocturnus, a, um of the night, nocturnal
oleum, ī *n.* (olive) oil
opus, eris *n.* work, need (*abl.*)*
ortus, ūs *m.* rising, source, spring
passus, ūs *m.* step, pace, stride, gait
pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
profānus, a, um unholy, uninitiated†
Prōserpina, ae *f.* wife of Pluto and goddess of Hades
silēns, entis silent, still, quiet
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun, day*
solidus, a, um solid, whole, firm
solum, ī *n.* ground, earth, soil*
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
sterilis, e barren, sterile, unfruitful
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*
taurus, ī *m.* bull, ox, bullock*
timidus, a, um timid, fearful, anxious†
ululō (1) howl, wail, bark, shriek
vacca, ae *f.* heifer, young cow
vādō, ere go, advance, proceed, go (on)
vāgīna, ae *f.* scabbard, sheath
vīscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh

250. mātrī Eumenidum magnaeque sorōrī: refer to Nox and Tellus, daughters of Chaos.

252. Stygiō rēgī: Pluto (Dis), god of the lower world. **nocturnās:** sacrifices to the deities of the lower world were regularly offered in the night.

254. super: with the final syllable irregularly lengthened under the verse accent; App. 394, *a*.

256–257. coepta (sunt), vīsae (sunt).

258. deā: Hecate coming to open the way and attended by the hounds of Hades. **profānī:** the companions of Aeneas who could not go with him.

261. animīs: abl. with **opus (est)**; App. 341.

262. furēns: see the notes on II, 345.

264–267. Vergil here pauses in the narrative to invoke the gods of the lower world and to ask permission to reveal these sacred mysteries.

et Chaos *et* Phlegethōn, *loca nocte* tacentia lātē,
sit mihi fās *audīta* loquī, *sit nūmine* vestrō
pandere *rēs altā terrā et* cālīgine mersās.
Ībant obscūrī *sōlā sub nocte per umbram*
perque domōs Dītis vacuās *et* inānia *rēgna:*
quāle *per* incertam lūnam *sub lūce* malignā
est iter *in silvīs, ubi caelum* condidit *umbrā*
Juppiter, et rēbus nox abstulit *ātra* colōrem.
Vestibulum *ante ipsum prīmīs in* faucibus Orcī
Lūctus *et* ultrīcēs *posuēre* cubīlia Cūrae;
pallentēs*que* habitant Morbī *trīstisque* Senectūs,
et Metus *et* malesuāda Famēs *ac* turpis Egestās,
terribilēs *vīsū* formae, Lētum*que Labōsque;*
tum cōnsanguineus Lētī Sopor *et* mala *mentis*

---

auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus remove
cālīgo, inis *f.* (thick) darkness, fog
Chaos *n. indecl.* abyss, empty space
color, ōris *m.* color, hue, tint
condō, ere, didī, ditus found; hide*
cōnsanguineus, ī *m.* kinsman, brother
cubīle, is *n.* couch, bed
Cūra, ae *f.* Care, Anxiety
Dīs, Dītis *m.* Pluto, god of Hades
Egestās, ātis *f.* Need, Want†
Famēs, is *f.* Hunger, Famine, Greed
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
faucēs, ium *f.* jaws, throat; pass(age)
forma, ae *f.* shape, form, beauty*
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess
inānis, e empty, ghostly, useless*
incertus, a, um doubtful, uncertain
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
lātē far and wide, widely
Lētum, ī *n.* Death, Destruction, Ruin*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell*
Lūctus, ūs *m.* Grief, Sorrow, Agony
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
malesuādus, a, um ill-counseling†
malignus, a, um scanty, spiteful
malus, a, um evil, wicked, false, bad*
mergō, ere, rsī, rsus sink, plunge†
Metus, ūs *m.* Fear, Fright, Anxiety*
Morbus, ī *m.* Disease, Sickness†
obscūrus, a, um dark, dim, gloomy*
Orcus, ī *m.* (god of the) lower world, Hades; tomb
pallēns, entis pale, pallid, wan
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, disclose*
Phlegethōn, ontis *m.* fiery river of Hades†
quālis, e (of) what sort, (such) as*
Senectūs, ūtis *f.* Old Age, Eld
Sopor, ōris *m.* Sleep, Slumber
tacēns, entis silent, quiet, still
terribilis, e frightful, terrible, dire
turpis, e shameful, disgraceful
ultrīx, īcis avenging
vacuus, a, um empty, free, deserted
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vestibulum, ī *n.* entrance, vestibule

---

266. **sit fās mihi:** vol. or opt. subj.; App. 254, 253. **audīta loquī:** *to tell what I have heard.*

267. (in) **altā terrā:** *deep in the earth;* App. 246.

268–294. Accompanied by the Sibyl Aeneas sets out on his journey. Near the entrance they find the death-bringing powers, and a little farther the horrible monsters of Hades.

268. **Ībant (Aenēās et Sibylla).**

272. **rēbus:** dat. of separation.

274–281. Observe the personification of abstract ideas.

277–278. **Lētum; tum cōnsanguineus Lētī Sopor:** "Sleep and his brother Death." Cf. Shelley, *Queen Mab:*

"Death and his brother Sleep,
One pale as yonder waning moon
With lips of lurid blue,
The other rosy as the morn."

and Tennyson, *In Memoriam*, 67:

"When in the down I sink my head,
Sleep, Death's twin-brother, times my breath;
Sleep, Death's twin-brother, knows not Death,
Nor can I think of thee as dead.'

Gaudia, mortiferum*que* adversō *in līmine Bellum*,
ferreī*que* Eumenidum thalamī *et* Discordia dēmēns
vīpereum crīnem vittīs innexa cruentīs.
In mediō rāmōs annōsa*que* bracchia pandit
ulmus opāca, *ingēns*, *quam sēdem* Somnia vulgō
vāna *tenēre ferunt*, foliīs*que sub omnibus* haerent.
Multaque praetereā variārum mōnstra ferārum,
Centaurī *in* foribus stabulant Scylla*eque* biformēs
et centumgeminus Briareus *ac* bēlua Lernae
horrendum strīdēns, *flammīsque* armāta Chimaera,
Gorgones Harpyia*eque et* forma tricorporis *umbrae*.
Corripit *hīc* subitā trepidus formīdine *ferrum*

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
annōsus, a, um aged, ancient
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
bēlua, ae *f.* beast, monster†
biformis, e two-formed, double-shaped
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* arm, limb*
Briareus, eī *m.* a sea-monster with a hundred hands†
Centaurus, ī *m.* a monster with the body of a horse and the head of a man†
centumgeminus, a, um hundredfold = hundred-armed†
Chimaera, ae *f.* fire-breathing monster, having the head of a goat, and a tail ending in a serpent's head†
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
crīnis, is *m.* lock, hair, tresses*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
dēmēns, entis insane, mad, distracted
Discordia, ae *f.* Strife, Discord†
Eumenides, um *f.* the Furies
fera, ae *f.* wild beast
ferreus, a, um (of) iron
folium, (i)ī *n.* leaf, foliage
foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance
forma, ae *f.* shape, form, beauty*
formīdō, inis *f.* fear, fright, dread
Gaudium, (i)ī *n.* Joy, Delight, Pleasure
Gorgō, onis *f.* snaky-locked monster who turned all beholders to stone
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to), stick*
Harpyia, ae *f.* foul and ravenous monster with the face of a woman and the body of a bird
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dreadful*
innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus weave (in)
Lerna, ae *f.* marsh near Argos in southern Greece, home of the Hydra, a monster with seven serpent heads, slain by Hercules as the second of his twelve labors†
medium, (i)ī *n.* middle, midst, center
mōnstrum, ī *n.* monster, portent, sign*
mortifer, era, erum death-bringing†
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, open*
praetereā besides, also, in addition*
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
Scylla, ae *f.* a monster half maiden and half fish, girt around the waist with howling dogs (wolves)
Somnium, (i)ī *n.* Dream†
stabulō (1) dwell, be stabled†
strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī hiss, creak, whir
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
thalamus, ī *m.* (bridal) chamber, bedroom*
trepidus, a, um agitated, scared, alarmed
tricorpor, oris three-bodied†
ulmus, ī *f.* elm†
vānus, a, um empty, idle, vain
varius, a, um various, different, diverse*
vīpereus, a, um snaky, of snakes†
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*
vulgō commonly, everywhere

280. ferreī: two syllables here by synizesis; App. 403.

281. crīnem: obj. of the middle part., **innexa**; App. 309, *a*.

282. In mediō (vestibulō).

284. ferunt = dīcunt, as often.

288. horrendum: cognate acc.; translate as an adverb. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 625–628:

"All monstrous, all prodigious things,
Abominable, inutterable, and worse
Than fables yet have feigned, or fear conceived,
Gorgons, and Hydras, and Chimaeras dire."

289. Gorgonĕs: a Greek form; App. 65, *a*. **Harpyiae**: three syllables, the yi making a diphthong pronounced *we*. **forma tricorporis umbrae**: Geryon, a Hispanian giant with three bodies, slain by Hercules.

Aenēās strictam*que* aciem *venientibus* offert,
et nī docta *comes* tenuīs sine *corpore vītās*
admoneat volitāre cavā *sub* imāgine formae,
inruat *et* frūstrā *ferrō* dīverberet *umbrās*.
Hinc via Tartareī *quae fert* Acherontis *ad undās*.
Turbidus *hīc* caenō *vastāque* vorāgine gurges
aestuat *atque omnem* Cōcȳtō ērūctat harēnam.
Portitor *hās* horrendus aquās *et* flūmina *servat*
terribilī squālōre Charōn, *cui plūrima* mentō
cānitiēs inculta jacet, *stant lūmina flammā*,
sordidus *ex umerīs* nōdō dēpendet amictus.
Ipse ratem contō subigit *vēlīsque* ministrat
et ferrūgineā subvectat *corpora* cumbā,
jam senior, *sed* crūda *deō* viridis*que* senectūs.

Acherōn, ontis *m.* (a gloomy river of) Hades
aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; eyesight; battle-line*
admoneō, ēre, uī, itus warn, admonish
aestuō (1) boil, seethe, surge†
amictus, ūs *m.* wrap, cloak, mantle
aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood*
caenum, ī *n.* mud, mire, dirt, filth†
cānitiēs, ēī *f.* grayness, gray hair†
cavus, a, um hollow, empty*
Charōn, ontis *m.* ferryman who transported the souls of the dead across the river Styx in Hades†
Cōcȳtus, ī *m.* gloomy river of Hades
contus, ī *m.* pole, pike
crūdus, a, um raw, fresh, bloody
cumba, ae *f.* skiff, boat, bark†
dēpendeō, ēre hang (down), depend
dīverberō (1) strike asunder, beat, cleave
doctus, a, um learned, wise, skilled
ērūctō (1) vomit, belch (forth)
ferrūgineus, a, um rusty, dusky†
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
forma, ae *f.* form, shape, beauty*
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, idly*
gurges, itis *m.* stream, whirlpool, gulf*
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dread(ful)*
imāgō, inis *f.* image, likeness, ghost*
incultus, a, um unkempt, shaggy
inruō, ere, uī rush (on), attack
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
mentum, ī *n.* chin, beard
ministrō (1) serve, tend, provide
nisi, nī if not, unless*
nōdus, ī *m.* knot, fold
offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present
portitor, ōris *m.* ferryman†
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
senectūs, ūtis *f.* old age, eld
senex, senis old, aged; **senior, ōris** older, very old*
sine without (*abl.*)*
sordidus, a, um dirty, filthy, squalid†
squālor, ōris *m.* filth, squalor†
stringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus draw, brush
subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus force, push
subvectō (1) bear, convey, transport†
Tartareus, a, um of Tartarus, abode of the wicked in Hades†
tenuis, e slight, unsubstantial, thin
terribilis, e terrible, dire, awful
turbidus, a, um wild, turbid, thick
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*
volitō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter
vorāgō, inis *f.* whirlpool, whirling water†

---

292. vītās = **animās, umbrās.**

292–294. nī admoneat: condition contrary to fact. **inruat, dīverberet:** conclusions contrary to fact. **sub cavā imāgine formae:** *'neath hollow show of form* (Rhoades). **dīverberet:** conative, *would have tried to strike asunder;* App. 351, 2, *a.*

295–336. The river Styx, Charon the boatman, and the souls of the unburied dead, among whom Aeneas recognizes his friends, Leucaspis and Orontes.

296. caenō: abl. of means or cause. **vastā vorāgine:** abl. of quality.

297. Cōcȳtō: dat. of direction.

299. squālōre: abl. of quality. **cui mentō:** *on his chin.*

300. stant lūmina flammā: *his eyes are aflame with fire.*

301. nōdō: abl. of manner.

304. deō: dat. of possession.

Hūc omnis turba *ad* rīpās effūsa *ruēbat,*
mātrēs atque virī dēfūnctaque *corpora vītā*
magnanimum hērōum, *puerī* innūptaeque puellae,
impositīque rogīs juvenēs *ante ōra parentum:*
quam *multa in silvīs* autumnī frīgore *prīmō*
lāpsa cadunt folia, *aut ad terram* gurgite *ab altō*
quam *multae* glomerantur avēs, *ubi* frīgidus annus
trāns pontum fugat *et terrīs* immittit aprīcīs.
Stābant ōrantēs *prīmī* trānsmittere *cursum,*
tendēbantque manūs rīpae ulteriōris *amōre.*
Nāvita *sed trīstis nunc hōs nunc accipit illōs,*
ast aliōs longē summōtōs arcet harēnā.
Aenēās mīrātus enim *mōtusque* tumultū
"*Dīc*" *ait,* "*Ō* virgō, *quid vult* concursus *ad* amnem?
Quidve petunt animae? Vel quō discrīmine rīpās
hae linquunt, *illae rēmīs* vada līvida verrunt?"

amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
annus, ī *m.* year, season*
aprīcus, a, um sunny, sun-loving
arceō, ēre, uī keep off, defend, confine
autumnus, ī *m.* autumn, fall†
avis, is *f.* bird, fowl
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
concursus, ūs *m.* gathering, concourse
dēfungor, ī, fūnctus finish, perform (*abl.*)
discrīmen, inis *n.* distinction, crisis
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, scatter*
enim for, indeed, truly*
folium, (i)ī *n.* leaf, foliage
frīgidus, a, um cold, chilly, frosty
frīgus, oris *n.* cold, chill, frost
fugō (1) put to flight, rout, drive off
glomerō (1) assemble, gather, roll together
gurges, itis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), gulf*
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus send in(to), let go (*dat.*)
impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place on (*dat.*)*
innūptus, a, um unmarried, virgin
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, forsake*
līvidus, a, um blue, dark, livid†
longē (from) afar, far off*
magnanimus, a, um great-souled, noble
mīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire*
nāvita, ae *m.* sailor, ferryman†
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
puella, ae *f.* girl, maiden
quam how, than, as*
rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
rogus, ī *m.* funeral pyre
summoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove†
trāns across, beyond (*acc.*)
trānsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send across, cross
tumultus, ūs *m.* tumult, uproar, hubbub
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
ulterior, ius farther, remoter
vadum, ī *n.* shallow, ford; deep
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour
virgō, inis *f.* maid(en), virgin, girl*

305. ad rīpās: enlarging upon **hūc.**
306. vītā: abl. with **dēfungor**; App. 342.
307. magnanim(ōr)um.
309. quam multa: *as many* (*as*). **frīgore:** abl. of time when.
313. ōrantēs trānsmittere: poetic for the prose **ōrantēs ut trānsmittant**; App. 360. (**sē**) **trānsmittere. cursum:** obj. of **trāns** in **trānsmittere**; App. 308, *a.*
314. rīpae: obj. gen.; App. 284.
315. Nāvita trīstis: Charon, called portitor in l. 298. Cf. Shakespeare, *Richard* III, I, 4, 46:
"that grim ferryman that poets write of."
316. submōtōs arcet = submovet et arcet.
318. Dīc: imp. quid vult: *what means?*
320. hae (animae): refused passage by Charon.

Ollī sīc breviter *fāta est* longaeva sacerdōs:
"*Anchīsā* generāte, *deum* certissima prōlēs,
Cōcȳtī stāgna *alta vidēs* Stygiam*que* palūdem,
dī cujus jūrāre timent *et* fallere *nūmen.*
Haec omnis, quam cernis, inops inhumāta*que* turba *est;*
portitor *ille* Charōn; *hī, quōs* vehit *unda,* sepultī.
Nec rīpās *datur* horrendās *et* rauca fluenta
trānsportāre prius quam *sēdibus* ossa quiērunt.
Centum *errant* annōs volitant*que haec lītora circum;*
tum dēmum admissī stāgna exoptāta revīsunt."
Cōnstitit *Anchīsā* satus *et* vestīgia pressit
multa putāns sortem*que animō* miserātus inīquam.
Cernit ibī maestōs *et mortis honōre* carentīs
Leucaspim *et* Lyciae ductōrem *classis* Orontēn,

---

admittō, ere, mīsī, missus admit†
annus, ī *m.* year, season*
brevīter shortly, briefly, concisely
careō, ēre, uī, itus lack, be free (*abl.*)
centum hundred*
certus, a, um certain, sure, undoubted*
Charōn, ontis *m.* ferryman of souls across the Styx in Hades
Cōcȳtus, ī *m.* mournful river of Hades
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)*
dēmum at length, finally
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, pilot, chief
exoptō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, prove false (to)*
fluentum, ī *n.* stream, river, flood
generō (1) generate, beget, bear
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dread(ful)*
ibī there, then
inhumātus, a, um unburied
inīquus, a, um unequal, unfair, unjust
inops, opis needy, helpless, destitute
jūrō (1) swear (by), take oath
Leucaspis, (id)is *m.* Trojan leader†
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
Lycius, a, um Lycian, Trojan
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
Orontēs, is *m.* Trojan leader
os, ossis *n.* bone*
palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere
portitor, ōris *m.* ferryman
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press*
prius sooner
prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
putō (1) think, suppose, consider
quam how, than, as*
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, repose*
raucus, a, um hoarse, roaring
revīsō, ere revisit, see again
rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), sepultus bury, inter
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget*
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
stāgnum, ī *n.* lake, marsh, mere
Stygius, a, um of the Styx, a river of Hades*
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
trānsportō (1) carry across, transport†
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus convey, bear*
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace*
volitō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

---

321. longaeva: according to the legend, the Sibyl had been granted as many years as the grains of sand she could hold in her hand, but was not allowed to retain her youth.

324. *By whose divine power the gods fear to swear and prove false.*

325. inops: perhaps without the small coin usually placed in the mouth of the corpse to pay his passage across the Styx. **inhumāta:** no one was allowed to cross the Styx unless duly buried.

327. Nec datur (Charontī) trānsportāre (animās). rīpās, fluenta: objects of the preposition **trāns** in composition; App. 308, *a.*

328. (in) sēdibus: *tomb*, as in l. 152. **quiē(vē)runt.**

331. Anchīsā satus: *son of Anchises.* **(re) pressit.**

332. (in) animō.

333. mortis honōre: *burial.*

334. Orontēn: lost in the storm, l. 113–119.

quōs simul ā Trojā ventōsa *per aequora* vectōs
obruit Auster, aquā involvēns *nāvemque virōsque.*
Ecce gubernātor *sēsē* Palinūrus *agēbat,*
quī Libycō nūper *cursū, dum sīdera servat,*
exciderat *puppī mediīs* effūsus *in undīs.*
Hunc ubi vix multā maestum cognōvit *in umbrā,*
sīc prior adloquitur: "*Quis tē,* Palinūre, *deōrum*
ēripuit nōbīs mediōque sub aequore mersit?
Dīc age. Namque mihī, fallāx *haud ante* repertus,
hōc ūnō respōnsō *animum* dēlūsit Apollō,
quī fore tē pontō incolumem *fīnīsque* canēbat
ventūrum Ausoniōs. Ēn *haec* prōmissa fidēs *est?*"
Ille autem: "*Neque tē* Phoebī cortīna fefellit,
dux Anchīsiadē, *nec mē deus aequore* mersit.
Namque gubernāclum *multā vī forte* revulsum,
cui datus haerēbam custōs *cursūsque* regēbam,

---

adloquor, ī, locūtus address, accost
Anchīsiadēs, ae *m.* descendant of Anchises, Aeneas
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood*
Ausonius, a, um Italian
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind*
autem moreover, however, but*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize
cortīna, ae *f.* caldron (resting on a tripod and serving as a seat for the priestess of Delphi when she delivered an oracle), kettle
custōs, ōdis *m.* guard(ian), sentinel*
dēlūdō, ere, sī, sus deceive, delude†
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
ecce see! look! behold!*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, hurl*
ēn see! look! behold!
excidō, ere, ī fall (out), perish
fallāx, ācis deceitful, treacherous
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, cheat*
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, trust, pledge, fidelity*
gubernāc(u)lum, ī *n.* tiller, rudder
gubernātor, ōris *m.* pilot, helmsman
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to)*
incolumis, e safe, unharmed, intact
involvō, ere, ī, volūtus wrap, engulf
Libycus, a, um of Libya, a country of North Africa*
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mergō, ere, rsī, rsus sink, drown
nūper recently, lately
obruō, ere, uī, utus overwhelm, bury
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot*
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior*
prōmittō, ere, misī, missus promise*
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, direct, guide*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus find
respōnsum, ī *n.* answer, oracle, reply
revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear off, remove
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey*
ventōsus, a, um windy, stormy†

337–383. They meet with the soul of Palinurus, who wishes to cross with Aeneas, but is consoled by the Sibyl with a promise of eternal fame.

337. sēsē agēbat : *was passing along.*
338. Libycō cursū: V, 827–871.
339. mediis effūsus in undīs = effūsus in undāa manēbat in undīs.
343. Dīc: imp.; App. 202. **mihī**: dat. of agent with **repertus.**
345. (in) pontō. (in) fīnīs.
347. Phoebī cortīna: from which the oracles were delivered.
348. deus (Phoebus).
349. gubernāc(u)lum: obj. of **trāxi,** l. 351.
350. cursūs (nāvis tuae).

praecipitāns *trāxī mēcum. Maria* aspera jūrō
nōn ūllum prō *mē tantum cēpisse* timōrem,
quam *tua nē* spoliāta *armīs*, excussa magistrō,
dēficeret *tantīs nāvis surgentibus undīs.*
Trīs Notus hībernās immēnsa *per aequora noctēs*
vēxit *mē* violentus aquā; *vix lūmine* quārtō
prōspexī *Ītaliam summā* sublīmis *ab undā.*
Paulātim adnābam *terrae; jam* tūta *tenēbam,*
nī *gēns* crūdēlis madidā *cum* veste gravātum
prēnsantem*que* uncīs *manibus capita* aspera *montis*
ferrō invāsisset praedam*que* ignāra putāsset.
Nunc mē flūctus habet versant*que in lītore ventī.*
Quod *tē per caelī* jūcundum *lūmen et aurās,*
per genitōrem ōrō, *per* spēs *surgentis* Iūlī,
ēripe mē hīs, invicte, malīs: *aut tū mihi terram*
injice, *namque potes, portūsque* requīre Velīnōs;

---

adnō (1) swim, float to (*dat.*)
aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood*
asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce*
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, fierce*
dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, sink
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off, free (from)*
gravō (1) burden, weigh down, oppress
hībernus, a, um wintry, of the winter
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
immēnsus, a, um boundless, vast
injiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast upon
invādō, ere, sī, sus enter, attack
invictus, a, um unconquered, invincible†
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
jūcundus, a, um pleasant, delightful†
jūrō (1) swear (by), take oath
madidus, a, um wet, dripping
magister, trī *m.* master, pilot, chief
malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
nisi, nī if not, unless*
Notus, ī *m.* (south) wind
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
paulātim gradually, little by little
praecipitō (1) throw, fall headlong
praeda, ae *f.* booty, spoils, plunder
pr(eh)ēnsō (1) catch, grasp, seize
prō before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus discern, see in front
putō (1) think, suppose, consider
quam how, than, as*
quārtus, a, um fourth
quod because, but, the fact that, wherefore
requīrō, ere, sīvī, sītus seek (again)
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
spoliō (1) rob, strip, despoil (*abl.*)
sublīmis, e high, uplifted, aloft, exalted
timor, ōris *m.* fear, dread, anxiety
trēs, tria three*
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
uncus, a, um curved, bent, arched
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey*
Velīnus, a, um of Velia, an Italian city†
versō (1) keep turning, toss, roll
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
violentus, a, um boisterous, violent†

---

351. (per) maria aspera jūrō.

352. tantum timōrem (mē) cēpisse: timōrem is subject and mē the object.

353–354. armīs, magistrō: ablatives of separation. armīs: here refers to the tiller. nē dēficeret: after the idea of fearing in timōrem mē cēpisse; App. 363.

356. aquā: abl. of route or of place. lūmine: *day*, as often.

358. tenēbam: mixed condition; App. 382, *d.*

359–361. (mē) gravātum. capita montis: *edge of the cliff.* nī invāsisset, putā-(vi)sset: conditions contrary to fact; App. 382. praedam: they thought he might have some object of value on his person.

365–366. mihi terram injice: if only three handfuls, the minimum requirement for burial rites and consequent entrance into Hades.

aut tū, sī qua via est, sī quam tibi dīva creātrīx
ostendit (*neque* enim, crēdō, sine *nūmine dīvum*
flūmina *tanta parās* Stygiam*que* innāre palūdem),
dā dextram miserō et tēcum mē tolle per undās,
sēdibus ut saltem placidīs *in morte* quiēscam."
Tālia fātus erat coepit *cum tālia vātēs:*
"Unde *haec, Ō* Palinūre, *tibī* tam dīra cupīdō?
Tū Stygiās inhumātus aquās amnem*que* sevērum
Eumenidum aspiciēs, rīpam*ve* injussus adībis?
Dēsine *fāta deum* flectī spērāre precandō.
Sed cape dicta memor, dūrī sōlācia *cāsūs.*
Nam tua fīnitimī, longē lātē*que per urbēs*
prōdigiīs *āctī* caelestibus, ossa piābunt
et statuent tumulum *et* tumulō sollemnia *mittent,*
aeternum*que locus* Palinūrī *nōmen habēbit.*"
Hīs dictīs cūrae ēmōtae pulsus*que* parumper
corde dolor *trīstī;* gaudet cognōmine *terrā.*

adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus approach
aeternus, a, um everlasting, eternal*
amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood*
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold*
caelestis, e heavenly, divine, celestial
coepī, isse, ptus begin, undertake
cognōminis, e of like name, of the same name†
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
creātrīx, īcis *f.* mother, creator†
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust*
cupīdō, inis *f.* desire, love, passion
dēsinō, ere, sīvī (iī), situs cease, desist
dīrus, a, um fearful, awful, dire*
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ēmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove
enim for, indeed, truly*
Eumenides, um *f.* Furies
fīnitimus, ī *m.* neighbor; *pl.* adjoining people
flectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, move
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
inhumātus, a, um unburied
injussus, a, um unbidden, uninvited†
innō (1) swim, float (on)
lātē wide(ly), far and wide
longē (from) afar, far*
memor, oris mindful, remembering*
os, ossis *n.* bone*
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot*
palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh (water), mere
parumper for a little while, momentarily†
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus expel, drive (out)
piō (1) expiate, propitiate
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
precor, ārī, ātus pray, entreat, beg*
prōdigium, (i)ī *n.* omen, portent, prodigy
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, repose*
rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
saltem at least, at any rate
sevērus, a, um stern, dread, strict†
sine without (*abl.*)*
sōlācium, (i)ī *n.* consolation, solace
sollemne, is *n.* sacrifice, ritual
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, reckon*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, build
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*
tam so (much, greatly), such*
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
unde whence, from what source*

370. undās (Stygiās).

374–375. amnem Eumenidum: the Cocytus.

379. prōdigiīs āctī: according to the legend, the Lucanians, the fīnitimī of *l.* 378, were afflicted with a pestilence, and when they consulted the oracle, they were ordered to make atonement to the shades of Palinurus. This they did by dedicating to him a cenotaph (empty tomb) and a grove near Velia.

381. aeternum: called today Punta di Palinuro. Cf. l. 235.

Ergō iter inceptum peragunt fluviō*que* propinquant.
Nāvita *quōs jam* inde *ut* Stygiā prōspexit *ab undā*
per tacitum nemus *īre pedemque* advertere rīpae,
sīc prior adgreditur *dictīs atque* increpat ultrō:
"Quisquis *es*, armātus *quī nostra ad* flūmina *tendis*,
fāre age quid veniās jam istinc, *et* comprime gressum.
Umbrārum hic locus est, somnī noctisque sopōrae:
corpora vīva nefās Stygiā vectāre carīnā.
Nec vērō Alcīdēn *mē sum* laetātus *euntem*
accēpisse lacū, *nec* Thēsea Pīrithoüm*que*,
dīs quamquam genitī *atque* invictī *vīribus essent.*
Tartareum *ille manū* custōdem *in* vincla *petīvit*
ipsius ā soliō *rēgis trāxitque* trementem;

---

adgredior, ī, gressus address, attack
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn toward
Alcīdēs, ae *m.* descendant of Alceus, Hercules, who descended to Hades and carried off Cerberus, the three-headed dog
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
carīna, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
fluvius, (i)ī *m.* river, stream
gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, beget
gressus, ūs *m.* step, gait, walk, stride
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
increpō, āre, uī, itus reprove, chide†
inde thence, from that point*
invictus, a, um unconquered, invincible
istinc from where you are†
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere
laetor, ārī, ātus rejoice, exult, delight
nāvita, ae *m.* sailor, ferryman, mariner
nefās *n. indecl.* sin, wrong, impiety*
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus complete, do
Pīrithoüs, ī *m.* king of the Lapiths, friend of Theseus†
prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior*
propinquō (1) approach, draw near (*dat.*)
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see (before)
quamquam although
quisquis, quicquid whoever, whichever, whatever
rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
solium, (i)ī *n.* throne, seat
sopōrus, a, um slumberous, sleepy†
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*
tacitus, a, um silent, quiet, still, secret
Tartareus, a, um of Tartarus, the lowest region of Hades
Thēseus, eī (eos), *acc.* **ea**, *m.* early king of Athens who descended to Hades with Pirithoüs and attempted to carry off Proserpina, Pluto's queen
tremō, ere, uī tremble, shake, quiver*
ultrō further, voluntarily*
vectō (1) convey, carry, bear†
vērō truly, indeed, but
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, chain, cable*
vīvus, a, um living, alive, natural

384–416. Charon at first refuses to ferry Aeneas and the Sibyl across the Styx, but after being shown the golden bough he consents.

389. istinc: *from where you are*, without approaching nearer.

391. nefās (est).

392. Alcīdēn: the form **Herculēn** (–⏑⏑–) could not be used in dactylic hexameter. **nec laetātus:** litotes; App. 431. According to the story, Charon was punished by a year's imprisonment for assisting Hercules to enter Hades by ferrying him across the Styx. On this journey Hercules carried off Cerberus to the upper world.

394. vīribus: abl. of respect. **essent:** concession; App. 384. In classical prose **quamquam** usually takes the indicative.

395. ille: Hercules. **in vinc(u)la petīvit = petīvit ut caperet vinc(u)lis. custōdem:** Cerberus.

hī dominam Dītis thalamō dēdūcere adortī."
Quae contrā breviter *fāta est* Amphrȳsia *vātēs:*
"*Nūllae hīc* īnsidiae *tālēs* (absiste *movērī*),
nec vim tēla ferunt; licet *ingēns* jānitor antrō
aeternum lātrāns exsanguīs terreat *umbrās,*
casta licet patruī *servet* Prōserpina *līmen.*
Trōius *Aenēās,* pietāte īnsignis *et armīs,*
ad genitōrem īmās Erebī dēscendit *ad umbrās.*
Sī tē nūlla movet tantae pietātis imāgō,
at rāmum *hunc*" (aperit rāmum *quī* veste latēbat)
"agnōscās." Tumida *ex īrā tum* corda resīdunt.
Nec plūra hīs. Ille admīrāns venerābile *dōnum*
fātālis virgae *longō* post *tempore vīsum*
caeruleam advertit *puppim* rīpae*que* propinquat.
Inde *aliās animās, quae per* juga *longa* sedēbant,
dēturbat laxat*que* forōs; *simul accipit* alveō

---

absistō, ere, stitī depart, cease, desist
admīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire
adorior, īrī, ortus attempt, attack†
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn (to, toward)
aeternus, a, um eternal, continual, lasting
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
alveus, ī *m.* boat; hollow; trough†
Amphrȳsius, a, um Amphrysian, of Amphrysus, a river along which Apollo once herded cattle†
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
aperiō, īre, uī, ertus open, disclose*
breviter shortly, briefly, concisely
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
castus, a, um pure, holy, chaste
contrā opposite, in reply (to)*
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead off, abduct
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend
dēturbō (1) drive off, dislodge
Dīs, Dītis *m.* Pluto, lord of the lower realm
domina, ae *f.* mistress, queen
Erebus, ī *m.* Hades, (god of) the lower world
exsanguis, e bloodless, pale, lifeless
fātālis, e fated, fatal, fateful
forus, ī *m.* gangway, deck
imāgō, inis *f.* appearance, likeness, phantom*
inde thence, next, thereupon*
īnsidiae, ārum *f.* ambush, plot, snare
īnsignis, e distinguished, marked*
jānitor, ōris *m.* doorkeeper, porter†
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge; bench*
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
lātrō (1) bark, howl, bay†
laxō (1) loose(n), clear, open, free
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
patruus, ī *m.* paternal uncle†
pietās, ātis *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
post after, behind (*acc.*); next, later*
propinquō (1) draw near, approach (*dat.*)
Prōserpina, ae *f.* wife of Pluto and queen of Hades
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
resīdō, ere, sēdī subside, settle
rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit*
terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify
thalamus, ī *m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling
venerābilis, e venerable, awful†
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
virga, ae *f.* branch, shoot, twig

---

397. hī: Theseus and Pirithoüs. **dominam:** Proserpina.

398. Amphrȳsia vātēs = Apollinēa vātēs, and refers to the Sibyl.

400. licet (per nōs): *so far as we are concerned.*

401–402. aeternum: cognate acc. Translate adverbially. **(ut) terreat, (ut) servet. patruī = conjugis:** since Proserpina married her paternal uncle.

407. agnōscās: vol. subj.; App. 254.

408. Nec plūra (dicta sunt). hīs: abl. with comparative. **dōnum:** for Proserpina.

412. alveō: dissyllabic here by synizesis, or hypermetric; App. 403, 402.

ingentem Aenēān. Gemuit *sub* pondere cumba
sūtilis *et multam accēpit* rīmōsa palūdem.
Tandem trāns fluvium incolumīs *vātemque virumque*
īnformī līmō glaucā*que* expōnit *in* ulvā.
Cerberus *haec ingēns* lātrātū *rēgna* trifaucī
personat adversō recubāns *immānis in* antrō.
Cui vātēs horrēre *vidēns jam* colla colubrīs
melle sopōrātam *et* medicātīs frūgibus offam
objicit. *Ille* famē rabidā tria guttura pandēns
corripit objectam, *atque immānia* terga resolvit
fūsus humī *tōtōque ingēns* extenditur antrō.
Occupat *Aenēās* aditum custōde sepultō
ēvādit*que* celer rīpam inremeābilis *undae.*
Continuō *audītae vōcēs* vāgītus *et ingēns*

---

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
celer, eris, ere quick, swift, fleet*
Cerberus, ī *m.* monstrous three-headed dog in Hades†
collum, ī *n.* neck*
coluber, brī *m.* snake, serpent
continuō immediately, at once
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
cumba, ae *f.* boat, skiff
custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus escape; traverse
expōnō, ere, posuī, positus place out, disembark†
extendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, extend
famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed
fluvius, (i)ī *m.* river, stream
frūx, frūgis *f.* fruit, produce, meal
gemō, ere, uī, itus groan, roar, mourn
glaucus, a, um gray, green, gleaming†
guttur, uris *n.* throat, gullet†
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder*
humus, ī *f.* ground, earth, soil*
incolumis, e safe, unharmed, intact
īnformis, e shapeless, hideous
inremeābilis, e from which there is no return, irretraceable
lātrātus, ūs *m.* bark(ing), howl(ing)
līmus, ī *m.* slime, mud, mire†
medicō (1) drug, medicate†
mel, mellis *n.* honey
objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw (before)
occupō (1) seize (beforehand), occupy
offa, ae *f.* morsel, cake†
palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, extend*
personō, āre, uī, itus (make) resound
pondus, eris *n.* weight, burden, mass
rabidus, a, um mad, fierce, raging
recubō, āre recline, lie
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax
rīmōsus, a, um full of cracks, leaky†
rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), ultus bury, inter
sopōrō (1) make drowsy, drug
sūtilis, e sewed, with seams†
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
trāns across, beyond (*acc.*)
trēs, tria three*
trifaux, faucis three-throated†
ulva, ae *f.* sedge, marsh grass
vāgītus, ūs *m.* crying, wailing†

---

414. sūtilis: the boat was apparently of skins, sewed together. rīmōsa: made so by the unaccustomed weight placed upon it. palūdem: (*water of*) *the marsh.*

416. (in) līmō.

417–425. Aeneas and the Sibyl find their way blocked by Cerberus, the huge three-headed dog of Hades, but they give him a medicated cake which puts him to sleep and they pass on.

422. objectam (offam).

423. humī: loc.

424. custōde (= Cerberō) sepultō (somnō): abl. abs.

425. inremeābilis: "from whose bourn no traveler returns."

426–449. Under Minos as judge the souls of the dead are divided into five classes: (1) infants; (2) those condemned to death under false accusations; (3) suicides; (4) those who have died for love; (5) renowned warriors.

īnfantumque *animae* flentēs, *in līmine prīmō*
quōs dulcis *vītae* exsortīs *et ab* ūbere raptōs
abstulit *ātra diēs et* fūnere mersit acerbō.
Hōs juxtā falsō damnātī crīmine *mortis.*
Nec vērō *hae* sine sorte *datae,* sine jūdice, *sēdēs:*
quaesītor Mīnōs urnam *movet; ille* silentum
conciliumque *vocat vītāsque et* crīmina discit.
Proxima deinde *tenent* maestī *loca, quī sibi* lētum
īnsontēs peperēre *manū lūcemque* perōsī
prōjēcēre *animās.* Quam *vellent* aethere *in altō*
nunc et pauperiem *et* dūrōs perferre *labōrēs!*
Fās obstat, *trīstisque* palūs inamābilis *undae*
alligat *et* noviēs Styx interfūsa coërcet.
Nec procul hinc partem fūsī mōnstrantur *in omnem*
lūgentēs *campī; sīc illōs nōmine dīcunt.*

---

acerbus, a, um bitter, harsh, sad
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
alligō (1) bind, fasten, tie (to)
auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus carry off
coërceō, ēre, uī, itus restrain, confine†
concilium, (i)ī *n.* assembly, council
crīmen, inis *n.* crime, accusation
damnō (1) condemn, sentence, devote
deinde thence, next, thereupon*
discō, ere, didicī learn, investigate
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
exsors, rtis without a part (lot) (*gen.*)
falsus, a, um false, unfounded, mock
fās *n. indecl.* justice, fate, divine will*
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, lament, mourn
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
inamābilis, e unlovely, hateful†
īnfāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) infant, baby†
īnsōns, ontis innocent, guiltless
interfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour between
jūdex, icis *m.* (*f.*) judge, juryman, umpire†
juxtā next, nearest to (*acc.*)*
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, lūctus mourn, lament
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mergō, ere, rsī, rsus sink, drown
Mīnōs, ōis *m.* king of Crete, and later judge in Hades†
mōnstrō (1) point out, show, teach, guide*
noviēs nine times†
obstō, āre, stitī, status oppose (*dat.*)
palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere
pariō, ere, peperī, partus bear, cause
pauperiēs, ēī *f.* poverty†
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear (to the end), endure
perōdī, ōdisse, ōsus hate, detest†
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw (away)
proximus, a, um next, nearest
quaesītor, ōris *m.* examiner, judge†
quam how, than, as*
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch, rob*
silēns, entis silent, dead, still
sine without (*abl.*)*
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
Styx, ygis *f.* hateful river in Hades
ūber, eris *n.* udder, breast, fertility
urna, ae *f.* urn, vase (from which lots were drawn for the selection of judges)
vērō truly, indeed, but

---

428. vītae: obj. gen. with **exsortīs.**

429. ātra diēs = diēs mortis.

430. mortis: with **damnātī;** App. 291.

432. urnam movet: to select the jūdicēs, who were chosen by lot. Cf. the modern selection of jurymen. **silent(i)um.**

435. manū (suā).

436. Quam vellent: potential subj.; App. 252. **aethere in altō:** *on earth,* whose air is *high* above Hades.

439. noviēs: Cf. *Paradise Lost,* 2, 434–436:

"This huge convex of fire,
Outrageous to devour, immures us round
Ninefold."

441. nōmine dīcunt = vocant.

Hīc quōs dūrus *amor* crūdēlī tābe perēdit
sēcrētī cēlant callēs *et* myrtea *circum*
silva tegit; *cūrae nōn ipsā in morte relinquunt.*
Hīs Phaedram Procrim*que locīs* maestam*que* Eriphȳlēn
crūdēlis *nātī* mōnstrantem vulnera *cernit,*
Euadnēn*que et* Pāsiphaēn; *hīs* Lāodamīa
it comes et juvenis *quondam, nunc* fēmina, Caeneus
rūrsus *et in* veterem *fātō* revolūta figūram.
Inter quās Phoenissa recēns *ā* vulnere *Dīdō*
errābat silvā in magnā; quam Trōius hērōs
ut prīmum juxtā *stetit* agnōvit*que per umbrās*
obscūram, quālem *prīmō quī surgere* mēnse
aut videt aut vīdisse putat *per* nūbila lūnam,
dēmīsit *lacrimās* dulcī*que* adfātus *amōre est*

---

adfor, ārī, ātus address, accost*
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
Caeneus, eī (eos) *m.* girl changed to a young man by Neptune†
callis, is *m.* path, track
cēlō (1) conceal, hide, cover
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
dēmittō, mittere, mīsī, missus send down, let fall, drop, lower*
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
Eriphȳlē, ēs *f.* wife of Amphiaraüs who induced her husband to go to war in order to get rid of him, for which she was murdered by their son†
Euadnē, ēs *f.* wife of Capaneus who threw herself on his funeral pyre†
fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female
figūra, ae *f.* form, shape, figure†
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man)*
juxtā near, next, close to (*acc.*)*
Lāodamīa, ae *f.* wife of Protesilaüs who died with her husband†
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mēnsis, is *m.* month
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, teach, guide*
myrteus, a, um of myrtle, myrtle, a tree sacred to the dead and to Venus, goddess of love†
nūbilum, ī *n.* cloud, cloudiness
obscūrus, a, um dark, obscure, dim*
Pāsiphaē, ēs *f.* wife of Minos who fell in love with a bull
peredō, ere, ēdī, ēsus consume, eat (up)†
Phaedra, ae *f.* wife of Theseus, who killed herself because her love for her stepson, Hippolytus, was unrequited†
Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician (woman), Dido
Procris, (id)is *f.* jealous wife of Cephalus who spied on her husband and was accidentally killed by him†
putō (1) think, suppose, consider
quālis, e (such) as, of what sort*
recēns, entis recent, fresh
revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus revolve, change again
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
sēcrētus, a, um secluded, remote
tābēs, is *f.* wasting, pining†
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, shelter*
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

443. cēlant (eōs).

446. nātī: subj. gen.; *the wounds inflicted by her son.*

447. Pāsiphaēn: see ll. 24 ff.

450–476. Among those who have died for love Aeneas sees the shade of Dido and attempts to defend his course in deserting her, but she scornfully sweeps away out of his sight and throws herself into the arms of Sychaeus, her first husband, while Aeneas stands and weeps.

451. quam: with juxtā and understood with agnōvit in l. 452.

455. amōre: abl. of manner.

"*Īnfēlīx Dīdō*, vērus *mihi* nuntius ergō
vēnerat exstinctam *ferrōque* extrēma *secūtam?*
Fūneris *heu tibi* causa *fuī? Per sīdera* jūrō,
per superōs et sī qua fidēs *tellūre sub īmā est*,
invītus, *rēgīna, tuō dē lītore* cessī.
Sed mē jussa *deum, quae nunc hās īre per umbrās,*
per loca senta sitū cōgunt *noctemque* profundam,
imperiīs ēgēre suīs; nec crēdere quīvī
hunc tantum tibi mē discessū *ferre* dolōrem.
Siste gradum *tēque* aspectū *nē* subtrahe *nostrō.*
Quem fugis? Extrēmum *fātō quod tē* adloquor *hoc est.*"
Tālibus Aenēās ardentem et torva tuentem
lēnībat *dictīs animum lacrimāsque* ciēbat.
Ilia solō fīxōs *oculōs* āversa *tenēbat*
nec magis inceptō vultum sermōne *movētur*
quam *sī* dūra silex *aut stet* Marpēsia cautēs.
Tandem corripuit *sēsē atque* inimīca refūgit

---

adloquor, ī, locūtus address, accost
a(d)spectus, ūs *m.* sight, vision, aspect
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
cautēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, depart*
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus stir (up), (a)rouse*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus force (together)*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up, away)*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
discessus, ūs *m.* departure, separation†
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus quench, destroy, extinguish
extrēma, ōrum *n.* end, death, funeral
extrēmus, a, um final, last, utmost*
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, honor, pledge*
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fasten, fix, pierce*
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
inimīcus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
invītus, a, um unwilling, reluctant
jūrō (1) swear (by), take oath
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
lēniō, īre, īvī, ītus soften, soothe, calm
magis more, rather*
Marpēs(s)ius, a, um of Marpe(s)sus, a Parian mountain famous for its white marble†
nuntius, (i)ī *m.* messenger, message
profundus, a, um deep, profound, vast
quam how, than, as*
queō, quīre, īvī (iī), ītus be able, can†
refugiō, ere, fūgī flee (away), shun
sentus, a, um rough, thorny†
sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech
silex, icis *m.* (*f.*) flint, rock crag
sistō, ere, stetī, status stay, stop
situs, ūs *m.* position; neglect; mould
solum, ī *n.* ground, earth, soil*
subtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus withdraw
torvus, a, um fierce, grim, lowering
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) look (at), watch*
vērus, a, um true, real, genuine*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

456. nuntius: we need not worry as to how this message reached Aeneas: we are dealing with imaginative poetry, not sober history.

457. (tē) exstīnctam (esse). extrēma (= mortem) secūtam (esse).

461. jussa de(ōr)um: see IV, 237, 270.

466. Extrēmum: *this is the last (time) I shall address you.* **quod:** cognate acc.

hoc: pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable.

467. torva: neut. acc. pl., used adverbially.

468. lēnībat = lēniēbat, which could not be used in hexameter (– ◡ – ◡). It has a conative meaning here, *he tried to soothe*, App. 351, 2, *a*.

470. vultum: acc. of respect.

in nemus umbriferum, *conjūnx ubi* prīstinus *illī*
respondet *cūrīs* aequat*que* Sychaeus *amōrem*.
Nec minus *Aenēās* cāsū concussus inīquō
prōsequitur *lacrimīs* longē *et* miserātur *euntem*.
Inde *datum* mōlītur iter. *Jamque arva tenēbant*
ultima, *quae bellō* clārī sēcrēta frequentant.
Hīc illī occurrit Tȳdeus, *hīc* inclutus *armīs*
Parthenopaeus *et* Adrāstī pallentis imāgō,
hīc multum flētī *ad superōs bellōque* cadūcī
Dardanidae, *quōs ille omnīs longō* ordine *cernēns*
ingemuit, Glaucum*que* Medonta*que* Thersilochum*que*,
trīs Antēnoridās Cererī*que sacrum* Polyboetēn,
Īdaeum*que* etiam currūs, etiam *arma tenentem*.
Circumstant *animae dextrā* laevā*que* frequentēs
nec vīdisse semel satis *est;* juvat ūsque morārī
et cōnferre gradum *et veniendī* discere causās.

Adrāstus, ī *m.* Greek warrior†
aequō (1) equal(ize), match, level*
Antēnoridēs, **ae** *m.* a Trojan warrior, son of Antenor†
cadūcus, **a**, **um** fallen, falling, destined to fall, doomed†
cāsus, **ūs** *m.* chance, (mis)fortune
causa, **ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
Cerēs, **eris** *f.* (goddess of) grain
circumstō, **stāre**, **stetī** stand around
clārus, **a**, **um** clear, bright, famous*
concutiō, **ere**, **cussī**, **cussus** shake, shatter, agitate
cōnferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus** unite, join†
currus, **ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
Dardanidēs, **ae** *m.* Trojan, Dardanian*
discō, **ere**, **didicī** learn (how); *perf.* know
etiam also, even, too, likewise*
fleō, **ēre**, **ēvī**, **ētus** weep, lament
frequēns, **entis** crowded, thronging
frequentō (1) crowd, throng, frequent†
Glaucus, ī *m.* Trojan warrior†
gradus, **ūs** *m.* step, walk, pace, stride
Īdaeus, ī *m.* charioteer of Priam†
imāgō, **inis** *f.* image, likeness, ghost*
inclutus, **a**, **um** renowned, famous
inde thence, next, thereupon*
ingemō, **ere**, **uī** groan (over), lament
inīquus, **a**, **um** unjust, harsh, uneven
iter, **itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
juvō, **āre**, **jūvī**, **jūtus** help, please*
laevus, **a**, **um** left (hand), on the left*
longē (from) afar, at a distance*
Medōn, **ontis**, *acc.* **onta**, *m.* Trojan warrior†
minus less
miseror, **ārī**, **ātus** pity, commiserate*
mōlior, **īrī**, **ītus** accomplish, do, make
moror, **ārī**, **ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
nemus, **oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
occurrō, **ere**, (cu)currī, **cursus** (run to) meet (*dat.*)
ordō, **inis** *m.* order, row, rank, array*
pallēns, **entis** pale, pallid, wan
Parthenopaeus, ī *m.* Greek warrior†
Polyboetēs, **ae** *m.* Trojan priest†
prīstinus, **a**, **um** ancient, former†
prōsequor, ī, secūtus follow, attend
respondeō, **ēre**, ī, ōnsus answer; sympathize with*
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
sēcrētus, **a**, **um** secluded, remote
semel once (for all)
Sychaeus, ī *m.* deceased husband of Dido
Thersilochus, ī *m.* Trojan warrior†
trēs, **tria** three*
Tȳdeus, **eī** (**eos**) *m.* Greek warrior†
ultimus, **a**, **um** last, outermost, utmost*
umbrifer, **era**, **erum** shady†
ūsque continuously, ever, still

---

473. illī: dat. of reference.

475. cāsū (Dīdōnis).

476. prōsequitur et miserātur (eam).

477–534. Among the renowned warriors they find Deïphobus; he has been horribly mutilated by the Greeks through the treachery of Helen, who had betrayed him into their hands on the night of the fall of Troy.

481. ad superōs = apud superōs: *among men of the upper world.*

483. Medonta: acc. sing., a Greek form.

484. Cererī sacrum = *priest of Ceres.*

At Danaum procerēs Agamemnoniaeque phalanges
ut vīdēre virum fulgentiaque *arma per umbrās*,
ingentī trepidāre metū; *pars* vertere terga,
ceu *quondam petiēre* ratēs, *pars tollere vōcem*
exiguam: inceptus *clāmor* frūstrātur hiantīs.
Atque hīc Prīamidēn laniātum *corpore tōtō*
Dēiphobum *vīdit*, lacerum crūdēliter *ōra*,
ōra manūsque ambās, populātaque tempora raptīs
auribus *et* truncās inhonestō vulnere nārīs.
Vix adeō agnōvit pavitantem *ac* dīra tegentem
supplicia, *et* nōtīs compellat *vōcibus* ultrō:
"Dēiphobe armipotēns, *genus altō ā sanguine* Teucrī,
quis tam crūdēlis optāvit sūmere *poenās?*
Cui tantum dē tē licuit? *Mihi fāma suprēmā*
nocte tulit fessum vastā tē caede Pelasgum
prōcubuisse *super* cōnfūsae strāgis acervum.

acervus, ī *m.* heap, pile, mass
adeō so (far), indeed
Agamemnonius, a, um of Agamemnon, Greek king, and leader of the expedition against Troy
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
ambō, ae, ō both, two, double
armipotēns, entis mighty in arms
auris, is *f.* ear*
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, destruction
ceu as, just as
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to
cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus confuse
crūdēlis, e cruel, brutal, bloody*
crūdēliter cruelly, brutally†
Dēiphobus, ī *m.* son of Priam, husband of Helen after the death of Paris
dīrus, a, um awful, dire, dreadful*
exiguus, a, um slight, weak, thin
frūstror, ārī, ātus baffle, mock, fail†
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsī shine, gleam, glitter
hiō (1) yawn, gape, stand open†
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
inhonestus, a, um shameful†
lacer, era, erum torn, mangled, maimed
laniō (1) tear, mutilate, mangle†
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
nāris, is *f.* nose, nostril†
nōtus, a, um (well-) known, familiar*
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
pavitō (1) cower, tremble, quake
Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek
phalānx, angis *f.* phalanx, troop
populō (1) strip, rob, devastate
Prīamidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Priam
procer, eris *m.* leader, chief
prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus sink (forward), fall, recline
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch, tear off*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
strāgēs, is *f.* destruction, carnage†
sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take, inflict
supplicium, (i)ī *n.* punishment, suffering
tam so (much, greatly), such*
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide*
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
Teucrus (cer), ī *m.* early king of Troy
trepidō (1) tremble, scurry, bustle
truncus, a, um maimed, mangled
ultrō further(more), voluntarily*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

491–493. trepidāre, vertere, tollere: hist. infinitives. **ceu quondam:** referring to an incident in the Trojan war when the defeated Greeks fled to their ships. **vōcem exiguam:** since they were only shades, lacking in bodily strength. Cf. *Hamlet*, I, 1, 115–116:

"The graves stood tenantless and the sheeted dead
Did squeak and gibber in the Roman streets."

495–497. ōra, manūs, tempora, nārīs: accusatives of respect with **lacerum.**

498. tegentem: the present of attempted action (conative present); App. 351, 1, *c.*

502–503. tantum dē tē: *so much (power) over you.* **suprēmā nocte:** the

Tunc egomet tumulum Rhoetēō *lītore* inānem
cōnstituī *et magnā* mānīs ter *vōce vocāvī.*
Nōmen et arma locum servant; tē, amīce, nequīvī
cōnspicere *et* patriā dēcēdēns *pōnere terrā.*"
Ad quae Prīamidēs: "Nihil *Ō tibi,* amīce, *relictum;*
omnia Dēiphobō solvistī *et* fūneris *umbrīs.*
Sed mē fāta mea et scelus exitiāle Lacaenae
hīs mersēre malīs; *illa haec* monimenta *relīquit.*
Namque ut suprēmam falsa *inter* gaudia *noctem*
ēgerimus, nōstī: *et* nimium meminisse necesse *est.*
Cum fātālis *equus* saltū *super* ardua *vēnit*
Pergama *et* armātum peditem gravis attulit alvō,
illa chorum simulāns euhantīs orgia *circum*
dūcēbat Phrygiās; *flammam media ipsa tenēbat*
ingentem et summā Danaōs ex arce vocābat.
Tum mē cōnfectum *cūrīs somnōque* gravātum

---

adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring (to)
alvus, ī *f.* belly, womb
amīcus, ī *m.* friend, comrade, lover*
arduus, a, um high, lofty, steep*
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
chorus, ī *m.* (dancing) band, troop
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, use up, weary
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus set up
dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart
Dēiphobus, ī *m.* son of Priam and third husband of Helen
euhāns, antis celebrating with cries of Euhan (Bacchus)†
exitiālis, e deadly, mortal, destructive
falsus, a, um false, treacherous, mock
fātālis, e fatal, fateful, fated
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, destruction*
gaudium, (i)ī *n.* joy, delight, pleasure
gravis, e heavy, pregnant, serious*
gravō (1) burden, weigh down, oppress
inānis, e empty, useless, idle, vain*
Lacaena, ae *f.* Spartan woman, Helen
malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
memini, isse remember (*gen.*)
mergō, ere, rsī, rsus sink, drown
monimentum (monumentum), ī *n.* reminder, memorial
necesse necessary, need(ful)
nequeō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus be unable
nihil (nīl) *n.* nothing, not at all
nimium too much, too (greatly)
nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; *perf.* know*
orgia, ōrum *n.* (sacred) rites, revels
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
pedes, itis *m.* infantry, foot soldier(y)†
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
Prīamidēs, ae *m.* son of Priam
Rhoetē(i)us, a, um of Rhoeteüm, a Trojan promontory
saltus, ūs *m.* leap, bound, dancing
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, simulate
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), pay, free*
ter three times, thrice*
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*

---

night of the fall of Troy; abl. of time when.

505. tumulum inānem: a cenotaph.

505–506. These ceremonies entitled the shade of the departed to cross the Styx.

507. tē: your dead body. **tē, amīce:** semi-hiatus; App. 400.

509. tibi: dat. of agent with **relictum (est).**

511. Lacaenae: Helen, whom he disdains to name.

513. ut: *how,* introducing an indir. quest.

514. nō(vi)stī.

516. (in) alvō.

517–518. illa: *that notorious woman;* Deīphobus does not deign to mention Helen by name. **orgia:** cognate acc. with **euhantīs. circum:** with **dūcēbat** = **circumdūcēbat;** this separation of the different parts of a compound word is called *tmesis;* App 445. **flammam:** as

īnfēlīx habuit thalamus, pressit*que* jacentem
dulcis *et alta* quiēs placidae*que* simillima *mortī*.
Ēgregia intereā *conjūnx arma omnia tēctīs*
āmovet *et* fīdum *capitī* subdūxerat ēnsem;
intrā *tēcta vocat* Menelāum *et līmina* pandit,
scīlicet *id magnum* spērāns *fore mūnus* amantī,
et fāmam exstinguī veterum *sīc posse* malōrum.
Quid moror? Inrumpunt thalamō, *comes* additus ūnā
hortātor scelerum Aeolidēs. *Dī, tālia* Grajīs
īnstaurāte, *piō sī poenās ōre* reposcō.
Sed tē quī vīvum *cāsūs, age fāre* vicissim,
attulerint. *Pelagīne venīs* errōribus *āctus*
an monitū *dīvum?* An *quae tē fortūna* fatīgat,
ut trīstīs sine sōle *domōs, loca* turbida, adīrēs?"
Hāc vice sermōnum roseīs Aurōra quadrīgīs

---

addō, ere, didī, ditus add, join*
adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus approach
adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring (to)
Aeolidēs, ae *m.* putative son of Aeolus, Ulysses, a wily Greek†
amāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) lover
āmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove†
an *interrog.* or, whether*
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
dulcis, e sweet, dear, delightful, fond*
ēgregius, a, um wonderful, remarkable
ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
error, ōris *m.* wandering, mistake
exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus destroy, blot out
fatīgō (1) weary, harass, torment, vex
fīdus, a, um faithful, trusty, safe*
Grajus, a, um Greek*
hortātor, ōris *m.* instigator, inciter†
inrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break in
īnstaurō (1) renew, repeat, refresh
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
intrā within (*acc.*)
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
malum, ī *n.* evil, wrong, trouble, sin*
Menelāus, ī *m.* Greek warrior, first husband of Helen
monitus, ūs *m.* advice, warning
moror, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, spread*
placidus, a, um calm, quiet, peaceful*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press*
quadrīgae, ārum *f.* four-horse chariot†
quiēs, ētis *f.* rest, quiet, peace, repose*
reposcō, ere demand, seek, ask (for)
roseus, a, um rosy, rose-colored, red
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
scīlicet doubtless, forsooth, of course
sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech
similis, e similar, like (*dat., gen.*)*
sine without (*abl.*)*
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus withdraw (from under) (*dat.*)
thalamus, ī *m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
turbidus, a, um confused, disordered
ūnā together, at the same time
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
vicis *gen. f.* (ex)change, alternation
vicissim in turn, by turns, alternately
vīvus, a, um living, alive, natural

---

a signal to the Greek fleet to start back to Troy. Cf. II, 254 ff.

523. Ēgregia: ironically of Helen. This passage contradicts the account of II, 567–588, but it is useless to expect strict consistency of a great poetic genius. **conjūnx:** after the death of Paris, Helen had married Deīphobus.

526. amantī: Menelaüs, her lawful husband.

529. Aeolidēs: contemptuously of Ulysses, in accordance with the scandal which claimed that he was not the son of Laërtes at all but of Sisyphus, a notorious robber and trickster, son of Aeolus.

532. Pelagīne errōribus: a Homeric conception, according to which Hades lay beyond the western ocean and could be reached only by ship. This idea is at variance with the rest of this book.

535–547. Aeneas parts with Deīphobus.

jam medium aetheriō *cursū* trājēcerat axem;
et fors omne datum traherent per tālia tempus,
sed comes admonuit breviter*que* adfāta Sibylla *est:*
"*Nox ruit, Aenēā; nōs* flendō *dūcimus* hōrās.
Hīc locus est partīs ubi sē via findit *in* ambās:
dextera quae Dītis *magnī sub moenia tendit,*
hāc iter Ēlysium *nōbīs; at* laeva malōrum
exercet *poenās et ad* impia Tartara *mittit.*"
Dēiphobus contrā: "*Nē* saevī, *magna* sacerdōs;
discēdam, explēbō numerum reddar*que* tenebrīs.
Ī decus, *ī, nostrum;* meliōribus ūtere *fātīs.*"
Tantum effātus, *et in* verbō vestīgia torsit.
Respicit *Aenēās* subitō *et sub* rūpe sinistrā
moenia lāta *videt* triplicī circumdata mūrō,
quae rapidus *flammīs* ambit torrentibus amnis,

adfor, ārī, ātus address, speak to*
admoneō, ēre, uī, itus warn, advise
aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly
ambiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus surround
ambō, ae, ō both, two
amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
axis, is *m.* axle, wheel, chariot; heaven
breviter shortly, briefly, concisely
circumdō, dare, dedī, datus surround
contrā against, opposite, in reply*
decus, oris *n.* ornament, glory, honor
Dēiphobus, ī *m.* son of Priam and third husband of Helen
Dīs, Dītis *m.* Pluto, god of the lower world
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart
effor, ārī, ātus speak, utter
Ēlysium, (i)ī *n.* abode of the blessed in Hades†
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus exercise, inflict, vex*
expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill (out)
findō, ere, fidī, fissus divide, split†
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep (for), lament
hōra, ae *f.* hour, season, time
impius, a, um impious, wicked, disloyal
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
malus, a, um evil, wicked, bad, false*
melior, ius better, superior, preferable
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
numerus, ī *m.* number, multitude*
rapidus, a, um swift, hurrying, fleet*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give back, return*
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back) at, regard*
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus rage, be angry
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian priestess
sinister, tra, trum left (hand), on the left
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
Tartara, ōrum *n.* lowest realm of Hades
tenebrae, ārum *f.* darkness, gloom
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus turn, twist, whirl*
torreō, ēre, uī, tostus burn, seethe
trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw across, cross
triplex, icis triple
ūtor, ī, ūsus use, enjoy, employ (*abl.*)
verbum, ī *n.* word, speech, talk
vestīgium, (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace*

537. fors = forsitan (fors sit an): *perhaps.* traherent: conclusion of an implied condition contrary to fact.

540. sē via findit: up to this point there had been only one road, but now there is a definite parting of the ways, one leading to the place of bliss (Elysium), the other to the place of torment (Tartarus).

541. dextera (via est ea) quae.

542. hāc (viā) iter (est) nōbīs (ad) Ēlysium: acc. of place to which with iter (est). laeva (via): the road is said to punish because it leads to the place of punishment.

545. explēbō numerum (umbrārum): by rejoining them.

546. decus nostrum = decus nostrōrum.

547. in verbō: *as he spoke.* Cf. in vōce, IV, 76.

548–627. Description of Tartarus and some of its horrible punishments, which Aeneas does not see as he passes on toward the Elysian Fields.

Tartareus Phlegethōn, torquet*que* sonantia *saxa*.
Porta adversa *ingēns* solidō*que* adamante columnae,
vīs ut nūlla virum, nōn ipsī exscindere *bellō*
caelicolae valeant; *stat* ferrea turris *ad aurās*,
Tīsiphonē*que* sedēns pallā succīncta cruentā
vestibulum exsomnis *servat noctēsque diēsque*.
Hinc exaudīrī gemitūs *et* saeva sonāre
verbera, *tum* strīdor *ferrī trāctaeque* catēnae.
Cōnstitit *Aenēās* strepitum*que* exterritus hausit.
"*Quae* scelerum faciēs? *Ō* virgō, effāre; *quibusve*
urgentur *poenīs? Quis tantus* clangor *ad* aurīs?"
Tum vātēs sīc orsa loquī: "Dux inclute *Teucrum*,
nūllī fās castō scelerātum īnsistere *līmen;*
sed mē cum lūcīs Hecatē praefēcit Avernīs,
ipsa deum poenās docuit *perque omnia dūxit*.
Gnōsius *haec* Rhadamanthus *habet* dūrissima *rēgna*

---

adamās, antis *m.* adamant†
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
auris, is *f.* ear*
Avernus, a, um of Avernus, an Italian lake where there was an entrance to Hades*
caelicola, ae *m.* (*f.*) god(dess), divinity
castus, a, um pure, holy, chaste
catēna, ae *f.* chain, shackle, fetter†
clangor, ōris *m.* noise, uproar, clang
columna, ae *f.* pillar, column, post
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, chief, guide*
effor, ārī, ātus say, tell
exaudiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus (over)hear
exscindō, ere, scidī, scissus cut out, destroy
exsomnis, e sleepless, wakeful†
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
fās *n. indecl.* right, fate, divine will*
ferreus, a, um (of) iron
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan(ing), roar*
Gnō(s)sius, a, um of Gnossus, a city of Crete
hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus drain, drink (in)
Hecatē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world
inclutus, a, um renowned, famous
īnsistō, ere, stitī stand (on), pursue
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell*
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
ordior, īrī, orsus begin, commence
palla, ae *f.* cloak, robe, mantle
Phlegethōn, ontis *m.* fiery stream of Hades
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus set over (*dat.*)
Rhadamanthus, ī *m.* early king of Crete and later judge of the dead in Hades†
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
scelerātus, a, um criminal, unholy
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit*
solidus, a, um solid, firm, strong
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
strepitus, ūs *m.* uproar, noise, bustle
strīdor, ōris *m.* creaking, clanking, whir
succingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird(le)
Tartareus, a, um of Tartarus, the lowest region and abode of the wicked in Hades
Tīsiphonē, ēs *f.* a Fury†
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus turn, twist, whirl*
turris, is *f.* tower, turret
urgeō, ēre, ursī (op)press, beset
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able
verber, eris *n.* blow, lash, whip
vestibulum, ī *n.* entrance, vestibule
virgō, inis *f.* virgin, maid(en), girl*

---

552. Porta (est).

557–558. strīdor, catēnae: additional subjects of the hist. infinitives, exaudīrī, sonāre.

560. Quae (sunt).

561. clangor (venit) ad aurīs (nostrās).

563. fās (est).

565. de(ōr)um: subj. gen., *the punishments inflicted by the gods.*

castīgat*que auditque* dolōs subigit*que* fatērī
quae quis apud *superōs* fūrtō laetātus inānī
distulit *in* sēram commissa piācula *mortem.*
Continuō sontīs ultrīx accīncta flagellō
Tīsiphonē quatit īnsultāns, torvōs*que* sinistrā
intentāns anguīs *vocat agmina* saeva sorōrum.
Tum dēmum horrisonō strīdentēs cardine *sacrae*
panduntur portae. *Cernis* custōdia quālis
vestibulō sedeat, faciēs *quae līmina servet?*
Quīnquāgintā *ātrīs immānis* hiātibus Hydra
saevior intus *habet sēdem. Tum* Tartarus *ipse*
bis patet *in* praeceps *tantum tenditque sub umbrās*
quantus *ad* aetherium *caelī* suspectus Olympum.
Hīc genus antīquum Terrae, Tītānia pūbēs,

accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird(le)
aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly
anguis, is *m.* (*f.*) snake, serpent
apud among, at, in (*acc.*)
bis twice*
cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
castīgō (1) punish, avenge, chastise
committō, ere, mīsī, missus commit, perform
continuō immediately, at once
custōdia, ae *f.* guard(ian), care†
dēmum at length, finally
differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus put off, defer†
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
fateor, ērī, fassus confess, agree
flagellum, ī *n.* whip, lash, scourge
fūrtum, ī *n.* theft, stealth, concealment
hiātus, ūs *m.* gaping (mouth), yawning
horrisonus, a, um horrible-sounding†
Hydra, ae *f.* monster with seven (fifty) serpent heads, killed by Hercules†
inānis, e empty, useless, vain, idle*
īnsultō (1) leap on, insult
intentō (1) stretch (out), threaten
intus within, inside
laetor, ārī, ātus rejoice, exult, delight
Olympus, ī *m.* high mountain of northern Greece, home of the gods; heaven
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, extend*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
piāculum, ī *n.* atonement, expiation, crime
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, precipitous; **in praeceps** straight downward*
pūbēs, is *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*
quantus, a, um how great, how much, as*
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter
quīnquāgintā fifty
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit*
sērus, a, um (too) late, tardy
sinister, tra, trum left (hand), on the left
sōns, sontis guilty, impious, criminal†
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī grate, creak, whir
subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus force, subdue
suspectus, ūs *m.* view upward†
Tartarus, ī *m.* the lowest part of Hades, abode of the wicked
Tīsiphonē, ēs *f.* a Fury
Tītānius, a, um of the Titans, an early race of giants who attempted to storm heaven, but who were cast down by the thunderbolts of Jove and confined in the lowest depths of Hades†
torvus, a, um savage, grim, scowling
ultrīx, īcis avenging, (as) avenger
vestibulum, ī *n.* entry, vestibule

568. quis: indef. **apud superōs:** see l. 481 and note. **fūrtō inānī:** *vain concealment,* because punishment is inescapable.

568–569. quae commissa piācula = commissa quōrum piācula.

574. custōdia: Tisiphone.

579. caelī: obj. gen. with **suspectus (est),** *the gazing up (from earth) to heaven,* or possibly *from the abyss to heaven,* with **ad aetherium Olympum** added as explanatory.

580–581. Tītānia pūbēs: overthrown by Jupiter. **genus, pūbēs, dējectī:** observe the three genders and two numbers, all referring to the same thing, the race of Titans.

fulmine dējectī fundō *volvuntur in īmō.*
Hīc et Alōīdās *geminōs immānia vīdī*
corpora, quī manibus magnum rescindere *caelum*
adgressī *superīsque Jovem* dētrūdere *rēgnīs.*
Vīdī et crūdēlīs *dantem* Salmōnea *poenās,*
dum flammam Jovis et sonitūs imitātur Olympī.
Quattuor *hic* invectus *equīs et* lampada quassāns
per Grajum *populōs mediaeque per* Ēlidis *urbem*
ībat ovāns, *dīvumque sibī* poscēbat *honōrem,*
dēmēns, *quī* nimbōs *et nōn* imitābile fulmen
aere *et* cornipedum pulsū simulāret *equōrum.*
At pater omnipotēns dēnsa *inter* nūbila *tēlum*
contorsit, *nōn ille* facēs *nec* fūmea taedīs
lūmina, praecipitem*que immānī* turbine adēgit.
Nec nōn et Tityon, *Terrae* omniparentis alumnum,
cernere erat, per tōta novem *cui* jūgera *corpus*

---

adgredior, ī, gressus attack, attempt
adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive, hurl
aes, aeris *n.* bronze (utensil)*
Alōīdae, ārum *m.* sons of Aloeus, Otus and Ephialtes, giants who attempted to storm heaven by piling up mountains, but were overthrown and confined in the lowest depths of Hades†
alumnus, ī *m.* nursling, foster child†
contorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, whirl
cornipēs, pedis horny-hoofed†
crūdēlis, e cruel, merciless, harsh*
dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl down
dēmēns, entis mad, frenzied, foolish
dēnsus, a, um thick, dense, crowded*
dētrūdō, ere, sī, sus thrust down†
Ēlis, idis *f.* district of southern Greece
fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand, faggot*
fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
fūmeus, a, um smoky, smoking†
fundus, ī *m.* bottom, depths
Grajus, a, um Greek*
imitābilis, e that may be imitated, imitable†
imitor, ārī, ātus imitate, mimic†
invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus convey
jugerum, ī *n.* acre; more accurately about five-eighths of an acre†
lampas, adis, *acc.* **ada,** *f.* torch, lantern
nimbus, ī *m.* storm (cloud), rainstorm*
novem nine
nūbila, ōrum *n.* clouds, cloudiness
Olympus, ī *m.* mountain of northern Greece, home of the gods; heaven
omniparēns, entis parent of all†
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
pulsus, ūs *m.* beat, trample, stroke†
quassō (1) shake, brandish; shatter
quattuor four
rescindō, ere, scidī, scissus tear down†
Salmōneus, eos (eī), *acc.* **ea,** *m.* king of Elis, who attempted to imitate the thunder and lightning of Jove by means of his rattling chariot and blazing torches†
simulō (1) imitate, counterfeit, simulate
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, thunder, roar*
taeda, ae *f.* pine torch
Tityos, ī *m.* giant slain by Apollo for attempting to violate Latona†
turbō, inis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), gulf

---

581. fulmine: *the thunderbolt* of Jupiter.
583. corpora: in apposition with Alōīdās.
585. Salmōnea: acc. sing., a Greek form.
587. hic: pronounce hicc, making a long syllable. **lampada:** acc. sing.
590–591. quī . . . simulāret: rel. clause of cause; App. 357.
593. ille: Jupiter.
594. turbine (fulminis). (Salmōnea) praecipitem.
595. Nec nōn: *likewise.*
596. erat: *it was possible.*

porrigitur, rōstrōque *immānis* vultur obuncō
immortāle jecur tondēns fēcundaque *poenīs*
vīscera rīmāturque epulīs habitatque *sub altō*
pectore, nec fibrīs requiēs *datur ūlla* renātīs.
Quid memorem Lapithās, Ixīona Pīrithoümque?
. . . . . .
Quō super ātra silex *jam jam lāpsūra* cadentīque
imminet adsimilis; lūcent geniālibus *altīs*
aurea fulcra torīs, epulaeque *ante ōra parātae*
rēgificō luxū; furiārum *maxima* juxtā
accubat *et manibus* prohibet contingere mēnsās,
exsurgitque facem attollēns *atque* intonat *ōre*.
Hīc, quibus invīsī frātrēs, *dum vīta manēbat,*
pulsātusve *parēns aut* fraus innexa clientī,
aut quī dīvitiīs *sōlī* incubuēre repertīs

---

accubō, āre, uī, itus recline (by)†
adsimilis, e like, similar (*dat.*)†
attollō, ere lift, raise, rear*
aureus, a, um golden, (of) gold*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
cliēns, entis *m.* client, dependant†
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach*
dīvitiae, ārum *f.* riches, wealth†
epulae, ārum *f.* banquet, feast
exsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise†
fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
fēcundus, a, um fruitful, productive†
fibra, ae *f.* fiber, filament; entrail†
frāter, tris *m.* brother*
fraus, fraudis *f.* deceit, trick, wile, fraud
fulcrum, ī *n.* prop, support, headrest†
furiae, ārum *f.* the furies, goddesses of vengeance
geniālis, e festal, joyous, pleasant†
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell, possess
immineō, ēre overhang, threaten
immortālis, e immortal, undying†
incubō, āre, uī, itus lie on; gloat over
innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus fasten, contrive
intonō, āre, uī thunder (at)
invīsus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
Ixīōn, onis, *acc.* **ona,** *m.* giant bound to a revolving wheel in Hades for attempting to violate Juno†
jecur, (jecin)oris *n.* liver, the seat of evil passions†
juxtā next, nearest, close (to)*
Lapithae, ārum *m.* tribe of northern Greece, famous for their battle with the Centaurs†
lūceō, ēre, lūxī shine, gleam, beam
luxus, ūs *m.* luxury, splendor, excess
memorō (1) (re)call, recount, mention*
mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
obuncus, a, um curved, hooked†
Pīrithoüs, ī *m.* king of the Lapiths, who with the help of Theseus attempted to carry off Proserpina, queen of Pluto
porrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus stretch, extend†
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus prevent, prohibit
pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, throb
rēgificus, a, um royal, regal, kingly†
renāscor, ī, nātus be reborn, be renewed†
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus find
requiēs, ētis (ēī) *f.* rest, respite
rīmor, ārī, ātus split, tear (open), explore†
rōstrum, ī *n.* beak, snout; prow
silex, icis *m.* (*f.*) flint, rock, stone
tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear; eat
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch*
vīscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh
vultur, uris *m.* vulture, buzzard†

---

598. jecur: supposed to be the seat of lust and the evil passions.

599. epulīs: *for his banquet;* dat. of purpose.

600. renātīs: his flesh grows again as fast as it is devoured by the vulture.

602–603. One or more verses describing Tantalus seem to have fallen out here.

cadentīque: hypermetric; App. 402.

604. torīs: dat. of reference.

605. maxima (nātū): *the eldest.*

608–609. Hīc (sunt eī) quibus frātrēs (erant) invīsī (et eī ā quibus) pulsātus (est) parēns aut fraus innexa (est).

nec partem posuēre suīs (*quae maxima* turba *est*),
quīque ob adulterium caesī, *quīque arma secūtī*
impia *nec* veritī dominōrum fallere *dextrās*,
inclūsī *poenam* exspectant. *Nē quaere* docērī
quam poenam, aut quae forma *virōs fortūnave* mersit.
Saxum ingēns volvunt alīī, radiīsque rotārum
districtī pendent; sedet aeternumque sedēbit
īnfēlīx Thēseus, Phlegyāsque *miserrimus omnīs*
admonet *et magnā* testātur *vōce per umbrās:*
'Discite jūstitiam monitī *et nōn* temnere *dīvōs.*'
Vendidit *hic aurō* patriam dominumque potentem
imposuit; fīxit lēgēs pretiō *atque* refīxit;
hic thalamum invāsit nātae vetitōsque hymenaeōs:
ausī *omnēs immāne* nefās ausōque potītī.

admoneō, ēre, uī, itus warn, advise
adulterium, (i)ī *n.* adultery†
aeternum eternally, forever
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
ausum, ī *n.* daring deed, crime, thing dared
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus cut (down), kill
discō, ere, didicī learn; *perf.* know
distringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus stretch out†
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
dominus, ī *m.* master, lord, ruler
exspectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, violate*
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, set up*
forma, ae *f.* shape, beauty, form*
hymenaeus, ī *m.* (god of) marriage
impius, a, um disloyal, treacherous
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on*
inclūdō, ere, sī, sus shut (in), inclose
invādō, ere, sī, sus enter, attack
jūstitia, ae *f.* justice, righteousness
lēx, lēgis *f.* law, decree, statute
mergō, ere, rsī, rsus sink, bury, drown
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn
nāta, ae *f.* daughter
nefās *n. indecl.* impiety, crime, sin*
ob on account of (*acc.*)
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang*
Phlegyās, ae *m.* father of Ixion, who set fire to Apollo's temple at Delphi†
potēns, entis powerful, ruling, mighty*
potior, īrī, ītus attain, gain (*abl.*)
pretium, (i)ī *n.* price, bribe, reward
radius, (i)ī *m.* rod, spoke, ray
refīgō, ere, xī, xus unfasten, annul, pull down
rota, ae *f.* wheel; chariot, car
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit*
temnō, ere despise, scorn, disdain
testor, ārī, ātus call to witness, testify
thalamus, ī *m.* (bridal) chamber, bedroom*
Thēseus, eī (eos) *m.* early king of Athens; he helped his friend, Pirithoüs, in his attempt to carry off Proserpina and was condemned to sit forever on a stone in Hades
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
vendō, ere, didī, ditus sell, betray
vereor, ērī, itus fear, dread, revere
vetō, āre, uī, itus forbid, prohibit

611. quae: attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, *a*.

612–613. arma impia: probably referring to the civil wars at Rome.

613. dominōrum: obj. gen., *the faith pledged to their masters*, probably referring to the slave revolts at Rome.

615. quam poenam (exspectant).

616. Saxum volvunt: Sisyphus, for example, was compelled to roll a huge stone to the top of a hill; but at the summit the stone always escaped and rolled back to the bottom.

621. hic: pronounce hicc, making a long syllable.

622. fīxit atque refīxit: *made and unmade.* At Rome the laws were inscribed on bronze tablets and put in some public place; when the laws were repealed or annulled, the tablets were removed.

624. ausī (sunt), ausōque potītī (sunt): *dared and gained what they dared.*

625 *Nōn, mihi sī* linguae centum *sint ōraque* centum,
ferrea *vōx, omnīs* scelerum comprendere formās,
omnia poenārum percurrere *nōmina possim.*"
Haec ubi dicta dedit Phoebī longaeva sacerdōs,
"*Sed jam age,* carpe *viam et* susceptum perfice *mūnus;*
630 accelerēmus" *ait;* "Cyclōpum ēducta camīnīs
moenia cōnspiciō *atque* adversō fornice portās,
haec ubi nōs praecepta *jubent* dēpōnere *dōna.*"
Dīxerat et pariter gressī *per* opāca *viārum*
corripiunt spatium *medium* foribus*que* propinquant.
635 Occupat *Aenēās* aditum *corpusque* recentī
spargit aquā rāmum*que* adversō *in līmine* fīgit.
Hīs demum exāctīs, perfectō *mūnere dīvae,*
dēvēnēre *locōs laetōs et* amoena virecta
fortūnātōrum nemorum *sēdēsque* beātās.

---

accelerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
amoenus, a, um pleasant, delightful
aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood*
beātus, a, um happy, blessed
camīnus, ī *m.* forge, furnace, chimney
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, take, consume
centum hundred*
compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus grasp, comprise
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up), hurry over*
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-eyed giants, workmen of Vulcan. the smithy god
dēmum at length, finally
dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay down, deposit
dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus come down (to), reach
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead out, raise
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive out, perform
ferreus, a, um (of) iron
fīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, plant, fasten*
foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance
forma, ae *f.* shape, form, beauty*
fornix, icis *m.* arch, vault†
fortūnātus, a, um blessed, happy
gradior, ī, gressus step, go, march
lingua, ae *f.* tongue, language
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
occupō (1) seize (beforehand), gain, occupy
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy
pariter equally, side by side*
percurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run through, enumerate, recount, mention†
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus complete, finish, accomplish
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
praeceptum, ī *n.* instruction, order
propinquō (1) draw near, approach (*dat.*)
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
recēns, entis recent, fresh, new
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
spatium, (i)ī *n.* space, distance, place
suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus undertake
virectum, ī *n.* greensward, meadow, turf†

628–636. Aeneas and the Sibyl approach the palace of Dis, god of the lower world, and place the golden bough at the entrance.

629. mūnus: the presentation of the golden bough to Proserpina.

631. fornice: abl. of quality.

636. spargit: as a rite of purification. **fīgit:** the golden bough is apparently a votive offering; hence Aeneas fastens it in some way at the entrance, just as he had hung up the shield of Abas at the entrance to the temple of Apollo (III, 286–287), and as Antenor had dedicated his arms in the temple at Patavium (I, 248–249).

637–665. The region of the blessed with its beautiful meadows, more abundant atmosphere, and purple light. Here

Largior *hīc campōs* aethēr *et lūmine* vestit
purpureō, sōlem*que suum, sua sīdera* nōrunt.
Pars in grāmineīs exercent membra palaestrīs,
contendunt lūdō *et* fulvā luctantur harēnā;
pars pedibus plaudunt choreās *et* carmina *dīcunt*.
Nec nōn Thrēicius *longā cum* veste sacerdōs
obloquitur numerīs septem discrīmina *vōcum*,
jamque eadem digitīs, *jam* pectine pulsat eburnō.
Hīc genus antīquum Teucrī, pulcherrima prōlēs,
magnanimī hērōes, nātī meliōribus annīs,
Īlus*que* Assaracus*que et Trojae* Dardanus auctor.
Arma procul currūs*que virum* mīrātur inānīs.
Stant terrā dēfīxae hastae passim*que* solūtī
per campum pascuntur *equī*. *Quae* grātia currum
armōrumque fuit vīvīs, *quae cūra* nitentīs

---

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
annus, ī *m.* year, season, time*
Assaracus, ī *m.* king of Phrygia, and grandfather of Anchises
auctor, ōris *m.* author, founder, sponsor
carmen, inis *n.* song, poem, chant
chorea, ae *f.* (round) dance, choral dance†
contendō, ere, ī, ntus strive, struggle
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
Dardanus, ī *m.* ancestor of the Trojans
dēfīgō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten (down)
digitus, ī *m.* finger, toe
discrīmen, inis *n.* distinction, interval
eburnus, a, um (of) ivory†
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus exercise, drive*
fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
grāmineus, a, um grassy, of grass
grātia, ae *f.* charm, liking, favor
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
hasta, ae *f.* spear, lance, dart
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
Īlus, ī *m.* founder and early king of Troy
inānis, e empty, unsubstantial, idle*
largus, a, um abundant, spacious
luctor, ārī, ātus wrestle, struggle
lūdus, ī *m.* sport, game, play, contest
magnanimus, a, um great-souled
melior, ius better, superior, preferable*
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
mīror, ārī, ātus wonder at, admire*
nāscor, ī, nātus be born, arise*
nitēns, entis shining, white, sleek
nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; *perf.* know*
numerus, ī *m.* number, tune, measure*
obloquor, ī, locūtus (make) accompany, sing responsively†
palaestra, ae *f.* wrestling (place, bout)
pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed, graze
passim everywhere, all about*
pecten, inis *m.* comb, pick (for striking the strings of a lyre)†
plaudō, ere, sī, sus clap, strike, beat, dance
prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, noble, splendid, illustrious*
pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, throb
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
septem seven
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free*
Teucrus (cer), crī *m.* early king of Troy
Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace, a country northeast of Greece
vestiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus clothe, cover†
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
vīvus, a, um living, alive, natural

---

the souls of the righteous follow in complete freedom the pursuits to which they had devoted their lives while on earth.

641. suum, sua: as contrasted with those of our world. nō(vē)runt.

642–647. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 528 ff.

644. choreās: cognate acc.

645. Nec nōn: *likewise.* Thrēicius sacerdōs: Orpheus.

649. meliōribus annīs: *in the good old days.*

651. (Aenēās) mīrātur.

653. curr(u)um: obj. gen. with grātia, *the delight in chariots.*

654. (eīs) vīvīs: (*while*) *alive;* dat. of possession; App. 299.

pascere *equōs, eadem sequitur tellūre* repostōs.
Cōnspicit, ecce, *aliōs dextrā* laevāque *per* herbam
vēscentīs *laetumque* chorō paeāna canentīs
inter odōrātum laurī nemus, unde supernē
plūrimus Ēridanī *per silvam volvitur* amnis.
Hīc manus ob patriam pugnandō vulnera passī,
quīque sacerdōtēs castī, *dum vīta manēbat,*
quīque pīī vātēs et Phoebō digna locūtī,
inventās *aut quī vītam* excoluēre *per* artīs,
quīque suī memorēs *aliōs fēcēre* merendō:
omnibus hīs niveā cinguntur tempora vittā.
Quōs circumfūsōs *sīc est* adfāta Sibylla,
Mūsaeum *ante omnīs* (*medium nam plūrima* turba
hunc habet atque umerīs exstantem suspicit *altīs*):
"*Dīcite,* fēlīcēs *animae, tūque,* optime *vātēs,*

---

adfor, ārī, ātus address, speak to*
amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, device, craft*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant*
castus, a, um pure, holy, chaste
chorus, ī *m.* (dancing) band, chorus
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus encircle, gird(le)*
circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (scatter) around
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold
dignus, a, um deserving, worthy of (*abl.*)
ecce look! see! behold!*
Ēridanus, ī *m.* the river Po in northern Italy†
excolō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, enrich†
exstō, āre stand out, tower above†
fēlīx, īcis happy, blessed*
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus find, invent
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
laurus, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel, a tree sacred to Apollo
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell*
memor, oris mindful, remembering*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
Mūsaeus, ī *m.* early Thracian bard†
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
niveus, a, um snowy, white
ob on account of, for (*acc.*)
odōrātus, a, um scented, fragrant†
optimus, a, um best, finest
paeān, ānis, *acc.* **āna,** *m.* song of praise†
pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed, graze
patior, ī, passus suffer, endure, allow*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, poetry, music, and prophecy*
pugnō (1) fight, battle, struggle, oppose
repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus lay away, bury*
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
supernē (in the world) above†
suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look up (at)
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
unde whence, from which source*
vēscor, ī feed, eat (*abl.*)
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

655. repos(i)tōs.

657. **chorō**: abl. of manner. **paeāna**: acc. sing., a Greek form.

658. **supernē**: the Po (Eridanus) in its upper part flows some distance under ground, and was thus thought to have its source in Hades.

660. **Hīc (est) manus (virōrum quī) passī (sunt)**: **manus** being used collectively (= **manus virōrum**) is followed by the masc. pl., a construction according to the sense; App. 444.

661. et (eī) quī (erant) sacerdōtēs castī.

662. vātēs (erant), locūtī (erant).

663. **vītam**: of mankind in general.

666–702. Aeneas and the Sibyl are guided by Musaeus to Anchises who receives his son with a great show of affection.

667. **plūrima turba**: indicating his prominence.

quae regiō *Anchīsēn, quis habet locus? Illius* ergō
vēnimus et magnōs Erebī trānāvimus amnīs."
Atque huic respōnsum paucīs ita reddidit hērōs:
"*Nūllī* certa *domus;* lūcīs habitāmus opācīs,
rīpārumque torōs *et* prāta recentia rīvīs
incolimus. *Sed vōs, sī fert* ita corde voluntās,
hoc superāte jugum, *et* facilī *jam* trāmite sistam."
Dīxit, et ante tulit gressum *campōsque* nitentīs
dēsuper ostentat; dehinc *summa* cacūmina linquunt.
At pater Anchīsēs penitus convalle virentī
inclūsās *animās superumque ad lūmen itūrās*
lūstrābat studiō recolēns, *omnemque suōrum*
forte recēnsēbat numerum, cārōsque nepōtēs
fātaque fortūnāsque virum mōrēsque *manūsque.*
Isque ubi tendentem adversum *per* grāmina *vīdit*
Aenēān, alacris palmās utrāsque *tetendit,*

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
alacer (cris), cris, cre eager, quick
amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
cacūmen, inis *n.* summit, peak, top
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
certus, a, um fixed, sure, trusty, certain*
convallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
dehinc thence, from there
dēsuper from above
Erebus, ī *m.* Hades, (god of) the lower world
ergō therefore, then, consequently; on account of, for the sake of (*gen.*)
facilis, e easy, favorable, propitious
grāmen, inis *n.* grass, sward, meadow
gressus, ūs *m.* step, walk, gait, stride
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell, possess
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
inclūdō, ere, sī, sus shut (up), inclose
incolō, ere, uī inhabit, dwell (in)†
ita thus, so, in this way
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictus leave, forsake*
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, forest*
lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, character, manner*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
nitēns, entis shining, bright
numerus, ī *m.* number, multitude*
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy
ostentō (1) show (off), display, exhibit
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand*
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty*
penitus deep (within), deeply; wholly*
prātum, ī *n.* meadow, greensward†
recēns, entis recent, fresh, new
recēnseō, ēre, uī, sus (situs) review†
recolō, ere, uī, cultus survey, reflect (on), contemplate†
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give back, render*
regiō, ōnis *f.* district, region, tract
respōnsum, ī *n.* reply, answer
rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
rīvus, ī *m.* stream, rivulet
sistō, ere, stetī, status set, place
studium, (i)ī *n.* desire, zeal, pursuit
superō (1) surmount, overcome, pass over*
torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch*
trāmes, itis *m.* path, way
trānō (1) swim, voyage across
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*
virēns, entis green, flourishing
voluntās, ātis *f.* desire, purpose

672. paucīs (dictīs).

674. rīpārum: (*the couches*) *formed by the banks;* appositional genitive.

675. sī fert ita corde voluntās: *if your heart thus inclines.*

678. dehinc: one syllable here by synizesis. **(Aenēās et Sibylla) linquunt summa cacūmina.**

681. suōrum: *of his* (*own*) *people.*

683. manūs: *deeds* (of valor in war). Observe Vergil's fondness for -que, which he employs four times in this line and seven times in this sentence: App. **439.**

effūsaeque genīs *lacrimae et vōx* excidit *ōre:*
"Vēnistī tandem, tuaque exspectāta *parentī*
vīcit iter dūrum pietās? *Datur ōra* tuērī,
nāte, tua et nōtās *audīre et* reddere *vōcēs?*
690 *Sīc* equidem *dūcēbam animō* rēbar*que futūrum*
tempora dīnumerāns, *nec mē mea cūra* fefellit.
Quās ego tē terrās et quanta *per aequora* vectum
accipiō! Quantīs jactātum, *nāte,* perīclīs!
Quam metuī *nē quid* Libyae *tibi rēgna* nocērent!"
695 *Ille* autem: *"Tua me, genitor, tua trīstis* imāgō
saepius occurrēns *haec līmina tendere* adēgit;
stant sale Tyrrhēnō *classēs. Dā* jungere *dextram,*
dā, genitor, tēque amplexū *nē* subtrahe *nostrō."*
Sīc memorāns largō flētū *simul ōra* rigābat.
700 Ter cōnātus ibī collō *dare* bracchia *circum;*
ter frūstrā comprēnsa *manūs* effūgit imāgō,
pār levibus *ventīs* volucrī*que* simillima *somnō.*
Intereā *videt Aenēās in* valle reductā

---

adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive to, force
amplexus, ūs *m.* embrace, fold, grasp
autem moreover, however, but*
bracchium, (i)ī *n.* arm, forearm*
collum, ī *n.* neck*
compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp
cōnor, ārī, ātus attempt, try, endeavor
dīnumerō (1) count, number, compute†
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
effugiō, ere, fūgī flee, escape
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, utter*
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
excidō, ere, ī fall from, drop
exspectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, disappoint*
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
gena, ae *f.* cheek
ibī there, then
imāgō, inis *f.* likeness, phantom, shade*
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
jactō (1) toss, buffet, hurl, cast, fling*
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, unite*
largus, a, um abundant, large, copious
levis, e light, unsubstantial, swift
Libya, ae *f.* country of northern Africa; Carthage*
memorō (1) (re)call, recount, say*
metuō, ere, uī fear, dread, be anxious
noceō, ēre, uī, itus harm, hurt (*dat.*)
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus (run to) meet (*dat.*)
pār, paris equal, like, similar (*dat.*)*
perīc(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk
pietās, ātis *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
quam how, than, as*
quantus, a, um how (great, much, many), as*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give (back), answer*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead back, retire, seclude
reor, rērī, ratus think, suppose, reckon
rigō (1) wet, water, bedew, moisten†
saepe often, frequently*
sal, salis *m.* (*n.*) salt, brine; sea
similis, e like, similar (*dat.*)*
subtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus withdraw
ter thrice, three times*
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) look (at), watch*
Tyrrhēnus, a, um Etruscan, of Etruria in northern Italy
vallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus convey, bear*
volucer, cris, cre winged, fleet*

---

687. parentī (tuō) = **mihi**: dat. of agent.
690. futūrum (esse).
692. (per) **terrās.**
696. (ad) **haec līmina.**

700–702. Repeated from II, 792–794. **somnō** = somniō: *dream.*

703–751. Anchises tells Aeneas how individual souls originate as parts of

sēclūsum nemus *et* virgulta sonantia *silvae*,
Lēthaeum*que domōs* placidās *quī* praenatat amnem.
Hunc circum innumerae *gentēs* populī*que* volābant,
ac velut *in* prātīs *ubi* apēs aestāte serēnā
flōribus īnsīdunt variīs *et* candida *circum*
līlia *funduntur*, strepit *omnis* murmure *campus*.
Horrēscit vīsū subitō causās*que* requīrit
īnscius *Aenēās*, *quae sint ea* flūmina porrō,
quīve virī tantō complērint *agmine* rīpās.
Tum pater Anchīsēs: "*Animae*, *quibus* altera *fātō*
corpora dēbentur, Lēthaeī *ad* flūminis *undam*
sēcūrōs laticēs *et longa* oblīvia pōtant.
Hās equidem memorāre *tibi atque* ostendere cōram,
jamprīdem *hanc* prōlem cupiō ēnumerāre *meōrum*,
quō magis *Ītaliā mēcum* laetēre repertā."
"*Ō pater*, anne aliquās *ad caelum hinc īre* putandum *est*
sublīmīs *animās* iterum*que ad* tarda revertī

aestās, ātis *f.* summer (time)
aliquis, qua, quid some(one), any(one)*
alter, era, erum other (of two), second*
amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
an(ne) *interrog.* whether, or†
apis, is *f.* bee
candidus, a, um white, shining
causa, ae *f.* reason, cause, occasion*
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete
cōram face to face, before the face
cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus wish, desire
dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus owe, be due, ought
ēnumerō (1) enumerate, count (off)
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
flōs, ōris *m.* flower, blossom, bloom
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
horrēscō, ere, horruī shudder, tremble
innumerus, a, um countless†
īnscius, a, um ignorant, unaware
īnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down, on), settle (*dat.*)
iterum again, anew, a second time*
jamprīdem long since, for a long time
laetor, ārī, ātus rejoice, exult, delight
latex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine
Lēthaeus, a, um of Lethe, the river of forgetfulness in Hades
līlium, (i)ī *n.* lily†
magis more, rather*
memorō (1) recount, recall, mention*
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, buzz, roar
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
oblīvium, (i)ī *n.* forgetfulness, oblivion†
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display*
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
porrō further, yonder, afar (off)
pōtō (1) drink (of), quaff†
praenatō (1) flow past, glide by†
prātum, ī *n.* meadow, greensward
prōlēs, is *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
putō (1) think, suppose, consider
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus find
requīrō, ere, sīvī, sītus seek, inquire
revertor, ī, rsus return, revert
rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus shut off, seclude
sēcūrus, a, um free(ing) from care
serēnus, a, um clear, calm, serene
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
strepō, ere, uī, itus hum, sound, rattle†
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
sublīmis, e lofty, aloft, on high
tardus, a, um slow, sluggish, late
varius, a, um various, variegated*
velut(ī) as, just as*
virgultum, ī *n.* thicket, bush, copse
vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, vision, view
volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

the great world-soul, how they unite with earthly bodies, how they are purified after death from the stains of the body, and how they return to the upper world and enter new bodies.

712. compl**ē**(ve)rint.

717. me**ō**rum: of my descendants.

718. qu**ō** laet**ē**re (= laet**ē**ris): rel. clause of purpose; App. 204, 4; 388.

719. ad caelum: *to the upper air*, i.e., to the world of living men.

corpora? *Quae lūcis miserīs* tam dīra cupīdō?"
"*Dīcam* equidem *nec tē* suspēnsum, *nāte, tenēbō,*"
suscipit *Anchīsēs atque* ordine singula pandit.
"Principiō *caelum ac terram campōsque* liquentīs
lūcentem*que* globum lūnae Tītāni*aque* astra
spīritus intus alit, *tōtamque* īnfūsa *per* artūs
mēns agitat mōlem *et magnō sē corpore* miscet.
Inde hominum pecudum*que genus vītaeque* volantum
et quae marmoreō *fert* mōnstra *sub aequore* pontus.
Igneus *est ollīs* vigor *et* caelestis orīgō
sēminibus, quantum *nōn corpora* noxia tardant
terrēnī*que* hebetant artūs moribunda*que* membra.
Hinc metuunt cupiunt*que,* dolent gaudent*que, neque aurās*

---

agitō (1) move, drive, harass, agitate
alō, ere, uī, (i)tus, nourish, feed, rear
artus, ūs *m.* joint, member, limb, body*
astrum, ī *n.* star, sun, constellation*
caelestis, e heavenly, celestial, divine
cupīdō, inis *f.* desire, love, passion
cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus desire, wish
dīrus, a, um terrible, dire, wild*
doleō, ēre, uī, itus grieve, suffer, resent
equidem indeed, truly, surely*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
globus, ī *m.* globe, sphere, orb
hebetō (1) blunt, dull, dim, weaken
homō, inis *m.* (*f.*) man, human, mortal*
igneus, a, um fiery, flaming
inde thence, from that source*
īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (on, in), infuse
intus within, inside
liquēns, entis clear, bright, liquid
lūceō, ēre, lūxī shine, gleam, beam
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
marmoreus, a, um (of) marble, shining
membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
metuō, ere, uī fear, dread, be anxious
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
mōnstrum, ī *n.* monster, prodigy, omen*
moribundus, a, um dying, ready to die
noxius, a, um harmful, hurtful†
ordō, inis *m.* order, rank, array, row*
orīgō, inis *f.* origin, source, beginning
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, disclose*
pecus, udis *f.* animal (of the flock)*
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
principiō first(ly), in the first place
quantus, a, um how great, how much, how many, as*
sēmen, inis *n.* seed, germ, element
singulī, ae, a separate, each, one by one
spīritus, ūs *m.* breath, air, spirit, soul
suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus undertake, resume
suspēnsus, a, um uncertain, anxious
tam so (much), so great(ly), such*
tardō (1) hinder, clog, impede, retard
terrēnus, a, um earthy, earthen†
Tītānius, a, um of the Titans, great giants who rebelled against the gods; **Tītānia astra** the sun (god), son of the Titan Hyperion
vigor, ōris *m.* force, vigor, life, energy†
volāns, antis *m.* (*f.*), bird, fowl, flying thing

---

724. campōs liquentīs = mare.

724–751. This whole passage has many difficulties and much of it is far from clear, possibly due at least partially to the unfinished condition of the poem; Introd. 5.

725–727. Tītānia astra = *the sun* (god), a descendant of a Titan. **artūs:** the universe is here conceived as an organism, filled with a vital force (**anima mundī**), the source of all life, thought, and motion. **tōtam mōlem, magnō corpore:** refer to the whole universe.

728. volant(i)um.

731. sēminibus: *germs*, i.e., *souls;* dat. of possession. **quantum:** *so far as harmful mortal bodies do not hinder* (these souls). Cf. Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*, V, 1, 64–65:

"But whilst this muddy vesture of decay
Doth grossly close it in."

733. Hinc: from the debasing influence of the body. **(animae) metuunt. aurās = caelum.**

dispiciunt clausae tenebrīs *et* carcere caecō.
Quīn *et suprēmō cum lūmine vīta relīquit,*
nōn tamen *omne* malum *miserīs nec* funditus *omnēs*
corporeae excēdunt pestēs, penitus*que* necesse *est*
multa diū concrēta modīs inolēscere mīrīs.
Ergō exercentur *poenīs* veterum*que* malōrum
supplicia expendunt: *aliae* panduntur inānēs
suspēnsae *ad ventōs, aliīs sub* gurgite *vastō*
īnfectum ēluitur scelus *aut* exūritur *ignī* —
quisque *suōs* patimur mānīs; exinde *per* amplum
mittimur Ēlysium *et* paucī *laeta arva tenēmus* —
dōnec *longa diēs* perfectō *temporis* orbe
concrētam exēmit lābem, pūrum*que relinquit*
aetherium sēnsum *atque aurāī* simplicis *ignem.*
Hās omnīs, ubi mīlle rotam *volvēre per* annōs,

aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly
amplus, a, um wide, spacious, ample
annus, ī *m.* year, season, time*
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
carcer, eris *m.* prison, inclosure, barrier
claudō, ere, sī, sus shut (in), confine*
concrēscō, ere, crēvī, crētus grow (with, in), ingrain
corporeus, a, um of the body, corporeal†
dispiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, discern
diū (for) a long time
dōnec until, while, as long as
ēluō, ere, uī, ūtus wash out†
Ēlysium, (i)ī *n.* abode of the blessed in Hades
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, depart
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, torment*
eximō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus remove, destroy
exinde thence, next†
expendō, ere, ī, ēnsus pay, suffer
exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn out, consume
funditus completely, entirely, utterly†
gurges, itis *m.* whirl(pool, wind), water*
inānis, e empty, shadowy, spectral, vain*
inficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus dye, work in
inolēscō, ere, lēvī, litus grow in, become ingrained†
lābēs, is *f.* spot, stain, blemish; ruin
malum, ī *n.* evil, sin, misfortune, trouble*
mānēs, ium *m.* spirit, soul, character; (lot in) Hades*
mīlle; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
mīrus, a, um wonderful, marvelous
modus, ī *m.* manner, measure, limit*
necesse *indecl.* necessary; necessity
orbis, is *m.* circle, cycle, orb(it), earth*
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, spread out*
patior, ī, passus endure, suffer, allow*
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty, slight*
penitus deeply, (deep) within; wholly*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, complete
pestis, is *f.* plague, scourge, infection, curse
pūrus, a, um clean, pure, clear; unpointed
quīn (but) that, nay even, why not*
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) each (one), every (one)
rota, ae *f.* wheel, cycle
scelus, eris *n.* crime, sin, guilt*
sēnsus, ūs *m.* feeling, sense, perception
simplex, icis simple, unmixed†
supplicium, (i)ī *n.* suffering, punishment
suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus hang up*
tamen nevertheless, however, but*
tenebrae, ārum *f.* darkness, gloom
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

734. tenebrīs et carcere caecō: i.e., *in the body.*

735. lūmine suprēmō: *at the last day.*

736. (eīs) **miserīs:** dat. of separation.

737. corporeae pestēs: *the plagues caused by the body to the soul.*

740. inānēs (animae): *unsubstantial* (*souls*).

743. quisque suōs patimur mānīs: *each of us endures his own spirit;* each one suffers according to his character (**mānēs**).

744. paucī nōs = paucī nostrōrum.

745. longa diēs = longum tempus. perfectō temporis orbe: a thousand years, as we see in l. 748.

747. aurāī: trisyllabic; an old form of the gen. sing.; App. 34, *b*.

748. rotam (temporis). volvēre = volvērunt.

Lēthaeum *ad* fluvium *deus* ēvocat *agmine magnō*,
scīlicet immemorēs *supera ut* convexa revīsant
rūrsus, *et* incipiant *in corpora velle* revertī."
Dīxerat Anchīsēs nātumque ūnā*que* Sibyllam
conventūs *trahit in mediōs* turbam*que* sonantem,
et tumulum *capit* unde *omnīs longō* ordine *posset*
adversōs legere *et venientum* discere vultūs.
"*Nunc age*, Dardaniam prōlem *quae* deinde *sequātur*
glōria, *quī maneant* Italā *dē gente* nepōtēs,
inlūstrīs *animās nostrumque in nōmen itūrās*,
expediam *dictīs, et tē tua fāta* docēbō.
Ille, vidēs, pūrā juvenis *quī* nītitur hastā,
proxima sorte *tenet lūcis loca, prīmus ad aurās*
aetheriās Italō commixtus *sanguine surget*,
Silvius, Albānum *nōmen, tua* postuma prōlēs,
quem tibi longaevō sērum Lāvīnia *conjūnx*

---

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly
Albānus, a, um of Alba Longa, the mother city of Rome
commisceō, ēre, uī, **mixtus** (com)mingle, mix
conventus, ūs *m.* assembly, gathering†
convexum, ī *n.* hollow, vault (of heaven)
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
deinde next, thence, thereupon*
discō, ere, didicī learn, recognize
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, show*
ēvocō (1) summon, call forth, evoke
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus extricate, unfold, set forth
fluvius, (i)ī *m.* river, stream
glōria, ae *f.* glory, renown, reputation
hasta, ae *f.* spear, lance, dart
immemor, oris forgetful, unmindful
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
inlūstris, e famous, glorious†
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
Lāvīnia, ae *f.* Italian princess, second wife of Aeneas†
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus gather, choose, scan*
Lēthaeus, a, um of Lethe, the river of forgetfulness
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
nītor, ī, sus (nixus) lean (on) (*abl.*)
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, array*
poctumus, a, um latest-born, last
prōlēs, is *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
proximus, a, um nearest, closest, next
pūrus, a, um clean, pure, clear; unpointed
revertor, ī, rsus return, revert
revīsō, ere revisit, see again
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
scīlicet of course, forsooth, doubtless
sērus, a, um (too) late, tardy
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
Silvius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas and Lavinia, king of Alba Longa†
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
ūnā together, at the same time
unde whence, from which source*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

750. immemorēs: *forgetful* of the past, due to drinking of the waters of Lethe.

752–805. Anchises leads Aeneas to a height whence they pass in review their descendants yet unborn, the Alban and the Roman kings, and especially Augustus Caesar, associated with Romulus as the second founder of the Roman state.

754. posset: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

756. deinde: two syllables here by synizesis.

760. pūrā hastā: a spear without the iron head, awarded for distinguished conduct in battle.

761. proxima loca: i.e., he will be born next.

762. Italō commixtus sanguine: since

ēdūcet *silvīs rēgem rēgumque parentem,*
unde *genus* Longā *nostrum* dominābitur Albā.
Proximus *ille* Procās, Trojānae glōria *gentis,*
et Capys *et* Numitor *et quī tē nōmine* reddet
Silvius Aenēās, pariter pietāte *vel armīs*
ēgregius, *sī* umquam rēgnandam *accēperit* Albam.
Quī juvenēs! Quantās ostentant, aspice, *vīrīs*
atque umbrāta gerunt cīvīlī tempora quercū!
Hī tibi Nōmentum *et* Gabiōs *urbemque* Fidēnam,
hī Collātīnās impōnent *montibus arcēs,*
Pōmetiōs Castrum*que* Inuī Bōlam*que* Coram*que.*
Haec tum nōmina erunt, nunc sunt sine *nōmine terrae.*
Quīn *et* avō *comitem sēsē* Māvortius addet

---

addō, ere, didī, ditus add, place beside*
Aeneās, ae *see* **Silvius**†
Alba, ae *f.* Alba Longa, mother city of Rome
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look upon
avus, ī *m.* grandfather; ancestor
Bōla, ae *f.* Italian city†
Capys, yos *m.* king of Alba Longa†
Castrum, ī *n.* Castle, Fort; **Castrum Inuī**, Italian city†*
cīvīlis, e civic, civil, of a citizen†
Collātīnus, a, um of Collatia, a city near Rome†
Cora, ae *f.* Italian city†
dominor, ārī, ātus rule, dominate, master
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead out, raise, bear
ēgregius, a, um remarkable, distinguished
Fidēna, ae *f.* Italian city†
Gabiī, ōrum *m.* Italian city†
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on), wear*
glōria, ae *f.* fame, glory, reputation
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on (*dat.*)*
Inuus, ī *m.* god of cattle†
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
Longa, ae *see* **Alba**
Māvortius, a, um of Mars, god of war
Nomentum, ī *n.* Italian city†
Numitor, ōris *m.* king of Alba Longa†
ostentō (1) show (off), display, parade, exhibit
pariter equally, side by side*
pietās, ātis *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
Pōmetiī, ōrum *m.* Italian city†
Procās, ae *m.* king of Alba Longa†
proximus, a, um next, closest, nearest
quantus, a, um how (great, much, many), as*
quercus, ūs *f.* oak
quīn (but) that, nay even, why not*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give back, recall, repeat*
rēgnō (1) rule (as king), reign, govern
Silvius, (i)ī *m.* Silvius Aeneas, king of Alba Longa
sine without (*abl.*)*
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
umbrō (1) shade, shadow, darken
umquam ever, at any time
unde whence, from which source*

---

he was to be the son of Aeneas, a Trojan, and of Lavinia, an Italian.

765. (in) **silvīs**: Livy says of him **cāsū quōdam** (*some*) **in silvīs nātus.**

768. Numitor: with the final syllable lengthened under the verse accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a*.

770. umquam: according to tradition his guardian kept him from the royal power for fifty years.

772. cīvīlī quercū: usually called **corōna cīvica**, a wreath of oak leaves granted to those who had saved the life of a Roman citizen in battle. The Senate decreed that such a crown should always hang before the doors of Augustus, and the poet may have this in mind here.

773. Hī (condent).

777. avō: Numitor. **addet**: *will join him* (in the world of living men).

Rōmulus, Assaracī *quem sanguinis* Īlia *māter*
ēdūcet. *Viden, ut geminae stant* vertice cristae
et pater ipse suō superum jam signat *honōre?*
Ēn *hujus, nāte,* auspiciīs *illa* incluta Rōma
imperium terrīs, animōs aequābit Olympō,
septem*que ūna sibī* mūrō circumdabit *arcēs,*
fēlīx prōle *virum:* quālis Berecyntia *māter*
invehitur currū Phrygiās turrīta *per urbēs*
laeta deum partū, centum complexa nepōtēs,
omnīs caelicolās, *omnīs supera* alta *tenentīs.*
Hūc geminās nunc flecte aciēs, *hanc* aspice *gentem*
Rōmānōs*que tuōs. Hīc* Caesar *et omnis* Iūlī
prōgeniēs *magnum caelī ventūra sub* axem.
Hic vir, hic est, tibi quem prōmittī saepius *audīs,*

---

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; line; vision, eye*
aequō (1) equal(ize), make equal, even*
altum, ī *n.* the deep; the height, heaven
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at*
Assaracus, ī *m.* Phrygian king, grandfather of Anchises
auspicium, (i)ī *n.* auspices, authority
axis, is *m.* axis, axle, wheel; vault
Berecyntius, a, um of Berecyntus, a mountain in Phrygia, center of the worship of Cybele, mother of the gods†
caelicola, ae *m.* (*f.*) god(dess), divinity
Caesar, aris *m.* great Roman statesman and general
centum hundred*
circumdō, dare, dedī, datus surround
complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold
crista, ae *f.* crest, plume
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead out, raise, bear
ēn see! look! behold!
fēlīx, īcis happy, blessed, fruitful*
flectō, ere, xī, xus bend, turn; guide
Īlia, ae *f.* a vestal virgin, mother of Romulus and Remus by the god Mars
inclutus, a, um famous, renowned
invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus convey, bear
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson, descendant*
Olympus, ī *m.* high Greek mountain, home of the gods; heaven
partus, ūs *m.* birth, offspring
Phrygius, a, um of Phrygia, a country of Asia Minor*
prōgeniēs, ēī *f.* offspring, race, progeny
prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus promise*
quālis, e of what sort, as*
Rōma, ae *f.* Rome, a city and empire
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
Rōmulus, ī *m.* son of Mars and the vestal virgin Ilia, legendary founder of Rome
saepe, ius, issimē often, frequently*
septem seven
signō (1) mark, distinguish, observe
turrītus, a, um crowned with towers, turreted
ūnā together, at the same time
vertex, icis *m.* top, head, summit, peak*

---

779. Viden = vidēsne.

780. pater: Mars. suō honōre: i.e., the double-crested helmet (geminae cristae), which was a characteristic of Mars. (eum) superum: acc. sing., *marks him* (*as*) *a god.*

781. hujus auspiciīs: *under his auspices,* referring to the famous omen of the twelve vultures which Romulus saw, while Remus saw only six.

783. sibī: dat. of reference.

784. Berecyntia māter: Cybele, mother of the gods, usually represented as driving a chariot drawn by lions and as wearing on her head a crown with decorations representing the towers of a city wall, thus symbolizing the earth and its cities.

788. aciēs = oculōs.

789. Caesar: Julius (or possibly Augustus).

791. hic: irregularly short; App. 107, 3, *c.*

Augustus Caesar, *dīvī genus,* aurea condet
saecula *quī* rūrsus Latiō rēgnata *per arva*
Sāturnō *quondam, super et* Garamantas *et* Indōs
prōferet *imperium;* jacet extrā *sīdera tellūs,* 795
extrā annī sōlisque *viās, ubi* caelifer Atlās
axem *umerō* torquet stēllīs *ardentibus* aptum.
Hujus in adventum *jam nunc et* Caspia *rēgna*
respōnsīs horrent *dīvum et* Maeōtia *tellūs,*
et septemgeminī turbant trepida ōstia Nīlī. 800
Nec vērō Alcīdēs *tantum tellūris* obīvit,
fīxerit aeripedem cervam licet, *aut* Erymanthī
pācārit nemora *et* Lernam tremefēcerit arcū;

---

adventus, ūs *m.* approach, arrival
aeripēs, edis bronze-hoofed†
Alcīdēs, ae *m.* descendant of Alceus, Hercules, god of strength who wandered over the whole world in performing his famous twelve labors, among which was the killing of the bronze-footed Arcadian deer, of the Erymanthian boar, and of the Lernaean hydra
annus, ī *m.* year, season, time*
aptus, a, um fitted, studded, furnished
arcus, ūs *m.* bow, arch, arc*
Atlās, antis *m.* god who supported the heavens on his shoulders; mountain of northwestern Africa
Augustus, ī *m.* great Roman statesman†
aureus, a, um golden, (of) gold*
axis, is *m.* axle, axis, wheel; vault
caelifer, era, erum heaven-supporting†
Caesar, aris *m.* great Roman statesman†
Caspius, a, um of the Caspian Sea in Asia†
cerva, ae *f.* deer, doe
condō, ere, didī, ditus found, establish*
Erymanthus, ī *m.* mountain range of Arcadia where Hercules killed the famous wild boar
extrā beyond, outside (of) (*acc.*)
fīgō, ere, xī, xus (trans)fix, pierce, fasten*
Garamantes, um *m.* African tribe†
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, quake*
Indī, ōrum *m.* inhabitants of India†
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
Latium, (i)ī *n.* district around Rome*
Lerna, ae *f.* marsh near Argos where Hercules killed the famous hydra, a monster with seven (fifty) serpent heads
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
Maeōtius, a, um of Lake Maeotia, the Sea of Azov†
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
Nīlus, ī *m.* the great river of Egypt†
obeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus pass over, die
ōstium, (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
pācō (1) pacify, tame, quiet, calm†
prōferō, ferre, tulī, lātus advance, extend†
rēgnō (1) rule (as king), reign, govern
respōnsum, ī *n.* answer, oracle, response
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
saeculum, ī *n.* age, generation
Sāturnus, ī *m.* early Italian god who ruled during the Golden Age†
septemgeminus, a, um sevenfold†
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
stēlla, ae *f.* star, constellation
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn, whirl*
tremefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus make tremble
trepidus, a, um agitated, fluttered
turbō (1) confuse, perplex, be alarmed*
vērō truly, verily, indeed, but

---

792. dīvī genus: *son of the deified* (Julius Caesar).

793. (in) Latiō.

794. Sāturnō: dat. of agent; Saturn was ruler of heaven and earth in the Golden Age; after his dethronement he came to Italy.

795. sīdera: the zodiac, which denotes the course of the sun.

796. annī sōlisque viās: *the yearly course of the sun.*

800. septemgeminī: the Nile divides into a number of streams near its mouth, forming a delta.

802–803. licet fīxerit, pācā(ve)rit, tremefēcerit: concessive; App.384. cervam: the third labor of Hercules was to capture the bronze-footed deer of Ceryneia in

nec quī pampineīs *victor* juga flectit habēnīs
Līber, *agēns* celsō Nȳsae *dē* vertice tigrīs.
Et dubitāmus adhūc virtūtem extendere factīs,
aut metus Ausoniā prohibet cōnsistere *terrā?*
Quis procul ille autem rāmīs īnsignis olīvae
sacra ferēns? Nōscō crīnīs incānaque menta
rēgis Rōmānī *prīmam quī* lēgibus *urbem*
fundābit Curibus parvīs *et* paupere *terrā*,
missus in imperium magnum. Cui deinde *subībit*
ōtia *quī* rumpet patriae residēsque *movēbit*
Tullus *in arma virōs et jam* dēsuēta triumphīs
agmina. Quem juxtā *sequitur* jactantior Ancus
nunc quoque *jam* nimium gaudēns populāribus *aurīs.*
Vīs et Tarquiniōs *rēgēs animamque* superbam

---

adhūc still, yet, hitherto
Ancus, ī *m.* fourth king of Rome, pictured by Vergil as a demagogue†
Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian
autem however, moreover, but*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)*
crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
Curēs, ium *m.* Italian city, home of Numa, lawgiver and second king of Rome†
deinde then, thence, next, thereupon*
dēsuētus, a, um unaccustomed, dormant
dubitō (1) doubt, hesitate, waver
extendō, ere, ī, ntus extend, stretch out
factum, ī *n.* deed, achievement, exploit*
flectō, ere, xī, xus bend, turn; guide
fundō (1) found, establish, base
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
habēna, ae *f.* rein, curb, check
incānus, a, um hoary, gray, white†
īnsignis, e distinguished, marked*
jactō (1) toss, buffet, boast, vaunt*
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
juxtā next, close to (*acc.*)*
lēx, lēgis *f.* law, decree, regulation
Līber, erī *m.* Bacchus, god of wine, who drove his chariot drawn by tigers (or panthers) all over the world†
mentum, ī *n.* chin; beard, whiskers
metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
nimium too (much, greatly)
nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn, recognize; *perf.* know*
Nȳsa, ae *f.* mountain of India, fabled birthplace of Bacchus†
olīva, ae *f.* olive
ōtium, (i)ī *n.* repose, peace, leisure
pampineus, a, um of vine (leaves, tendrils)†
parvus, a, um small, little*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
pauper, eris poor, needy, lowly
populāris, e popular, of the people†
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus prevent, prohibit
quoque also, in addition, too, likewise*
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
reses, idis inactive, sluggish, dormant
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
Tarquinius, (i)ī *m.* Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth, and Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh and last king of Rome†
tigris, (id)is *m.* (*f.*) tiger, tigress
triumphus, ī *m.* triumph, victory
Tullus, ī *m.* a great warrior, third king of Rome†
vertex, icis *m.* top, peak, summit, head*
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, excellence, valor*

Arcadia. He wounded it and then caught it. **pācā(ve)rit**: *gave peace to*, by killing the wild boar.

806–846. Aeneas is shown others of his descendants, among whom Caesar and Pompey attract special attention.

808. rāmīs olīvae: a priest when sacrificing often wore a wreath of olive. **ille**: Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.

809. menta: poetic plural; App. 243.

810. rēgis: Numa, legendary founder of most of the early Roman laws and religious ceremonies.

816. populāribus aurīs: *the breezes of popular favor.*

817. Vīs: from volō.

ultōris Brūtī, fascīs*que videre* receptōs?
Cōnsulis *imperium hic prīmus* saevās*que* secūrīs
accipiet, nātōsque pater nova bella moventīs
ad poenam pulchrā prō lībertāte *vocābit.*
Īnfēlīx! Utcumque *ferent ea* facta minōrēs:
vincet amor patriae laudum*que* immēnsa cupīdō.
Quīn Deciōs Drūsōs*que procul* saevum*que* secūrī
aspice Torquātum *et referentem* signa Camillum.
Illae autem paribus *quās* fulgere *cernis in armīs,*
concordēs *animae nunc et dum nocte* premuntur,
heu quantum *inter sē bellum, sī lūmina vītae*
attigerint, quantās aciēs strāgem*que* ciēbunt,
aggeribus socer Alpīnīs *atque arce* Monoecī

---

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; battle(-line); view*
agger, eris *m.* mound, barrier, rampart
Alpīnus, a, um Alpine, of the Alps
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at*
attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, attain
autem however, moreover, but*
Brūtus, ī *m.* expeller of the Tarquins and first consul at Rome, who executed his own sons for attempted rebellion†
Camillus, ī *m.* conqueror of the Gauls who had captured Rome in 390 B.C.†
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus stir (up), arouse*
concors, rdis harmonious, concordant
cōnsul, ulis *m.* one of the two chief magistrates annually appointed at Rome†
cupīdō, inis *f.* desire, love, longing
Decius, (i)ī *m.* name of two heroic consuls who devoted themselves in battle in the Latin and Gallic wars†
Drūsus, ī *m.* (1) one of the consuls who defeated Hasdrubal, brother of Hannibal, at the Metaurus in 207 B.C.; (2) brother of Tiberius and stepson of Augustus†
factum, ī *n.* deed, achievement, exploit*
fascis, is *m.* bundle of rods with ax, carried by lictors before Roman kings and consuls as a symbol of authority†
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsī shine, gleam, glitter
immēnsus, a, um boundless, vast
laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
lībertās, ātis *f.* liberty, freedom†
minōrēs, um *m.* younger people, posterity
Monoecus, ī *m.* Monaco, a city in northern Italy†
pār, paris equal, similar, like*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, weigh down*
prō before, on behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, glorious, handsome, splendid, illustrious*
quantus, a, um how (great, much, many), as*
quīn (but) that, nay even, why not*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus recover, receive*
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
secūris, is *f.* ax, battle-ax
signum, ī *n.* sign, standard, mark, token*
socer, erī *m.* father-in-law
strāgēs, is *f.* slaughter, carnage
Torquātus, ī *m.* consul who executed his own son for disobeying orders†
ultor, ōris *m.* avenger, punisher
utcumque how(so)ever, when(so)ever†

---

818. fascīs: bundles of rods with an ax in the middle, used as symbols of authority by the kings of Rome but taken over (receptōs) by Brutus for the republic and henceforth symbols of the consuls.

820. nova = *civil.* See the note on **novandīs**, IV, 290. The sons of Brutus plotted for the return of the expelled kings and were executed by their father.

822. Utcumque ferent minōrēs: *howsoever posterity may extol the deed.*

824. Drūsōs: Vergil is here complimenting Augustus, whose wife Livia belonged to this famous family.

825. signa: the standards captured by the Gauls from the Romans at the battle of the Allia, 387 B.C., but recovered by Camillus, who defeated the Gauls shortly thereafter.

826–827. Illae animae: Pompey and Caesar. **fulgēre:** usually of the second conjugation, but of the third conjugation here. **nocte:** a general term for the lower world as distinguished from the world of light and sunshine.

830. socer: Caesar, whose daughter Julia had married Pompey. **aggeribus Alpīnīs:** beyond which Caesar had been

dēscendēns, gener adversīs īnstrūctus Eōīs!
Nē, puerī, nē tanta animīs adsuēscite *bella*
neu patriae validās *in* vīscera vertite *vīrīs;*
tūque prior, *tū* parce, *genus quī dūcis* Olympō,
prōjice *tēla manū, sanguis meus!* —
Ille triumphātā Capitōlia *ad alta* Corinthō
victor aget currum caesīs īnsignis Achīvīs.
Ēruet *ille* Argōs Agamemnoniās*que* Mycēnās
ipsumque Aeacidēn, *genus* armipotentis Achillī,
ultus avōs *Trojae* templa *et* temerāta Minervae.
Quis tē, magne Catō, tacitum *aut tē,* Cosse, *relinquat?*
Quis Gracchī *genus aut geminōs,* duo fulmina *bellī,*

Achillēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* famous Greek chieftain before Troy*
Achīvus, a, um Achaean, Greek
adsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus make accustomed
adversus, a, um opposite, opposing, facing*
Aeacidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Aeacus; Perseus, king of Macedonia, who claimed to be descended from Aeacus through Achilles
Agamemnonius, a, um of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae, who led the Greek expedition against Troy
Argī, ōrum *m.* famous kingdom and city of southern Greece
armipotēns, entis powerful in arms
avus, ī *m.* grandfather; ancestor
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus cut (down), kill
Capitōlium, (i)ī *n.* the Capitoline Hill, the Capitol at Rome†
Catō, ōnis *m.* famous Roman statesman, noted for his stern simplicity†
Corinthus, ī *f.* famous Greek city, captured and destroyed by Lucius Mummius in 146 B.C.†
Cossus, ī *m.* Roman general who was the second (Romulus being first and Marcellus third) to win the **spolia opīma** by killing in battle the enemy's leader
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend
duo, ae, o two*
Eōus, a, um eastern, of the East
ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, ruin
fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
gener, erī *m.* son-in-law
Gracchus, ī *m.* (1) Tiberius; (2) Gaius; the Gracchi, famous Roman statesmen and reformers†
īnsignis, e distinguished, marked*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus draw up
Minerva, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts
Mycēnae, ārum *f.* famous city in southern Greece
neve, neu nor, and not
Olympus, ī *m.* high mountain in northern Greece, home of the gods; heaven
parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare (*dat.*)
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior*
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw away
tacitus, a, um silent, unmentioned
temerō (1) violate, desecrate, pollute, defile†
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
triumphō (1) triumph (over), conquer†
ulcīscor, ī, ultus avenge, punish
validus, a, um strong, valiant, stout
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
vīscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh

---

occupied for nine years, 58–50 B.C., in his Gallic campaigns.

831. Eōīs (agminibus): Pompey's troops contained a large number of eastern contingents.

834. genus Olympō: referring to Caesar, who traced his ancestry through Iulus and Aeneas to Venus.

836. Ille: Lucius Mummius, conqueror and destroyer of Corinth.

838. ille: Lucius Aemilius Paulus, conqueror of the Macedonian king, Perseus, who traced his ancestry to Achilles.

840. templa: for this incident see I, 41 and II, 165–175, with notes.

Scīpiadās, clādem Libyae, parvōque potentem
Fabricium *vel tē* sulcō, Serrāne, serentem?
Quō fessum rapitis, Fabiī? *Tū* Maximus *ille es,*
ūnus quī nōbīs cūnctandō restituis *rem.*
Excūdent *aliī* spīrantia mollius aera
(crēdō equidem), vīvōs *dūcent dē* marmore vultūs,
ōrābunt causās melius, *caelīque* meātūs
dēscrībent radiō *et surgentia sīdera dīcent:*
tū regere *imperiō* populōs, Rōmāne, mementō
(*hae tibi erunt* artēs), pācis*que* impōnere mōrem,
parcere subjectīs *et* dēbellāre superbōs."

aes, aeris *n.* bronze*
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, handicraft*
causa, ae *f.* cause, case (at law)*
clādēs, is *f.* slaughter, destruction
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, suppose*
cūnctor, ārī, ātus delay, tarry, wait
dēbellō (1) war down, crush
dēscrībō, ere, psī, ptus mark out, map
equidem indeed, truly, surely*
excūdō, ere, ī, sus hammer out, fashion
Fabius, (i)ī *m.* Roman dictator who "wore out" Hannibal by delay and thus restored the Roman fortunes†
Fabricius, (i)ī *m.* Roman consul and general, who refused large bribes†
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on, impose, establish*
Libya, ae *f.* country of northern Africa, Carthage*
marmor, oris *n.* marble
Maximus, ī *m.* surname of Fabius after his successes against Hannibal†
meātus, ūs *m.* course, path, motion†
melior, ius better, superior, finer
meminī, isse remember, recollect (*gen.*)
molliter softly, gently, gracefully†
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, usage, rule, law*
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, plead, argue*
parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare (*dat.*)
parvus, a, um small, little*
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, quiet, repose
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
potēns, entis powerful, mighty*
radius, (i)ī *m.* rod, spoke, compass
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus seize, hurry along*
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, guide, direct
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus restore†
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
Scīpiadēs, ae *m.* member of the Scipionic family; Scipio, famous in the wars against Carthage†
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, plant, beget*
Serrānus, ī *m.* consul called from the plow to fight the Carthaginians in 257 B.C.†
spīrō (1) breathe, blow, live, quiver
subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus vanquish
sulcus, ī *m.* furrow, trench
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
vīvus, a, um living, alive, natural
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

843. Scīpiadās = Scīpiōnēs (⏑˘⏑–) which cannot be used in dactylic verse. Their victories over Carthage (**clādem Libyae**) were notable. **parvō potentem:** *rich in poverty.*

844. Serrāne, serentem: alliteration; *Serranus sowing*, referring to the tradition that he was sowing grain when news was brought to him of his election as consul.

845. (mē) fessum: *wearied* as I am with reciting the great achievements of others. **Maximus:** dubbed **Cūnctātor,** *the Delayer*, by his political enemies.

847–853. Aeneas is assured that the Romans are called by high destiny to rule the world.

847. aliī: the reference is to the Greeks, the acknowledged masters of the Romans in the arts, sciences, oratory, and literature. **spīrantia aera:** bronze statues so lifelike that they seem to breathe.

847–848. sculptors, orators.

849–850. astronomers. **dīcent** = **vocābunt.**

851. Rōmāne: addressed to the Roman people in general.

852. hae: attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240. *a*

Sīc pater Anchīsēs atque haec mīrantibus addit:
"Aspice, *ut* īnsignis spoliīs Mārcellus opīmīs
ingreditur *victorque virōs* superēminet *omnīs*.
Hic rem Rōmānam *magnō* turbante tumultū
sistet, eques sternet Poenōs Gallum*que* rebellem,
tertia*que arma patrī* suspendet *capta* Quirīnō."
Atque hīc Aenēās (ūnā *namque īre vidēbat*
ēgregium formā juvenem *et* fulgentibus *armīs*,
sed frōns *laeta* parum *et* dējectō *lūmina* vultū)
"*Quis, pater, ille, virum quī sīc* comitātur *euntem?*
Fīlius, anne aliquis *magnā dē* stirpe nepōtum?
Quī strepitus circā *comitum!* Quantum īnstar *in ipsō!*

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
aliquis, quid some(one), any(one)*
an(ne) *interrog.* whether, or
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at*
circā around, about†
comitor, ārī, ātus accompany, attend, escort, follow*
dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast down
ēgregius, a, um extraordinary, distinguished
eques, itis *m.* cavalryman, knight
fīlius, (i)ī *m.* son
forma, ae *f.* form, beauty, shape*
frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, brow*
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsī shine, gleam, glitter
Gallus, a, um Gallic, Gaul†
ingredior, ī, gressus step, stride, enter
īnsignis, e distinguished, marked*
īnstar *n. indecl.* likeness, weight, dignity
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
Mārcellus, ī *m.* famous Roman consul, slew in battle Viridomarus, king of the Insubrian Gauls, and thus won the third **spolia opīma**†
mīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
opīmus, a, um rich, splendid, sumptuous; **spolia opīma** spoils of honor, taken when the general with his own hand slew the general of the enemy
parum slightly, too little, not†
Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian
quantus, a, um how (much, great, many), as*
Quirīnus, ī *m.* the deified Romulus as god of war
rebellis, e rebellious, insurgent†
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
sistō, ere, stetī, status stop, stand
spolium, (i)ī *n.* spoil, booty, plunder
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew*
stirps, pis *f.* stock, lineage, race
strepitus, ūs *m.* uproar, noise
superēmineō, ēre overtop, tower above
suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus hang up*
tertius, a, um third*
tumultus, ūs *m.* tumult, uprising, clamor
turbō (1) confuse, shake, disturb*
ūnā together, at the same time
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

854–887. Anchises especially praises the younger Marcellus and sings a dirge for his untimely death.

854. (**Aenēae et Sibyllae**) **mīrantibus.**

855. spoliīs opīmīs: arms and other booty taken on the field of battle by the victorious from the vanquished general, whom he has slain with his own hand. These were won before by Romulus and Cossus, l. 841, and never afterward. **Mārcellus:** a hero of the second Punic War and an ancestor of the younger Marcellus.

857. tumultū: the war with the Gauls in Italy, in which the elder Marcellus had killed Viridomarus, leader of the Gauls, and stripping him of his armor had obtained the third and last **spolia opīma**, the tertia arma capta of l. 859.

858. eques: (*though but*) *a knight.*

860. Aenēās (**dīcit**). **ūnā** (**cum Mārcellō**).

862. frōns (**erat**). **et lūmina** (**erant**) **dējectō vultū** = **et lūmina** (**erant**) **dējecta. lūmina** = **oculī**, as often.

863. virum: the elder Marcellus. **ille:** the younger Marcellus, son of Augustus's sister Octavia. Augustus had chosen him to be his successor, but he died in 23 B.C.

864. nepōtum (**nostrōrum**).

865. strepitūs: indicating the future fame and popularity of the younger Marcellus.

Sed nox ātra caput trīstī circumvolat *umbrā.*"
Tum pater Anchīsēs lacrimīs ingressus obortīs:
"*Ō nāte, ingentem* lūctum *nē quaere tuōrum;*
ostendent *terrīs hunc* tantum *fāta neque* ultrā
esse sinent. Nimium *vōbīs* Rōmāna propāgō
vīsa potēns, *superī,* propria *haec sī dōna fuissent.*
Quantōs *ille virum magnam* Māvortis *ad urbem*
campus aget gemitūs! *Vel quae,* Tiberīne, *vidēbis*
fūnera, *cum* tumulum praeterlābēre recentem!
Nec puer Īliacā quisquam *dē gente* Latīnōs
in tantum spē *tollet* avōs, *nec* Rōmula *quondam*
ūllō sē tantum tellūs jactābit alumnō.
Heu pietās, *heu* prīsca fidēs invicta*que bellō*
dextera! Nōn illī sē quisquam impūne *tulisset*
obvius armātō, seu *cum* pedes *īret in* hostem

alumnus, ī *m.* nursling, (foster) child
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
avus, ī *m.* grandfather; ancestor
circumvolō (1) flit around, fly about
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, trust, fidelity, pledge*
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan(ing), wail(ing)*
hostis, is *m.* enemy, foe, stranger*
Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*
impūne unpunished, with impunity
ingredior, ī, gressus stride, begin, enter
invictus, a, um unconquered, invincible
jactō (1) toss, buffet, vaunt, boast*
Latīnus, a, um Latin, of Latium
lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow
Māvors, rtis *m.* Mars, god of war†
nimium too (much), too great(ly)
oborior, īrī, ortus arise, spring up
obvius, a, um before, meeting (*dat.*)
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display*
pedes, itis *m.* footsoldier, infantry
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
potēns, entis powerful, mighty*
praeterlābor, ī, lāpsus glide by
prīscus, a, um ancient, primitive
propāgō, inis *f.* offshoot, offspring, race†
proprius, a, um one's own, special, secure
quantus, a, um how (great, much, many), as*
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam any(one, thing)
recēns, entis recent, fresh, new
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
Rōmulus, a, um of Romulus, Roman†
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs permit, allow*
sīve, seu or if, whether, or
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
tantum so much, so great(ly), only
Tiberīnus, ī *m.* (god of) the Tiber, river on which Rome is situated
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb*
ultrā beyond, farther

867. ingressus (est).

868–886. These lines were recited by Vergil to Augustus and Octavia, the mother of Marcellus. Octavia is said to have swooned and later to have royally rewarded the poet for his glowing tribute to the memory of her son.

869. neque ultrā: Marcellus was only nineteen at the time of his death.

871. vīsa (esset): conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382. sī fuissent: condition contrary to fact. haec dōna: Marcellus.

872. vir(ōr)um. Māvortis urbem = Rome, founded by Romulus, a son of Mars.

873. campus: the Campus Martius, on the banks of the Tiber near Rome, where the whole populace assembled to celebrate the funeral of the young Marcellus.

874. tumulum: the magnificent mausoleum of Augustus, erected by the emperor four years before the death of Marcellus. praeterlābēre = praeterlābēris.

876. spē: *by the hope* (of his future greatness).

879. illī = Mārcellō: dat. with obvius in l. 880. tulisset: conclusion of a clause contrary to fact, with the condition implied.

seu spūmantis *equī* foderet calcāribus armōs.
Heu, miserande *puer, sī* quā *fāta* aspera rumpās,
tū Mārcellus *eris*. *Manibus date* līlia plēnīs,
purpureōs spargam flōrēs *animamque* nepōtis
885 *hīs* saltem accumulem *dōnīs, et* fungar inānī
mūnere." *Sīc tōtā* passim regiōne vagantur
āeris *in campīs* lātīs *atque omnia* lūstrant.
Quae postquam *Anchīsēs nātum per* singula *dūxit*
incendit*que animum fāmae venientis amōre*,
890 exim *bella virō* memorat *quae* deinde gerenda,
Laurentīs*que* docet populōs *urbemque* Latīnī,
et quō quemque modō *fugiatque feratque labōrem*.
Sunt geminae Somnī portae, *quārum* altera *fertur*

---

accumulō (1) heap up; pile up; honor†
āēr, āeris *m.* air, mist, fog
alter, era, erum one (of two), other (of two), second*
armus, ī *m.* shoulder, flank, side†
asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce*
calcar, āris *n.* spur, goad, prick†
deinde thence, next, thereupon*
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach (about), tell*
exim, exin(de) thence, next, thereupon†
flōs, ōris *m.* flower, blossom, bloom
fodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus dig, pierce, spur†
fungor, ī, fūnctus perform, fulfil (*abl.*)†
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus bear, wage*
inānis, e empty, useless, unavailing*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle*
Latīnus, ī *m.* early king of Italy, whose daughter, Lavinia, married Aeneas†
lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious*
Laurēns, entis of Laurentum, a city near Rome
līlium, (i)ī *n.* lily
lūstrō (1) purify; survey; traverse
Mārcellus, ī *m.* nephew and adopted son of Augustus, died in 23 B.C., to the great grief of his mother and of the emperor
memorō (1) recount, (re)call, relate*
miseror, ārī, ātus pity, commiserate*
modus, ī *m.* manner, measure, limit*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
passim everywhere, all about*
plēnus, a, um full, filled, complete
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
postquam after (that), when*
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson, bright
quā where(by), wherever, in any (some) way
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) each, every(one)
regiō, ōnis *f.* district, region, quarter
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth)*
saltem at least, at any rate
singulī, ae, a each, one by one
sīve, seu or if, whether, or
Somnus, ī *m.* Sleep, Slumber
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
vagor, ārī, ātus wander, roam, rove

---

882. rumpās: fut. less vivid condition; App. 381. **quā** (viā).

883. Mārcellus: (*a true*) *Marcellus*, worthy of the name.

884–885. purpureōs: a color much used in the funerals of the great, as indicated in the note to l. 221. **spargam, accumulem, fungar**: volitives; App. 254.

886. vagantur (Anchīsēs et Aenēās et Sibylla).

888–892. A prophecy of the impending wars and difficulties of Aeneas in Italy.

890. gerenda (sint).

892. fugiat, ferat: subjunctives in indirect questions.

893–901. Aeneas and the Sibyl depart through the ivory exit of Hades to the upper world. Aeneas hastens to his fleet, sets sail once more and soon lands at Cajeta in Latium, the final goal of his journey and the destined end of his wanderings.

893. fertur (esse) = dicitur (esse).

cornea, *quā* vērīs facilis *datur* exitus *umbrīs*,
altera candentī perfecta nitēns elephantō,
sed falsa *ad caelum mittunt* īnsomnia mānēs.
Hīs ibi *tum nātum Anchīsēs* ūnā*que* Sibyllam
prōsequitur *dictīs* portā*que* ēmittit eburnā;
ille viam secat *ad* nāvīs *sociōsque* revīsit.
Tum sē ad Cajētae rēctō *fert lītore portum.*
Ancora *dē* prōrā jacitur; *stant lītore puppēs.*

alter, era, erum one (of two), other (of two), second*
ancora, ae *f.* anchor
Cajēta, ae *f.* Italian coast city near Rome†
candēns, entis shining, white, gleaming
corneus, a, um of horn, horny†
eburnus, a, um (of) ivory
elephantus, ī *m.* elephant, ivory
ēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send forth
exitus, ūs *m.* exit, outlet, egress
facilis, e easy, favorable, ready
falsus, a, um false, deceitful, mock
ibi there, then
īnsomnium, (i)ī *n.* dream, vision
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw, cast, hurl
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
nitēns, entis gleaming, bright, shining
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, make
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
prōra, ae *f.* prow (of a ship)*
prōsequor, ī, secūtus follow, escort
rēctus, a, um right, straight, direct
revīsō, ere revisit, see again
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave; speed*
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
ūnā together, at the same time
vērus, a, um true, real, genuine, honest*

895. candentī elephantō: abl. of material; App. 324.

896. sed (per hanc portam).

900. rēctō lītore: (sailing) *straight along the shore;* abl. of route.

901. This line repeats III, 277.

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

ALPHABET; PRONUNCIATION; QUANTITY; ACCENT

1. With the exception that it has no **w** the Latin alphabet is the same as the English, which has been borrowed from it.

2. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u,** and sometimes **y.** The other letters are consonants.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

3. Vowels. All Latin vowels are either long or short. All long vowels are indicated in this text by having the mark (–) placed over them, as **nōn,** *not.* All unmarked vowels in this book are to be considered short.

4. Latin vowels have the following sounds:

Long	Short
ā as in f*a*ther: **āra,** *altar*	**a** as in *a*sk: **anima,** *soul*
ē as in th*ey*: **mēns,** *mind*	**e** as in r*e*d: **bellum,** *war*
ī as in mach*i*ne: **dīvus,** *divine*	**i** as in h*i*t: **mittō,** *send*
ō as in b*o*ne: **mōns,** *mountain*	**o** as in *o*bey: **aequor,** *sea*
ū as in pr*u*ne: **lūx,** *light*	**u** as in f*u*ll: **fuga,** *flight*

5. Diphthongs. A diphthong is the union of two vowels in a single syllable. The sounds of the Latin diphthongs are:

ae as *ai* in *ai*sle: **caelum,** *heaven*
au as *ou* in h*ou*se: **aurum,** *gold*
ei as *ei* in fr*ei*ght: **ei,** *alas!*
oe as *oi* in b*oi*l: **poena,** *punishment*
eu as *eh-oo* (*oo* as in sp*oo*n, but fused with the *eh* sound into a single syllable): **heu,** *alas!*
ui somewhat as *we,* but with a more vocalic sound of the **u**: **cui,** *to whom*

6. Consonants. In general the consonants have the same sounds as in English, but there are the following exceptions:

c as *k,* always hard, as in *c*ome: **faciō,** *do, make*
g always hard, as in *g*et: **fugiō,** *flee*
j (consonantal **i**) as *y* in *y*et: **jubeō,** *order*
s as in *s*it, never as in ri*s*e: **cāsus,** *chance*
t as in *t*ie, never as in na*t*ion: **tālis,** *such*
v (consonantal **u**) as *w* in *w*ill: **videō,** *see*
x as in e*x*tra, always hard: **rēx,** *king*
bs, bt, as *ps, pt:* **urbs,** *city;* **obtineō,** *gain, obtain*
ch as *k* in *k*ite: **pulcher,** *beautiful*
gu (usually), **qu,** and sometimes **su** before a vowel, as *gw, kw,* and *sw,* respectively: **sanguis,** *blood;* **quī,** *who;* **suādeō,** *persuade*
ph as **p-h** (as *p-h* in sa*p*head, but without the break): **philosophia,** *philosophy*
th as *t-h* (as *t-h* in fa*t*head, but without the break): **Corinthus,** *Corinth*

a. Modern printed texts often use the same character (i) for both vocalic and consonantal i (i, j), as well as only one character for vocalic and consonantal u (u, v). The Romans did not employ separate characters to distinguish between the vocalic and consonantal uses of these letters.

b. When coming between vowels within a word, j is regularly doubled in pronunciation, although written but once, as **major,** *greater;* **pejor,** *worse;* **ejus,** *of him;* **hujus,** *of this;* **cujus,** *of whom;* **ajō,** *say.* These are to be pronounced as though spelled **majjor, pejjor, ejjus, hujjus, cujjus, ajjō.** This rule does not apply to j, which was originally initial, but which comes between vowels as a result of composition, as **praejūdicō,** *prejudge;* **bijugī,** *chariot.*

c. When followed by the letter i, as in compounds of **jaciō,** *throw,* j, although pronounced, is not ordinarily written in the classical period, as **coniciō,** *throw together;* **dēiciō,** *cast down;* **ēiciō,** *throw out;* **reiciō,** *throw back.* These are to be pronounced as though spelled **conjiciō, dējiciō, ējiciō,** rejiciō, and in this text they are so written.

7. Doubled Consonants. All doubled consonants are to be sounded separately, not as one consonant as is customary in English. Thus **puella,** *girl,* must be pronounced **pu-el-la,** and not **pu-ell-a** as in English; so also **er-rō,** *wander, stray;* **oc-cu-pō,** *occupy.*

8. Double Consonants. The double consonants are **x** and **z**; **x** is equivalent to **ks** or **cs**; **z** a Greek letter, originally **zd,** may be pronounced as **z** in *lazy.*

SYLLABLES

9. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; as **so-ci-us,** *comrade;* **vo-cā-re,** *to call;* **moe-ni-a,** *walls;* **ac-ci-pi-ō,** *receive.*

10. In dividing a Latin word into syllables, a single consonant is pronounced with the following vowel, as **ca-put,** *head.*

11. A consonant followed by **l** or **r** (except **ll** or **rr**) is usually pronounced with the **l** or **r,** as **pa-trēs,** *fathers;* **pū-bli-cus,** *public.*

12. In all other combinations of two or more consonants between vowels, the first consonant is pronounced with the preceding vowel, and the others with the vowel following, as **her-ba,** *herb;* **mōn-strō,** *show;* **ar-ma,** *arms.*

13. Exceptions. Compound words are divided in accordance with their original elements, as **ab-est,** *he is absent;* **trāns-eō,** *I pass across.*

QUANTITY

14. The quantity of a syllable is the term used to denote the relative amount of time employed in pronouncing it. About twice as much time should be used in pronouncing a long syllable as a short one.

15. A syllable is said to be long by *nature*, when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. It is said to be long by *position* when its vowel is followed by two or more consonants which are separated in pronunciation (10–12), or by either of the double consonants **x** or **z** (8), or by **j**, which was regularly doubled in pronunciation (6 *b*). **H** never helps to make a syllable long, and **qu** counts as a single consonant. Thus the first syllable of **adhūc,** *thus far,* and of **aqua,** *water,* is short.

16. Except under the metrical accent (394), a final syllable ending in a short vowel regularly remains short before a word beginning with two consonants or a double consonant.

17. If a consonant followed by **l** or **r** comes after a short vowel, the syllable containing the short vowel is said to be *common*, i.e., it may be either long or short, according to the pleasure of the one using it.

18. Note: This is due to the fact that the **l** and **r** blend so easily with the preceding consonant that the combination takes scarcely more time than a single consonant. When the **l** or **r** is separated in pronunciation from the preceding consonant, as may be done in all cases, more time is required in pronunciation and the preceding syllable is treated as long.

19. Observe that the *vowel* in a long syllable may be either long or short, and is to be pronounced accordingly. Thus in **errō,** *wander;* **captō,** *seize;* **vertō,** *turn;* **nox,** *night;* the first *vowel* in each case is short, and must be so pronounced, according to 4, but the syllable is long, and must occupy more time in pronunciation, according to 14, 15.

20. A vowel is regularly short before another vowel, or **h,** as **aes-tu-ō,** *boil;* **de-us,** *god;* **tra-hō,** *draw.*

a. This rule does not apply to Greek words in Latin, such as **ā-ēr,** *air;* **I-xī-ōn,** *Ixion* (a proper name).

21. A vowel is regularly short before **nt** or **nd.** Observe that the *syllable* in this case is long.

22. A vowel is regularly short before any final consonant except **s.**

a. Some monosyllables ending in **l, r, n,** and **c,** have a long vowel as **sōl,** *sun;* **pār,** *equal;* **nōn,** *not;* **sīc,** *so.*

23. A vowel is regularly long before **ns, nf, nx,** and **nct.**

24. Diphthongs and vowels derived from diphthongs or contracted from other vowels are regularly long.

ACCENT

25. Words of two syllables have the accent or stress on the first (penult), as **a'-mō**, *love.*

a. The last syllable of a word is called the ultima (**ultimus,** *last*); the next to the last syllable is called the penult (**paene,** *almost;* **ultimus,** *last*); and the syllable before the penult is called the antepenult (**ante,** *before;* **paene,** *almost;* **ultimus,** *last*).

26. Words of more than two syllables (polysyllabic words) have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, on the antepenult when the penult is short or common (17), as **aes-tu-ā'-re,** *boil;* **a'-ni-mus,** *mind.*

27. Enclitics. Certain words are not ordinarily written separately but are regularly appended to the word they introduce. The most common of these are **–que,** *and;* **–ve,** *or;* and **–ne** (sign of a question). They are called enclitics and, when appended to words accented on the antepenult, add an accent to the ultima, as **fo'ribus'que,** *and from the doorway.* When an enclitic is appended to a word of two syllables having a long ultima, the accent is shifted to the ultima; as **amō'que,** *and I love;* but **be'llaque,** *and wars;* **i'taque,** *and so.*

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

28. Latin words and phrases commonly used in English are to be pronounced according to the ordinary English system of pronunciation; for example, in **alumnī,** the final **ī** is to be pronounced as *i* in f*i*ve, and the **u** as *u* in b*u*m; and in the phrase **via** Chicago, **v** is to be pronounced as in *v*ine, and **i** as in v*i*ne; in the phrase **vōx populī,** *the voice of the people,* **v** as in *v*oice, **ō** as in *o*x, **u** as in d*u*e, **ī** as in d*i*e.

NUMBER

29. In Latin there are two numbers: the singular, denoting one; the plural, denoting more than one. For the poetic plural see 243.

CASES

30. In Latin there are seven cases:

1. **The nominative** is the case of the subject.
2. **The genitive** is usually equivalent to the English possessive or to the objective with the preposition *of.*
3. **The dative** is the case of the indirect object or of personal interest.
4. **The accusative** is usually the case of the direct object.
5. **The vocative** is the case of direct address.
6. **The ablative** is the case of adverbial relation.
7. **The locative** is the case of the place where.

DECLENSIONS

31. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final letter of their respective stems (*stem characteristic*). For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular.

Declension	Stem Characteristic	Genitive Singular
I.	ā (a)	ae
II.	o	ī
III.	a consonant or i	is
IV.	u	ūs
V.	ē	eī

a. The first, second, and fifth declensions are called vowel declensions; the third and fourth, which really form but one, the consonant declension, i and u being considered semiconsonants.

32. The case endings in combination with the stem characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations for the five declensions:

SINGULAR

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Nom.	a	us; wanting; um	s; wanting	us; ū	ēs
Gen.	ae	ī	is	ūs	eī, ē
Dat.	ae	ō	ī	uī; ū	eī, ē
Acc.	am	um	em, im	um, ū	em
Voc.	a	e; wanting; um	s; wanting	us, ū	ēs
Abl.	ā	ō	e, ī	ū	ē

PLURAL

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Nom. Voc.	ae	ī, a	ēs; a, ia	ūs, ua	ēs
Gen.	ārum	ōrum	um, ium	uum	ērum
Dat. Abl.	īs	īs	ibus	ubus, ibus	ēbus
Acc.	ās	ōs, a	ēs, īs; a, ia	ūs, ua	ēs

33. General Rules of Declension. *a.* The vocative is like the nominative, except in the singular of the second declension, when the nominative ends in us.

b. In the third, fourth, and fifth declensions the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are alike in the plural.

c. Neuter substantives have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike; in the plural these cases always end in a.

d. The dative and ablative plural are alike in all declensions.

First Declension

34. The stem ends in ā. The nominative-vocative singular is the simple stem with shortened stem vowel and no case ending.

Sg.	Nom.	**terra**, f., (*a, the*) *land*	**Pl.**	**terrae**,	(*the*) *lands*
	Gen.	**terrae**, *of* (*a, the*) *land*, (*a, the*) *land's*		**terrārum**,	*of* (*the*) *lands*, (*the*) *lands'*
	Dat.	**terrae**, *to, for* (*a, the*) *land*		**terrīs**,	*to, for* (*the*) *lands*
	Acc.	**terram**, (*a, the*) *land*		**terrās**,	(*the*) *lands*
	Voc.	**terra**, *O land! land!*		**terrae**,	*O lands! lands!*
	Abl.	**terrā**, *from, with, by, in, on, at* (*a, the*) *land*		**terrīs**,	*from, with, by, in, on, at* (*the*) *lands*

a. The locative singular of the first declension is like the genitive: **Rōmae**, *at Rome;* **mīlitiae**, *abroad* (i. e., engaged *in warfare*).

b. The genitive singular sometimes ends in **āī** in poetry; the genitive plural sometimes takes the form **um** instead of **ārum**.

c. The ending **ābus** is found (along with the regular ending) in the dative and ablative plural of **dea**, *goddess*, and **fīlia**, *daughter*.

35. Rule of Gender. Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except when they refer to males.

Second Declension

36. The stem ends in **o**, which in the classical period usually becomes **u**. In combination with the case endings it frequently disappears altogether. In the vocative singular (except in neuters) it becomes **e**.

a. The nominative ends in **s** (m., f.) and **m** (n.). But many masculine stems in which the original final vowel, **o**, was preceded by **r** have dropped the **us** of the nominative and the **e** of the vocative, and inserted **e** before the **r**, if it was preceded by a consonant; thus original **pueros** became **puer**, *boy*, and **libros** became **liber**, *book*.

b. The final **o** was often retained after **u** or **v** until the first century A.D.; as **servos**, *slave*.

37. Animus, *spirit;* **puer**, *boy;* **vir**, *man;* **bellum**, *war*, are declined as follows:

		animus, m.	**puer**, m.	**vir**, m.	**bellum**, n.
Sg.	Nom.	**animus**	**puer**	**vir**	**bellum**
	Gen.	**animī**	**puerī**	**virī**	**bellī**
	Dat.	**animō**	**puerō**	**virō**	**bellō**
	Acc.	**animum**	**puerum**	**virum**	**bellum**
	Voc.	**anime**	**puer**	**vir**	**bellum**
	Abl.	**animō**	**puerō**	**virō**	**bellō**
Pl.	Nom.	**animī**	**puerī**	**virī**	**bella**
	Gen.	**animōrum**	**puerōrum**	**virōrum**	**bellōrum**
	Dat.	**animīs**	**puerīs**	**virīs**	**bellīs**
	Acc.	**animōs**	**puerōs**	**virōs**	**bella**
	Voc.	**animī**	**puerī**	**virī**	**bella**
	Abl.	**animīs**	**puerīs**	**virīs**	**bellīs**

a. Words in **ius** (**ium**) have the genitive singular for the most part in **ī** until the first century A.D., without change of accent: **inge nī** (nom., **ingenium**), *of genius;* **Vergi'lī**, *of Vergil.*

b. Proper names in **ius** have the vocative in **ī**, without change of accent: **Antō'nī, Tu'llī, Gā'ī, Vergi'lī. Fīlius,** *son,* and **genius,** *genius,* form their vocative in like manner: **fīlī, genī.** In solemn discourse **us** of the nominative is employed also for the vocative. So regularly **deus,** *O god!*

c. The locative singular ends in **ī** like the genitive, as **Rhodī,** *at Rhodes;* **Tarentī,** *at Tarentum.*

d. In the genitive plural **um** instead of **ōrum** is often found.

e. The locative plural is identical with the ablative: **Delphīs,** *at Delphi.*

f. The declension of **deus,** m., *god,* is irregular:

Sg.	Nom.	**deus**	**Pl. dī, deī, diī**
	Gen.	**deī**	**deōrum, deum**
	Dat.	**deō**	**dīs, deīs, diīs**
	Acc.	**deum**	**deōs**
	Voc.	**deus**	**dī, deī, diī**
	Abl.	**deō**	**dīs, deīs, diīs**

38. Rule of Gender. Nouns of the second declension ending in **us** or **r** are masculine; in **um** neuter.

a. **Exceptions.** Feminine are: (1) cities and islands, as **Corinthus, Samus;** (2) most trees, as **fāgus,** *beech;* **pirus,** *pear tree;* (3) **alvus,** *belly;* **colus,** *distaff;* **humus,** *ground;* **vannus,** *wheat fan;* (4) many Greek nouns, as **atomus,** *atom.*

Neuters are: **pelagus,** *sea;* **vīrus,** *venom;* **vulgus,** the *rabble.*

Third Declension

39. The stem ends in a consonant or in the close vowels (or semivowels) **i** and **ū**. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem characteristic:

I. Consonant Stems

1. *Liquid stems,* ending in **l, m, n, r.**
2. *Sibilant stems,* ending in **s.**
3. *Mute stems*
   - *a.* Ending in **b, p.**
   - *b.* Ending in **g, c.**
   - *c.* Ending in **d, t.**

II. *i*-Stems

40. 1. The nominative singular, masculine and feminine, case ending is **s,** which, however, is dropped after **l, n, r, s,** and combines with **c** or **g** to form **x.** In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem. The vocative of the third declension is always like the nominative.

2. Neuters always form the nominative without the addition of a case ending and the accusative and vocative cases in both numbers are like the nominative. The nominative plural ends in **a**.

I. Consonant Stems

41. 1. Liquid Stems in *l*

Form the nominative without the case ending **s**. These comprise:

a. Those in which the stem characteristic is preceded by a vowel; thus:

Sg.	Nom.	cōnsul, m., *consul*	Pl.	cōnsulēs, *consuls*
	Gen.	cōnsulis		cōnsulum
	Dat.	cōnsulī		cōnsulibus
	Acc.	cōnsulem		cōnsulēs
	Voc.	cōnsul		cōnsulēs
	Abl.	cōnsule		cōnsulibus

b. Two neuter substantives with stems in **ll**, one of which is lost in the nominative: **mel, mellis,** *honey;* **fel, fellis,** *gall.*

42. Rules of Gender. Third declension nouns having their stems in **l** are regularly masculine; those having stems in **ll** are neuter.

43. 2. Liquid Stems in *n*

Most masculine and feminine stems form the nominative singular by dropping the stem characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to **o**. Some masculine and most neuter stems retain the stem characteristic in the nominative and change a preceding **i** to **e**.

		Masculine		Neuter
Sg.	Nom.	sermō, m., *conversation*	homō, m., *man*	nōmen, n., *name*
	Gen.	sermōnis	hominis	nōminis
	Dat.	sermōnī	hominī	nōminī
	Acc.	sermōnem	hominem	nōmen
	Voc.	sermō	homō	nōmen
	Abl.	sermōne	homine	nōmine
Pl.	Nom.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina
	Gen.	sermōnum	hominum	nōminum
	Dat.	sermōnibus	hominibus	nōminibus
	Acc.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina
	Voc.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina
	Abl.	sermōnibus	hominibus	nōminibus

44. Rules of Gender. 1. Third declension nouns ending in **ō** are masculine, except those ending in **dō, gō,** and **iō,** which are mostly feminine.

2. Third declension nouns in **en (men)** are regularly neuter.

45. 3. Liquid Stems in *r*

Form nominative without **s**.

Sg.	Nom.	soror, f., *sister*	pater, m., *father*
	Gen.	sorōris	patris
	Dat.	sorōrī	patrī
	Acc.	sorōrem	patrem
	Voc.	soror	pater
	Abl.	sorōre	patre
Pl.	Nom.	sorōrēs	patrēs
	Gen.	sorōrum	patrum
	Dat.	sorōribus	patribus
	Acc.	sorōrēs	patrēs
	Voc.	sorōrēs	patrēs
	Abl.	sorōribus	patribus

a. **Imber,** *shower;* **linter,** *skiff;* **ūter,** *bag;* **venter,** *belly,* have the genitive plural in **ium.** **Imber** has also sometimes the ablative singular in **ī.**

46. Rules of Gender. 1. Third declension nouns in **er** and **or** are usually masculine. 2. Third declension nouns in **ar** and **ur** are neuter.

47. 4. Sibilant Stems

The nominative has no additional **s,** and in masculines changes **e** to **i,** and in neuters **e** or **o** to **u** before **s.**

In the oblique cases, the **s** of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into **r.**

Sg.	Nom. Acc. Voc.	genus, n., *kind*	corpus, n., *body*
	Gen.	generis	corporis
	Dat.	generī	corporī
	Abl.	genere	corpore
Pl.	Nom. Acc. Voc.	genera	corpora
	Gen.	generum	corporum
	Dat. Abl.	generibus	corporibus

48. Rules of Gender. 1. Masculine are third declension nouns in **is** (**eris**), and **ōs** (**ōris**).

2. Neuter are third declension nouns in **us** (**eris, oris**) and in **ūs** (**ūris**).

49. 5. Mute Stems

All masculines and feminines of mute stems have **s** in the nominative. Before **s** a **p** or **b** is retained, a **c** or **g** combines with it to form **x,** a **t** or **d** is dropped.

a. Most polysyllabic mute stems change their stem vowel **i** to **e** in the nominative.

50. Stems in *p* or *b*

Sg.	Nom.	princeps, m., *leader*	Pl. principēs
	Gen.	principis	principum
	Dat.	principī	principibus
	Acc.	principem	principēs
	Voc.	princeps	principēs
	Abl.	principe	principibus

51. Stems in *c* or *g*

Sg.	Nom.	dux, m., *leader*	Pl. ducēs
	Gen.	ducis	ducum
	Dat.	ducī	ducibus
	Acc.	ducem	ducēs
	Voc.	dux	ducēs
	Abl.	duce	ducibus

52. Stems in *t* or *d*

Sg.	Nom.	comes, m., f., *companion*	Pl. comitēs
	Gen.	comitis	comitum
	Dat.	comitī	comitibus
	Acc.	comitem	comitēs
	Voc.	comes	comitēs
	Abl.	comite	comitibus

Sg.	Nom.	pēs, m., *foot*	Pl. pedēs
	Gen.	pedis	pedum
	Dat.	pedī	pedibus
	Acc.	pedem	pedēs
	Voc.	pēs	pedēs
	Abl.	pede	pedibus

Sg.	Nom.	caput, n., *head*	Pl. capita
	Gen.	capitis	capitum
	Dat.	capitī	capitibus
	Acc.	caput	capita
	Voc.	caput	capita
	Abl.	capite	capitibus

a. The following mute stems have certain irregular forms: **cor** (gen. **cordis**), *heart;* **nox** (gen. **noctis**), *night;* **lac** (gen. **lactis**), *milk.*

53. Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the genitive plural in **ium**: **urbium,** *of cities;* **arcium,** *of citadels;* **montium,** *of mountains;* **noctium,** *of nights.*

a. Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary: **dōtium,** *of dowries;* **lītium,** *of lawsuits;* **faucium,** *of throats;* **fraudum** (**ium**), *of frauds;* **laudum** (**ium**), *of praises;* but **vōcum,** *of voices.*

b. Most monosyllabic stems, with characteristic preceded by a short

vowel, have **um**: **opum**, *of resources;* but **fac-ium**, *of torches;* **nuc-um** (**ium**), *of nuts;* **niv-ium** (**um**), *of snows.*

c. Polysyllabic stems in **nt** and **rt** have more frequently **ium**, as **clientium** (**um**), *of clients;* **cohortium** (**um**), *of companies.*

d. Polysyllabic feminine stems in **āt** have either **um** or **ium**, as **aetātum** or **aetātium**, *of ages;* **cīvitātum** or **cīvitātium**, *of states;* the rest have usually **um**. **Palūs**, *marsh*, has usually **palūdium**.

54. Rule of Gender. Mute stems, with nominative in **s**, are usually feminine.

II. *i*-Stems

55. Masculines and feminines form their nominative in **s**.

a. Some feminines change the stem vowel **i** to **ē** in the nominative.

b. Neuters change the stem vowel **i** to **e** in the nominative. This **e** is generally dropped after **l** and **r** in polysyllabic neuters.

c. Stems in **i** have genitive plural in **ium**.

d. Neuter stems in **i** have the ablative singular in **ī** and nominative plural in **ia**.

56.

Sg.	Nom.	**hostis**, m., f., *enemy*	**mare**, n., *sea*	**animal**, n., *living being*
	Gen.	**hostis**	**maris**	**animālis**
	Dat.	**hostī**	**marī**	**animālī**
	Acc.	**hostem**	**mare**	**animal**
	Voc.	**hostis**	**mare**	**animal**
	Abl.	**hoste**	**marī**	**animālī**
Pl.	Nom.	**hostēs**	**maria**	**animālia**
	Gen.	**hostium**	**marium**	**animālium**
	Dat.	**hostibus**	**maribus**	**animālibus**
	Acc.	**hostēs** (**īs**)	**maria**	**animālia**
	Voc.	**hostēs**	**maria**	**animālia**
	Abl.	**hostibus**	**maribus**	**animālibus**

a. The accusative singular ending **im** is found always in **sitis**, *thirst;* **tussis**, *cough;* **vīs**, *strength;* and in names of towns and rivers in **is**, as **Neāpolis**, *Naples;* **Tiberis**, *Tiber;* usually in **febris**, *fever;* **puppis**, *stern of ship;* **restis**, *cable;* **secūris**, *ax;* **turris**, *tower;* occasionally in **clāvis**, *key;* **crātis**, *hurdle;* **cutis**, *skin;* **messis**, *harvest;* **nāvis**, *ship.*

b. The ablative in **ī** is found in **i**-stem nouns that regularly have **im** in the accusative (except perhaps **restis**, *rope, cable*); also not infrequently in **amnis**, *river;* **avis**, *bird;* **canālis**, *canal;* **cīvis**, *citizen;* **classis**, *fleet;* **fīnis**, *end;* **fūstis**, *club;* **ignis**, *fire;* **orbis**, *circle;* **unguis**, *claw;* occasionally in **anguis**, *snake;* **bīlis**, *bile;* **clāvis**, *key;* **collis**, *hill;* **corbis**, *basket;* **messis**, *harvest;* regularly in neuters in **e**, **al**, and **ar**, except in **rēte**, *net;* and in the proper nouns **Caere**, **Praeneste**.

c. In the genitive plural instead of the ending **ium, um** is found always in **canis,** *dog;* **juvenis,** *young man;* **pānis,** *bread;* **senex,** *old man;* **struēs,** *heap;* **volucris,** *bird;* usually in **apis,** *bee;* **sēdēs,** *seat;* **vātēs,** *bard;* frequently in **mēnsis,** *month.*

d. The accusative plural ending **īs** is found frequently in the classical period along with **ēs.**

57. Rule of Gender. *a.* **i**-stems, with nominative in **ēs,** are feminine, unless they refer to males; those with nominative in **is** are partly masculine, partly feminine.

b. **i**-stems, with nominative in **e, al, ar,** are neuter.

c. The rest are feminine.

Fourth Declension

58. The fourth declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in **u.**

a. The endings are the same as those of **i**-stems of the third declension.

b. In the genitive and ablative singular, and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural (sometimes, too, in the dative singular), the **u** of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long.

c. In the dative and ablative plural **u** generally becomes **i** before the ending **bus.**

59.

		Masculine	Neuter
Sg.	Nom.	**cāsus,** m., *chance*	**cornū,** n., *horn*
	Gen.	**cāsūs**	**cornūs**
	Dat.	**cāsuī (cāsū)**	**cornū**
	Acc.	**cāsum**	**cornū**
	Voc.	**cāsus**	**cornū**
	Abl.	**cāsū**	**cornū**
Pl.	Nom.	**cāsūs**	**cornua**
	Gen.	**cāsuum**	**cornuum**
	Dat.	**cāsibus**	**cornibus**
	Acc.	**cāsūs**	**cornua**
	Voc.	**cāsūs**	**cornua**
	Abl.	**cāsibus**	**cornibus**

60. **Domus,** f., *house,* is declined: **sg.** gen. **domūs;** dat. **domuī;** acc. **domum;** voc. **domus;** abl. **domō;** loc. **domī (domuī); pl.** nom. **domūs;** gen. **domōrum;** dat.–abl. **domibus;** acc. **domōs, domūs.**

61. Rule of Gender. Fourth declension nouns in **us** are generally masculine; those in **ū** are neuter.

a. But feminine are **acus,** *needle;* **domus,** *house;* **īdūs** (pl.), *the ides;* **manus,** *hand;* **penus,** *victuals;* **porticus,** *piazza;* **tribus,** *tribe.*

Fifth Declension

62. The stem ends in **ē**; the nominative in **ēs.**

a. In the genitive and dative singular the stem vowel **e** is shortened after a consonant.

b. The accusative singular always ends in **em**; 22.

c. The ending in the genitive singular is that of the second declension, **I**; the other endings are those of the third declension.

63.

		Masculine	Feminine
Sg.	Nom.	**diēs,** m., f., *day*	**rēs,** f., *thing*
	Gen.	**diēī (diē)**	**reī**
	Dat.	**diēī (diē)**	**reī**
	Acc.	**diem**	**rem**
	Voc.	**diēs**	**rēs**
	Abl.	**diē**	**rē**
Pl.	Nom.	**diēs**	**rēs**
	Gen.	**diērum**	**rērum**
	Dat.	**diēbus**	**rēbus**
	Acc.	**diēs**	**rēs**
	Voc.	**diēs**	**rēs**
	Abl.	**diēbus**	**rēbus**

a. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are rarely found except in **diēs** and **rēs.**

b. Many words of the fifth declension have a parallel form, which follows the first declension, as **mollitiēs** or **mollitia,** *softness.* Where this is the case, forms of the fifth declension are usually found only in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular.

64. Rule of Gender. Fifth declension nouns are feminine except **diēs** which in the singular is either masculine or feminine, and in the plural masculine, and **merīdiēs,** *midday,* which is always masculine.

Declension of Greek Nouns

65. Greek nouns, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized and declined regularly according to their stem characteristic. Some Greek nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the singular.

a. In the plural the declension is usually regular, but the third declension often shows **ēs** in the nominative and **ās** in the accusative. In the genitive plural the endings **ōn** and **eōn** are found in the titles of books, as **Georgicōn,** *of the Georgics;* **Metamorphōseōn,** *of the Metamorphoses.*

66. First Declension

Sg.	Nom.	Pēnelopē	Aenēās	Anchīsēs
	Gen.	Pēnelopēs	Aenēae	Anchīsae
	Dat.	Pēnelopae	Aenēae	Anchīsae
	Acc.	Pēnelopēn	Aenēam (ān)	Anchīsēn (am)
	Voc.	Pēnelopē	Aenēā	Anchīsē (ā, a)
	Abl.	Pēnelopā	Aenēā	Anchīsā

67. Second Declension

Sg.	Nom.	Dēlos (us)	Īlion (um)	Panthūs	Androgeōs (us)
	Gen.	Dēlī	Īliī	Panthī	Androgeī (eō)
	Dat.	Dēlō	Īliō	Panthō	Androgeō
	Acc.	Dēlon (um)	Īlion (um)	Panthūn	Androgeōn (ō, ōna)
	Voc.	Dēle	Īlion (um)	Panthū	Androgeōs
	Abl.	Dēlō	Īliō	Panthō	Androgeō

68. Third Declension

Sg.	Nom.	Solōn (Solō)	āēr, *air*	Xenophōn	Atlās
	Gen.	Solōnis	āeris	Xenophōntis	Atlantis
	Dat.	Solōnī	āerī	Xenophōntī	Atlantī
	Acc.	Solōna (em)	āera (em)	Xenophōnta (em)	Atlanta
	Voc.	Solōn	āēr	Xenophōn	Atlā
	Abl.	Solōne	āere	Xenophōnte	Atlante

Sg.	Nom.	Thalēs	Paris	hērōs
	Gen.	Thal-ētis (is)	Paridis (os)	hērōis
	Dat.	Thal-ētī (ī)	Paridī (ī)	hērōī
	Acc.	Thal-ēta (ēn, em)	Par-ida (im, in)	hērōa (em)
	Voc.	Thalē	Pari (Paris)	hērōs
	Abl.	Thalē	Paride	hērōe

69. Mixed Declensions

		II and III	II and III	II and III
Sg.	Nom.	Orpheus	Athōs	Oedipūs
	Gen.	Orpheī (ēī)	Athō (ōnis)	Oedip-odis (ī)
	Dat.	Orpheō (eī)	Athō	Oedipidī
	Acc.	Orpheum (ea)	Athō (ōn, ōnem)	Oedip-um (oda)
	Voc.	Orpheu	Athōs	Oedipe
	Abl.	Orpheō	Athōne	Oedip-ide (ō)

		II and III	II and III	II and III
Sg.	Nom.	Achillēs (eus)	Sōcratēs	Dīdō
	Gen.	Achillis (e)ī, eos	Sōcratis (ī)	Dīdūs (ōnis)
	Dat.	Achillī	Sōcratī	Dīdō (ōnī)
	Acc.	Achillem (ea, ēn)	Sōcratēn (em)	Dīdō (ōnem)
	Voc.	Achillēs (ē, eu, e)	Sōcratē (es)	Dīdō
	Abl.	Achille, (ī)	Sōcrate	Dīdō (ōne)

ADJECTIVES

70. The Adjective adds a quality to its noun or pronoun. Adjectives have the same declension as nouns, and according to the stem characteristic are of the first and second or third declension.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension

71. Stems end in **o** for masculine and neuter, **ā** for feminine; nominative in **us** (er), **a, um.** The same variations in termination occur as in nouns, except that adjectives in **ius** form the genitive and vocative singular regularly. See 37, *a.*

		M.	F.	N.
Sg.	Nom.	bonus, *good*	bona	bonum
	Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
	Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
	Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
	Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
	Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
Pl.	Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
	Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
	Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
	Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
	Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
	Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Sg.	Nom.	miser, *wretched*	misera	miserum
	Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
	Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
	Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum
	Voc.	miser	misera	miserum
	Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō
Pl.	Nom	miserī	miserae	misera
	Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
	Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
	Acc.	miserōs	miserās	misera
	Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera
	Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Sg.	Nom.	pulcher, *beautiful*	pulchra	pulchrum
	Gen.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
	Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
	Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
	Voc.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
	Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō
Pl.	Nom.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
	Gen.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
	Dat.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
	Acc.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
	Voc.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
	Abl.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

a. All participles ending in **us, a, um,** are inflected like **bonus.**

72. In poetry we find **um** alongside of **ōrum** and **ārum** in the genitive plural.

a. In the dative and ablative plural **iīs** from adjectives in **ius** is often contracted to **īs** especially in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names.

73. The so-called **Pronominal Adjectives** show certain peculiarities in the genitive and dative singular. These adjectives are: **alter,** *one of the two;* **alteruter** (a combination of **alter** and **uter**), *either of the two;* **alius,** *other;* **neuter,** *neither;* **nūllus,** *none;* **sōlus,** *sole;* **tōtus,** *whole;* **ūllus,** *any;* **ūnus,** *one;* **uter,** *which of the two.*

74.

		M.	F.	N.
Sg.	Nom.	alter, *one of two*	altera	alterum
	Gen.	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
	Dat.	alterī	alterī	alterī
	Acc.	alterum	alteram	alterum
	Abl.	alterō	alterā	alterō
Sg.	Nom.	alius	alia	aliud
	Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus
	Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī
	Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud
	Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō
Sg.	Nom.	ūllus, *any*	ūlla	ūllum
	Gen.	ūllīus	ūllīus	ūllīus
	Dat.	ūllī	ūllī	ūllī
	Acc.	ūllum	ūllam	ūllum
	Abl.	ūllō	ūllā	ūllō
Sg.	Nom.	uter	utra	utrum
	Gen.	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
	Dat.	utrī	utrī	utrī
	Acc.	utrum	utram	utrum
	Abl.	utrō	utrā	utrō

Like **uter** is declined **neuter**; like **ūllus** are declined **nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, ūnus.** The plural is regular.

a. The genitive **alīus** is very rare, and its place is usually taken by **alterīus** or **aliēnus.**

b. The **i** of the ending **īus** (except in **alīus**) is often shortened in poetry. This is usually the case with **alter,** and regularly in the compounds of **uter**; as **utriusque.**

c. In the compound **alteruter** we usually find both parts declined; sometimes the second only.

d. **Alius** has its nominative and accusative singular neuter irregularly **aliud.**

Adjectives of the Third Declension

75. The declension of the adjectives of the third declension follows the rules given for nouns. Most adjectives of the third declension are vowel stems in **i**, with two (rarely three) endings in the nominative. The remaining adjectives of the third declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the nominative.

Adjectives of Two or Three Endings

76. These have (except stems in **ri**) one ending in the nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter. Most stems in **i** form the masculine and feminine alike, with nominative in **s**; but the nominative neuter weakens the characteristic **i** into **e**. Compare **mare**, *sea*.

a. Several stems in **i**, preceded by **r** (**cr, tr, br**), form the nominative masculine, not by affixing **s**, but by dropping the **i** and inserting short **e** before the **r**, as, stem, **ācri**, *sharp;* nom., **ācer** (m.), **ācris** (f.), **ācre** (n.).

77.

		M., F.	N.
Sg.	Nom.	**omnis**, *all*	**omne**
	Gen.	**omnis**	**omnis**
	Dat.	**omnī**	**omnī**
	Acc.	**omnem**	**omne**
	Voc.	**omnis**	**omne**
	Abl.	**omnī**	**omnī**
Pl.	Nom.	**omnēs**	**omnia**
	Gen.	**omnium**	**omnium**
	Dat.	**omnibus**	**omnibus**
	Acc.	**omnēs** (**īs**)	**omnia**
	Voc.	**omnēs**	**omnia**
	Abl.	**omnibus**	**omnibus**

		M.	F.	N.
Sg.	Nom.	**ācer**, *sharp*	**ācris**	**ācre**
	Gen.	**ācris**	**ācris**	**ācris**
	Dat.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**
	Acc.	**ācrem**	**ācrem**	**ācre**
	Voc.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**
	Abl.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**
Pl.	Nom.	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**
	Gen.	**ācrium**	**ācrium**	**ācrium**
	Dat.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**
	Acc.	**ācrēs** (**īs**)	**ācrēs** (**īs**)	**ācria**
	Voc.	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**
	Abl.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**

Adjectives of One Ending

78. Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) end with **l, r, s; p, b; t, d; c, g.**

79. Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

80. The consonant stem adjectives have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the accusative singular and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

81. Consonant stem adjectives follow in part the declension of i-stem nouns; thus:

1. In the ablative singular they have **ī** or **e**; when used as nouns, commonly **e**.

a. The participles, as such, have **e**; but used as nouns or adjectives, either **e** or **ī**, with a tendency to **ī**.

2. In the neuter plural they have **ia**; except all comparatives (91), **vetus**, *old*, and **ūber**, *fertile*, which have **vetera** and **ūbera**. Many have no neuter.

3. In the genitive plural they have **ium**, when the stem characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; **um**, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles regularly have **ium**.

82.

		M., F.	N.		M., F.	N.
Sg.	Nom.	fēlīx, *lucky*	fēlīx	Sg.	recēns, *recent*	recēns
	Gen.	fēlīcis	fēlīcis		recentis	recentis
	Dat.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī		recentī	recentī
	Acc.	fēlīcem	fēlīx		recentem	recēns
	Voc.	fēlīx	fēlīx		recēns	recēns
	Abl.	fēlīcī (e)	fēlīcī (e)		recentī (e)	recentī (e)
Pl.	Nom.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	Pl.	recentēs	recentia
	Gen.	fēlīcium	fēlīcium		recentium	recentium
	Dat.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus		recentibus	recentibus
	Acc.	fēlīcēs (īs)	fēlīcia		recentēs (īs)	recentia
	Voc.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia		recentēs	recentia
	Abl.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus		recentibus	recentibus
Sg.	Nom.	vetus, *old*	vetus	Sg.	amāns, *loving*	amāns
	Gen.	veteris	veteris		amantis	amantis
	Dat.	veterī	veterī		amantī	amantī
	Acc.	veterem	vetus		amantem	amāns
	Voc.	vetus	vetus		amāns	amāns
	Abl.	vetere (ī)	vetere (ī)		amante (ī)	amante (ī)
Pl.	Nom.	veterēs	vetera	Pl.	amantēs	amantia
	Gen.	veterum	veterum		amantium	amantium
	Dat.	veteribus	veteribus		amantibus	amantibus
	Acc.	veterēs	vetera		amantēs (īs)	amantia
	Voc.	veterēs	vetera		amantēs	amantia
	Abl.	veteribus	veteribus		amantibus	amantibus

a. In the poets, **e** is often found for **ī** in the ablative singular. Also in classical prose we find regularly **paupere,** *poor;* **vetere,** *old;* and frequently **dīvite,** *rich;* **sapiente,** *wise.*

b. In the nominative and accusative plural **īs** for **ēs** belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of this accusative are found in Cicero. In the case of participles **īs** is very common, and is the rule in Vergil and Horace.

c. In the genitive plural **cicur,** *tame;* **vetus,** *old;* **dīves,** *rich,* have **um** instead of **ium;** so also many compound adjectives.

d. In the poets and in later writers, **um** is not infrequently found where classical prose uses **ium.**

Comparison of Adjectives

83. The Degrees of Comparison are: positive, comparative, and superlative.

84. The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **ius** for the neuter.

85. The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **issimus, a, um** (earlier **issumus**).

86. Vowel stems, before forming the comparative and superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

87. Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus, a, um, *high*	**altior, ius,** *higher*	**altissimus, a, um,** *highest*
fortis, e, *brave*	**fortior, ius,** *braver*	**fortissimus,** *bravest*
fēlix, *happy*	**fēlīcior, ius,** *happier*	**fēlīcissimus,** *happiest*
recēns, *recent*	**recentior, ius,** *more recent*	**recentissimus,** *most recent*

88. Peculiarities of Comparison. Adjectives in **er** add the superlative ending **rimus** directly to the nominative masculine. The comparative has the regular formation. See 84.

89. Positive	Comparative	Superlative
miser, era, erum, *wretched*	**miserior, miserius**	**miserrimus**
celer, eris, ere, *swift*	**celerior, celerius**	**celerrimus**
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp*	**ācrior, ācrius**	**ācerrimus**

a. Six adjectives in **ilis** add **limus** (earlier **lumus**) to the stem, after dropping **i,** to form the superlative: **facilis,** *easy;* **difficilis,** *hard;* **similis,** *like;* **dissimilis,** *unlike;* **gracilis,** *slender;* and **humilis,** *low.*

Pos. **facilis** Comp. **facilior, ius** Sup. **facillimus, a, um**

90. Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison: as **amāns,** *loving;* **amantior,** *more loving;* **amantissimus,** *most loving:* **apertus,** *open;* **apertior, apertissimus.**

91. The superlative follows the declension of adjectives of three endings of the first and second declensions; 71. The comparative is declined according to the third declension, thus:

		M., F.	N.		M., F.	N.
Sg.	Nom.	altior, *higher*	altius	Pl.	altiōrēs	altiōra
	Gen.	altiōris	altiōris		altiōrum	altiōrum
	Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī		altiōribus	altiōribus
	Acc.	altiōrem	altius		altiōrēs (īs)	altiōra
	Voc.	altior	altius		altiōrēs	altiōra
	Abl.	altiōre (ī)	altiōre (ī)		altiōribus	altiōribus

92. Irregular Comparison. Certain adjectives are irregular in their comparison:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, *good*	melior, melius	optimus
malus, *bad*	pejor, pejus	pessimus
magnus, *great*	major, majus	maximus
parvus, *small*	minor, minus	minimus
multus, *much*	Sg. plūs (no dat. nor abl.)	plūrimus
	Pl. plūrēs, plūra	
	complūrēs, complūra (ia)	
nequam, *worthless*	nequior, nequius	nequissimus
frūgī (indecl.), *frugal*	frūgālior	frūgālissimus

a. For the pronunciation of major and pejor = majjor, pejjor, see 6, *b*.

b. The older form of the superlative ended in umus.

ADVERBS

93. Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of adjectival, nominal or pronominal stems.

94. The cases from which they are derived are principally the accusative and the ablative.

Adverbs Formed from Adjectives

95. Many adverbs are formed from the ablative case of adjectives in us: tūtō, *safely;* prīmō, *at first.*

a. Many adverbs are formed from an old ablative form (ē) of adjectives in us and er: altē, *loftily;* pulchrē, *beautifully.*

b. Many adverbs are formed from accusative singular neuter adjectival and pronominal stems: multum, *much;* facile, *easily.* This is true of all comparatives: facilius, *more easily.* To the comparatives belong also magis, *more;* nimis, *too.*

c. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives and participles of the third declension by the addition of ter (iter) to the stem; stems in nt dropping the t, and stems in c or g inserting the connecting vowel i before the ending: fortiter, *bravely;* ferōciter, *wildly;* prūdenter, *prudently.*

Comparison of Adverbs

96. The comparative of the adverb is the accusative neuter of the comparative of the adjective. See 95, *b*. The superlative ends in **issimē**, **errimē**, **illimē** (earlier **issumē**, **errumē**, **illumē**), or irregularly, according to the superlative of the adjective. See 87, 88, 89, 92.

97. Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altē, *loftily*	altius	altissimē
pulchrē, *beautifully*	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
miserē, *poorly*	miserius	miserrimē
fortiter, *bravely*	fortius	fortissimē
audācter, *boldly*	audācius	audācissimē
tūtō, *safely*	tūtius	tūtissimē
facile, *easily*	facilius	facillimē
bene, *well*	melius	optimē
male, *ill*	pejus	pessimē
[parvus], *small*	minus, *less*	minimē, *least*
[magnus], *great*	magis, *more*	maximē, *most*
multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimum
citō, *quickly*	citius	citissimē
diū, *long*	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, *often*	saepius	saepissimē
nūper, *recently*	——	nūperrimē
satis, *enough*	satius, *better*	

NUMERALS

Numeral Adjectives

98. The Cardinal Numerals, as **ūnus**, *one;* **duo**, *two;* **decem**, *ten*, answer the question **quot**, *how many?* and are the numbers used in counting.

a. The Ordinal Numerals, as **prīmus** (**ūnus**), *first;* **secundus** (**alter**), *second;* **decimus**, *tenth*, answer the question **quotus**, *which one in the series?*

99. The cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: **ūnus**, *one;* **duo**, *two;* **trēs**, *three;* the hundreds beginning with **ducentī**, *two hundred;* and the plural **mīlia**, *thousands*, which forms **mīlium** and **mīlibus**.

	M.	F.	N.	M., F.	N.
Nom.	duo, *two*	duae	duo	trēs, *three*	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs (trīs)	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

a. For the declension of **ūnus** see 73–74.

100. The Distributive Numerals, as **singulī**, *one each;* **bīnī**, *two each*, **dēnī**, *ten each*, answer the question **quotēnī**, *how many each?*

101. Numeral Adverbs, as **semel,** *once;* **bis,** *twice;* **ter,** *thrice,* answer the question **quotiēns,** *how often?*

PRONOUNS

102. A Pronoun is a word that may be substituted for a noun. Latin pronouns may be divided into six classes: personal (including reflexive), demonstrative, intensive, relative, interrogative, and indefinite.

a. All but the personal pronouns may be used as pronominal adjectives.

b. The possessive adjectives are often classified as possessive pronouns.

A. Personal Pronouns

103. The Personal Pronoun of the First Person.

Sg.	Nom.	**ego,** *I*	**Pl. nōs,** *we*
	Gen.	**meī,** *of me*	**nostrī, nostrum,** *of us*
	Dat.	**mihĭ (mī),** *to, for me*	**nōbīs,** *to, for us*
	Acc.	**mē,** *me*	**nōs,** *us*
	Abl.	**mē,** *from, with, by me*	**nōbīs,** *from, with, by us*

a. Compare the corresponding possessive adjectives:

Sg. meus, a, um, (voc. m., **mī**), *mine, my own* — **Pl. noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our(s), our own*

b. The oblique cases of **ego** may also be used with reflexive force: **meī,** *of myself,* etc.

104. The Personal Pronoun of the Second Person.

Sg.	Nom. Voc.	**tū,** *you*	**Pl. vōs,** *you*
	Gen.	**tuī,** *of you*	**vestrī, vestrum,** *of you*
	Dat.	**tibĭ,** *to, for you*	**vōbīs,** *to, for you*
	Acc.	**tē,** *you*	**vōs,** *you*
	Abl.	**tē,** *from, with, by you*	**vōbīs,** *from, with, by you*

a. Compare the corresponding possessive adjectives:

Sg. tuus, a, um, *your(s), your own* — **Pl. vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your(s), your own*

b. The oblique cases of **tū** may also be used with reflexive force: **tuī,** *of yourself,* etc.

105. The Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

a. **Is, ea, id,** *he, she, it,* 107, used also as a demonstrative, *this, that,* is the ordinary form of the third personal pronoun. It lacks the possessive adjective.

b. The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a nominative. See 106.

106. The Personal (Reflexive) Pronoun of the Third Person.

Sg. Nom.	——	Pl. ——
Gen.	**suī**, *of him(self), her(self), it(self)*	**suī**, *of them(selves)*
Dat.	**sibĭ**, *to, for, him(self), her(self), it(self)*	**sibĭ**, *to, for them(selves)*
Acc.	**sē, sēsē**, *him(self), her(self), it(self)*	**sē, sēsē**, *them(selves)*
Abl.	**sē, sēsē**, *from, with, by him(self), her(self), it(self)*	**sē, sēsē**, *from, with, by them(selves)*

a. Compare the corresponding possessive adjective, **suus, a, um**, *his (own), her (own), its (own); their (own), theirs.*

b. The enclitic **-met** is sometimes added to certain forms of the personal pronouns; as **egomet**, *I myself.*

c. The enclitic **pte** is sometimes added to the ablative singular of the possessive adjective; as **suōpte ingeniō**, *by his own genius.*

107. *B.* Demonstrative Pronouns

1. **is**, *this, that; he, she, it*

		M.	F.	N.
Sg.	Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**
	Gen.	**ejus**	**ejus**	**ejus**
	Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**
	Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**
	Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**
Pl.	Nom.	**iī, eī, ī**	**eae**	**ea**
	Gen.	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
	Dat.	**iīs, eīs, īs**	**iīs, eīs, īs**	**iīs, eīs, īs**
	Acc.	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
	Abl.	**iīs, eīs, īs**	**iīs, eīs, īs**	**iīs, eīs, īs**

a. For the pronunciation of **ejus** (= **ejjus**) see 6, *b*.

b. This pronoun is often used as a third personal pronoun, *he, she, it;* 105, *a*.

2. **īdem**, (**is** + **dem**), *the same*

Sg.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**
Gen.	**ejusdem**	**ejusdem**	**ejusdem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**
Pl.			
Nom.	**īdem, eīdem, iīdem**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem**	**īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem**	**īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem**
Acc.	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem**	**īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem**	**īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem**

a. For the pronunciation of **ejusdem** = **ejjusdem**, see 6, *b*.

3. **hic**, *this*

		M.	F.	N.
Sg.	NOM.	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**
	GEN.	**hujus**	**hujus**	**hujus**
	DAT.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**
	ACC.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**
	ABL.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**
Pl.	NOM.	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
	GEN.	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
	DAT.	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
	ACC.	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
	ABL.	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

a. For the pronunciation of **hujus** = **hujjus**, see 6, *b*.

b. The full forms with **-ce** are rare in classical Latin, except in the phrase **hujusce modī**, *of this kind*.

c. When followed by a word which begins with a vowel or **h**, the nominative singular of the masculine, **hic**, and the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter, **hoc**, are usually pronounced as though spelled **hicc**, **hocc**, making these syllables long by position; 15.

4. **iste**, *that* (*of yours*)

		M.	F.	N.
Sg.	NOM.	**iste**	**ista**	**istud**
	GEN.	**istĭus**	**istĭus**	**istĭus**
	DAT.	**istī**	**istī**	**istī**
	ACC.	**istum**	**istam**	**istud**
	ABL.	**istō**	**istā**	**istō**
Pl.	NOM.	**istī**	**istae**	**ista**
	GEN.	**istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
	DAT.	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**
	ACC.	**istōs**	**istās**	**ista**
	ABL.	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**

a. **Iste** combines with **-ce**, but in classical Latin the only common forms are **istuc** (for **istud**) and **istaec** (for **ista**).

5. **ille**, *that*

		M.	F.	N.
Sg.	NOM.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**
	GEN.	**illĭus**	**illĭus**	**illĭus**
	DAT.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**
	ACC.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**
	ABL.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**
Pl.	NOM.	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**
	GEN.	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
	DAT.	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
	ACC.	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**
	ABL.	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

108. *C.* THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, *self*

		M.	F.	N.
Sg.	NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
	GEN.	ipsĭus	ipsĭus	ipsĭus
	DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
	ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
	ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
Pl.	NOM.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
	GEN.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
	DAT.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
	ACC.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
	ABL.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

109. *D.* THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

		M.	F.	N.
Sg.	NOM.	quī	quae	quod
	GEN.	cujus	cujus	cujus
	DAT.	cui	cui	cui
	ACC.	quem	quam	quod
	ABL.	quō	quā	quō
Pl.	NOM.	quī	quae	quae
	GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
	ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
	ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. For the pronunciation of **cujus** = **cujjus**, see 6, *b*.

b. **Quī** may also be used as a relative adjective.

c. The dative-ablative plural **quīs** is common in the poets at all periods and occurs also occasionally in prose writers.

d. The ablative singular **quī** for all genders is the prevalent form in early times; and in combination with **cum**, as **quīcum**, *with whom*, is preferred to **quō**, **quā**, by Cicero.

110. General Relatives are:

PRONOUN	**quisquis**, *whoever*	**quidquid, quicquid**, *whatever*
ADJECTIVE	**quiquī, quaequae, quodquod**, *whatsoever*	
	quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whichever*	

111. *E.* THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

PRONOUN	**quis?** *who?*		**quid?** *what?*
ADJECTIVE	**quī?**	**quae?**	**quod?** *which?*
PRON. AND ADJ.	**uter?**	**utra?**	**utrum?** *who? which of two?*

	M., F.	N.
Sg. Nom.	quis?	quid?
Gen.	cujus?	cujus?
Dat.	cui?	cui?
Acc.	quem?	quid?
Abl.	quō?	quō?

a. The plural of the interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the interrogative adjective coincide with the forms of the relative **quī, quae, quod.**

112. *F.* Strengthened Interrogatives

Pronoun	**quisnam?** *who, pray?*		**quidnam?** *what, pray?*
	ecquis? (*is there*) *any one?*		**ecquid?** (*is there*) *anything?*
Adjective	**quīnam?**	**quaenam?**	**quodnam?** *which, pray?*
	ecquī?	**ecqua?** (**ecquae?**)	**ecquod?** *is there any?*

113. *G.* The Indefinite Pronoun

aliquis	**aliqua** (rare)	**aliquid,** *somebody, someone or other, anybody*
quis	**qua**	**quid,** *someone, anyone*

a. The adjective forms are **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,** *some, any;* **quī, quae** (**qua**), **quod,** *some, any.*

114. The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given, 73–74. They are: **ūllus, a, um,** *any;* **nūllus, a, um,** *no one, not one;* **alius, a, ud,** *another;* **alter, era, erum,** *the other, one (of two);* **neuter, tra, trum,** *neither of two;* **ambō, ae, ō,** *both.* The corresponding substantives for **nūllus** and **nūllum** are **nēmō** and **nihil,** the latter of which forms only **nihilī** (gen.) and **nihilō** (abl.) and those only in certain combinations.

a. Some of the more important compounds of these adjectives are:

nōnnūllus, a, um, *some, many a,* declined like **nūllus.**
alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, *the one or the other of the two*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, either*
utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs *whichever you please of the two*
uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, *whichever you please of the two*

THE VERB

115. The inflection given to the verbal stem is called conjugation and expresses:

1. **Person: First, Second, Third.**
2. **Voice: Active, Passive, Middle.**

a. The active voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject: **parō,** *I prepare.* The passive voice denotes that the subject receives the

action of the verb: **paror,** *I am prepared.* The middle voice has passive form and denotes the subject as acting either for itself or upon itself (reflexive) as: **paror,** *I prepare (for) myself.* This is chiefly a poetic usage.

3. **Tense: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.**

4. **Mood: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.**

a. The indicative is the mood of the fact: **parō,** *I prepare.* The subjunctive is the mood of the wish, command, or qualified statement: **parem,** *may I prepare, I may prepare;* **paret,** *may he prepare, let him prepare;* **sī paret,** *if he should prepare.* The imperative is the mood of command: **parā,** *prepare!*

CONJUGATION

116. The stem of a verb is variously modified, either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms:

1. **The Present Stem:** being the stem of the present, imperfect, and future tenses. These forms are called the present system.

2. **The Perfect Stem:** being the stem of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the active. These forms are called the perfect system.

3. **The Perfect Passive Participial Stem:** which is used to form the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses of the passive and also the future active and perfect passive participles, infinitives, and the supine. These forms are called the participial system.

117. 1. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the passive voice are formed by the combination of the perfect passive participle with forms of the verb **sum,** *be, exist.*

2. The future passive infinitive is formed by the combination of the supine with the present passive infinitive of **eō,** *go.*

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by the addition of the following endings to the present, perfect, or participial stem:

		ACTIVE	*PASSIVE*
INFINITIVE	*Pres.*	**re**	**rī, ī**
	Perf	**isse**	**us (a, um) esse**
	Fut.	**ūrus (a, um) esse**	**um īrī**
PARTICIPLES	*Pres.*	**ns** (*Gen.* **ntis**)	———
	Perf.	———	**us (a, um)**
	Fut.	**ūrus (a, um)**	———

GERUND	GERUNDIVE	SUPINE
ndī, (dō, dum, dō)	**ndus (a, um)**	**um, ū**

The Verb sum, *be, exist*

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī

	118. INDICATIVE	119. SUBJUNCTIVE
	PRESENT	
Sg. 1.	sum, *I am*	sim [1]
2.	es, *you are*	sīs
3.	est, *he, she, it, is*	sit
Pl. 1.	sumus, *we are*	sīmus
2.	estis, *you are*	sītis
3.	sunt, *they are*	sint
	IMPERFECT	
Sg. 1.	eram, *I was*	essem (forem)
2.	erās, *you were*	essēs (forēs)
3.	erat, *he was*	esset (foret)
Pl. 1.	erāmus, *we were*	essēmus (forēmus)
2.	erātis, *you were*	essētis (forētis)
3.	erant, *they were*	essent (forent)
	FUTURE	
Sg. 1.	erō, *I shall be*	
2.	eris, *you will be*	
3.	erit, *he will be*	(lacking)
Pl. 1.	erimus, *we shall be*	
2.	eritis, *you will be*	
3.	erunt, *they will be*	
	PERFECT	
Sg. 1.	fuī, *I have been, I was*	fuerim
2.	fuistī, *you have been, you were*	fuerīs
3.	fuit, *he has been, he was*	fuerit
Pl. 1.	fuimus, *we have been, we were*	fuerīmus
2.	fuistis, *you have been, you were*	fuerītis
3.	fuērunt, fuēre, *they have been, they were*	fuerint
	PLUPERFECT	
Sg. 1.	fueram, *I had been*	fuissem
2.	fuerās, *you had been*	fuissēs
3.	fuerat, *he had been*	fuisset
Pl. 1.	fuerāmus, *we had been*	fuissēmus
2.	fuerātis, *you had been*	fuissētis
3.	fuerant, *they had been*	fuissent

[1] The meaning of the subjunctive varies greatly, according to its use, and is best learned from the sections on syntax.

FUTURE PERFECT

Sg. 1. **fuerō**, *I shall have been*
2. **fueris**, *you will have been*
3. **fuerit**, *he will have been*

(lacking)

Pl. 1. **fuerimus**, *we shall have been*
2. **fueritis**, *you will have been*
3. **fuerint**, *they will have been*

120. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT		FUTURE	
Sg. 1.	———	Pl. ———	Sg. ———	Pl. ———
2.	**es**, *be*	**este**, *be*	**estō**, *you shall be*	**estōte**, *you shall be*
3.	———	———	**estō**, *he shall be*	**suntō**, *they shall be*

121. INFINITIVE

PRES. **esse**, *to be*
PERF. **fuisse**, *to have been*
FUT. **futūrus (a, um) esse, fore**, *to be about to be*

122. PARTICIPLES

PRES. only in the compounds **absēns**, *absent*, **praesēns**, *present* (79)
FUT. **futūrus, a, um**, *about to be* (71, *a*)

123. COMPOUNDS OF sum

absum, *be away, absent.* PERF. **(abfuī) āfuī**, PRES. PART. **absēns**, *absent.*
adsum, *be present.* PERF. **affuī (adfuī)**
dēsum, *be wanting*
insum, *be in*
intersum, *be between*
obsum, *be against, hurt.* PERF. **obfuī (offuī)**
possum, *be able*
praesum, *be over, superintend.* PRES. PART. **praesēns**, *present*
prōsum, *be for, profit*
subsum, *be under.* No PERF.
supersum, *be or remain, over.*

These are all inflected like **sum**, but **prōsum** and **possum** require special treatment by reason of their composition.

124. Prōsum, *profit*

In the forms of **prōsum, prōd-** is used before vowels, thus:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	**prōsum, prōdes, prōdest; prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt**	**prōsim**
IMPERF.	**prōderam**	**prōdessem**
FUT.	**prōderō**	———
PERF	**prōfuī**	**prōfuerim**
PLUPERF.	**prōfueram**	**prōfuissem**
FUT. PERF.	**prōfuerō**	———

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōdesse; FUT. prōfutūrum esse (prōfore); PERF. prōfuisse

125. Possum, *be able, can*

Possum is compounded of **pot** (**potis, pote**) and **sum**; **t** becomes **s** before **s**. The perfect forms and the present participle are from an old form **poteō, potĕre.**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	PRESENT	
Sg. 1.	possum, *I am able, can*	possim
2.	potes	possīs
3.	potest	possit
Pl. 1.	possumus	possīmus
2.	potestis	possītis
3.	possunt	possint
	IMPERFECT	
Sg. 1.	poteram, *I was able, could*	possem
2.	poterās	possēs
3.	poterat	posset
Pl. 1.	poterāmus	possēmus
2.	poterātis	possētis
3.	poterant	possent
	FUTURE	
Sg. 1.	poterō, *I shall be able*	
2.	poteris	
3.	poterit	
		(lacking)
Pl. 1.	poterimus	
2.	poteritis	
3.	poterunt	
	PERFECT	
Sg. 1.	potuī, *I have been able*	potuerim
2.	potuistī	potuerīs
3.	potuit	potuerit
Pl. 1.	potuimus	potuerīmus
2.	potuistis	potuerītis
3.	potuērunt, ēre	potuerint
	PLUPERFECT	
Sg. 1.	potueram, *I had been able*	potuissem
2.	potuerās	potuissēs
3.	potuerat	potuisset
Pl. 1.	potuerāmus	potuissēmus
2.	potuerātis	potuissētis
3.	potuerant	potuissent

FUTURE PERFECT

Sg. 1. potuerō, *I shall have been able*
2. potueris
3. potuerit

Pl. 1. potuerimus
2. potueritis
3. potuerint

(lacking)

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
PRES. posse	PRES. potēns (79)
PERF. potuisse	

REGULAR VERBS

Systems of Conjugation

126. 1. There are two systems of conjugation, the vowel and the consonant. The consonant system is confined to a small class. The vowel system comprises four conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem, **ā, ē, e, ī,** which may be found by dropping **re** from the present infinitive active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem characteristic is called the consonant stem characteristic.

2. From the present stem, as seen in the present indicative and present infinitive active; from the perfect stem, as seen in the perfect indicative active; and from the perfect passive participial stem, can be derived all forms of the verb. These forms are accordingly called the principal parts; and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows:

	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
I.	parō	parāre	parāvī	parātus, *prepare*
II.	habeō	habēre	habuī	habitus, *have*
III.	dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictus, *say*
	capiō	capere	cēpī	captus, *take*
IV.	audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus, *hear*

Formation of the Tenses

127. The tenses are formed by the addition of the personal endings to the various stems, either directly or by means of certain tense signs, as shown in the paradigms.

128. While no practical rules for the formation of the tenses can be given, it is well to observe that:

1. The second person singular imperative active is the same as the present stem.

2. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed from the present infinitive active by adding **m**, etc. for active and **r**, etc. for passive.

3. The second person singular imperative passive and second person singular present passive in **re** are the same as the present infinitive active. Hence **ris** is preferred in the present indicative passive in order to avoid confusion.

4. The present subjunctive active and future indicative active in the third and fourth conjugations are alike in the first person singular.

5. The future perfect indicative active and the perfect subjunctive active differ only in the first person singular, except for the quantity of the **i**.

6. **Euphonic changes** sometimes occur in the consonant stem characteristic in the perfect and participial stem. Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**; **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c**; **c, g, qu,** with **s,** become **x**; **t** and **d** before **s** are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped; thus: **scrībō, scrīpsī (scrībsī), scrīptus; legō, lēctus (lēgtus); coquō, coctus (coqtus); dīcō, dīxī (dīcsī); jungō, jūnxī (jūngsī); coquō, coxī (coqsī); edō, ēsus (edsus); cēdō, cessī (cedsī); mittō, mīsī (mitsī), missus (mitsus).**

First Conjugation

Conjugation of *parō, prepare*

Principal Parts: **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus**

ACTIVE

129. INDICATIVE		130. SUBJUNCTIVE
	PRESENT	
I prepare, am preparing, do prepare		
Sg. 1.	parō	parem
2.	parās	parēs
3.	parat	paret
Pl. 1.	parāmus	parēmus
2.	parātis	parētis
3.	parant	parent
	IMPERFECT	
I prepared, was preparing, did prepare		
Sg. 1.	parābam	parārem
2.	parābās	parārēs
3.	parābat	parāret
Pl. 1.	parābāmus	parārēmus
2.	parābātis	parārētis
3.	parābant	parārent

FUTURE

	I shall prepare, shall be preparing	
Sg. 1.	parābō	
2.	parābis	
3.	parābit	
		(lacking)
Pl. 1.	parābimus	
2.	parābitis	
3.	parābunt	

PERFECT

	I prepared, have prepared, did prepare	
Sg. 1.	parāvī	parāverim
2.	parāvistī	parāverīs
3.	parāvit	parāverit
Pl. 1.	parāvimus	parāverīmus
2.	parāvistis	parāverītis
3.	parāvērunt, ēre	parāverint

PLUPERFECT

	I had prepared	
Sg. 1.	parāveram	parāvissem
2.	parāverās	parāvissēs
3.	parāverat	parāvisset
Pl. 1.	parāverāmus	parāvissēmus
2.	parāverātis	parāvissētis
3.	parāverant	parāvissent

FUTURE PERFECT

	I shall have prepared	
Sg. 1.	parāverō	
2.	parāveris	
3.	parāverit	
		(lacking)
Pl. 1.	parāverimus	
2.	parāveritis	
3.	parāverint	

131. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1.	———	———
2.	parā, *prepare*	parātō, *you shall prepare*
3.	———	parātō, *he shall prepare*
Pl. 1.	———	———
2.	parāte, *prepare*	parātōte, *you shall prepare*
3.	———	parantō, *they shall prepare*

132. INFINITIVE

PRES. **parāre**, *to prepare*
PERF. **parāvisse**, *to have prepared*
FUT. **parātūrus, a, um esse**, *to be about to prepare*

133. GERUND

GEN. **parandī**, *of preparing*
DAT. **parandō**, *to, for preparing*
ACC. **parandum**, *preparing, to prepare*
ABL. **parandō**, *with, from, by preparing*

134. SUPINE

parātum, *to prepare*
parātū, *to prepare, in the preparing*

135. PARTICIPLES

PRES. *Nom.* **parāns** (*Gen.* **parantis**), *preparing* (79)
FUT. **parātūrus, a, um**, (*being*) *about to prepare* (71, *a*)

FIRST CONJUGATION

PASSIVE

136. INDICATIVE	**137.** SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
I am (being) prepared	
Sg. 1. **paror**	**parer**
2. **parāris, re**	**parēris, re**
3. **parātur**	**parētur**
Pl. 1. **parāmur**	**parēmur**
2. **parāminī**	**parēminī**
3. **parantur**	**parentur**
IMPERFECT	
I was (being) prepared	
Sg. 1. **parābar**	**parārer**
2. **parābāris, re**	**parārēris, re**
3. **parābātur**	**parārētur**
Pl. 1. **parābāmur**	**parārēmur**
2. **parābāminī**	**parārēminī**
3. **parābantur**	**parārentur**
FUTURE	
I shall be prepared	
Sg. 1. **parābor**	
2. **parāberis, re**	
3. **parābitur**	(lacking)
Pl. 1. **parābimur**	
2. **parābiminī**	
3. **parābuntur**	

PERFECT

I have been prepared, was prepared

Sg. 1.	parātus, a, um sum	parātus, a, um sim
2.	es	sīs
3.	est	sit
Pl. 1.	parātī, ae, a sumus	parātī, ae, a sīmus
2.	estis	sītis
3.	sunt	sint

PLUPERFECT

I had been prepared

Sg. 1.	parātus, a, um eram	parātus, a, um essem
2.	erās	essēs
3.	erat	esset
Pl. 1.	parātī, ae, a erāmus	parātī, ae, a essēmus
2.	erātis	essētis
3.	erant	essent

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been prepared

Sg. 1.	parātus, a, um erō	
2.	eris	
3.	erit	
Pl. 1.	parātī, ae, a erimus	
2.	eritis	
3.	erunt	

138. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1.	———	———
2.	parāre, *be prepared*	parātor, *you shall be prepared*
3.	———	parātor, *he shall be prepared*
Pl. 1.	———	———
2.	parāminī, *be prepared*	———
3.	———	parantor, *they shall be prepared*

139. INFINITIVE

PRES.	parārī, *to be prepared*
PERF.	parātus, a, um esse, *to have been prepared*
FUT.	parātum īrī, *to be about to be prepared*

140. PARTICIPLE

PERF. parātus, a, um, *having been prepared* (71, *a*)

141. GERUNDIVE

parandus, a, um, (*about*) *to be prepared; must be, ought to be prepared* (71, *a*)

Second Conjugation

Conjugation of *habeō, have*

Principal Parts: habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

	ACTIVE		*PASSIVE*	
	142. Indicative	**143.** Subjunctive	**144.** Indicative	**145.** Subjunctive
		PRESENT		
Sg. 1.	habeō	habeam	habeor	habear
2.	habēs	habeās	habēris, re	habeāris, re
3.	habet	habeat	habētur	habeātur
Pl. 1.	habēmus	habeāmus	habēmur	habeāmur
2.	habētis	habeātis	habēminī	habeāminī
3.	habent	habeant	habentur	habeantur
		IMPERFECT		
Sg. 1.	habēbam	habērem	habēbar	habērer
2.	habēbās	habērēs	habēbāris, re	habērēris, re
3.	habēbat	habēret	habēbātur	habērētur
Pl. 1.	habēbāmus	habērēmus	habēbāmur	habērēmur
2.	habēbātis	habērētis	habēbāminī	habērēminī
3.	habēbant	habērent	habēbantur	habērentur
		FUTURE		
Sg. 1.	habēbō		habēbor	
2.	habēbis		habēberis, re	
3.	habēbit		habēbitur	
Pl. 1.	habēbimus		habēbimur	
2.	habēbitis		habēbiminī	
3.	habēbunt		habēbuntur	
		PERFECT		
Sg. 1.	habuī	habuerim	habitus, a, um { sum	habitus, a, um { sim
2.	habuistī	habuerīs	es	sīs
3.	habuit	habuerit	est	sit
Pl. 1.	habuimus	habuerīmus	habitī, ae, a { sumus	habitī, ae, a { sīmus
2.	habuistis	habuerītis	estis	sītis
3.	habuērunt, ēre	habuerint	sunt	sint
		PLUPERFECT		
Sg. 1.	habueram	habuissem	habitus, a, um { eram	habitus, a, um { essem
2.	habuerās	habuissēs	erās	essēs
3.	habuerat	habuisset	erat	esset
Pl. 1.	habuerāmus	habuissēmus	habitī, ae, a { erāmus	habitī, ae, a { essēmus
2.	habuerātis	habuissētis	erātis	essētis
3.	habuerant	habuissent	erant	essent

FUTURE PERFECT

Sg. 1.	habuerō	habitus, a, um	erō
2.	habueris		eris
3.	habuerit		erit
Pl. 1.	habuerimus	habitī, ae, a	erimus
2.	habueritis		eritis
3.	habuerint		erint

146. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1.	———	———	———	———
2.	habē	habētō	habēre	habētor
3.	———	habētō	———	habētor
Pl. 1.	———	———	———	———
2.	habēte	habētōte	habēminī	———
3.	———	habentō	———	habentor

147. INFINITIVE

PRES.	habēre	habērī
PERF.	habuisse	habitus, a, um esse
FUT.	habitūrus, a, um esse	habitum īrī

148. GERUND 149. SUPINE 150. PARTICIPLES

GEN.	habendī		PRES. *Nom.*	habēns; *Gen.* habentis (79)
DAT.	habendō		FUT.	habitūrus, a, um (71, *a*)
ACC.	habendum	ACC. habitum	PERF.	habitus, a, um (71, *a*)
ABL.	habendō	ABL. habitū		

GERUNDIVE

habendus, a, um (71, *a*)

THIRD CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *dīcō, say*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus

	ACTIVE		*PASSIVE*	
	151. INDICATIVE	152. SUBJUNCTIVE	153. INDICATIVE	154. SUBJUNCTIVE
	PRESENT			
Sg. 1.	dīcō	dīcam	dīcor	dīcar
2.	dīcis	dīcās	dīceris, re	dīcāris, re
3.	dīcit	dīcat	dīcitur	dīcātur
Pl. 1.	dīcimus	dīcāmus	dīcimur	dīcāmur
2.	dīcitis	dīcātis	dīciminī	dīcāminī
3.	dīcunt	dīcant	dīcuntur	dīcantur

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		IMPERFECT		
Sg. 1.	dīcēbam	dīcerem	dīcēbar	dīcerer
2.	dīcēbās	dīcerēs	dīcēbāris, re	dīcerēris, re
3.	dīcēbat	dīceret	dīcēbātur	dīcerētur
Pl. 1.	dīcēbāmus	dīcerēmus	dīcēbāmur	dīcerēmur
2.	dīcēbātis	dīcerētis	dīcēbāminī	dīcerēminī
3.	dīcēbant	dīcerent	dīcēbantur	dīcerentur
		FUTURE		
Sg. 1.	dīcam		dīcar	
2.	dīcēs		dīcēris, re	
3.	dīcet		dīcētur	
Pl. 1.	dīcēmus		dīcēmur	
2.	dīcētis		dīcēminī	
3.	dīcent		dīcentur	
		PERFECT		
Sg. 1.	dīxī	dīxerim	dictus, a, um { sum	dictus, a, um { sim
2.	dīxistī	dīxerīs	es	sīs
3.	dīxit	dīxerit	est	sit
Pl. 1.	dīximus	dīxerīmus	dictī, ae, a { sumus	dictī, ae, a { sīmus
2.	dīxistis	dīxerītis	estis	sītis
3.	dīxērunt, ēre	dīxerint	sunt	sint
		PLUPERFECT		
Sg. 1.	dīxeram	dīxissem	dictus, a, um { eram	dictus, a, um { essem
2.	dīxerās	dīxissēs	erās	essēs
3.	dīxerat	dīxisset	erat	esset
Pl. 1.	dīxerāmus	dīxissēmus	dictī, ae, a { erāmus	dictī, ae, a { essēmus
2.	dīxerātis	dīxissētis	erātis	essētis
3.	dīxerant	dīxissent	erant	essent
		FUTURE PERFECT		
Sg. 1.	dīxerō		dictus, a, um { erō	
2.	dīxeris		eris	
3.	dīxerit		erit	
Pl. 1.	dīxerimus		dictī, ae, a { erimus	
2.	dīxeritis		eritis	
3.	dīxerint		erunt	

155. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1.	———	———	———	———
2.	dīc [1]	dīcitō	dīcere	dīcitor
3.	———	dīcitō	———	dīcitor
Pl. 1.	———	———	———	———
2.	dīcite	dīcitōte	dīciminī	———
3.	———	dīcuntō	———	dīcuntor

[1] See 202.

156. INFINITIVE

PRES.	dīcere	dīcī
PERF.	dīxisse	dictus, a, um esse
FUT.	dictūrus, a, um esse	dictum īrī

157. GERUND

GEN.	dīcendī
DAT.	dīcendō
ACC.	dīcendum
ABL.	dīcendō

158. SUPINE

dictum
dictū

159. PARTICIPLES

PRES.	*Nom.* dīcēns; *Gen.* dīcentis (79)
FUT.	dictūrus, a, um (71, *a*)
PERF.	dictus, a, um (71, *a*)

160. GERUNDIVE

dīcendus, a, um

VERBS IN iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

161. Many verbs of the third conjugation with present indicative in iō, change i to e before r and drop it when it would come before e or i in all tenses of the present system except the future, participle, and gerund. Otherwise they follow the inflection of dīcere.

162. These verbs are capiō, *take;* cupiō, *desire;* faciō, *do, make;* fodiō, *dig;* fugiō, *flee;* jaciō, *throw;* pariō, *produce, bear;* quatiō, *shake;* rapiō, *snatch;* sapiō, *be wise,* and their compounds; also compounds of -liciō, -spiciō; and the deponents gradior, *go,* and its compounds; morior, *die,* and its compounds; patior, *endure, suffer,* and its compounds.

Synopsis of Present System of *capiō, take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

	ACTIVE		*PASSIVE*	
	163. INDICATIVE	**164.** SUBJUNCTIVE	**165.** INDICATIVE	**166.** SUBJUNCTIVE
		PRESENT		
Sg. 1.	capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
2.	capis	capiās	caperis, re	capiāris, re
3.	capit	capiat	capitur	capiātur
Pl. 1.	capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
2.	capitis	capiātis	capiminī	capiāminī
3.	capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
		IMPERFECT		
Sg. 1.	capiēbam	caperem	capiēbar	caperer
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
		FUTURE		
Sg. 1.	capiam		capiar	
2.	capiēs		capiēris, re	
	etc.		etc.	

167. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1.	———	———	———	———
2.	cape	capitō	capere	capitor
3.	———	capitō	———	capitor
Pl. 1.	———	———	———	———
2.	capite	capitōte	capiminī	———
3.	———	capiuntō	———	capiuntor

168. INFINITIVE

PRES. capere		capī

169. PARTICIPLE	170. GERUND	171. GERUNDIVE
PRES. capiēns (79)	*Gen.* capiendī	capiendus, a, um (71, *a*)

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *audiō, hear*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

	ACTIVE		*PASSIVE*	
	172. INDICATIVE	**173.** SUBJUNCTIVE	**174.** INDICATIVE	**175.** SUBJUNCTIVE
		PRESENT		
Sg. 1.	audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
2.	audīs	audiās	audīris, re	audiāris, re
3.	audit	audiat	audītur	audiātur
Pl. 1.	audīmus	audiāmus	audīmur	audiāmur
2.	audītis	audiātis	audīminī	audiāminī
3.	audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
		IMPERFECT		
Sg. 1.	audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
2.	audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris, re	audīrēris, re
3.	audiēbat	audīret	audiēbātur	audīrētur
Pl. 1.	audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
2.	audiēbātis	audīrētis	audiēbāminī	audīrēminī
3.	audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur
		FUTURE		
Sg. 1.	audiam		audiar	
2.	audiēs		audiēris, re	
3.	audiet		audiētur	
Pl. 1.	audiēmus		audiēmur	
2.	audiētis		audiēminī	
3.	audient		audientur	

PERFECT

Sg. 1. audīvī	audīverim	audītus, a, um	sum	audītus, a, um	sim
2. audīvistī	audīverīs		es		sīs
3. audīvit	audīverit		est		sit
Pl. 1. audīvimus	audīverīmus	audītī, ae, a	sumus	audītī, ae, a	sīmus
2. audīvistis	audīverītis		estis		sītis
3. audīvērunt, ēre	audīverint		sunt		sint

PLUPERFECT

Sg. 1. audīveram	audīvissem	audītus, a, um	eram	audītus, a, um	essem
2. audīverās	audīvissēs		erās		essēs
3. audīverat	audīvisset		erat		esset
Pl. 1. audīverāmus	audīvissēmus	audītī, ae, a	erāmus	audītī, ae, a	essēmus
2. audīverātis	audīvissētis		erātis		essētis
3. audīverant	audīvissent		erant		essent

FUTURE PERFECT

Sg. 1. audīverō	audītus, a, um	erō	
2. audīveris		eris	
3. audīverit		erit	
Pl. 1. audīverimus	audītī, ae, a	erimus	
2. audīveritis		eritis	
3. audīverint		erunt	

176. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1.	———	———	———	———
2.	audī	audītō	audīre	audītor
3.	———	audītō	———	audītor
Pl. 1.	———	———	———	———
2.	audīte	audītōte	audīminī	———
3.	———	audiuntō	———	audiuntor

177. INFINITIVE

PRES.	audīre	audīrī
PERF.	audīvisse	audītus, a, um esse
FUT.	audītūrus, a, um esse	audītum īrī

178. GERUND 179. SUPINE 180. PARTICIPLES

GEN. audiendī		PRES. *Nom.* audiēns; *Gen.* audientis (79)
DAT. audiendō		FUT. audītūrus, a, um (71, *a*)
ACC. audiendum	audītum	PERF. audītus, a, um (71, *a*)
ABL. audiendō	audītū	

181. GERUNDIVE

audiendus, a, um

DEPONENT VERBS

182. Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the present and future active participles, and the future active infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a present, future, and perfect participle, all with active meaning. The gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

I. First Conjugation

Conjugation of *moror, delay*

Principal Parts: **moror, morārī, morātus**

183. INDICATIVE	**184.** SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
I delay, am delaying, do delay	
Sg. 1. moror	**morer**
2. morāris, re	**morēris, re**
3. morātur	**morētur**
Pl. 1. morāmur	**morēmur**
2. morāminī	**morēminī**
3. morantur	**morentur**
IMPERFECT	
I was delaying, delayed, did delay	
Sg. 1. morābar	**morārer**
2. morābāris, re	**morārēris, re**
3. morābātur	**morārētur**
Pl. 1. morābāmur	**morārēmur**
2. morābāminī	**morārēminī**
3. morābantur	**morārentur**
FUTURE	
I shall delay, will delay	
Sg. 1. morābor	
2. morāberis, re	
3. morābitur	
Pl. 1. morābimur	
2. morābiminī	
3. morābuntur	
PERFECT	
I have delayed, delayed, did delay	
Sg. 1. morātus, a, um sum	**morātus, a, um sim**
2. es	**sīs**
3. est	**sit**

Pl.	1.	morātī, ae, a	sumus	morātī, ae, a	sīmus
	2.		estis		sītis
	3.		sunt		sint

PLUPERFECT

I had delayed

Sg.	1.	morātus, a, um	eram	morātus, a, um	essem
	2.		erās		essēs
	3.		erat		esset
Pl.	1.	morātī, ae, a	erāmus	morātī, ae, a	essēmus
	2.		erātis		essētis
	3.		erant		essent

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall (will) have delayed

Sg.	1.	morātus, a, um	erō
	2.		eris
	3.		erit
Pl.	1.	morātī, ae, a	erimus
	2.		eritis
	3.		erunt

185. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1.	———	———
2.	morāre, *delay*	morātor, *you shall delay*
3.	———	morātor, *he shall delay*
Pl. 1.	———	———
2.	morāminī, *delay*	———
3.	———	morantur, *they shall delay*

186. INFINITIVE

PRES. morārī, *to delay*
FUT. morātūrus, a, um esse, *to be about to delay*
PERF. morātus, a, um esse, *to have delayed*

187. SUPINE

ACC. morātum, *to delay, for delaying*
ABL. morātū, *to delay, in the delaying*

188. PARTICIPLES

PRES. morāns, antis, *delaying* (79)
FUT. morātūrus, a, um, *about to delay* (71, *a*)
PERF. morātus, a, um, *having delayed* (71, *a*)

189. GERUNDIVE

morandus, a, um, (*one*) *to be delayed, about to be delayed* (71, *a*)

190. GERUND

GEN. morandī, *of delaying*

II. Second, Third, Fourth Conjugations

Synopsis of *fateor, confess; sequor, follow; patior, endure; experior, try*

191. INDICATIVE

Pres.	fateor	sequor	patior	experior
	fatēris, etc.	sequeris	pateris	experīris
Imperf.	fatēbar	sequēbar	patiēbar	experiēbar
Fut.	fatēbor	sequar	patiar	experiar
Perf.	fassus sum	secūtus sum	passus sum	expertus sum
Pluperf.	fassus eram	secūtus eram	passus eram	expertus eram
Fut. Perf.	fassus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	expertus erō

192. SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	fatear	sequar	patiar	experiar
	fateāris, etc.	sequāris	patiāris	experiāris
Imperf.	fatērer	sequerer	paterer	experīrer
Perf.	fassus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	expertus sim
Pluperf.	fassus essem	secūtus essem	passus essem	expertus essem

193. IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fatēre	sequere	patere	experīre
Fut.	fatētor	sequitor	patitor	experītor

194. INFINITIVE

Pres.	fatērī	sequī	patī	experīrī
Fut.	fassūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	passūrus esse	expertūrus esse
Perf.	fassus esse	secūtus esse	passus esse	expertus esse

195. PARTICIPLES

Pres.	fatēns	sequēns	patiēns	experiēns
Fut.	fassūrus	secūtūrus	passūrus	expertūrus
Perf.	fassus	secūtus	passus	expertus

196. GERUND

	fatendī	sequendī	patiendī	experiendī

197. GERUNDIVE

	fatendus	sequendus	patiendus	experiendus

198. SUPINE

	fassum	secūtum	passum	expertum
	fassū	secūtū	passū	expertū

Periphrastic Conjugation

199. The periphrastic conjugation arises from the combination of the future participle active and passive (the gerundive) with forms of the verb **sum**.

a. The active periphrastic denotes something about to take place.

b. The passive periphrastic denotes necessity or duty.

200. *ACTIVE*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	**parātūrus (a, um) sum**, *am about to prepare*	**parātūrus (a, um) sim**
Imperf.	**parātūrus eram**, *was about to prepare*	**parātūrus essem**
Fut.	**parātūrus erō**, *shall be about to prepare*	
Perf.	**parātūrus fuī**, *have been, was, about to prepare*	**parātūrus fuerim**
Pluperf.	**parātūrus fueram**, *had been about to prepare*	**parātūrus fuissem**
Fut. Perf.	**parātūrus fuerō**, *shall have been about to prepare*	

INFINITIVE

Pres. **parātūrus (a, um) esse**, *to be about to prepare*
Perf. **parātūrus (a, um) fuisse**, *to have been about to prepare*

201. *PASSIVE*

Pres.	**parandus (a, um) sum**, *have to be prepared; ought to be, must be prepared*	**parandus (a, um) sim**
Imperf.	**parandus eram**, *had to be prepared; ought to be, must be prepared*	**parandus essem, forem**
Fut.	**parandus erō**, *shall have to be prepared*	
Perf.	**parandus fuī**, *have had to be prepared*	**parandus fuerim**
Pluperf.	**parandus fueram**, *had had to be prepared*	**parandus fuissem**
Fut. Perf.	**parandus fuerō**, *shall have had to be prepared*	

INFINITIVE

Pres. **parandus (a, um) esse**, *to have to be prepared*
Perf. **parandus fuisse**, *to have had to be prepared*

202. Irregular Imperatives: Four verbs, **dīcō**, *say*, **dūcō**, *lead*, **faciō**, *do, make*, **ferō**, *bear*, form the present imperative active **dīc, dūc, fac, fer.** But in early Latin **dīce, dūce, face** are common. The compounds follow the usage of the simple verbs, except prepositional compounds of **faciō.** **Sciō**, *know*, lacks the present imperative **scī.**

203. Gerunds and Gerundives. The older ending of the gerund and gerundive in the third and fourth conjugations was **undus**; and **endus** was found only after **u.** In classical times **undus** is frequent, especially in verbs of the third and fourth conjugations; later, **endus** is the regular form.

204. 1. **Syncopated and Shorter Forms.** The perfects in **āvī, ēvī, īvī** often drop the **v** before **s** or **r** and contract the vowels throughout, except those in **īvī**, which admit the contraction only before **s**. These forms are called syncopated. They are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the meter.

		PERFECT	
INDIC.	Sg. 1.	———	———
	2.	**parāvistī, parāstī**	**audīvistī, audīstī**
	3.	———	———
	Pl. 1.	———	———
	2.	**parāvistis, parāstis**	**audīvistis, audīstis**
	3.	**parāvērunt, parārunt**	**audīvērunt, audiērunt**
SUBJ.		**parāverim, parārim** etc.	**audīverim, audierim** etc.
		PLUPERFECT	
INDIC.		**parāveram, parāram** etc.	**audīveram, audieram** etc.
SUBJ.		**parāvissem, parāssem** etc.	**audīvissem, audīssem** etc.
		FUTURE PERFECT	
INDIC.		**parāverō, parārō** etc.	**audīverō, audierō** etc.
		INFINITIVE	
PERF.		**parāvisse, parāsse**	**audīvisse, audīsse**

2. In the first and third persons singular and in the first person plural of the perfect, syncope occurs regularly only in perfects in **īvī**, and there is no contraction. It is most common in the perfects of **eō**, *go*, and **petō**, *seek*. The unsyncopated forms are always common except those of **eō**, which are very rare in good prose, but occur more often in the poets for metrical reasons.

3. **nōvī**, *I know*, and **mōvī**, *I have moved*, are also contracted, especially in their compounds.

Sg. 2. nōstī. Pl. 2. nōstis. 3. nōrunt. *Subj.* **nōrim**, etc. *Pluperf.* **nōram**, etc. *Subj.* **nōssem**, etc. *Inf.* **nōsse.**

But the future perfect **nōrō** is found only in compounds.

a. Similar contractions are seen in **mōvī**, but not so often.

4. The shorter form of the ending of the perfect active indicative third plural, **ēre** instead of **ērunt**, and of the second singular, **re** instead of **ris**, is often found. Thus **amāvēre = amāvērunt**, *they have loved*, and **amābāre = amābāris**, *you were loved*.

Semideponents

205. 1. A few verbs form the perfect forms only as deponents:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*

IRREGULAR VERBS

206. Irregular in the conjugation of the present stem are:

1. **orior, orīrī, ortus,** *arise*

The present indicative is usually formed according to the third conjugation; the imperfect subjunctive is always **orerer**; but the future participle is **oritūrus.** The compounds follow the same usage except **adorīrī,** *rise up at, attack,* which follows the fourth conjugation.

2. **eō,** *go.*

The stem is **ī,** which, before **a, o, u,** becomes **e.**

Principal Parts: **eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus**

		207. INDICATIVE	**208.** SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	Sg. 1.	eō, *I go*	eam
	2.	īs	eās
	3.	it	eat
	Pl. 1.	īmus	eāmus
	2.	ītis	eātis
	3.	eunt	eant
Imperf.		ībam, *I went*	īrem
Fut.		ībō, *I shall go*	———
Perf.		īvī (iī), *I have gone*	īverim (ierim)
Pluperf.		īveram (ieram), *I had gone*	īvissem (īssem)

		209. IMPERATIVE	
Sg.	1.	———	———
	2.	ī, *go*	ītō, *you shall go*
	3.	———	ītō, *he shall go*
Pl.	1.	———	———
	2.	īte, *go*	ītōte, *you shall go*
	3.	———	euntō, *they shall go*

210. INFINITIVE	**211.** PARTICIPLES
Pres. īre	Pres. iēns (*Gen.* euntis)
Fut. itūrus esse	Fut. itūrus
Perf. īvisse (īsse)	

212. GERUND	**213.** SUPINE
eundī, etc.	itum, *to go*

a. Like the simple verb are inflected most of the compounds, except in the perfect system, where **ii** is the regular form. **Vēneō**, *be for sale*, and **pereō**, *perish*, serve as passives to **vendō**, *sell*, and **perdō**, *destroy*. **Ambiō**, *solicit*, follows the fourth conjugation throughout.

b. The passive of the simple verb **eō** is found only in the impersonal forms **ītur, ībātur, itum est, īrī** (in combination with the supine). But compounds with transitive force are conjugated regularly: so, **praetereō** forms **praetereor, īris, ītur, īmur, īminī, euntur, ībar**, etc.; **itus sum, eram, erō, euntor, ītor, īrī, eundus.**

3. **ferō**, *bear*.

The endings beginning with **t, s**, and **r** are added directly to the root, **fer.**

a. Some forms of **ferō** are lacking and are supplied by **tul** and **(t)lā.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

ACTIVE

		214. INDICATIVE	215. SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	Sg. 1.	ferō, *I bear*	feram
	2.	fers	ferās
	3.	fert	ferat
	Pl. 1.	ferimus	ferāmus
	2.	fertis	ferātis
	3.	ferunt	ferant
IMPERF.		ferēbam, *I was bearing*	ferem
FUT.		feram, *I shall bear*	———
PERF.		tulī, *I have borne*	tulerim
PLUPERF.		tuleram, *I had borne*	tulissem
FUT. PERF.		tulerō, *I shall have borne*	———

216.		IMPERATIVE	
Sg.	1.	———	———
	2.	fer, *bear*	fertō, *you shall bear*
	3.	———	fertō, *he shall bear*
Pl.	1.	———	———
	2.	ferte, *bear*	fertōte, *you shall bear*
	3.	———	feruntō, *they shall bear*

217. INFINITIVE		218. PARTICIPLES
PRES.	ferre	ferēns, ferentis, *bearing*
FUT.	lātūrus esse	
PERF.	tulisse	lātūrus

219. GERUND	220. SUPINE
ferendī, etc.	lātum, lātū

PASSIVE

		221. INDICATIVE	222. SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	Sg. 1.	feror, *I am borne*	ferar
	2.	ferris	ferāris
	3.	fertur	ferātur
	Pl. 1.	ferimur	ferāmur
	2.	feriminī	ferāminī
	3.	feruntur	ferantur
IMPERF.		ferēbar	ferer
FUT.		ferar	———
PERF.		lātus sum	lātus sim
PLUPERF.		lātus eram	lātus essem
FUT. PERF.		lātus erō	———

223. IMPERATIVE

Sg. 1.	———	———
2.	ferre, *be borne*	fertor, *you shall be borne*
3.	———	fertor, *he shall be borne*
Pl. 1.	———	———
2.	feriminī, *be borne*	———
3.	———	feruntor, *they shall be borne*

224. INFINITIVE		225. PARTICIPLES
PRES.	ferrī, *to be borne*	PERF. lātus, a, um, *borne*
FUT.	lātum īrī, *to be about to be borne*	
PERF.	lātus esse, *to have been borne*	

226. GERUNDIVE **ferendus, a, um,** *ought to be borne*

4. **fīō,** *become*

227. **Fīō** is conjugated in the present, imperfect, and future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the subjunctive imperfect and in the infinitive the stem is increased by **e**; thus, **fierem, fierī,** *to become*. In these forms the **i** is short, but elsewhere it is long except before final **t**.

The infinitive ends in **rī**, and the whole verb in the present system is treated as the passive of **faciō**, *do, make* (161–171). The rest of the verb is formed as a regular passive of **faciō**.

228. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

PRES. INDIC.	fīō, *I am made, I become*	SUBJ. fiam, fiās, fiat, etc.
	fīs, fit, fīmus, fītis, fiunt	
IMPERF.	fiēbam, *I was made, I became*	fierem, fierēs, etc.
FUT.	fiam, *I shall be made (become)*	
PERF.	factus sum	factus sim, etc.
PLUPERF.	factus eram	factus essem, etc.
FUT. PERF.	factus erō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
(fī)	(fītō)	PRES.	fierī, *to become*
(fītō)		PERF.	factus esse, *to have become*
		FUT.	factum īrī, *to be about to become*

229. When compounded with prepositions, **faciō** changes the **a** of the stem into **i**, and forms the passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem: **perficiō**, *achieve;* passive, **perficior**; **interficiō**, *destroy;* passive, **interficior.** When compounded with words other than prepositions, **faciō** retains its **a**, and uses **fiō** as its passive: **patefaciō**, *lay open;* passive, **patefiō**; **calefaciō**, *warm;* passive, **calefiō.**

230. **volō**, *wish;* **nōlō**, *be unwilling;* **mālō**, *prefer.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volō, velle, voluī**
nōlō, nōlle, noluī
mālō, mālle, māluī

231. INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPERF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam
	volēs, etc.	nōlēs, etc.	mālēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī, etc.
PLUPERF.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram, etc.
FUT. PERF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō, etc.

232. SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPERF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim, etc.
PLUPERF.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem, etc.

233. IMPERATIVE

Sg. **nōlī, nōlītō**
Pl. **nōlīte, nōlītōte, nōluntō**

234. INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

235. PARTICIPLES

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	———

PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

236: A verb agrees with its subject in number and person, as **ego vocō,** *I call;* **tū vocās,** *you call.*

a. A collective noun may take its predicate in the plural, as **pars veniunt,** *part come.*

b. The nearer subject is preferred to the more remote, as **mīlitēs et dux vēnit,** *the leader and his troops came.*

c. The copula may agree in number with the predicate noun, as **amantium īrae amōris integrātiō est,** *lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.* Compare "the wages of sin *is* death."

237. The adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, as **tālis vir,** *such a man;* **tālēs virī,** *such men;* **tālia dōna,** *such gifts.*

238. The common attribute of two or more substantives generally agrees with the nearest, rather than with the most important, as **cūncta maria terraeque patēbant,** *all seas and lands lay open.*

239. The common predicate attribute of two or more subjects is usually in the plural, as **pater et māter mortuī sunt,** *father and mother are dead;* but may agree with the nearest or most important, as **Caesar mortuus est et Jūlia,** *Caesar is dead, and Julia also.*

a. When the persons of the subjects are different, the predicate takes the first in preference to the second; the second in preference to the third.

b. When the genders of the subjects are different, the predicate attribute takes the nearest gender or the strongest (the masculine being the strongest of things with life, the neuter of those without), as **pater et māter mortuī sunt,** *father and mother are dead;* **mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant,** *wall and gate had been struck by lightning.*

240. The predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case, as **ille vir erat dux,** *that man was leader.*

a. The pronoun used as subject is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate as **negat Epicūrus; hoc enim vestrum lūmen est,** *Epicurus says No; for he is your great light!*

241. The appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person, as **Aenēās, pius dux,** *Aeneas, the devoted leader;* **Aenēās et Dīdō, superbī ducēs,** *Aeneas and Dido, proud leaders.*

242. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, as **vir quī adest,** *the man who is present;* **dōna quae adsunt,** *the gifts which are here;* **ego quī hoc dīcō,** *I who say this.*

a. Occasionally the antecedent is attracted into the case of the relative, as **urbem quam statuō vestra est,** *the city which I am founding is yours.*

243. Poetic Plural. The plural is often used instead of the singular, especially in poetry, to generalize a statement, for metrical reasons, or for rhetorical effect, as **īrae,** *wrath, wrathful passions;* **fortitūdinēs,** *gallant actions;* **ōra,** *face, features;* **scēptra,** *scepter;* **silentia,** *silence.*

a. **Plural of Modesty.** The plural of the first person is sometimes used instead of the singular, as **dīximus multa,** *we (I) have spoken much.* Similarly **nōs** in all its cases for **ego,** etc., and **noster** in all its forms for **meus,** etc. This usage in English is sometimes called the "editorial we."

244. Disproportion is indicated by the comparative with **quam prō,** *than for;* **quam ut,** *than that;* **quam quī,** *than who;* as **minor caedēs quam prō tantā victōriā fuit,** *the loss was (too) small for so great a victory;* **major sum quam cui fortūna nocēre possit,** *I am too great for fortune possibly to hurt me.*

245. In comparing two qualities, use either **magis quam** with the positive, as **dīsertus magis est quam sapiēns,** *he is eloquent rather than wise (more eloquent than wise);* or a double comparative, **acūtiōrem sē quam ornātiōrem vult,** *he wishes to be acute rather than ornate.*

246. Superlatives denoting order and sequence are often used partitively and then usually precede their substantives, as **summa aqua,** *the surface* (of the) *water;* **summus mōns,** *the top* (of the) *mountain;* **prīmō vēre,** *in the beginning* (of) *spring.* Similarly **in mediā urbe,** *in the midst of the city;* **reliqua, cētera Graecia,** *the rest of Greece,* and the like.

PRONOUNS

247. Since the form of the verb indicates its person, the nominative of the personal pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast, as **ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūxistis,** I *drove out kings;* you *bring in tyrants.*

a. The forms **meī, tuī, nostrī, vestrī** are used as objective genitives; **nostrum** and **vestrum** as partitive genitives (284, 286).

248. The reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject, as **ipse sē quisque dīligit, quod sibi quisque cārus est,** *every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself.*

a. The reflexive is sometimes used when reference is made to the logical subject, as **ferunt sua flāmina classem,** *their own (favorable) breezes waft the fleet.*

b. The reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject, especially in indirect discourse or in substantive volitive clauses (clauses of desire), as **sentit animus sē vī suā movērī,** *the mind feels that it moves by its own force;* **ā mē petīvit ut sēcum essem,** *he asked me to be with him;* **librōs quōs frāter suus relīquisset mihi dōnāvit,** *he gave me the books* (as he said) *that his brother had left.*

249. The possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive of the first and second person pronouns, as **socius meus,** *a comrade of mine;* **tēlum tuum,** *a weapon of yours;* **amor meus,** *my love* (*which I feel*); **spēs tua,** *your hope* (*which you have*).

a. The appositive to a possessive adjective is in the genitive, as **urbs meā ūnīus operā fuit salva,** *the city was saved by my exertions alone.*

ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

250. With words of inclination and disinclination, knowledge and ignorance, order and position, time and season, the adjective is commonly employed for the adverb, as **id faciō volēns,** *I do this willing*(*ly*).

SPECIAL USE OF MOODS

251. The Indicative, not the subjunctive, is commonly used to express possibility, power, obligation, and necessity, as **possum persequī permulta oblēctāmenta rērum rūsticārum,** *I might rehearse very many delights of country life;* **ad mortem tē dūcī oportēbat,** *you ought to have been led to execution.*

252. The Potential Subjunctive. The present or perfect subjunctive may be used to express possibility in the present or future, as **tē superesse velim,** *I should like for you to survive;* **Platōnem nōn nimis valdē laudāverīs,** *you con't praise Plato too much;* the imperfect subjunctive to express possibility in the past, **crēderēs victōs,** *you would* (*might*) *have thought them beaten.*

253. The Optative Subjunctive. The subjunctive, sometimes with **utinam,** *would that,* is often used in expressions of wishing. The negative is **nē. Valeās,** *farewell!* **nē veniant,** *may they not come!* **utinam nē nātus essem,** *would that I had not been born!* **utinam vīveret frāter,** *would that my brother were alive!*

254. The Volitive Subjunctive. The subjunctive may be used in expressions of will, asseveration, command, or concession, as **stet haec urbs,** *may this city continue to stand;* **moriar sī magis gaudērem,** *may I die if I could be more glad;* **amēmus patriam,** *let us love our country;* **sit deus,** *granted that he is a god.* This subjunctive is often called jussive, hortatory,

or concessive, according as it expresses a command, an exhortation, or a concession, respectively.

255. The present imperative looks forward to immediate, the future imperative to contingent, fulfilment, as **haec dīcite vestrō rēgī,** *tell this to your king;* **cōnsulēs nēminī pārentō,** *the consuls shall obey no one.*

256. The negative of the imperative is regularly **nōlī** with the infinitive; as **nōlī fugere,** *don't flee!* sometimes **nē** or **cavē** (**nē**) with the present or perfect subjunctive is also used, as **cavē** (**nē**) **faciās,** *don't do it!* **nē mortem timeās** (or **timuerītis**), *don't fear death!*

a. In poetry **nē** is often found with the imperative, as **nē timē,** *fear not!* **nē fuge,** *don't run!*

INFINITIVES

257. The Historical Infinitive. The present infinitive, with the subject in the nominative, is sometimes used to give a rapid sequence of events, as **hinc Ulixēs terrēre,** *henceforth Ulysses began to frighten* (*me*). This is called the historical infinitive.

258. The Infinitive as Neuter Subject. The infinitive with or without a subject may be treated as a neuter subject, object, or predicate, as **dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī,** *it is sweet and glorious to die for one's fatherland;* **turpe est vincī,** *it is shameful to be conquered;* **scit vincere,** *he knows* (*how*) *to conquer;* **vīvere est cōgitāre,** *to live is to think, living is thinking.*

259. The Complementary Infinitive. The infinitive is used with verbs of will, desire, power, duty, habit, inclination, resolve, continuance, purpose, etc., as **cupit morī,** *he wishes to die;* **dēbet haec vulnera patī,** *he ought to suffer these wounds.* This is called the complementary infinitive.

260. The Infinitive as Object. The accusative with infinitive is used as the object of verbs of emotion, will, and desire; as **tē vēnisse gaudeō,** *I rejoice that you have come;* **mē dīcere vult,** *he wishes me to speak.*

261. The Infinitive of Purpose. In poetry the infinitive is often used to express purpose, as **nōn populāre vēnimus,** *we have not come to pillage.*

262. The Infinitive of Exclamation. The infinitive with accusative subject is used in exclamation or exclamatory questions, as **mē dēsistere,** *what! I desist?*

263. The Infinitive of Indirect Statement (Indirect Discourse). The infinitive is used after verbs of saying, showing, believing, and perceiving, to express an indirect statement; the present infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the perfect infinitive action

prior to it, the future infinitive action future to it, as **dīcit tē errāre,** *he says that you are wrong;* **dīcēbat tē errāre,** *he was saying that you were wrong:* **dīcēbat tē errāsse,** *he was saying that you had been wrong.*

a. The future infinitive of **sum** followed by **ut** and the subjunctive is used in indirect statement of future action when the verb has no future participle, as **dīcit fore (futūrum esse) ut metuās,** *he says that you will fear.*

264. The Infinitive with Nouns. The poets and later prose writers use the infinitive with nouns denoting attention or opportunity, as **amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs,** *desire to know our misfortunes;* **adfectāre potestās,** *opportunity to seize.*

265. The Infinitive with Adjectives. The infinitive is used with many adjectives and with participles of adjectival force, as **nescia vincī pectora,** *hearts not knowing (how) to yield;* **certa morī,** *determined to die.*

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

266. The genitive of the gerund or gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement, as **sapientia ars vīvendī putanda est,** *philosophy is to be considered the art of living;* **nūlla spēs plācandī deī,** *no hope of appeasing god;* **cupidus maledīcendī,** *eager to abuse.*

267. The dative of the gerund or gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of fitness and function; also after words of capacity and adaptation, and to express purpose, as **tēla apta mittendō,** *weapons suitable for hurling;* **comitia cōnsulibus creandīs,** *elections for nominating consuls.*

268. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used with **ad** to express purpose, as **ad bellandum venimus,** *we come to make war.*

a. The accusative of the gerundive is used in agreement with the direct object of verbs of giving, sending, and leaving, etc., to indicate purpose, as **id mihi servandum dedit,** *he gave it to me to keep;* **Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrat,** *Conon has the walls rebuilt;* **patriam dīripiendam relīquimus,** *we have left our country to be plundered.*

269. The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used to denote means and cause, rarely manner, as **ūnus homō nōbīs cūnctandō restituit rem,** *one man by delaying raised our cause again.*

SUPINES

270. The supine in **um** (accusative) is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose, as **veniunt spectātum,** *they come to see.*

271. The supine in **ū** (ablative) is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate respect, as **mīrābile dictū,** *wonderful to relate (in the relating);* **mīrābile vīsū,** *wonderful to see (in the seeing).*

PARTICIPLES

272. The Present Participle denotes continuance, the perfect participle denotes completion at the time of the principal verb.

273. The participle is used after verbs of perception and representation to express the actual condition of the object at the time, as **Catōnem vīdī in bibliothēcā sedentem multīs circumfūsum librīs,** *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of books about him;* **illam audīvī fūrtīvā vōce loquentem,** *I heard her talking in a stealthy tone.*

274. The Future Participle is used in poetry and occasionally in prose to express desire or purpose, as **fabricāta est māchina īnspectūra domōs ventūraque dēsuper urbī,** *it has been built as an engine of war, to spy into our homes and come down upon the city from above.*

275. The Perfect Participle passive is used after verbs of causation and desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired, as **sī quī voluptātibus dūcuntur, missōs faciant honōrēs,** *if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them give up honors* (at once and forever).

CASES

Nominative

276. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, as **urbs stat,** *the city is standing.*

277. The subject of a historical infinitive is in the nominative, as **Ulixēs terrēre,** *Ulysses began to terrorize* (*me*).

278. The predicate of a finite form of the verb *to be,* **sum,** or of a verb of seeming or becoming, or of the passive of a verb of making, choosing, showing, thinking, or calling, is in the nominative, as **pater est rēx,** *his father is king;* **pater fit rēx,** *his father becomes king;* **pater vocātur rēx,** *his father is called king.*

279. When an active verb of saying, showing, believing, or perceiving, is changed to the passive, the accusative subject of the infinitive may become the nominative subject of the leading verb, as **urbs dīcitur magna fuisse,** *the city is said to have been great.* Compare **dīcunt urbem fuisse magnam,** *they say that the city was great.*

Genitive

280. Genitive of Material. The genitive may be used to denote the material or substance of which a thing consists, as **flūmina lactis,** *rivers of milk.* See 324 for the ablative of material.

281. The Appositional Genitive is used with **vōx, nōmen, verbum, rēs, urbs,** etc., as **nōmen amīcitiae,** *the name of friendship;* **urbem Patavī,** *the city of Patavium.*

282. The Epexegetical Genitive (or genitive of explanation) is used after **genus, vitium, culpa,** etc., as **virtūtēs continentiae, gravitātis, jūstitiae, fideī,** *the virtues of self-control, earnestness, justice, honor.*

283. The Possessive Genitive is used to denote possession, as **domus rēgis,** *the palace of the king, the king's palace.*

284. The Subjective Genitive is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive; **the Objective Genitive,** of the object of that action, as **metus hostium,** *the fear of the enemy,* which may mean: (1) the fear which the enemy feel (subjective genitive) or (2) the fear felt toward the enemy (objective genitive). The objective genitive is used with nouns, adjectives, and participles used as adjectives, as **cupīdō glōriae,** *desire for glory;* **tempestātum potentem,** *ruling the storms;* **memorem vestrī, oblītum suī,** *mindful of you, forgetful of himself.*

285. Genitive of Quality. The genitive with an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing, as **homō maximī corporis,** *a man of gigantic size.* This is called the genitive of quality (characteristic, description). Compare the ablative of quality or characteristic (330).

a. The genitive of quality (or description) or the possessive genitive may be used as a predicate, as **id virtūtis est,** *that is a mark of virtue;* **hujus erō vīvus, mortuus hujus erō,** *hers I shall be living; dead, hers shall I be;* **haec domus est patris meī,** *this house is my father's.*

286. The Partitive Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs, as **pars hominum,** *part of the men;* **maximus omnium,** *greatest of all.* This is sometimes called the genitive of the whole.

287. Genitive with Special Adjectives and Verbs. Adjectives and verbs of fullness and want, of knowledge and ignorance, of desire and disgust, of participation and power, may take the genitive. Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in **āx,** as **plēnus labōris,** *full of toil;* **egēnus omnium,** *in need of everything;* **cōnscius rēctī,** *conscious of right;* **ignārus malī,** *ignorant of misfortune;* **cupidus aurī,** *desirous of gold;* **dīligēns vērī,** *careful (a lover of) the truth;* **capāx imperī,** *capable of empire;* **implentur veteris Bacchī,** *they fill themselves with old wine.*

288. Genitive with Verbs. Verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting usually take the genitive, as **meminit malōrum, oblītus est bonōrum,** *he remembers the evil, forgets the good.*

a. Sometimes these verbs take the accusative, especially of things, as **haec ōlim meminisse juvābit,** *to remember these things will one day be a pleasure.*

289. Verbs of Emotion take the genitive, as **miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis,** *pity a soul enduring what it does not deserve.*

290. Impersonal verbs of emotion take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of the exciting cause, as **tuī mē miseret, meī piget,** *I pity you, I loathe myself.*

291. Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting take the genitive of the charge, as **accūsātus est prōditiōnis,** *he was accused of treason;* **damnātus est caedis,** *he was convicted of murder;* **absolūtus est crīminis,** *he was acquitted of the charge.*

292. Genitive of Value. Verbs of rating and buying take the genitive of the general value, as **parvī exīstimāre,** *to consider of small account;* **ēmit equōs tantī quantī Caesar voluit,** *he bought the horses at the price Caesar wanted.*

293. Interest and **rēfert** take the genitive of the person, rarely of the thing concerned, as **interest omnium rēctē facere,** *it is to the interest of all to do right;* **rēfert omnium,** *it concerns everybody.*

a. Sometimes the ablative singular feminine of the possessive adjective is used, as **meā interest, meā rēfert,** *I am concerned.*

294. Genitive of Respect. The genitive is used with various adjectives to denote the respect to which a thing is true, as **aeger animī,** *sick at heart.* This is sometimes called the genitive of specification.

Dative

295. The Indirect Object is put in the dative, as **aurum hominī dat,** *he gives gold to the man.*

296. Some verbs of giving take either the dative and the accusative, or the accusative and the ablative, as **hominī aurum dōnat,** *he presents the gold to the man;* **hominem aurō dōnat,** *he presents the man with gold.*

297. Dative with Special Verbs. Many verbs meaning favor, help, trust, bid and forbid, believe, persuade, obey, serve, threaten, pardon, spare, join, and contend, take the dative, as **invideō nēminī,** *I envy no one;* **cēdit fortūnae,** *he yields to fortune;* **id mihi placet,** *that pleases me;* **pārēmus ducī,** *we obey our leader;* **crēdit hominī,** *he trusts the man.*

298. Dative with Compounds. Many intransitive verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub,** and **super,** may take a

dative, as **accēdō equō**, *I approach the horse;* **antecellit omnibus**, *he excels all;* **nox incubat marī**, *night broods over the sea;* **piger ipse sibi obstat**, *the lazy man stands in his own way.*

a. Transitive verbs so compounded also take an accusative, as **mē vestrīs ōrīs deus appulit**, *god drove me to your shores.*

299. Dative of Possession. The dative is used with **esse** to denote possession, as **est ager nōbīs**, *we have a field.*

300. The Ethical Dative is used of the personal pronouns only, as **ecce tibi homō**, *here's your man!* **tibi bellum geret**, *he shall wage war* (*for you, let me tell you*).

301. The Dative of Reference is used of the person interested or concerned in the action or of the person to whom a statement is referred, as **deō altāria fūmant**, *the altars smoke in honor of the god;* **pulchra est multīs**, *she is beautiful to many* (in the eyes of many); **est urbe ēgressīs tumulus**, *as you go out of town* (*to those who have gone out of town*) *there is a mound.* This is also called the dative of interest, and at times is called the dative of advantage and of disadvantage.

302. The Dative of Agent is used with a passive verb, especially with the gerundive, as **id faciendum mihi**, *this must be done by me, I must do this;* **vetor fātīs**, *I am forbidden by the fates;* **urbs capta est mihi**, *the city was captured by me.*

303. Dative of Purpose. The dative may denote the object for which (purpose), as **pars optāre locum tēctō**, *part were choosing a site for a home.*

a. The Dative of Purpose is often used in combination with the dative of reference (301), as **auxiliō iīs fuit**, *he was a help to them;* **id erit cūrae mihi**, *that shall be my care.*

304. Dative with Adjectives. Adjectives of friendliness, fullness, likeness, nearness, with their opposites, take the dative, as **similis est hominī**, *he is like a man;* **homō amīcus est mihi**, *the man is friendly to me;* **id erit ūtile omnibus**, *this will be useful to all;* **proximus sum egomet mihi**, *myself am nearest to me.*

305. Dative of Separation. Many verbs of warding off, robbing, and ridding, depriving, and separation take a dative, especially in poetry, as **ēripiēs mihi hunc errōrem**, *you will rid me of this mistake;* **silicī scintillam excūdit**, *he strikes a spark from the flint.* This is called the dative of separation.

306. Dative of Direction. In poetry the place to which, or limit of motion, is often expressed by the dative, as **it clāmor caelō**, *a shout goes to heaven;* **multōs dēmittimus Orcō**, *we send many to Hades.*

Accusative

307. The Direct Object of active transitive verbs is in the accusative case and may denote either the object effected or the object affected, as **bellum gerunt,** *they wage war* (object *effected* or result produced); **condidit urbem,** *he founds the city* (object *effected*); **capit urbem,** *he captures the city* (object *affected*); **rēx dūcit hominēs,** *the king leads the men* (object *affected*).

308. Accusative with Compounds. Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of motion, compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trāns,** take the accusative, as **adit urbem,** *he approaches the city;* **poenam subit,** *he submits to punishment.*

a. Transitive verbs thus compounded may have two accusatives, as **exercitum flūmen trājēcit,** *he threw his army across the river.*

309. In poetry the passive is often used in a reflexive or middle sense, as **fertur in hostīs,** *he charges upon the enemy.*

a. When thus used the verb may take an accusative as a direct object, as **ferrum cingitur,** *he girds on* (*girds himself with*) *the steel;* **sinūs collēcta,** *having gathered her robes;* **tūnsae pectora,** *beating their breasts;* **īnsternor umerōs,** *I spread over my shoulders.*

310. The accusative and ablative of certain adjectives are used adverbially, as **multum jactātus,** *much tossed;* **prīmō,** *at first.* See 93–94.

311. Accusative of Respect. In poetry the accusative is often used with an adjective or verb to denote the part concerned, as **nūda genū,** *with knee bare* (*bare as to her knee*); **ōs umerōsque deō similis,** *like a god in* (*as to*) *face and shoulders.* This is called the accusative of respect or specification.

312. Accusative with Prepositions. The accusative is used with many prepositions, the most important being

ante, apud, ad, adversum
circum, cis, ob, trāns, secundum
penes, pōne, prope, per,
post, and all in **-ā,** and **-ter.**[1]

313. Cognate Accusative. Intransitive verbs may take an accusative of similar form or meaning, as **dum vītam vīvās,** *as long as you live;* **somnium somniāvī,** *I dreamed a dream.* This is called a cognate accusative.

314. Accusative of Extent. The accusative may express extent in space, time, or degree, as **tumulum centum pedēs altum,** *a mound one hundred feet high;* **fuit rēx decem annōs,** *he was king ten years;* **sī mē amās tantum quantum tē amō,** *if you love me as I love you.* This is called

[1] Observe the metrical form of these four lines.

the accusative of extent. With expressions of time this is often called the accusative of duration of time.

315. Place Whither (place to which) is regularly denoted by the accusative with the preposition **ad** or **in**, as **vēnit ad Italiam**, *he came to Italy*. This is sometimes called the accusative of limit of motion.

a. The names of towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs**, do not ordinarily take the preposition, as **vēnit Rōmam**, *he came to Rome;* **pater, venī domum**, *father, come home!* **fugiunt rūs**, *they flee to the country*.

b. In poetry also the preposition is often omitted, as **Ītaliam Lāvīnaque vēnit lītora**, *he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores*.

316. Two Accusatives. Verbs meaning to inquire, require, teach, and conceal take two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing, as **quis tē illud docuit**, *who taught you that?* **Mīlēsiōs nāvem poposcit**, *he demanded a ship of the Milesians;* **quid mē istud rogās**, *why do you ask me that?*

a. Verbs of naming, making, taking, choosing, and showing, take two accusatives of the same person or thing, as **vocant urbem Rōmam**, *they call the city Rome;* **illum rēgem faciunt**, *they make him king*.

317. The Subject of the Infinitive is regularly in the accusative, as **vult mē dīcere**, *he wishes me to speak*.

a. A predicate noun in such an infinitive phrase agrees with the subject, as **volunt eum rēgem esse**, *they wish him to be king*.

318. Accusative of Exclamation. The accusative may be used in exclamations, as **mē miserum**, *poor me!* **prō deum fidem**, *for heaven's sake!*

Ablative

319. Place Where is denoted by the ablative, usually with **in**, as **in altō et in terrīs**, *on sea and on land*.

a. With names of towns and small islands the locative is used to express place where, as **Rōmae**, *at Rome*. See 345.

b. In poetry the preposition is often omitted, as **terrā marīque**, *on land and sea;* **Ītaliā**, *in Italy;* **lītore**, *on the shore;* **pectore**, *in his heart*.

320. Place Whence is denoted by the ablative, usually with **ex**, **dē**, or **ab**, as **ex marī**, *out of the sea*.

a. With names of towns, small islands, **domō**, *from home*, and with **rūre**, *from the country*, the preposition is regularly omitted, as **Karthāgine**, *from Carthage*.

b. In poetry the preposition is often omitted, as **venit (ex) Ītaliā**, *he comes from Italy*.

321. Ablative of Accompaniment. Accompaniment (attendance) is denoted by the ablative with **cum**, as **venit cum sociīs**, *he comes with his comrades*.

a. With **mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quā, quibus,** the preposition **cum** is regularly appended, as **mēcum,** *with me;* **tēcum,** *with you;* **sēcum,** *with him (self), with them (selves).*

322. Time When or Within Which is denoted by the ablative, as **urbem cēpit nocte,** *he captured the city at night;* **nocte pluit tōtā,** *it rains all night.*

323. Origin (source or descent) is denoted by the ablative with or without **ex** or **dē,** as **nātus deā,** *born of a goddess (goddess-born);* **ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es,** *you are his son and mine.*

324. Ablative of Material. Material is denoted by the ablative, usually with **ex,** as **domus facta ex saxō, ex ferrō,** *a house made of stone, of iron;* **aere clipeus,** *a shield of bronze.* See 280 for the genitive of material.

325. Ablative of Respect. The respect in which a verb, adjective, or noun is to be taken is denoted by the ablative, as **sunt quīdam hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine,** *some people are human beings not in fact (reality), but in name (only).* This is sometimes called the ablative of specification.

326. Ablative of Accordance. The ablative, usually with **dē** or **ex,** is used to express that in accordance with which a thing is done or judged, as **ex senātūs cōnsultō,** *in accordance with the decree of the senate.*

a. With certain words accordance is usually expressed by the ablative without a preposition, as **cōnsuētūdine suā,** *according to his custom;* **tuō cōnsiliō,** *in accordance with your plan;* **meā sententiā,** *in my opinion.*

327. Ablative with Comparatives. Comparatives without **quam** are followed by the ablative, as **exēgī monumentum aere perennius,** *I have erected a monument more enduring than bronze;* **Ō mātre pulchrā fīlia pulchrior,** *O daughter fairer than a mother fair!*

328. Ablative of Manner. Manner is denoted by the ablative regularly with an adjective or with **cum,** as **cum virtūte vīvere,** *to live virtuously;* **id fēcit magnā cum cūrā,** *he did it very carefully.*

a. The simple ablative of certain nouns may be used to denote manner, as **cāsū,** *by chance;* **vī,** *by force.*

329. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. Attendant circumstance, situation, or result may be expressed by the ablative, usually with a modifier, and without a preposition, but sometimes with **cum,** as **magnō intervallō,** *at a great distance;* **frequentissimō senātū,** *at a crowded meeting of the senate;* **imperiō suō,** *under his full power;* **clāmōre,** *with shouting;* **cum tuā perniciē,** *with (to) your destruction;* **magnō (cum) dolōre omnium,** *to the great grief of all.*

330. Ablative of Quality. Quality or description is denoted by the ablative regularly with an adjective, as **statūrā fuit humilī,** *he was of low stature.* This is sometimes called the ablative of characteristic or description. See 285 for the genitive of quality.

331. Ablative of Means. Means or instrument is denoted by the ablative, without a preposition, as **clārē videō oculīs,** *I see clearly with my eyes;* **pugnābant armīs,** *they fought with arms.*

332. Ablative of Cause. Cause may also be expressed by the ablative without a preposition, as **ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre,** *the good hate to sin from love of virtue.*

333. Ablative of Agent. The agent is denoted by the ablative with **ā (ab),** as **urbs capta est ab illō duce,** *the city was captured by that leader.*

334. The Standard of Measurement is denoted by the ablative, as **magnōs hominēs virtūte mētimur, nōn fortūnā,** *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune.*

335. Measure of Difference is put in the ablative, as **sōl multīs partibus est major quam terra ūniversa,** *the sun is many parts (a great deal) larger than the whole earth.* This is also sometimes called the degree of difference.

336. Ablative of Price. Definite price is put in the ablative, as **ēmit morte immortālitātem,** *he purchased deathlessness with death.*

a. General value is expressed by the genitive. See 292.

337. Ablative with Adjectives. The ablative is used with **dignus, indignus, frētus, contentus,** and **laetus,** and with adjectives of fullness and abundance, as **contentus hōc equō,** *content with this horse;* **dignus poenā,** *worthy of punishment;* **indignus poenā,** *unworthy of punishment.*

a. Also the verb **dignor,** *deem worthy,* takes the ablative in poetry and later prose, as **haud tālī mē dignor honōre,** *I do not deem myself worthy of such honor.*

338. The Ablative of Route is used to denote the way by which, as **prōvehimur pelagō,** *we sail forth over the sea.*

339. Ablative with Prepositions. The ablative is used with many prepositions, the most important being

abs (ab, ā), cum, cōram, dē
prae, prō, sine, ex (or ē).

340. Ablative of Separation. Separation is expressed by the ablative case, with or without a preposition. This ablative is used especially with verbs of depriving, of freedom, and of want, as **sē prīvāvit oculīs,** *he deprived himself of his eyes;* **omnibus egēre rēbus,** *to be in need of everything;* **tē ab eō līberō,** *I free you from him.* This is called the ablative of **separation.**

a. The ablative of separation is also used with **aliēnus** and with adjectives of freedom and want, as **aliēnum mājestāte deōrum,** *inconsistent with the dignity of the gods;* **līber cūrā,** *free from care.*

341. The ablative is used with **opus** and **ūsus,** as **opus est mihi aurō,** *I need gold;* **ūsus est dictīs bonīs,** *there is need of kind words.*

342. Ablative with Special Verbs. **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor,** and their compounds take the ablative, as **hīs vōcibus ūsa est,** *she spoke (used) these words;* **abūsus est nostrā patientiā,** *he used up our patience;* **fruimur lūce vītae,** *we enjoy the light of life;* **fungor officiō,** *I am performing my duty;* **potītur victōriā,** *he gains the victory;* **lacte vēscuntur,** *they live on milk.*

343. Ablative Absolute. The ablative, combined with a participle, adjective, or noun, may serve to express the circumstances in which an act takes place, as **duce victō, abeunt,** *the leader having been conquered, they depart;* **urbe captā, hominēs redeunt,** *the city having been captured, the men return.* This phrase is called the ablative absolute.

a. The ablative absolute phrase may have an accessory idea of time, cause, or condition, as **Caesare cōnsule haec lēx lāta est,** *this law was passed in Caesar's consulship.*

344. Vocative. The vocative, with or without **Ō,** *O,* is used in addressing a person or thing, as **Mūsa,** *O Muse!* **Aeole,** *O Aeolus!* **Ō rēgīna,** *O queen!*

Locative

345. Names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, **humus, domus,** and **rūs,** are put in the locative of the place where, as **Rōmae,** *at Rome;* **Crētae,** *in Crete;* **humī,** *on the ground;* **domī,** *at home.*

a. In poetry the names of countries and large islands also are sometimes found in the locative, as **Libyae,** *in Libya.*

ADVERBS

346. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, as **male vīvit,** *he lives badly;* **bene labōrat,** *he works well;* **ferē omnēs,** *almost all;* **nimis saepe,** *too often.*

QUESTIONS

347. *a.* A question for information merely is generally introduced by **-ne,** as **videtne patrem,** *does he see his father?*

b. A question that expects the answer *yes* is generally introduced by **nōnne,** as **nōnne vidēs,** *don't you see?*

c. A question that expects the answer *no* is generally introduced by **num,** as **num vidēs patrem,** *you don't see your father (do you)?*

MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

348. The Deliberative Question has its verb in the subjunctive, as **dīcam an taceam,** *shall I speak or hold my tongue?* **quid facerem,** *what was I to do?*

a. Occasionally the present indicative is used in deliberative questions, as **quem sequimur,** *whom are we to follow?*

349. The Indirect Question has its verb in the subjunctive, as **quaerēmus** (1) **quid fēcerit,** (2) **quid faciat,** (3) **quid factūrus sit,** *we shall ask what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).*

350. The direct form of these three questions would be: (1) **quid fēcit?** (2) **quid facit?** (3) **quid faciet** (or **factūrus est**)?

TENSES

351. There are six tenses in Latin: the present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

1. **The Present** denotes continuance in the present; it is used: (1) of that which is going on now (specific present), as **auribus teneō lupum,** *I am holding a wolf by the ears;* (2) of statements that apply to all time (universal present), as **probitās laudātur et alget,** *honesty is praised and freezes.*

a. **The Historical Present.** The present is used far more frequently than in English as a lively representation of the past, as **cohortīs incēdere jubet,** *he orders the cohorts to advance.* This is called the historical present.

b. The present is used in Latin of actions that continue into the present, especially with **jam,** *now,* **jam diū,** *now for a long time,* **jam prīdem,** *now long since,* as **Mithridātēs annum jam tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat,** *Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

c. The present is sometimes used for the future, or to denote attempted action (conative present), as **quam prendimus arcem,** *what citadel are we to seize?* **uxōrem dūcis,** *are you to be married?* **quid mē terrēs,** *why do you try to frighten me?*

2. **The Imperfect Tense** denotes continued or repeated action in the past, as **pugnābam,** *I was fighting, I kept fighting, I used to fight.* The imperfect is employed to represent manners, customs, situations; to describe and to particularize.

a. **The Imperfect of Endeavor.** The imperfect is used of attempted and interrupted, intended and expected actions (imperfect of endeavor, conative imperfect), as **urbem relinquēbat,** *he was trying to leave the city;* **lēx abrogābātur,** *the law was to be abrogated.*

b. The imperfect and the historical perfect serve to supplement each other. The imperfect dwells on the process; the historical perfect states

the result. The imperfect counts out the items; the historical perfect gives the sum. The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the historical perfect, the particulars of the action by the imperfect, as **Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant oculī; tōtō ex ōre crūdēlitās ēminēbat,** *Verres came into the forum; his eyes were blazing; cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

3. **The Future Tense** denotes continuance in the future, as **scrībam,** *I shall be writing.* It is also used to express indefinite action in the future. as **scrībam,** *I shall write.*

a. The future is sometimes used in an imperative sense, as in English, as **cum volet, accēdēs; cum tē vītābit, abībis,** *when she wants you, approach; when she avoids you, begone sir.* Compare such English expressions as "Thou shalt not kill."

b. A similar use is that of the future in asseverations, as **ita mē amābit Juppiter,** *so help me, Jove!*

4. **The Perfect Tense** has two distinct uses: the pure perfect and the historical perfect.

a. **The Pure Perfect** expresses completion in the present and hence is sometimes called the present perfect. It is used of an action that is now over and gone, as **vīximus,** *we have lived* (life for us has been); **Troja fuit,** *Troy has been* (but is nc longer). It is more frequently used to denote the present result of a more remote action (resulting condition), as **āctum est, perīstī,** *it is all over, you are ruined;* **equum et mūlum Brundisiī tibi relīquī,** *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium* (they are still there).

b. **The Historical or Indefinite Perfect** states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained, an occurrence, as **vēnī, vīdī, vīcī,** *I came, I saw, I conquered;* **Milō domum vēnit, calceōs et vestīmenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est,** *Milo came home, changed shoes and clothes, tarried a little while.*

5. **The Pluperfect** denotes completion in the past and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun, as **fuerat inimīcus,** *he had been my enemy.*

6. **The Future Perfect** denotes both completion and attainment, as **fēcerō,** *I shall have done it,* or *I shall do it* (once and for all).

352. The Latin tenses are divided into primary (principal) and secondary (historical).

a. **The Primary Tenses** have to do with the present and future; they are the present, pure perfect, future, and future perfect.

b. **The Secondary Tenses** have to do with the past; they are the historical present, imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect.

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES

Sequence of Tenses

353. Primary (principal) tenses are ordinarily followed by primary tenses, secondary (historical) by secondary tenses, as follows:

(1) All forms that relate to the present and future (primary tenses)	are regularly followed by	the present subjunctive (for continued action); the perfect subjunctive (for completed action).
(2) All forms that relate to the past (secondary tenses)	are regularly followed by	the imperfect subjunctive (for continued action); the pluperfect subjunctive (for completed action).

a. The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing.* The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and so the imperfect indicative (*he was doing*) is represented in the dependent form by the perfect or pluperfect, thus: **nesciō quid fēcerit, nescīvī quid fēcisset.**

b. The above rule is subject to several modifications:

1. Tense refers to time, not merely to tense form, so that

(*a*). The historical present may be felt according to its sense as *past* or according to its tense as *present.*

(*b*). The pure perfect may be felt according to its starting-point as *past*, or according to its completion as *present.*

2. The effect of a past action may be continued into the present or the future.

3. The dependent clause may depend on two or more clauses with their verbs in different tenses, and so follow a varying sequence.

4. An original imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive does not change its tense even when made to depend on a primary leading verb, for example, in unreal conditions (382, *a*).

354. The future relation of a verb in a dependent subjunctive clause may be made clearer by the use of an active periphrastic, as **cognōscam, quid factūrus sīs,** *I shall (try to) find out what you are going to do;* **cognōvī quid factūrus essēs,** *I have found out (know) what you were going to do.*

355. In Indirect Discourse (indirect statement) all verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive and follow the general rule of sequence of tenses. See 390.

QUOD CLAUSES

356. Quod, *the fact that, in that,* is used with the indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after verbs of adding and dropping, doing and

happening, and after demonstrative expressions, as **adde quod vīcimus,** *add the fact that we have won;* **praetereō quod nōn mānsit,** *I pass over the fact that he did not remain;* **bene facis quod tacēs,** *you do well in that you keep silent;* **hāc rē est īnfēlīx, quod victus est,** *in this he is unfortunate, in that he was conquered.*

CAUSAL CLAUSES

357. **Quod, quia, quoniam** and **quandō** take the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, to express cause, as **fūgit quod timēbat,** *he fled because he was afraid;* **fūgit quod timēret,** *he fled because* (*as he said*) *he was afraid.*

358. **Quod** is used after verbs of emotion with the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, to give the reason (ground), as **gaudet quod vēnērunt,** *he rejoices that they have come;* **gaudet quod vēnerint,** *he rejoices that* (*as he says*) *they have come.*

PURPOSE CLAUSES

359. **Purpose** is expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with **ut** or **nē,** as **vēnit ut dūceret hominēs,** *he came to lead* (*that he might lead*) *the men;* **fugit nē capiātur,** *he flees lest he be* (*that he may not be*) *captured.* For the relative clauses of purpose see 388.

360. **Substantive Volitive Clauses.** The present or imperfect subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used in a substantive clause after verbs of will and desire, as **ōrō ut veniās,** *I beg that you come;* **volō ut veniat,** *I wish him to come;* **voluī nē venīret,** *I wished him not to come.* Such a clause is called a substantive volitive clause.

a. The infinitive may also be used with such verbs, especially in poetry.

b. **Jubeō** regularly takes the accusative and infinitive.

VERBS OF HINDERING

361. A verb of preventing, refusing, and the like may take **nē** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive, as **obstat nē veniat,** *he hinders him from coming.*

362. A negatived verb of preventing, refusing, and the like may take **quīn** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive, as **nihil obstat quīn** (or **quōminus**) **sīs beātus,** *nothing hinders you from being happy.*

VERBS OF FEARING

363. A verb of fear may be followed by **nē** or **ut** (= **nē** + **nōn**) with any tense of the subjunctive, as **timeō nē hostis veniat,** *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come;* **timeō nē hostis vēnerit,** *I fear*

lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come; **timeō ut amīcus veniat,** *I fear lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come.*

RESULT CLAUSES

364. The subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used to denote result, as **tanta vīs deōrum est ut eīs nōn possīmus obstāre,** *so great is the power of the gods that we cannot oppose them;* **nēmō est tam fortis ut nōn possit cadere,** *no one is so strong but he can (that he cannot) fall.*

a. A relative pronoun is sometimes used instead of **ut,** as **nēmō est tam fortis quī nōn possit cadere.**

365. A verb of effecting has the subjunctive with **ut, nē,** or **ut nōn,** as **faciam ut veniat,** *I shall make (have) him come;* **faciam nē veniat,** *I shall bring it about that he does not come.*

366. Negatived or questioned verbs of doubt and uncertainty may be followed by the subjunctive with **quīn,** as **nōn dubium est quīn urbs capiātur,** *there is no doubt (but) that the city is being captured.*

367. Substantive Clauses of Result. The subjunctive with **ut** is often used in a substantive clause to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun, as **tōtum in eō est, ut tibi imperēs,** *all depends on this, your self-command (that you rule yourself);* **id est proprium cīvitātis, ut sit lībera,** *this is the peculiar privilege of a state, to be free (that it be free).* This is called the substantive clause of result.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

368. Ut, ut prīmum, cum, cum prīmum, ubi, ubi prīmum, simul ac, simul atque, in the sense of *as soon as,* and **postquam** take the perfect indicative, as **postquam vēnit dux, urbs capta est,** *after the leader came, the city was captured;* **ut vīdit urbem captam, fūgit,** *as (soon as) he saw the city captured, he fled.*

a. The imperfect indicative is used of overlapping action, and the pluperfect indicative when a definite interval is given, as **ut vidēbat hostēs vincentēs, rediit domum,** *as he saw the enemy were conquering, he returned home;* **postquam cēperat urbem, mīlitēs dūcit domum,** *after he had captured the city, he led his soldiers home.*

369. When two repeated actions are contemporaneous, both are put in the indicative in tenses of continuance, as **rēx bellum gerēbat cum volēbat,** *the king waged war whenever he wished.*

370. When one repeated action comes before another, the antecedent action is put in the perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect indicative, the

subsequent in the present, imperfect, or future indicative, according to the relation, as **quotiēns cecidit, surgit,** *as often as he falls (has fallen), he rises;* **quotiēns ceciderat, surgēbat,** *as often as he fell (had fallen), he rose;* **quotiēns ceciderit, surget,** *as often as he falls (shall have fallen), he will rise.*

371. Dum, dōnec, quoad, and **quamdiū,** *so long as, while,* take the indicative of all tenses, as **vīta dum superest, bene est,** *while (as long as) there is life, it is well;* **dōnec grātus eram tibī, fēlīx fuī,** *while I was pleasing to you, I was fortunate;* **quoad potuit restitit,** *he resisted as long as he could.*

372. Dum, *while, while yet,* usually takes the present indicative when the verb of the main clause is in the past tense, as **dum hae rēs aguntur, urbs ardēbat;** *while these things were going on, the city was burning.*

373. Dum, dōnec, and **quoad,** *until,* take the present, historical present, historical perfect, or future perfect indicative, when suspense or anticipation are not involved, as **manēbō dum venit,** *I shall remain until he comes;* **mānsī dum (quoad, dōnec) vēnit,** *I remained until he came.* See 374.

374. Dum, dōnec, and **quoad,** *until,* take the subjunctive when suspense, anticipation, or design is involved, as **mānsī dum venīret,** *I remained until he could come;* **exspectō dum veniat,** *I am waiting for him to come.* See 373.

375. Dum, modo, and **dummodo,** *if only, provided only,* take the present or imperfect subjunctive in a proviso clause, as **ōderint dum metuant,** *let them hate so long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear);* **veniat, dum maneat,** *let him come, provided that he remains.*

376. Antequam and **priusquam** take the indicative present, perfect, or future perfect when the time limit is stated as a fact, as **antequam abeō, dīcam pauca,** *before I go, I shall say a few words;* **antequam abiit, dīxerat pauca,** *before he went, he had said a few words.*

a. **Antequam** and **priusquam** take the subjunctive when the action is anticipated, contingent, or designed, as **urbem capit priusquam rēx veniat,** *he captures the city before the king may arrive (too soon for the king to arrive);* **ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus,** *we see the flash of lightning before we hear the sound (of thunder).*

CUM CLAUSES

377. Temporal *cum,* *when,* is used with all tenses of the indicative to designate merely temporal relations, as **animus nec cum adest nec cum discēdit appāret,** *the soul is not visible, either when it is present or when it departs;* **pāruit cum necesse erat,** *he obeyed when it was necessary.*

378. Descriptive *cum*, *when*, is used with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to give the circumstances under which an action took place, as **cum dīmicāret, occīsus est,** *when he engaged in battle, he was slain;* **Caesar cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī,** *when this was (had been) announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city.* This **cum** is sometimes called **cum** circumstantial.

379. Causal or **Concessive *cum*,** *when, whereas, although*, is used with any tense of the subjunctive, as **quae cum ita sint, dēbet fugere,** *since these things are so, we must flee;* **cum pār esset armīs, tamen dēbuerat fugere,** *although he was equal in arms, nevertheless he had to flee.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

380. The Logical (More Vivid or **Simple) Conditional Sentence** regularly has the same tense of the indicative in both the subordinate clause (the condition or protasis) and the principal clause (the conclusion or apodosis) as follows:

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
Sī id crēdis,	**errās,**
If you believe that,	*you are wrong.*
Sī id crēdēbās,	**errābās.**
If you believed that,	*you were wrong*
Sī id crēdidistī,	**errāvistī,**
If you (have) believed that,	*you were (have been) wrong*
Sī id crēdēs,	**errābis.**
If you (shall) believe that,	*you will be wrong.*
Sī id crēdiderīs,	**errāverīs,**
If you shall have believed that,	*you will have been wrong.*

381. The Ideal (Less Vivid) Conditional Sentence regularly has the present or perfect subjunctive, in both clauses, as follows:

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
Sī id crēdās,	**errēs.**
If you should (were to) believe that,	*you would be wrong.*
Sī id crēdiderīs,	**errāverīs** (rare)
If you should (prove to) have believed that,	*you would have been wrong.*

a. In indirect discourse, or indirect statement, the verb of the conditional clause of a logical or less vivid conditional sentence is in the subjunctive and follows the general rule of sequence of tenses, as **dīcō tē, sī id crēdās, errāre; dīxī tē, sī id crēderēs, errāre.**

382. The Unreal (Contrary to Fact) Conditional Sentence regularly has the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses if contrary to present fact.

and the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses if contrary to past fact, as follows:

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
Sī id crēderēs, *If you believed that* (but you do not),	**errārēs.** *you would be wrong.*
Sī id crēdidissēs, *If you had believed that* (but you did not),	**errāvissēs,** *you would have been wrong*

a. In indirect discourse the verb of an unreal condition is in the same mood and tense as it would be in direct discourse, and the verb of an unreal conclusion takes one of four special periphrastic forms, as follows:

Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse. { (active, contrary to present fact)

Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēdidissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse. { (active, contrary to past fact)

Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēderēs, fore ut dēciperērīs. { (passive, contrary to present fact)

Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperērīs { (passive, contrary to past fact)

b. Similarly in substantive clauses, as follows:

Nōn dubitum est quīn, sī id crēderēs, errārēs.
Nōn dubitum erat quīn, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrus fuerīs.

c. In poetry the present subjunctive is often used in both clauses of an unreal conditional sentence.

d. All conceivable combinations of types of mixed conditions and conclusions may be used; as the conclusion may have the form of a wish, command, statement of obligation, necessity, etc. These mixed forms are especially common with verbs which convey a future idea, as **dēbeō,** *ought;* **possum,** *be able, can;* **studeō,** *desire;* **volō,** *will, wish,* as **sī Pompēius prīvātus esset, tamen is mittendus erat,** *if Pompey were a private citizen, nevertheless he ought to be sent;* **vincite sī vultis,** *have your way if you will.*

383. **Ut sī, ac sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut,** or **velut sī,** and the subjunctive are used in a clause of comparison, as **tantus metus patrēs cēpit, velut sī jam ad portās hostis esset,** *a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at the gates.*

a. The subjunctive verb in such a clause follows the rule of sequence of tenses.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

384. A Concessive Clause may be introduced by **etsī, etiamsī,** or **tametsī,** with the indicative or subjunctive; by **quamquam,** with the indicative only; by **quamvīs,** with the subjunctive only.

RELATIVE CLAUSES

385. The Relative Clause as such, that is, a clause used as an adjective to modify a noun, regularly has its verb in the indicative, as **amō virum quī fortis est,** *I like a man who is brave, I like a brave man.*

386. An indefinite or general relative clause usually has its verb in the indicative; so explanatory **quī,** when equivalent to **quod, as errāverim fortasse, quī mē aliquid putāvī,** *I may have erred in thinking myself to be something.*

387. A relative clause that depends on an infinitive or a subjunctive, and forms an integral part of the thought, has its verb in the subjunctive by attraction, as **pigrī est ingeniī contentum esse iīs quae sint ab aliīs inventa,** *it is the mark of a lazy mind to be content with what has been found out by others.*

388. A relative clause has its verb in the subjunctive when **quī** is equivalent to **ut is** in an expression of purpose, as **ēripiunt aliīs quod aliīs dent,** *they snatch from some to give to others.* This is called the relative clause of purpose.

389. A relative clause has its verb in the subjunctive when **quī** is equivalent to **ut is** in a clause of description or characteristic; so after an indefinite antecedent, after **dignus, indignus, idōneus, aptus,** etc., as **multī sunt quī ēripiant,** *there are many to snatch away;* **sunt (eī) quī dīcant,** *there are those who say (some say);* **dignus est quī cōnsul fīat,** *he is worthy of being made consul.* This is called the subjunctive of characteristic.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

390. Indirect discourse (indirect statement), as opposed to direct discourse, gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words.

a. Indirect discourse depends on some verb of saying, showing, believing, perceiving, or thinking, expressed or implied.

b. In indirect discourse a principal statement has its verb in the infinitive, as **dīcit eōs vēnisse,** *he says that they have come;* **dīcit eōs venīre,** *he says that they are coming;* a question or a command has its verb in the subjunctive, as **quaerit quid velint,** *he asks what they want;* **quaesīvit quid vellent,** *he asked what they wanted;* **dīcit hominibus ut veniant,** *he tells the men to come;* **dīxit hominibus ut fugerent,** *he told the men to flee.*

c. A subordinate clause in indirect discourse has its verb in the subjunctive. See 355.

VERSIFICATION

The Dactylic Hexameter

391. One of the most common meters of Latin poetry is the **dactylic hexameter.** It was commonly employed by the Greeks and Romans in epic (narrative) poetry, such as the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* of Homer, the *Aeneid* of Vergil, and the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid. It is occasionally used in English, as in Longfellow's *Evangeline.* Some of the most beautiful Latin hexameters ever written are those of Vergil and Ovid.

392. There are six feet in a hexameter (Gr. **hex,** *six;* **metron,** *measure*) verse or line. The first five feet are either dactyls (Gr. **dactylos,** *finger*), i.e., one long syllable followed by two shorts (– ⏑⏑), or spondees, i.e., two longs (– –). The sixth foot is always treated as a spondee (– –).

393. The final syllable of a hexameter verse may be either long or short (**syllaba anceps**); but for practical purposes in scansion it may be considered long and thus marked.

394. The Metrical Scheme of a verse is thus:

– ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – ⏑

i.e., the first syllable of each foot must be long. It is also given slightly more stress than the other half of the foot. This stress is called the metrical accent.

a. A short syllable is often lengthened under the metrical accent or before a pause.

395. The fifth foot of the hexameter is almost always a dactyl. When a spondee is used in this place, it gives the verse a slower movement than usual. Such a verse is then called spondaic.

396. For metrical purposes each syllable of a Latin verse is considered either long or short, a long syllable occupying approximately twice as much time as a short (14). For this reason a spondaic foot (– –) is considered the metrical equivalent of a dactylic foot. (– ⏑⏑).

397. Observe that only long vowels are marked in the Latin words in this book. For the general rules on the length of syllables, see 14–24.

398. Elision. Whenever a word ends with a vowel, diphthong, or **m,** and the following words begin with a vowel or **h,** the first vowel or diphthong is regularly elided. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a light and hurried half-pronunciation, somewhat similar to grace notes in music.

399. Hiatus. Occasionally a word ending in a vowel, diphthong, or **m** is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or **h** and elision does not take place. This is called hiatus.

400. Semi-hiatus. Sometimes when a word ends in a long vowel or a diphthong and the next word begins with a vowel or **h**, the long final vowel or diphthong is shortened. This is called semi-hiatus.

401. The vowels **i** and **u** are sometimes used as consonants (**j**, **v**), as **abiete** (pronounce **abjete**), **genua** (pronounce **genva**).

402. Hypermeter. Sometimes the final syllable at the end of a verse is elided before a vowel at the beginning of the following verse. This is called synapheia, and the verse whose final syllable is elided is called a hypermeter or a hypermetric verse.

403. Synizesis. Two successive vowels which do not ordinarily form a diphthong are sometimes pronounced as one syllable for the sake of the meter. This sort of contraction of two syllables into one within a word is called synizesis.

Scansion

404. Observe the scansion of the following passage:

Arma virumque canō, Trojae quī prīmus ab ōrīs
´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ – | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

Ītaliam fātō profugus Lāvīnaque vēnit
´ ⏑ | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

lītora, multum ille et terrīs jactātus et altō
´ ⏑ | ´ ——— | ´ – | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

vī superum saevae memorem Jūnōnis ob īram,
´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ — | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem
´ ⏑ ⏑ | — | ´ – | ´ – | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

īnferretque deōs Latiō; genus unde Latīnum
´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ ⏑ | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ ⏑ | ´ –

Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.
´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ – | ´ – | ´ ⏑ | ´ –

In marking the scansion the sign (–) is used below the line to indicate a long *syllable* and the sign (⏑) for a short *syllable*. The feet are separated from each other by the perpendicular line (|), the metrical accent is indicated by a (´) over the first syllable of each foot, and elision is indicated by a (‿) connecting the elided vowel with the vowel following.

Hints on the Metrical Reading of Latin Poetry

405. In reading Latin poetry orally, the words should be kept distinct and no break made between the separate feet, unless there is a pause in sense.

406. Careful attention should be paid to the meaning of the passage, and the various pauses in sense should be indicated by the voice. Of course the voice should not be allowed to drop at the end of a verse unless there is a distinct pause in sense.

407. Remember that the rhythm of Latin verse is based primarily upon the regular succession of long and short syllables, that of English primarily on the succession of accented and unaccented syllables.

408. To obtain facility in reading Latin verse, a considerable amount of it should be memorized, special attention being paid to the quantity, i.e., approximately twice as much time should be given to each long syllable as to a short one.

409. Caesúra.[1] Whenever a word ends within a foot the break is called caesura. If this coincides with a pause in the verse, it is called the principal caesura, or sometimes simply the caesura of the verse.

410. A single verse may have more than one caesura, each marked by a pause in sense. The principal caesuras are: (1) After the first long syllable of the third foot; (2) After the first long syllable of the fourth foot.

FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC

411. Alliterátion is the repetition of the same letter or sound, as the sound of **v** in **tum vīctū revocant vīrīs,** *then they recall their strength with food.*

412. Anacolóuthon or want of sequence occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

413. Anáphora is the repetition of a word or words at the beginning of successive clauses, as **mīrantur dōna Aenēae, mīrantur Iūlum,** *they marvel at the gifts of Aeneas, they marvel at Iulus.*

414. Anástrophe is an inversion of the usual order of words, as **tē propter,** *on account of you.*

415. Antíthesis is an opposition or contrast of words or ideas, as **speciē blanda, reāpse repudianda,** *charming in appearance, in reality to be rejected.*

416. Aposiopésis is a breaking off before the close of the sentence, as **quōs ego — sed mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs,** *whom I — but it is better to calm the angry waves.*

[1] In the teaching of scansion to beginners, it is preferable to omit all reference to caesura for at least the first two or three years of reading Latin poetry. These paragraphs on caesura are given for the benefit of teachers who may wish their pupils to know something about it.

417. Apóstrophe is a sudden break from the previous method of discourse and an addressing, in the second person, of some person or object, absent or present, as **Ō patria, Ō dīvum domus,** *O fatherland, O home of the gods!* (In this case the speaker is in Carthage, many miles from his native land, and is making an apostrophe to Troy which had been destroyed by the Greeks.)

418. Asýndeton is the omission of conjunctions, as **ancora dē prōrā jacitur; stant lītore puppēs,** *the anchor is cast from the prow; the sterns rest on the beach.*

419. Brachýlogy (breviloquéntia) is the failure to repeat an element which is to be supplied in a more or less modified form, as **tam fēlīx essēs quam formōsissima (es) vellem,** *would that you were as fortunate as (you are) fair.*

420. Chiásmus is the arrangement of corresponding pairs of words in opposite order, as **Īlionēa petit dextrā laevāque Serestum,** *he sought Ilioneus with his right (hand) and with his left Serestus,* where **Īlionēa** and **Serestum** form one pair and **dextrā laevāque** form the other pair.

421. Ellípsis is the omission of one or more words which are obviously understood but must be supplied to make the expression grammatically complete, as **Aeolus haec contrā,** *Aeolus thus (spoke) in reply.* The words most commonly omitted are **agō, dīcō, faciō, loquor,** and **sum.**

422. Enállage is a shift from one form to another, as **vōs** (pl.), **Ō Calliopē** (sg.), **precor,** *I entreat you, O Calliope.*

423. Eúphemism is the substitution of an agreeable or nonoffensive word or expression for one that is harsh, indelicate, or otherwise unpleasant, as **sī quid eī acciderit,** *if anything should happen to him* (i.e., if he should die).

424. Eúphony is the effect produced by words or sounds so combined and uttered as to please the ear.

425. Hendíadys is the expression of an idea by means of two nouns connected by a conjunction instead of by a noun and a limiting adjective, or by one noun limited by another, as **vī et armīs,** *by force of arms;* **vulgus et multitūdō,** *the common herd.*

426. Hypállage is an interchange in the relations of words, as **dare classibus Austrōs,** *to give the winds to the fleet* (instead of *to give the fleet to the winds*).

427. Hyperbaton or **Trajection** is the violent displacement of words, as **per omnīs tē deōs ōrō,** *by all the gods I beg you.*

428. Hyperbole is rhetorical exaggeration, as **praeruptus aquae mōns,** *a sheer mountain of water,* referring to a great wave of the sea.

429. Hysteron Proteron is a reversal of the natural order, as **moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus,** *let us die and rush into the midst of arms.*

430. Irony is a sort of humor, ridicule, or light sarcasm which states an apparent fact with the manifest intention of expressing its opposite, as **scīlicet is superīs labor est, ea cūra quiētōs sollicitat,** *of course this is work for the gods, this care vexes them in their serenity!*

431. Litotes or **Understatement** is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the negative. **Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī,** *soiled with not unbecoming* (i.e., *glorious*) *dust.*

432. Metaphor is an implied comparison, as **illa, Trojae et patriae commūnis Erīnys,** *she* (*Helen*), *the common curse of Troy and of her n... land.*

433. Metonymy is the substitution of one word for another which it suggests, as **Cerēs,** *goddess of grain,* for *grain.*

434. Onomatopoeia is the use of words of which the sound suggests the sense, as **magnō cum murmure montis,** *with a mighty rumbling of the mountain.*

435. Oxymoron is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other, as **cum tacent clāmant,** *when they are silent they cry out.*

436. Paraleipsis or **Preterition** is an apparent omission by which a speaker artfully pretends to pass by what he really emphasizes, as **nōn dīcō tē pecūniās accēpisse; rapīnās tuās omnīs omittō,** *I do not say that you accepted sums of money; I omit all your acts of rapine;* **praetereō quod nōn mānsit,** *I pass over the fact that he did not remain.*

437. Personification is an attribution of the element of personality to an impersonal thing, as **aspīrat fortūna labōrī,** *fortune favors our struggle;* **fuge crūdēlīs terrās, fuge lītus avārum,** *flee the cruel lands, flee the greedy shore.*

438. Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words, as **sīc ōre locūta est,** *thus she spoke with her mouth.*

439. Polysyndeton is the use of unnecessary conjunctions, as **ūnā Eurusque Notusque ruunt crēberque procellīs Āfricus,** *both the East wind and the South wind and the Southwester rush forth together.*

440. **Prolépsis** or **Anticipation** is the use of a word, usually a modifier, before it is logically appropriate, as **summersās obrue puppīs,** *overwhelm the sunken ships,* i.e., *sink and overwhelm the ships.*

441. **Símile** is a figure of speech which likens or asserts an explicit comparison between two different things in one or more of their aspects, as **pār levibus ventīs volucrīque simillima somnō,** *like unto the light winds and most resembling winged sleep;* **velutī cum coörta est sēditiō,** *just as when a riot has arisen.*

442. **Sýnchysis** is an interlocked order of words, as **saevae memorem Jūnōnis īram,** *fell Juno's unforgetting hate.*

443. **Synécdoche** is the use of a part for the whole, or the reverse, as **tēctum,** *roof,* for **domus,** *house;* **puppis,** *stern,* for **nāvis,** *ship;* **mūcrō,** *point,* for **gladius,** *sword.*

444. **Sýnesis** is a construction according to sense and not according to grammatical form, as **pars veniunt,** *part come.*

445. **Tmésis** is the separation of the parts of a compound word by one or more intervening words, as **quae mē cumque vocant terrae** (for **quaecumque terrae mē vocant**), *whatever the lands that call me.*

446. **A Transferred Epithet** is an epithet which has been transferred from the word to which it strictly belongs to another word connected with it in thought, as **vēlivolum mare,** *the sail-flying sea,* where *sail-flying* is properly applied to ships which sail the sea rather than to the sea itself.

447. **Zeugma** is the junction of two words with a modifying or governing word which strictly applies to only one of them, as **Danaōs et laxat claustra,** *he looses the barriers and (sets free) the Greeks.*

INDEX TO THE GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

(The references are to sections.)

ă, ending of acc. sing. of Greek nouns, 68; nom., acc. and voc. pl. ending of neuters, 33, *c*

ā, prepositions ending in, 312

ā or **ab** with abl., 320, 339, 333

Ability, verbs of with inf., 259

Ablative, defined, 30; in **ābus**, 34, *c;* in **ī**, 55, *d*, 56, *b*, 77, 81, 82, *a;* prepositions with, 339; adv. forms of, 310; of supine, 271; pl. like the dat., 33, *d;* **quīs** and **quī** as abl. and dat., 109, *c*, *d*

Ablative, Syntax: abs., 343; accompaniment, 321; accordance, 326; as adv., 95, 310, 328, *a;* agent, 333; with adjectives (**dignus, aliēnus**, etc.), 337, 340, *a;* cause, 332, gerund(ive), 269; with comparatives, 327; degree of difference, 335; with dep. verbs (**ūtor**, etc.), 342; with **dignor**, 337, *a;* with **dōnō**, 296; manner, 328; material, 324; means, 331; with gerund(ive), 269; measurement, 334; with **opus est** and **ūsus est**, 341; origin, 323; place where, 319; place whence, 320; with prepositions, 339; price, 336; respect, 325; route, 338; separation, 340; time, 322

Abounding, words of with gen., 287

Absolute, abl. abs., 343

absum, conj., 123

ābus, dat. and abl. ending, 34, *c*

Accent, 25–27; metrical, 394; of nouns in **ius, ium**, 37, *a*, *b*

Accompaniment, abl. of with **cum**, 321

Accomplishing, verbs of, 365

Accordance, abl. of, 326

Accusative, defined, 30; in neuters like nom., 33, *c;* sing. in **a**, 68; sing. in **im**, 56, *a;* pl. in **īs**, 56, *d;* 83, *b;* of supine, 270; names of towns, **domus** and **rūs**, 315, *a*

Accusative, Syntax: adv., 309–311, 95, *b;* cognate, 313; direct obj., 307; exclamation, 318; extent, 314; Greek, 309–311; subj. of inf., 317; with middle voice, 309; with prepositions, 312; respect, 311; of gerund(ive) with **ad**, 268; two accusatives: verbs of asking, making, etc., 316; remembering and forgetting, 288, *a;* compound verbs, 308

Accusing and acquitting, gen. with verbs of, 291

ācer, decl., 77; compar., 89

ac sī, in clauses of compar., 383

Action, see tenses, moods, etc.

Active voice, 115, *a;* changed to pass., 279; act. periphrastic, 199, *a*

ad, with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308; with gerund(ive), 268

adde quod, with indic., 356

Adjectives, definition, 70; **a** and **o** stems, 71; **i** stems, 76; consonant stems, 80–82; three terminations, 77; compar., 83–92; decl. of compar., 91; num. adjectives, 98–100; pronom. adjectives, 73, 102, *a*, 113, *a*, 114; poss. adjectives, 103, *a*, 104, *a*, 106, *a*

Adjectives, Syntax: agreement, 237–239; as adverbs, 95, 250, 310; with inf., 265; with gen., 287; with dat., 304; with abl., 337; pred., 239; double compar., 245

Advantage, dat. of, 301

Adverbial accusative, 310; adv. abl., 328

Adverbs, 93–97; formation, 95; compar., 96–97; adjectives used adverbially, 250, 310, 328, *a;* use, 346; double compar., 245; num. adverbs, 101

Adversative clauses, 379, 384

adversum, with acc., 312
ae, diphthong, 5
aeger, decl. like **pulcher**, 71
Aenēās, decl., 66
āēr, decl., 68
aethēr, decl. like **āēr**, 68
Affecting, acc. of, 307
Affirmative, expressed by two negatives, 431; **nōnne** for affirmative answer, 347, *b*
Agent, dat. of, 302; abl. of, 333
ager, decl. like masc. of **pulcher**, 71
Agreement, nouns: appos., 241; pred., 240, 278, 317, *a;* adjectives: 237–238; pred., 239; poss., 249; pronouns: rel., 242; dem., 240, *a;* verbs: 236; according to sense, 236, *a*, 444
āī, ending of gen. sing., 34, *b*
ajŏ, pronounced **aj-jŏ**, 6, *b*
al, decl. of nouns in, 56
aliēnus, for gen. of **alius**, 74, *a;* abl. with 340, *a*
aliquis (aliquī), decl., 113
alius, decl., 74
Alliteration, 411
Alphabet, 1–6
alter, decl., 74; **alterīus** in gen. for **alīus**, 74, *a;* ordinal num., 98
alterīus for **alīus**, 73, *a*
Although, how expressed, 379, 384
an, in double questions, 348
Anacolouthon, 412
Anaphora, 413
Anastrophe, 414
anceps, syllaba, 393
Anchīsēs, decl., 66
Androgeōs, decl., 67
Andromachē, decl. like **Pēnelopē**, 66
animal, decl., 56
Answer to questions, 347
ante, prep. with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308
Antecedent, agreement of rel. pron. with, 242; attracted to case of rel., 242, *a;* undefined in char. clauses, 389
Antepenult, 25, *a*
antequam, with indic., 376; with subj., 376, *a*
Anticipation, clauses of, 440; attraction of antecedent to case of rel., 242, *a*
Antithesis, 415
apis, gen. pl. in **ium**, 56, *c*
Apodosis, defined, 380
Aposiopesis, 416
Apostrophe, 417
Appointing, verbs of with two accusatives, 316, *a*
Apposition, 241; pronouns and poss. adjectives, 249; expressed by gen., 281; **quod** and **ut** clauses with nouns and pronouns, 356, 367; inf. with nouns, 264
aptus, with dat. of gerund(ive), 267; with rel. clause of char., 389
apud, prep. with acc., 312
āre, inf. ending, 132
ās, acc. pl. of Greek nouns in, 65, *a*
Asking, verbs of with two accusatives, 316; questions, 347–349
Asseverations, with fut. indic., 351, 3, *b;* subj., 254
Asyndeton, 418
At, translated by prep. with abl., 319; by loc., 345 .
āter, decl. like **pulcher**, 71
Athōs, decl. like **Androgeōs**, 67
Atlās, decl., 68
atque, simul atque, 368; **ac sī**, 383
Attendant circumstance, abl. of, 329
Attraction, antecedent to case of rel., 242, *a;* dem. to gender of pred., 240, *a;* of verb in rel. clauses to subjunctive, 387
au, diphthong, 5
audeō, semi-deponent, 205
audiŏ, conj., 172; with dat., 297
avis, decl., 65, *b*
āx, gen. with verbal adjectives in, 287

b, stems in, 50; becomes **p** before **s** and **t**, 128, 6
Becoming, verbs of, constr. with, 278
Believing, verbs of, with dat., 297; pers. constr. with pass., 279
bene, compar., 97
Beseeching, verbs of, with **ut (ne)**, 360
bis, num. adv., 101
bonus, compar., 92; decl., 71
Brachylogy, 419
Buying, abl. with verbs of, 336

c, stems ending in, 51; represents changed **g** before **t**, 128, 6
Caere, decl., 56, *b*

Caesura, 409–410
canālis, decl., 56, *b*
canis, decl., 56, *c*
capiō, conj., 163–171
caput, decl., 52
Cardinal numerals, 98–99
careō, abl. with, 340
Cases, 30; endings, 32; of pred. substantive, 240, 278; for uses see nom., gen., etc.
cāsus, decl., 59
Cause, abl. of, 332; gerund(ive), 269; expressed by abl. abs., 343, *a;* clauses with quod, quia, quoniam, quandō, 357–358; cum with subj., 379; rel. clause, 386
Causing, verbs of, with perf. part., 275; with gerundive, 268, *a*
Caution, constr. with verbs of, 363
cavē, in prohibitions, 256
-ce, enclitic, 107, 3, *b*, 4, *a*
Ceasing, complementary inf. with verbs of, 259
cētera, partitive use, 246
Characteristic, rel. clause of, 389; abl. of, 330; gen. of, 285
Chiasmus, 420
Choosing, two accusatives with verbs of, 316, *a*
circum, prep. with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308
Circumstances, part., 273; abl. abs., 343; cum descriptive, 378; abl., 329
cis, prep. with acc., 312
Cities and islands, names of, fem., 38, *a;* in acc., 315, *a;* abl., 320, *a;* loc., 345
Clauses, see substantive, temporal, conditional, etc.
Cognate accusative, 313
Collective nouns, with pl. verbs, 236, *a*
comes, decl., 52
Command, imp., 255; subj., 254; fut. indic., 351, 3, *a;* in ind. disc., 390, *b*
Commanding, verbs of, with dat., 297; with inf., 360, *a, b;* with subj., 360
Common syllables, 17
Comparative, 84; decl., 91; of adverbs, 96; double compar., 245; conjunctions, 383
Comparison, of adjectives, 83; of adverbs, 96; disproportion, 244; abl. of, 327; degree of difference, 335; clauses of with ut sī, quasi, etc., 383; metaphor, 432; simile, 441
Complement, subj., 278–279; obj., 316, *a*, 317, *a;* agreement with subj., 238–240
Complementary infinitive, 259
Complex sentences, see clauses
Compounds, of sum, 123; of faciō and fiō, 229; dat. with, 298
Compound verbs, with dat., 298; with dat. and acc., 298, *a;* with acc., 308; with two accusatives, 308, *a*
con-, in composition with dat., 298; in composition with acc., 308
Conative, pres., 351, 1, *c;* impf., 351, 2, *a*
Concessive clauses, with cum, 379; with etsī, quamquam, quamvīs, etc., 384; concessive subj., 254; see participles and abl. abs.
Conclusion, see conditions
Condemning and convicting, gen. with verbs of, 291
Condition, of an object, expressed by part., 273
Conditions, simple, 380; more vivid, 380; ideal (less vivid), 381; contrary to fact (unreal), 382, *c;* mixed, 382, *d;* in ind. disc., 381, *a*, 382, *a;* in substantive clauses, 382, *c;* abl. abs., 343, *a*
Conjugation, 116, 126–128; see verbs and first, second, etc.
Conjunctions, see ut, cum, etc.; omission of, 418; asyndeton, 418; polysyndeton, 349; compar. conjunctions, 383
cōnor, conj., 183; inf. with, 259
cōnscius, with gen., 287
Consecutive clauses, 364–367
Consonantal, i and u, 6, *a, b, c;* 401
Consonants, 6–8; quantity, 15, 17
cōnstrūctiō ad sēnsum, 236, *a*, 444; reflex. refers to logical subj., 248, *a*
Construction, see cases, moods, etc.
cōnsul, decl., 41, *a*
contentus, abl. with, 337
Continued action, pres., 351, 1; impf., 351, 2; hist. inf., 257; sequence of tenses, 353

Continuing, verbs of, with complementary inf., 259
Contracted perfects, 204
Contracted verb forms, 204; contracted vowels long, 24
Contracting, undertaking, verbs of, with gerund(ive), 268, *a*
Contradiction, oxymoron, 435
Contrary to fact conditions, 382
cōram, with abl., 339
cornū, decl., 59
corpus, decl., 47
Crasis, 204, vowels resulting from long, 24
cujus, see **quī**; pronunciation, 6, *b*
cum (preposition), 339; enclitic, 321, *a;* abl. of accompaniment, 321
cum clauses, temporal, 377; descriptive, 378; causal, 379; concessive, 379; **cum** (*whenever*), 370, 377
cum prīmum, 368
cupidus, with gen., 287

d, stems ending in, 52; before **s**, 128, 6, 124
Dactyl, 392; fifth foot usually a dactyl, 395
Date, **cum** with indic., 377
Dative, defined, 30; sing. in **āī** (first decl.), 34, *b;* sing. in **ī** (second decl.), 74; pl. in **īs** for **iīs** (**deus**), 37, *f;* pl. in **ubus** (fourth decl.), 58, *c*
Dative, Syntax: with adjectives, 304, 267; agent, 302; compounds, 298; direction, 306; double dat., 303, *a;* ethical, 300; ind. obj., 295; poss., 299; purpose, 303; reference, 301, 303, *a;* separation, 305; with special verbs, 297
dē, with abl., 329; place whence, 320; origin, 323; accordance, 326
dea, decl., 34, *c*
dēbeō, with complementary inf., 259; indic. for obligation, 251; in conditions, 382, *d*
Declensions, 31–33; first, 34–35; second, 36–38; third, 39–57; fourth, 58–61; fifth, 62–64; of Greek nouns, 65–69; of adjectives, 71–82, 91; of numerals, 99; of pronouns, 103–114
Defective verbs, 205
Degree of difference, abl. of, 335
Deliberative questions (subjunctive), 348
Dēlos, decl., 67
Demonstrative pronouns, decl., 107; as subj. attracted to gender of pred., 240, *a;* as adjectives, 102, *a*
Deponent verbs, 182; first conj., 163–190; second, third, fourth conj., 191–198; participles of, 182; abl. with, 342; semi-deponents, 205
Depriving, verbs of, with abl., 340; with dat., 305
Descriptive genitive, 285; abl., 330; impf., 351, *a, b;* **cum** descriptive, 378
Desire, expressions of with gen., 287; clauses of, 360; in ind. disc., 248, *b;* verbs of with inf., 260; expressed by fut. part., 274; volitive subj., 253
dēsum, conj., 123; dat. with, 301
deum = **deōrum**, 37, *d, f*
deus, decl., 37, *f*
dexter, decl. like **miser**, 71
dīcō, ind. disc., 263, 390; imp. **dīc**, 202
diēs, decl., 63; gender, 64
dignor, with abl., 337, *a*
dignus, with abl., 337; with rel. clause, 389
Diphthongs, 5; always long, 24
Direct, obj., 307; question, 347; reflex., 106, 248
Direction, dat. of, 306
Disproportion, **quam** (**prō**, **ut**), **quī**, 244
Distance, acc., 314
Distributive, numerals, 100; pronouns, see **quisque** and **uterque**
diū, compar., 97
domus, abl. of, 320, *a;* loc., 345; acc., 315, *a;* decl., 60; gender, 61, *a*
dōnec, with indic., 371; with subj., 374
dōnō, with dat. or abl., 269
Double consonants, 7; **s** and **z**, 8; double questions, 348; double accusatives, 308, 316; double datives, 303, *a;* double comparatives, 245
Doubting, verbs of; potential subj., 252; deliberative question, 348; subst. clause with **quīn**, 366; *cf.* 382, *b*
dūc, imperative, 202

dum, 371; with indic., 371–373; with subj., 374; in proviso clauses, 375
duo, decl., 99
Duration, acc., 314; abl., 322
Duty, expressed by indic., 251; by periphrastic, 199, *b*, 382, *d*
dux, decl., 51

ē, prep.; see **ex**; adv. ending, 95, *a*
ecquis, 112
Editorial "we," 243, *a*
Effecting, acc. of, 307; verbs of: with perf. part., 275; with result clause, 365
egeō, abl. with, 340
ego, decl., 103; omission, 247; for emphasis and contrast, 247
ei, diphthong, 5
Elision, 398, 402
Ellipsis, 421
Emotion, verbs of with gen., 289; with inf., 260; with **quod** and indic. or subj., 358; see exclamation
Emphasis, see figures of speech, 106, *b*, *c*, and 247
Enallage, 422
Enclitics, 27; **-que**, 27; **-met**, 106, *b*; **-pte**, 106, *c*; **-ce**, 107, 3, *b*, 4, *a*; **-nam**, 112; **-cum**, 321, *a*; **-ve**, 27; **-ne**, 27, 347, *a*
Endings (regular), of nouns, 32; of infinitives and participles, 117, 3; see declensions and conjugations
Endings (irregular), gen. sing. in **āī**, 34, *b*; gen., dat. sing. **ē** for **eī** in fifth decl., 63; gen. pl. **um**, 34, *b*, 37, *d*; acc. pl. **īs**, 56, *d*, 83, *b*; gen. sing. **īus**, 74; gen. pl. **ium**, 77, 81, 3, 55, *c*; abl. sing. **ī**, 55, *d*, 77, 81, 1; nom. and acc. pl. **ia**, 55, *d*, 81, 2; dat., abl. pl. **ābus**, 34, *c*; acc. **im**, 56, *a*; gen. pl. **ōn**, 65, *a*; acc. sing. **in**, 68; **āstī**, **ārunt**, **ēre**, etc., 204
English pronunciation of Latin words, 28
Envy, verbs of with dat., 297
eō, see **is**, **ea**, **id**
eō, conj., 207–213; compounds of, 213, *a*; **īrī** in fut. pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*
er, nom. ending, 37, 74, 77
ēre for **ērunt**, 204, 4; **ere** for **eris**, 204, 4
esse, see **sum**
Esteeming, verbs of, double acc., 316; abl. with **dignor**, 337, *a*
Ethical dative, 300
etsī, **etiamsī**, in concessive clauses, 384
eu, diphthong, 5
Euphemism, 423
Euphony, 424; in verb stems, 128, 6
ex (**ē**), prep. with abl., 339; place whence, 320; origin, 323; accordance, 326; material, 324
Exchanging, verbs of with abl., 336
Exclamations, subj., 253; imp., 255–256; inf., 262; acc., 318; voc., 344; fut. ind. in asseverations, 351, 3, *b*; apostrophe, 417
Exhortations, subj., 254; imp., 255; **ut** clause, 360
Extent of space and time, acc., 314

fac, imp. of **faciō**, 202
facilis, decl. like **omnis**, 77; compar., 89, *e*
faciō, conj. like **capiō**, 163; imp. **fac**, 202; two accusatives, 316, *a*; **faciō ut (nē)**, 365; pass. of, 227; compounds of, 229
fāgus, gender, 38, *a*
fateor, conj., 191–198
Favor, verbs of with dat., 297
Fearing, clauses with **nē** or **ut**, 363
Feeling, verbs of with gen., 289–290; with **quod** and indic. or subj., 358
Feet, in verse, 392; fifth foot, 395
fel, decl., 41, *b*
fēlīx, decl., 82; compar., 87
Feminine, first decl. (mostly), 35; second decl.: cities, islands, trees, and a few others, 38, *a*; third decl., nouns in **dō**, **gō**, **iō**, 44; i stems in **ēs**, 57; some i stems in **is**, 57; all other i stems, 57; mutes in **s**, 54; fourth decl., a few in **us**, 61, *a*; fifth decl., all but **diēs** and **meridiēs**, 64
fer, imp. of **ferō**, 202
ferō, conj., 214–225; imp., 202
fīdō, semi-deponent, 205; with dat., 297
Fifth declension, 62–64
Figures of Speech, 411–447
fīlia, decl., 34, *c*
fīlius, decl., 37, *a*, *b*

Final clauses, 359–360
fiō, conj., 228; compounds, 229; pass. of **faciō**, 227
First conjugation, 129–141; deponents, 183–190
First declension, 34–35
Fitness, adjectives of, with dat., 304; of gerund(ive), 267
fore (futūrus esse), 121; **fore ut** in ind. disc., 263, *a; cf.* 382, *a*
Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 288; acc., 288, *a;* complementary inf., 259
Forms, 29–275; see nouns, verbs, etc.
Fourth conjugation, 172–181; deponents, 191–198
Fourth declension, 58–61
Freedom, adjectives and verbs with abl., 340; adjectives and verbs with gen., 287
frētus, with abl., 337
frūgī, compar., 92
fruor, with abl., 342
fuī, see **sum**
Fullness, expressions of, with gen., 287; with abl., 337
fungor, with abl., 342
Future perfect tense, 351, 6; in conditions, 380; in temporal clauses, 370; like perf. subj., 128, 5
Future tense, 251, 3; specific and universal, 351, 3; as imperative, 351, 3, *a;* asseverative, 351, 3, *b;* part. expressing purpose, 274; conditions, 380–381; formation of pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b;* expressed by **fore ut**, 263, *a;* use of periphrastic, 199, *a;* in subj., 354

g, stems in, 51; changes to **c** before **t**, 128, 6
Gender, rules of, 35, 38, 42, 48, 54, 57, 61, 64; attraction of pronouns, 240, *a;* and see masculine, feminine and neuter; of pred. complement, 239, *b*
Genitive, defined, 30; **āī** for **ae**, 34, *b;* **um** for **ōrum**, 37, *d;* **um** and **ium**, 53, 55, *c*, 56, *c*, 77, 81, 3; **ē** for **eī**, 63; **īus**, 73–74; poss. adj. as gen., 249; two forms for pers. pronouns, 247, *a*
Genitive, Syntax: material, 280; appos., 261; explanatory, 282; poss., 283; subj., 284; obj., 284; quality, 285; part., 286; pred., 285, *a;* with adjectives, 287; with verbs, 287–291; value, 292; with **interest** and **rēfert**, 293; respect, 294; genitive of gerund(ive), 266
genius, decl., 37, *b*
genū, decl., 59
genus, decl., 47
Gerund(ive), 117, 3, 203; for formation see verbs, conj. of, uses of, 266–269; with dat. of agent, 302; in **undus**, 203; see periphrastic; of dep. verbs, 182
Giving, verbs of, with gerundive, 268, *a*
gracilis, decl., 77; compar., 89, *a*
Greek accusative, 309, 311
Greek nouns, decl., 65–69
Guilt, expressions of, with gen., 287–291

h, never makes position, 15; vowels short before, 20; elision before, 398; hiatus before, 399
habeō, conjug., 142–150
Having, verbs of with gerundive, 268, *a;* verbs of with perf. part., 275
Helping, verbs of with dat., 297
Hendiadys, 425
hērōs, decl., 68
Hesitation, clauses of, 363, 366
Hexameter, 391–397
Hiatus, 399; semi-hiatus, 400
hic, decl., 107; pronounced **hicc**, 107, 3, *c*
Himself, **ipse**, 108; **sē**, 106, 248
Hindering, clauses with **nē, quīn** or **quōminus**, 361–362
Historical inf., 257; with subj. nom., 277; pres., 351, 1, *a;* with secondary sequence, 353, *b*, 1 (*a*)
homō, decl., 43
Hortatory subjunctive, 254
humus, loc. of, 345; gender, 38, *a*
Hypallage, 426
Hyperbaton, 427
Hyperbole, 428
Hypermeter, 402
Hysteron Proteron, 429

i, vowel, 4; semi-vowel (consonantal), 6, *a*, 401; after **j**, 6, *b*, *c;* **i** stems, 55, 76; changed to **e** in **iō** verbs,

161, 206, 1; i and u in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
i, imperative of eō, 209; voc. ending, 37, *b;* abl. ending, 55, *d*, 77, 81, 1; loc. ending, 37, *c;* pres. pass. inf. ending, 117, 3; nom. pl. of **is, ea, id**, 107
ia, nom. and acc. pl. ending, 55, *d*, 81, 2
Ictus, in verse, 392, 394, 404
Ideal conditions, 361
īdem, decl., 107
idōneus, with dat. of purpose, 303; gerund, 267; with rel. clause, 389
īdūs, decl., 59; gender, 61, *a*
ignis, decl., 56, *b*
ii, or **ī** in gen., 37, *a;* **iī** for **eī**, 107; **iī** perfect of eō, 207; in compounds, 213, *a*
iīs, for **eīs**, 107
ille, decl., 107
im, acc. ending, 56, *a*
Imperative, 115, 4; for formation see under verbs, conjugation of; irregular imperatives, 202; pres. and fut. 255; neg. 256; fut. ind. as imp., 351, 3, *a;* in ind. disc., 390, *b*
Imperfect tense, 351, *a;* of **possum**, etc., for pluperf., 251, 382, *d;* conative, 351, 2, *a;* descriptive, 351, 2, *b;* in temp. clauses, 368, *a*, 371; in conditions, 380, 382, *d;* sequence of tenses, 353; formation of impf. subj., 128, 2
imperō, with dat., 297; with subst. vol. clause, 360
Impersonal verbs, forms of eō, 213, *b;* with gen., 290; impers. constructions, 258, 366
Implied indirect discourse, 357–358; *cf.* 248, *b*, 390.
in, acc. ending, 68
in, prep. with acc., 315; prep. with abl., 319; verbs compounded with, 298
Inclination, adjectives of, with dat., 304; expressions of, 251–254; adjectives of, for adverbs, 250
Indefinite antecedent, 389; pronouns, 113
Indicative, 115, 4; to denote possibility, 251, 382, *d;* in deliberative questions, 348, *a;* with **quod** in explanatory clauses, 356; in causal clauses, 357–358; in temporal clauses, 368–373, 377; present with **dum**, 372; simple (more vivid) conditions, 380; in unreal conditions, 382, *d;* in concessive clauses, 384
Indirect command, 390
Indirect discourse, 263, 390; subordinate clauses in, 355; conditions in, 382, *a;* implied, 357–358; *cf.* 248, *b;* commands in, 390, *b;* tense of inf. in, 263
Indirect object, 295
Indirect questions, 349; *cf.* 353, *a;* use of periphrastic in, 354
Infinitive, formation, 117, 2–3; of deponents, 182; contraction of perf., 204; see also conjugations
Infinitive, Syntax: with adjectives, 265; *cf.* 258; pred. nom. with, 317, *a;* complementary, 259; purpose, 261; exclamatory, 262; as subject, 258; hist., 257, 277; subj. acc., 317; in ind. disc., 263, 390, *b;* for **ut**-clause, 360, *a;* with **jubeō**, 360, *b;* with nouns, 264; as obj., 260
Inflection, 29–235; see declension, conjugation, etc.
Informal indirect discourse, 367, 358; *cf.* 248, *b*
Instrumental ablative, 531; of gerund(ive), 269
Intensive suffixes, 106, *b, c;* pronoun, 108; *cf.* 248
inter, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298
interest with gen. of person, 293; with abl. of poss. adj., 293, *a*
Interjections, 318, 344
Interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 111–112; sentences, 347
Intransitive verbs with dat., 297; with cognate acc., 313
iō, gender of nouns in, 44; verbs in, 162
ipse, decl., 108; for use *cf.* 248
īrī, in fut. pass. inf., 213, *b*
Irony, 430
Irregular verbs, conj., 206–235
īs, acc. pl. ending, 56, *d*
is, ea, id, decl., 107; as pers. pron. of third person, 105, *b*

Islands, names of, gender, 38, *a;* acc., 315, *a;* abl., 320, *a;* loc., 345
īsse, syncopated form, 204
iste, decl., 107, 4
Iterative imperfect, 351, 2
ium, gen. pl. ending, 55, *c*, 77, 81, 3; decl. of words in, 37, *b*
ius ending, declension of words in, 37, *b;* gen. sing. ending, 74; see also declension of pronouns

j, the letter, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*
jaciō, conj., 161, 227–229; compounds, 6, *c*, 229; pass. of, 227–229
jam, with pres. indic., 351, *b*
jubeō, with inf., 360, *b*
Jussive subjunctive, 254

Knowing, verbs of, see indirect discourse
Knowledge, adjectives of with gen., 287; adjectives of as adverbs, 250

l, nouns in, 56; stems in, 41, *b;* in common syllables, 17–18
lac, decl., 52, *a*
laetus, with abl., 337
Leaving, verbs of with gerundive, 268, *a*
Length, of vowels, 20–23; of syllables, 14–19, 396, 407
Less vivid, conditions, 381
Letters, of alphabet, 1–8
līber, noun, 36, *a*
lĭber, adjective, decl. like **miser**, 71; with abl. of separation, 340, *a*
Likeness, adjectives of with dat., 304
Liquids, in common syllables, 17; stems in, 41–46
Litotes, 431
Locative, defined, 30; first decl., 34, *a;* second decl., 37, *c;* of **domus**, 60; use, 345; loc. gen., 294
Logical, constructions, sing. coll. subj. with pl. verb, 236, *a*, 444; copula agrees with pred. noun, 236, *c;* pron. attracted to gender of pred., 240, *a;* reflex. referring to logical subj., 248, *a;* logical conditions, 280

m, final syllable in, 398
magis, compar., 97; in double comparisons, 245
magnus, compar. of, 92
Making, verbs of, two accusatives, 316, *a;* gerundive, 268, *a;* perfect part., 275
male, compar., 97
mālō, conj., 230; see comparison
malus, compar., 92
Manner, abl. of, 328; gerund(ive), 269; implied in part., 273
manus, decl., 59; gender, 61, *a*
mare, decl., 56
Masculine, first decl., referring to males, 35; second decl. in **us** or **r** (mostly), 38; third decl. stems in **l**, 42; nouns in **ō**, except **dō**, **gō**, and **iō**, 44; nouns in **is** (**eris**) and **ōs** (**ōris**), 48; some **i** stems in **is**, 57; nouns in **er** and **or**, 46; fourth decl. in **us** (mostly), 61; fifth decl. only **diēs** and **meridiēs**, 64
Material, expressed by gen., 280; by abl., 324
Means, abl. of, 331; with gerund(ive), 269
Measure, abl. of, 334
medius, used partitively, 246
mel, decl., 41
melior, see **bonus**
meminī, with gen., 288; with acc., 288, *a*
memor, with gen., 287
-men, suffix, 44, 2
-met, enclitic, 106, *b*
Metaphor, 432
Meter, 391–410
Metonymy, 433
Metrical scheme, of the hexameter, 394
meus, form, 103, *a;* as gen. of **ego**, 249
mī, voc. of **meus**, 103, *a;* short for **mihi**
Middle voice, 115, *a;* with obj. acc., 309, *a*
mihi, see **ego**
mīles, decl. like **comes**, 52
mīlle, numeral, 99
minus, compar., 97; in double comparisons, 245
miser, decl., 71
misereor, with gen., 289
miseret, with gen. and acc., 290
Modesty, pl. of, 243, *a;* subjunctive of, 252
modo, in proviso clauses, 375

Monosyllabic, nouns of third decl., 53
Mood, 115, 4: for forms see verbs; for uses see indic., subj., etc.
More vivid conditions, 380
moror, conj., 183–190
Motion, end of, with dat., 306; with acc., 315
mōvī, contracted forms of, 204, 3
multus, compar., 92
mūnus, decl. like genus, 47
Mute stems, decl., 49–54

n, stems in, 43
-nam, enclitic, 27, 112
Names of towns and islands, abl., 320, *a;* loc., 345; acc., 315, *a*
Naming, verbs of, with two accusatives, 316, *a*
nātus, with abl. of origin, 323
nāvis, decl., 56, *a*
-ne, enclitic, 27; in questions, 347, *a*
nē, in prohibitions, 253, 256, *a;* in purpose clauses, 359; with verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361; with verbs of fearing, 363; result, 365; omitted after cavē, 256
Nearness, adjectives of with dat., 304
Necessity, indic., 251, 382, *d;* pass. periphrastic, 199, *b;* 382, *d;* see command
Negative, answer expected, 347, *c;* double neg., 431; purpose clause, 359; clause of fearing, 363; result clause, 364; see prohibitions
nēmō, missing forms supplied by nūllus, 114; nēmō est quī, 364, *a*
nēquam, comparison of, 92
Neuter, adjectives with inf., 258; complement with subjects of different genders, 239, *b*
Neuter, pronom. adj., 114; decl., 74
Neuter, second decl. in um and a few in us, 38; third decl. stems in ll, 42; nouns in en, 44, 2; nouns in ar, ur, 46, 2; i stems in e, al, ar, 57, *b;* nouns in us (eris), ūs (ūris), 48, 2; fourth decl. in ū, 61
nf, vowels long before, 23
nihil, forms of, 114
nimis, compar., 95, *b*
No, questions expecting answer, 347, c
nōlī(te), in prohibitions, 256
nōlō, conj., 230
Nominative, defined, 30; like acc. and voc. pl. in third, fourth, and fifth declensions, 33, *b;* like acc. and voc. in all neuters; in a, 34; in us (os), um, er and ir, 36; in l, 41; in ō and en, 43; in or and er, 45; in us, 47; in s, 50–51; in ēs, 52; in is, e, al, 56; in us, ū, 59; in ēs, 62
Nominative case, 30; as subj., 276; with hist. inf., 277; as subjective complement, 278, 279; of gerund supplied by inf., 258; agreement of verb with, 236; double nom., 239, 241
nōnne, for affirmative answer, 347, *b*
nōs, see ego; pl. for sing., 243; nom. emphatic, 247
nostrī, nostrum, 247, *a*
Nouns: decl., 31–69; appos., 241; pred., 240, 278–279, 317, *a;* with infinitives, 264; and see gender
nōvī, contracted forms of, 204, 3; perf. with pres. meaning, 204, 3, 354
nox, decl., 53; quantity of vowel, 19
ns, vowels long before, 23
nt, vowels short before, 21
nūllus and nēmō, 114; decl., 74
num, for negative answer, 347, *c;* in questions, 347, *c*
Number, 29; pl. for sing., 243, 236, *a*, 444; and see agreement of pred. attribute, 239
Numerals, 98–101

ō, nouns in, 43; gender of nouns in, 44
Ō, interj. with voc., 344
ob, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298
Obeying, verbs of, with dat., 297
Object, direct, 307; ind., 295; clauses, 360–363, 365; inf. as obj., 260
Objective genitive, 284; of pers. pronouns, 247, *a;* objective complement, 317, *a*
Obligation, indic., 251, 382, *d;* periphrastic, 199, *b*, 382, *d;* subj., 253; see command
oblīvīscor, gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*
obsum, 123; dat. with, 298
Occasion, expressed by part., 273
ōdisse, see 204, 3
oe, diphthong, 5
Oedipūs, decl., 69

Omission, of pers. pron., 247
omnis, decl., 77
on, ōn, Greek endings, 65, *a*, 67, 68, 69
Onomatopoeia, 434
oportet, 251, 382, *d*
Optative, subjunctive, 253
opus est, with abl., 341
ōrātiō oblīqua, see indirect discourse
Ordinal numerals, 98, *a*
Origin, abl. of, 323
orior, conj., 206
ōrō, constr. of verbs depending on, 360
Orpheus, decl., 69
os, nom. sing. of second decl., 36, *a*, *b*; Greek nominatives in 67, 69
Oxymoron, 435

p, represents changed b before s and t, 128, 6; stems in, 50
paenitet, with gen. and acc., 290
Panthūs, decl., 67
pār, with gen., 287; with dat., 304; with dat. of gerund(ive), 267
Paraleipsis, 436
Participles, formation, 117, 3; compar., 90; of deponents, 182, 205; tenses of, 272–275; gerundive, 266–269; periphrastic, 199; decl. of pres., 82
Partitive genitive, 286; of pers. pronouns, 247, *a*
parvī, gen. of value, 292
parvus, compar., 92
Passive voice, 115, *a*; formation of perf. system, 116, 3; constr. with verbs of saying, 279; pass. periphrastic, 199, *b*, *cf.* 382, *d*; gerundive constructions, 267, 268; middle and reflex. use, 309; perf. pass. system, 116, 3; fut. pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*; with dat. of agent, 302
Past perfect, see pluperfect
patior, conj., 191–198
pelagus, gender of, 38, *a*
Penalty, gender of, 38, *a*
penes, prep. with acc., 312
Penult, 25, *a*
per, prep. with acc., 312
Perception, verbs of, with part., 273; see indirect discourse
Perfect tense, 351, 4; pres. state, 351, 4, *a*; past act, 351, 4, *b*; temp. clauses, 368, 370, 376; perf. subj. both primary and secondary inf. in ind. disc., 263; participle, 275; in conditions, 381, 353, *b*, 1, *b*; in ind. disc., 382, *a*, *b*; contracted perfects, 204
Periphrastic conjugation, 199–201; as fut. subj., 354; conditions in ind. disc., 382, *a*; in contrary to fact apodosis, 382, *d*; in ind. questions, 354; with dat. of agent, 302
Person, agreement of verb, 236; agreement of rel. pron., 242; for forms see conjugations
Personal construction, of pass. with inf., 279
Personal pronouns, forms, 103; omission, 247; as part. gen., 247, *a*; in appos. to poss. adjectives, 249
Personification, 437
Persuading, verbs of with dat., 297
pēs, decl., 52
piget, with acc. and gen., 290
Pity, verbs of, with gen. and acc., 290
Place whither, 315, 306; where, 319; whence, 320; extent, 314
Pleasing, verbs of, with dat., 297
Plenty, expressions of, with gen., 287
plēnus, gen. with, 287; abl. with, 337
Pleonasm, 438
Pluperfect, 351, 5; indic. in time clauses, 370; subj. in unreal conditions, 362; secondary sequence in ind. disc. 353, 382, *a*, *b*; in cum descriptive clauses, 378
Plural, see number, agreement, etc.; poetic, 243, 444; editorial, 243, *a*
plūs, compar., 92, 97
Polysyndeton, 439
Possession, gen., 283; dat., 299
Possessive adjectives (pronouns), forms, 103–106; used as gen. of pron., 249
Possibility, indic., 251, 382, *d*; subj., 252, *cf.* 386; periphrastic, 382, *d*; in causal clauses, 357–358; with antequam and priusquam, 376, *a*; in conditions, 381; in relative clauses, 389
possum, conj., 125; to express possibility, 251, 382, *d*; in apodosis, 382, *d*
post, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298, 308
postquam, with indic., 368

Potential, indic., 251; subj., 252; see possibility
potior, with abl., 342
Power, adjectives of, with gen., 287; nouns of, with inf., 264
prae, prep. with abl., 339
Predicate adjective, 239, 279; pred. noun, 236, *c*, 240, 317, *a*, 278; pred. acc., 317, *a*, 279; pred. acc. becomes pred. noun in pass., 279; pred. noun with inf., 317, *a;* pred. use of participles, 273, 275; pred. gen., 285, *a;* of gerund(ive), 266; pred. adj. with inf., 258; pred. with pass. verbs of saying, etc., 279; pred. dat., 303, *a;* see agreement
Prepositions, with acc., 312; with abl., 339; omitted, 315, *a*, *b;* 319, *b*, 320, *a*, *b*, 340; **cum** appended to certain words, 321, *a;* assimilation, *cf.* 123, compounds of with dat., 298; with acc., 308
Present tense, 351; specific and universal, 351, 1; hist., 351, 1, *a;* with **jam** as perf., 351, 1, *b;* conative (as fut.), 351, 1, *c;* part., 272; decl., 82; indic. with **dum**, 372; inf. in ind. disc., 263
Preterition, 436
Preventing, verbs of, with **nē, quōminus, quīn**, 361–362; with abl. of separation, 340
Price, abl. of, 336; gen. of, 292
Primary tenses, 352, *a;* sequence of tenses, 353
primus, *beginning of*, 246
princeps, decl., 50
Principal parts, 126
priusquam, with indic., 376; with subj., 376, *a*
prō, prep. with abl., 329; **prō ut, quam prō**, 244, *cf.* 383; interj., 318
Prohibitions, subj., 253; imp., 256; obj. clauses (volitive), 360; hindering, 361–362; in ind. disc., 390, *b*
Prolepsis, 440
Pronouns, 102–114; pers., 103–106; omitted, 247; reflex., 106; use of, 248; dem., 107; attraction of, 240, *a;* intensive, 108; rel., 109–110; general relatives, 110; agreement of relatives. 242; relative clauses, 385–389; interrog., 111–112; adj., 111, *a;* pronom. adjectives, 73–74, 114; see poss.; indef., 113; distributive, see **quisque** and **uterque** as part. gen., 247, *a;* in appos. to poss. adj., 249
Pronunciation, Latin, 4–8; of Latin words in English, 28; of **i** and **u** as consonants, 401
Prosody, 391–410
prōsum, conj., 124
Protasis, 380; see conditions
Proviso clauses, vol. subj., 254; with **dum (modo)**, 375
proximus, with dat., 304
-pte, enclitic, 106, *c*
pudet, with gen. and acc., 290
puer, decl., 37
pulcher, decl., 71; compar., 88
pulchrē, compar., 97
Purpose, inf., 261; gerund(ive), 268; fut. part., 274; **ut** and **nē** with subj., 359; rel. clause of, 388; supine in **um**, 270; dat. of, 303

qu, pronunciation, 6; counts as single consonant, 15; becomes **x** with **s**, 128, 6
Quality, gen., 285; abl., 330; two qualities compared, 245
quam, omission of in compar., 327; **quam prō, quam ut, quam quī**, 244; **quam sī**, 383; with two positives, 245; with two comparatives, 245; **antequam** and **priusquam** separated, 376, *a*
quamquam, with indic in concessive clauses, 384
quamvīs, with subj. in concessive clauses, 384
quandō, in causal clauses, 357
quantī, gen. of value, 292
Quantity, of vowels, 20–24; of syllables, 14–19; in verse, 392–397, 404, 407; numerals, 99–101
quasi, in clauses of comparison, 383
-que, enclitic, 27
Questions, 347; deliberative, 348; ind., 349, 354; exclamatory, 262
quī, decl., 109; abl. form **quī**, 109, *d;* = **ut is**, 389; see relative
quia, in causal clauses, 357
quīcumque, general relative, 110
quīn, after verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 362; after neg. expressions of doubt, 366

quis, interrog., decl., 111; indef., 113
quīs, dat., abl. pl. of quī, 109, *c*
quisque, use with reflex., 248
quisquis, general rel., 110
quoad, with indic., 371; with subj., 374
quod, rel. pron., 109; with indic. in explanatory clauses, 356; with indic. and subj. in causal clauses, 357–358; in ind. disc. 355
quōminus, after verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361–362
quoniam, in causal clauses, 357
quot, numeral adv., 98
quotiēns, numeral adv., 101; in temp. clauses, 320
quum = **cum**

r, for s between two vowels, 47; stems in r, 45; nouns in r, 36, *a*, 37; adjectives in r, 71, 74, 76, 77, 91; see liquids
re, for ris, 204, 4
Reading of verse, 405–408
Reference, dat. of, 301, 303, *a;* gen., 294; acc., 311; abl., 325
rēfert, with gen. of person, 293; with abl. of poss. adj., 293, *a*
Reflexive pronouns, forms, 103–106; use, 248
Refusing, verbs of, 361–362
Regarding, two accusatives with verbs of, 316, *a;* constr. with pass. verbs of, 279
Relative clauses, 385; explanatory, 386; dependent, 387; purpose, 388; result, 364, *a;* char., 389
Relative pronouns, decl. 109; agreement, 242; in comparison, 244
reliquus, partitive use = *rest of*, 246
Remembering, verbs of, with gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*
Removing, verbs of, with abl., 340
Repeated action, impf., indic., 351, 2; in temp. clauses, 369–370; sequence of tenses, 353
rēs, decl., 63
Resisting, verbs of, with dat., 297; with **nē**, **quīn**, **quōminus**, 361, 362
Resolving, verbs of, complementary inf., 259; subst. vol. clause with, 360
Respect, abl. of, 325; acc. of, 311
Restricted, rel. clause, 387
Result clauses, 364; rel. clause of, 364, *a;* sequence of tenses, 353; explanatory clause of, 367
rēte, decl., 56, *b*
Rhotacism, 47
Rhythm of Latin verse, 407
ri, adjective stems in, 76, *a*
rogō, two accusatives, 316; inf. with 360; **ut** (volitive) clause, 360
Route, abl. of, 338
rūs, decl. and gender, 48, 2; acc., 315, *a;* abl., 320, *a;* loc., 345

s, changed to r between vowels, 47; change of mutes before s in verb stems, 128, 6; stems in s, 47; nom. ending, 32
saepe, compar., 97
satis, with gen., 286; compar., 97
Saying, verbs of, ind. disc., 390, 263; constr. with pass., 279
Scansion, 404
scītō, fut. used as pres. imperative, 202
sē, reflex. pron., 106, 248
Second conjugation, principal parts, 126; forms, 142–150; deponents, 191–198
Second declension, 36–38
Secondary object, 308, 316; tenses, 352, *b*, 353
secundum, prep. with acc., 312
Selling, verbs of with gen., 292; with abl., 336
Semi-hiatus, 400; semi-deponents, 205; semi-vowels, 6, *a*, *b*, *c;* 401
senex, decl., 56, *c*
Separation, dat. of, 305; abl. of, 340
Sequence of Tenses, 353; conditions in ind. disc., 381, *a;* suppositions in ind. disc., 383, *a;* for examples see 358, 360, 363, 374, 390, *b*
sequor, conj., 191–198
Service, dat. of, 303; dat. with adjectives of, 304
Serving, dat. with verbs of, 297
Sharing, adjectives of with gen., 287
sī, conditions, 380–382; suppositions, 383; **ut sī**, **ac sī**, **quam sī**, 383
Simile, 441
similis, with gen., 287; with dat., 304
simul ac (**atque**), with indic., 368
Singular, with pl. verb, 236, 444; see number, agreement, etc.

singulus, distributive num., 100
Situation, participle, 273; **cum** descriptive, 378; **dum** with pres. ind., 372; rel. clause, 385; abl., 329
soleō, semi-deponent, 305; complementary inf. with, 259
sōlus, with rel. clause, 389
Source, abl. of., 323
Space, extent of with acc., 314
Specification, with gen., 294; abl., 325; abl. of supine, 271; acc., 311
Spelling, j and v, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*
Spondee, 392; spondaic verse, 395
Stem of nouns, 31, 34, 36, 39–40, 58, 62; of adjectives, 71, 75–76, 78–81; stems in **i**, 55, 76; of verbs, 116, 126–128
sub, prep. with acc., 312; compounds of with dat., 298; with acc., 308
Subject, 276; agreement of verb with, 236; coll., 236, *a*, 444; two subjects, 236, *b;* subject of different persons, 239, *a;* omitted pers. pronouns, 247; impers. verbs, *cf.* 240; indef. second person, *cf.* 252; imp., 255; of hist. inf., 257; subj. acc., 260, 317; exclamatory inf., 262; ind. disc., 263, 390; inf. as subj., 258
Subjective genitive, 284; poss. adj. as, 249
Subjunctive, 115, 4; potential, 252; opt., 253; vol., 254, 360; in causal clauses, 357–358, 379; in purpose clauses, 359; with verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361–362; in ideal and unreal conditions, 381–382; comparisons with **ut sī, quasi**, etc., 383; double comparisons with **quam sī, quam ut**, 244; **cum** descriptive, 378; concessive clauses with **cum**, 379; with **etsī** and **quamvīs**, 384; rel. clauses of attraction, 387; purpose, 388; char., 389; result, 364, *a;* deliberative questions, 348; ind. questions, 349, 354; temp. clauses of anticipation, 374, 376, *a;* result clauses, 364–367; with verbs of fearing, 363; prohibitions, 256; of modesty, *cf.* 252; proviso, 375; subordinate clauses in ind. disc., 357, 358, *cf.* 248, *b;* tenses of, 353
Subordinate clauses, sequence of tenses, 353; in ind. disc., 390 *b*, *c;* see temporal, result, conditional, etc.
Substantive (volitive) clauses of desire, 360; hindering, 361–362; fearing, 363; result, 365–367; conditions in, 382, *b;* **quod** with indic., 356
Suffixes, see enclitics, endings
suī, decl., 106; use, 248
sum, conj., 118; compounds of, 123; fut. inf. with **ut** in ind. disc., 263, *a;* agreement with pred. noun, 236, *c;* with dat. of poss., 299; **sunt quī**, 389; simple sentence with, 278
summus, *top of*, partitive, 246
super, prep. with acc., 312; in composition with dat., 298; with acc., 308
Superlative, 85, 88, 89, *a;* used partitively as noun, 246
Supine, for forms see conjugations; uses, 270–271
Suppositions with **ut sī, quasi, velut**, etc., 383
suus, forms, 106, *a;* uses, 248
syllaba anceps, 393
Syllables, division of, 9–13, 18; named, 25, *a;* final syllable of hexameter line, 393; long syllable shortened, 400; short syllable lengthened, 394, *a;* first syllable of each foot long, 394; long and short syllables, 14–19, 396; two syllables united, 403
Synapheia, 402
Synchysis, 442
Synecdoche, 443
Synesis, 444
Synizesis, 403
Syntax, 236–390

t, assimilated before **s**, 128, 6, 125; stems ending in, 52
taedet, with gen. and acc., 290
tametsī, in concessive clauses, 384
tamquam (**sī**), in clauses of comparison, 383; simile, 441
tantī, gen. of value, 292
Teaching, verbs of, two accusatives, 316
Temporal clauses, 368–377; of action prior to the main verb, 368, 370; of action contemporaneous with the main verb, 369, 371–373, 377;

of action later than the main verb, 374–376; abl. abs., 343, *a*
Tenses, 115, 3; formation of, 127; pres., impf., etc. and verbs of imp., 255; of inf., 263, 390; of part., 272; uses of, 351; primary and secondary, 352; sequence of, 353
-ter, adv. suffix, 95, *c*
ter, num. adv., 101
Terminations, of nouns, 32; of verbs, 127–128; of infinitives and participles, 117; see endings, enclitics, declension, conjugation, etc.
Than, compar. of adjectives, 83–92; compar. of adverbs, 93–97; omission of quam, 327; *than if*, 383; *than that*, 244
Thinking, see indirect discourse, constr. with pass., 279; with acc. and inf., *cf.* 317, *a*
Third conjugation, principal parts, 126; forms dīcō, 151–160; capiō, 163–171; deponents: sequor, patior, 191–198
Third declension, stems in l, 41–42; n, 43–44; r, 45–46; s, 47–48; p or b, 50; c or g, 51; t or d, 52; i, 55–57
Time, from which, 320; when, within which, 322; till which, 315; extent, 314; expressed by abl. abs., 343, *a;* see temp. clauses; time in pronouncing syllables, 14, 408
timeō, with subj., 363
Tmesis, 445
too . . . to, two clauses compared, 244
tōtus, decl., 73; *all of*, partitive use, 246
Towns, names of; see cities
Trajection, 427
trāns, prep. with acc., 312; acc. with compounds of, 308
Transferred epithet, 446
Trees, names of, gender, 38, *a*
trēs, decl., 99
tū, decl., 104; omission, emphatic, 247
tuī, obj. gen., 247, *a*
Two accusatives, 308, *a*, 316; two datives, 303, *a*

u, sometimes pronounced like v, 6, *a;* after g, q, 6, 15; for i in superlatives, 85, 89, *a;* for e in gerund (ive), 203; noun stems in u, 58; i and u in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
ubi, with indic., 368
ubus, for ibus in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
ui, diphthong, 5
ūllus, decl., 74
Ultima, 25, *a*
um, gen. pl. ending, first decl., 34, *b*, second decl., 37. *d;* third decl., 53, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, 56, *c*, 81, 3, 82, *c*, *d*
Understatement, 431, see potential subj., 252
Undertaking, verbs of, with acc. of gerund(ive), 268, *a*
Unreal conditions, 382
ūnus, decl., 74; ūnus est quī, 389
urbs, decl., 53
ūsus est, with abl., 341
ut clauses: fearing, 363; fore ut, 263; indic., 368; indirect commands, 390, *b;* omitted, 256; purpose, 359; result, 364; sequence of tenses, 353; ut sī, 383; substantive, 360, 367; temporal, 368
uter and uterque, decl., 74–74, *b*· compounds of uter, 114, *a*
utinam, in unfulfilled wishes, 253
ūtor, with abl., 342

v, omitted in perf. forms, 204; use of, 6, *a;* as a consonant in poetry, 401
Value, gen. of, 292
vannus, gender, 38, *a*
-ve, enclitic, 27
velim, vellem, subj. of modesty, 252; opt., 253
velut (sī), in clauses of comparison, 383; simile, 441
vēneō, compound of eō, 213, *a;* see selling
Verbal adjectives, in āx with gen., 287
Verbs, inflection of, 115; stems, 116, 128, 6; conj., 116; principal parts, 126; first conj., 129–141; second conj., 142–150; third conj., 151–160, dīcō; 161–171, capiō; fourth conj., 172–181; dep., 182–198; semi-dep., 205; periphrastic, 199–203, 263, *a;* syncopated forms, 204; irregular, 206–235; sum, 118–122; principal parts, 126; general rules, 128
Verbs, uses of, agreement. 236; with gen., 287–291; interest and rēfert, 293; with dat., 297–298; with abl.,

342; see names of moods and tenses, ind. disc., etc.
Versification, 391–404
vēscor, with abl., 342
vester, 104
vestrī, vestrum, 247, *a*
vetō, acc. and inf. with, 360, *a*, 260
vetus, decl., 82; rhotacism, 47
videor, dat. of reference, 301; pred. nom., 279; complementary inf., 259: ind. disc., 263–390
vir, decl., 37
vīs, decl., 56, *a*
Vocative, defined, 30; second decl., sing., 36; of words in ius, ium, 37, *b;* deus, 37, *f;* meus, 103, *a;* Greek nouns, 66–69; use, 344
Voices, 115, 2, *a;* middle with obj. acc., 309, *a;* see active, middle, passive
Volitive, subj., 254; substantive with ut (nē) after verbs of will, desire, etc., 360; in ind. disc., 390, *b*
volō, conj., 230; with inf., 260, 317; with subj., 360; with part., 275
vōs, see tū
voster, see vester
Vowels, long and short, 3–4, 20–24; long vowels marked, 3, 397; elision of final vowels in verse, 398; syncopation, 204; synizesis, 403; long vowel shortened, 400
vulgus, gender, 38, *a*

Want, words of with gen., 287; with abl., 340
Way, by which, abl., 338, 328, 331
Whole, gen. of, 286
Wishes, inf., 260, 317; subj., 253, 254; ind. disc., 390, *b;* ut (volitive) clause, 360

x, nom. ending, 51, 82; in verb stems (c, g, qu and s), 128, 6; double consonant, 8; makes position, 15

Yes, questions expecting, 347, *b*

z, double consonant, 8; makes position, 15
Zeugma, 447

WORD LISTS FOR VOCABULARY DRILL, *AENEID* 1–6

There are three of these lists: 1) Words found twenty-four times or more in the first six books of the *Aeneid;* this list is printed on the extensible sheet at the end of the book; 2) Words found 12–23 times in the first six books, LIST II; 3) Words found 6–11 times in the first six books, LIST III.

II

WORDS FOUND 12–23 TIMES IN *AENEID* 1–6

abeō go away, depart
ācer sharp, piercing
addō give to, ADD
aequō (make) level, EQUALIZE
aether upper air, ETHER
affor speak to, address
agnōscō RECOGNIZE, understand
āla wing
aliquis some(one), any(one)
alter other (of two), second
amīcus friend(ly), AMICABLE
amittō lose, send away
amō love, cherish
an whether
annus year
antrum cave, cavern
aperiō uncover, open
arbor tree
arduus steep, ARDUOUS
ars ART, skill
artus (*noun*) joint, limb
asper rough, harsh
aspiciō look (at), behold
astō stand (by, near)
astrum star, constellation
attollō lift (up), arouse
audeō be eager, dare
aureus of gold, gold(en)
auris EAR
auster south(wind)
autem moreover, however
auxilium support, assistance
āvertō turn from, AVERT

bis twice

cadō fall, die
caecus blind, unseeing
canō sing (of), CHANT
carīna keel, ship
cārus dear
causa CAUSE, reason
cavus hollow
cēdō yield, CEDE
celer swift
celsus high, lofty
centum one hundred
certamen contest
certus settled, CERTAIN
cingō encircle, gird
cinis ashes, CINDERS
clārus CLEAR, famous
colō CULTIVATE, worship
coma hair, foliage (of a tree)

condō put together, found
cōnsīdō settle, SUBSIDE
cōnsistō take position
contrā against, opposite
cor heart
corripiō snatch (up)
crēdō believe, trust, CREDIT
crīnis hair (of the head)
crūdēlis CRUEL, pitiless
currus chariot
custōs guard, CUSTODIAN

deinde then, thereupon
dēmittō let down
dēserō abandon, DESERT
dīrus fearful, DIRE
doceō teach
dolor pain, grief
dolus trick(ery), artifice
dulcis sweet
dūrus hard, harsh
dux leader, guide

ecce lo! behold!
efferō bear out, extol
effundō pour out
enim for, truly
ēnsis sword, steel
equidem indeed, certainly
ergō therefore, ERGO
etiam also, even
exerceō train, EXERCISE
extrēmus farthest, EXTREME

faciēs figure, FACE
fallō deceive
fās divine right (law)
fax torch
ferus wild, FIERCE
fidēs (good) faith, reliability, FIDELITY
fīdus faithful, trustworthy
fīgō (trans)FIX, fasten
flūmen stream, river
forma shape, beauty
fortis brave, strong
fūnus FUNERAL, death
furor madness, FURY

gemitus groan(ing), lamentation
gerō bear, accomplish
gravis heavy, GRAVE
gurges whirlpool, sea

haereō stick (to), ADHERE
harēna sand
hērōs HERO
homō man, person
horreō shudder, bristle (at)
hortor urge, EXHORT
hospes guest, host
hostis (public) enemy, HOSTILE

ignārus IGNORANT
imāgō IMAGE, form
impellō drive, IMPEL
impleō fill (up)
impōnō place on, IMPOSE
inānis empty, vacant
incendō set on fire, excite
incipiō begin
inde thence, thereupon
inquam quoth, say
īnsignis marked, distinguished, SIGNIFICANT
intereā meanwhile
iter road, journey
iterum again, a second time

jaceō lie
jactō toss, boast
jugum yoke, ridge
jungō JOIN
juvenis young, youth, JUVENILE
juvō help, please
juxtā near, next to

laevus left (hand), awkward
lateō lie hid, be hidden

lātus broad, wide
latus side, flank
laus praise, glory
legō gather, COLLECT
lētum death, ruin
licet it is permitted (LICIT)
linquō leave, RELINQUISH
loquor speak, talk
lūcus (sacred) grove
lūstrō cleanse, illumine

maestus sad, dejected
malus bad, evil
mānēs soul(s), spirit(s), MANES
membrum MEMBER, limb
memorō recall, recount
mēnsa table
mereō deserve, MERIT
metus fear, dread
misceō MIX, mingle
miseror pity, COMMISERATE
modus measure, manner
mōlēs mass(ive structure)
mōnstrō DEMONSTRATE, show, teach
mōnstrum omen, MONSTER
mora delay, hindrance
morior die
moror delay, hinder
mōs manner, custom
mūrus wall
mūtō change

nemus glade, grove
nepōs grandson, descendant
nimbus rainstorm, cloud
nisi if not, unless
nōscō learn, know
nūbēs (storm) cloud
numerus NUMBER, amount

obscūrus dark, OBSCURE
ōmen OMEN, portent
(ops), opis assistance, resources
optō choose, desire, OPT
opus work; necessity
orbis circle, ORBIT
ordō succession, ORDER
ōrō pray, plead
os bone

palma PALM, blade of oar
pandō spread out, EXPAND
pār equal
pariō bear
patior permit, suffer
pietās loyalty, devotion, PIETY
placidus gentle, PLACID
pontus sea, the deep
populus PEOPLE, nation
porta gate, PORTAL
poscō demand, claim
post after, behind
praeceps headlong, PRECIPITOUS
praemium reward, PREMIUM
precor PRAY, invoke
premō PRESS, pursue
prior earlier, PRIOR
prō before, for
prōlēs offspring, descendants
prope near(by)
pugna fight, battle
pulcher beautiful, handsome

quālis of what kind?
quam how, as, than
quīcumque whoever, whichever, whatever
quiēscō rest, sleep
quīn (but) that
quoque also, too

rāmus branch, bough
rapiō seize, snatch
ratis raft, ship
reddō give back, RENDER
repōnō restore, bury
respiciō regard, consider
rōbur oak (tree), strength

rumpō break, burst
rūrsus back, again

sacerdōs priest(ess)
sacrō devote, CONSECRATE
saepe often
saevus fierce, raging
scelus wicked deed, crime
scopulus crag, cliff
secō cut
secundus second, favorable
sedeō sit, be settled
senex old, aged
signum mark, SIGN(AL)
similis like, SIMILAR
sine without (*abl.*)
sōl sun
solum bottom, ground
solvō loosen, release
sonitus SOUND, noise
sonō SOUND, RESOUND
soror sister
sors lot, fate
spargō scatter, DISPERSE
spērō hope
spēs hope
spūmō foam, SPUME
sternō STREW, overthrow
subitus sudden
superbus proud, haughty
superō overcome, surpass
supplex kneeling, SUPPLIANT

taceō be silent (TACIT)
tam so
tamen nevertheless
templum TEMPLE, shrine
temptō try, ATTEMPT
ter thrice
tergum back, rear
thalamus bridal chamber
torqueō twist, wind
tot so many
tremō tremble, quake
tumulus mound
turbō confuse, DISTURB

unde whence
undique from (on) all sides

varius VARIED, VARIOUS
vel or
velut just as, even as
vertex whirl, VORTEX, VERTEX
vertō turn
vester your(s)
vestīgium track, trace, VESTIGE
vestis clothing, garment, VESTURE
vetus old, ancient
virgō maiden, girl
viridis VERDANT, green
virtūs manliness, valor, VIRTUE
vitta fillet, band
volucer flying, winged; bird
voveō solemnly promise, VOW
vulnus wound
vultus countenance, face

III

WORDS FOUND 6–11 TIMES IN *AENEID* 1–6

absum be away, be ABSENT
accēdō go to, ACCEDE
accendō kindle
accingō gird (on)
aciēs sharp edge; battle line
acuō sharpen
adeō (*adv.*) to such a degree
adeō (*vb.*) go to, visit
aditus approach, access
adytum shrine, inner sanctuary
aeger sick, weak
aēneus of bronze, brazen
aequus level, EQUAL
āēr AIR, fog
aes copper, bronze
aestās summer
aestus boiling, tide
aeternus ETERNAL, everlasting
aetherius airy, ETHEREAL
aevum age, eternity
agger mound, dike
aggredior approach, attack
agitō AGITATE, drive
albus white
alloquor speak to, address
almus fostering, kindly
ambō both
āmēns mad, frantic, DEMENTED
amnis river, stream
amplector embrace, surround
amplus AMPLE, spacious
animus spirit, mind
appareō APPEAR
aptō fit on, equip, ADAPT
aqua water
arceō confine, restrain
arcus bow, ARCH
argentum silver; money
armō ARM, equip
arrigō raise (up), ERECT
auctor originator, founder, AUTHOR
auferō bear away, remove
auspicium omen, AUSPICES
āvellō tear away, pluck off
avus grandfather, ancestor
axis AXLE, AXIS, chariot

bōs bull, cow, ox; *pl.* cattle
bracchium (fore)arm
brevis short, BRIEF

caedēs killing, slaughter
caedō fell, kill
caeruleus dark blue, CERULEAN
caestus CESTUS, boxing glove
cardō pivot, hinge
carmen song, poem
carpō pluck
castrum fortress; *pl.*, camp
cautēs crag, pointed rock
certō contend, fight
cervīx neck
cēterus the other(s)
ceu just as, as if
chorus choral dance, band
cieō move, agitate
citus stirred up, swift
claudō CLOSE, shut
clipeus (round) shield
coepī have begun
cognōmen (sur)name, COGNOMEN
cōgō collect, compel
colligō COLLECT, gather
collum neck
comitor ACCOMPANY, attend
committō join, entrust, perform
compellō hail, greet
complector embrace
compleō fill COMPLETELY
compōnō put together, arrange

concutiō shake, shatter
conjugium union, marriage
cōnscius CONSCIOUS
cōnsilium plan, COUNSEL, council
cōnspiciō catch sight of, behold
contendō struggle, CONTEND
contingō touch, happen (to)
continuus unbroken, CONTINUOUS
cōnūbium wedlock, marriage
convellō tear to pieces, destroy
conveniō come together, CONVENE
convertō turn about, change
cornū horn
corōna CROWN, wreath
crēber thick, frequent
cruentus bloody
cruor blood
culmen top, summit
cupīdō desire, eagerness
currō run
curvus bent, CURVED

daps banquet, feast
decōrus becoming, adorned
decus beauty, glory
dēferō bear away, report
dē(j)iciō throw, cast (down)
dēligō choose, SELECT
dēmēns distracted, DEMENTED
dēmum finally, at last
dēnsus thick, DENSE
dēscendō climb down, DESCEND
dignus worthy (*abl.*)
dīgredior step away, depart
discō learn
discrīmen crisis, risk
dīversus different, DIVERSE
dīvīnus DIVINE, godlike
dominus master, lord
dōnec until
ductor leader, guide
dūdum already, now for a long time
duo two

ēdūcō lead forth
effor speak (out)
effugiō flee (away), escape
ēgregius distinguished, uncommon
ēlābor slip (out), escape
ēn lo! behold!
epulae banquet, feast
error ERROR, mistake
ēruō cast out, overthrow
ēvādō go forth, EVADE
exanimus lifeless, breathless
excēdō go forth, withdraw
excipiō take out, EXCEPT
excutiō shake (out, off)
exigō drive out, EXACT
exorior rise (up), appear
expediō extricate, disentangle
exspectō watch for, await, EXPECT
exstinguō EXTINGUISH, destroy
extemplō immediately, suddenly
exterreō TERRIFY, frighten
exuō put off, strip
exuviae spoils, armor

facilis easy (to do), FACILE
famēs hunger, FAMINE
famulus servant, house slave
fastīgium slope, summit
fātālis FATED, FATAL
fateor admit, confess
fatīgō weary, tire
faucēs jaws, gullet
fēlix lucky, FELICITOUS
fēmina FEMALE, woman
ferīō smite, strike
fingō shape, invent
fīō become
flectō bend, turn
fleō weep, (be)wail
flētus weeping, tears
fluō FLOW
fluvius stream, river
foedō defile, pollute
foedus treaty, league

folium leaf, FOLIAGE
foris door
formīdō dread, apprehension
foveō foster, protect
frangō break, shatter
frāter brother
fremō murmur, roar
fretum strait of water, sea
frōns leaf, foliage, FROND
frōns forehead, FRONT
frūstrā in vain, vainly
fulgeō gleam, flash
fulmen lightning, thunderbolt
fulvus yellow, tawny
fūnis rope, cable
furiae rage, FURY

galea helmet
gaudeō rejoice
gelidus frosty, ice-cold, GELID
gemō groan, lament
genū knee
germānus own brother (sister)
gignō beget, bear
glomerō collect, assemble
glōria GLORY, fame
gradior step, walk
gradus step, pace, GRADE
gremium lap, bosom
gressus step, walk

habitō occupy, INHABIT
hasta spear
hauriō draw, drain
herba HERB, grass
hibernus wintry
hiems winter; storm
horridus rough, fearful, HORRID
hospitium HOSPITALITY, welcome
humus ground
hymenaeus HYMEN, god of marriage

ictus blow, stroke
ignōtus unknown
imber rain(storm)
immēnsus boundless, IMMENSE
immittō send in, let go
immōtus UNMOVED, IMMOVABLE
impius IMPIOUS, disloyal
incēdō PROCEED, go in(to)
incertus UNCERTAIN
inclūdō shut in, confine, INCLUDE
incumbō lie on, lean on
induō put on, don
īnfandus unspeakable
īnferō bear in (against)
īnfundō pour (rush) in
ingeminō redouble, repeat
ingredior step in, enter
inimīcus (personal) ENEMY, hostile
inīquus UNEQUAL, unjust
īnsequor follow, pursue
īnsidiae ambush, treachery
īnsōns innocent
īnstaurō renew, refresh, RESTORE
īnstruō arrange, plan
īnsula island
intendō strain, stretch
interior inner, INTERIOR
intrō go within, ENTER
intus within
invādō attack, INVADE
inveniō come upon, find
invideō look on, ENVY, hate
iste that (of yours, contemptible)
ita so, thus

jaciō hurl, throw
jūs right, JUSTICE, law
juvencus bullock, heifer
juventa youth
juventūs youth

lacrimō shed tears, weep
lacus LAKE
latex fluid, liquid
laurus LAUREL
levis light, slight

levō lift, remove
lēx law, rule
lībō sip, pour a LIBATION
locō place, LOCATE
longaevus aged
lūctus grief, mourning
lūdus game; school
lūna moon

mactō sacrifice, offer
magister MASTER, chief
magnanimus great-souled, MAGNANIMOUS
mandō hand over, commission
meminī REMEMBER
memor mindful
mergō IMMERSE, plunge
mēta boundary, goal
metuō fear, dread
mīlle one thousand
mīrābilis MARVELOUS, wonderful
mīror wonder at, MARVEL at
misereō pity, COMMISERATE
mōlior heap up, build
mollis soft, gentle
moneō advise, ADMONISH
monumentum reminder, MONUMENT
mortālis MORTAL
murmur MURMUR(ING)

nauta sailor
nefandus unspeakable, wicked
nefās impiety, wickedness
negō deny, refuse
nēquīquam in vain, vainly
niger black
nihil nothing
nimius excessive, too much
nōdus knot, NODE
nūbilus cloudy, misty
nuntius messenger, message
nympha NYMPH

ob on account of (*acc.*)
ob(j)iciō oppose, throw in the way
oblīviscor forget
obsideō besiege, occupy
obstipēscō be amazed, stand agape
occurrō run to meet, OCCUR
offerō present, offer
ōlim once, at that time
omnipotēns OMNIPOTENT, all powerful, almighty
onerō load, burden
opācus dark, obscure, OPAQUE
orior arise, begin
ostendō show, stretch toward
ostentō show, display
ōstium mouth, entrance
ovō rejoice

parcō spare (*dat.*)
pāreō obey (*dat.*)
pascō feed (on), PASTURE
passim generally, everywhere
pateō lie open, extend
patera bowl, (libation) cup
paucī few
pāx PEACE
pecus cattle, flock
pellō strike, drive
pendeō hang, be SUSPENDED
penetrālis inner, interior; *n.pl.*, shrine
penitus thoroughly, utterly
peragō finish, accomplish
pereō PERISH, be lost
perferō bear (to the end), endure
perficiō accomplish, PERFECT
perīculum danger, PERIL
pestis plague, PESTILENCE
pharetra quiver for arrows
pingō PAINT, DEPICT, embroider
pinguis fat, rich
pinna feather, wing
plausus APPLAUSE
plēnus full
polus POLE, heavens
pondus weight

portō carry
postis (door) POST, portal
postquam after
potior obtain (*abl.; gen.*)
praecipitō throw headlong, PRECIPITATE
praeda booty, PREY
praestō furnish, excel
praesum be in charge (at the head of)
praetereā besides, moreover
prex PRAYER, entreaty
principium beginning
prōcēdō go forward, PROCEED
prōcumbō lie forward, sink (to the ground)
proelium battle, fight
prohibeō forbid, PROHIBIT
prō(j)iciō hurl, PROJECT
prōmittō send forth, PROMISE
propinquō approach (*dat.*)
proprius one's own, peculiar
prōra PROW
prōspiciō look forward, provide
prōtinus at once, immediately
pūbēs youth, men
pulsō beat, lash
purpureus crimson

quamquam although, however
quandō when? at some time
quantus how great? as great as
quatiō shake
quattuor four
quiēs rest, QUIET
quisquam anyone
quisque each, everyone
quisquis whoever, whichever, whatever
quod because; (as for) the fact that

rapidus swift, RAPID
recēdō RECEDE, withdraw
recēns fresh, new, RECENT
recipiō take back, RECEIVE
recūsō refuse
redeō go back, return
redūcō lead back
regiō REGION, district
rēgius ROYAL, REGAL
rēgnō REIGN, rule
regō rule, DIRECT
reliquiae remnant, remains
reor reckon, suppose
repente suddenly
reperiō find (out)
repetō demand, reseek, REPEAT
requīrō demand, REQUIRE
resīdō settle (down), sink
resolvō untie, loose(n)
respondeō answer, RESPOND
retrō back(ward)
revellō tear off
revīsō REVISIT, come back to
revocō call back, REVOKE
rīpa bank, shore
rīte duly, fittingly
ruīna downfall, RUIN
rūpēs crag, rock

saeviō rage
sagitta arrow
sal SALT, brine
salsus SALTY, SALTED
salūs health, safety
satis enough, sufficient
scēptrum SCEPTER; rule
sciō know (how)
sēcernō separate
semper always, ever
sententia feeling, opinion
sentiō feel, perceive
sepeliō perform rites of burial
septem SEVEN
sepulcrum tomb, SEPULCHER
serēnus clear, SERENE
sermō conversation, discourse
serō sow
signō designate, mark
sileō be SILENT

simulācrum image, likeness
simulō pretend, SIMULATE
sinister left
sinō allow, permit
sistō set, stand
spatium SPACE
spēlunca cave
spīrō breathe, blow
spolium trophy, SPOILS
statuō STATION, ESTABLISH
stirps trunk, stock, race
strīdeō hiss, whiz
stringō draw (tight), graze
struō pile up, CONSTRUCT
studium zeal, eagerness
sub(j)iciō drive in, expose, SUBJECT
sublīmis lofty, SUBLIME
succēdō approach (closely), SUCCEED
sūmō take (up), ASSUME
supersum remain, survive
suscipiō take up, undertake
suspendō SUSPEND, hang up

tangō TOUCH
tardus slow, late, TARDY
taurus bull
tempestās TEMPEST, storm
tenebrae darkness
tenuis thin, TENUOUS
terreō frighten, TERRIFY
tertius third
testor call to witness, TESTIFY
timeō fear, dread
torus bed, couch
trabs beam, trunk of tree
trepidus agitated, excited
trēs three
tumidus swollen, swelling
turba mob, crowd, tumult
turbō tornado, whirlwind

ūber udder, fertility
ulterior beyond, farther, ULTERIOR
ultor avenging, avenger
ultrō beyond, furthermore
ūmidus moist, HUMID
umquam ever, at any time
urgeō drive, URGE
uterque each of two, both
uterus womb, belly

vacuus empty, VACANT
vādō go, advance
vadum ford, shallow
valeō be strong, be able
validus strong, VALID
vallēs VALLEY
vānus empty, VAIN
vehō go, CONVEY, carry
vēlō VEIL, cover
veneror VENERATE, worship
verbum word
verrō sweep, scour
versō turn (often), keep turning
vīnum WINE, VINE
viscus vitals, entrails, VISCERA
vīsus sight, VISION
vīvō live, subsist
vīvus alive, living
volūtō roll, REVOLVE
vulgus the common people

GENERAL WORD LIST

ā, ab, abs (away) from, by (*abl.*)
ac, atque and, also; as, than
accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, accept; learn, hear, conceive
Acestēs, ae *m.* king in Sicily
āctus, ā, um *see* agō
ad to, toward, at, near, about (*acc.*)
adfore; adforem, ēs, et *see* adsum
adsum, esse, fuī be present, assist (*dat.*)
Aenēās, ae, *acc.* ān, *m.* Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchises, hero of the *Aeneid*
aequor, oris *n.* sea, waves; (level) plain
age, agite (agō) up! come! lead on!
agmen, inis *n.* army, line, troop; course
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus lead, drive, do, treat, pass, conduct
āiō, āis, ait; āiunt say, speak, assert
alius, a, ud other, another, else
altus, a, um (*see*) high, lofty, deep
amor, ōris *m.* love, desire, passion
Anchisēs, ae, *acc.* ēn, *m.* Trojan prince, father of Aeneas
anima, ae *f.* air, breath, life, soul, shade
animus, ī *m.* soul, spirit, breath, courage; pride; purpose, thought
ante before (*acc.*); sooner, previously
antīquus, a, um ANCIENT, old, aged, former, of olden times, time-honored
āra, ae *f.* altar
ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsus burn, be eager
arma, ōrum *n.* ARMS, equipment, tools
arvum, ī *n.* plowed land, field, region
arx, arcis *f.* citadel, fort; height, hill
at, ast but, yet, however, at least
āter, tra, trum black, gloomy, deadly
atque, ac and, also; as, than
audiō, īre, īvī (ii), ītus hear (of), hearken
aura, ae *f.* breeze, air; favor; light
aurum, ī *n.* gold (object, equipment)
aut or, either; aut . . . aut either . . . or

bellum, ī *n.* war(fare), combat, fight

caelum, ī *n.* sky, heaven; weather
campus, ī *m.* plain, field, level surface
capiō, ere, cēpī, captus take, seize, catch; CAPTIVATE; deceive; occupy
caput, itis *n.* head; summit; life, person
cāsus, ūs *m.* chance, (mis)fortune; fall
cernō, ere, crēvī, crētus DISCERN, perceive, understand, decide; fight
circum around, about, at, near (*acc.*)
clāmor, ōris *m.* shout, roar, applause
classis, is *f.* fleet, army, ship
comes, itis *m.* (*f.*) comrade, follower
conjunx, jugis *m.* (*f.*) husband, wife
corpus, oris *n.* body, CORPSE, form
cum (*conj.*) when, while, since, although
cum (*prep.*) with (*abl.*)
cūnctus, a, um all, whole, entire
cūra, ae *f.* care, anxiety, grief; love
cursus, ūs *m.* COURSE, running; haste

Danaus, a, um Danaan, Greek
dē (down, away) from, of, concerning, according to (*abl.*)
dea, ae *f.* goddess
deus, ī *m.* god, divinity, DEITY
dexter, (e)ra, (e)rum right (hand); favorable; *f. subst.* right hand
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus say, speak, tell, call, name, describe, chant
dictum, ī *n.* word, speech, command
Dīdō, ōnis *f.* legendary founder and queen of Carthage
diēs, diēī *m.* (*f.*) DAY, time, season
dīvus, a, um DIVINE, heavenly, deified; *subst.* DIVINITY, god, goddess
dō, dare, dedī, datus give (forth), grant, allow, bestow; put, place, make
domus, ūs *f.* house(hold), home, abode; family, race, line
dōnum, ī *n.* gift, offering, prize, reward
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead, draw (out), protract; PRODUCE; think
dum while, as long as, until, provided
dum while, as long as, until, provided
ē, ex out of, from, according to (*abl.*)
ēgī *see* agō
ego, meī (*pl.* nōs, nostrum) I
eō, īre, īvī (ii), itus go, proceed, come
equus, ī *m.* horse, steed, charger
ēripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (from), tear away; rescue; hasten
errō (1) stray, wander, ERR; linger
et and, also, even, too; et . . . et both . . . and
euntis, ī, em, e, ēs, ium, ibus *see* eō
ex, ē out of, from, according to (*abl.*)

faciō, ere, fēcī, factus do, make, perform; grant, offer; suppose
fāma, ae *f.* FAME, report, reputation
fāre, fārī; fātur; fātus, a, um *see* for
fātum, ī *n.* FATE, destiny, doom; oracle
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear, endure; wear; report, say; carry (off), plunder; extol; tend; grant, offer
ferrum, ī *n.* iron; sword, weapon, tool
fessus, a, um tired, weary, feeble, worn
finis, is *m.* (*f.*) end, limit, border; country; goal; starting-place
flamma, ae *f.* FLAME, fire, torch; love
flūctus, ūs *m.* wave, tide, flood, sea
for, fārī, fātus speak, say, tell, utter
fore; forem, ēs, et *see* sum
fors, fortis *f.* chance, FORTUNE, lap
fortūna ae *f.* FORTUNE, chance, luck
fuga, ae *f.* flight, haste, exile, speed
fugiō, ere, fūgī flee (from), escape, shun
fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (out), shed; lay low, slay, rout; extend
furō, ere, uī rage, rave, be frantic
futūrus, a, um FUTURE, destined (to be), impending, about to be; *see* sum

geminus, a, um twin, double, two
genitor, ōris *m.* begetter, father, sire
gēns, gentis *f.* clan, race, nation, herd
genus, eris *n.* birth, origin, race; descendant; kind, family
habeō, ēre, uī, itus have, hold; consider
haud not, by no means, not at all
heu alas! ah! ah me!
hīc (*adv.*) here, there, hereupon
hic, haec, hoc this, that; he, she, it
hinc from this place, hence, thence
honōs (*or*), ōris *m.* HONOR, glory, reward; offering, sacrifice; charm, grace
hūc to this place, hither, here

ī, ībam, ībō, īre, it, īte *see* eō
idem, eadem, idem same, the same
ignis, is *m.* fire, flame, light, lightning, star; passion, love, fury, wrath
ille, ia, lud that (famous); he, she, it
immānis, e huge, monstrous, enormous, mighty, dreadful, cruel, atrocious
imperium, (i) *n.* command, power, dominion, rule, sway, mastery, realm(s)
imus, a, um *superl. of* inferus
in in, on, in the case of, among (*abl.*); into, against, until, toward (*acc.*)
infēlix, īcis unfortunate, accursed, unhappy, ill-omened, unlucky, wretched
inferus, e, um low, below, underneath
ingēns, entis enormous, mighty, huge
inter between, among, during (*acc.*)
ipse, sa, sum (him, her, it)self; very
īra, ae *f.* wrath, rage, anger, passion
īre *see* eō
is, ea, id this, that; he, she, it
it, ītis *see* eō
Italia, ae *f.* Italy

jam now, already, finally, at once
Jovis, ī, em, e *see* Juppiter
jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussus command, order, bid, enjoin (upon), urge
Jūnō, ōnis *f.* queen of the gods
Juppiter, Jovis *m.* king of the gods
jussī; jussus, a, um *see* jubeō

lābor, ī, psus slip (by), slide, glide (by), descend; fail; faint, fall, perish; flow
labōs (*or*), ōris *m.* LABOR, hardship, task
lacrima, ae *f.* tear, compassion
laetus, a, um happy; fertile; fat, sleek
limen, inis *n.* threshold, doorway, entrance; abode; shrine; palace
litus, oris *n.* shore, strand, coast, beach
locus, ī *m.* (*pl.* loca) place, region; condition, situation; opportunity
longus, a, um long, wide, distant
lūmen, inis *n.* light, lamp; eye; life
lūx, lūcis *f.* light, sun, day; life; glory

magnus, a, um great, large, huge, vast; noble, illustrious, mighty, important
major, majus *compar. of* magnus
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsus remain, abide, linger, stay, (a)wait
manus, ūs *f.* hand; band, troop; deed
mare, is *n.* sea
māter, tris *f.* mother, dam; MATRON
maximus *superl. of* magnus
medius, a, um mid(dle), INTERMEDIATE
mēns, mentis *f.* mind, feeling, intention
meus, a, um my (own), mine
miser, era, erum MISERABLE, unhappy, wretched, unfortunate, pitiable
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus send, hurl, DISMISS, let go, end, finish; offer, pay
moenia, ium *n.* walls; city; structures
mōns, montis *m.* MOUNTAIN, height
mors, rtis *f.* death, destruction, ruin
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move; ponder
multus, a, um much, many, abundant
mūnus, eris *n.* function, duty; gift

nam, namque for; indeed, truly
nātus, ī *m.* son, child, young
nāvis, is *f.* ship, boat, vessel, galley
ne *sign of a question*; whether, or
nē leat, that not, no, not
neque, nec nor, neither, and not; neque . . . neque neither . . . nor
nōmen, inis *n.* NAME, fame, renown
nōn not, no
noster, tra, trum our (own), ours
novus, a, um new, young, strange, late
nox, noctis *f.* night, darkness; sleep
nūllus, a, um none, no, no one
numen, inis *n.* divinity, divine power (will, favor, purpose, presence)
nunc (but) now, soon, as it is

Ō O! oh! ah!
oculus, ī *m.* eye
olle etc., *old forms of* ille
omnis, e all, every, whole, universal
ōra, ae *f.* shore, coast, region, border
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth, face; speech

parēns, entis *m.* (*f.*) PARENT, ancestor, father, mother
parō (1) PREPARE, make (ready)
pars, rtis *f.* PART, portion, share, side
pater, tris *m.* father, ancestor, sire
patrius, a, um PATERNAL, ancestral, native
pectus, oris *n.* breast, heart, soul
pelagus, ī *n.* sea, flood, waves
per through, by (means of), over, among, because of, during (*acc.*)
pēs, pedis *m.* foot; sheet-rope, sheet
petō, ere, īvī (ii), ītus seek, attack, aim (at), ask; seek
pius, a, um devoted, loyal, righteous
plūrēs *compar. of* multus
plūrimus *superl. of* multus
plūs *compar. of* multus
poena, ae *f.* PUNISHMENT, PENALTY, satisfaction, revenge, vengeance
pōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus put, place (aside); found, establish; bury
portus, ūs *m.* PORT, harbor, haven
possum, posse, potuī be able, can, avail
Priamus, ī *m.* Priam, king of Troy
primus, a, um first, foremost, chief
procul far, at a distance, (from) afar
puer, ī *m.* boy, child; slave
puppis, is *f.* stern; ship, vessel, galley

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus seek (in vain), miss, inquire, ask, try
-que and, also, even; -que . . . -que both . . . and
quī, quae, quod who, which, what, that
quis (qua), quid, (quī, quae, quod) who? which? what? why? any, some(one)
quō whither, where(fore), whereby
quondam (at) some time, formerly, ever

referō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear back, restore, carry off; reproduce, renew, recall; RELATE, say; (re)pay
regina, ae *f.* queen; *adj.* ROYAL
regnum, ī *n.* royal power, kingdom, realm, rule, sway, sovereignty
relinquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert, surrender, abandon, RELINQUISH
rēmus, ī *m.* oar
rēs, rei *f.* thing, affair, matter, deed, fact, fortune; state, commonwealth
rēx, rēgis *m.* king; *adj.* ruling, ROYAL
ruō, ere, ī, ru(i)tus fall; rush; sink; plow

sacer, cra, crum SACRED, holy, consecrated; accursed; *n. subst.* SACRIFICE, holy implement (object); mystery
sanguis, inis *m.* blood; race, descendant
saxum, ī *n.* stone, rock, reef, cliff, crag
sedēs, is *f.* seat; abode, habitation; bottom; tomb, shrine; place, region
sequor, ī, secūtus follow, attend, pursue, accompany, seek
servō (1) OBSERVE, watch; PRESERVE, save, guard, keep, rescue; nurse
sī whether, if (only), in case that
sīc thus, so, in this manner
sidus, eris *n.* star, constellation, meteor; season, weather; heaven
silva, ae *f.* forest, wood(s), tree(s)
simul at the same time, together; simul (ac, atque) as soon as
socius, (i) *m.* ally, comrade, follower
sōlus, a, um alone, only, lonely, SOLE
somnus, ī *m.* sleep, slumber, dream
stō, āre, steti, status stand (fast, up); hinge, endure; stick (to), remain
sub (from) under, close (to), beneath, (deep) in, after (*acc., abl.*)
subeō, īre, īvī (ii), itus go under, bear; approach, enter; arise (*dat.*)
sublātus, a, um *see* tollō
suī (of) himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her, it, them
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus be, exist
summus *superl. of* superus
super above, beyond, left, in addition, upon, concerning, about (*acc., abl.*)
superus, a, um upper, higher, above; *subst.* god, divinity
suprēmus, a, um *superl. of* superus
surgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus raise, (a)rise, spring up, SURGE
sustulī *see* tollō
suus, a, um his, her, its, their (own)

tālis, e such, of such sort, the following
tandem at length, finally; pray
tantus, e, um so great, so much, so far
tēctum, ī *n.* roof; house, home, abode
tellūs, ūris *f.* earth, land, country
tēlum, ī *n.* weapon, wound, blow
tempus, oris *n.* time; occasion, crisis
tendō, ere, tetendī, tentus stretch; hasten, strive, (ex)TEND, aim; tent
tenueō, ēre, uī, tus have, hold, restrain
terra, ae *f.* earth, land, country, soil
Teucrus, a, um Teucrian, Trojan
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise, upheave, stir up; remove, destroy
tōtus, a, um all, every, whole, full
trahō, ere, trāxī, tractus drag (out), draw (in), lead, PROTRACT, spend
tristis, e sad, unhappy, dreary, fatal
Troja, ae *f.* Troy, a city of Asia Minor
tū, tuī (*pl.* vōs, vestrum) you
tulī *see* ferō
tum, tunc theo, at that time; further
tuus, a, um your(s), your own
Tyrius, e, um Tyrian, Carthaginian

ubi where, when, as soon as
ūllus, a, um any, any one
umbra, ae *f.* shade, shadow, ghost
umerus, ī *m.* shoulder
unda, ae *f.* wave, billow, water, sea
ūnus, a, um one, only, alone, single
urbs, urbis *f.* city, town
ut(i) as, when; that, so that; how

vastus, a, um desolate, VAST, enormous
vātēs, is *m.* (*f.*) prophet, seer, bard
-ve, vel or, either, even; vel . . . vel either . . . or
vellim, velle, vellem *see* volō
vēlum, ī *n.* cloth, canvas, sail
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventus come, go
ventus, ī *m.* wind, breeze, blast, air
via, ae *f.* way, road, journey, street
victor, ōris *m.* VICTOR; *adj.* VICTORIOUS
videō, ēre, vidī, visus see, perceive; *pass.* be seen, appear, seem (best)
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus conquer, surpass
vir, ī *m.* (real) man; hero; husband
virēs *pl. of* vīs
vīs, vīs *f.* force, VIOLENCE, energy
vīta, ae *f.* life, soul, spirit
vix scarcely, feebly, with difficulty
vocō (1) call, name, address, CONVOKE, INVOKE, invite, challenge
volō, velle, voluī will, wish, be willing
volvō, ere, ī, volūtus REVOLVE, (un)roll, roll (round, through); undergo
vōx, cis *f.* VOICE, word, speech, sound